UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

The Mission of Brigham Young University

The mission of Brigham Young University—founded, supported, and guided by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints—is to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life. That assistance should provide a period of intensive learning in a stimulating setting where a commitment to excellence is expected and the full realization of human potential is pursued.

All instruction, programs, and services at BYU, including a wide variety of extracurricular experiences, should make their own contribution toward the balanced development of the total person. Such a broadly prepared individual will not only be capable of meeting personal challenge and change but will also bring strength to others in the tasks of home and family life, social relationships, civic duty, and service to mankind.

To succeed in this mission the university must provide an environment enlightened by living prophets and sustained by those moral virtues which characterize the life and teachings of the Son of God. In that environment these four major educational goals should prevail:

- All students at BYU should be taught the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Any education is inadequate which does not emphasize that His is the only name given under heaven whereby mankind can be saved. Certainly all relationships within the BYU community should reflect devout love of God and a loving, genuine concern for the welfare of our neighbor.
- Because the gospel encourages the pursuit of all truth, students at BYU should receive a broad university education. The arts, letters, and sciences provide the core of such an education, which will help students think clearly, communicate effectively, understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as that of others, and establish clear standards of intellectual integrity.
- In addition to a strong general education, students should also receive instruction in the special fields of their choice. The university cannot provide programs in all possible areas of professional or vocational work, but in those it does provide the preparation must be excellent. Students who graduate from BYU should be capable of competing with the best in their fields.
- Scholarly research and creative endeavor among both faculty and students, including those in selected graduate programs of real consequence, are essential and will be encouraged.

In meeting these objectives BYU's faculty, staff, students, and administrators should also be anxious to make their service and scholarship available to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints in furthering its work worldwide. In an era of limited enrollments, BYU can continue to expand its influence both by encouraging programs that are central to the Church's purposes and by making its resources available to the Church when called upon to do so.

We believe the earnest pursuit of this institutional mission can have a strong effect on the course of higher education and will greatly enlarge Brigham Young University's influence in a world we wish to improve.

—Approved by the BYU Board of Trustees
November 4, 1981

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

The Aims of a BYU Education

Education is the power to think clearly, the power to act well in the world's work, and the power to appreciate life.

— Brigham Young[1]

The mission of Brigham Young University is "to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life" ("The Mission Statement of Brigham Young University" [hereafter Mission Statement]). To this end, BYU seeks to develop students of faith, intellect, and character who have the skills and the desire to continue learning and to serve others throughout their lives. These are the common aims of all education at BYU. Both those who teach in the classroom and those who direct activities outside the classroom are responsible for contributing to this complete educational vision.

The statement that follows reaffirms and expands on the earlier and more general Mission Statement adopted in 1981. As the quotations under each heading suggest, this document also draws on the religious and educational teachings of the university's founding prophet, Brigham Young. Quotations within the text come from the scriptures and from the counsel of modern prophets, whose teachings about BYU lay the foundation of the university's mission.

The following four sections discuss the expected outcomes of the BYU experience. A BYU education should be (1) spiritually strengthening, (2) intellectually enlarging, and (3) character building, leading to (4) lifelong learning and service. Because BYU is a large university with a complex curriculum, the intellectual aims are presented here in somewhat greater detail than the other aims. Yet they are deliberately placed within a larger context. The sequence flows from a conscious intent to envelop BYU's intellectual aims within a more complete, even eternal, perspective that begins with spiritual knowledge and ends with knowledge applied to the practical tasks of living and serving.

Spiritually Strengthening

Brother Maeser, I want you to remember that you ought not to teach even the alphabet or the multiplication tables without the Spirit of God.

—Brigham Young[2]

The founding charge of BYU is to teach every subject with the Spirit. It is not intended "that all of the faculty should be categorically teaching religion constantly in their classes, but . . . that every . . . teacher in this institution would keep his subject matter bathed in the light and color of the restored gospel."[3]

This ideal arises from the common purpose of all education at BYU—to build testimonies of the restored gospel of Jesus Christ. A shared desire to "seek learning, even by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118) knits BYU into a unique educational community. The students, faculty, and staff in this community possess a remarkable diversity of gifts, but they all think of themselves as brothers and sisters seeking together to master the academic disciplines while remaining mastered by the higher claims of discipleship to the Savior.

A spiritually strengthening education warms and enlightens students by the bright fire of their teachers' faith while enlarging their minds with knowledge. It also makes students responsible for developing their own testimonies by strenuous effort. Joseph Smith's words apply equally to faculty and students at BYU: "Thy mind, O man! if thou wilt lead a soul unto salvation, must stretch as high as the utmost heavens, and search into and contemplate the darkest abyss, and the broad expanse of eternity—thou must commune with God."[4] Students need not ignore difficult and important questions. Rather, they should frame their questions in prayerful, faithful ways, leading them to answers that equip them to give "a reason of the hope that is in" them (1 Peter 3:15) and to articulate honestly and thoughtfully their commitments to Christ and to his Church.

Intellectually Enlarging

Every accomplishment, every polished grace, every useful attainment in mathematics, music, and in all science and art belong to the Saints, and they should avail themselves as expeditiously as possible of the wealth of knowledge the sciences offer to every diligent and persevering scholar.

—Brigham Young[5]

The intellectual range of a BYU education is the result of an ambitious commitment to pursue truth. Members of the BYU community rigorously study academic subjects in the light of divine truth. An eternal perspective shapes not only *how* students are taught but *what* they are taught. In preparing for the bachelor's degree, students should enlarge their intellects by developing skills, breadth, and depth: (1) skills in the basic tools of learning, (2) an understanding of the broad areas of human knowledge, and (3) real competence in at least one area of concentration. Further graduate studies build on this foundation.

Undergraduate

1. Skills. BYU undergraduates should acquire the basic tools needed to learn. The essential academic learning skills are the abilities to think soundly, to communicate effectively, and to reason proficiently in quantitative terms. To these ends, a BYU bachelor's degree should lead to:

- *Sound thinking*—reasoning abilities that prepare students to understand and solve a wide variety of problems, both theoretical and practical. Such skills include the ability to keep a proper perspective when comparing the things that matter most with things of lesser import. They also

include the ability to engage successfully in logical reasoning, critical analysis, moral discrimination, creative imagination, and independent thought.

- *Effective communication*—language abilities that enable students to listen, speak, read, and write well; to communicate effectively with a wide range of audiences in one's area of expertise as well as on general subjects. For many students this includes communicating in a second language.
- *Quantitative reasoning*—numerical abilities that equip students with the capacity to understand and explain the world in quantitative terms; to interpret numerical data; and to evaluate arguments that rely on quantitative information and approaches.

2. Breadth. BYU undergraduates should also understand the most important developments in human thought as represented by the broad domains of knowledge. The gospel provides the chief source of such breadth because it encompasses the most comprehensive explanation of life and the cosmos, supplying the perspective from which all other knowledge is best understood and measured. The Lord has asked his children to "become acquainted with all good books, and with languages, tongues, and people" (D&C 90:15); to understand "things both in heaven and in the earth, and under the earth; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations . . . ; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms" (D&C 88:79).

"Because the gospel encourages the pursuit of all truth, students at BYU should receive a broad university education [that will help them] understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as that of others" (Mission Statement). Specifically, BYU undergraduate students should be educated in the following broad areas of human knowledge:

- *Religion*—the doctrines, the covenants, the ordinances, the standard works, and the history of the restored gospel, as well as an awareness of other religious traditions.
- *Historical perspective*—the development of human civilization, appreciation for the unique contributions of America to modern civilization, and a general historical perspective, including perspective on one's own discipline.
- *Science*—The basic concepts of the physical, biological, and social sciences, and a recognition of the power and limitations of the scientific method—preferably through laboratory or field experience.
- *Arts and letters*—lively appreciation of the artistic, literary, and intellectual achievements of human cultures—including Western culture and, ideally, non-Western as well.
- *Global awareness*—informed awareness of the peoples, cultures, languages, and nations of the world.

3. Depth. BYU undergraduates should develop competence in at least one area of concentration. Competence generally demands study in depth. Such in-depth study helps prepare students for their life's work; it also teaches them that genuine understanding of any subject requires exploring it fully. Students normally acquire such depth from their major and minor fields. BYU's religion requirement also asks all students to develop depth in scriptural studies and religion.

Depth does not result merely from taking many courses in a field. Indeed, excessive course coverage requirements may discourage rather than enhance depth. Depth comes when students realize "the effect of rigorous, coherent, and progressively more sophisticated study." Depth helps students distinguish between what is fundamental and what is only peripheral; it requires focus, provides intense concentration, and encourages a "lean and taut" degree that has a "meaningful core" and a purposefully designed structure (Memorandum to the Faculty No. 13). In addition to describing carefully structured academic majors, this description applies to well-designed BYU courses of all kinds.

The chief result of depth is competence. BYU's students should be "capable of competing with the best students in their field" (Mission Statement). Even so, undergraduate study should be targeted at entrance-level, not expert-level, abilities. The desire for depth should not lead to bachelor's degrees that try to teach students everything they will need to know after graduation. Students should be able to complete their degrees within about four years.

Undergraduate programs should prepare students to enter the world of work or to pursue further study. Often this requires educational activities that help upperclassmen culminate their studies by integrating them in a capstone project, honors thesis, senior seminar, or internship. By the time they graduate, students should grasp their discipline's essential knowledge and skills (such as mathematical reasoning, statistical analysis, computer literacy, foreign language fluency, laboratory techniques, library research, and teaching methods), and many should have participated in scholarly or creative activities that let them demonstrate their mastery.

Graduate

Building on the foundation of a strong bachelor's degree, graduate education at BYU asks for even greater competency. Graduate studies may be either academic or professional and at either the master's or doctoral level. In all cases, BYU graduate programs, like undergraduate programs, should be spiritually strengthening as well as intellectually enlarging.

Graduate programs should help students achieve excellence in the discipline by engaging its primary sources; mastering its literature, techniques, and methodologies; and undertaking advanced systematic study—all at a depth that clearly exceeds the undergraduate level. In addition, graduate programs should prepare students to contribute to their disciplines through their own original insights, designs, applications, expressions, and discoveries. Graduate study should thereby enable a variety of contributions—such as teaching complex knowledge and skills, conducting original research, producing creative work that applies advanced learning in the everyday world, and extending professional service to the discipline and to society.

These intellectual aims of a BYU education are intended to give students understanding, perspective, motivation, and interpersonal abilities—not just information and academic skills. BYU should furnish students with the practical advantage of an education that integrates academic skills with abstract theories, real-world applications, and gospel perspectives. Such an education prepares students who can make a difference in the world, who can draw on their academic preparation to participate more effectively in the arenas of daily life. They are parents, Church leaders, citizens, and compassionate human beings who are able to improve the moral, social, and ecological environment in which they and their families live. They are scientists and engineers who can work effectively in teams and whose work reflects intellectual and moral integrity; historians who write well and whose profound understanding of human nature and of divine influences informs their interpretation of human events; teachers whose love for their students as children of God is enriched by global awareness and foreign language skill; artists whose performances seek to be flawless in both technique and inspiration; business leaders whose economic judgments and management styles see financial reward not as an end but as a means to higher ends. BYU graduates thus draw on an educated intellect to enhance not only what they *know* but also what they *do* and, ultimately, what they *are*.

Character Building

A firm, unchangeable course of righteousness through life is what secures to a person true intelligence.

—Brigham Young[6]

Because it seeks to educate students who are renowned for what they are as well as for what they know, Brigham Young University has always cared as much about strong moral character as about great mental capability. Consequently, a BYU education should reinforce such moral virtues as integrity, reverence, modesty, self-control, courage, compassion, and industry. Beyond this, BYU aims not merely to teach students a code of ethics but to help them become partakers of the divine nature. It aspires to develop in its students character traits that flow from the long-term application of gospel teachings to their lives. This process begins with understanding humankind's eternal nature and ends with the blessing of eternal life, when human character reflects in fully flowered form the attributes of godliness. Along the way, the fruits of a well-disciplined life are augmented and fulfilled by the fruits of the spirit of Jesus Christ—such as charity, a Christlike love for others, which God "hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ" (Moroni 7:48). Students thus perfect their quest for character development by coming unto Christ through faith, repentance, and righteous living. Then their character begins to resemble his, not just because they think it should but because that is the way they are.

President David O. McKay taught that character is the highest aim of education: above knowledge is wisdom, and above wisdom is character. "True education," he explained, "seeks to make men and women not only good mathematicians, proficient linguists, profound scientists, or brilliant literary lights, but also honest men with virtue, temperance, and brotherly love."[7] Consequently, a BYU education should bring together the intellectual integrity of fine academic discipline with the spiritual integrity of personal righteousness. The result is competence that reflects the highest professional and academic standards—strengthened and ennobled by Christlike attributes.

Thus understood, the development of character is so important that BYU "has no justification for its existence unless it builds character, creates and develops faith, and makes men and women of strength and courage, fortitude, and service—men and women who will become stalwarts in the Kingdom and bear witness of the . . . divinity of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It is not justified on an academic basis only."[8] Rather, it fulfills its promise when "the morality of the graduates of this University provide[s] the music of hope for the inhabitants of this planet."[9]

Every part of the BYU experience should therefore strengthen character—academic integrity in taking a test or writing a research paper; sportsmanship on the playing field; the honest reporting of research findings in a laboratory; careful use of university funds derived from the tithes of Church members; treating all other people with dignity and fairness; and wholehearted acceptance of commitments made to bishops and parents. Character is constructed by small decisions. At this personal level of detail, BYU will realize its hope of teaching "those moral virtues which characterize the life and teachings of the Son of God" (Mission Statement).

Lifelong Learning and Service

We might ask, when shall we cease to learn? I will give you my opinion about it; never, never. . . . We shall never cease to learn, unless we apostatize from the religion of Jesus Christ.

—Brigham Young[10]

Our education should be such as to improve our minds and fit us for increased usefulness; to make us of greater service to the human family.

—Brigham Young[11]

Well-developed faith, intellect, and character prepare students for a lifetime of learning and service. By "entering to learn" and continuing to learn as they "go forth to serve," BYU students strengthen not only themselves—they "also bring strength to others in the tasks of home and family life, social relationships, civic duty, and service to mankind" (Mission Statement).

1. Continual Learning. BYU should inspire students to keep alive their curiosity and prepare them to continue learning throughout their lives. BYU should produce careful readers, prayerful thinkers, and active participants in solving family, professional, religious, and social problems. They will then be like Abraham of old, who had been "a follower of righteousness, desiring also to be one who possessed great knowledge, and to be a greater follower of righteousness, and to possess a greater knowledge, . . . desiring to receive instructions, and to keep the commandments of God." In this lifelong quest, they, like Abraham, will find "greater happiness and peace and rest" (Abraham 1:2). Thus a BYU diploma is a beginning, not an end, pointing the way to a habit of constant learning. In an era of rapid changes in technology and information, the knowledge and skills learned this year may require renewal the next. Therefore, a BYU degree should educate students in how to learn, teach them that there is much still to learn, and implant in them a love of learning "by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118).

2. Service. Since a decreasing fraction of the Church membership can be admitted to study at BYU, it is ever more important that those who are admitted use their talents to build the kingdom of God on the earth. Hence, BYU should nurture in its students the desire to use their knowledge and skills not only to enrich their own lives but also to bless their families, their communities, the Church, and the larger society. Students should learn, then demonstrate, that their ultimate allegiance is to higher values, principles, and human commitments rather than to mere self-interest. By doing this, BYU graduates can counter the destructive and often materialistic self-centeredness and worldliness that afflict modern society. A service ethic should permeate every part of BYU's activities—from the admissions process through the curriculum and extracurricular experiences to the moment of graduation. This ethic should also permeate each student's heart, leading him or her to the ultimate wellspring of charity—the love for others that Christ bestows on his followers.

Conclusion

Education is a good thing, and blessed is the man who has it, and can use it for the dissemination of the Gospel without being puffed up with pride.

—Brigham Young[12]

These are the aims of a BYU education. Taken together, they should lead students toward wholeness: "the balanced development of the total person" (Mission Statement). These aims aspire to promote an education that helps students integrate all parts of their university experience into a fundamentally sacred way of life—their faith and reasoning, their knowledge and conduct, their public lives and private convictions. Ultimately, complete wholeness comes only through the Atonement of him who said, "I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly" (John 10:10). Yet a university education, guided by eternal principles, can greatly "assist individuals in their quest for" that abundant "eternal life" (Mission Statement).

A commitment to this kind of education has inspired the prophets of the past to found Church schools, like BYU, on the principle that "to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God" (2 Nephi 9:29). These prophets have known the risks of such an enterprise, for "that happiness which is prepared for the saints" shall be hid forever from those "who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom" (see 2 Nephi 9:42–43). Yet they have also known that education plays a vital role in realizing the promises of the Restoration; that a broad vision of education for self-reliance and personal growth is at the very heart of the gospel when the gospel is at the heart of education. To the degree that BYU achieves its aims, the lives of its students will confirm Brigham Young's confidence that education is indeed "a good thing," blessing all those who humbly and faithfully use it to bless others.

Notes

1. Brigham Young, quoted by George H. Brimhall in "The Brigham Young University,"; *Improvement Era*, vol. 23, no. 9 (July 1920), p. 831.
2. Brigham Young, in Reinhard Maeser, *Karl G. Maeser: A Biography* (Provo: Brigham Young University, 1928), p. 79.
3. Spencer W. Kimball, "Education for Eternity," Preschool Address to BYU Faculty and Staff, 12 September 1967, p. 11.
4. Joseph Smith, *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, sel. Joseph Fielding Smith (Salt Lake City: Deseret Book Company, 1972), p. 137.
5. Brigham Young, *Journal of Discourses* (hereafter *JD*), vol. 10 (London: Latter-day Saints' Book Depot, 1854–86), p. 224.
6. Brigham Young, *JD* 8:32.
7. David O. McKay, "Why Education?" *Improvement Era*, vol. 70, no. 9 (September 1967), p. 3.
8. Spencer W. Kimball, "On My Honor," in *Speeches of the Year*, 1978 (Provo: Brigham Young University Press, 1979), p. 137.
9. Spencer W. Kimball, "Second Century Address and Dedication of Carillon Tower and Bells," Brigham Young University, 10 October 1975, p. 12.
10. Brigham Young, *JD* 3:203.
11. Brigham Young, *JD* 14:83.
12. Brigham Young, *JD* 11:214.

Approved by the BYU Board of Trustees on March 1, 1995.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

University Calendar

The annual calendar at BYU includes two semesters and two terms. Fall semester 2008 begins the first Tuesday in September and ends before the Christmas holidays. Winter semester is from early January to late April. Spring and summer terms begin April 29 and June 23 respectively. Registering for spring and summer terms allows students to accelerate their progress in many degree programs.

Fall Semester 2008		
M	Dec 1, 2007	Departmental application deadlines for fall semester 2008 entry to graduate study may be as early as December 1, 2007. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 2008-2009 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department.
M	Jan 15, 2008	Last day continuing students can apply for Spring/Summer scholarships
Th	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen may apply to be considered for the Gordon B. Hinckley Scholarship for fall semester 2008
Th	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate applications for spring term 2008, summer term 2008, or fall semester 2008 admission, academic scholarships, and talent awards
Th	Feb 1	Last day international students (new freshman, transfer, and former) may submit admission applications for spring term 2008
Th	Mar 1	All enrolled continuing undergraduate, graduate, intern, or Study Abroad students' Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsements are due to avoid registration delays for fall semester 2008
Th	Mar 1	Last day transfer and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission applications for spring term 2008, summer term 2008, or fall semester 2008
Th	Mar 1	Last day transfer students may submit undergraduate scholarship applications for fall semester 2008
Th	Mar 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for spring term 2008, summer term 2008, or fall semester 2008
Su	Apr 15	Last day continuing undergraduate students and former students admitted spring term, summer term, or fall semester 2008 may apply for scholarships for fall semester 2008 or winter semester 2009
M	Aug 25	First day summer term 2008 grades are available
MTW	Aug 25-27	Annual University Conference
T	Aug 26	Tuition due in full. Ability to add additional courses for fall 2008 will be restricted due to non-payment
ThFSa	Aug28-30	New Student Orientation
M	Sep 1	Labor Day holiday
M	Sep 1	Last day to officially discontinue enrollment without a withdraw date posted on the transcript
T	Sep 2	Classes begin
M	Sep 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for December 2008 graduation
M	Sep 15	Last day to add classes
M	Sep 15	Last day for new and continuing students to submit Student Health Plan enrollment or certification of other coverage through the Route Y Web site
M	Sep 15	Last day to drop classes without incurring a pro-rata tuition charge
M	Sep 15	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
M	Sep 15	Final tuition deadline. Current class enrollment will be dropped for non-payment. Late payments will not be accepted.
Th	Sep 19	Last day to withdraw from a first block class for academic reasons
F	Sep 26	Last day graduate students may apply for December 2008 graduation
W	Oct 1	Last day new freshmen, transfer, and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for winter semester 2009
W	Oct 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for winter semester 2009
M	Oct 6	Last day to officially discontinue from first block classes for nonacademic emergencies
M	Oct 6	Last day to withdraw from a semester class for academic reasons
T	Oct 21	Last day of first block classes
W	Oct 22	Second block classes begin
W	Oct 29	Last day to add second block classes
W	Oct 29	Last day to drop a second block class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	Oct 31	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to their department for December 2008 graduation
F	Nov 7	Last day to withdraw from a second block class for academic reasons
F	Nov 7	Last day Independent Study course work and midterms may be submitted for December 2008 graduation
F	Nov 14	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may have a final oral examination (defense of their work) for December 2008 graduation

Winter Semester 2009

Th	Feb 1, 2008	Departmental application deadlines for winter semester 2009 entry to graduate study may be as early as February 1, 2008. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 2008–2009 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department
Su	Apr 15	Last day continuing undergraduate students may apply for scholarships for winter semester 2009
M	Oct 1	Last day new freshmen, transfer, and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for winter semester 2009
M	Oct 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for winter semester 2009
Sa	Nov 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for April 2009 graduation
M	Dec 29	Tuition due in full. Ability to add additional courses for winter 2009 will be restricted due to non-payment
Sa	Jan 3, 2009	New Student Orientation
Su	Jan 4	Last day to officially discontinue enrollment without a withdraw date posted on the transcript
M	Jan 5	Classes begin
T	Jan 15	Last day continuing students can apply for Spring/Summer scholarships
F	Jan 16	Last day to add classes
F	Jan 16	Last day for new students to submit Student Health Plan enrollment or certification of other coverage through the Route Y Web site
F	Jan 16	Last day to drop classes without incurring a pro-rata tuition charge
F	Jan 16	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	Jan 16	Final tuition deadline. Current class enrollment will be dropped for non-payment. Late payments will not be accepted.
M	Jan 19	Martin Luther King Day holiday
Th	Jan 22	Last day to withdraw from a first block class for academic reasons
F	Jan 23	Last day graduate students may apply for April 2009 graduation
F	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen may submit unergraduate applications for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009 admission, academic scholarships, and talent awards
F	Feb 1	Last day international students (new freshman, transfer, and former) may submit admission/scholarship applications for spring term 2009
F	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen (including international students) may apply to be considered for the Gordon B. Hinckley Scholarship for fall semester 2009
M	Feb 9	Last day to officially discontinue from a first block class for nonacademic emergencies
M	Feb 9	Last day to withdraw from a semester class for academic reasons
M	Feb 16	Presidents' Day holiday
T	Feb 17	Monday class instruction—no Tuesday classes
F	Feb 20	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to their department for April 2009 graduation
W	Feb 25	Last day of first block classes
Th	Feb 26	Second block classes begin
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer and former BYU students—including international students (except for spring term—see Feb 15)—may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	All enrolled continuing undergraduate, graduate, intern, or Study Abroad students' Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsements are due to avoid registration delays for fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer students may submit undergraduate scholarship applications for fall semester 2009
Th	Mar 5	Last day to add second block classes
Th	Mar 5	Last day to drop a second block class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	Mar 6	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may have a final oral examination (defense of their work) for April 2009 graduation
F	Mar 13	Last day graduate students may submit their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the dean of their college for April 2009 graduation
F	Mar 14	Last day Independent Study course work and midterms may be submitted for April 2009 graduation
Sa	Mar 15	Due date for Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement for academic year Fall 2009–Summer 2010
Su	Mar 15	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for Winter semester 2009
M	Mar 16	Last day to withdraw from a second block class for academic reasons
F	Mar 20	Last day graduate students may submit their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the Library Business Office; complete remaining degree requirements; pay fees; and submit exam results and any I and T, etc., grade changes to Graduate Studies for April 2009 graduation
F	Mar 28	Last day undergraduates may submit to the Records Office all incompletes, T grades, special exams, GE challenges, military credit, official transcripts of work completed at other schools, and any other information pertaining to April 2009 graduation
W	Apr 1	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or withdraw from a class for nonacademic emergencies
F	Apr 3	Last day Independent Study final exams may be submitted for April 2009 graduation
T	Apr 15	Last day continuing undergraduate students and former students admitted spring term, summer term, or fall semester 2009 may apply for scholarships for fall semester 2009 and winter semester 2010

Spring Term 2009

M	Sept 15, 2008	Departmental application deadlines for spring term 2009 entry to graduate study may be as early as September 15, 2008. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 2008–2009 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department
T	Jan 15, 2009	Last day continuing undergraduate students may submit scholarship applications for spring or summer terms 2009
F	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate applications for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009 admission, academic scholarships, and talent awards
F	Feb 1	Last day international students (new freshman, transfer, and former) may submit admission applications for spring term 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer and former BYU students—including international students (except for spring term—see Feb 15)—may submit undergraduate admission applications for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	All enrolled continuing undergraduate, graduate, intern, or Study Abroad students' Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsements are due to avoid registration delays for fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for spring term 2009, summer term 2009, or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer students may submit scholarship applications for spring term, summer term, or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day former students admitted spring term or summer term 2009 may apply for spring term and summer term 2009 scholarships
W	Apr 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for August 2009 graduation
T	Apr 15	Last day former students may apply for fall semester 2009 or winter semester 2010 scholarships
T	Apr 21	Tuition due in full. Ability to add additional courses for spring 2009 will be restricted due to non-payment
M	Apr 27	Last day to discontinue enrollment without a withdraw date posted on the transcript
M	Apr 27	New Student Orientation
T	Apr 28	Classes begin
T	May 5	Last day to add classes
T	May 5	Last day for new students to submit Student Health Plan enrollment or certification of other coverage through the Route Y Web site
T	May 5	Last day to drop classes without incurring a pro-rata tuition charge
T	May 5	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
T	May 5	Final tuition deadline. Current class enrollment will be dropped for non-payment. Late payments will not be accepted
Th	May 14	Last day to withdraw from a class for academic reasons
F	May 22	Last day graduate students may apply for August 2009 graduation
M	May 25	Memorial Day holiday
M	Jun 1	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for spring term 2009
T	Jun 2	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or withdraw from a class for nonacademic emergencies
M	Jun 15	Last day of class instruction
T	Jun 16	Exam preparation day
WTh	Jun 17–18	Final exams
F	Jun 19	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to their department for August 2009 graduation
F	Jun 26	Last day instructors may submit spring term 2009 grades to the Records Office
M	Jun 29	Spring term 2009 grades available
M	Jun 30	Last day federal government will accept Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA) for 2008–2009 academic year

Summer Term 2009

M	Dec 15, 2008	Departmental application deadlines for summer term 2009 entry to graduate study may be as early as December 15, 2008. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 2008—2009 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department
T	Jan 15, 2009	Last day continuing undergraduate students may submit scholarship applications for summer term 2009
F	Feb 1	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate applications for summer term 2009 or fall semester 2009 admission, and academic scholarships
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer and former BYU students—including international students—may submit undergraduate admission applications for summer term 2009 or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	All enrolled continuing undergraduate, graduate, intern, or Study Abroad students' Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsements are due to avoid registration delays for fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day to submit a continuing student enrollment and scholarship deferment application for summer term 2009 or fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day transfer students may submit scholarship applications for summer term and fall semester 2009
Sa	Mar 1	Last day former students admitted for summer term 2009 may apply for summer term 2009 scholarships
W	Apr 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for August 2009 graduation

Brigham Young University: A Unique Environment

Religious Environment

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints sponsors BYU to provide a university education in an atmosphere that nurtures spiritual growth and a strong conviction of the divinity of Jesus Christ. Church programs are closely correlated at all levels with the activities of the university, and students will find many opportunities to grow spiritually.

Religion Classes

All students at BYU should include regular gospel study as a continuous part of their university experience. Full-time undergraduate students take one religion class each semester of enrollment until a total of 14 semester hours of religion credit has been earned. See The University Core section of this catalog for more information.

University Devotionals

University devotionals, held throughout the year on Tuesdays at 11:05 a.m., provide an inspirational and integrative part of the university experience. These assemblies are occasions to celebrate the shared sense of community values in the university. Participation in these gatherings will renew spiritual commitment. Devotional speakers, selected from the General Authorities and other leaders of the Church and university personnel, come to teach the gospel and affirm the spiritual dimension of the university experience for students, faculty, and staff.

Most campus offices and services are closed during university assemblies so that members of the university community may participate.

BYU Stakes and Wards

To give students maximum opportunity to participate, the Church is organized into a number of BYU stakes composed of several wards of approximately 150 members each. All single students living away from home who are members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints become members of a BYU ward. Single LDS students living at home have the option of attending their home ward or a designated BYU ward. Married students not living in university housing may attend either the designated BYU ward or the residential ward in which they live.

Other Religious Denominations

Approximately twenty-five other religious denominations are represented in the BYU student body. These students are encouraged to attend a congregation of their faith in the surrounding area, if possible.

Academic Environment

The academic environment extends beyond the four walls of a university classroom. Serious students seek enrichment in the library, at university forums and lectures, and through research. Some students may choose to become involved in the Honors Program or live in one of the "quiet halls" on campus—and everyone benefits from drawing on the resources available at college advisement centers.

New Student Orientation

The purpose of New Student Orientation (NSO) is to welcome new and transfer students into the BYU community of disciple-scholars and to familiarize them with the opportunities and challenges of university learning. Additionally, NSO provides new students several opportunities to become acquainted with the resources available to them on campus. Finally, it offers a great chance to connect with other students, faculty members, and staff personnel.

NSO events and activities range from the academic through the informational to the out-and-out fun, but they are always friendly and focused on the needs of new students. NSO activities vary according to the term or semester. They may include campus tours; learning about the library, academic advising, scholarships, financial aid, and honors education; and an introduction to several of the emotionally and spiritually satisfying traditions of the Y.

Many of the activities are organized around Y Groups, small cohorts of students led by upperclassmen, which offer students individualized attention. Orientation at BYU balances the various needs of new students by combining appropriate resources, activities, and personnel. To become fully integrated into an institution as large and complex as BYU, active participation in NSO is vital.

New Student Orientation is held three times a year, immediately prior to winter semester, summer term, and fall semester. Please refer to the Web page at http://fye.byu.edu for detailed information and registration.

University Forums

University forums are held on selected Tuesdays at 11:05 a.m. and are designed to enrich the general education experience. Speakers are noted authorities in the arts, sciences, humanities, media, and government, chosen for their contributions to their field and their ability to inspire and communicate. Participation in these assemblies and the associated question-and-answer sessions prompts inquiry into significant intellectual, cultural, and social issues and helps lay the foundation for lifelong learning.

Harold B. Lee Library

The Harold B. Lee Library (HBLL) collection numbers over eight million volumes, including books, periodicals, government documents, microfilm, and other nonprint items. The library's Web-based catalog contains numerous full-text databases and many electronic indexes to other sources.

The library is a depository for United State government documents and regularly receives publications of state and local governments. The Religion and Family History Library supports family history and genealogy through an extensive collection of microfilm, microfiche, and online resources. L. Tom Perry Special Collections houses non-circulating books and manuscripts related to Mormonism, western Americana, incunabula, Victorian and Edwardian literature, historical manuscripts and photographs, motion pictures, and many other preserved items for research and use.

The general collection is housed on five levels of the library. An information commons is located on the ground floor (level 3), and professional librarians and support staff provide research assistance at eight additional subject reference desks. Instruction in library and information literacy is available. The general library facilities are open to students, faculty, administrative and staff personnel, alumni, and other community patrons.

BYU libraries provide excellent teaching and research support for faculty and other university personnel. Library subject specialists and archival curators are available for instruction or lectures on library resources and to assist in designing class assignments that involve library research.

The library is open during fall and winter semesters from 7:00 a.m. to midnight Monday through Friday and from 8:00 a.m. to midnight Saturday.

BYU students and faculty may also use the facilities of other Utah college and university libraries in the United States through cooperative agreements implemented through state and national library consortia. Libraries operated by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are also available to BYU students and employees, including the library of the Church Historical Department located in Salt Lake City.

The Lee Library provides a faculty delivery service for pickup and delivery of books to and from faculty and administrative offices.

For books unavailable at the Harold B. Lee Library, an interlibrary loan service is available. Requests should be submitted through the ILLiad request system available on the library's web page (http://library.byu.edu).

Research and Creative Activities at BYU

One of the most exciting and valuable learning experiences available to both undergraduate and graduate students at BYU is the opportunity to participate in original research and creative activities. BYU has accomplished faculty members in all areas, many of whom enjoy international reputations for the quality of their creative endeavors. Many professors enlist the help of undergraduate students, who work side by side with faculty mentors and graduate students in a laboratory or studio setting.

A wide variety of research experiences are available in many departments across campus. For example, the student might be involved in the synthesis of a new medicinal drug in the chemistry laboratory or participate in the discovery of a new species of dinosaur on a Colorado mesa. Other examples of programs involving student participation include the study of robotics systems, computer architecture, battery technology, high-energy physics, international business methods, child psychology, drug-induced birth defects, educational methodology, molecular genetics, social implications of drug use, stability and satisfaction in marriage, Church history, and a host of other topics. Students who are interested in participating in research programs are encouraged to contact their major department chair or speak directly with individual professors.

The **Office of Research and Creative Activities (ORCA)** manages, on behalf of the administration, two programs whose purpose is to bring together students and faculty in mentored experiences. The first is the ORCA Mentoring Grants for Undergraduates Program. Requests for proposals go out to all undergraduate, full-time students. One-third of all proposals are usually funded at $1800 each. Awards are made early in the semester following application. The second is the Mentored Environments Grants Program. Faculty are encouraged to submit proposals to create or enhance a mentored environment for undergraduate and graduate students. Awards range from $2,000 to $20,000, and proposals are collected in late fall and awarded in midwinter. For more information, contact any department or college, or contact ORCA at A-285 ASB, (801) 422-3841, http://orca.byu.edu.

Internships

Internships and other applied learning experiences, such as clinical and field studies, integrate academic studies with professional or career-related work experience. They are required by some degree programs and recommended by others to strengthen or complement a student's major or minor field of study. In addition to experiences within the United States, opportunities in international settings are also available when approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies.

Students who want or need academic credit for internships and other formal applied, cooperative learning experiences must receive prior department and university approval and complete formal registration before commencing. Course offerings vary according to student and program needs. Registration in a department's 199R, 299R, 399R, 496R, 599R, or 688R course is required for internship credit. Individual departments specify course numbers for clinical, practicum, or other applied, cooperative learning courses. Credit varies, generally ranging from 0.5 to 12 semester hours. Grades are based on both academic and work-related accomplishments.

To learn more about the opportunities and benefits of applied, cooperative learning experiences, contact a college or department internship coordinator, visit or call the BYU Internship Office (130A B-34, 801-422-3337), or go to http://www.byu.edu/intern.

Center for Service and Learning

Main Office: 2010 WSC, (801) 422-1277
Community Service Office: 2330 WSC, (801) 422-8686

Seeking to instill a desire for lifelong service, the Center for Service and Learning (CSL) works to provide every student with a meaningful service opportunity. The CSL's valuable network of community resources supports student volunteers, who expand their experience by reaching beyond themselves to achieve greater awareness of their surroundings and the local community. As students learn to better serve the human family, they also improve their minds and talents.

The CSL Main Office includes administrative offices, Tutoring Services, and Tutor Outreach to Provo Schools (TOPS). Tutoring is free for BYU students, and they can expect to meet with their tutor for one to three hours per week. Available for most BYU classes, tutors are frequently requested for GE math and science courses. Because tutors are provided on a first come, first served basis, students are encouraged to sign up early. Volunteer tutors are recruited throughout the year. The TOPS program offers opportunities for students to gain valuable experience serving as mentors and tutors in the local public schools.

The CSL Community Service Office coordinates over 28 programs. These programs, run by students, range from blood drives to mentoring. In addition, an Urgent Needs board and a database posting current service opportunities are maintained by the center. The center's web site, http://centerforservice.byu.edu, is an excellent resource offering online access to all opportunities. The Volunteer Solutions database found on the web site allows students to search according to their availability and interests (major and hobbies). These listings are available in hard copy at the center. Opportunities are available for individuals, FHE groups, or wards and stakes. For immediate "hands on" service, the center offers the Stop & Serve program.

Student Development Course Work

The Counseling and Career Center offers courses under the title Student Development. These courses are designed to help with the personal challenges and tasks facing college students. Some of the relevant student-centered topics are college study skills, life planning, time management, decision making, and test taking strategies. Several courses are also designed to help students decide on a college major and a career and to make the transition from college to the world of work. Each class has material to help students identify their values, develop character, and make progress with their personal goals for life. The BYU Undergraduate Catalog and the current class schedule list these courses under Student Development. For further information contact the Counseling and Career Center, 2510 WSC, (801) 422-4007.

Academic Support Office

2500 WSC
(801) 422-2723
E-mail: academic_support@byu.edu

All students admitted to the university have the potential to succeed academically; however, some students have difficulty achieving the level of success required to remain in good academic standing. The mission of the Academic Support Office is to assist students in maintaining that level of academic success. Administered through the Counseling and Career Center, a department of Student Life, the Academic Support Office uses the combined resources of the university to help students resolve most academic problems.

Students with academic problems often have difficulties in one or more of the following areas: (1) Personal concerns outside the academic realm—such as adjustment problems, illness, or relationship problems—that distract from academic goals. Such problems may be addressed by helping students refocus on their goals. (2) Inadequate academic preparation to meet the rigors of a university experience. Study-skills training helps students identify strategies appropriate to the university experience. (3) Learning styles that worked in high school but are not productive at the university. A learning-style assessment and counseling may help students identify and use academic strengths more successfully. (4) Ambiguous career goals that cause students to flounder within the university. With career guidance they can move toward a more timely graduation.

Counselors are trained to assist students with time management, study skills, learning style, career choice, and other academic concerns. Students who experience academic difficulties are encouraged to contact the Academic Support Office.

Graduate Studies

B-356 ASB
Phone: (801) 422-4091

To the student seeking advanced study, Brigham Young University offers a variety of graduate degree opportunities. Excellent graduate programs can be found in each of the colleges and schools, and successful completion of one results in the awarding of a master's or doctoral degree.

The master's degree requires advanced course work, demonstrated mastery in vital aspects of a discipline, skill in research methodology and theory, and preparation for future creative work. In certain disciplines, graduate programs blend scholarly insight with technical knowledge and skill. Integrative examinations, a major culminating piece of written work or performance, and an accompanying oral defense of that work may be required.

The doctoral degree requires the student to demonstrate an impressive scholarly competence, which includes the ability to conduct and report research in a highly effective manner. Advanced systematic study in a discipline is also essential and is followed by comprehensive examinations that require students to integrate and understand the collective knowledge of their disciplines. A dissertation resulting from independent research is defended in a concluding oral examination.

Students who are interested in pursuing advanced degrees are encouraged to become involved in research and creative activities during their undergraduate experience.

For information about master's and doctoral degree programs, students should consult the 2007–2008 BYU Graduate Catalog online at http://byu.edu/gradstudies.

Application information is available online at http://byu.edu/gradstudies, through Graduate Studies, and through individual departments. For information regarding admission to the J. Reuben Clark Law School, see the Law School section of this catalog.

Cultural Environment

Students can immerse themselves in culture at BYU. Dance, theatre, music, art exhibits, museums—all nourish the soul seeking after "anything virtuous, lovely, or of good report or praiseworthy."

BYU dance and music performance groups present major performances on campus each year and many tour throughout the world. Popular and classical plays, films, and musicals, as well as original works, are also offered throughout the year. The weekly International Cinema Program is another cultural offering worthy of note.

Performing Arts Series

The BYU Performing Arts Series presents some of the most celebrated artists in the world. Concerts and productions are scheduled throughout each year in the Harris Fine Arts Center and other venues. Season or individual event tickets are available at reduced prices for students, faculty, and staff. For further information contact the Fine Arts Ticket Office at (801) 422-HFAC (4322) or visit our web site at http://performances.byu.edu.

In recent years the Performing Arts Series has included:

Cleveland Sign Stage
Body Vox
Angela Chang
Ballet West
Nancy Ambrose King
Leigh Howard Stevens
Alison Brown Quartet
Utah Symphony

Guarneri String Quartet
Frederica von Stade

Faculty and Student Performances, Exhibitions, and Showcases

Throughout the year the faculty of the Departments of Visual Arts, Dance, Theatre and Media Arts, and the School of Music are featured in exhibitions, productions, and music performances.

As part of their educational experience, students, both individually and in groups, present concerts, exhibitions, films, plays, recitals, and productions. Theatre Ballet, The Dancers' Company, International Folk Dance Ensemble, Ballroom Dance Company, Philharmonic and Chamber Orchestras, Young Ambassadors, Living Legends, University Singers, and Synthesis Jazz Ensemble are but a few of the groups that perform in the various university venues. Plays, musical theatre, dance, and opera, as well as art and design exhibitions, are also a part of the outstanding student fare available to the university community.

For further information contact the Fine Arts Ticket Office at (801) 422-HFAC (4322), or visit our web site at http://performances.byu.edu.

Museum of Art

The Museum of Art was completed and opened during fall 1993. Funded by private donors, the 100,000-square-foot museum is located directly north of the Harris Fine Arts Center. A sculpture garden separates the two buildings, and together they form a striking visual and performing arts center. The museum houses the university's superb collection of paintings, sculpture, decorative arts, and works on paper. Major bodies of work the university owns are by such eminent artists as Mahonri Y. Young, J. Alden Weir, Maynard Dixon, C. C. A. Christensen, and Minerva Teichert. Besides its rich array of American art, the collection includes rare prints by Rembrandt, Dürer, and Daumier and a growing collection of important religious works.

Major traveling exhibitions and exhibitions from the museum's permanent collections are scheduled on a rotating basis. The museum offers a variety of educational programs for campus and community audiences as well. Included in the museum are a print study room, a lecture room, and an orientation theater. The museum also features a café, bookstore, and auditorium.

Students play an important role in the Museaum of Art. Not only are they employed in service capacities in each of the museum's departments but the museum also offers a rigorous internship program that affords selected students opportunities to be mentored on significant museum projects. Many students also serve as volunteer docents. While earning course credits toward their degrees, students gain valuable experience in museum education, curation, registration, administration, and even fabrication.

M. L. Bean Life Science Museum

Larry L. St. Clair, Director
Jack Sites, Associate Director
Marta Adair, Assistant Director
290 MLBM

The Monte L. Bean Life Science Museum is a fully functional, accredited, professional museum. Its vast teaching and research collections include nearly two million arthropods, fish, amphibians, reptiles, mammals, birds, and prepared shells, and more than 600,000 plants, lichens, and bryophytes. Specimens for these collections, which represent creative work by university faculty and students, have been gathered from around the world, making the museum one of the major repositories of scientific-quality, biological collections in the western United States.

The museum and its collections are utilized by university classes in biology, plant and wildlife sciences, education, art, and other disciplines. The Monte L. Bean Life Science Museum also maintains and manages the Lytle Nature Preserve. Located in the northernmost extension of the Mojave Desert southwest of St. George, Utah, this 562-acre desert classroom is situated in a part of Utah that is unique not only for its plant and animal communities but also for its setting at the crossroads of three major bioregions.

Public programs include temporary and permanent exhibits of natural communities that illustrate complex relationships between plants, animals, and their physical environment. Educational programs serve more than 80,000 annual visitors and provide classes and programs for public and private schools and many other organizations. Museum hours are Monday through Friday from 10:00 a.m. to 9:00 p.m. and Saturday from 10:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. The museum is closed on Sunday. Admission is free.

The Western North American Naturalist, a nationally recognized peer-reviewed natural history journal, is housed in the museum. Other museum publications include professional and popular works such as *A Utah Flora, Snakes of Utah,* and *Common Rocky Mountain Lichens.*

Museum of Peoples and Cultures

Paul R. Stavast, Interim Director
Glenna Nielsen, Curator of Collections
105 ALLN

The Museum of Peoples and Cultures (MPC) houses, cares for, and performs research on archaeological and ethnographic collections from around the world. The strengths of the museum's holdings are in prehistoric Utah, the American Southwest, Mesoamerica, Andean cultures, and Polynesia. An approved state and federal archaeological repository, the museum also holds a noncirculating library and a photographic archive documenting BYU archaeological research and artifactual materials.

Institutional objectives are to interpret and help elucidate the history and culture of the peoples of the world and to convey that knowledge to the scholarly community as well as to the general public. The museum's strongest commitment lies in serving the teaching and research functions of the university. In this, BYU's "teaching museum," not only do students perform office and collections duties, but they also curate all exhibitions as part of the formal curricula taught by museum staff adjunct to the Department of Anthropology. Students plan and execute public programs and design promotional strategy as part of their course work as well. These curricula are available in the department's Certificate in Museum Practices program. Students concurrently enrolled in a cognate master's program are eligible to apply to this graduate program. Three of the certificate courses (Anthr 511, 522, and 525) have no prerequisite and are available for undergraduate enrollment.

The museum's student exhibitions are staged in Allen Hall and change with each certificate class. The museum also produces occasional satellite exhibits at other university locations, such as the Museum of Art and the Joseph Smith Building. Tours of the Allen Hall galleries can be arranged by calling (801) 422-0020. Because scheduling is based on student employee availability, it is advisable to book tours from one to three weeks in advance. Visitors may also choose to guide themselves through the galleries, but groups larger than fifteen people should contact the museum in advance for logistical instructions.

The MPC offers many community educational opportunites. Available for loan to classrooms and inbound populations are anthropology teaching kits that explore the native cultures of various geographical areas. The kits include replica artifacts, handicrafts, and educational books and videos.

Students and civic volunteers are invited to help with educational programming, public relations, archaeological research, and public presentations. The MPC hosts an activity patch program for Scouts of all ages and other interested parties. Museum patches can be earned by visiting the museum and completing the patch requirements. For information about any of these programs, call (801) 422-0020.

Located at 700 North 100 East in Provo (one block south of the Brick Oven restaurant), the museum is open from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday and at other times through appointment. Admission is free, and guided tours can be arranged for a nominal charge. The MPC is closed on holidays and for two weeks in December between fall and winter semesters. Office and library hours vary according to student schedules.

Recreational Environment

Students can enjoy the small-town friendliness of Provo or drive 45 miles to the north for the cosmopolitan diversity that Salt Lake City offers. Whereas Salt Lake City is home to Ballet West, the Mormon Tabernacle Choir, and the Utah Symphony, the Provo area prides itself on its own Utah Valley Symphony and several fine community music, dance, and theatre groups.

Intercollegiate Competition

BYU begins its eighth year in the Mountain West Conference, which also includes the Air Force Academy, Colorado State University, the University of Nevada–Las Vegas, the University of New Mexico, San Diego State University, Texas Christian University, the University of Utah, and the University of Wyoming.

BYU sponsors twenty-one NCAA intercollegiate sports for men and women. The men compete in ten sports: baseball, basketball, cross country, football, golf, swimming and diving, tennis, indoor track, outdoor track and field, and volleyball.

The women compete in eleven intercollegiate sports: basketball, cross country, golf, gymnastics, soccer, softball, swimming and diving, tennis, indoor track, outdoor track and field, and volleyball.

Consistently ranked among the nation's top twenty-five athletic programs, BYU has won NCAA championships in football, men's track and field, men's golf, women's cross country (four), and men's volleyball (three). The Cougars have also won two NIT titles in men's basketball.

Extramural Competition

The extramural sports program at BYU provides opportunities for students to participate on an intercollegiate level throughout the United States and Canada in team sports not designated NCAA.

One of the best organized and most respected programs in the country, BYU's extramural sports program offers four sports for men (soccer, racquetball, lacrosse, and rugby) and one sport for women (racquetball). Many of the teams have been nationally ranked during the last several years.

Athletic Facilities

BYU's athletic facilities are among the best in the nation. Complementing the major sports complexes—the Marriott Center, football stadium, baseball diamond, softball diamond, indoor tennis pavilion, and track and field stadium—are the Richards Building and the Smith Fieldhouse. The Richards Building has facilities for racquetball, volleyball, basketball, aerobics, dance, and swimming, and the Smith Fieldhouse houses ball courts, weight rooms, an indoor track, and a west annex big enough for spring batting practice.

Intramural Activities

The campus intramural program, consisting of more than thirty events involving thousands of participants in both men's and women's activities, is one of the largest and most comprehensive in the United States. Students may participate in team activities and individual events. The intramural program offers divisions for different skill levels in each activity and provides awards for the winners in each division. Numerous employment opportunities are available as game supervisors and officials.

A Great Outdoors

The Wasatch Mountains overlook BYU on the east, and to the west lies Utah Lake. Within an hour's drive are several canyons and ski resorts; six national parks are only a half day away. Outdoor gear can be rented on campus for everything from skiing to windsurfing.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Church Educational System Honor Code

Brigham Young University, Brigham Young University—Hawaii, Brigham Young University—Idaho, and LDS Business College exist to provide an education in an atmosphere consistent with the ideals and principles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. That atmosphere is created and preserved through commitment to conduct that reflects those ideals and principles. Members of the faculty, administration, staff, and student body at BYU, BYU—Hawaii, BYU—Idaho, and LDSBC are selected and retained from among those who voluntarily live the principles of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Observance of such is a specific condition of employment and admission. Those individuals who are not members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are also expected to maintain the same standards of conduct, except church attendance. All who represent BYU, BYU—Hawaii, BYU—Idaho, and LDSBC are to maintain the highest standards of honor, integrity, morality, and consideration of others in personal behavior. By accepting appointment on the faculty, continuing in employment, or continuing class enrollment, individuals evidence their commitment to observe the Honor Code standards approved by the Board of Trustees "at all times and . . . in all places" (Mosiah 18:9).

Honor Code Statement

We believe in being honest, true, chaste, benevolent, virtuous, and in doing good to all men. . . . If there is anything virtuous, lovely, or of good report or praiseworthy, we seek after these things (Thirteenth Article of Faith).

As a matter of personal commitment, faculty, administration, staff, and students of Brigham Young University, Brigham Young University—Hawaii, Brigham Young University—Idaho, and LDS Business College seek to demonstrate in daily living on and off campus those moral virtues encompassed in the gospel of Jesus Christ, and will

Be honest
Live a chaste and virtuous life
Obey the law and all campus policies
Use clean language
Respect others
Abstain from alcoholic beverages, tobacco, tea, coffee, and substance abuse
Participate regularly in church services
Observe the Dress and Grooming Standards
Encourage others in their commitment to comply with the Honor Code

Specific policies embodied in the Honor Code include (1) the Academic Honesty Policy, (2) the Dress and Grooming Standards, (3) the Residential Living Standards, and (4) the Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement. (Refer to institutional policies for more detailed information.)

Academic Honesty Policy

The first injunction of the BYU Honor Code is the call to "be honest." Students come to the university not only to improve their minds, gain knowledge, and develop skills that will assist them in their life's work, but also to build character. "President David O. McKay taught that character is the highest aim of education" (The Aims of a BYU Education, p. 6). It is the purpose of the BYU Academic Honesty Policy to assist in fulfilling that aim.

BYU students should seek to be totally honest in their dealings with others. They should complete their own work and be evaluated based upon that work. They should avoid academic dishonesty and misconduct in all its forms, including but not limited to plagiarism, fabrication or falsification, cheating, and other academic misconduct:

Plagiarism

Intentional plagiarism is a form of intellectual theft that violates widely recognized principles of academic integrity as well as the Honor Code. Such plagiarism may subject the student to appropriate disciplinary action administered through the university Honor Code Office, in addition to academic sanctions that may be applied by an instructor. Inadvertent plagiarism, whereas not in violation of the Honor Code, is nevertheless a form of intellectual carelessness that is unacceptable in the academic community. Plagiarism of any kind is completely contrary to the established practices of higher education, where all members of the university are expected to acknowledge the original intellectual work of others that is included in one's own work. In some cases, plagiarism may also involve violations of copyright law.

Intentional Plagiarism—Intentional plagiarism is the deliberate act of representing the words, ideas, or data of another as one's own without providing proper attribution to the author through quotation, reference, or footnote.

Inadvertent Plagiarism—Inadvertent plagiarism involves the inappropriate, but nondeliberate, use of another's words, ideas, or data without proper attribution. Inadvertent plagiarism usually results from an ignorant failure to follow established rules for documenting sources or from simply being insufficiently careful in research and writing. Although not a violation of the Honor Code, inadvertent plagiarism is a form of academic misconduct for which an instructor can impose appropriate academic sanctions. Students who are in doubt as to whether they are providing proper attribution have the responsibility to consult with their instructor and obtain guidance.

Examples of plagiarism include:

Direct Plagiarism—The verbatim copying of an original source without acknowledging the source.

Paraphrased Plagiarism—The paraphrasing, without acknowledgment, of ideas from another that the reader might mistake for your own.

Plagiarism Mosaic—The borrowing of words, ideas, or data from an original source and blending this original material with one's own without

acknowledging the source.

Insufficient Acknowledgment—The partial or incomplete attribution of words, ideas, or data from an original source.

Plagiarism may occur with respect to unpublished as well as published material. Acts of copying another student's work and submitting it as one's own individual work without proper attribution is a serious form of plagiarism.

Fabrication or Falsification

Fabrication or falsification is a form of dishonesty where a student invents or distorts the origin or content of information used as authority. Examples include:

1. Citing a source that does not exist.
2. Attributing to a source ideas and information that are not included in the source.
3. Citing a source for a proposition that it does not support.
4. Citing a source in a bibliography when the source was neither consulted nor cited in the body of the paper.
5. Intentionally distorting the meaning or applicability of data.
6. Inventing data or statistical results to support conclusions.

Cheating

Cheating is a form of dishonesty where a student attempts to give the appearance of a level of knowledge or skill that the student has not obtained. Examples include:

1. Copying from another person's work during an examination or while completing an assignment.
2. Allowing someone to copy from you during an examination or while completing an assignment.
3. Using unauthorized materials during an examination or while completing an assignment.
4. Collaborating on an examination or assignment without authorization.
5. Taking an examination or completing an assignment for another or permitting another to take an examination or to complete an assignment for you.

Other Academic Misconduct

Academic misconduct includes other academically dishonest, deceitful, or inappropriate acts that are intentionally committed. Examples of such acts include but are not limited to:

1. Inappropriately providing or receiving information or academic work so as to gain unfair advantage over others.
2. Planning with another to commit any act of academic dishonesty.
3. Attempting to gain an unfair academic advantage for oneself or another by bribery or by any act of offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting anything of value to another for such purpose.
4. Changing or altering grades or other official educational records.
5. Obtaining or providing to another an unadministered test or answers to an unadministered test.
6. Breaking and entering into a building or office for the purpose of obtaining an unauthorized test.
7. Continuing work on an examination or assignment after the allocated time has elapsed.
8. Submitting the same work for more than one class without disclosure and approval.

Procedures for Handling Incidents of Academic Dishonesty or Other Academic Misconduct

Faculty are responsible to establish and communicate to students their expectations of behavior with respect to academic honesty and the student's conduct in the course. Responsible instructors will investigate these incidents, determine the facts, and take appropriate action. Finally, the instructor should notify the Honor Code Office of the final disposition of the incident as a means of encouraging behavior change and discouraging repeat violations. If the incident of academic dishonesty involves the violation of a public law, e.g., breaking and entering into an office or stealing an examination, the act should also be reported to University Police. If an affected student disagrees with the determination or action and is unable to resolve the matter to the mutual satisfaction of the student and the instructor, the student may have the matter reviewed through the university's grievance process (Student Academic Grievance Procedure).

Applicable Actions

A wide range of possible actions exists for cases of academic dishonesty. Instructors should take actions that are fair and equitable under the circumstances and should attempt to reach an understanding with the affected student on the imposition of an appropriate action. In some cases, the department, the college, or the university may also take actions independent of the instructor. Examples of possible actions include but are not limited to the following:

For instructors, programs, departments, and colleges:

Reprimanding the student orally or in writing.

Requiring work affected by the academic dishonesty to be redone.

Administering a lower or failing grade on the affected assignment, test, or course.

Removing the student from the course.

Recommending probation, suspension, or dismissal.

For the university:

The university may elect to place an affected student on probation or to suspend or dismiss the student and to place a temporary or permanent notation on the student's permanent academic transcript that he or she was suspended or dismissed due to academic misconduct.

The university may report an incident of academic misconduct to appropriate law enforcement officials and may prosecute an affected student if the act in question involves the commission of a crime (e.g., breaking into an office or building, stealing an examination, etc.).

Honor Code Office Involvement

The Honor Code Office will maintain a record of all violations of the Academic Honesty Policy reported to it by the faculty. If the occurrence is sufficiently egregious or if a pattern of dishonesty or misconduct is discovered, the Honor Code Office may take additional action on behalf of the university based upon the nature of the infraction(s). The Honor Code Office, in consultation with the involved academic personnel, including the associate academic vice president in charge of undergraduate studies, may determine to place a student on probation or to recommend that a student be suspended or dismissed for academic dishonesty and other forms of academic misconduct.

Shared Responsibility Policy Statement

Students are responsible not only to adhere to the Honor Code requirement to be honest but also to assist other students in fulfilling their commitment to be honest.

Faculty Academic Integrity

The substantive standards of academic honesty stated in this policy apply *a fortiori* to faculty. Indeed, all members of the BYU community are expected to act according to the highest principles of academic integrity.

Sources

A large number of publications and policies of colleges and universities were reviewed in creating BYU's Academic Honesty Policy. Some of the content and structure of this policy were adapted from the following sources:

1. "Academic Honesty," a brochure produced by the Office of Judicial Affairs, University of Florida.
2. "Academic Honesty and Dishonesty," a brochure produced by the Office of the Dean of Students, University of Delaware.
3. "Academic Honesty and Dishonesty," a brochure produced by the Dean of Students Office, Louisiana State University.
4. "A Statement on Plagiarism," a committee report from the October 1994 Conference on the Center for Academic Integrity, Tom Langhorne, Binghamton University (chair).
5. "Definition of Plagiarism," by Harold C. Martin, taken from *The Logic and Rhetoric of Exposition*, by Harold C. Martin, Richard M. Ohmann, and James H. Wheatly, 3rd ed. (New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1969).
6. *Legal Aspects of Plagiarism*, by Ralph D. Mawdsley (Topeka, Kansas: National Organization on Legal Problems of Education, 1985).
7. "Plagiarism—The Do's and Don'ts," a brochure produced by the Office of Student Judicial Affairs of the University of California—Davis.

Dress and Grooming Standards

The dress and grooming of both men and women should always be modest, neat, and clean, consistent with the dignity adherent to representing The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and any of its institutions of higher education.

Modesty and cleanliness are important values that reflect personal dignity and integrity, through which students, staff, and faculty represent the principles and standards of the Church. Members of the BYU community commit themselves to observe the following standards, which reflect the direction of the Board of Trustees and the Church publication *For the Strength of Youth*. The Dress and Grooming Standards are as follows:

Men

A clean and well-cared-for appearance should be maintained. Clothing is inappropriate when it is sleeveless, revealing, or form fitting. Shorts must be knee-length or longer. Hairstyles should be clean and neat, avoiding extreme styles or colors, and trimmed above the collar, leaving the ear uncovered. Sideburns should not extend below the earlobe or onto the cheek. If worn, moustaches should be neatly trimmed and may not extend beyond or below the corners of the mouth. Men are expected to be clean-shaven; beards are not acceptable. Earrings and other body piercing are not acceptable. Shoes should be worn in all public campus areas.

Women

A clean and well-cared-for appearance should be maintained. Clothing is inappropriate when it is sleeveless, strapless, backless, or revealing; has slits above the knee; or is form fitting. Dresses, skirts, and shorts must be knee-length or longer. Hairstyles should be clean and neat, avoiding extremes in styles or colors. Excessive ear piercing (more than one per ear) and all other body piercing are not acceptable. Shoes should be worn in all public campus areas.

Residential Living Standards

As stated in the Honor Code, Brigham Young University is committed to providing a learning atmosphere consistent with the principles of the Church. The university is likewise committed to creating such an atmosphere for students residing on and off campus and between semesters. To achieve this, BYU has established living standards to help students learn some of the high ideals and principles of behavior expected at Brigham Young University. Therefore, the university requires students to adhere to the following applicable standards:

Visiting Hours

Helaman Halls

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in the lobbies but not in the bedroom area, except during an established open house or home evening time, at which times room doors must remain open. Lobby visiting hours begin after 8:00 a.m. and extend until 12:00 midnight, Monday through Thursday and Saturday. On Friday night, lobby visiting hours extend until 1:30 a.m. Sunday hours are from noon until midnight.

Heritage Halls

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in the lobbies and apartment kitchens but not in bedrooms or bathrooms. Lobby visiting hours are from 8:00 a.m. to 12:00 midnight daily, Sunday through Thursday, and extend until 1:30 a.m. on Fridays. Apartment visiting hours are from 10:00 a.m. to

11:00 p.m. Sunday through Thursday and extend until 12:00 midnight on Friday and Saturday.

Off-Campus Visiting Hours, Wyview Park and Foreign Language Student Residence

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in living rooms and kitchens but not in the bedrooms in off-campus living units. The use of the bathroom areas by members of the opposite sex is not appropriate unless emergency or civility dictates otherwise, and then only if the safety, privacy, and sensitivity of other residents are not jeopardized. Visiting hours may begin after 9:00 a.m. and extend until 12:00 midnight. Friday night visiting hours may extend until 1:30 a.m. Landlords may establish a shorter visiting period if proper notice is given to students.

Conduct

All students and residents shall be required to conduct themselves in a manner consistent with the BYU Honor Code, including abstaining from possessing, serving, or consuming alcoholic beverages, tobacco, tea, coffee, or harmful drugs. Involvement with gambling; pornographic, erotic, indecent, or offensive material; obscene or indecent conduct or expressions; disorderly or disruptive conduct; or any other conduct or action inconsistent with the BYU Honor Code is not permitted in student housing. All guests of students must comply with the Residential Living Standards while on the premises of university-approved housing. Students are expected to help their guests and other residents understand and fulfill their responsibility under the BYU Residential Living Standards and the BYU Honor Code.

Dress and Grooming Standards

All students and residents of university-approved housing are required to know the BYU dress and grooming standards and abide by them.

Maintaining the Standards

Violations of these standards may be reported to the Honor Code Office, 4440 WSC, (801) 422-2847, or the Off-Campus Housing Office, (801) 378-5066.

Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement

All enrolled continuing undergraduate, graduate, intern, and Study Abroad students are required to obtain a Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement for each new academic year. Students must have their endorsements completed, turned in, and processed by the Honor Code Office before they can register for fall semester or any semester thereafter. To avoid registration delays, endorsement should be submitted to the Honor Code Office by March 15. Those applying to BYU should use the new-student Admissions Application Part 3 endorsement.

LDS students may be endorsed only by the bishop of the ward (1) in which they live and (2) that holds their current Church membership record.

Non-LDS students are to be endorsed by (1) the local ecclesiastical leader if the student is an active member of the congregation, (2) the bishop of the LDS ward in which they currently reside, or (3) the nondenominational BYU chaplain.

Requirements

Whether on or off campus or between semesters, all students are expected to abide by the Honor Code, which includes (1) the Academic Honesty Policy, (2) the Dress and Grooming Standards, and (3) the applicable Residential Living Standards. Students are required to be in good Honor Code standing to graduate.

LDS students must fulfill their duty in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, attend Church meetings, and abide by the rules and standards of the Church on and off campus.

Students who are not members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are also expected to maintain the same standards of conduct. They are encouraged to participate in services of their preferred religion. All students must be in good Honor Code standing to graduate, to receive a diploma, and to have the degree posted.

Withdrawn Ecclesiastical Endorsement

A student's endorsement may be withdrawn at any time if the ecclesiastical leader determines that the student is no longer eligible for the endorsement. If an endorsement is withdrawn, no confessional information is exchanged without authorization from the student. Students without endorsements, except in unusual circumstances, must discontinue enrollment. Excommunication, disfellowshipment, or disaffiliation from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints results in the withdrawal of the student's endorsement. The decision to withdraw an endorsement may be appealed through the appropriate ecclesiastical leaders. Questions regarding withdrawn endorsements and reviews/appeals should be directed to the Honor Code Office.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Academic Standards

Academic Support Office, 2500 WSC, (801) 422-2723

Academic standing is determined by the grades that a student earns **at BYU**.

As of summer term 2003, a minimum of 6 graded credits are used to compute a student's academic standing.

ACADEMIC STANDING	UNDER THESE CONDITIONS	EXPECTATIONS
GOOD	When the most recent semester/term GPA and BYU cumulative GPA are 2.0 or above and the student has NOT been on academic Probation or Suspension.	The student continues to maintain a 2.0 or higher semester/term and BYU cumulative GPA.
PREVIOUS	The same as Good academic standing but indicates a student has previously been on academic Probation or Suspension.	The student continues to maintain a 2.0 or higher semester/term and BYU cumulative GPA. However, the student goes directly to academic Probation if the student has a semester/term GPA below 2.0.
WARNING Includes a registration block.	When the most recent semester/term GPA is below 2.0 and the student was in Good academic standing OR When the most recent semester/term GPA is 2.0 or higher but the BYU cumulative GPA is below 2.0 and the student was on academic Warning.	The student is blocked from registrations beyond the subsequent semester/term until the student **EITHER** submits a complete Academic Improvement Plan to the Academic Support Office by the appropriate deadline **OR** the student earns at least a 2.0 GPA for the subsequent enrollment and has at least a 2.0 cumulative GPA. Students with less than a 2.0 cumulative GPA must submit the Academic Improvement Plan.
PROBATION Includes a registraton block.	When the most recent semester/term GPA is below 2.0 and the student was on academic Warning OR When the most recent semester/term GPA is below 2.0 and the student was in Previous academic standing OR When the most recent semester/term GPA is 2.0 or higher but the BYU cumulative GPA is below 2.0 and the student was on academic Probation.	The student is blocked from registrations beyond the subsequent semester/term until the student **EITHER** submits a complete Academic Improvement Plan to the Academic Support Office by the appropriate deadline **OR** the student earns at least a 2.0 GPA for the subsequent enrollment and has at least a 2.0 cumulative GPA. Students with less than a 2.0 cumulative GPA must submit the Academic Improvement Plan. Students on Probation who earn less than a 2.0 GPA for a semester or term are academically suspended. **Note:** If a student is receiving university or federal financial aid, the student must also contact the Financial

		Aid and Scholarships Office, A-41 ASB, (801) 422-4104. Students on Probation may not be eligible for financial aid.
SUSPENSION	When the most recent semester/term GPA is below 2.0 and the student was on academic Probation OR When a student fails to comply with the conditions prescribed by the Academic Standards Committee.	1. The student is immediately dropped from all enrollments in day, evening, or extension classes (except Independent Study). 2. The student may not enroll in BYU day, evening, or extension classes (except Independent Study) for a minimum of twelve months. During this time the student is expected to resolve all problems leading to the student's academic suspension. After twelve or more months, the student may apply for readmission. If the student completes any college-level work while on Suspension, the student must receive an overall GPA of 3.0 or higher in that course work to be allowed readmission. The student should contact the Admissions Office, D-155 ASB, (801) 422-2507, for details and pertinent information about deadlines and expectations for readmission. 3. A student with extenuating circumstances—who has appropriate support and justification—may appeal the twelve-month period out of BYU through the Academic Standards Committee. The student should contact the Academic Support Office, 2500 WSC, (801) 422-2723, for assistance. No other appeals will be considered.
DISMISSAL	When a student is academically Suspended a second time.	An academically dismissed student may not enroll in day, evening, or extension classes (except Independent Study). After three years a student is eligible to enroll in evening or extension classes. A student may seek an exception to be readmitted as a degree-seeking student after two years by petitioning the Academic Standards Committee.

Note: College advisement centers (CACs) may also set registration blocks on students not progressing toward timely graduation. In such cases, students must also meet with their CAC to have this block removed.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Admissions

Admissions Office
A-153 ASB
(801) 422-2507

All Applicants

General Admissions Policies: Brigham Young University, Brigham Young University—Idaho, Brigham Young University—Hawaii, and LDS Business College exist to provide an education consistent with the religious and family values taught by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. We prefer to admit members of the Church in good standing but will not unlawfully discriminate against applicants based upon gender, race, creed, religion, national origin, age, or disability who meet the requirements; who agree to abide by the Honor Code and Dress and Grooming Standards; and who are otherwise qualified based upon available space.

An applicant who is currently excommunicated or disfellowshipped from, on probation with, or voluntarily disaffiliated from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is generally inadmissable until reinstated to full fellowship. (Undergraduates who desire to appeal based on extenuating circumstances may obtain an application to be excepted from the implementing policy and procedures from the executive director of Student Academic and Advisement Services, B-202 ASB.) Graduate applicants may obtain these from the dean of Graduate Studies, B-380 ASB.

The University Admissions Committee may grant special exceptions to the institution's normal entrance requirements. Individuals desiring to petition an exception should contact the Admissions Counseling Office at (801) 422-2500.

Important Notice: When admission applications reach the maximum number allowed by the BYU Board of Trustees (even if this occurs before the semester or term deadline date), the Admissions Office will only consider applications for the next possible semester or term.

"The Mission of Brigham Young University—founded, supported, and guided by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints—is to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life. That assistance should provide a period of intensive learning in a stimulating setting where a commitment to excellence is expected and the full realization of human potential is pursued."

To this end, the university seeks qualified students of various talents and backgrounds, including geographic, educational, cultural, ethnic, and racial, who relate together in such a manner that they are "no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God" (Ephesians 2:19). It is the university's judgment that providing educational opportunities for a mix of students who share gospel values based on the gospel of Jesus Christ and come from a variety of backgrounds and experiences is an important educational asset to BYU.

Social Security Number: Each applicant is requested to supply BYU with their social security number for identification purposes. The Admissions Office will assign an appropriate identification number to international students and any others not wishing to give their social security number. If students are applying for any kind of financial aid, however, the government will require the Admissions Office to collect their social security number. Numbers may be obtained at the nearest social security office or the local post office.

Full Disclosure: Failure to disclose and submit all documents required for admission, including transcripts from each institution in which the applicant has or is currently enrolled, or any falsification of information required for admission consideration may result in immediate suspension and loss of all credit earned at BYU.

Admissions Status and Academic Standing: Admissions status (admit or deny) and academic standing (good, warning, or probation) will be determined by the Admissions Committee. This review is for all applicants, including former BYU students.

Official Notice of Admissions Committee Action: Applicants will receive electronic notice of the official action taken by the Admissions Committee. (Oral communication does not constitute a valid offer of admission.) Admission can be granted only by the Admissions Office and not by any other BYU department. An official offer of admission is valid only for the semester or term indicated. Students who wish to change the entry date specified in their notice of acceptance must request permission to do so from the Admissions Committee before the designated deadline for the entry date they desire.

Admission Deadlines: All materials must be received by the BYU Admissions Office on or before the deadline date for the semester or term in which the applicant intends to register. These dates are as follows:

Fall Semester

New freshman priority deadline: December 1
New freshman applicants: February 1
Transfer or former applicants: March 1

Winter Semester

All applicants: October 1

Spring Term

New freshman and all international applicants: February 1
Transfer or former applicants: March 1

Summer Term

New freshman priority deadline: December 1
New freshman applicants: February 1
Transfer or former applicants: March 1

International students are encouraged to submit application materials ***at least one month before the deadline dates listed***. This will allow sufficient time for the preparation of visa documents.

Please note: The university president and the University Admissions Committee reserve the right to make exceptions to admission policy and guidelines as deemed appropriate.

New Freshman Applicants—U.S.

Application: The biographical/entry selection information (Parts 1 and 2), ecclesiastical endorsement (Part 3), seminary/institute recommendation (Part 4), high school information and official transcripts from each school attended (Part 5), and activities list and essays (Parts 6 and 7), are required of each applicant. Parts 1, 2, 6, and 7 of the application can be completed using the Internet. Parts 3, 4, and 5 can be downloaded off the Internet. The Web address is www.besmart.com.

Application Fee: A $30 one-time nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. Checks or money orders should be made payable to CES Admissions (do not send cash through the mail).

High School Graduation: Applicants should be graduates of fully accredited high schools. Those who complete their secondary education through the General Education Development Test (GED), home study, home school, or other programs will be reviewed individually by the Admissions Committee to determine admissibility. Additional information (achievement tests, personal interview, etc.) may be required as part of the application process.

High School Preparation: Students are encouraged to complete high school courses from the following list of college-preparation courses. Of particular importance are English and mathematics. Writing and math skills are basic for critical thinking. Students who perform well in these classes enhance their possibility of admission. In addition, those who complete Advanced Placement (AP) or International Baccalaureate (IB) courses will receive additional consideration in admission decisions.

Four years of English: composition, grammar, and courses that encourage "writing to learn."

Four years of mathematics (two or three years beyond algebra 1): geometry, intermediate algebra, precalculus, trigonometry, calculus.

Two years of laboratory science: chemistry, physics, biology, physiology, anatomy, genetics, botany, zoology.

Two years of history or government: U.S. history, U.S. constitution, U.S. government, Civil War, world history, medieval history, ancient history.

Two or more years of foreign language (advanced skill in one language is preferred).

Two years of literature or writing: Shakespeare, classics, mythology, American literature, creative writing.

Courses in computer science and the arts (music, drama, painting, etc.) can also be worthwhile. Students should be careful to take classes with substantial content that challenge them. In today's world typing and computer skills are valuable assets. These skills should be learned in high school or independently.

LDS Seminary: Students are encouraged to participate in LDS Seminary during each year of high school. Brigham Young University is committed to the concept that thoughtful and consistent study of the scriptures is vital to the preparation of those desiring to enter BYU. The number of years of LDS Seminary completed (released time, early morning, or home study) will influence additional consideration in admission decisions.

American College Test (ACT): All new freshman applicants and transfer students who have completed fewer than 30 semester (45 quarter) hours of college credit at the time of application are required to take the ACT. The ACT is administered nationally five times each year (October, December, February, April, and June). Students are encouraged to take the test during the last semester of their junior year in high school. The test should be taken early enough for the results to be in the Admissions Office before the deadline for the semester in which a student intends to enroll. Test results arrive at the university approximately four weeks after the test is given. Applicants must register for the ACT at least one month in advance of the test date. Registration materials can be obtained from most high school or college counseling offices or from the American College Testing Program, PO Box 414, Iowa City, IA 52243, (319) 337-1270 (www.act.org).

Other Considerations for Admission: The Admissions Committee also considers applicants with special talent, exceptional creativity, or other unusual preparation for university study not otherwise revealed in standard admission data (in evaluating these criteria, the Admissions Committee relies on scholarship recommendations from a BYU department as a demonstration of the required talent, creativity, or unusual preparation). The committee uses all application parts in making the evaluation and may also consider such matters as mission, military service, career choices, and personal circumstances.

Students who have completed college work prior to graduating from high school and are applying with or before their high school graduating class will be evaluated as "new freshmen" with regard to admission, scholarship, and registration, regardless of the number of college hours completed.

Early Admission

High school students who would like to be considered for full-time admission to Brigham Young University before high school graduation must:

1. Have a cumulative high school grade point average of 3.7 or higher on all work to date.
2. Achieve a composite ACT score of 27 or higher.
3. Submit a letter of unconditional recommendation for early admission from their high school counselor or principal. This letter must verify the student can no longer benefit from high school attendance since high school courses do not properly challenge and motivate the student. The counselor or principal must also state that the student is academically prepared and has the emotional and social maturity to benefit from attendance at BYU.
4. If under 18, submit a letter of unconditional recommendation for early admission from the applicant's parent or guardian.
5. Complete all application requirements (see application procedures for freshman applicants).

Application deadline dates for early admission are the same as for new freshman applicants.

Home School Applicants

Applicants who have been home schooled in lieu of attending a traditional high school environment must receive a composite ACT score of 27 or higher to be competitive for admission consideration. These individuals must also complete all other application requirements for freshman applicants.

Concurrent Enrollment at BYU

High school students who would like to be considered for admission to Brigham Young University as part-time students while still enrolled in and attending high school must:

1. Have a cumulative high school grade point average of 3.7 or higher on all work to date.
2. Submit a BYU concurrent enrollment voucher signed by the applicant, the parent, and a high school counselor.
3. Have completed at least the junior year of high school.
4. Complete parts 1, 2, and 3 of the admission application.

Concurrent Credit Transfer Policy: Many students are now receiving enriched high school experiences by enrolling concurrently in college courses while completing their high school curricula. BYU will consider these students for freshman admission and scholarships provided the college work is completed prior to high school graduation. This means, for example, that they may receive consideration for BYU-sponsored Heritage Scholarships.

BYU will accept all college credit that appears on an official transcript from a college or university accredited by the regional accrediting commissions or the associations of schools and colleges that together cover institutions chartered and/or licensed in the United States and its possessions, regardless of when or where the work was taken.

Transfer Applicants—U.S.

Application: The biographical/entry selection information (Parts 1 and 2), ecclesiastical endorsement (Part 3), seminary/institute recommendation (Part 4), and an essay (Part 7) are required of each applicant. In addition, official transcripts from each college attended must be submitted. Faxed copies are not accepted. Parts 1, 2, and 7 of the application can be completed using the Internet. Parts 3 and 4 can be downloaded off the Internet. The Web address is www.besmart.com.

Students with fewer than 30 semester hours (45 quarter hours) of transfer credit at the time of application must also submit official high school transcripts (Part 5), an activities list (Part 6), and the results of the American College Test (ACT).

Students who have completed college work prior to graduating from high school will be evaluated as "new freshmen" with regard to admission, scholarship, and registration, regardless of the number of college hours completed.

Application Fee: A $30 one-time nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. Checks or money orders should be made payable to CES Admissions (do not send cash through the mail).

Admissions Criteria: To be most competitive for admission, an applicant should earn a cumulative grade point average and a general education grade point average *above* the B+ range. In addition, the majority of the transfer course work should be general education subjects (English, math, history, science, etc.). It is recommended that students transfer before beginning their junior year of college. Additional consideration may be given to applicants with special talent, exceptional creativity, or other unusual preparation for university study not otherwise revealed in standard admissions data. In evaluating these criteria, the Admissions Committee relies on scholarship recommendations from a BYU department as a demonstration of the required talent, creativity, or unusual preparation. The Admissions Committee may also consider such matters as completing an LDS mission, attending an LDS institute of religion, military service, major selection, and personal circumstances.

Evaluation of Transfer College Credit: All college transcripts will be evaluated to determine admissibility of an applicant even if all or any of that credit is not accepted for transfer.

Factors that can affect the transfer of credit include:

1. The institution is accredited by one of the following regional associations or is an institution sponsored by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.
   Middle States Association of Colleges and Schools
   New England Association of Colleges and Schools
   North Central Association of Colleges and Schools
   Northwest Association of Colleges and Schools
   Southern Association of Colleges and Schools
   Western Association of Colleges and Schools

   Credit from institutions that are candidates for accreditation by one of the associations will be reviewed on a case-by-case basis, but credit is generally not transferable.
2. Military courses are evaluated using the ACE recommendations in the upper-division baccalaureate category from the Guide to the Evaluation of Educational Experiences in the Armed Services.
3. Advanced Placement scores of 3, 4, 5 and IB scores of 5, 6, or 7. Credit will be awarded according to BYU standards.
4. Students transferring to Brigham Young University after having earned an associate of arts and/or sciences degree at another college will, with one exception, have all of their lower-division general education requirements completed by the associate degree. The one exception is the American Heritage requirement, which can be filled by completing specific courses at the transfer college. The Advanced Written and Oral Communication and the Advanced Language/Mathematics requirements, which are considered to be upper-division requirements, may be filled by completing specific courses at other colleges. Students who have questions about the completion of general education courses are invited to contact the BYU Admissions Counseling Office, (801) 422-2500, for further information.
5. Credit earned more than eight years before admission or readmission (including transfer credit) will be accepted to meet general education and university graduation requirements, as well as major requirements at the discretion of the university. Courses should be applicable to BYU general education and university graduation requirements as well as to major requirements. Furthermore, transfer courses with grades below C- will not be used to fill BYU general education requirements and in most instances will not fill major requirements.

The BYU Admissions Office will determine the transferability of undergraduate credit to BYU. An electronic evaluation of transfer credits is made available to each student by the Admissions Office through the AIM system soon after the student is accepted for admission. The evaluation indicates which classes have transferred and will fill general education and university graduation requirements as well as major requirements.

Former Student Applicants

Students who interrupt their studies without processing a deferment form with the BYU Admissions Office must reapply for admission.

Application: The biographical information (Parts 1 and 2) and ecclesiastical endorsement (Part 3) are required of each applicant.

Transcript: Official transcripts from each school attended since the student's last enrollment at BYU must be provided and identified. Students will be evaluated for readmission based on their post-BYU transfer GPA (must be 3.0 or higher) and their BYU academic standing.

Transfer classes will be evaluated on a course-by-course basis. The course must be substantially equivalent to a BYU course, with a grade of C– or higher, to apply toward appropriate university or major graduation requirements.

Clearance: All holds (i.e., financial, Honor Code) placed on the student's record by BYU must be cleared before the deadline for the application to be considered. Additionally, the student must reimburse BYU for any fees incurred to collect the student's past debts.

Note: International students must also provide proof of current finances.

Deferment

One Semester

BYU day students can interrupt their studies for one semester (fall or winter) by submitting a Continuing Student Enrollment and Scholarship Deferment Application. These forms are available online and at the BYU Admissions Office. Most fall/winter scholarships will be deferred to another semester or term(s) within the same academic year. Students planning to return to BYU in a different academic year must reapply for scholarships prior to established deadlines. Spring/Summer scholarships cannot be deferred.

LDS Missionary

Students wanting to serve an LDS mission can defer their admission status by submitting an LDS Mission Deferment form soon after the mission call has been received. Any unused portion of a university-awarded scholarship will also be deferred as long as all deferment requirements have been met.

Individuals who return home prior to completion of a full-term mission lose their admission and scholarship deferment and may not immediately be admissible to BYU. In most cases there will be a period of six months between the time an individual returns and the time to be eligible to apply for admission and scholarship consideration. This period of time is provided to give the individual sufficient opportunity, before returning to the rigors of academic life, to address the issues or concerns that were the cause of the early mission release.

Missionaries who come home early due to medical circumstances and who receive an honorable release can apply for readmission prior to the six months requirement by providing a letter of recommendation from the attending professional (doctor, psychiatrist, etc.) regarding the applicant's readiness for the rigors of academic life.

To reapply the student must complete Parts 1, 2, and 3 of the application for admission.

International Student Applicants

Admissions Considerations: Criteria used by the university Admissions Committee to evaluate international students' admission to Brigham Young University are:

1. Academic performance
2. Level of education completed
3. TOEFL test results
4. ACT or SAT test scores (needed if student has three or more years of high school in U.S. or Canada)
5. Ability to finance desired education

   Note: Students are advised to obtain copies of the affidavit and bank statements from the sponsor for personal records and visa application.

6. Ecclesiastical endorsement

In addition to the above, factors considered in granting admission to international transfer students are the grades or marks of all previous university and college work. If the applicant has less than one year's work at a university, secondary school marks will also be reviewed.

An entering freshman student must send official documents showing all secondary school marks and a final diploma. An official English translation of the documents is also required.

Application: The biographical/entry selection information (Parts 1 and 2), ecclesiastical endorsement (Part 3), seminary/institute recommendation (Part 4), activities list and essays (Parts 6 and 7), financial information (Part 8), official transcripts, and financial information are required of each applicant. Parts 1, 2, 6, 7, and 8A of the application can be completed using the Internet. Parts 3, 4, 5, and 8B can be downloaded off the Internet. The Web address is www.besmart.com. TOEFL test results are required for nonnative English speakers, including U.S. citizens and permanent residents.

Application Fee: A $30 one-time nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. This fee cannot be waived. Checks or money orders (U.S. funds drawn on U.S. banks) should be made payable to CES Admissions (do not send cash through the mail).

American College Test (ACT) or Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) Scores: The results of these tests must be sent as part of the application materials. Test information can be obtained by writing to:

American College Test Information
PO Box 414
Iowa City, IA USA 52243

(319) 337-1270

or

Scholastic Aptitude Test
Educational Testing Service
Princeton, NJ USA 08540
(212) 713-8000

English: All nonnative English-speaking applicants must send official results of the TOEFL exam to BYU. Applicants need to have a total (computer) TOEFL score of 173 or higher, with no section score below 17. Paper-based test scores require a total score of 550 or higher, with no section score below 55. Those who take the Internet-based test (iBT) should earn an overall score of 66 with a minimum score of 17 on the Reading and Writing sections, and a minimum score of 16 on the Listening and Speaking sections. Tests must be on official international test dates. Institutional tests are not acceptable.

Bilingual students who are admitted to BYU must take an English diagnostic examination during the orientation period. Based on the results of the test, a student may be required to register for one or more specific English courses, designed to improve areas of low proficiency.

Registration and Completion Requirements: All international students in attendance must register for and complete at least 12 hours of daytime credit per semester (6 hours per term).

Official University Visa Policy: Applicants entering the United States on a B visa are ineligible to attend Brigham Young University. Students should not attempt to enter the United States to attend BYU as a full-time student without presenting a Form I-20 from BYU (Certificate of Eligibility), a valid passport, and a valid F-1 visa. Maintaining visa status is the responsibility of the student.

Note: All international students must report to International Services, 1351 WSC, (801) 422-2695, within one week after arrival on campus.

Post-Baccalaureate Studies (PBS) Applicants

The Post-Baccalaureate Studies (PBS) Program is designed to assist an applicant on the path toward a graduate degree or professional certification. Applicants for PBS must have earned a baccalaureate degree.

Those interested in attending BYU as a post-baccalaureate student should have at least a 3.0 (B) grade point average; complete Parts 1, 2, and 3 of the undergraduate application; and attach a statement explaining their purpose in seeking enrollment and the courses to be taken.

Registration for courses will be on a space-available basis. Students may not attend for more than one academic year and must enroll for fewer than 12 hours per semester unless a waiver is granted by the University Admissions Committee.

Note: International students (unless permanent residents of the United States) cannot attend BYU as PBS students.

Second Degree (Second Major/Additional Major)

Students who have already received a baccalaureate degree or higher from any institution, including BYU, are not eligible for admissions consideration to pursue another baccalaureate degree or major.

Spring/Summer Visiting Student Program

This program is open specifically to high school graduates who will be actively pursuing a degree at another college or university. Non-BYU students who want the opportunity to be part of the university's community on a limited basis will need to fill out an admission application. Admission and enrollment in the Spring/Summer Visiting Student Program does not in any way imply continued enrollment at BYU beyond summer term. Students wanting to pursue a degree at BYU must submit an application for undergraduate admission and meet the admissions criteria in effect at the time of application.

Applicants for the visiting student program should complete Parts 1, 2, and 3 of the undergraduate application, pay a $30 application fee (if not previously paid), and submit an ACT score and high school/college transcripts. Students who have completed 30 semester hours/45 quarter hours of college credit need only provide college transcripts. It is recommended that applicants have academics approaching an ACT score of 18 or higher and a GPA of 2.50 or higher.

Advanced Placement (AP) Credit

Students who complete a full year of an AP subject and score 3 or higher on the AP test will receive a minimum 6 semester hours of college credit in that subject. Students completing a half year of an AP subject with a score of 3 or higher on the AP test will receive a minimum 3 semester hours of credit in that subject. AP credit posted to another institution's transcript is reevaluated based on BYU's standard. Most AP subjects fill a BYU general education graduation requirement and in some instances fill graduation requirements in the major.

International Baccalaureate (IB) Credit

Students who complete the International Baccalaureate examinations may receive college credit. An IB course at the subsidiary level will normally be given 3 hours of general credit. An IB course completed at the higher level may receive 6 hours of general credit and possibly fill a general education

requirement. The

College Level Examination Program (CLEP) Credit

BYU discontinued giving credit for general exams in 2000. Additionally, BYU does not give credit for subject exams. CLEP credit posted to another institution's transcript is reevaluated based on BYU's standard.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Advisement Resources

BYU undergraduates should develop competence in at least one area of concentration. Competence generally demands study in depth. Such in-depth study helps prepare students for their life's work; it also teaches them that genuine understanding for any subject requires exploring it fully. Students normally acquire such depth from their major and minor fields. (The Aims of a BYU Education)

In addition to completing the university core, each student must choose a specialized area of study—a major. Requirements vary considerably from major to major, but all majors share in common a sequential development from introductory foundation courses to those that expect increasingly greater depth and sophistication. As the aims indicate, "By the time they graduate, students should grasp their discipline's essential knowledge and skills . . . , and many should have participated in scholarly or creative activities that let them demonstrate their mastery." Within this sequential development, prerequisites —whether within or outside the major department—help prepare students for subsequent, more focused work in the major. Some majors also require allied course work in related fields outside the major proper.

Aptitudes, Interests, and Objectives

Success in a major depends upon the right combination of interests, skills, effort, and aptitudes. Students who choose a major only because of its job possibilities and fail to consider their own interests and aptitudes will probably be disappointed. Some majors, particularly those in professional programs (e.g., accounting) lead directly to employment in a particular field; others (e.g., philosophy) provide a rich liberal arts preparation for subsequent graduate study or professional programs (e.g., law) but may not track as directly into employment in the field of the major. Liberal arts majors do open up a great variety of employment opportunities, but students majoring in such fields need to be more conscious of exploring such opportunities over the course of the major.

Flexibility and Adaptability

The only things that can be counted on in the future are change and a continued knowledge explosion. Some futurists have estimated that today's high school graduates will be in five to seven different careers during their lifetime. Flexibility and adaptability, learning how to learn, and learning to think carefully and critically are the aims of a strong liberal arts education.

For some careers a degree in a particular major is not required. Employers respond favorably to applicants who have developed analytical skills, who have the ability to reason abstractly, and who have learned to communicate precisely and effectively.

Choosing a Major

Although some students may change their major several times before arriving at a "good fit," bouncing from major to major can prove to be costly in both time and money. Careful and thoughtful consideration before choosing a major will reduce the time to graduation and help make the most of the time at BYU. Major requirements and course descriptions can be found by using the QuickSearch feature or by using the list of majors. Students may find some combination of the following action steps useful in selecting a major:

1. **Review catalog information pertaining to undergraduate majors.** A list of majors can be found in the Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University section of this catalog. Detailed information on each major is included in the respective Academic Departments/Schools/Areas, Degrees, and Courses section of the catalog.

2. **Meet as often as needed with an open major advisor in the University Advisement Center (UAC).** Open major advisors are available to help students choose a major or career path. Contact them at 2500 WSC, (801) 422-3826, or e-mail to university_advisement@byu.edu. You can also access their Web page at http://www.ccc.byu.edu/uac/openadv.php.

3. **Choose university core requirements carefully.** Once a major is chosen, a college advisement center can help in

the selection of classes that both satisfy university core requirements and expose students to the core subject matter of a major or career: http://saas.byu.edu/classschedule/policy/fall/univcore.html.

4. **Enroll in a career exploration course or career workshop.** Student Development (StDev) 117, Career Exploration, is a 2-credit course designed to help students choose a major and a career path. In addition, workshops on this subject are available in the Career and Learning Information Center (2590 WSC). These workshops last for one hour and are free of charge. Juniors and seniors may want to take StDev 317, Career Transitions, a 1-credit hour course designed to help upper-division students focus on career placement and take final steps into the workforce. This course is offered only on the block at http://ccc.byu.edu/stdev/courses.php.

5. **Visit the Career Learning Information Center (CLIC).** The CLIC (2590 WSC) has hundreds of printed and electronic resources designed to help students educate themselves about majors and career options so that they can make informed decisions. Discover, a Web-based self-assessment and career exploration program, and the book *From Major to Career,* which contains many tips for turning academic majors into careers, are available in the CLIC. Both of these tools, along with several others, are also available on the Web at http://www.byu.edu/ccc/clic.

6. **Complete a career interest inventory.** The University Advisement Center (2500 WSC) administers career interest inventories that help students match their interests with a major or career. There is a small fee for these tests.

7. **Learn, firsthand, about potential careers.** Part-time work, summer employment, internships, and volunteer work provide useful opportunities for students to collect information about what a specific career entails and to make contacts that will help them further their career goals. In addition, students might ask relatives or friends doing the kind of work they are interested in if they can be their "shadow" for a day, or perhaps longer. Alternatively, students might interview individuals in these positions, asking them about their work, the associated academic prerequisites, and so forth. For more information, go online to http://www.ccc.byu.edu/majortocareer/book.pdf#pagemode=bookmarks.

8. **Take introductory or seminar courses for majors/careers being considered.** BYU offers seminar courses for pre-medicine, pre-dentistry, pre-optometry, pre-law, and many of the engineering majors. There are other introductory courses such as Introduction to the English Major (Engl 195), Historian's Craft (Hist 200), and Introduction to International Studies (IAS 100) that may be helpful. Information on these courses is available through college advisement centers.

9. **Pursue multiple options.** When trying to choose between two majors, take courses that will fill major and minor requirements for both. When deciding which of the two will be the major, the other choice can possibly become a minor.

10. **Seek advice from the faculty.** Faculty members who teach and mentor in a particular major understand the purposes of the major program, its array of courses, and the opportunities available to those who complete it. Students should identify an appropriate member of the faculty and ask for assistance, which will often require an appointment.

11. **Make a firm commitment.** Pursuing a major with a firm commitment to go beyond its requirements will bring satisfaction and ensure future opportunities. Tentative or half-hearted completion of minimum requirements of any major will lead only to discouragement and detachment. Students are encouraged to choose carefully, trust their choice, and diligently pursue their studies in the major.

12. **Learn about deadlines, prerequisites, and application requirements for limited-enrollment programs.** Some majors have limited enrollment and only accept students by application. Limited-enrollment programs are identified with an asterisk (*) in the list of majors referred to in step 1. Students should become familiar with the prerequisite courses required for limited-enrollment majors several semesters before they plan to apply. When applying to limited-enrollment programs, students should have a backup plan in case they are not accepted. Advisors in the University Advisement Center can help develop alternative academic plans for reaching a given career objective.

Choosing a Minor

A minor offers students the opportunity to increase their breadth of expertise by exploring an area of study in depth but not to the same degree as in a major. Some majors require students to complete a minor from a specified set of options, but for most students a minor is optional. Students who elect to complete a minor often choose fields related to the major. Others may choose a minor in an area in which they have expertise or interest. In most cases, the minor would be chosen from a different department than the major.

Courses used to satisfy the requirements of a student's major may also be used to satisfy the requirements of a minor, unless the minor's requirements place restrictions on the double counting of courses. A list of minors can be found at: http://saas.byu.edu/catalog/2008-2009ucat/Advisement/MinorList.php.

Academic Advisement

The university provides a number of resources to assist students with careful and thoughtful academic and career planning while at BYU. It is expected that students will partner with the university by taking full advantage of these available resources and opportunities to enhance their chances of a successful academic experience.

The university is committed to providing students with access to academic advisors who will:

- Stay abreast of major and university requirements, and the corresponding academic resources
- Assist students by making appropriate recommendations for registration
- Help students in their pursuit of an appropriate major and career
- Aid students in planning an education program consistent with their academic progress
- Offer friendly, attentive, informative service, listening to the student's situation before offering a solution

Students will be successful as they:

- Prepare for and keep appointments with their college advisement center (CAC) advisor; preferably at least once a calendar year
- Establish and follow an academic plan for graduation
- Use university resources such as MyMap, Major Academic Plans (MAPs), Academic Information Management (AIM), and the progress report
- Become familiar with their basic academic program and requirements
- Review personal academic progress each semester

The key components to advisement are:

- MyMAP (available on Route Y through the BYU homepage; your net ID and PIN are necessary for access)
- Major MAPs (available on the web at: http://saas.byu.edu/depts/advisement/MAP.aspx and at college and university advisement centers.

AIM

The Academic Information Management (AIM) system provides students with easy access to information on their academic progress and other vital information. In AIM, students can change their addresses and phone numbers, access their class schedules, determine course availabilities and instructor schedules, monitor their progress reports, look at their grades and BYU credit, make PIN changes, check on transfer and AP credit, and conduct personal registration procedures.

MyMAP

In the new MyMAP feature in AIM, students will be able to plan their academic course of study for the entire time they're at BYU. By using their progress report, on the *Build* page, students can plan which classes they want to take to meet certain requirements. The *Organize* page will provide students with the capability of mapping their courses semester by semester. Their academic plan can then be viewed on the *Register* page as the student registers for classes. Easy access to course descriptions can be found on any MyMAP page by simply clicking on the course title.

Progress Reports

Progress Reports were created to provide students with accurate academic progress information. Students can access their progress report in the AIM system (through *Advisement, Registration, Student Academic Record* or *MyMAP*). In the new MyMAP feature in AIM, students can actually use their progress report (on the *Build* page) as a tool to plan their academic course of study.

MAP

This supplement to the BYU Undergraduate Catalog is also a valuable academic resource for students as they plan and prepare their academic schedules. The MAP includes information regarding university core and major requirements, semester-by-semester recommendations for course selection, and course availability. Please see the following Web site for more information: http://saas.byu.edu/advisement/maps/map08-09.php.

College Advisement Centers (CACs)

CACs exist in every academic college. At these centers, students receive personal assistance in meeting their educational goals as quickly as possible. Students should contact their advisement centers at least once a calendar year.

David O. McKay School of Education, 120 MCKB, Provo, UT 84602-5096, (801) 422-3426, email: eac@byu.edu

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology, 264 CB, Provo, UT 84602-4101, (801) 422-4325, email: engineering_advisement@byu.edu

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences, 151 SWKT, Provo, UT 84602-5535, (801) 422-3541, email: fhssadvisement@byu.edu

College of Fine Arts and Communications, D-444 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6333, (801) 422-3777, email: advisement_secretary@byu.edu

College of Health and Human Performance, 203 RB, Provo, UT 84602-2113, (801) 422-3638, email: hhp_cac@byu.edu

College of Humanities, 1175 JFSB, Provo, UT 84602-6120, (801) 422-4789, email: humanities-advisement@email.byu.edu

International and Area Studies, 273 HRCB, Provo, UT 84602-4526, (801) 422-3548, email: kennedy_advisement@byu.edu

College of Life Sciences (formerly Biology and Agriculture), 380 WIDB, Provo, UT 84602-5189, (801) 422-3042, email: lifesciences@byu.edu

Marriott School of Management, 460 TNRB, Provo, UT 84602-3113, (801) 422-4285, email: msm_advisement@byu.edu

College of Nursing, 551 SWKT, Provo, UT 84602-5544, (801) 422-4173, email: nursing_advisement@byu.edu

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences, N-170 ESC, Provo, UT 84602-5096, (801) 422-6270, email: pmsad@cs.byu.edu

University Advisement Center

2500 WSC
(801) 422-3826
E-mail: university_advisement@byu.edu
Web: http://ccc.byu.edu/uac/openadv.php

The University Advisement Center provides academic advising and career counseling to students seeking information on how to choose majors or careers. **Services include:** general academic advisement, advisement on how to choose a major or career, graduate school advisement, career interest testing, and information and referral to appropriate university resources. The center serves as the college advisement center for open major students, but all students are welcome to use its services and resources for assistance in making informed and appropriate decisions about majors or careers. Advisement to special populations, including Summer Visiting Students, international students, and students in transition, is also provided.

Honors Advisement Center

102A MSRB
(801) 422-5497
E-mail: honors@byu.edu
Web: http://www.byu.edu/honors/

Honors education is open to all students who choose to participate. Students who intend to graduate with University Honors should consult with an advisor in the Honors Advisement Center (102A Maeser Building) for assistance with choosing honors courses and understanding honors graduation requirements.

Career Counseling

2500 WSC
(801) 422-3826
E-mail: university_advisement@byu.edu
Web: http://ccc.byu.edu/uac/index.php

Career counseling is offered to all students who need help choosing a career direction. Students can meet with a university advisor who can assist with career assessment and exploration, information-gathering strategies, and decision-making needs.

Preprofessional Advisement Center

3328 WSC
(801) 422-3044

The Preprofessional Advisement Center serves students preparing to apply to professional graduate programs, specifically law, health (medical, dental, etc.), and graduate management (MBA, MPA, etc.). For those students who are interested in such professional graduate programs, the center offers individual counseling, admissions advice, and courses to help students explore these fields and prepare for the study and practice of the student's chosen field. The center is open to freshmen through seniors from any major.

Veterinary Medicine

Dr. Beverly L. Roeder (386 WIDB, [801] 422-6873), Advisor

Competition for freshman class spaces in veterinary school is keen, and students should expect to achieve above a 3.5 GPA. Many successful applicants have completed the bachelor's degree. Because course requirements differ with individual veterinary schools, students should familiarize themselves with entrance requirements for the schools to which they will apply.

Course work typically includes the following: English, two semesters; mathematics, one semester; chemistry, five semesters;

microbiology with lab, one semester; biology, three semesters; physics, two semesters with lab; humanities, three semesters; social science, three semesters; and statistics, one semester. It is also important to have experience working with veterinarians and with animals.

Students are encouraged to incorporate the preveterinary curriculum into an academic program leading to a career alternative.

Academic Support

2500 WSC
(801) 422-2723
E-mail: academic_support@byu.edu
Web: http://ccc.byu.edu/academic/

Academic counseling is available for students who are experiencing difficulty with their studies. This counseling includes help in working through and overcoming obstacles to successful academic performance. Information about the university's academic standards, a student's academic standing, or help with learning problems is available at this office as well. (See also Academic Standards in this catalog.)

Additional Advisement Resources: Counseling and Career Center

The Counseling and Career Center offers advisement services to students who need help becoming a successful student, choosing a major or career, or considering options for graduate school. Services include the following: (1) general academic advisement, (2) academic standing advisement for students on academic warning, probation, or suspension, (3) advisement on study and learning skills, (4) advisement on choosing a major or a career, (5) graduate school advisement, and (6) workshops on career and learning skills.

Workshops

2590 WSC
(801) 422-2689
E-mail: workshops@byu.edu
Web: http://www.byu.edu/ccc/clic/workshops.php

Fifty-minute workshops designed to assist students with personal development, study skills, and career decision making are offered each day that BYU classes are in session. Topics include time management, communication, graduate school exploration, choosing a major, testing preparation, listening, and note taking. Printed self-help materials used in the workshops are also available.

Courses for Credit

2500 WSC
(801) 422-4007
Web: http://www.byu.edu/stlife/cdc/stdev/courses.php

Students in various areas of student development can receive credit for courses dealing with college study skills, life planning and decision making, career exploration, and job seeking listed under Student Development (StDev) in the class schedule. See also the Student Development section of this catalog for course numbers and descriptions.

Career and Learning Information Center

2590 WSC
(801) 422-2689
E-mail: clic@byu.edu
Web: http://www.byu.edu/ccc/clic

The Career and Learning Information Center (CLIC) is a resource area designed to assist students with a variety of career and/or learning concerns. Printed and electronic resources, personnel, and workshops are available to help students make informed decisions about majors, careers, and graduate school options. In addition, the CLIC offers workshops, materials, and assistance to students who desire to improve their learning skills so that they can be more successful academically.

Testing Services

2590 WSC
(801) 422-2689
E-mail: careertests@byu.edu
Web: http://ccc.byu.edu/clic/testingServices.php

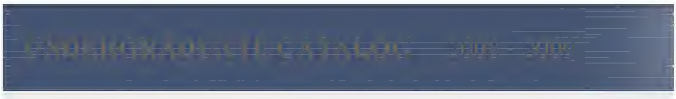
Printed and electronic inventories are available to assess career interests, abilities, and values so that students can more accurately determine suitable career options for themselves. After completing an inventory a student will meet with an advisor who will interpret the results and guide the student toward additional resources so that they can research careers. Although modest fees are charged for most tests, there are no-fee assessments available.

Career Services

2410 WSC
(801) 422-3000
Fax: (801) 422-3444
Web: http://ccc.byu.edu/placement/

Career Services assists BYU students and alumni from all colleges, departments, majors, and class standings with job and internship preparation and searches. Students who register at http://byu.erecruiting.com gain access to such services as advisement on job and internship search strategies, on-campus interviews with recruiters, and information about specific job and internship opportunities submitted by employers from business, education, and government. A system (eRecruiting.com) is available that allows students to register, research employers search job postings, submit résumés to employers, schedule interviews, and check interview schedules.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508



Undergraduate Majors

Academic Programs and Degrees Offered	Departments/Schools/Centers	Colleges/Schools/ Divisions/Centers
Programs marked with an asterisk are limited-enrollment programs with special admission requirements that must be met before a student is admitted. See an appropriate advisement center for more information.		
Accounting*—BS	School of Accountancy	Marriott School of Management
Acting*—BFA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Actuarial Science—BS	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
American Studies—BA		Humanities
Ancient Near Eastern Studies—BA	International and Area Studies	
Animation*—BFA	Visual Arts Theatre and Media Arts School of Technology	Fine Arts and Communications; Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Anthropology—BA	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Emphases: Archaeology Sociocultural		
Anthropology (sociocultural double major)—BA	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Art Education (K–12)*—BA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art History and Curatorial Studies—BA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Asian Studies—BA	International and Area Studies	
Athletic Training—BS	Exercise Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Biochemistry—BS	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Bioinformatics—BS	Biology	Life Sciences
Biological Science Education—BS	Biology	Life Sciences
Biology—BS	Biology	Life Sciences
Biophysics—BS	Physiology and Developmental Biology	Life Sciences
Chemical Engineering—BS	Chemical Engineering	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Chemistry—BA	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chemistry—BS	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical

		Sciences
Chemistry Education—BS	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chinese—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Civil Engineering—BS	Civil and Environmental Engineering	Ira A Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Classical Studies—BA Emphases: Classical Civilization Classics Greek Latin	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Clinical Laboratory Science*—BS	Microbiology and Molecular Biology	Life Sciences
Communication Disorders—BS	Communication Disorders	David O. McKay School of Education
Communications—BA Emphases: Advertising* Broadcast Journalism* Communications Studies* Print Journalism* Public Relations*	Communications	Fine Arts and Communications
Comparative Literature—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Computer Engineering—BS	Electrical and Computer Engineering	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Computer Science—BS Optional emphases: Animation Bioinformatics	Computer Science	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Conservation Biology—BS	Biology	Life Sciences
Construction Management*—BS	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Dance*—BA	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Dance Education*—BA	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Dietetics*—BS	Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science	Life Sciences
Early Childhood Education*—BS	Teacher Education	David O.McKay School of Education
Earth and Space Science Education—BS	Geological Sciences	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Economics—BA	Economics	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Economics—BS	Economics	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Electrical Engineering—BS	Electrical and Computer Engineering	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Elementary Education*—BS Optional emphasis: Early Childhood Education*	Teacher Education	David O. McKay School of Education
English—BA	English	Humanities
English Language—BA	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities

English Teaching*—BA	English	Humanities
Environmental Science—BS	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences
European Studies—BA	International and Area Studies	
Exercise and Wellness—BS	Exercise Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Exercise Science—BS	Exercise Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Facility and Property Management*—BS	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Family and Consumer Sciences Education—BS	School of Family Life	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Family History–Genealogy—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Family Life—BS	School of Family Life	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Emphases: Home and Family Living Human Development Marriage and Family Studies		
Food Science—BS	Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science	Life Sciences
French Studies—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
French Teaching—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
General Studies*—BGS	Bachelor of General Studies	Division of Continuing Education
Emphases: American Studies* English & American Literature* Family History* Family Life* History* Management* Psychology* Writing*		
Genetics and Biotechnology—BS	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences
Geographic Information Systems—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Emphases: Environmental Studies Geographic Information Systems Geospatial Intelligence Global Studies Tourism Studies Urban & Environmental Planning		
Geology—BS	Geological Sciences	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Optional emphasis: Environmental Geology		
German—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Emphases: Linguistics Literature		
German Studies—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
German Teaching—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Graphic Design*—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and

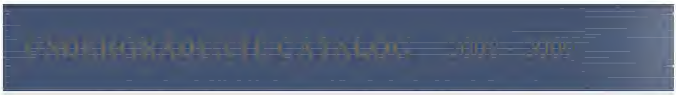
		Communications
History—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
History Teaching—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Humanities—BA Emphases: Art History Classical Studies Comparative Literature English Foreign Literature History Media Arts (Film) Philosophy	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Illustration*—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Industrial Design*—BFA	School of Technology	Engineering and Technology
Information Systems*—BS	Information Systems	Marriott School of Management
Information Technology—BS	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
International Relations—BA	International and Area Studies	
Italian—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
Japanese—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Jazz Studies*—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Korean—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Landscape Management—BS	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences
Latin American Studies—BA	International and Area Studies	
Latin Teaching—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Linguistics—BA	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
Management—BS Emphases: General Business* Entrepreneurship* Finance* Global Supply Chain Management* Marketing Management* Organizational Behavior/HR* Strategy*	Marriott School of Management	Marriott School of Management
Manufacturing Engineering Technology—BS	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Mathematics—BS	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Mathematics Education—BS	Mathematics Education	Physical and Mathematical

		Sciences
Mechanical Engineering*—BS	Mechanical Engineering	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Media Arts Studies*—BA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Media Music Studies*—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Microbiology—BS	Microbiology and Molecular Biology	Life Sciences
Middle East Studies/Arabic—BA	International and Area Studies	
Molecular Biology—BS	Microbiology and Molecular Biology	Life Sciences
Music*—BA	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Music Composition*—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Music Dance Theatre*—BFA	Music Dance Theatre Program	Fine Arts and Communications Health and Human Performance
Music Education*—BM Emphases: K–12 Choral* K–12 Instrumental* Elementary Music Specialist*	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Music Performance*—BM Emphases: Brass* Combined Piano and Organ* Organ* Percussion* Piano* String* Vocal* Woodwind*	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Neuroscience*—BS	Neuroscience Center	Family, Home, and Social Sciences; Life Sciences
Nursing*—BS	Nursing	Nursing
Nutritional Science—BS	Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science	Life Sciences
Philosophy—BA	Philosophy	Humanities
Photography*—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12)*—BS	Exercise Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Teaching Physical Science—BS	Physical Science Program	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics, Applied—BS Emphases: Computer Science Selected Options	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics-Astronomy—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics Teaching—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical

		Sciences
Physiology and Developmental Biology—BS	Physiology and Developmental Biology	Life Sciences
Political Science—BA	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Portuguese—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Psychology—BS	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Public Health—BS	Health Science	Health and Human Performance
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership—BS Emphases: Leisure Services Management Therapeutic Recreation	Recreation Management and Youth Leadership	Health and Human Performance
Russian—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
School Health Education—BS	Health Science	Health and Human Performance
Social Science Teaching*—BS	Teacher Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Sociology—BS	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Sound Recording Technology*—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Spanish—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Teaching*—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Translation*—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Special Education*—BS Emphases: Mild/Moderate Disabilities* Severe Disabilities*	Counseling Psychology and Special Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Statistics—BS Emphases: Applied Statistics & Analytics Biostatistics Quality Science Statistical Science	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Studio Arts*—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Technology and Engineering Education*—BS	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Theatre Arts Education—BA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Theatre Arts Studies—BA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Visual Arts*—BA Emphases: Graphic Design Illustration	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications

	Photography Studio Arts	
Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation—BS	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508



Undergraduate Minors

Minors Offered	Departments/Schools/Centers	Colleges/Schools/ Divisions/Centers
Programs marked with an asterisk are limited-enrollment programs with special admission requirements that must be met before a student is admitted. See an appropriate advisement center for more information.		
Actuarial Science	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Advertising Design*	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Aerospace Studies	Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)	Marriott School of Management
African Studies	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Ancient Near Eastern Studies	International and Area Studies	
Anthropology	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Arabic	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Art Education*	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art History and Curatorial Studies	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Asian Studies	International and Area Studies	
Astronomy	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
*Ballroom Dance	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Chemistry	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chemistry Education	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chinese	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Chinese Teaching	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Classical Studies Options: Classics, Greek, Latin	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Coaching & Teaching Physical Education	Exercise Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Communication Disorders	Communication Disorders	David O. McKay School of Education
Communications	Communications	Fine Arts and Communications
Computer Science	Computer Science	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Computer Science Teaching	Computer Science	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Driver Safety Education	Health Science	Health and Human Performance
Economics	Economics	Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Editing	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
English	English	Humanities
English Teaching	English	Humanities
Environmental Science	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences
Family History—Genealogy	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Family Life	School of Family Life	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
French	French and Italian	Humanities
French Teaching	French and Italian	Humanities
Geographic Information Systems	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography Teaching	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geology	Geological Sciences	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Geology Teaching	Geological Sciences	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
German	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
German Teaching	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Gerontology	School of Family Life	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Health Education	Health Science	Health and Human Performance
Hebrew	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
History	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
History Teaching	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Humanities	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Humanities Computing	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
Information Technology	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
International Development	International and Area Studies	
Italian	French and Italian	Humanities
Japanese	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Japanese Teaching	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Korean	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Landscape Management	Plant and Wildlife Sciences	Life Sciences
Latin American Studies	International and Area Studies	
Latin Teaching	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Linguistics	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
Linguistics Computing	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
Logic	Philosophy	Humanities

Management	Marriott School of Management	Marriott School of Management
Manufacturing	School of Technology	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
Mathematics	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Mathematics Education	Mathematics Education	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Media Arts Studies*	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Microbiology	Microbiology and Molecular Biology	Life Sciences
Middle East Studies	International and Area Studies	
Military Science	Military Science (Army ROTC)	Marriott School of Management
Modern Dance*	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Molecular Biology	Microbiology and Molecular Biology	Life Sciences
Music	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Native American Studies	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Nonprofit Management	Recreation Management and Youth Leadership	Health and Human Performance
Nutrition	Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science	Life Sciences
Philosophy	Philosophy	Humanities
Physics	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics Teaching	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Political Science	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Political Science Teaching	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Portuguese	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Psychology	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Psychology Teaching	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Russian	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Russian Teaching	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Scandinavian Studies	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Sociology	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Spanish	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Teaching	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Statistics	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Strategy	Marriott School of Management	Marriott School of Management
TESOL	Linguistics and English Language	Humanities
TESOL K–12	Teaching English Language Learners Program	David O. McKay School of Education
Theatre and Media Arts Design*	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Theatre Arts Education	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Theatre Arts Studies	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Travel and Tourism Studies	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Urban, Rural, & Environmental Planning	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Visual Arts*	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Western American Studies		Humanities
Women's Studies	Women's Research Institute	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
World Dance*	Dance	Health and Human Performance

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Discontinuance

Discontinuance Office
B-150 ASB
(801) 422-7705

To withdraw from the university, day students who have registered for classes and paid tuition must officially discontinue to initiate a tuition refund. (Refer to the Tuition and Fees section of this catalog for refund information.)

The discontinuance process includes the following:

1. Before the add deadline students may use the AIM registration system through Route Y.
2. After the add deadline consult with the Discontinuance Office representative and complete discontinuance forms available from the Discontinuance Office or http://discontinuance.byu.edu/.
3. If discontinuing during or after the sixth week of the semester (or third week of the term or block), obtain signatures of individual class instructors (student is now responsible for grades earned in class). The instructor will indicate an official withdrawal (W) or an academically failing (WE) withdrawal grade.
4. Submit discontinuance forms and be signed out by a Discontinuance Office representative.
5. Discontinuance on or after the first day of class will result in a withdraw date posted on the student's transcript. The withdraw date coincides with the date the student discontinues.

Discontinuance from a fall or winter semester or from the term to which you are newly admitted could forfeit your eligibility to attend future semesters without reapplying through the Admissions Office. All undergraduate students who discontinue during a major semester (fall or winter) or during the term for which they were accepted, should contact the discontinuance counselor at (801) 422-7705 about future readmission eligibility and deferment options.

To withdraw after the twelfth week of the semester (or fifth week of a block or term), students must file a petition with the Registration/Records petition secretary (B-150 ASB) rather than contacting the Discontinuance Office.

Those students registered as Evening Classes students only must discontinue through the Office of Evening Classes, 120 HCEB. Law School students must initiate their discontinuance through the office of the Law School dean, 348-A JRCB.

Students who leave the university under emergency conditions and subsequently do not return still have the responsibility to discontinue before the discontinuance deadline. Official termination can be completed by contacting the Discontinuance Office at the earliest possible time.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Scholarships and Financial Aid

Financial Aid and Scholarship Office
A-41 ASB
(801) 422-4104

Over the past decade the cost of obtaining an excellent university education has increased considerably. As a result, many students and their families have found it difficult to obtain the funds to pursue an education. The university is sensitive to this situation and to those students who are hard-pressed to finance their studies. Major changes have been made by the university to improve the delivery system through which students can receive financial aid. There is a firm commitment to assist those who truly need the resources to further their studies.

Financial aid at BYU comes from various federal, state, and university programs in the form of loans, scholarships, and grants. The Financial Aid and Scholarship Office coordinates these financial aid programs and assists students in identifying the financial resources for which they might qualify. Because the number of students applying for financial assistance usually exceeds the funds available through university and federal programs, the distribution of financial aid at BYU is based on an assessment of the student and family's financial need. There are some exceptions to need-based awarding, e.g., BYU academic scholarships, performance and talent and athletic awards, and BYU short-term loans.

The process of determining a student's eligibility for financial aid is called *need analysis*. In a need analysis, income and asset information from both students and parents is examined to determine the family's ability to contribute toward educational costs. This figure, called the *estimated family contribution*, is subtracted from what it will cost the student to attend BYU for a specific length of time (typically, one academic year). If the cost of education is more than the family can contribute, the student has demonstrated *financial need*.

BYU uses the government need analysis form, the Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA), in determining how much the student and family should contribute. All students applying for financial aid must complete this form. The application process is not complete until the results of the FAFSA have been received by the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office.

Even though a standard formula is used to analyze a student's financial situation, the Financial Aid Office carefully considers the individual circumstances of each student applying for aid.

Applying for financial aid can be complicated and time consuming. Considerable delays and frustrations can arise from filling out forms incorrectly or failing to submit the proper documents in a timely manner. Students and their parents are encouraged to read instructions carefully and to complete all forms and documents correctly. Professional counselors are available and eager to assist in answering questions and helping with the application process.

Eligibility Requirements

Applicants for federal financial aid (Federal Pell Grants, Federal Stafford Loans, and Federal PLUS Loans) must be U.S. citizens or eligible noncitizens. In addition, students must maintain satisfactory academic progress to have federal financial aid disbursed to them. Any student enrolled in a degree-seeking program may apply for financial aid.

Students who have a baccalaureate degree and are returning to receive a teaching certificate may also apply for Federal Stafford Loans if they have a cumulative 2.0 GPA and are admitted to the teacher licensure program.

Rules and regulations governing the disbursement of federal financial aid are subject to change. Contact the Financial Aid Office if you have additional questions regarding your eligibility for financial assistance.

Scholarships

Brigham Young University offers scholarships to select students who have demonstrated a serious and diligent commitment to spiritual preparation and academic excellence as an investment in their education. Scholarship funds are provided through the tithes of the LDS Church and the offerings of generous individuals. They are given to encourage continued commitment to spiritual and intellectual growth. The gift of a scholarship assumes an obligation on the part of the recipient to use that investment to prepare for expanded and purposeful service in the Lord's kingdom. The principle of replenishment is endorsed, and all are invited to make a similar investment in someone else's future by contributing to the university's scholarship programs when in a financial position to do so.

Although the contributions of the Church and others have been generous, funds are still insufficient to invest in all students. Consequently, policies and procedures have been established to better ensure fairness in awarding available scholarship funds consistent with the university's aims and donors' wishes. For additional information about our policies and procedures, please contact the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1009, telephone (801) 422-4104; e-mail: scholarships@byu.edu; Web: http://scholarships.byu.edu.

Academic

The majority of BYU scholarships are awarded to students based on academic merit. After the scholarship application deadline, students are ranked within their college by their academic preparation and performance. Beginning at the top of the ranked order, scholarships are awarded until funds are exhausted.

BYU scholarships are not renewable, and most are awarded for two semesters only. Unless students receive a four-year award, *they must reapply every year by the appropriate deadline to be considered*. Applicants must also officially declare a major by the end of their sophomore year.

Gordon B. Hinckley Presidential Scholarships are the most prestigious awards offered by Brigham Young University to incoming LDS freshman students. Named after the President of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, this scholarship pays each recipient's tuition and an additional stipend for eight semesters of undergraduate work at Brigham Young University.

To be considered for this scholarship, students must have academic credentials in the multiyear scholarship range of the freshman matrix, accessible from http://matrix.byu.edu. Students will be required to submit a separate application, available online, by February 1, 2008.

Heritage Scholarships are eight-semester, full LDS tuition awards to incoming freshman students. These scholarships honor the intellectual, spiritual, and cultural heritage of the Church and the university.

National Merit Scholarships are eight-semester, full LDS tuition awards sponsored by BYU for a number of the incoming freshman students who qualify as finalists in this competition. To be considered, finalists must inform National Merit Corporation that BYU is their first-choice university. National Merit Corporation will then forward necessary materials to BYU. *Because funds are limited, finalists are not guaranteed a BYU-sponsored National Merit Scholarship*. Students must be in the multiyear scholarship range on the freshman matrix to be selected.

Brigham Young Scholarships are generally two-semester awards that cover either half or full LDS tuition. Students must reapply each year to be considered for future scholarships.

New Freshman Students

New freshman academic scholarships are based on candidates' unweighted high school GPAs and composite ACT/SAT scores, as calculated and certified by BYU Admissions Services.

New Transfer Students

Academic scholarships are evaluated according to academic performance at the previous institution(s). Generally, candidates must have a GPA of 3.85 or higher to be considered. Those transferring to BYU with fewer than 30 semester hours (45 quarter hours) of college credit will also be evaluated on their high school credentials.

Former Students

Academic scholarships are based on overall academic performance. Primary considerations include BYU and total grade point average and the number of hours completed per enrollment. Candidates will be considered in the same applicant pool as continuing students.

Continuing Students

Academic scholarships are based on overall scholastic performance. Primary considerations include BYU and total grade point average and the number of hours completed per enrollment.

- Fall/Winter
  The Scholarship Committee will consider the GPA earned at BYU through winter semester and course loads during previous enrollments. Generally, only full-time students are eligible. To qualify for an academic scholarship, both the BYU GPA and the cumulative GPA, including any transfer work, must be within the awarding range.
- Spring/Summer
  The committee will consider academic performance through fall semester.

Alumni Association

Generations of BYU students have benefited from the generous support of the Church and private individuals. With that support they have received a first-rate education that has helped them "go forth to serve." Part of that service includes providing for the education of future generations.

The Alumni Replenishment Grants consider not only need and eligibility in its applicants but also a moral commitment to repay the amount of the grant, so that future students can receive and continue such financial assistance.

Alumni Association Replenishment

The Alumni Association Replenishment Grant is available to junior, senior, and graduate students whose total costs of education may not be met through other financial aid programs. Scholarships are awarded annually in amounts equal to half or full LDS tuition. The scholarship recipients will be eligible for membership in the Society of Alumni Scholars and will be asked to replenish the fund once they are in a financial position to do so.

To be considered, both the cumulative and BYU GPA must be at least 3.0 by the end of winter semester. Applicants must also demonstrate financial need and be willing to replenish the scholarship fund at a later date. To apply, complete the online scholarship application on Route Y, including the Alumni Replenishment Grants section.

Alumni Association Regional Replenishment

Several regional chapters of the BYU Alumni Association offer scholarships to students whose permanent residence lies within their boundaries.

To apply, complete the online scholarship application on Route Y, including the Alumni Regional Replenishment Grants section.

Athletic

The university awards grants-in-aid to outstanding athletes who qualify under the rules and regulations of the Mountain West Conference and the National Collegiate Athletics Association (NCAA).

For program applications, deadlines, and additional information, apply directly to the coach of the sport in which you wish to participate or contact Intercollegiate Athletics, 331 SAB, Provo, UT 84602, (801) 422-2046, e-mail: athletics@byu.edu.

College and Departmental

In addition to the scholarship programs described in this bulletin, other private scholarships are available through the colleges and some departments. Students can check with their college or department for additional information and applications.

International

The university offers a limited number of grants each year to international undergraduate students who demonstrate unusual financial need. Eligible candidates must have an F-1 visa, have earned 24 credit hours at BYU, and be in good academic standing.

Generous friends of the university have established a few additional scholarships to assist international students with their studies. To apply, complete the online comprehensive scholarship application on Route Y.

International Study Programs

The International Study Programs Office offers scholarships and grants to assist undergraduate students participating in its programs.

Study Abroad

- The *Mae Covey Gardner Scholarship* is available to students going on programs to European countries.
- The *Howard B. and Mary D. Nelson Scholarship* is available to students studying French, Italian, or Spanish and attending Study Abroad in France, Italy, or Spain. This scholarship is not available to returned missionaries who served in the destination country.
- The *Study Abroad Scholarship* is available to students participating in programs centered outside Europe.
- The *International Study Program Scholarship* is awarded to qualified students receiving university credit for field research or internships in an overseas setting.
- The *Service and Learning Scholarship* is available to students who enroll in an ISP program that has a strong service component.

All applicants must have a minimum 3.0 GPA. Applicants must show financial need by having a current *Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA)* on file at the Financial Aid Office, A-41 ASB, telephone (801) 422-4104. The Internet URL is www.fafsa.ed.gov. Students must complete the scholarship essay page of the ISP application and submit it with the rest of the application by the appropriate application deadline. For program applications, deadlines, and additional information, contact International Study Programs, 204 HRCB, Provo, UT 84602-4540; telephone (801) 422-3686; or visit our Web site at http://kennedy.byu.edu/isp/.

Jerusalem Center

The Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies offers financial aid to undergraduate and graduate students participating in the various Jerusalem Center study programs. This financial aid is administered under the following categories:

Grants are awarded primarily on the basis of financial need. These grants will vary according to the length of the program, the applicant's financial need, and the funds available.

Scholarships are awarded primarily on the basis of academic performance and will vary as stated above. A minimum GPA of 3.60 is required to be considered.

For program applications, deadlines, and additional information, contact the Jerusalem Center Office, 301 HCEB, Provo, UT 84602-1524, telephone (801) 422-6017, e-mail: deborah_peterson@byu.edu.

Need-Based

While the majority of its scholarships are merit-based, BYU budgets a limited number of need-based awards for United States citizens and permanent residents. Each applicant's circumstances and resources are reviewed and evaluated; unfortunately, there is always more need than available funding. Interested students must complete the *Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA)* and the comprehensive scholarship application on Route Y.

Other Private

Generous friends of the university have contributed a number of private scholarships. Many of these scholarships carry specific stipulations and restrictions. To be considered for these scholarships, complete the online scholarship appliction on Route Y, including the Additional Opportunities section.

Research

The following scholarships promote and reward research:

The Undergraduate Scholarship Awards are given to a select number of students, generally juniors and seniors, in good academic standing to fund research projects. To obtain the application instructions and guidelines, deadlines, and additional information, contact the Office of Research and Creative Activities, A-285 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1231, telephone (801) 422-3841.

Students should also contact their department and college to learn about other research opportunities and awards.

ROTC

Both the Army ROTC and the Air Force ROTC offer competitive scholarships to qualified students enrolling in their programs. ROTC scholarship recipients may receive full tuition, fees, books, and associated costs. In addition, both scholarship and nonscholarship students enrolled in courses numbered in the 300- and 400-series may apply for a $100 monthly subsistence allowance. For further information and application requirements, contact the Military Science Department (Army ROTC), 320 Wells ROTC Building, Provo, UT 84602-8301, telephone (801) 422-3601, e-mail: armyrotc@byu.edu; or the Aerospace Studies Department (Air Force ROTC), 380 Wells ROTC Building, Provo, UT 84602-8301, telephone (801) 422-2671, e-mail: afrotc@byu.edu.

Students with Disabilities

Generous donors have established a few private scholarships to assist students with disabilities. Because funds are limited, the Undergraduate Scholarship Committee will consider the nature of the applicant's disability and its impact on his or her ability to function in class and earn a living. Academic performance and financial need will also be considered. Interested students must complete the comprehensive scholarship application on Route Y, the *Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA)*, and submit appropriate current documentation of the disabling condition from a licensed professional to the University Accessibility Center, 1520 WSC, Provo, UT 84602, (801) 422-2767 v/tty.

Talent Awards

BYU offers talent awards in the areas of communications, dance, music, theatre and media arts, and visual arts. For these awards, demonstrated talent is a more important criterion than scholastic achievement. Awards range in value from $100 to full tuition and fees for one year. For further information and application materials, contact the appropriate department directly:

Communications: Department of Communications, 360 BRMB, Provo, UT 84602-6403, (801) 422-2997, e-mail: commsec@byugate.byu.edu.

Dance: Department of Dance, 294 RB, Provo, UT 84602-2005, (801) 422-5086, e-mail: dance@byu.edu.

Music: School of Music, C-550 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6410, (801) 422-4784, e-mail: music@byu.edu.

Theatre and Media Arts: Department of Theatre and Media Arts, D-581 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6405, (801) 422-6645, e-mail: tmasec@byugate.byu.edu.

Visual Arts: Department of Visual Arts, E-509 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-2500, (801) 422-4266, e-mail: design@byu.edu.

General University Scholarship Policies

Students granted university scholarships must do the following to remain eligible for their award:

1. Abide by the Honor Code and adhere to the dress and grooming standards of BYU.
2. Scholarships may be applied to approved International Study Programs and Travel Study programs but may not be used for Independent Study or Continuing Education courses or for BYU–Idaho or BYU–Hawaii courses.
3. Register as a full-time student and complete a minimum of 14 credit hours per the semester(s) or 6 credit hours per the term(s) of the award.

   Courses repeated within the same academic year will count only once toward the hour requirement.

   Credit must be earned within the classroom. Credit earned through special examination or Independent Study and audited classes may not be used to meet the requirement.

Additional provision:

Undergraduate students who have acquired more than 160 hours of credit or who have received scholarships for a total of eight semesters, excluding spring and summer terms, are ineligible for future scholarships.

Discontinuance

A student claims a scholarship by registering for classes and using the scholarship to pay tuition. If the student then does not attend school or, once enrolled, discontinues for nonemergency reasons, the scholarship will be cancelled and the student will be billed for the appropriate tuition and discontinuance fees. Students who need to discontinue because of illness, injury, or extenuating circumstances should contact the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office as well as the Discontinuance Office for appropriate action.

Note: Exceptions to these policies may sometimes be granted according to individual needs and circumstances. Students wanting an exception must submit a formal written petition to the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office prior to the necessary change.

BYU Short-Term Loan

A short-term loan is available to full- or part-time day students or full-time evening students admitted to day school. A student may borrow up to the cost of tuition only, and because the loan is "short-term" the loan must be repaid during the same semester or term in which the money is borrowed. The loan is not available for Independent Study, job interviewing, or debt payments.

Federal Programs

Federal Pell Grant

A Federal Pell Grant is awarded by the U.S. Department of Education and is based on financial need. A Pell Grant is not a loan and does not have to be repaid. Only undergraduate students who haven't already earned a bachelor's degree are eligible for a Pell Grant. (Students who pay graduate tuition are not eligible.) In addition, students must meet other eligibility requirements (see preceding Eligibility Requirements). Federal Pell Grants are based on an eligibility index determined by a federal formula. Pell Grant payments are disbursed to BYU students one semester at a time and vary with the number of hours for which a student is enrolled per semester (spring and summer terms combined are considered one semester).

- 12.0 or more semester hours equal a full-time payment.
- 9.0–11.5 semester hours equal a three-quarter-time payment.
- 6.0–8.5 semester hours equal a half-time payment.
- Fewer than 6.0 semester hours equal a less-than-half-time payment.

In determining hours for Federal Pell Grant payments, please note that:

1. Audit hours, special courses and conferences, and hours obtained by challenging classes may not be used.
2. Continuing Education, Salt Lake Center, Study Abroad, and Travel Study classes, etc., may be used only during the term or semester for which the student is admitted to BYU day school.

ACG and SMART Grants

Academic Competitiveness Grants (ACGs) are available to U.S. citizens, enrolled full-time in their first or second academic year of study, who are Federal Pell Grant recipients and have completed a "rigorous secondary school program of study." Second-year ACG recipients must have at least a 3.0 cumulative GPA. Applicants for the ACG must document how they have completed a "rigorous secondary school program of study."

National Science and Math Access to Retain Talent (SMART) Grants are available to U.S. citizens, enrolled full-time in their third or fourth academic year of study, who are Federal Pell Grant recipients, have at least a 3.0 cumulative GPA (checked every enrollment), and are majoring in physical, life, or computer science; engineering; mathematics; technology; or critical foreign languages. Eligible students will be notified by the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office.

Federal Subsidized Stafford Loan

A subsidized Federal Stafford Loan is a low-interest, federally subsidized loan based on financial need. It is available to undergraduate and graduate students who meet the eligibility requirements (see preceding Eligibility Requirements) and the requirements for need as calculated by the FAFSA. Subsidized Stafford Loan recipients must be enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) during the entire period of their loan. No audit hours may be used to meet the minimum hour requirement.

To avoid the burden of excessive debt, students should consider other forms of financial aid such as grants, scholarships, awards, part-time employment, and family assistance. Students should also contact their state educational agency to apply for state grants and other state aid that may be available. High school counselors and employers may also provide information regarding sources of financial aid. An unsubsidized Stafford Loan is also available to students who do not qualify for a fully subsidized Stafford Loan. Contact the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office for details.

Federal Parent Loan for Undergraduate Students (PLUS)

A Federal PLUS Loan is an educational loan that parents may obtain to meet the educational expenses of their dependent children who meet the

eligibility requirements above and are enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) during the entire loan period.

A PLUS Loan is neither need based nor federally subsidized. It requires credit approval by the lender. PLUS Loans are disbursed to the school by check made copayable to the parent and the school. Monthly payments generally begin sixty days after the loan is disbursed.

Federal Unsubsidized Stafford Loan

An unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan is an educational loan that students may obtain to meet their educational expenses. To be considered for an unsubsidized Stafford Loan, students must meet the eligibility requirements and be enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) for the entire loan period.

Although the unsubsidized Stafford Loan is neither need based nor federally subsidized, a student must first complete the FAFSA to determine eligibility for a Federal Pell Grant or subsidized Federal Stafford Loan. Payments generally begin sixty days after the loan is disbursed. A student may receive an unsubsidized Stafford Loan in addition to a subsidized Stafford Loan.

Satisfactory Academic Progress

Federal regulations require schools to establish, publish, and apply reasonable standards for determining whether a student receiving financial aid is maintaining satisfactory academic progress in his or her course of study. Two separate standards for measuring satisfactory academic progress are required: one is based on academic grades and the other is based on rate of progress toward a degree. In keeping with these regulations, Brigham Young University has established and will apply the following policies governing satisfactory academic progress for financial aid.

Evaluation Measures

Newly admitted students (both entering freshmen and transfer students) are eligible for financial aid during their first academic year at BYU. At the end of the first academic year, and at the end of each semester thereafter, the status of all students will be evaluated to determine if they are making satisfactory academic progress in each of these areas.

1. **Academic Standing:** Students on academic probation are ineligible for federal financial aid.
2. **Rate of Progress:** Students who fail to successfully complete at least 70 percent of their courses are ineligible for financial aid. For purposes of this policy, the following are "nonprogress" grades: E, I, IE, NS, W, and WE. Repeated courses are also considered nonprogress.

   Students not meeting the 70 percent completion rate will remain ineligible for federal financial aid until they:

   a. Improve their completion rate to 70 percent, or
   b. Successfully complete 12 hours (with no nonprogress grades) during regular terms or semesters at BYU, through Independent Study, or at another college or university.

Generally, undergraduate students with over 180 attempted credit hours are ineligible for financial aid. Similarly, students who have more than 60 hours of nonprogress grades (E, I, IE, NS, W, WE) are ineligible for financial aid.

Petitions for Overrides

Students may petition to receive aid for current or future semesters or terms within the same academic year. Generally, students may appeal to receive aid if there were special or unusual circumstances that prevented them from making satisfactory academic progress. Possible reasons for a petition might be accident or injury, medical or family emergency, or another similar circumstance.

Students requesting an override of the 180-hour limit must file a copy of their approved graduation plan with their petition.

Important Tax Information

Under the Tax Reform Act of 1986, only scholarship, fellowship, benefit, and grant amounts used for tuition, fees, books, supplies, and equipment required for courses of instruction are excluded from the recipient's gross income. Any of these funds used for other expenses, such as room and board, must be included in income. If funds are received from any of these sources, a detailed record should be kept of all expenditures for tuition, fees, books, and required equipment and supplies. For more detailed information, consult a personal tax advisor.

Exception to University Financial Aid Policy

Students desiring an exception to University Financial Aid Policy must petition the Financial Aid Committee, stating the reason for the requested exception. The committee meets on a regular basis to review petitions. Contact the Financial Aid and Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB, (801) 422-4104.

Additional Information Regarding Financial Aid

Students with questions regarding financial aid at Brigham Young University are invited to visit the web site: http://saas.byu.edu/depts/finaid.

Estimated College Expenses

On entering the university, students are responsible for making arrangements to cover enrollment expenses and should have sufficient funds on hand for at least the first semester. University financial aid is available to supplement savings through one or more of the following programs: scholarships and awards, student loans, Pell Grants, and student employment.

For estimated costs, please see the Financial Aid Web site: http://saas.byu.edu/depts/finaid/costs.aspx.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Grading and Records

Grading

Grade point averages are computed by assigning numeric values to the letter grades:

Letter Grade Values

A	4.0
A–	3.7
B+	3.4
B	3.0
B–	2.7
C+	2.4
C	2.0
C–	1.7
D+	1.4
D	1.0
D–	0.7
E, I, IE, WE	0.0

The grade given in a course is the teacher's evaluation of the student's performance, achievement, and understanding in that subject as covered in the class. The following adjectives indicate the meaning of the letter grades:

A Excellent
B Good
C Satisfactory
D Minimum passing
E Failure

Hence, the grade **A** means that the student's performance, achievement, and understanding were excellent in the portion of the subject covered in the class.

There are prerequisites that qualify students to be admitted to the more advanced classes offered by a department. A senior has added experience, understanding, and preparation and, consequently, progresses in courses that would have been impossible when the student was a freshman. The level of performance, achievement, and understanding required to qualify for each grade that carries credit (any grade other than E, I, IE, or WE) is higher in a more advanced class than in those classes that precede it, and the student is prepared to work at this higher level.

Additional grade designations are as follows:

1. If a student withdraws officially from a class during the first ten class days of a semester or the first six class days of a term, the permanent record will not show a registration for that class. If the student properly withdraws from a class between the eleventh and twenty-fifth class days of a semester or between the seventh and thirteenth class days of a term, the record will be marked **W** (official withdrawal).

2. A **WE** grade will be given if a student petitions to withdraw from a class after the deadline and he or she is failing the class at that time.

3. A grade of **P** indicates a passing grade. It has no effect on the GPA.

4. The letter grade **I** (Incomplete) is given on a contractual basis with the instructor to students who are unable to complete the work in the prescribed period of time. An incomplete grade may be given for nonacademic extenuating circumstances (serious illness, personal injury, death in the immediate family, etc.) that may arise *after* the discontinuance deadline (the twelth week of a semester or the sixth week of a term). To be eligible for an incomplete, the student must have attended up until the discontinuance deadline and be passing the class. If extenuating circumstances arise before the twelfth week of a semester or the sixth week of a term, the student should discontinue or petition through the Registration Office to be officially withdrawn from the class(es). The Incomplete Grade Contract must be completed and signed by the instructor and the $10 fee paid before submission of the official grade roll at the end of the semester. A copy of the Incomplete Grade Contract must be submitted to the Records Office by the grade submission deadline. A grade of E will be posted until a valid Incomplete Grade Contract is submitted to the Records Office.

   Class attendance in a subsequent semester or reregistration is not permitted to make up the incomplete. In some special instances, such as a lab class, attendance may be required for the portion of the class or lab section missed. Once the work has been completed, the instructor should complete the portion of the Incomplete Grade Contract, showing the grade earned, and submit the form to the Records Office (B-150 ASB).

   The instructor may designate the specific length of time the student has to complete the course requirements (not to exceed one year). If the work is not completed and the new grade submitted by the instructor within the agreed upon deadline, the I grade will be changed to an IE (the IE grade is considered and calculated as a failing grade). (To extend the contract date within the one-year deadline contact the Records Office, B-150 ASB.)

5. A grade of **T** indicates course work in progress and is only used in certain approved courses in which work may extend beyond the semester. The T grade may be changed to A, B, C, D, E, or P, depending on the grade rule for the course, when the work is completed.

6. The grade **NS** is placed on the student record when a grade roll has not been submitted to the Records Office by the grade submission

deadline. After the deadline, individual Grade Change Authorization forms must be used to submit a new grade to change the NS grade. The NS will not be considered in calculating the grade point average.

Grade Changes

After the final grade submission deadline, grades may be changed only for the following reasons:

- making a calculating error in computing the grade
- posting the wrong grade to the grade roll
- changing a T grade after the course work is completed
- posting a grade if no grade was submitted
- reevaluation of the previous grade with no additional work submitted

When such corrections need to be made, an official Grade Change Authorization Form must be completed and sent directly to the Records Office.

If a student completes any additional work beyond the end of the semester or term (original T grades excluded), grade changes should not be made. Instead, the student should request to have an Incomplete Grade Contract.

A previous grade cannot be changed to a W (Official Withdrawal). If the student had a nonacademic emergency, he or she should file a petition for withdrawal with the Registrar's Office.

Numeric Grade Values (Law School)

In fall semester 1987 the Law School was granted permission to grade their courses on the numeric grading system. In fall semester 1994 the Law School was granted permission to change the numeric grading system to a new numeric scale. All current Law School students with previously earned numeric grades had their grades converted to the new numeric scale:

1987–1994	Description	Fall 1994
80–90	Superior	3.7–4.0
75–79	Excellent	3.3–3.6
71–74	High pass	3.0–3.2
66–70	Pass	2.7–2.9
59–65	Low pass	2.2–2.6
50–58	Fail	1.6–2.1

Student Academic Grievance Policy

There may be occasions when a student believes her/his academic work or conduct has been unfairly or inadequately evaluated[1] by the faculty.[2] Usually such differences of opinion can be amicably resolved informally between the student and teacher. If not, the following procedures are intended to encourage satisfactory resolution of academic grievances with a minimum of formal procedure.

1. The grievance must be initiated by the student no later than four months (120 days) from the last day of the examination period of the semester in which the alleged unfair or inadequate evaluation occurred. A grievance related to restrictions limiting participation in university academic programs must be initiated within 30 days of the decision in question.
2. The student should initially address the grievance in writing to the faculty member or administrator responsible, requesting review and resolution. If the faculty member or administrator is unavailable or the student has a valid reason to believe the matter will not be dealt with fairly or that retribution may result, the student may submit the grievance directly to the applicable department chair. (The faculty member, administrator, or department chair shall have the right to consult others regarding the matter as reasonably necessary and with due regard to the student's right to privacy under the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act.)
3. If the grievance is addressed to the faculty member, and it is not resolved satisfactorily, the student may submit a written request for further review to the department chair within 30 days of the faculty member's decision.
4. The department chair's decision shall be given in writing to both the student and the faculty member within 30 days after receiving the student's request and all supporting material for review.
5. If the matter is still unresolved, the student may submit a written request for formal review to the dean or director of the applicable college or school within 30 days of the department chair's written decision.
6. If formal review is requested, the applicable dean or director shall be assisted in reviewing the grievance by a committee, as described in the following paragraphs.

   6.1 The dean or director will appoint several individuals associated with the university to serve as an ad hoc review panel. At least two of these individuals must be faculty with continuing faculty status from outside the area of study in which the grievance arose. One of these faculty members will be appointed to chair and conduct the proceedings, which should take place within 30 days after receiving the student's written request and all supporting materials. Faculty appointed to a panel reviewing a graduate student's grievance must have graduate faculty status.

   6.2 In reviewing the grievance, the review panel, the affected student, and the affected faculty member are responsible to identify or provide relevant sources of information. The review is intended to be collegial and not adversarial. Accordingly, legal counsel is not allowed to attend nor advocate in the review process. Presentation of the issues should be concise and relevant. The chair of the review panel shall be responsible to conduct the review and establish applicable procedures if such are not available from the dean or director. Any formal presentation should be limited to pertinent issues and panel members allowed sufficient time for questions. Following presentation and discussion of the grievance, the review panel will deliberate in closed session and submit its written recommendation to the dean or director.

   6.3 The dean or director will determine the resolution of the grievance and give the decision in writing to the student and faculty member within 10 days of receipt of the review panel's recommendation. This decision is final and not subject to further appeal, unless it involves termination of a graduate program or termination from the university.

Notes

1. Academic evaluations which are subject to this policy include grading, restrictions limiting participation in university academic programs, dismissal from the university or a university program for academic reasons, actions arising from incidents of academic dishonesty, the withholding, and/or revocation of a diploma for academic reasons, and the withholding of or special notation on transcripts for academic reasons. Evaluations relating to admissions to the university, ecclesiastical endorsements, discipline administered by the Honor Code Office, or petitions are not covered by this policy. Persons who believe they have been unlawfully discriminated against or sexually harassed should contact the Equal Opportunity Office.
2. For purposes of this policy, "faculty" means any teacher or other individual authorized by the university to academically evaluate students, or who has a legitimate need to know regarding the processing and disposition of an academic grievance.

Scholastic Recognition Each Semester

The dean of each academic college at the close of each semester will post a list of names of undergraduate students who are ranked in the top 5 percent of their college for the given semester, who have earned a minimum of 14 credit hours (7 credit hours for spring and summer terms), and who have earned a minimum grade point average of at least 3.5 for the semester.

Grades

After the semester has ended and all grades have been submitted by the faculty, students may access their grades through Route Y on the BYU homepage.

Records

Records Office
B-150 ASB
(801) 422-2631

The Records Office is the official guardian of all permanent records of all academic work done at the university. The office is also responsible for issuing official transcripts of credit. Official transcripts include only credit completed through BYU.

Classification of Students

Students are classified as follows:

Credit Hours Earned	Classification
0.5–29.9	Freshman
30–59.9	Sophomore
60–89.9	Junior
90 and over	Senior

Access to Education Records—FERPA

Student educational records at BYU are generally accessible to eligible students according to the provisions of the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA). BYU has adopted an Access to Student Records Policy that explains in detail student rights relating to their educational records. A copy of the policy is available at the Office of the Registrar, B-150 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1114.

The following is notice of student rights to their educational records, a summary of the procedures for exercising those rights, and a description of student directory information that may be disclosed to the public without the student's consent as required by law:

Eligible students, admitted and enrolled at BYU, generally have the right to:

1. Inspect and review their educational records within a reasonable period of time upon submitting to the appropriate department managing their educational records a written request, with proof of identification, specifying the records to be inspected. The department will notify the student of the time and place the records may be inspected.
2. Petition BYU to amend or correct any part of the education record believed to be inaccurate, misleading, or in violation of their privacy rights. Students may submit a written request to the department holding the record, clearly identifying the part of the record they want changed, and specify why it is inaccurate or misleading. If the department decides not to amend the record as requested, the department will notify the student of the decision and advise them of their right to a hearing regarding the request for amendment. Additional information regarding the hearing procedures as outlined in university policy will be provided to the student when notified of the right to a hearing.
3. Consent to disclosure of personally identifiable information contained in the student's educational record, except as otherwise authorized by law. Examples of exceptions to consent of disclosure include:
   a. Access of educational records by BYU officials and agents having a legitimate educational interest in the records. This category generally includes any BYU official or agent who accesses student educational records for the purpose of performing a task or responsibility relating to his or her employment or professional responsibility at the university. These individuals may include faculty, administration, staff, and other university agents who manage student educational record information including, but not limited to, student education, discipline, or financial aid.
   b. Parents who establish the student's dependency for federal income tax purposes.
   c. Upon request, BYU will disclose educational records without consent to officials of another college or university to which the student seeks or intends to enroll.
4. File a complaint with the U.S. Department of Education concerning failures by BYU to comply with the requirements of FERPA. The name and

address of the office that administers FERPA is Family Policy and Compliance Office, U.S. Department of Education, 400 Maryland Avenue SW, Washington, DC 20202-4605, www.ed.gov/offices/om/fpco/.

BYU has designated the following student information as directory information that it may disclose to the public without the consent of the student:

Name
Addresses and telephone numbers
E-mail address
Month/Day/Place of birth
Names of parents or spouse
Major and minor fields of study
Participation in officially recognized activities and sports
Weight and height of members of athletic teams
Pictures
Dates of attendance (current and past)
Number of months/semesters enrolled
Class standing (freshman, sophomore, etc.)
Enrollment status (full-time, part-time, less than half-time)
Degrees and awards received
Previous educational institutions attended
Dates of employment and job titles for student employment positions
Anticipated future enrollments
Course registrations prior to the beginning of a semester or term
Expected date of graduation
Deferred registration eligibility

Students have the right to restrict disclosure of the above directory information. To request restriction of disclosure, students must file a written request in the Registrars' Office. To avoid being listed on some directories, this must be done on or before the tenth day of a semester or the sixth day of a term. Forms for this request are available in the Office of the Registrar.

Transcript Record Holds

A hold will be placed on a student's record for failure to meet university obligations (fees outstanding, university standards violations, etc.). Until the obligation is fulfilled, no copy of the academic record or diploma or information about the record will be released, and graduation may be delayed or denied.

Earning Credits

Students earn approved university credit in the following ways:

Regular Course Work

Complete work in regular courses offered at BYU. Complete college-level courses through Independent Study, Evening Classes, or other Continuing Education programs.

Transfer Work

Transfer credit for college-level courses completed at an accredited college or university and transferred to Brigham Young University. (See the Admissions section of this catalog for further explanation on transfer college credit.)

Advanced Placement (AP) Exam

Complete the Advanced Placement (AP) examinations. Students who score a composite grade of 5, 4, or 3 in any subject may receive up to 8 semester hours of college credit in that subject.

Military Credit

Serve in the armed forces. Students who have been on active duty in the service for more than one year can receive 2 semester hours of wellness and 4 semester hours in military science. Additional credit may be granted for college-level training and experience in the service. To receive credit, bring the military service DD-214 form to the Admissions Office, A-153 ASB.

International Baccalaureate (IB)

Students who complete the International Baccalaureate (IB) examinations will receive college credit. An IB course at the subsidiary level will normally be given 3 hours of general credit. An IB course completed at the higher level may receive 6 hours of general credit and possibly fill a general education requirement.

Challenge Examination

Students may receive credit by challenging some courses at the university through a separate examination procedure. Departments reserve the right to decide which courses may be challenged by examination. Religion courses, internship courses, exercise sciences and dance activity courses, and other activity participative courses, such as music, youth leadership, and ROTC, may not be challenged.

Only under exceptional circumstances, such as the foreign language challenge examination, can a course completed earlier be repeated by the challenge procedure.

The challenge examination is not meant to certify that a student has attended the class and completed all course requirements. The challenge examination credit merely shows that the student's skill and knowledge is sufficient to pass a challenge examination for the course.

Only students who have completed at least one course at BYU through day or evening school or the Salt Lake Center are eligible for the challenge examination option. Students currently enrolled are eligible to take the exam, but the credit will not be posted to the transcript until the other BYU credit and grades are posted. Students who are suspended or dismissed from the university are not eligible to challenge courses. Students who are suspended or dismissed may not have challenge examination credit posted to their record even if the examination was taken prior to the suspension or dismissal.

Once students have graduated, they are not eligible for challenging any additional credit at BYU unless it is specific to the graduate program to which

the students have been admitted. (See current BYU Graduate Catalog for information on how to challenge graduate courses.)

Some challenge exams for credit are offered in the Testing Center, and others are arranged through the department offering the course. A fee payable to the Testing Center is charged for exams offered there. A fee payable to Student Services in D-155 ASB is required for exams offered through individual departments. The student should check with the department to see if the exam is offered in the department or through the Testing Center. To earn academic credit and a grade for the course, the student must sign a Challenge Examination Form and have the Testing Center or the department submit it to the Records Office in B-150 ASB. The time limit for a student to choose course credit is determined by the individual academic department, not to exceed one year. No additional fees are charged to post the credits to the transcript. The student's transcript and cumulative grade point average reflect the grade earned on the exam. The procedure to take exams and request academic credit follows.

Procedure for Challenge Exams Given at the Testing Center

1. Contact the appropriate department for the exam procedure and content before going to the Testing Center.
2. Go to the Testing Center (265 HGB). (For testing dates on GE challenge exams, see table in University Core: General Education section of the current class schedule.)
3. Pay the required fee at the Testing Center.
4. After the exam is graded and the choice is made to receive graded credit, obtain a Challenge Examination Form at the Testing Center and have it validated there. To accept the grade and receive credit for the course, sign the Challenge Examination Form and have the Testing Center submit it to the Records Office (B-150 ASB). After taking the exam there is a limited time to request that the grade be submitted to receive course credit. The time limit to choose course credit is determined by the department, not to exceed one year. Graded credit will be added to the student's official university transcript, and the progress report will show any GE requirement as fulfilled. (Students taking the Physical Science examination may take the grade or an exemption if their score is 75 percent or above. If their score is between 60 and 74 percent, they may receive graded credit.)
5. Students enrolled in the course when they pass its challenge exam **must** also drop the course. Students who drop the class after the *add deadline* (ten class days after a semester starts or six days after a term starts) will receive a W on their transcript for dropping the course. If the course is not *officially* dropped before the withdraw deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript.

Procedure for Challenge Exams Not Given at the Testing Center

1. Whether or not students are enrolled in the course they are challenging:
    a. Complete the Challenge Examination Form available from the department.
    b. Arrange with the department to take the exam.
    c. Pay the $20 required fee at Student Services in D-155 ASB and have the form validated there ($20 fee per course except for the language exams).
    d. Present the validated form to the department examiner.
    e. Have the grade and credit recorded on the form by the examiner and obtain the necessary departmental signatures.
    f. After seeing the grade, students may choose to have the credit posted to their academic record by signing the Challenge Examination Form and having the department send the completed form to the Records Office (B-150 ASB). After taking the exam there is a limited time to request that the grade be submitted to receive course credit. The time limit to choose course credit is determined by the department, not to exceed one year.
2. Students enrolled in the course when they pass its challenge exam **must** also drop the course. Students who drop the class after the *add deadline* (ten class days after a semester starts or six days after a term starts) will receive a W on their transcript for dropping the course. If the course is not *officially* dropped before the withdraw deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript.

Exemption Examinations for GE Requirements

Some general education requirements can be accomplished by successfully completing an examination. Exemption examinations for selected GE courses are offered at the Testing Center. (See table in University Core: General Education section of the current class schedule for dates of exemption examinations.)

Procedure for Exemption Exams

1. Contact the appropriate academic department for exam procedure and content before going to the Testing Center.
2. Go to the Testing Center (265 HGB) on one of the examination days. (See table in University Core: General Education section of the current class schedule.)
3. Pay the required fee per class at the Testing Center.

Students enrolled in the course when they pass its exemption examination **must** also drop the course. Students who drop the course after the *add deadline* (ten days after a semester starts or six days after a term starts) will be officially withdrawn. (This shows as a W on the transcript.) If the course is not *officially* dropped before the drop deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript.

Note: The progress report of students who pass an exemption exam at the Testing Center will be updated automatically at the end of the semester or term. Students should retain their score report for their records.

Earning BYU Credit While on Suspension

Students who have been suspended from Brigham Young University are not eligible to enroll in courses through day school, evening school, or any of the Continuing Education programs offered by the university except those courses offered through Independent Study. Students should consult their advisement center to determine which Independent Study courses to take.

Repeating Classes

To have a previously completed course marked *repeated*, the new course must be equal or greater in credit hours. When a class has been repeated, the credit used in computing the grade point average is the grade and credit hours earned the last time the repeated class was taken. Students may repeat classes in the following ways:

1. Repeat Brigham Young University courses at Brigham Young University (except for R-suffix courses—see Abbreviations and Symbols in the Using This Catalog section).
2. Repeat at Brigham Young University courses initially taken at another university. (A statement of equivalency must be supplied by the appropriate BYU department chair.)
3. Repeat at another institution courses taken there and have the credit transferred to Brigham Young University.

Note: A course repeated at an institution other than the one at which it was taken originally and other than at BYU will not be counted as a repeat.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Graduation

Graduation Evaluation Office
B-150 ASB
(801) 422-4218

Graduation Information

Adherence to University Standards/Honor Code

Students are required to be in good Honor Code standing to graduate. In addition, graduation may be delayed or denied for students whose ecclesiastical endorsement has been withdrawn.

Note: Any hold, warning, or probation by the Honor Code Office must be properly cleared well before graduation.

Application for Graduation

All students desiring to graduate must apply for graduation. Students applying for the bachelor's degree should do so during their junior year. Application forms are available at the college advisement centers. Students must submit a completed application form and the graduation fee of $15 for a bachelor's degree to Student Financial Services (D-155 ASB) no later than September 15 for December graduation; November 15 for April 2009 graduation; and April 15 for August graduation.

Students who apply after the deadline dates will need to contact their advisement center to be considered for graduation. The Graduation Evaluation Office (B-150 ASB) will notify students in writing of the general education, major(s), minor(s), and university requirements remaining.

Students who plan to obtain teacher licensure must see the Education Advisement and Certification Office before turning in their graduation application to Student Financial Services.

Attendance at Commencement

All candidates for graduation are encouraged to attend the commencement and convocation exercises. Diplomas will be mailed to students after all grades are submitted and all graduation requirements are certified complete. Commencement exercises are held in April and August only. December graduates are invited to the April commencement following their graduation.

Deadlines for Transfer, Correspondence, and Incomplete Credit

All incomplete grades must be removed from the student's record, special examinations and general education requirements must be passed and recorded, and all transfer and correspondence (Independent Study) credit must be on file in the Records Office at least four weeks before graduation.

Earning Lower Degree After Receiving Higher Degree

A person who has earned a higher degree is ineligible to earn a lesser degree at BYU unless exception has been granted by the Undergraduate Steering Committee (USC). Petitions for exception can be directed to the Admissions Office, which will forward the petition to the USC.

Independent Study Credit

A maximum of 36 semester hours of Independent Study credit may be applied toward the 120-semester-hour requirement for a baccalaureate degree.

Note: See the Bachelor of General Studies Program section of this catalog for BGS requirements.

Scholastic Recognition

University Honors

To graduate with University Honors, a student must:

1. Commit to graduate with University Honors and consult with an Honors Advisement Center representative on a regular basis.
2. Complete the honors curriculum requirement.
3. Complete the honors Great Works requirement.
4. Complete the honors Advanced Languages requirement.
5. Complete the honors service requirement.
6. Complete the honors thesis requirement.
7. Have a cumulative grade point average of at least 3.5.

8. Submit a graduation portfolio that summarizes the student's honors experiences.

More detailed explanations of the Honors Program are available in 102-A MSRB and in the Honors Program section of this catalog.

Latin Scholastic Distinctions

Latin Scholastic Distinctions at graduation are determined by GPA for the top 10 percent of the graduating seniors based on cumulative total and BYU grade point averages.

Summa Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 1.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Magna Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 1.1 to 5.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 5.1 to 10.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Graduation Requirements

Baccalaureate Degree Requirements

The baccalaureate degree is awarded for completion of a specified program of university study. It recognizes important changes in outlook, understanding, and proficiency that result from university experience. At BYU this program of study includes the university core, the discipline of a specific major, and each student's choice of electives. In addition, a minimum of 30 semester credit hours in residence at BYU, a minimum total of 120 credit hours, and a cumulative GPA of at least 2.0 are required.

University Core Requirements for the Baccalaureate Degree

See the University Core section of this catalog for complete information.

Major Requirements for the Baccalaureate Degree

See specific major requirements in the Academic Departments/Schools/Areas, Degrees, and Courses section of this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Residency Requirement

At least 30 credit hours must be earned in residence on the BYU campus in Provo as an admitted day student to qualify for a baccalaureate degree.

Total Credit-Hour Requirement

A candidate for a baccalaureate degree must complete a minimum of 120 credit hours.

Grade Point Average Requirement

To graduate from BYU students must earn a minimum 2.0 cumulative BYU grade point average and a minimum 2.0 total cumulative grade point average. Students must also meet any stipulated minimum grade point average requirements in their major.

Honor Code Requirement

Students must be in good standing with the Honor Code Office.

D Credit

Students may use a course in which they receive a D ("minimum passing") to complete major, minor, religion, or general education requirements. Those receiving a D in a course will not be required to retake the course unless a higher minimum grade is stipulated in a degree program or course sequence description in the undergraduate or graduate catalog.

Courses taken at other colleges or universities with D grades will count toward the total hour requirement for graduation, but will not fill BYU general education requirements—and in most instances will not fill major requirements.

Major Requirements

The curricular requirements of a specific major must be satisfactorily completed, including any additional departmental requirements related to the major. A minimum of 20 credit hours in the major must be completed in residence as an admitted day student, 10 of these on the BYU campus in Provo.

Double Major

A second major is rare and *must be approved* by the chair(s) of the department(s) involved and the dean of the college responsible for the primary major. The second major *proposal and approval process* requires an evaluation of all university core and major requirements and a time-to-graduation analysis. College advisement centers are prepared to assist interested students in this process. Courses used to satisfy the requirements of a student's major can also be used to satisfy the requirements of an approved second major, unless such is not permitted by the requirements of the proposed second major. Students who graduate with a second major only receive one degree and one diploma. Only the primary major will be listed in the university commencement program.

Changes of Requirements

University graduation requirements are occasionally modified or changed. The university informs students of such modifications through its catalog, online class schedules, and all advisement centers on campus. Students who leave the university for an extended period of time can be informed of

such changes through these sources.

Policy on "Old" Graduation Requirements and Credit

Brigham Young University is committed to providing its students with an excellent university education consisting of a broad general education that includes religious education and a strong major education. Programs of the university change and develop in the continuing effort to make learning and experience as valuable as possible. Development, growth, and improvement are expected parts both of our lives and our institutions. It is because of the commitment to a superb education that the university's programs develop and improve and that students are expected to meet the current standards of the university when they graduate, even though they may have begun their studies long ago under quite different expectations.

Students who complete a baccalaureate degree within eight academic years of enrollment at BYU qualify for graduation by meeting those religion, university, and general education requirements in effect when they initially enrolled, even though there may have been changes in general education and religion requirements since that time.

In addition, students who complete a baccalaureate degree within eight academic years of enrollment at BYU qualify for graduation by meeting those major education requirements in effect when they officially declared the major with which they plan to graduate even though such declaration was made at some point following their original enrollment. (A student officially declares a major one of two ways: [1] by indicating the choice of major on part 2 of the CES Admission and Scholarship Application or [2] by submitting a Change of Major Form to a college advisement center at a subsequent time.)

Students who have not graduated within eight years of their initial enrollment at BYU will be required to meet with the dean and department chair in the area in which they are majoring to determine graduation requirements and the use of credit previously earned. The Graduation Evaluation Office will evaluate credit for general education requirements. Where general education or major requirements have changed or where credit previously earned was in an area of substantial change, students may be required to do additional work to meet graduation requirements.

This means that credit earned more than eight years before admission or readmission (including transfer credit) will be accepted to meet general education or major graduation requirements at the discretion of the university.

Students who return to the university after an extended absence should contact the Graduation Evaluation Office (B-150 ASB, [801] 422-4218) and confer with their college advisement center counselors and department advisors immediately upon returning to the university, both for advice and help concerning graduation requirements and for evaluation of their credit. In many instances it will prove possible to negotiate a schedule of classes that will allow the student to move toward a degree without lost effort.

Bachelor of General Studies

See the Bachelor of General Studies Program in the Division of Continuing Education section of this catalog.

Advisement

An important corollary of the university's commitment to provide its students with an excellent university education is its commitment to help students find their way through their programs effectively and efficiently. Students whose educational experience has reached over many years and who find that changes in programs will require additional work and preparation should consult with department advisors for help in planning their schedules in the best and most encouraging way possible.

The university's requirement that a student graduate under current or very recent standards is meant to benefit the student and is in no way established to deter a determined person from returning to the university after years away. Good advisement can be of great help in working out a program of study at the university, taking into account individual needs, concerns, and experience.

MyMAP

Students have been provided access to a student academic planning system called MyMAP. This tool will not only allow students the ability to track their academic progress towards graduation, but also have the capability of planning and selecting specific courses for university core, major, and minor requirements. In addition to planning specific courses, the system will allow students to organize planned courses into a semester/term schedule and register for classes from that schedule. There are many other features that will help students have important information at their fingertips. Students can access MyMAP under the school section of Route Y. To learn more about MyMAP go to http://mymap.byu.edu.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Housing

Campus Accommodations Office
100 SASB
Phone: (801) 422-2611
Toll-free: (877) 403-0040
Fax: (801) 422-0837
E-mail: housing@byu.edu
Internet: http://www.byu.edu/oncampushousing/

Quality residential living is an important, indeed an integral, part of the total educational experience at BYU, and students should carefully consider the accommodations available in view of the type of living experience they desire, the time they have available for activities within their housing situation, and their economic needs. Housing is available on campus and in the surrounding communities, and programs have been established within campus residence halls and with off-campus landlords to integrate living experiences with the total university educational program.

On-Campus Housing

On-campus housing includes room-and-board residence halls and apartment-style living for men and women—each directed by a competent hall advisor—and family apartments. Assisting the hall advisor in room-and-board areas and the apartment-style living are several resident assistants—mature, advanced students who reside with the student group. Students are known personally by the staff and have someone available to assist with normal student problems.

The residence hall program is designed to provide experiences in self-government, sharing relationships, and other responsibilities that encourage maturity and independence.

All residents have access to CougarNet, which provides them with an e-mail address, Internet access, printing capabilities on campus network printers, file storage, and access to the library (BYLINE) and registration (AIM) databases.

Residence Halls for Men and Women

Board and room in **Helaman Halls** is provided for both men and women. Each hall contains student lounges; study rooms; common shower and restroom areas; and laundry and storage facilities. A reading and writing lab, as well as math and computer lab, are also provided in the central building and are staffed by teaching assistants. The central building features a spacious cafeteria, dining room, reception area, offices, and mail service for the entire residence area. Recreational facilities include a swimming pool, sports courts, and large lawn areas.

Apartment Living for Men and Women

Heritage Halls and **Wyview Park** provide apartment-style housing for both men and women. Apartments are furnished, except for bedding and kitchen items.

Most Heritage Halls apartments have a combination kitchen-dining-study room, three bedrooms (designed for two people each), and a bathroom. Each building has a large lobby/living area, recreation room, laundry, and storage facilities. The Heritage Halls Central Building includes a resource center, staffed with specialists who are available to provide information and equipment for residents, and a computer lab, staffed by Office of Information Technology (OIT) teaching assistants.

Wyview Park apartments have a kitchen and dining room, living room, two or three bedrooms, and a bathroom. Two-bedroom apartments have one private bedroom and one shared bedroom. Three-bedroom apartments have two private bedrooms and one shared bedroom.

Residences for Families

Accommodations for student families are provided at **Wymount Terrace**. Each apartment is furnished with an electric or gas range, refrigerator, garbage disposal, and blinds. A limited assortment of furniture can be rented from the Student Family Housing Office. Residents have access to sports courts, children's playgrounds, large lawn areas, and the Helaman Halls swimming pool.

These apartments do not have washer/dryer hookups, but the areas have self-service laundry facilities. A BYU Creamery outlet is located at Wymount Terrace. The Housing Office also has a computer lab available.

Wymount Terrace has 898 one-, two-, or three-bedroom apartments and is located on the northeast side of campus.

Foreign Language Student Residence

The College of Humanities sponsors the Foreign Language Student Residence, located near the Missionary Training Center. Students pledge to speak only the foreign language in their apartment while they live and study together under the supervision of a faculty advisor and a native speaker.

All rooms in the complex are shared, single rooms are not availabale. Male and female residents in each target language eat five meals a week together, with the cost of some meals included in the fees. For details contact the coordinator of the Foreign Language Student Residence at 3086C JFSB or (801) 422-7797.

Applications/Agreements for On-Campus Housing

Students who plan to enroll at BYU and live in a university residence hall or a student family housing complex are advised to request housing as soon

as possible.

Single Student On-Campus Housing

Single student housing application availability dates are posted online at www.byu.edu/oncampushousing. A $100 security deposit and $50 processing fee are due after the the student has been admitted to the university and at least two days prior to the student's Room Selection Date. Both the $100 security deposit and $50 processing fee are fully refundable if the student never selects a bed space on campus. The *security deposit* is refundable (1) if the student is not admitted to the university or on-campus housing, (2) if cancellation is received before the deadline shown on the agreement, or (3) at the end of the agreement if there is no debt owed to the university.

The student's Room Selection Date is based on the date and time the application is submitted. Students should be prepared to live by the terms of the agreement once they have acquainted themselves with its terms and submitted it; this will avoid any possible misunderstanding or financial loss. Agreements are made for the academic school year.

Student Family On-Campus Housing

Family housing apartment availability is updated online Monday-Friday (excluding holidays) at www.byu.edu/familyhousing. For student family housing, the completed agreement must be submitted with a $100 security deposit and a nonrefundable $50 processing fee.

Time of Arrival: Residence halls are not open to students before the announced opening date, which is usually the day Orientation begins. The university does not advise students who are going to live on campus to arrive before that date.

Off-Campus Housing

2170 WSC
(801) 422-5066
Internet: www.byu.edu/offcampushousing

Brigham Young University is committed to creating an atmosphere conducive to intellectual and spiritual development for all of its students, including those who live off campus. The BYU Off-Campus Housing Office was established to assist in this task by:

1. Aiding students in locating off-campus housing.
2. Encouraging landlords to maintain and improve rental facilities.
3. Advising and giving counsel to students and landlords in their relationships with one another.
4. Attempting to ensure that BYU living standards are maintained off campus.

To help achieve these ends, single undergraduate BYU students are required to live in university-contracted housing (see below). At present, more than 22,000 rental spaces have been contracted by the university for single undergraduate students living off campus. For further information concerning off-campus rentals and BYU regulations, contact the Off-Campus Housing Office between 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday or visit the web site at www.byu.edu/offcampushousing.

BYU Housing Referral Service

The BYU Off-Campus Housing Office maintains a complete referral service for all university-contracted rental facilities. Thousands of rental units of all types are available, including large apartment complexes, condominiums, duplexes, houses, basement apartments, and sleeping rooms. Some housing for families is also listed, although student family housing is not subject to university contracting.

Detailed lists of current vacancies are available at the Off-Campus Housing Office from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. Monday through Friday. Listings are also available at www.byu.edu/offcampushousing and in the distribution trays located in the hall outside the Off-Campus Housing office entrance. A guide with housing tips and essential rental data on the large apartment complexes will be mailed on request and may also be found on the web site. Officials are also available to help students who have problems finding suitable off-campus housing.

University-Contracted Housing

All BYU students are required to provide the residential address where they reside (not a post office box) as part of the registration process. Unless specifically excused by the Off-Campus Housing Office, all single undergraduate BYU students are required to live in university-contracted housing either on or off campus. The requirement may be waived by the Off-Campus Housing Office for the following students:

1. Single parents with children.
2. Single students living with parents.
3. Single students who are taking classes away from Provo.
4. Under certain conditions, as determined by the Off-Campus Housing Office, the university housing requirement may be waived for other students who have a special circumstance or hardship.

Hotels, motels, and studio apartments are not contracted housing for single students. A studio apartment is a living unit that does not provide a separate bedroom but combines the living and sleeping area.

Students who do not provide their residential address or who live in housing not contracted by the university and who are not excused by the BYU Off-Campus Housing Office are subject to the following sanctions:

1. Non-compliant fees may be incurred, future registration may be stopped, and activity card privileges may be withheld until the student verifies that he or she is living in or will be living in university-contracted housing.
2. Students falsifying their addresses will be subject to the above consequences as well as disciplinary action by the university for Honor Code violations.

When a student signs an agreement to live in a facility not contracted by the university and has not been excused from the university housing requirement, these sanctions will be applied even though the student's tenancy extends beyond the current semester or term in which the student is enrolled. A student in this situation will have to either move from the uncontracted housing unit, regardless of the consequences, or forego registration and other privileges at the university until complying with this policy.

The university contracts off-campus living units whose owners have agreed to:

1. Adequately separate single men and women.

2. Exercise reasonable efforts to maintain the BYU Residential Living Standards.
3. Maintain the facilities in good repair.
4. Not abuse basic tenant rights.

The university cannot guarantee that owners and managers are employing their best efforts to maintain the standards, that all residents are complying with BYU standards, or that contracted living units always meet the physical criteria. Thus, students are individually responsible to carefully choose an acceptable apartment and compatible roommates. Students should first inform their area management if they suspect that the standards and the physical criteria are not being maintained. Students may also contact the BYU Off-Campus Housing Office and/or the BYU Honor Code Office with concerns.

Because a student's living environment has a profound influence on academic performance and spiritual growth, BYU promotes an environment in contracted off-campus housing facilities that is consistent with its mission and with the moral virtues taught by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Specifically, the BYU off-campus housing program sets *guidelines* for landlords and students, which, if followed, will cultivate that desired moral climate. BYU off-campus housing personnel attempt to rectify any deviations from these standards and policy guidelines.

Chartered Housing

Chartered housing, begun in fall 2006, is a pilot program that will run until 2009. Working closely with the property managers of designated housing providers, the university will assist with staff training and study BYU students' experiences in this style of housing. In order to compare chartered housing with other styles, all residents will be BYU students.

For more information about the chartered housing pilot program, please see the web site: www.byu.edu/housing/chartered_housing.html.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Registration

Registration Office
B-130 ASB
(801) 422-2824

Who May Register?

Students are eligible to register if they are either continuing BYU students or new students who have received a letter of acceptance from the Admissions Office for the semester they wish to attend.

Continuing student status ends if a student does not complete day school classes the previous full semester (fall or winter) or if a student has graduated from BYU. Students who have lost continuing student status must be readmitted by the Admissions Office (D-155 ASB) before registration may begin.

An individual who has disaffiliated from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints or has been excommunicated or disfellowshipped is not eligible for enrollment at Brigham Young University until he or she is once again in good standing in the Church. If a current student disaffiliates or is excommunicated or disfellowshipped from the Church, the Continuing Ecclesiastical Endorsement is always immediately withdrawn, and the student is discontinued. Every student must have a current Continuing Ecclesiastical Endorsement for continued enrollment.

The Registration Process

Complete registration instructions and deadlines are listed in the current class schedule for each semester or term or on the web site http://saas.byu.edu/registrar/.

Registration is based on a priority system (**fall** and winter semesters only) that allows students to begin registration according to their class standing or number of completed hours. Priority begins with graduate students and seniors, then juniors, sophomores, and freshmen. Post-baccalaureate non-degree-seeking graduates will be given access after continuing freshmen. Newly admitted freshmen will register together in a separate priority (fall semester only).

All eligible students will receive a registration notice by email for **fall** and winter semesters that will inform students of their priority registration day. Students may begin registering for fall semester in April and for winter semester in October by following the instructions in the current class schedule or on the web site.

Spring and summer term registration is not based on a priority system. Schedules become available sometime in December, and eligible students can register for spring and summer terms beginning in February. Students have continuous access to the online registration system; however, once school begins some classes must be added with an instructor's signature.

Adding and Dropping Classes

Students may use the web registration system to add and drop classes until the add deadline. Each academic department determines how classes are added. The add method of each class is noted in the current class schedule with an **O** (web registration system is open through add deadline), **S** (department or faculty signature required always), or **F** (web registration system until classes start—instructor signature thereafter).

To add a class that requires a signature:

1. Obtain a change of registration (add/drop) card from the Registration Office, a college advisement center, or a department.
2. Obtain a signature of approval from the instructor or department as shown in the current class schedule.
3. Take the add card to the Registration Office at OneStop during the first ten school days of a semester for fall and winter and to the Registration Office (B-130 ASB) during spring and summer terms (first six days).
4. For classes not officially added before the add deadline, students may petition for exception through the Petitions Office (B-150 ASB) and pay a $10 fee per class.

To drop a class once school begins:

Use the AIM registration system during the add period (first **ten** class days of a semester or first **six** days of a term). Drop cards are also accepted at OneStop during Fall and Winter semesters.

Note: A student can be registered for more than one section of an R-suffix course and therefore must drop each unwanted section.

To withdraw from a class:

1. During the withdraw period (eleventh through twenty-fifth day of a semester, seventh through thirteenth day of a term) students may use the AIM registration system to withdraw from classes. A $10 fee per class will be charged to the student's account and a W will be posted on the student's transcript.
2. To withdraw from classes for extenuating circumstances after the withdraw deadline, students may petition for exception through the Petitions Office (B-150 ASB) and pay a $10 fee per class.

Full-, Three-Quarter-, or Part-Time Status

A student who registers for 12 or more credit hours a semester or 6 or more credit hours a term is full-time for tuition purposes. Registration for 9 to 11.5 credit hours per semester or 4.5 to 5.5 credit hours per term is deemed three-quarter-time for tuition purposes. Registration for 0.5 to 8.5 credit hours a semester (0.5 to 4 credit hours a term) gives the student part-time status. International students and students receiving financial assistance may be required to register for more hours to be considered full-time.

Verification of Full-Time Status for Graduate Students

Graduate students (master's and doctoral students) who are enrolled for at least 2 credit hours per semester and who can be certified by their department as being engaged full-time in pursuit of their degrees can petition for graduate full-time status. Requests for such an exception should be directed to the Office of Graduate Studies (B-356 ASB).

Withdrawal from Classes

Students who choose to withdraw from a class must do so officially. Students who do not officially withdraw before the published deadline will receive a failing grade. Refer to the current class schedule for the appropriate procedure and deadlines and fees.

Auditing Classes

Students who wish to audit a class (take a course without receiving any credit for it) must add the class, listing it as an audit course, on an add/drop card within the first ten class days of a semester or the first six class days of a term. Audited classes do not appear on transcripts and do not count for verification purposes. *Students must be officially enrolled either for credit or audit to be eligible to attend class.*

Class Preparation Time

The expectation for undergraduate courses is three hours of work per week per credit hour for the average student who is appropriately prepared; much more time may be required to achieve excellence. These three hours may include one hour of lecture plus two hours of work outside class, three hours in a laboratory with little outside work, or any other combination appropriate to a particular course.

Maximum Hours per Semester/Term

An undergraduate student in good standing may register for as many as 18 credit hours in any one semester (9 per term) by following the regular registration procedure. Once school begins the college advisement center may authorize a student who has demonstrated superior academic ability to register for a maximum of 21 hours per semester (11 per term). Registering for classes through Continuing Education or auditing classes constitutes a part of the total registration. Through a petition process after the first day of school, exceptions to these rules may be granted by the university registrar (B-150 ASB). Students registering in the Semester Away program through Evening Classes may register for up to 12 credit hours in a semester (6 per term), of which 9 credit hours (5 per term) may be Independent Study courses.

Final Examinations

The university schedules exam preparation and examination periods. An examination period occurs at the end of each semester and term. The examination period is preceded by exam preparation days, which give time for conscientious review, study, and synthesis of the semester's work. The exam preparation and the examination periods are firmly scheduled parts of the semester; students must not make plans that interfere with these important academic activities. Students may not take final examinations early. If illness or other uncontrollable circumstances prevent a student from taking an examination at the scheduled time, that student is responsible to inform the class instructor as soon as possible.

The instructor may give the grade *Incomplete* for nonacademic extenuating circumstances occurring after the discontinuance deadline. The incomplete cannot be given unless the student and instructor together prepare a contractual agreement (see Grading and Records for further information.) In cases where a student has conflicting examinations or more than three examinations in one day, individual arrangement for alternative test times may be made by the instructor.

Registration Holds

The university may place a hold on a student's records that will block registration privileges. The hold will be indicated on the registration system. It is the student's responsibility to contact the appropriate office to clear any holds before attempting to register for classes.

Academic standards:

Academic Support Office (801) 422-2723

Ecclesiastical endorsement:

Honor Code Office (801) 422-2847

Financial status (prior balance):

Student Accounts (801) 422-4104

Graduate school:

Office of Graduate Studies (801) 422-4091

Loans:

Collections Office (801) 422-7648
Financial Aid and Scholarships Office (801) 422-4104

Advisement centers (CAC holds):

Education (801) 422-3426
Engineering and Technology (801) 422-4325
Family, Home, and Social Sciences (801) 422-3541
Fine Arts and Communications (801) 422-3777
Health and Human Performance (801) 422-3638
Humanities (801) 422-4789
International and Area Studies (801) 422-3548
Life Sciences (formerly Biology and Agriculture) (801) 422-3042
Marriott School of Management (801) 422-4285
Nursing (801) 422-4173
Physical and Mathematical Sciences (801) 422-6270
University (801) 422-3826

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Student Academic Record Appeals Process

The Student Academic Record Appeals Process has been established for students who encounter situations involving non-academic extenuating circumstances or emergencies potentially affecting their educational records that fall outside the realm of normal university policy and procedure. The petition process must be initiated within one year from the semester or term in question. It is the student's responsibility to obtain the necessary supporting information from the instructor, physician, employer, etc., to accompany the request. Petition forms may be obtained at the Registrar's Office, B-150 ASB.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Tuition and Fees

Student Services
D-155 ASB
(801) 422-4104

Tuition Rates

Tuition and class fees for all academic programs are established annually by Brigham Young University's Board of Trustees. Tuition rates are based on graduate or undergraduate status, full- or part-time status, and membership in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Church). There are also separate rates for graduate students attending the J. Reuben Clark Law School and the Marriott School of Management.

BYU is owned and operated by the Church, and a significant portion of university operating costs are paid with the tithes of Church members. In recognition of this support, Church members are assessed lower tuition fees than those who are not members. This practice is similar in principle to that of state universities charging higher tuition to nonresidents. Students are considered members of the Church if they have been baptized at any time during the semester or term.

Tuition rates for the 2008–2009 academic year are as follows:

Per Semester (fall or winter)		**Per Term** (spring or summer)	
LDS	Non-LDS	LDS	Non-LDS
Undergraduate Students			
Full-Time			
$2,040	$4,080	$1,020	$2,040
Three-Quarter-Time			
$1,970	$3,955	$985	$1,978
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$209	$418	$209	$418
Graduate Students (other than students in the Law School and Graduate School of Management)			
Full-Time			
$2,580	$5,160	$1,290	$2,580
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$287	$573	$287	$573
Graduate School of Management and Law School Students			
Full-Time			
$4,620	$9,240	$2,310	$4,620
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$513	$1,027	$513	$1,027

The university reserves the right to change tuition and fees without notice.

Noncredit and Audited Course Fees

Tuition for noncredit courses or for courses being audited is charged at the same rate as for credit courses. Noncredit and audit hours will be considered when determining part-time, three-quarter-time, or full-time status for tuition assessment purposes.

Student Status for Tuition Assessment Purposes

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary

Graduate Status. Students (both degree-seeking and non-degree-seeking) who have received their bachelor's degree prior to the beginning of the semester or term for which they are registering. Note that the preceding tuition rate table does not apply to students of the J. Reuben Clark Law School and the Marriott School of Management. Separate tuition and fee schedules are available for these programs within the respective schools.

Full-time Status. Undergraduate students registered for 12.0 or more credit hours per semester or 6.0 or more credit hours per term. For graduate students, full-time status is defined as registration for 8.5 or more credit hours per semester or 4.5 or more credit hours per term.

Three-Quarter-Time Status. Undergraduate students registered for 9.0 to 11.5 credit hours per semester or 4.5 to 5.5 credit hours per term. There is no three-quarter-time status for graduate students. Enrollment as a three-quarter-time student does not entitle the student to physical education suit and facility privileges.

Part-Time Status. Undergraduate students registered for 0.5 to 8.5 credit hours per semester or 0.5 to 4 credit hours per term. For graduate students, part-time status is defined as registration for 0.5 to 8.0 credit hours per semester or 0.5 to 4.0 credit hours per term. Enrollment as a part-time undergraduate student does not entitle the student to health service, student activity privileges, or physical education suit and facility privileges.

Payment of Tuition and Fees

Tuition and fees are considered due and payable seven calendar days prior to the first day of class. Failure to pay by this date will result in holds being placed on the student's account, restricting the ability to add additional classes, unless the student has pending financial aid. Class registrations will be dropped if payment of tuition and fees is not received by midnight on the add deadline. Classes will generally not be dropped if adequate financial aid is pending. However, it is the student's responsibility to ensure that financial aid or other forms of payment are available to satisfy tuition and fees prior to the deadline. Class registrations that are dropped for nonpayment will not be reinstated for payments received after the payment deadline.

Short-Term Loans

The university makes short-term loans available to assist students to meet the tuition payment deadline. These loans are intended to be used for short-duration financing needs. Short-term loans are due as follows:

Semester/Term	Due Date
Fall 2008	November 1, 2007
Winter 2009	March 1, 2008
Spring 2009	June 1, 2008
Summer 2009	August 1, 2008

A $20 processing fee will be charged for each short-term loan. No interest is charged on those loans if they are paid by the due date. Short-term loans outstanding after the due date bear interest at the rate of 12 percent per annum. Holds on registration for future semesters or terms are placed on all student accounts the day the short-term loan is disbursed and are not released until the loan is paid in full. This may affect the ability of some students to take advantage of priority registration.

Pro-Rata Charges for Dropped Classes

Students may drop classes without penalty until the add deadline. After the add deadline, tuition will be recalculated based on the student's current enrollment status. A pro-rata tuition charge will be applied for dropped classes that result in a student moving from full-time to three-quarter-time or three-quarter time to part-time or fewer hours within part-time status. The pro-rata charge applies to tuition and most class fees. Certain class fees relate to the delivery of required supplies or services and are not refundable. The pro-rata charges are as follows:

If class is dropped beginning:	The pro-rata charge will be:
Fall Semester	
September 16, 2008	15%
September 22, 2008	25%
October 27, 2008	50%
November 10, 2008	100%
Winter Semester	
January 20, 2009	15%
January 26, 2009	25%
March 2, 2009	50%
March 16, 2009	100%
Spring Term	
May 6, 2009	15%
May 11, 2009	25%
May 26, 2009	50%
June 1, 2009	100%
Summer Term	
June 30, 2009	15%

July 6, 2009	25%
July 20, 2009	50%
July 27, 2009	100%

The recalculation of tuition and fee charges may result in a refund. The amount of the refund a student will receive is based on the date the classes are dropped, or in the case of an official discontinuance, the date that the student reports such discontinuance to the Discontinuance Office (B-150 ASB).

Any refund due the student will be paid by check through the mail approximately ten days after the classes are dropped. If the student has elected direct deposit for student account refunds, the refund will be deposited into the student's bank. Payments originally paid by credit card will be returned to the credit card. Unpaid university charges may be deducted from the refund amount.

Refunds will not be paid to students whose tuition has been paid by a loan, scholarship, or benefit.

If a student with federal financial aid drops below half-time enrollment (undergraduate, 6 hours per semester or 3 hours per term; graduate, 4.5 hours per semester or 2.5 hours per term), the federal program or lender may require that a portion of the refund be returned.

A petition for exception to the refund schedule will be considered for students forced to discontinue because of circumstances that are beyond their control, such as death in the immediate family, life-threatening situations, medical incapacitation, a university error, or military leave. Students should not submit petitions based on ignorance of university policies and procedures. These will be denied. Petition forms are avialable in D-155 ASB.

Collection of Unpaid Tuition and Fees

BYU retains all legal remedies to collect unpaid tuition, fees, and other amounts due to the university for housing, traffic fines, etc. BYU uses a variety of methods to keep students informed of amounts due the university, including financial Web sites, statements, and various forms of correspondence. It is the student's responsibility to remain aware of obligations to the university and to make payment on a timely basis.

If BYU is unable to collect amounts due the university within a reasonable time, the debt may be referred to an outside collection agency and/or attorney for collection. All collection costs, including collection agency fees, attorney fees, and court costs will be charged to the student's account.

Failure to pay all amounts due BYU, including collection fees, may also result in various actions, including but not limited to withholding services and restricting the student's ability to register for class, participate in graduation, receive a transcript or diploma, or be considered for readmission to the university. The university also reserves the right to report both positive and negative payment histories to credit-reporting agencies.

Payments for Tuition and Fees

Tuition and fees include charges such as tuition, class fees, tuition reassessments, tuition late fees, Study Abroad fees, and health plan charges. Students are responsible to pay the correct amount of tuition, fees, and past due balances in U.S. dollars (checks must be drawn on a U.S. bank). A current billing statement is available on Route Y by clicking the My Financial Center link under the School heading. The following options are available for making tuition and fee payments. For more information on making payments to BYU, please visit http://payments.byu.edu.

Pay Tuition Online

BYU encourages you to take advantage of the fast, easy, and secure way to pay online. Payments may be made online by logging into Route Y and selecting the My Financial Center link under the School heading.

1. **eCheck** (BYU's preferred payment method)
   eCheck is a *free* electronic check option that uses a secure Web transmission to electronically deduct payments directly from a checking or savings account. The payer's bank routing and account numbers are required when making eCheck payments. Payments from mutual fund, money market, line of credit, or brokerage accounts cannot be accepted.

2. **Credit Card with a Service Fee**
   The university no longer accepts credit card payments for tuition and fees directly, but BYU has arranged for a third-party vendor to accept American Express, Discover, and MasterCard. The third party charges the payer a nonrefundable service fee equal to 2.75 percent of the transaction amount. This fee will be in addition to the tuition and fee charges. **Visa is not accepted** because its operating rules prevent participation in service fee programs of this type.

   Debit cards are considered credit cards for tuition and loan payment purposes and would therefore be subject to the same credit card restrictions and service charges. Because eChecks and debit cards both deduct payments directly from a checking or savings account, students can avoid the service charge by choosing the eCheck option.

   Note the Credit Card Refund Policy: Existing credit card regulations prohibit BYU from making a refund to you in cash or check when you make a payment by credit card and there is an adjustment made to the charges paid. When you pay by credit card and there is a reduction in the amount of your charges, we are required to refund the amount back to the credit card you used to make the payment. The third party vendor will not refund any portion of the service fee even though a refund has been made to the credit card.

Pay Tuition by Mail

Check or money order payments may be mailed to Student Financial Services, A-153 ASB, Provo, UT 84602. Please make checks payable to Brigham Young University or BYU. Do not mail cash. Include with your check the student's BYU ID number and the amount to apply to each category.
Training Center

Pay Tuition in Person

Payments may be made throughout the year in person at D-155 ASB. However, during the first two weeks of each semester or term, only limited services are available at this location. Full cashiering services during these periods are available at OneStop Student Services in the Wilkinson Student Center. Tuition may be paid using check, money order, or cash. **Credit cards and the Signature Card cannot be used to pay tuition or fees at BYU cashiering locations** (see Pay Tuition Online above for acceptable use of credit cards). Check or money order payments may also be left in the drop boxes at OneStop Student Services in the Wilkinson Center or D wing on the main floor of the ASB.

Pay Tuition by Telephone

eCheck payments may be made over the telephone by calling (801) 422-4104. Credit card payments for tuition cannot be made over the telephone. Credit card payments for tuition can only be made online through the third-party vendor.

Pay Tuition Through Western Union

This option is probably most advantageous for international payments. Using cash rather than credit card as the payment method will greatly reduce the amount of Western Union fees.

Follow these instructions to make a tuition payment using Western Union Quick Collect:

1. Go to a Western Union agent location. To find a location call toll-free 1-800-325-6000, press 2, 1; or go to the Web site at http://www.westernunion.com
2. Complete the blue Quick Collect form. You will need the following information to complete the form:
   - Pay to: Brigham Young University
   - Code city: BrighamYoung (case sensitive and no spaces)
   - State: UT
   - Account Number: (nine-digit BYU student ID)
3. Provide payment to Western Union
   - Payment amount includes amount owed to BYU plus Quick Collect fee (between $11 and $15 U.S.)
   - $5,000 U.S. limit for each cash transaction
4. Receive the receipt with the ten-digit money transfer control number (MTCN). This number can be used to track your Quick Collect payment. Notification of cash payment is sent within a few minutes.

Pay Tuition by Wire Transfer

To pay tuition using an international or domestic wire transfer, please contact us for wire transfer instructions via phone (801) 422-4104 or via email at wiretransfer@byu.edu.

University Fees

Class Fees

Army ROTC Leadership Laboratory	$40
Ec En 224	11
ExSc 116, 117 (bowling)	45
†ExSc 150, 151, 152, 153 (payable to skating rink)	variable
*ExSc 161, 162, 164 (skiing)	35
†ExSc 175, 176, 177 (payable to scuba facility)	variable
**Geol 410	550
***Geol 490R, 590R	variable
I Sys 100, 101	25
Math 97	75
Mil S 120, 121, 220, 221, 320, 321, 325R, 420, 421	40
Music 160R, 250R, 260R, 359R, 360R, 460R, 560R, 660R	380
PWS 112	90
RMYL 189	100
†RMYL 427	variable
SFL 110, 215, 340	50
SFL 185R, 287, 487	30

*Student must also have equipment and purchase lift passes.

**See department for a refund application.
***See department for a fee card.
†See department for amount.

Class fee refunds are based on the same schedule as listed for tuition refunds. Those with asterisks (*) are exceptions to this schedule and must be requested at the respective academic department.

Materials/Service Fees

The following courses charge fees based on materials consumed or services provided. Contact the individual department or professor to determine the appropriate payment procedure.

CM 105, 155, 210.

EC En 212, 301.

IT 101, 104A,B, 344, 347, 443, 447.

TEE 200, 209, 229, 450, 490R, 593R.

TMA 285, 475R.

VA 133.

VAStu 104, 105, 106, 204R, 205, 206R, 216, 217, 218, 219, 350, 351, 355R, 356R, 358, 359, 456R, 459R, 656R, 659R.

Student Teaching/Practicum Fees

Fingerprint Fee

Students in teacher education must be fingerprinted and pass a background check prior to starting practicum experiences with K–12 students. Fees for fingerprinting and background checks are set by the Utah State Office of Education and are listed on the Education Advisement Center Web site: http://education.byu.edu/eac.

Licensure Fee

Students who meet all program requirements qualify for a Level 1 teaching license in Utah. Fees for licensure are due with the student teaching application. Licensure fees are set by the Utah State Office of Education and are listed on the Office of Field Services Web site: http://education.byu.edu/fieldservices.

Miscellaneous Fees and Fines

Admission evaluation fee (nonrefundable)	$30
Bicycle registration (Provo City license)	1
Change of registration fee—per class (after add deadline)	10
Dishonored check charge	20
Examination, special equivalency	10–20
NDFS-dietetics insurance and ADA dues	48
Graduation (undergraduate) fee (nonrefundable)	15
Identification photo for replacement ID card (no charge for first replacement	10
Incomplete grade contract fee per class (to a maximum of $30)	10
National League of Nursing Diagnostic Exam	40
Physical education locker	5
Traffic violation fines, variable according to violation	5–300
Transcript fee (pay at Records Office)	2

Health Insurance Requirement

BYU requires all three-quarter- and full-time students (9 credit hours or more for a semester; 4.5 credit hours for a term) to carry adequate medical insurance. This applies the entire time a student has continuing status, including students taking a semester or term off. All participants in groups on tour, Study Abroad, or internships are required to carry adequate medical insurance.

Enrollment in the BYU Student Health Plan satisfies the university's insurance requirement, as does enrollment in a group medical plan provided by an employer or a spouse's or parent's employer. We recommend that any other medical insurance plan should:

- provide at least 70 percent coverage for all major medical expenses, including physician, hospital, and ancillary services;
- have an individual annual deductible of no more than $500; and
- have an annual plan limit of no less than $25,000.

Three-quarter- or full-time students must enroll in the BYU Student Health Plan or provide verification of other adequate insurance coverage when first enrolling at BYU and prior to the beginning of fall semester each year thereafter. Students who do not return a properly completed

waiver form via the Web to the BYU Student Health Plan Office prior to the last day to add/drop will be automatically enrolled in and assessed the appropriate premium (single or married student rate) for the BYU Student Health Plan.

The BYU Student Health Plan is an annual plan but is billed and must be paid each semester/term. The health plan fee is due the first day of class each semester or term. Following fall semester, students who will not be attending BYU for one or more semesters or terms (except as described above) are eligible to remain on the BYU Student Health Plan but must continue to pay the health plan fee on a timely basis. Following fall semester, students who will no longer be attending BYU may also opt out of participation in the health plan. If you choose to not remain on the student health plan, you must submit in writing such decision to the BYU Student Health Plan Office by the due date of the plan fee.

For the latest BYU Student Health Plan fees, check the Web site at http://health.byu.edu/healthplan/index.php.

Appeals

Students with unusual circumstances may appeal for special consideration of any item in this section to the Student Services Office. Appeal forms may be obtained at the Student Services windows at D-155 ASB.

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved
XHTML CSS 508

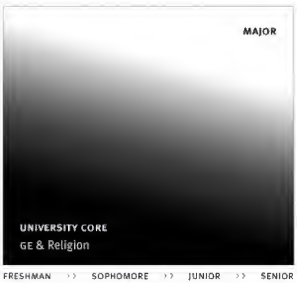
The University Core: General and Religious Education

The BYU Baccalaureate: The Ideal of Integration

Many people, when they think of university education, think primarily of the major—a bachelor's degree in, for example, economics or chemistry or engineering. But a baccalaureate is much more than a major and much more than job-based training in a particular field. The very wording of the diploma does not state the major: something greater has been earned and conferred—a *university* baccalaureate.

There are three formal components to the baccalaureate at Brigham Young University: religious education, general education, and education in a major. Of these, the first two constitute the *university core*. In accordance with The Aims of a BYU Education—which invites each student and every member of the university community to wholeness—each of the three components complements the others. They are not partitioned off from one another; none claims preeminence; together they comprise a whole, a harmony.

The following visual model differs from the way many think about general education and religion courses, as things to get out of the way as quickly as possible:



Skills and depth are developed over time as the student progresses in both the core and the major; breadth, unfolding partly from historical perspective, ought to characterize the major as well as the core. The relationship between core and major will vary in any given year according to the competing demands upon the student's attention. However, students should strive to develop their programs in such a way that a lively interrelationship between the university core and the major, in which each nourishes and informs the other, is pursued over their entire undergraduate experience.

The major and the core blend into each other. It is here that open electives play their particular role. Without prolonging time at the university, each student enjoys the latitude—and, for some, ample latitude—to design an individual educational experience. Electives enrich; choices that students make about electives define what is unique about their education. Having found a core science course

engaging, for example, a student might take cognate courses to explore the subject more deeply.

Having completed the 14-hour religion requirement, students are not barred from taking further religion courses. Majoring in a technical field, students might enlarge their experience of the liberal arts beyond what the core requires. A humanities major might choose to complete an applied minor in computing skills or to construct an unofficial "mini-minor" of courses that open up a particular opportunity for employment or further education at a professional school.

Students are encouraged to acquire skills in both foreign language and mathematics, even though only one of these is required by the core. Additional curricular and extracurricular opportunities in the Honors Program are open to all students at whatever level they might wish to be involved.

Why a University Core?

All students at BYU should be taught the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Any education is inadequate which does not emphasize that His is the only name given under heaven whereby mankind can be saved....

Because the gospel encourages the pursuit of all truth, students at BYU should receive a broad university education. The arts, letters, and sciences provide the core of such an education, which will help students think clearly, communicate effectively, understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as that of others, and establish clear standards of intellectual integrity. (BYU Mission Statement)

Most graduates, five years after completing their degrees, are not employed directly in the areas of their majors, and studies show that those do best in the long term whose breadth of education, rather than specialized training, has given them versatility. A university provides marketable skills; it bestows credentials necessary to some future goal; its graduates, statistically, make more money. But students who enroll at the university seeking only these things—or worse, students who graduate having sought only these things—cheat themselves of the best the university has to offer.

Students benefit most who desire to savor and to ponder, to recognize (in whatever eventual major) the hidden likenesses among the subjects they study, to aim at integration and wholeness. Students benefit most who take the university with them: changed by their experience, they have developed educated habits of mind; they have deepened their faith; they have learned to integrate the sacred and the secular; and they have learned that the craving for knowledge is not fully capable of satisfaction within a lifetime. Students benefit most who become lifelong learners, engaged in service to their fellow human beings.

That it integrates sacred and secular education is the hallmark of a BYU baccalaureate. All disciplines at BYU are "bathed in the light and color of the restored gospel" (Aims, "Spiritually Strengthening"). Religion courses themselves—both Doctrinal Foundation and electives—are not intended as only a devotional supplement to the educational enterprise of the university. At once rigorous and inspiring, they engage the mind and the heart in an ever deeper understanding of the gospel of Jesus Christ through close and meticulous study of the scriptures and the teachings of the living prophets.

General education joins with religious education to make *university* education different from specialized vocational training. It builds a foundation for intellectual development; it increases our understanding of civilization—of humankind's most valuable knowledge and achievements in the arts, letters, and sciences. General education teaches us the importance of critical thinking, an awareness of the past, aesthetic sensibility, and moral judgment. These, together with the training provided in verbal and quantitative skills amd in manipulating symbolic systems, help prepare us for a lifetime of learning, effective communication, responsible action, forming and judging arguments, and appreciating and creating the good and the beautiful.

Administration of the University Core

The university core is administered collaboratively by the deans of Undergraduate Education and Religious Education under the direction of the academic vice president. Religious Education is

responsible for the Doctrinal Foundation and Religion Electives components and the courses that meet these requirements; Undergraduate Education is responsible for the general education components. The success of the core depends upon dedicated faculty from throughout the university. The Faculty General Education Council, chaired by the associate dean of Undergraduate Education for General Education, reviews and approves all courses meeting general education requirements within the university core.

Modification of the GE Program and Implementation of the University Core in 2004

A revised general education (GE) program and university core (in which GE and religion requirements are combined) was implemented in fall 2004. Students who enter BYU fall 2004 or thereafter must complete the new core program described below. Students who have taken classes at BYU before fall 2004 have the option to continue with the previous GE program. These continuing students should visit their college advisement centers to discuss the optimal program, given their current status.

The modifications in general education, effective fall 2004, have been made in an effort to achieve closer alignment with The Aims of a BYU Education, helping to assure that each student develop valuable skills and breadth in fundamental areas of human knowledge. To accommodate these changes, earlier restrictions against double-counting have been abandoned. It is now be possible, in some instances, for two requirements to be met by the same class. Among these modifications are the following:

- A new Quantitative Reasoning requirement replaces the previous one in Pre-College Math.
- A Global and Cultural Awareness requirement has been added, with many possibilities for double-counting.
- The former Arts and Letters requirement has been separated into two, with one course in each area.
- It is possible to double-count one Civilization 2 class (designated sections only) for either the Arts, Letters, or Global and Cultural Awareness requirement.
- Social Science has been grouped with Biological Science and Physical Science under Scientific Principles and Reasoning and limited to courses grounded in scientific method.
- A new instruction course, in conjunction with two activities classes, has been added to the Wellness requirement as an option.
- An oral communication component has been added to the Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.
- The minimum credit needed to complete the GE program has decreased from 34.5 credits to 31.5 credits, freeing up further space for open electives.

Who Must Complete University Core Requirements?

All students who receive undergraduate degrees from BYU are required to complete the new core requirements as outlined below, except those students who have taken classes at BYU before fall semester 2004. These latter students may complete either the new university core program or the previous GE program. Information on the previous GE program can be obtained in the college advisement centers. Students completing requirements under the previous GE program must do so before fall semester 2008.

Description of the University Core

The new university core comprises five categories titled Doctrinal Foundation; The Individual and Society; Skills; Arts, Letters, and Sciences; and Core Enrichment: Electives.

These areas are explained below. Brief statements of the ways to satisfy these requirements are provided in the accompanying table.

Consult the University Core/General Education Courses section of the current class schedule for an up-to-date list of approved courses. The current class schedule is available online at http://saas.byu.edu/classschedule

Doctrinal Foundation and Religion Electives

Religious Education administers and offers courses in ancient and modern scripture, Church history and doctrine, and related subjects. Together these help students toward an ever deeper understanding of "the doctrines, the covenants, the ordinances, the standard works, and the history of the restored gospel" (Aims, "Intellectually Enlarging").

Because The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints maintains that regular gospel study is a necessary part of the university experience, religion courses are provided so that students may progress in their religious understanding and convictions simultaneously with their educational progress in secular fields. As such, religion courses are not meant to be a mere devotional supplement but an integral part of the university curriculum that conforms to university standards and expectations. Therefore, while students are enrolled at BYU, they are required to take religion courses from BYU.

Doctrinal Foundation

The heart of the university core's religion component is the doctrinal foundation based upon careful, informed, and reflective study of sacred scripture and doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

While enrolled at BYU, all students must complete the Doctrinal Foundation requirement of the university core as outlined in the chart below. Note that the requirement is different for transfer students. Since the religion requirement is determined by the number of transfer hours, if is important for each student to refer to their official personal progress report or consult with a university advisement center to determine their official status and their corresponding religion requirement for graduation.

It is strongly recommended that the Book of Mormon requirement (Rel A 121/H *and* 122/H) be taken the first year at the university. **All students who have completed an LDS mission and have not previously completed these courses must enroll in Book of Mormon sections designated for returned missionaries.**

Students who are **not LDS** are strongly encouraged to enroll in Rel C 100, Introduction to Mormonism, during their first semester in residence. This course is designed to be informational, to introduce students to the culture, scriptures, and distinctive doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, and to prepare them for subsequent religion classes. Rel C 100 may be used to fill either the New Testament or Doctrine and Covenants Doctrinal Foundation requirement.

Religion Electives

In addition to fulfilling the Doctrinal Foundation requirement, all students are required to take a specified number of BYU religion course hours as outlined in the chart below. Fulfilling these hours can be accomplished by taking BYU Doctrinal Foundation courses and/or BYU religion elective courses intended to enrich the Doctrinal Foundation with rigorous study from a variety of religious topics dealing with ancient scripture and Church history and doctrine. **Religion courses taken from LDS institutes of religion (including stake institutes) or Church Educational System schools (BYU–Idaho or BYU–Hawaii) will not fulfill the required number of BYU religion hours to be taken by each student. Only religion hours taken at the Provo campus will fulfill this requirement.**

Religion courses taken at the BYU Salt Lake Center and through the BYU Independent Study program are considered part of the BYU campus and will fulfill the required number of religion courses required of each student.

Because regular gospel study should be a continuous part of a student's university experience, it would be ideal to take one religion class each semester of enrollment. **To encourage this, no more than 4 hours of religion credit per semester (spring/summer counts as one semester) may be counted toward the required religion hours to be taken at BYU.**

No religion course numbered in the 500s and 600s may be applied toward undergraduate religion credit.

Religion credit from non-LDS universities will not be counted toward fulfilling any part of the religion requirement.

Total Hours Transferred to BYU	Total BYU Religion Hours to Take While Enrolled at BYU	Doctrinal Foundation Courses Required for Graduation**
0–14.9	14	Book of Mormon (Rel A 121/H and 122/H), New Testament (Rel A 111 or 200 or 211/H or 212/H or 310 or 311), Doctrine and Covenants (Rel C 324/H or 325/H).
15–29.9	12	
30–44.9	10	
45–59.9	8	
60–74.9	6	Book of Mormon (Rel A 121/H and 122/H), Doctrine and Covenants (Rel C 324/H or 325/H).
75–89.9	4*	
90 or more	2*	Book of Mormon (Rel A 121/H and 122/H).
* More credits may be needed if the Doctrinal Foundation requirement has not been completed. There are no exceptions to the Book of Mormon requirement. **These courses may be transferred from LDS institutes, BYU–Hawaii, or BYU–Idaho but must correspond with BYU courses (number/content and hours) and will not reduce the number of total BYU religion hours that must be taken while enrolled at BYU.		

The Individual and Society

The Individual and Society requirements inspire students to continue learning and serving throughout their lives. Students will actively participate in solving family, professional, religious, and social problems after leaving BYU. Under the Individual and Society category are grouped the areas of Wellness and Citizenship, the latter of which includes American Heritage and Global and Cultural Awareness.

The Wellness requirement provides instruction based on current scientific evidence and revealed knowledge about what constitutes a healthy lifestyle and offers practical experience in fitness and wellness. It provides instruction in health principles for lifelong physical well-being and emphasizes the underlying principles of cultivating a "sound mind in a sound body."

American Heritage gives students an introduction to the political and economic foundations of the American democratic system and helps students appreciate the unique contribution of America to modern civilization. The Global and Cultural Awareness requirement ensures that students develop an "informed awareness of the peoples, cultures, languages, and nations of the world." Students understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as others and are prepared to "go forth to serve."

Skills

In our modern, complex society, the ability to communicate effectively is deemed a crucial skill. Under the Skills category are grouped the following requirements: first, under the heading Effective Communication is First-Year Writing, followed by Advanced Written and Oral Communication; second, Quantitative Reasoning; and third, Languages of Learning. All these requirements convey information and understanding. First-Year Writing teaches methods of library research, text analysis, and writing skills in different genres and styles. These essential skills will be used and expanded in all succeeding years of university work. Once students have identified an area for major study, the Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement introduces them to the discourse and documentation style of their chosen discipline.

To function in a technological society, a basic knowledge of mathematics as a means of communication and problem solving is essential. Quantitative Reasoning requires all students to certify a basic level of

numeracy, either with an appropriately high score on the mathematics section of the ACT or SAT exams or by completion of a BYU course. Then, under the Languages of Learning requirement, students gain advanced symbolic language skills in mathematics, statistics, or a foreign language that broadly applies to a variety of disciplines. Students thus achieve an exposure to cultures and to the ways in which practitioners of the language structure their knowledge.

Arts, Letters, and Sciences

The university's Mission Statement asserts that the "arts, letters, and sciences provide the core of [a broad university] education." These requirements build upon work in other categories of the core by developing "historical perspective" and "a lively appreciation of the artistic, literary, and intellectual achievements of human cultures" and by extending the student's understanding of "basic concepts of the . . . sciences," including "a recognition of the power and limitations of the scientific method" (*Aims,* "Intellectually Enlarging"). This category comprises a Civilization sequence, separate requirements in Arts and in Letters, and requirements in the Biological, Physical, and Social Sciences. The Civilization requirement provides a historical framework and a consideration of important works and themes. Through the Arts and Letters requirements, students deepen their appreciation of artistic and literary works and grow in their capacity to analyze, interpret, and draw justifiable implications from their reading and from their experience with the visual and performing arts.

The area of Scientific Principles and Reasoning contains three requirements: Biological Science, Physical Science, and Social Science. These requirements help develop an understanding of scientific reasoning and the scientific method and expose students to the excitement of discovery in these separate fields. Students will be able to evaluate scientific data to make rational decisions on science-related issues that will affect their lives and community.

Core Enrichment: Electives

This element of the core is in two parts: Religion Electives, which are discussed above in conjunction with the Doctrinal Foundation; and Open Electives, which vary according to the number of credit hours required by the major and other factors. As mentioned, one of the changes in the new general education program implemented fall 2004 was a reduction in hours, aimed at freeing up space for further open electives. Thoughtful choice of electives allows students to design a unique and enriched educational experience. Some suggestions on how these electives might be used are given above under the heading The BYU Baccalaureate: The Ideal of Integration.

Selection and Timing of GE Classes

Each GE requirement is completed by taking one course or a combination of courses, chosen from the approved list in the table found in the current class schedule. Single-course options are most often designed for students whose major is topically distant from the requirement. On the other hand, combination-of-course options are often designed for majors related to the requirement, and may include courses a student might take to satisfy a major or minor requirement. Students should carefully consider which option best meets their educational needs, keeping in mind the aim of pursuing a lively interrelationship between the core and the major over the whole undergraduate experience.

Not all courses listed in the class schedule are appropriate for all students. For instance, some have prerequisites, some are upper-division courses, and some are designed primarily for certain majors. These courses are labeled in the university core table as either "has prerequisite" or "not for all students." Students should avoid registering for courses for which they are not academically prepared and should consult with the class instructor if they are unsure.

Occasionally it is possible to complete more than one GE requirement with a single course. For example, Civilization 2 courses are typically designated either "ARTS" for Arts-focused, "LTRS" for Letters-focused, or "GCA" for Global and Cultural Awareness-focused. A Civilization 2 (ARTS) course can be used to complete both the Civiliztion 2 requirement and the Arts requirement; a Civilization 2 (LTRS) course can be used to complete both the Civilization 2 requirement and the Letters requirement; and a Civilization 2 (GCA) course can be used to complete both the Civilization 2 requirement and the Global

and Cultural Awareness requirement. (Note: A Civilization 2 course can double count only once—either for Arts or Letters or Global and Cultural Awareness.) Students are encouraged to use such "Double-counting" sparingly—the more GE courses a student takes, the greater the breadth and value of the overall educational experience. The individual college advisement center is a valuable resource concerning questions of course selection, timing, and planning.

For First-Year Students. Although the time to complete GE requirements varies according to the major, all new students should complete First-Year Writing and the two Book of Mormon classes during their freshman year. First-Year Writing may be taken in either semester of the first year. It is also recommended that students who, because of an ACT math subscore below 22, need to fill the Quantitative Reasoning requirement do so in their first-year, and that all new students begin work in the mathematics or foreign language options under Languages of Learning.

Students planning to satisfy the Scientific Principles and Reasoning/Biological Science,/Physical Science requirements with the one-course options (e.g., Bio 100, Phy S 100) should also complete these, along with American Heritage, during their first two years, making some progress on them in their first year. Civilization courses are designed as sophomore-level courses, although some programs include them during the freshman year. Advice as to when to complete the other GE requirements can be obtained at college advisement centers or department offices.

The University Core and the Honors Program

The Honors Program, which is open to all interested students, offers an array of enriched courses that simultaneously satisfy university core and honors graduation requirements. These courses take two forms: those offered through the Honors Program proper (designated Honrs), which explore disciplinary topics in creative and innovative ways; and honors sections of departmental courses (designated by /H or a title that begins with the abbreviation *Honors*). See the Honors Program section of this catalog for a fuller description. Additional information may be obtained from the Honors Advisement Center, 102A MSRB, (801) 422-5497, or by consulting the Honors Program Course Guide at www.byu.edu/honors/.

The University Core and Freshman Academy

Many courses meeting university core requirements can be taken in an enhanced learning-community format through Freshman Academy. This one-semester program, open to all first-year students, helps them to make important connections within the university during their first semester at BYU. There are both nonhonors and honors options within the academy. A brief description of Freshman Academy is found in the Undergraduate Education section of this catalog. For fuller details see the academy Web site, frac@byu.edu, or call (801) 422-8176 or 1-877-890-5451.

Ways to Complete GE Requirements Other Than by Course Work

In addition to completing approved courses, students may satisfy individual GE requirements within the university core by (1) transferring acceptable credit from other academic institutions, (2) receiving credit from selected Advanced Placement (AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) examinations, or (3) passing exemption or challenge examinations offered for some classes at the university.

1. Transfer Credit. The application of transfer credit to GE requirements is handled by the Transfer Evaluation Office, A-183 ASB, (801) 422-2500. Articulation agreements have been arranged with several junior and community colleges to facilitate the transfer process for students who have completed certain associate degrees. The Transfer Evaluation Office can be contacted for up-to-date information regarding the status of those agreements with other institutions.

2. Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate Credit. The results of some Advanced Placement (AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) exams may be used to meet certain GE requirements and to obtain general university credit. AP or IB credit posted to a transfer institution will be evaluated upon BYU's standards and not those of the transfer institution. The Advisement Support Office can be contacted for details regarding credit hours and exemption from GE requirements for both

AP and IB exams.

Note: College Level Examination Program. BYU stopped giving credit for general exams in 2000. At this time BYU does not give credit for subject exams either. CLEP credit posted to another institution's transcript is reevaluated based on BYU's standards.

3. Exemption and Challenge Examinations. Some requirements can be accomplished by successfully completing an examination. Two types of examinations are available: the exemption exam and the challenge exam. The primary difference between an examption exam and a challenge exam is that an exemption exam is used exclusively to fulfill a general education requirement. No academic credit or letter grade is posted to the transcript. The challenge exam, however, is not restricted to GE courses, and academic credit and a letter grade may be posted to the transcript if the student so choose. A student may only take an exemption or challenge exam for a single course only once during each semester or term. Students do not have to be enrolled in a course to take an exemption or challenge exam. However, some of the exams are given early enough each semester/term so that students who are enrolled and pass the exam may withdraw from the course. Students not enrolled in a course have an opportunity to take the challenge or exemption exams offered at the Testing Center.

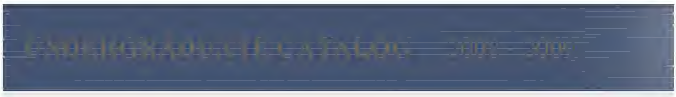
Obtaining Help with Specific Questions Concerning General Education

The essential information concerning general education is found in this catalog or online at http://saas.byu.edu/classschedule. However, the recommended source of information and advice about university core requirements is the student's college advisement center. The ten college advisement centers, together with the University Advisement Center, 2500 WSC, provide assistance with registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, and many other aspects of academic life. Computer terminals are available in the advisement centers and other locations on campus to provide students with an up-to-date report of their academic status. Students can access a progress report (formerly Advisement by Computer or ABC Report) through Route Y on the BYU home page.

The University Core

The current University Core details are found in the Class Schedule.

Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508



Printable PDF

Course Numbering System

A course's level of instruction is shown by the number assigned to it:

Course Number	Type of Course
1 to 99	Preparatory and remedial (noncredit)
100 to 299	Lower-division
300 to 499	Upper-division
500 to 599	Advanced undergraduate or graduate
600 to 799	Graduate

Credit-Hour Designations

One semester hour of credit represents a minimum of one hour of instruction per week in a semester or two hours of instruction per week in a term (e.g., a three-hour class will meet at least three hours per week). The three-number code that appears in parentheses immediately after each course title has the following significance:

First number	Semester hours of credit
Second number	Class hours of lecture, recitation, or seminar meeting per week
Third number	Laboratory hours required per week or hours of field study or individual research per week, beyond the hours shown in the second number

Abbreviations and Symbols

Course Listings

The following abbreviations and symbols are used in the course listings:

A,B	Indicate parts of a course to be taken in separate enrollments.
Arr.	Credit, class, or laboratory hours arranged
ea.	Credit-hour designation applies to each registration
M	Majors-only course
R	Designates a course that may be repeated for credit. Two R courses with the same number on a transcript are treated as two independent courses. An R course cannot be repeated to raise the grade received; all grades will be counted because it is assumed that the subject matter varies from time to time.

When Courses Are Offered

The following abbreviations are used following the credit hour designation on some courses to indicate when the course is offered:

F	Fall semester
W	Winter semester
Sp	Spring term
Su	Summer term
Alt. sem.	Alternate semester
Alt. term	Alternate term
Alt. yr.	Alternate year
Even yr.	Even year
Odd yr.	Odd year
1st blk.	First block
2nd blk.	Second block
On dem.	On demand

Subject Area and Abbreviations

Subject Area	Abbreviation
Accountancy, School of	Acc
Aerospace Studies	Aeros
American Heritage	A Htg
American Studies	Am St
Anthropology	Anthr
Biology	Bio
Business Management	Bus M
Managerial Economics	ManEc
Chemical Engineering	Ch En
Chemistry and Biochemistry	Chem
Civil and Environmental Engineering	CE En
Communication Disorders	ComD
Communications	Comms
Computer Science	C S
Counseling Psychology and Special Education	CPSE
Dance	Dance
Economics	Econ
Educational Leadership and Foundations	EdLF
Electrical and Computer Engineering	EC En
Engineering and Technology Education	Eng T
English	Engl
Exercise Sciences	ExSc
Family Life, School of	SFL
Fine Arts	FnArt
Freshman Academy	Univ
Geography	Geog
Geological Sciences	Geol
Health/Physical Education	HEPE
Health Science	Hlth
History	Hist
Honors Program	Honrs

Humanities	Hum
Classics	Clscs
Classical Civilization	Cl Cv
Comparative Literature	CmLit
Information Systems	I Sys
Instructional Psychology and Technology	IP&T
International and Area Studies	IAS
Ancient Near Eastern Studies	ANES
Asian Studies	Asian
European Studies	Europ
International Relations	IR
Latin American Studies	Lt Am
Middle East Studies/Arabic	MESA
Languages	
Afrikaans	Afrik
Arabic	Arab
Bulgarian	Bulgn
Cantonese	Cant
Chinese	Chin
Czech	Czech
Danish	Dansh
Dutch	Dutch
Estonian	Eston
Finnish	Finn
French	Fren
German	Germ
Greek	Greek
Hebrew	Heb
Hungarian	Hung
Icelandic	IcInd
Italian	Ital
Japanese	Japan
Korean	Korea
Latin	Latin
Latvian	Latvi
Lithuanian	Lithu
Near Eastern Languages	Ne Lg
Norwegian	Norwe
Polish	Polsh
Portuguese	Port
Romanian	Rom
Russian	Russ
Scandinavian	Scand
Serbo-Croatian	SrbCr
Slovenian	Sln
Spanish	Span
Swedish	Swed
Ukrainian	Ukrai
Welsh	Welsh
Language Studies, Center for	FLang

Training Center

Law School	Law
Life Sciences	LfSci
Linguistics	Ling
American Sign Language	ASL
Computers and the Humanities	CHum
English as a Second Language	ESL
English Language	ELang
Mathematics	Math
Mathematics Education	MthEd
Mechanical Engineering	Me En
Microbiology and Molecular Biology	MMBio
Military Science	Mil S
Music	Music
Neuroscience Center	Neuro
Nursing	Nurs
Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science	NDFS
Organizational Leadership and Strategy	Org B
Management Communication	M Com
Philosophy	Phil
Physical Science	Phy S
Physics and Astronomy	Phscs
Physiology and Developmental Biology	PDBio
Plant and Wildlife Sciences	PWS
Political Science	Pl Sc
Psychology	Psych
Public Management, Romney Institute of	P Mgt
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership	RMYL
Religious Education	
Ancient Scripture	Rel A
Church History and Doctrine	Rel C
Religious Education	Rel E
Social Work, School of	Soc W
Sociology	Soc
Statistics	Stat
Student Development	StDev
Teacher Education	
Early Childhood Education	ECE
Elementary Education	El Ed
Secondary Education	Sc Ed
Teaching English Language Learners	TELL
Technology, School of	Tech
Construction Management	CM
Facility and Property Management	FPM
Industrial Design	InDes
Information Technology	IT
Manufacturing Engineering Technology	Mfg
Technology and Engineering Education	TEE
Theatre and Media Arts	TMA
Visual Arts	
Art History and Curatorial Studies	ArtHC

Please report any problems to

Visual Arts Animation	VAAnm
Visual Arts Core	VA
Visual Arts Design	VADes
Visual Arts Education	VAEdu
Visual Arts Graphic Design	VAGD
Visual Arts Illustration	VAIll
Visual Arts Photography	VAPho
Visual Arts Studio	VAStu
Women's Studies	WS

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

David O. McKay School of Education

301 MCKB
(801) 422-3694

Dean: K. Richard Young, Professor, Counseling Psychology and Special Education
Associate Dean: Barbara Culatta, Professor, Communication Disorders
Associate Dean: Marie Tuttle, Teaching Professor, Teacher Education

The five departments in the David O. McKay School of Education are:

Communication Disorders
Counseling Psychology and Special Education
Educational Leadership and Foundations
Instructional Psychology and Technology
Teacher Education

The principal purposes of the David O. McKay School of Education are:

1. Preparing teachers for public and private schools;
2. Providing graduate programs for the preparation of school principals, counselors, school psychologists, curriculum supervisors, speech-language pathologists, and master teachers;
3. Offering research-based graduate programs; and
4. Researching educational processes and issues.

McKay School Student Services Center

Jay Oliver, Supervisor
120 MCKB
(801) 422-3426

The McKay School of Education Sudent Services Center is designed to centrally locate a variety of programs for the purpose of better servicing students needs. Three major programs housed in the Student Services Center includes the Education Advisement and Certification Office, the Field Services Office, and the Scholarship Office.

Education Advisement and Certification Office

The Education Advisement and Certification Office assists students from the beginning of the freshman year through graduation and teacher licensure. Students majoring in elementary education, early childhood education, special education, or communication disorders are advised concerning general education and major requirements, graduation requirements, and teacher licensure procedures.

Secondary education majors in social science receive their total program advisement from the Education Advisement and Certification Office. Other secondary education majors receive advisement in general education and major requirements from their respective college advisement centers. All majors receive licensure advisement in the Education Advisement and Certification Office.

Students are encouraged to visit their advisement centers on a regular basis. Forms are available on the Web site:
http://education.byu.edu/eac/index.html

Field Services Office

The Field Services Office assists students with student teaching and internship placements in local partnership schools and in schools selected for national and international programs. Students must make application and receive clearance for student teaching and internships by submitting a Student Teaching / Internship Application to Field Services, 120 MCKB. Forms are available on the Field Services Web site:
http://www.education.byu.edu/fieldservices/index.html.

Scholarship Office

The McKay School of Education Scholarship Office provides a variety of private scholarships, grants and loans to students majoring in a teaching program and other McKay School majors or programs. The scholarship, loan, and grant application is available online at
http://education.byu.edu/deans/scholarships.html.

Career Placement Office—Education

Lisa Christensen, Supervisor
2400 WSC
(801) 422-6934

E-mail: education_placement@byu.edu

The Education Placement Office seeks to assist students and alumni in their career search by providing students with tools, information, and encouragement to perform a successful job search. Students may register with the Education Placement Office by going to http://educationplacement.byu.edu and following the placement file Web site links. Registrants gain access to many valuable services including information and advisement on resumes, interviewing, networking, and teacher fair participation. The placement office also schedules recruiters and advertises job postings received from school districts across the nation and internationally.

Acceptance into Teacher Education Licensure Programs

Acceptance into teacher education licensure programs in the David O. McKay School of Education is based on a student's application and admission criteria, including an FBI background clearance. The David O. McKay School of Education seeks students who attain high educational standards and who evidence aptitude for teaching.

Secondary education majors are encouraged to take Sc Ed 276R in their sophomore year. Early childhood education and special education majors must complete their "Exploratory Experience in Education" (see advisor for details) before the final semester of their sophomore year, after which formal acceptance into professional program in the David O. McKay School of Education normally occurs.

Withdrawals. Students who withdraw from the university or who otherwise interrupt their education (excepting spring and summer terms) must expect, on returning to the university, to meet the most recent requirements for teacher education licensure programs.

Transfer Students. Students who transfer to the David O. McKay School of Education from a two-year college, another university, or another college within BYU must meet the requirements for acceptance set forth above.

Preparation of Teachers

Candidates for all teacher preparation programs are required to complete an application that includes core criteria for each program. Applications are available online at http://education.byu.edu/ted for all teaching majors except special education.

Fingerprint and Background Check

All candidates for teacher licensure are required by state statute to be fingerprinted and pass an FBI background check before participating in required field experiences. Fingerprinting can be done in the Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB. Refer to the advisement center webstie: http://education.byu.edu.eac/index.html for a fingerprinting schedule. Allow from five to six weeks for fingerprints to be processed. FBI background clearance is valid for only three years. If clearance expires before graduation, candidates must repeat the fingerprinting and clearance process, including a new fee payment.

Failing to expunge a police record prior to the background check may result in a blocked registration while a panel reviews the charges. Candidates who cannot pass an FBI background check will be removed from the teacher education licensure program.

Early Childhood Teaching. Students who want to teach young children from prekindergarten through grade 3 should register in the Department of Teacher Education. Students receive advisement from the David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office. Prior application and acceptance are required to enroll in the professional education course sequence. Students should plan their programs and course schedules with the designated advisors in the Education Advisement and Certification Office. Elementary education majors may elect to fullfill certification requirements for teaching P–K by completing a subject area emphasis in early childhood education. Contact the Education Advisement and Certification Office for further details.

Elementary School Teaching. Elementary education majors should check with their advisor in the Education Advisement and Certification Office for modifications to the program. An accepted application is required for admission to the elementary education licensure program. Applications must be completed before the final semester of the sophomore year. Applicants must demonstrate and maintain established standards for personal conduct and interpersonal skills as outlined in the program.

Students interested in elementary school teaching register in the Department of Teacher Education. Prior application and acceptance are required to take the professional sequence. Courses and prerequisites are listed in the Teacher Education section of this catalog. Students majoring in elementary education should plan their programs with the designated advisors in the Education Advisement and Certification Office.

Secondary School Teaching. Students who plan a career in secondary school teaching should register in the department of their academic major, except for social science majors, who register in the Department of Teacher Education. There is no major in secondary education per se, but students must complete professional education requirements as well as an academic teaching major or composite major. Some teaching majors require a teaching minor. Students should begin their professional preparation (Sc Ed 276R) during the sophomore year to facilitate scheduling the balance of the licensure program. For course listings and prerequisites, see the Department of Teacher Education section of this catalog. Students should plan their program with the designated advisors in their major advisement center.

Special Education Teaching. Students who plan to teach K–12 students with disabilities should apply through the Department of Counseling Psychology and Special Education. Application materials for the program are available online at http://education.byu.edu/cpse/undergradapp.pdf. Both an accepted application and successful completion of the "Special Education Exploratory Experience" packet are required for admission. These must be completed before the final semester of the sophomore year so that alternate educational plans can be made—without prolonging the time to graduation—if the student is denied admittance into the special education program.

Applicants must demonstrate and maintain established standards for personal conduct and interpersonal skills as outlined. The program includes multiple practica in the schools, and spring/summer enrollment is required. In addition to core courses, majors select an area of emphasis in either mild/ moderate or severe disabilities. Students receive advisement from the Education Advisement and Certification Office.

Communication Disorders. Students interested in helping people who have language, speech, and hearing problems can major in communication disorders. The undergraduate major is open (no application is required) and students should formally request this major at the Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB. The major is primarily preprofessional. It prepares students for graduate study in either speech-language pathology (requiring a master's degree) or audiology (requiring a doctor's degree). The major focuses on the nature and characteristics of normal and impaired human communication.

Student Teaching. The culminating experience for students in teacher education is a student teaching assignment in a public school classroom under the supervision of mentor teachers and university supervisors. Students must plan their programs carefully to meet requirements for student teaching.

Internships. Internship appointments in a public school are available and may substitute for student teaching. Internship appointments are for a full year and carry a modest stipend. Interested students should contact their major supervisor or liaison.

Application for Licensure

The licensure of teachers is a function of the Utah State Office of Education (USOE). Requirements for Utah licensure are available in the Education Advisement and Certification Office. As licensure requirements are frequently updated, students should check the Web sites and attend the update sessions offered by the Department of Teacher Education to stay informed. Although such modifications are not retroactive, they may still affect the uncompleted portion of a student's program.

Prior to graduation, students are responsible to take the required Praxis II Content Test, to have the test score sent to BYU, to pay the state licensing fees, and to check that their fingerprint background clearance is still current. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements, contact the Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

Students who apply for Utah licensure must have the recommendation of the dean of the David O. McKay School of Education. Students are encouraged to plan their programs with the assistance of advisors in the Education Advisement and Certification Office so that they will be assured of meeting requirements for licensure.

Certification/Licensure in Other States. Under reciprocity agreements, Utah licensure is accepted in those states where such agreements are in effect. Specific information is available in the Education Advisement and Certification Office. Students who plan to certify/license in another state should contact that state for requirements beyond those in Utah as early in their programs as possible.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology

270 CB
(801) 422-4326

Dean: Alan R. Parkinson, Professor, Mechanical Engineering
Associate Dean: David K. Anthony
Associate Dean: John N. Harb, Professor, Chemical Engineering
Associate Dean: Spencer P. Magleby, Professor, Mechanical Engineering

The Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology is accredited under the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology (ABET) for all engineering and technology programs. The men and women who have graduated from our college will be prepared for entry into the finest graduate schools or workplaces. The mission of the Fulton College is to develop men and women of faith, character, and technical ability who will become outstanding leaders throughout the world.

Alphabetical list of majors offered in the College of Engineering and Technology:

Chemical Engineering (Ch En)
Civil and Environmental Engineering (CE En)
Construction Management (CM)
Electrical and Computer Engineering (EC En)
Facilities Management (FM)
Industrial Design (InDes)
Information Technology (IT)
Manufacturing Engineering and Technology (Mfg)
Mechanical Engineering (Me En)
Technology and Engineering Education (TEE)

Minors offered in the College of Engineering and Technology:

Information Technology (IT)
Manufacturing (Mfg)

See the department sections in this catalog for details regarding these programs or go to http://www.et.byu.edu.

College Advisement Center (CAC)

Pamela O. Williamson, Supervisor
Judith Ann Benedict, Advisor
264 CB
(801) 422-4325

The college advisement center advisors are available to assist students with academic planning and information about majors, the university core, changing majors, application for graduation, scholarships, and university policies and procedures.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

990 SWKT
(801) 422-2083

Dean: David B. Magleby, Professor, Political Science
Associate Dean: Stephen J. Bahr, Professor, Sociology
Associate Dean: Craig H. Hart, Professor, School of Family Life
Associate Dean: Elaine Walton, Professor, School of Social Work

Academic Departments and Curriculum Areas

American Heritage
Anthropology
Economics
Family Life
Geography
History
Neuroscience
Political Science
Psychology
Social Work
Sociology

Research and Academic Support Areas

Camilla Eyring Kimball Chair of Home and Family Life
Center for the Study of Elections and Democracy (CSED)
Charles Redd Center for Western Studies and Lemuel H. Redd Jr. Chair in Western History
Comprehensive Clinic
Family Studies Center
Marjorie Pay Hinckley Chair in Social Work and the Social Sciences
Mary Lou Fulton Chair in Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Museum of Peoples and Cultures
New World Archaeological Foundation
Women's Research Institute

International and Area Studies

The College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences administers the International Relations Program, coordinated by Kerk Phillips. Faculty in the college also teach courses in the various area studies programs, including Asian Studies, Latin American Studies, and Middle East Studies. Students in these programs receive advisement from the IAS Advisement Center, 273 HRCB, (801) 422-3548.

College Advisement Center

Lori L. Seely, Supervisor
151 SWKT
(801) 422-3541

Advisors are prepared to assist students in the selection of university core offerings that will contribute to a broad education. Advisors also assist faculty in offering counsel for specific majors, counseling for a career, and monitoring a student's progress toward graduation.

Purposes

The College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences is composed of departments whose primary focus is people. Particular concerns include the family as the basis of society, understanding governments and societies in which people live, and solving world problems.

The instructional program of the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences has two major emphases. One provides a broad education that helps develop an appreciation of the values that establish and strengthen modern civilization and that prepares individuals to contribute effectively as citizens. The other prepares professionals to discover truths that reveal our heritage and to provide significant service to individuals, families, and institutions.

Many of the departments and programs housed within the college provide opportunities for student learning and exploration outside the classroom through internships and faculty-mentored teaching and research experiences.

Degrees Offered

Bachelor's, master's, and doctoral degrees are offered in the college. See the individual department and program listings in this catalog for specific degrees offered and the requirements for each.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships and awards are available to qualified students. Applications may be obtained from the Financial Aid Office, A-141 ASB.

Women's Studies Minor

Bonnie Ballif-Spanvill, Director
1063 JFSB
(801) 422-4609

The Women's Research Institute sponsors a minor in Women's Studies. This program educates students in the findings, theory, and research methodologies fundamental to the women's studies field and fosters critical thinking and superior scholarship. The research and study of women and their viewpoints in traditional academic disciplines creates a new framework of interpretation and scholarship for our historical and cultural traditions. Courses in the minor represent many disciplines and provide a variety of perspectives on topics relating to women's experiences.

See the Women's Research Institute section of this catalog for course requirements for this minor.

Family Studies Center

Randal D. Day, Director
1053 JFSB
(801) 422-2948

The Family Studies Center is dedicated to identifying characteristics associated with strong families and the processes by which they develop. At the heart of the center's mission is a deep and abiding desire to understand families and family members and to assist them to achieve their full potential. The fundamental guiding document is "The Family: A Proclamation to the World" by the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Understanding and promoting the principles in this proclamation will provide guidelines to help strengthen individuals, marriages, and families.

The center fosters the important link that research can and must have to families themselves. Research that illuminates the relationship between the family and other important institutions such as governments, schools, and business, as well as social contexts including households, neighborhoods, and cultures, is germane to the center's research program. Relevant information is presented through publications, conferences, symposia, seminars, and lectures.

The center helps organizations design and implement programs to aid couples and individuals in building and sustaining stronger families. Programs are designed not only to strengthen families but also to prevent critical family problems, including family violence, child abuse and neglect, divorce, financial mismanagement, and substance abuse. In addition, public policies that strengthen families are discussed and developed.

Museum of Peoples and Cultures

105 ALLN
(801) 422-0020

The Museum of Peoples and Cultures is located in Allen Hall at 700 North 100 East in Provo. Museum hours are from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday. Guided tours are available for a nominal fee and can be scheduled by calling the museum at (801) 422-0020.

Educational Opportunities. Classes in museum practices designed to provide students with practical experience in collections care and management—including computer applications, exhibition curation, and educational programming— are available with approval. Museum practice courses are taught by the museum's staff, who are adjunct anthropology faculty (see listings in the Anthropology section of this catalog). The museum also employs several students each semester to assist in collections work and welcomes volunteers to assist in educational and promotional work.

Anthropological Collections and Research Opportunities. Museum collections comprise prehistoric and ethnographic artifacts from various parts of the world. The bulk of holdings are from the Southwest, Mesoamerica, Polynesia, ancient Peru, and the Great Basin, especially Utah Valley. The museum also cares for a collection of more than 20,000 black and white and color photographs that document BYU archaeological research and artifactual materials. The museum encourages students to inquire about research possibilities using its collections.

Neuroscience Center

Dawson W. Hedges, Director
1055 SWKT
(801) 422-1218

The College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences is the current host for the multi-disciplinary Neuroscience Center. Neuroscience is the field of study covering the development and function of the central nervous system and its connection to influencing and regulating behavior. This degree-granting program functions through the collaborative efforts of the Department of Psychology and the Department of Physiology and Developmental Biology

(College of Biology and Agriculture). See the Neuroscience Center section of this catalog for program admission information and course requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

College of Fine Arts and Communications

A-501 HFAC
(801) 422-2819

Dean: Stephen M. Jones, Professor, Music
Associate Dean: Sherry L. Baker, Associate Professor, Communications
Associate Dean: Rory R. Scanlon, Professor, Theatre and Media Arts
Assistant Dean: Scott M. Boyter

The following departments and school are in the College of Fine Arts and Communications:

Communications
School of Music
Theatre and Media Arts
Visual Arts

Music dance theatre is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

Animation is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of the Department of Theatre and Media Arts, the Department of Visual Arts, and the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering's School of Technology.

The College of Fine Arts and Communications teaches students to think, to feel, to perform, and to communicate. Its purpose is to give students the knowledge and skills requisite to a higher education in fine arts and communications. It opens the doors to the world of truth and beauty for exploration by majors and nonmajors alike. Its programs require discipline, critical analysis, research, empathy, and integrity as the means to acquire knowledge and competency in various areas of study encompassed by the college.

The college's classroom instruction is augmented by off-campus internship programs and on-campus laboratory experiences. Journalism students who edit the *Daily Universe*, a student laboratory newspaper, regularly win national awards. Advertising students work on professional campaigns through BYU's Advanced Ad Lab facilities, winning clients from across the nation. Music and theatre performance students participate annually in national competitions, receiving top honors. Film and animation students are well represented in their organizational competitions and hold recognized international awards. Additionally, student and faculty touring groups instruct and entertain Church members and friends around the globe, while BYU Broadcasting offers a worldwide campus connection on both the television and radio stream in multilanguage programming. Back on campus, the Museum of Art and the Division of Design and Production maintain excellence in public art presentation under the direction of the college.

Members of the faculty are competent, dedicated men and women who are concerned about the success of their students. The college also brings to campus distinguished professionals for special lectures and artistic performances. Housed in the Harris Fine Arts Center and the Brimhall Building, the college includes five theatres; two concert halls; three art galleries; design, journalism, advertising, broadcast, film, and music laboratories; and many music practice and rehearsal rooms.

Enrollment in a Major Program

Because **enrollment** in most degree programs in the College of Fine Arts and Communications **is limited** by the availability of resources such as facilities, equipment, and faculty, students are required to follow a specific application process designed to assess individual ability, preparation, and potential. This process also helps each student evaluate the level of accomplishment they might expect to experience in the major and, after graduation, in the profession itself.

Students are encouraged to carefully study the requirements of the major program they desire to enter. This will help each determine if the program really fits their personal goals and educational objectives. Through a careful review of the catalog, other possible majors can also be considered to make certain one is aware of all the options that might fit their primary and secondary areas of interest. Students may also find additional information on career and educational options by visiting the Counseling and Career Center (1500 WSC).

Applications for degree programs in the college are available from the college advisement center. Students preparing to apply for entrance into a major program must make certain that they complete all of the prerequisite courses and/or specific requirements stipulated in the application process. If they need further assistance, the reception desk in the college advisement center (D-444 HFAC) can provide information.

The application process for each major has been structured to be as fair and impartial as possible, and those who evaluate applications endeavor to admit as many into each program as possible. But enrollment limitations sometimes exclude those who would succeed in the program if they could only be admitted. Those who are not successful in the application process are encouraged to move quickly and decisively toward an alternative major program.

Students admitted to a major program in the College of Fine Arts and Communications are assigned to one of the academic advisors in the college advisement center. The advisors help each student structure a plan for timely graduation and assist with problems and issues that may arise along the way. As students become familiar with the faculty in their area of study, they are able to identify those who are best prepared to assist them in learning more about opportunities following graduation.

College Advisement Center

Brenda Butterfield, Supervisor
D-444 HFAC
Telephone: (801) 422-3777

E-mail: cfacadvise@byu.edu
Internet: http://www.byu.edu/cfac/advisement/index.html

Students can receive help in the following ways:

1. This catalog outlines graduation requirements in the areas of emphasis encompassed within the disciplines of communications, music, theatre and media arts, and visual arts, as well as the interdisciplinary programs of animation and music dance theatre.
2. Assigned faculty members are available to students desiring an assessment of potential performance and career opportunities.
3. After a student has been admitted to a major, CAC advisors will plan student schedules and will keep individual student records.
4. Students will apply for graduation with their academic advisor, at which time general education, university, and major requirements are checked for graduation.
5. Students are cleared for graduation by the college advisement center.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships, performance awards, and grants-in-aid are available to qualified students.

Applications for academic scholarships can be obtained at the Scholarship Office (A-41 ASB, (801) 422-4104). Performance awards are offered by each of the academic units within the college. Applications and information about auditions for performance awards can be obtained by contacting the appropriate department or school.

For information about graduate scholarships, fellowships, and grants-in-aid, see the current BYU Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

College of Health and Human Performance

212 RB
(801) 422-2645

Dean: Sara Lee Gibb, Professor, Dance
Associate Dean: Diane Chamberlain, Teaching Professor, Exercise Sciences
Associate Dean: Gordon Lindsay, Professor, Health Science

The following departments are in the College of Health and Human Performance:

Dance
Exercise Sciences
Health Science
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership

The mission and goals of the College of Health and Human Performance align with the institutional objectives of Brigham Young University by providing an "environment that increases faith in God and the restored gospel, is intellectually enlarging, is character building, and leads to a life of learning and service" (Merrill J. Bateman, "From Pioneer Roots to a World-Class, Worldwide Institution," 1999 Annual University Conference, p. 8). The college contributes to the total development of students and faculty by "educat[ing] the minds, [bodies,] and spirits of students" (ibid.).

A challenging environment emphasizes the achievement of excellence according to one's aptitudes in the various areas of human development. A foundation for continuous learning prepares individuals to serve their professions effectively, meet personal challenges, care for their families, and serve as responsible citizens.

Goals

1. Provide professional preparation in the academic programs of dance, exercise sciences, health, and recreation management and youth leadership.
2. Advance truth and knowledge through quality research and creative works in areas of specialization in the various disciplines. Such works are often cooperative efforts between faculty and students.
3. Help students obtain the knowledge, skills, and motivation necessary to maintain a healthy lifestyle and improve their neuromuscular skills in dance, sport, and fitness activities.
4. Sponsor outstanding performing groups in dance that favorably promote the university and the Church among alumni, Church members, friends, and others in this country and throughout the world.
5. Contribute to the knowledge, health, and well-being of members of the university community by providing opportunities to engage in dance, sport, and fitness activities through service, intramural, and free-play programs.

College Advisement Center

203 RB
(801) 422-3638

Students obtain help in planning their educational programs through the College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center and the respective departments.

Health and Human Performance Services

Health and Human Performance Services coordinates free play, intramurals, and event scheduling. Students, faculty members, and staff may use the physical education facilities during scheduled free-play times.

A college computer lab, a teaching technology lab, and a learning resource center are available to support student learning.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

College of Humanities

4002 JFSB
(801) 422-2775

Dean: John R. Rosenberg, Professor, Spanish
Associate Dean: Gregory Clark, Professor, English
Associate Dean: Ray T. Clifford, Professor, Linguistics
Associate Dean: Joseph Parry, Associate Professor, Humanities

What Are the Humanities?

The humanities focus on the quest for fluency in the languages of the human conversation, for it is fluency in those languages that makes us full participants in human life. Specifically, the humanities involve inquiry into the structure and uses of language itself, as well as into the ideas and aesthetics of the languages of art, literature, and philosophy.

Study in the humanities fosters historical consciousness; recognition of the connections between ideas, texts, and the people who create them; awareness of the complexity and subtlety of the multiple voices that make up the human conversation; and facility in languages and cultures other than one's own. Building on these essential components of what it means to be "an educated person," students of the humanities develop the higher-order cognitive abilities needed for critical reading, interpretation, analytical thinking, and writing.

This understanding of and ability in the "languages of the human conversation" provide a foundation for successful careers in many different professions and for productive and rewarding lives as educated citizens.

Academic Departments

Asian and Near Eastern Languages
English
French and Italian
Germanic and Slavic Languages
Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
Linguistics and English Language
Philosophy
Spanish and Portuguese

International and Area Studies

The College of Humanities supports the following International and Area Studies (IAS) programs:

Asian Studies: James Davis, Coordinator
European Studies: Scott Sprenger, Coordinator
Latin American Studies: Christopher Lund, Coordinator
Middle East Studies/Arabic: Donna Lee Bowen, Coordinator

College of Humanities faculty members also teach courses in the following area studies minor programs: African Studies, Ancient Near Eastern Studies, Arab-Islamic Studies, Asian Studies, Chinese Studies, French Studies, German Studies, Italian Studies, Japanese Studies, Jewish Studies, Korean Studies, Latin American Studies, Modern Near Eastern Studies, Russian Studies, Spanish Studies, and Western American Studies.

Students in American Studies receive advisement from the College of Humanities Advisement Center, 1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789.

Students in Asian Studies, Latin American Studies, and Middle East Studies/Arabic receive advisement from the IAS Advisement Center, located in the David M. Kennedy Center, 273 HCRB, (801) 422-3548.

Programs and Support Areas

Center for Language Studies
Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature
College Advisement Center
Collegewide graduate Language Acquisition Program
English Language Center
Humanities Technology and Research Support Center
Language credit by examination
Publications Center
Foreign Language Student Residence
Summer Language Institute
Spanish Resource Center

Programs in International Studies

International Internships
International Cinema
Study Abroad

College Advisement Center

Mary Anne Rich, Supervisor
1175 JFSB
(801) 422-4789

The advisement center assists students with registration; information about majors, university core, and changing majors; application for graduation and graduation clearance; career opportunities; and policy and procedure. Students are encouraged to take advantage of these advisement center services.

For advisement regarding specific major requirements, career options, or graduate programs, students should consult with faculty advisors within the various departments. Substitutions, waivers, or evaluation of transfer equivalency within a major will be authorized by the departments, with documentation going to the advisement center.

Language Credit by Examination

Jerry W. Larson, Professor of Spanish; Director, Humanities Technology and Research Support Center
1163E JFSB

Any student enrolled at BYU whose native language is English may receive credit by special examination for certain foreign language courses for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions. Students whose native language is not English may not receive credit for their native language, but they may receive credit by special examination for courses in English offered through the TESOL program of the Linguistics and English Language Department. They may also receive credit by special examination for a language other than their native language as described above.

Graded examinations for languages taught on the BYU campus are administered by the department concerned. Pass-fail examinations for other languages are administered by the coordinator of the Foreign Language Testing Program in the Humanities Technology and Research Support Center. An examination once taken for pass/fail credit cannot be retaken or reevaluated for graded credit.

Center for Language Studies

Ray T. Clifford, Director
3086 JFSB
(801) 422-1201

To extend the exceptional foreign language capabilities of BYU to a large audience, the Center for Language Studies offers a variety of intensive language courses during the summer term (mid-June to mid-August) and regular courses in less commonly taught languages during the academic year. See in-depth information in the Center for Language Studies section of this catalog.

Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature

Jesse S. Crisler, Professor of English, Director
4106 JFSB

The center holds symposia, conducts writing contests, and publishes the journal *Literature and Belief*.

English Language Center

Neil Anderson, Administrative Coordinator, 4056A JFSB
Norm Evans, Academic Coordinator, 4050 JFSB

The English Language Center is a resident program of intensive English language training.

Foreign Language Student Residence

Robert Erickson, Coordinator
3086C JFSB
(801) 422-5193

Students who desire a more in-depth language study experience and practical application of the language under the direction of faculty and native residents may apply to live in the Foreign Language Student Residence. All activities in the individual apartments in the residence are conducted in the foreign language. Inquiries should be directed to the coordinator or to the appropriate departmental advisor for detailed information concerning opportunities for men and women in French, Russian, Italian, German, Japanese, Spanish, Chinese, Arabic, Portuguese, and Hebrew.

Humanities Technology and Research Support Center

The

Jerry W. Larson, Professor of Spanish, Director
1163E JFSB

The Humanities Technology and Research Support Center provides technological and consulting resources to support research and teaching in the College of Humanities. Available in the center are audio, video, and microcomputer facilities in addition to optical scanning services.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

J. Reuben Clark Law School

341 JRCB
(801) 422-4277

Dean: Kevin J Worthen
Associate Dean: Kif Augustine Adams
Associate Dean: Scott W. Cameron
Associate Dean: James D. Gordon
Associate Dean: Katherine D. Pullins
Assistant Dean: Carl Hernandez III
Assistant Dean: Mary H. Hoagland

The J. Reuben Clark Law School offers a six-semester course of graduate professional study leading to the juris doctor (JD) degree. Information about legal education, admissions standards, and related matters can be obtained from the Law School Admissions Office or at www.law2.byu.edu/.

To be admitted to the Law School, an applicant must be a college graduate who has excelled academically and has scored in the upper range of the nationally administered Law School Admission Test. In addition, applicants must meet the general university admission requirements, including the personal standards required of all students.

Apply for admission online at www.lsac.org by March 1 preceding the fall of expected enrollment in the Law School. Enrollment takes place only in the fall of each year.

For more information regarding prelegal education, consult the Preprofessional Advisement Center (Law).

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

College of Life Sciences

301 WIDB
(801) 422-3963
Internet: http://lifesciences.byu.edu

Dean: Rodney J. Brown, Professor, Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
Associate Dean: John D. Bell, Professor, Physiology and Developmental Biology
Associate Dean: Alan R. Harker, Professor, Microbiology and Molecular Biology
Assistant Dean: John D. Lee, Microbiology and Molecular Biology
Assistant Dean: Steven L. Taylor
Assistant Dean: Shauna C. Anderson, Professor, Microbiology and Molecular Biology

The following departments are included within the College of Life Sciences:

- Biology (Bio)
- Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBio)
- Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS)
- Physiology and Developmental Biology (PDBio)
- Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS)

Courses offered in the life sciences give students a general understanding of the fundamental principles of plant, animal, and microbial life and their relationship to the world. Specialized courses emphasizing teaching and research are offered to majors in the several branches of biological science.

Alphabetical List of Majors Offered in the College of Life Sciences

Bioinformatics (Bio)
Biology (Bio)
Biological Science Education (Bio)
Biophysics (PDBio)
Clinical Laboratory Science (MMBio)
Conservation Biology (Bio)
Dietetics (NDFS)
Environmental Science (PWS)
Food Science (NDFS)
Genetics and Biotechnology (PWS)
Integrative Biology (Bio)
Landscape Management (PWS)
Microbiology (MMBio)
Molecular Biology (MMBio)
Nutritional Science (NDFS)
Physiology and Developmental Biology (PDBio)
Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation (PWS)

See the departmental sections in this catalog for details regarding these programs.

Life Sciences Student Services

Shauna C. Anderson, Assistant Dean
Jeanne M. Gubler, Supervisor
C. Gale Larson, Assistant Advisor
Audrey Megerian, Coordinator

379–380 WIDB
(801) 422-3042
Hours: 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday–Friday

The goal of Life Sciences Student Services is to provide "one stop shopping for students and faculty." The center services students in five areas: advisement, assessment, career advisement and placement, college life, and mentored experiences.

Advisement—Students are supported in general education advisement as well as a 4-year curriculum plan for their chosen major. Among other advisement services are the change of major, academic success, and graduation processes. Specific advisement needs such as over-hours requests or last semester options can also be met by the staff.

Assessment—Students are informed of the importance of maintaining the university's accreditation standing. Students assist the assessment process by providing input through surveys, exit interviews, one-year-out and five-year-out surveys, and results on national major field exams and other national and professional school admission exams.

Career advisement and placement—Students are given opportunities to discuss career and job placement with a member of the Career Placement Services.

College life—The "Empowering Others" philosophy encourages students to help and teach each other by creating a spirit of cooperation rather than competition. Study groups are fostered and organized to enhance learning. A learning facility was created to provide tutoring services for students enrolled in the essential biology courses. This walk-in area allows a student access to tutors 10–12 hours per day. In addition help with scholarship

applications and the awarding of scholarships is handled in the center.

Mentored experiences—Internships provide students with opportunities to try out their prospective careers. The center provides resources for obtaining internships as well as processing all the paperwork and awarding grants to students who desire that experience. Assisting faculty with research constitutes a mentorship. Students learn invaluable skills and problem-solving techniques from their mentors. The center can help students seeking mentored experiences.

M. L. Bean Life Science Museum

Larry St. Clair, Director
Jack Sites, Associate Director
Marta Adair, Assistant Director
290 MLBM
Internet: http://mlbean.byu.edu/
Hours: 10:00 a.m. to 9:00 p.m. Monday–Friday
10:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Saturday

Current museum curators and collection managers are as follows:

Duane Atwood, Collections Manager, Herbarium
John Bell, Curator of Mollusks
Shawn Clark, Collections Manager, Arthropods
Keith Crandall, Curator of Crustaceans
Leigh Johnson, Curator, Herbarium
Duke Rogers, Curator of Mammals
Dennis Shiozawa, Curator of Fish
Jack Sites, Curator of Reptiles and Amphibians
Wesley Skidmore, Collections Manager, Vertebrates
Larry St. Clair, Curator of Nonvascular Cryptogams
Clayton White, Curator of Birds
Michael Whiting, Curator of Insects

The museum offers a broad range of educational opportunities for students, from specialized graduate and undergraduate research in various systematic collections to impromptu tours for the casual visitor. Many university classes utilize the museum's extensive collections, which also serve the broader community. The museum provides visiting scientists opportunities for elementary and secondary students, as well as community groups.

The Botanical Collection includes herbaria of vascular plants and nonvascular cryptogams from many parts of the world. The vascular plant collection includes more than 10,000 species represented by more than 500,000 herbarium sheets. The collection is principally made up of plants from western North America but includes many materials from the eastern states, Europe, Mexico, Australia, and the Pacific Isles. Acquisitions of plants from Alaska, Greenland, Siberia, and the Canadian Arctic have added significantly to the Arctic plant collections.

The herbarium also includes more than 2,000 specimens from the Mediterranean region of Europe and from the Middle Eastern countries of Iran and Afghanistan. The fossil plant collections contain more than 10,000 specimens. Nonvascular cryptogams number more than 100,000 specimens, mostly from western North America.

The Zoological Collections consist of a large series of vertebrate and invertebrate species from North America and many foreign countries.

The invertebrate collection includes more than two million insect specimens (emphasizing butterflies, flies, and beetles) and their near relatives as well as other invertebrate phyla. Medically important arthropods such as fleas, lice, mites, and ticks are well represented. A large and valuable collection of invertebrate sea shells is also present, as well as more than 5,000 crustaceans. The invertebrate collections are a sampling of specimens from all parts of the world but are particularly strong in their representation of the Great Basin environments.

The vertebrate collections consist of more than 100,000 fish, 37,000 amphibians and reptiles, 11,000 birds, and 37,000 mammal research specimens. The vertebrate collections also include birds' eggs, South and Central American birds, and Hawaiian fishes. Staff members, graduate students, and friends of the university have contributed material from Mexico, South America, Africa, Taiwan, Malaysia, the South Pacific islands, and other areas. The vertebrate collections also include big game wildlife gathered from around the world.

More than 50,000 invertebrate and vertebrate museum specimens include frozen tissue or tissue preserved in ethanol.

A highlight of the vertebrate display collections, housed in the museum, serve as a valuable university resource for documenting phylogenic and systematic research.

The museum is accredited by the American Association of Museums and maintains membership in professional museum organizations regionally and nationally.

The Lytle Preserve in southwestern Utah provides a 600 plus acre site which serves as an outdoor classroom in the northernmost extension of the Mojave Desert. It is managed for natural study and ecological research in a unique desert setting.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

HIST 244 : Jewish History: A.D. 70 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Jewish diaspora, Jewish life in Moslem and Christian countries; Jewish religious movements; development of Zionism; Jewish communities in modern Israel and the United States.

HIST 325 : Spain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

MESA 350 : Islam in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Islam in modern society: doctrine, practices, institutions, approaches to the challenges of modern life; the rise of fundamentalism.

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 474 : Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Ancient Near Eastern Studies (ANES)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

ANES 201 : Introduction to Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, research skills, and methods of academic inquiry relevant to ancient Near Eastern Studies.

300-Level Courses

ANES 310 : History and Culture of Ancient Israel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 238 or 239.
DESCRIPTION: Israelite history and culture in Canaan/Israel from c. 2000 B.C. to A.D. 200. Methodology for using the Bible in historical research.

ANES 331 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts to 330 B.C. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 238.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

ANES 332 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts, 330 B.C. to A.D. 640. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 239.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analyzing major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

ANES 353R : Archaeological Fieldwork in the Near East. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Ancient Near Eastern Studies coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Archaeological fieldwork and corresponding field school activities in the Near East.

ANES 363 : Hebrew Bible Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Current analytical methods used in academic study and interpretation of the Hebrew Bible.

ANES 392R : Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (2-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in the ancient Near East based on student interest and faculty expertise.

400-Level Courses

ANES 430R : Advanced Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar involving in-depth examination of an ancient Near Eastern topic and then writing about it.

ANES 495 : Senior Seminar in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Capstone seminar utilizing research, analytical, and writing skills to produce a senior research paper on an ancient Near Eastern topic.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Middle East Studies/Arabic (MESA)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

MESA 201 : Introduction to Middle East Studies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Middle East from historical, art/literary, and various social science perspectives, including introduction to disciplinary methodologies and major issues of interest.

MESA 250 : Introduction to the Religion of Islam. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the rise of Islam, the life of Muhammad, basic beliefs and practices, major figures and movements, and contemporary political and social issues.

300-Level Courses

MESA 350 : Islam in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Islam in modern society: doctrine, practices, institutions, approaches to the challenges of modern life; the rise of fundamentalism.

MESA 398R : Directed Middle East Study. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study and research in the Middle East.

MESA 399R : Academic Internship. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in the Middle East or with an organization dealing with the Middle East. Must be coordinated through International Study Programs or the Washington Seminar and with the consent of the Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator.

400-Level Courses

MESA 451 : The Figure of Muhammad in Islamic Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Muslim views regarding Muhammad as found in two significant Islamic textual traditions: The Sira (biography)/Maghazi (battles) and Hadith (acts) of Muhammad.

MESA 467R : Topics in Middle East Studies. (.5-3:Arr.:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

MESA 468R : Key Issues In Understanding the Middle East. (.5-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Guest and BYU professors teach subjects in an intensive format over a limited time period through lectures and readings.

MESA 494 : Capstone Arabic. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Arab 300, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Arabic texts supporting research for the MESA capstone seminar.

MESA 495 : Senior Seminar in Middle East Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced Arabic Study Abroad; Arab 300, 302, 311R, 331; Pl Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course, including major research paper demonstrating ability to integrate cross-disciplinary information and methodology.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Information Systems

Marshall B. Romney, Chair
510A TNRB, (801) 422-5704

Marriott School of Management Advisement Center
460 TNRB, (801) 422-4285

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the department carries special enrollment limitations. Please see the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center for specific details.

The Discipline

Computer-based information systems have become a critical part of the products, services, operations, and management of all organizations. The effective and efficient use of information and communications technologies is an important element in achieving competitive advantage for business organizations as well as achieving excellence in service for government and non-profit organizations. The twenty-first century has seen the rapid growth of the Internet, eCommerce, and purely electronic enterprises. These organizations would not even exist without the technology provided by computer-based information systems. The importance of information systems to organizations and the need for well-educated professionals in the field is the basis for strong educational programs and the development of a professional community of information systems (IS) practitioners.

Information systems involves two broad areas: (1) the acquisition, deployment, and management of an organization's information systems resources and services and (2) the development of computer-based systems and technology infrastructures for use in organization processes. Information systems professionals provide services ranging from the managerial to the highly technical. Information systems and technology skills are critical to the success of virtually all modern organizations, including small business, corporations, government, and educational institutions.

Career Opportunities

Information systems graduates work in large and small organizations of all types, helping maintain existing technology infrastructure and specifying technology solutions to business needs. They serve as the bridge between an organization's technical personnel and its business side. Well-educated information systems graduates are in high demand in accounting firms, consulting firms, large corporations, midsized companies, technical companies, government agencies, and smaller entrepreneurial concerns. Challenging career opportunities embrace a wide range of interests. The variety of employment prospects includes opportunities for everyone from those who are primarily interested in people and organizations to those who enjoy very technical activities such as database and network administration or software development.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Information Systems

For help or information on the undergraduate program, please see the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center or visit http://isys.byu.edu.

For information on management degrees, see Management section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MISM in Information Systems Management

For more information see the Information Systems Department Graduate Advisement Center (510 TNRB) or the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Application Requirements

1. Complete or pass the competency tests for I Sys 100 and 101.

2. Have a 3.0 minimum average GPA in the four prerequisite courses: I Sys 201, 202, Acc 200, M Com 320. No grade lower than a C+ will be accepted for any of the prerequisite courses.

Note 1: If a student must leave the program for a mission, internship, or other reason, a leave of absence request form is required. A prompt return to the program is required. Students who have interrupted their education for more than two years or without prior approval will be required to meet the requirements of the program in effect at reacceptance.

Note 2: Upper-division information systems class credits earned prior to five years before graduation may not be used to meet specific graduation requirements for the BS degree. This policy does not affect the recognition of those hours earned to satisfy total university credit.

BS Information Systems, Concurrent with MISM

The MISM program has a five-year integrated option for BYU students in the undergraduate information systems program, as well as an option for students who have already completed a bachelor's degree. The first year of the undergraduate program, or the junior core, must be completed with a minimum 3.0 GPA to be eligible to apply for continuation into the master of information systems management program.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Information Systems (74-75 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental acceptance. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for application to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Pre-Systems Core.
2. Students are encouraged to enroll in courses outside the Marriott School of Management. Only 50 upper-division Marriott School hours count toward graduation.
3. Pass a computer proficiency requirement for spreadsheet and presentation software skills. Students may demonstrate spreadsheet and presentation skills either by earning a Pass grade in I Sys 100 and 101 or a B grade in equivalent transfer courses, or by presenting Microsoft Office certification (either MOS or MCAS) certificates validating core-level competency in MS Excel and PowerPoint.
4. Complete the following Pre-Information Systems courses:

   I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
   DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

   I SYS 202 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: I Sys 201 or concurrent enrollment (with instructor's consent); information systems major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

   ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

   Note: The Pre-Information Systems Core must be completed with at least a 3.0 GPA (no grade lower than a C+), with no more than one repeat for each course. Repeated courses will be discounted 0.3 of a grade during the admissions process.
5. Be accepted into the information systems program.
6. Complete the following Management Core 1 and 2 courses:

   ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
   DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.

NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

7. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:
MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following Information Systems Core 1 courses (taught fall only):

I SYS 401 : Systems Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major, concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 402 and 403.
DESCRIPTION: Early phases of systems development life cycle, including project management, planning, investigation, requirements definition, systems specifications, alternative selection. Tools and techniques of object-oriented analysis.

I SYS 402 : Database Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 401, 403, and 404.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and techniques of database system development, focusing on object-oriented modeling and its implementation methods.

I SYS 403 : Principles of Business Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 401, 402, and 404.
DESCRIPTION: Programming business systems. Algorithms, data structures, programming patterns, and interfaces.

I SYS 414 : Business Processes and Controls. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Information systems majors status; concurrent enrollment in I Sys 401, 402, 403.
DESCRIPTION: Enterprise-level systems that support basic business processes, information systems control and security issues, systems integration and deployment.

9. Complete the following Information Systems Core 2 courses (taught winter only):

I SYS 404 : Data Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 411, 413, and 415.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of data communications, local- and wide-area networks, hardware, software, media, standards, management, and business applications.

I SYS 411 : Systems Design and Implementation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Sys 401, 402, 403, 414; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 404, 413, and 415.
DESCRIPTION: Later phases of systems development life cycle. System architecture, user interfaces, system interface, and application design. Testing and integration. Object-oriented development.

I SYS 413 : Enterprise Application Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: I Sys 401, 402, 403, 414; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 404, 411, and 415.
DESCRIPTION: Client- and server-side programming. Internet and Web-based applications. Enterprise systems and architectures.

I SYS 415 : Information Systems Capstone Project. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 401, 402, 403, and 414; concurrent enrollment in I Sys 404, 411, and 413.
DESCRIPTION: Applying concepts, principles, and methods of enterprise-level information systems by designing and developing a full-scale system including hardware, software, and network.

10. Complete the following capstone course:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Information Systems (I Sys) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Information Systems (I Sys)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 105 : Creating Personal Web Pages. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and tools for developing a personal website, including site design, page layout. Techniques for text, pictures, and audio placement.

I SYS 199R : Academic Internship: Information Systems. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Selection of information systems emphasis in Marriott School of Management.
DESCRIPTION: Approved on-the-job experience. Applying classroom theory and technology to actual problems; exploring career opportunities; learning role of information systems in business environment.
NOTE: P/F grade.

200-Level Courses

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

I SYS 202 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 201 or concurrent enrollment (with instructor's consent); information systems major status.
DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

400-Level Courses

I SYS 401 : Systems Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major, concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 402 and 403.
DESCRIPTION: Early phases of systems development life cycle, including project management, planning, investigation, requirements definition, systems specifications, alternative selection. Tools and techniques of object-oriented analysis.

I SYS 402 : Database Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 401, 403, and 404.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and techniques of database system development, focusing on object-oriented modeling and its implementation methods.

I SYS 403 : Principles of Business Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 401, 402, and 404.
DESCRIPTION: Programming business systems. Algorithms, data structures, programming patterns, and interfaces.

I SYS 404 : Data Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to information systems major; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 411, 413, and 415.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of data communications, local- and wide-area networks, hardware, software, media, standards, management, and business applications.

I SYS 411 : Systems Design and Implementation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Sys 401, 402, 403, 414; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 404, 413, and 415.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Marriott School of Management

730 TNRB
(801) 422-4121

Dean: Ned C. Hill, Professor, Business Management
Associate Dean: W. Steve Albrecht, Professor, Accounting
Associate Dean: Michael P. Thompson, Associate Professor, Organizational Leadership and Strategy

Academic Departments

School of Accountancy
Business Management
Information Systems
Organizational Leadership and Strategy
Romney Institute of Public Management
Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)
Military Science (Army ROTC)

Management Advisement Center

Joan Young, Director
460 TNRB
(801) 422-4285

Advisors are prepared to assist undergraduate students in successfully completing university, college, and major requirements. Students are encouraged to meet frequently with their advisors. Center personnel are available to help with registration, graduation requirements, fields of study, changes in major, and transfer evaluation, as well as to clarify policies and procedures.

Undergraduate Programs

Three undergraduate degrees are offered by the Marriott School of Management. The first is a bachelor's degree in management, which provides a broad management education. The program is designed to assist students in acquiring knowledge, insight, maturity, competence, and a strong sense of moral and ethical character. An area of emphasis may be taken by students seeking specialization. These areas include finance, marketing, global supply chain, strategy, organizational behavior/human resources, entrepreneurship, and general business.

The second bachelor's degree is offered by the School of Accountancy to students seeking to combine accounting skills with broad management education (see the School of Accountancy section of this catalog for details). Accounting students interested in acquiring in-depth specialization or seeking careers in public accounting are encouraged to apply to the Master of Accountancy Program.

The third bachelor's degree is offered by the Information Systems Department to students seeking to combine information systems skills with broad management education (see the Information Systems section of this catalog for details). Students interested in acquiring in-depth specialization in information systems are encouraged to apply to the Master of Information Systems Management Program.

Graduation Application for Bachelor's Degree

When a student has completed 86–96 earned hours (usually during the junior year), application for graduation should be initiated at the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center.

Graduate Programs

The Marriott School of Management offers the following graduate degrees:

MAcc	Professional Accountancy
MAcc	Tax
MBA	Business Administration
MISM	Information Systems Management
MPA	Public Administration

Individual program brochures are available from the Marriott School of Management, 730 TNRB, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602-3113. Also, refer to the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

I SYS 413 : Enterprise Application Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 401, 402, 403, 414; concurrent enrollment in same section of I Sys 404, 411, and 415.
DESCRIPTION: Client- and server-side programming. Internet and Web-based applications. Enterprise systems and architectures.

I SYS 414 : Business Processes and Controls. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Information systems majors status; concurrent enrollment in I Sys 401, 402, 403.
DESCRIPTION: Enterprise-level systems that support basic business processes, information systems control and security issues, systems integration and deployment.

I SYS 415 : Information Systems Capstone Project. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 401, 402, 403, and 414; concurrent enrollment in I Sys 404, 411, and 413.
DESCRIPTION: Applying concepts, principles, and methods of enterprise-level information systems by designing and developing a full-scale system including hardware, software, and network.

I SYS 498 : Strategic Management of Information Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 411, 413; concurrent enrollment in I Sys 490.
DESCRIPTION: Achieving strategic information systems alignment to create sustainable competitive advantage. Concepts and methods critical for information systems management, such as outsourcing, security, controls, and organizational transformation.

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the current Marriott School of Management Information Systems Department Web site at http://isys.byu.edu and the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Information Systems Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Information Systems Faculty

Professors

Hansen, James V.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1963
PhD, University of Washington, Seattle, 1973

Liddle, Stephen W.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1995

McKell, Lynn J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MSEE, Purdue University, 1970
MS, Purdue University, 1972
MS, Purdue University, 1973
PhD, Purdue University, 1973

Romney, Marshall B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1977

Associate Professors

Albrecht, Conan C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Arizona, 2000

Anderson, Bonnie Brinton

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1995
MPhil, Carnegie Mellon University, 2001
PhD, Carnegie Mellon University, 2001

Dean, Douglas L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1987
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Arizona, 1995

Hansen, Gary W.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1974

Meservy, Rayman D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1985

Assistant Professors

Allen, Gove N.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2001

Ball, Nicholas

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Idaho State University, 1999
MBA, Idaho State University, 2000
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2005

Lindstrom, Craig J

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1991
MS, Utah State University, 2001

Lowry, Paul Benjamin

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Information Systems
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Arizona, 2002

Instructional Psychology and Technology

Andrew S. Gibbons, Chair
150 MCKB, (801) 422-5097

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office
120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Instructional Psychology and Technology
PhD in Instructional Psychology and Technology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Instructional Psychology and Technology (IP&T)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

The Department of Instructional Psychology and Technology does not offer a baccalaureate degree. However, undergraduate courses are offered as service courses to other departments in the David O. McKay School of Education.

200-Level Courses

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

300-Level Courses

IP&T 301 : Educational Psychology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of educational psychology applied to teaching, including learning theory, instructional strategies, assessment of learning outcomes, and classroom inquiry.

400-Level Courses

IP&T 470R : Undergraduate Research Training. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of undergraduate students to the concepts of research and evaluation through practical experience.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

IP&T 514R : Special Topics in Instructional Psychology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Topics may include technical applications, effective teaching, student assessment.

: Effective Teaching.
: Student Assessment.
: Technical Applications.

IP&T 515R : Special Topics in Instructional Psychology and Technology. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su on demand.

: Evaluating Student Learning.
: Instructional Techniques in Teaching.
: Program Evaluation.
: Tutoring Children in Reading.

IP&T 520 : Foundations of Instructional Technology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to instructional psychology and technology theory and practice: psychological foundations of human performance technology and learning sciences. Current research issues, professional organization of the field, and ethical issues.

IP&T 550 : Empirical Inquiry and Statistics. (6:6:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Integration of empirical research and statistical analysis in evaluation. Designing, conducting, analyzing, reporting, and critically evaluating research studies.

IP&T 560 : Microcomputer Materials Production. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: IP&T 286 or 515R (Microcomputers in Schools).
DESCRIPTION: Designing, programming, and debugging educational applications of microcomputers using a high-level computer language.

IP&T 564 : Instructional Design. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, Su

IP&T 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:0:18)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Instructional Psychology and Technology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Instructional Psychology and Technology Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Gibbons, Andrew S
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1974

Merrill, Paul F.
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: Bachelors, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, University of Texas at Austin, 1970

Osguthorpe, Russell
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1975

Williams, David Dwayne
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Western Michigan University, 1978
PhD, University of Colorado, Boulder, 1981

Associate Professors

Inouye, Dillon K
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Stanford University, 1978

Sudweeks, Richard R

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, University of Illinois, 1978

Yanchar, Stephen C

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Cleveland State University, 1991
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1997

Assistant Professors

Allen, Stephanie

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, Utah State University, 2003

Graham, Charles R

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, University of Illinois, 1997
PhD, Indiana University, 2002

Rich, Peter Jacob

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Instructional Psychology and Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Georgia, 2007

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies

General Information

1. The Brigham Young University Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies is an educational and cultural center created for study in the Near East, emphasizing religion, the humanities, and the social sciences. The Jerusalem Center has four principal goals:
    a. Provide students an opportunity to study the scriptures in the setting in which the patriarchs, prophets, and the Lord himself lived and taught, and by that study to gain understanding of and commitment to the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

    b. Expand students' understanding of the religions, cultures, history, archaeology, geography, languages, and politics of the ancient and modern Near East.

    c. Foster research and creative endeavors by BYU faculty, students, and visiting scholars.

    d. Promote understanding with other peoples, cultures, and religious faiths that trace their roots to the Holy Land.
2. To achieve these goals, the Jerusalem Center offers a core curriculum with courses in the Old and New Testament and in the ancient and modern Near East. In addition, the center provides specialized courses in archaeology, geography, history, and cultures of the Near East, including language study in Hebrew and Arabic.
3. The Jerusalem Center has marvelous physical facilities on Mount Scopus overlooking the oldest part of the city of Jerusalem. Classrooms, a library, a learning center, auditoriums, student and faculty apartments, a gymnasium and conditioning room, and a cafeteria provide a complete learning environment.

Academic Program

1. **Calendar and Program Emphasis.** Three programs are offered during the calendar year, scheduled to approximate the Provo campus calendar: fall, winter, and spring/summer semesters (four-month programs).
    a. The semester programs are designed for students who are currently enrolled at a college or university seeking their first undergraduate degree. Most of the courses offered are at the upper-division level. Students are encouraged to prepare themselves in advance for this exceptional experience by taking such courses as Pl Sc 170, Geog 120, Hist 300, 302, Arab 101, Heb 101.

    b. All programs include field trips within the Holy Land and to Jordan, Sinai, and Egypt.
2. **Predeparture Orientation Course.** This Independent Study course (NES 100) is taken the semester or term before a student's work at the Jerusalem Center.
3. **Curriculum.** The following subject areas are currently taught at the center:
    a. Biblical Studies: Old Testament and New Testament

    b. Ancient Near Eastern Studies

    c. Modern Near Eastern Studies

    d. Introductory course in either Hebrew or Arabic (required during fall and winter semesters; not offered during spring or summer terms).

    e. Elective courses in biblical studies, ancient and modern Near Eastern Studies, and archaeology as arranged each semester.

Note: Some courses taken at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies may be applied toward degrees in Near Eastern Studies, International Relations, and other majors in the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences. Students should contact their advisement centers concerning specific degree requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

College of Nursing

500 SWKT
(801) 422-4144

Dean: Beth V. Cole, Professor, Nursing
Associate Dean for Undergraduate Academic Affairs: Patricia Ravert, Associate Professor, Nursing
Associate Dean for Graduate Academic Affairs and Faculty Affairs: Mary Williams, Associate Professor, Nursing

College Advisement Center

Mark E. White, Supervisor
551 SWKT

For information regarding College of Nursing programs and admission application forms, contact the following:

Undergraduate students:

College of Nursing Advisement Center
551 SWKT, (801) 422-4173

Graduate students:

Denise Gibbons Davis, Graduate Secretary
400 SWKT, (801) 422-4142

Study of Nursing at Brigham Young University

The College of Nursing at Brigham Young University, established in 1952, is accredited by the Utah State Board of Nursing and the Commission on Collegiate Nursing Education. The mission of the College of Nursing is to develop professional nurses who promote health, care for the suffering, engage in the scholarship of the discipline, invite the Spirit into health and healing, and lead with faith and integrity.

Baccalaureate graduates are prepared to function in generalist roles in hospital and community settings. They also have excellent preparation for entrance into graduate programs. Graduates of the MS program are prepared for a variety of advanced practice and leadership roles in the health care delivery system.

The college faculty are committed to creating a stimulating learning environment based on Christian principles. They maintain a broad range of research and clinical interests.

Student resources include a fully equipped learning resource center with audiovisual and computer learning aids, a research center, and a state-of-the-art clinical simulation laboratory. Clinical practice opportunities exist in a variety of urban and rural hospital, school, home, and community settings along the Wasatch Front. Students may also gain extended experiences with specialized national and international health programs.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships are available for undergraduate and graduate students. Information about additional sources of funding for study are available in the College of Nursing Advisement Center. Research assistantships and teaching assistantships are also available.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Jerusalem Center

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

Courses offered at the Jerusalem Center are *not* offered on the Provo campus and hence cannot be retaken.

Orientation Course

NES 100 : Jerusalem Center Orientation. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Application for a Jerusalem Center foreign study program.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the peoples and cultures of the Near East.
NOTE: Required of all participants prior to departure.

Religion Courses

REL A 101 : Old Testament Survey. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the Old Testament, integrated with extensive field study in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 111 : New Testament Survey of the Gospels. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experience in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 303 : Old Testament Studies. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Study of the Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 311 : New Testament Studies of the Gospels. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Study of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

Near Eastern Studies Courses

NES 101R : Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Studies based on individual and program needs.
NOTE: Elective credit for major and minor. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

NES 136 : Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Survey core course in social science/humanities.
NOTE: Offered (as part of the summer term program) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Elective credit for major and minor.

NES 326 : Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: At least junior class standing.
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course.
NOTE: Elective credit for major and minor. Offered (as part of the summer term program) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 336 : Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:2)
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course emphasizing ancient history extending to the Byzantine period.
NOTE: Elective credit for major and minor. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

NES 347 : (NES-Hist 242) Arab and Islamic Civilization. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course covering Arab and Islamic civilization; historical evolution of Middle East to present. Overview of modern Palestinian society.
NOTE: Elective credit for major and minor in NES. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 349 : (NES-Hist 243) Jewish Civilization. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course; broad introduction to Jewish self-understanding and history, focusing on relationships among people, faith, and land.

NES 398R : Advanced Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Studies based on individual and program needs.
NOTE: Elective credit for major and minor. Also offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies.

NES 499R : Special Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Studies based on individual and program needs.

Language Courses

ARAB 100 : Introduction to Arabic. (1:1.5:0)
DESCRIPTION: Beginning Arabic
NOTE: Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

HEB 100 : Introduction to Hebrew. (1:1.5:0)
DESCRIPTION: Beginning Hebrew.
NOTE: Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

HEB 313 : Readings in the Old Testament. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the Old Testament in Hebrew.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

HEB 321 : Intermediate Conversation and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alt yr.
PREREQUISITE: Heb 101, 102.
DESCRIPTION: Capitalizing on daily life in Jerusalem to increase speaking, reading, writing, and listening comprehension in modern Hebrew.
NOTE: Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

HEB 411R : Advanced Conversation. (4:4:4)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 311R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes conversation in everyday situations. Students role play various situations in class and then apply their learning in Jerusalem.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411 (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

HEB 421 : Readings in the Hebrew Translation of the New Testament. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the New Testament in Hebrew translation.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Hebrew 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

Note: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alaternate years during the winter program only.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Center for Language Studies

Ray T. Clifford, Director
3086 JFSB, (801) 422-1201

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

General Information

To make the exceptional foreign language capabilities of BYU available to a large audience, the Center for Language Studies offers a variety of language courses during the summer term (mid-June to mid-August) as well as during the academic year.

Summer intensive courses include:

Advanced language/culture courses for returned missionaries (and others of comparable ability), especially in less commonly taught languages. Some of these courses will fulfill the general education language requirement.

Foundation courses covering the equivalent of a full academic year of study in a major language.

Students may earn up to two semesters of academic language credit for an intensive summer course. Students need not be regular BYU students to enroll and receive credit during the summer term. Student demand and availability of qualified faculty determine which languages are taught each summer.

Interested students and potential adjunct faculty are requested to register their desires to participate in summer programs as early as possible by completing the survey form on the center's Web page, http://cls.byu.edu, or by contacting the office at 3086 JFSB.

Language and culture courses for returned missionaries (see departmental pages for additional language courses):

Note: Some of the following courses are designated as "culminating courses" to fulfill the general education language requirement. Returned missionaries should receive advice from the relevant department when multiple classes in the language of their interest are listed.

Academic-year courses include two categories:

- Established courses taught as regular daytime classes.
- On-demand courses that are taught if sufficient student demand and qualified teachers are available. Enrollment in these courses is generally through the Division of Continuing Education, Evening Classes. Most of the less commonly taught languages are listed under the general title Foreign Language (FLang).

Courses offered:

Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
Dansh 340.
Finn 340.
Norwe 340.
Swed 340.

Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages
Cant 202.
Chin 112, 201, 202.
Japan 221, 301.
Korea 301.

Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages
Bulgn 330.
Czech 330.
Dutch 340.
Germ 330.
Hung 330.
Polsh 330.
Russ 330.
Sln 330.
SrbCr 330.
Ukrai 330.

Department of French and Italian
Fren 201, 321, 340.
Ital 321, 340.
Rom 340.

Department of Spanish and Portuguese
Port 315.
Span 321.

Center for Language Studies

The center offers the following courses—often in collaboration with language departments—depending on demand and availability of qualified faculty. The number and types of classes vary. (Students should check with their major advisement center to determine whether the class offered fulfills the GE Foreign Language requirement.)

Afrikaans	Hawaiian	Niuean
Akan	Hebrew	Norwegian
Albanian	Hindi	Persian
Arabic	Hmong	Polish
Armenian	Hungarian	Portuguese
Aymara	Icelandic	Quechua
Basque	Ilangot	Rarotongan
Bicolano	Ilocano	Romanian
Bulgarian	Ilonggo	Russian
Burmese	Indonesian	Samoan
Cakchiquel	Italian	Serbian
Cambodian	Japanese	Slovenian
Cantonese	Javanese	Spanish
Catalan	Kazakh	Swahili
Cebuano	K'iche	Swedish
Croatian	Korean	Tagalog
Czech	Laotian	Tahitian
Danish	Latin	Taiwanese
Dutch	Latvian	Thai
Estonian	Lithuanian	Tongan
Fijian	Malagasy	Trukese
Finnish	Malay	Turkish
French	Mandarin	Ukrainian
Ga	Maori	Urdu
German	Marshallese	Vanuatau
Greek (Classical)	Maya	Vietnamese
Greek (Modern)	Mongolian	Waray-Waray
Guarani	Navajo	Welsh
Haitian Creole		

Less commonly taught languages listed under the general title FLang 330R may also fulfill the GE Foreign Language requirement.

Upon completion of an approved culminating language course that fulfills the foreign language general education requirement, returned missionaries and others with comparable skills may receive additional graded credit by examination for classes leading to the level of the culminating course (up to an additional 16 credit hours). In some cases, up to 12 credit hours may be earned by examination *without taking the culminating course*, but all such credit will be pass/fail credit. An examination once taken for pass/fail credit cannot be retaken or reevaluated for graded credit. Contact the Humanities Technology and Research Support Center for information about these examinations. All language credit earned by enrollment on campus will be graded.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

American Sign Language (ASL)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ASL 101 : Conversation ASL, Part 1. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic ASL skills, both receptive and expressive. Basic conversation skill, emphasizing vocabulary building and pragmatics. Introduction to deafness and ASL.
NOTE: Intended for students with little or no experience in ASL. Available only through Evening Classes.

ASL 102 : Conversation ASL, Part 2. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ASL 101 or equivalent competency.
DESCRIPTION: Basic ASL skills, both receptive and expressive. Basic conversation skill, emphasizing vocabulary building and pragmatics. Introduction to deafness and ASL.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

200-Level Courses

ASL 201 : ASL Grammar. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ASL 102.
DESCRIPTION: Basic study of ASL structure and syntax. Beginning transcription.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

ASL 202 : Advanced ASL Grammar. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ASL 201.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ASL structure, including conversational skills.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

300-Level Courses

ASL 301 : Deaf Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ASL 201.
DESCRIPTION: Society and culture of the deaf community.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination.

ASL 302 : Deaf Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ASL 202, 301.
DESCRIPTION: Various genres of deaf literature. Introduction to analysis of ASL literary works.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

400-Level Courses

ASL 431 : Interpreting 1. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ASL 202, 301.
RECOMMENDED: ASL 302 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Building basic interpreting skills. Code of Ethics, interpreting protocol, and interpreting issues.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

ASL 432 : Interpreting 2. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ASL 431.
DESCRIPTION: Various interpreting models; the interpreting process; building and applying interpreting skills.
NOTE: Available only through Evening Classes.

Back to Center for Language Studies Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Foreign Language (Flang)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

FLANG 101R : First-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary building, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

: First-Year Language Study: Akan.
: First-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: First-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: First-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: First-Year Language Study: Basque.
: First-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: First-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: First-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: First-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: First-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: First-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: First-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: First-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: First-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: First-Year Language Study: Finnish.
: First-Year Language Study: Ga.
: First-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: First-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: First-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: First-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: First-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: First-Year Language Study: Hungarian.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: First-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: First-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: First-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: First-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: First-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: First-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: First-Year Language Study: Malay.
: First-Year Language Study: Maori.
: First-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: First-Year Language Study: Maya.
: First-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: First-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: First-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: First-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: First-Year Language Study: Persian.
: First-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: First-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: First-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: First-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: First-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: First-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Thai.
: First-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: First-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: First-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: First-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: First-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: First-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.

FLANG 102R : First-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 101R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, writing, and culture.

: First-Year Language Study: Akan.
: First-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: First-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: First-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: First-Year Language Study: Basque.
: First-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: First-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: First-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.

: First-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: First-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: First-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: First-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: First-Year Language Study: Dutch.
: First-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: First-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: First-Year Language Study: Ga.
: First-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: First-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: First-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: First-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: First-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: First-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: First-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: First-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: First-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: First-Year Language Study: Malay.
: First-Year Language Study: Maori.
: First-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: First-Year Language Study: Maya.
: First-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: First-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: First-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: First-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: First-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: First-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: First-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: First-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: First-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: First-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Thai.
: First-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: First-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: First-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: First-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: First-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: First-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.
: First-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: First-Year Language Study: Persian.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

200-Level Courses

FLANG 201R : Second-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 102R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills.

: Second-Year Language Study: Akan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: Second-Year Language Study: Basque.
: Second-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Czech.
: Second-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ga.
: Second-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: Second-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: Second-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: Second-Year Language Study: Malay.
: Second-Year Language Study: Maori.
: Second-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Maya.
: Second-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: Second-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: Second-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: Second-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: Second-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Samoan.

: Second-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Thai.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: Second-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: Second-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: Second-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.
: Second-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: Second-Year Language Study: Persian.

FLANG 202R : Second-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 201R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Continued emphasis on conversation, vocabulary building, reading, and writing.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Languages of Learning requirement. Not an entry course for returned missionaries.

: Second-Year Language Study: Akan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Arabic.
: Second-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: Second-Year Language Study: Basque.
: Second-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ga.
: Second-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: Second-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hebrew.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: Second-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: Second-Year Language Study: Ilonggo/Hiligaynon.
: Second-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: Second-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Latin.
: Second-Year Language Study: Latvian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Lithuanian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: Second-Year Language Study: Malay.
: Second-Year Language Study: Maori.
: Second-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Maya.
: Second-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: Second-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: Second-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: Second-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: Second-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Romanian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Slovenian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: Second-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Thai.
: Second-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: Second-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: Second-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: Second-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: Second-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: Second-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.
: Second-Year Language Study: Welsh.
: Second-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: Second-Year Language Study: Persian.

300-Level Courses

FLANG 305R : Language Skills Development. (1-4:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Increasing skills and ability in at least one of the following areas: grammar, lexicon, pronunciation, orthography, listening, speaking, reading, writing, or cultural awareness.

: Lanaguage Skills Development: Ilonggo/Hilgaynon.
: Language Skills Development: Afrikaans.
: Language Skills Development: Arabic.
: Language Skills Development: Bulgarian.
: Language Skills Development: Chinese.
: Language Skills Development: Czech.
: Language Skills Development: Danish.
: Language Skills Development: Dutch.
: Language Skills Development: Finnish.
: Language Skills Development: German.
: Language Skills Development: Greek (Classical).
: Language Skills Development: Hebrew.
: Language Skills Development: Hungarian.
: Language Skills Development: Icelandic.
: Language Skills Development: Italian.
: Language Skills Development: Japanese.
: Language Skills Development: Korean.
: Language Skills Development: Latin.
: Language Skills Development: Latvian.
: Language Skills Development: Lithuanian.
: Language Skills Development: Norwegian.
: Language Skills Development: Polish.
: Language Skills Development: Portuguese.
: Language Skills Development: Romanian.
: Language Skills Development: Russian.
: Language Skills Development: Serbo-Croatian.
: Language Skills Development: Slovenian.
: Language Skills Development: Spanish.
: Language Skills Development: Swedish.
: Language Skills Development: Ukrainian.
: Language Skills Development: Akan.
: Language Skills Development: Albanian.
: Language Skills Development: Armenian.
: Language Skills Development: Aymara.
: Language Skills Development: Basque.
: Language Skills Development: Bicolano.
: Language Skills Development: Burmese.
: Language Skills Development: Cakchiquel.
: Language Skills Development: Cambodian.
: Language Skills Development: Catalan.
: Language Skills Development: Cebuano.
: Language Skills Development: Croatian.
: Language Skills Development: Estonian.
: Language Skills Development: Fijian.
: Language Skills Development: French.
: Language Skills Development: Ga.
: Language Skills Development: Guarani.
: Language Skills Development: Haitian Creole.
: Language Skills Development: Hawaiian.
: Language Skills Development: Hindi.
: Language Skills Development: Hmong.
: Language Skills Development: Ilangot.
: Language Skills Development: Ilocano.
: Language Skills Development: Indonesian.
: Language Skills Development: Javanese.
: Language Skills Development: K'iche.
: Language Skills Development: Kazakh.
: Language Skills Development: Laotian.
: Language Skills Development: Malagasy.
: Language Skills Development: Malay.
: Language Skills Development: Maori.
: Language Skills Development: Marshallese.
: Language Skills Development: Maya.
: Language Skills Development: Modern Greek.
: Language Skills Development: Mongolian.
: Language Skills Development: Navajo.
: Language Skills Development: Niuean.
: Language Skills Development: Persian.
: Language Skills Development: Quechua.
: Language Skills Development: Rarotongan.
: Language Skills Development: Samoan.
: Language Skills Development: Serbian.
: Language Skills Development: Swahili.
: Language Skills Development: Tagalog.
: Language Skills Development: Tahitian.
: Language Skills Development: Taiwanese.
: Language Skills Development: Thai.
: Language Skills Development: Tongan.
: Language Skills Development: Trukese.
: Language Skills Development: Turkish.
: Language Skills Development: Urdu.
: Language Skills Development: Vanuatau.
: Language Skills Development: Vietnamese.
: Language Skills Development: Waray-Waray.
: Language Skills Development: Welsh.

FLANG 321R : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 202R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of grammar and syntax of less commonly taught languages.

: Advanced Grammar: Hindi.
: Advanced Grammar: Ilonggo/Hiligaynon.

: Advanced Grammar: Akan.
: Advanced Grammar: Albanian.
: Advanced Grammar: Armenian.
: Advanced Grammar: Aymara.
: Advanced Grammar: Basque.
: Advanced Grammar: Bicolano.
: Advanced Grammar: Burmese.
: Advanced Grammar: Cakchiquel.
: Advanced Grammar: Cambodian.
: Advanced Grammar: Catalan.
: Advanced Grammar: Cebuano.
: Advanced Grammar: Croatian.
: Advanced Grammar: Estonian.
: Advanced Grammar: Fijian.
: Advanced Grammar: Ga.
: Advanced Grammar: Guarani.
: Advanced Grammar: Haitian Creole.
: Advanced Grammar: Hawaiian.
: Advanced Grammar: Hmong.
: Advanced Grammar: Ilangot.
: Advanced Grammar: Ilocano.
: Advanced Grammar: Indonesian.
: Advanced Grammar: Javanese.
: Advanced Grammar: K'iche.
: Advanced Grammar: Kazakh.
: Advanced Grammar: Laotian.
: Advanced Grammar: Malagasy.
: Advanced Grammar: Malay.
: Advanced Grammar: Maori.
: Advanced Grammar: Marshallese.
: Advanced Grammar: Maya.
: Advanced Grammar: Modern Greek.
: Advanced Grammar: Mongolian.
: Advanced Grammar: Navajo.
: Advanced Grammar: Niuean.
: Advanced Grammar: Persian.
: Advanced Grammar: Quechua.
: Advanced Grammar: Rarotongan.
: Advanced Grammar: Samoan.
: Advanced Grammar: Serbian.
: Advanced Grammar: Swahili.
: Advanced Grammar: Tagalog.
: Advanced Grammar: Tahitian.
: Advanced Grammar: Taiwanese.
: Advanced Grammar: Thai.
: Advanced Grammar: Tongan.
: Advanced Grammar: Trukese.
: Advanced Grammar: Turkish.
: Advanced Grammar: Urdu.
: Advanced Grammar: Vanuatau.
: Advanced Grammar: Vietnamese.
: Advanced Grammar: Waray-Waray.
: Advanced Grammar: Welsh.

FLANG 330R : Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: FLang 202R or equivalent in same language.

DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases.

NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others of equivalent language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination. May fulfill the GE Foreign Language requirement.

: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Afrikaans.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Akan.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Albanian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Arabic.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Armenian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Aymara.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Basque.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Bicolano.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Burmese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Cakchiquel.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Cambodian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Catalan.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Cebuano.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Chinese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Croatian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Danish.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Dutch.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Estonian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Fijian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Finnish.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: French.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Ga.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Guarani.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Haitian Creole.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Hawaiian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Hebrew.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Hindi.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Hmong.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Icelandic.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Ilangot.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Ilocano.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Ilonggo/Hiligaynon.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Indonesian.

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences

N-181 ESC
(801) 422-2674

Dean: Scott D. Sommerfeldt, Professor, Physics and Astronomy
Associate Dean: Dana Thomas Griffen, Professor, Geological Sciences
Associate Dean: Thomas W. Sederberg, Professor, Computer Science

The College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences consists of seven departments:

- Chemistry and Biochemistry
- Computer Science
- Geological Sciences
- Mathematics
- Mathematics Education
- Physics and Astronomy
- Statistics

Freshmen who are interested in the physical and mathematical sciences but are undecided about a specific major may register in science fundamentals core courses: Math 112; Chem 111 or 105; Phscs 121.

College Advisement Center

Shane M. Jorgenson, Supervisor
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

The advisement center provides information and help on registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, and many other aspects of the college's academic life.

Degrees Offered

Bachelor's degrees are offered in chemistry, chemistry education, computer science, earth and space science education, geology, mathematics, mathematics education, physical science teaching, physics, physics teaching, and statistics.

The master of science degree is offered in biochemistry, chemistry, computer science, geology, mathematics, physics, and statistics. The master of arts degree is available in mathematics education. The doctor of philosophy degree is offered in biochemistry, chemistry, computer science, mathematics, physics, and physics/astronomy.

See specific departmental sections of this catalog for baccalaureate degree requirements. Graduate programs are detailed in the 2008–2009 BYU Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Italian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Japanese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Javanese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Kazakh.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Korean.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Laotian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Latin.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Malagasy.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Malay.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Maori.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Marshallese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Maya.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Modern Greek.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Mongolian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Navajo.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Niuean.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Norwegian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Portuguese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Quechua.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Rarotongan.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Romanian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Samoan.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Serbian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Slovene.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Spanish.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Swahili.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Swedish.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Tagalog.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Tahitian.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Taiwanese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Thai.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Tongan.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Trukese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Turkish.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Urdu.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Vanuatau.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Vietnamese.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Waray-Waray.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Welsh.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: K'iche.
: Advanced Language Proficiency Through Cultural Studies: Persian.

FLANG 340R : Introduction to Literature. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: FLang 330R in same language.

DESCRIPTION: Advanced study of literature of less commonly taught language. Continued listening, speaking, writing, grammar, and culture.

: Introduction to Literature: Ilonggo/Hiligaynon.
: Introduction to Literature: Akan.
: Introduction to Literature: Albanian.
: Introduction to Literature: Armenian.
: Introduction to Literature: Aymara.
: Introduction to Literature: Basque.
: Introduction to Literature: Bicolano.
: Introduction to Literature: Burmese.
: Introduction to Literature: Cakchiquel.
: Introduction to Literature: Cambodian.
: Introduction to Literature: Catalan.
: Introduction to Literature: Cebuano.
: Introduction to Literature: Croatian.
: Introduction to Literature: Estonian.
: Introduction to Literature: Fijian.
: Introduction to Literature: Ga.
: Introduction to Literature: Guarani.
: Introduction to Literature: Haitian Creole.
: Introduction to Literature: Hawaiian.
: Introduction to Literature: Hindi.
: Introduction to Literature: Hmong.
: Introduction to Literature: Ilangot.
: Introduction to Literature: Ilocano.
: Introduction to Literature: Indonesian.
: Introduction to Literature: Javanese.
: Introduction to Literature: K'iche.
: Introduction to Literature: Kazakh.
: Introduction to Literature: Laotian.
: Introduction to Literature: Malagasy.
: Introduction to Literature: Malay.
: Introduction to Literature: Maori.
: Introduction to Literature: Marshallese.
: Introduction to Literature: Maya.
: Introduction to Literature: Modern Greek.
: Introduction to Literature: Mongolian.
: Introduction to Literature: Navajo.
: Introduction to Literature: Niuean.
: Introduction to Literature: Persian.
: Introduction to Literature: Quechua.
: Introduction to Literature: Rarotongan.
: Introduction to Literature: Samoan.
: Introduction to Literature: Serbian.
: Introduction to Literature: Swahili.
: Introduction to Literature: Tagalog.
: Introduction to Literature: Tahitian.
: Introduction to Literature: Taiwanese.
: Introduction to Literature: Thai.

: Introduction to Literature: Tongan.
: Introduction to Literature: Trukese.
: Introduction to Literature: Turkish.
: Introduction to Literature: Urdu.
: Introduction to Literature: Vanuatau.
: Introduction to Literature: Vietnamese.
: Introduction to Literature: Waray-Waray.
: Introduction to Literature: Welsh.

FLANG 350R : Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 330R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Concentration on language / culture issues for specific careers.

: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Afrikaans.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Arabic.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Aymara.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Basque.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Bulgarian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Cakchiquel.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Cambodian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Catalan.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Cebuano.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Chinese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Creole.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Croatian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Czech.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Danish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Dutch.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Estonian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Fijian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Finnish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: French.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: German.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Greek (Classical).
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Guarani.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Hawaiian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Hebrew.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Hindi.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Hmong.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Hungarian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Icelandic.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Ilangot.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Ilocano.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Indonesian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Italian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Japanese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Korean.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Laotian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Latin:
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Latvian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Lithuanian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Maori.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Maya.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Modern Greek.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Mongolian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Navajo.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Niuean.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Norwegian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Polish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Portuguese;
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Quechua.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Rarotongan.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Romanian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Russian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Samoan.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Serbian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Serbo-Croatian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Slovene.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Slovenian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Spanish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Swahili.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Swedish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Tagalog.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Tahitian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Taiwanese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Thai.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Tongan.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Trukese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Turkish.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Ukrainian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Urdu.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Vanuatau.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Vietnamese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Waray-Waray.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Welsh.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Akan.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Albanian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Armenian.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Bicolano.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Burmese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Ga.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Ilonggo/Hiligaynon.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Javanese.

: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: K'iche.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Kazakh.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Malagasy.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Malay.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Marshallese.
: Advanced Language Study for Career Purposes: Persian.

FLANG 377R : Foreign Language Teaching Methods. (1-3:Arr:0)
PREREQUISITE: Native- or advanced-level proficiency in a less commonly taught language.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching methods specific to teaching less commonly taught language courses. Lectures, demonstrations, and microteaching. Topics include curriculum/lesson planning, reflective teaching, and communicative language teaching.
NOTE: Prospective teachers and TAs should take this course before or while teaching a less commonly taught language course.

FLANG 382R : Language Study Colloquium. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Weekly lectures/presentations on language research and creative projects currently underway at Brigham Young University.
NOTE: Pass/Fail credit only.

400-Level Courses

FLANG 490R : Special Studies in Second Language Applications. (1-3:Arr:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised instruction for advanced students. Individual or group study. Course work established by contract and director's approval.

Back to Center for Language Studies Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Welsh (Welsh)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

WELSH 101A : First-Year Welsh. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, grammar fundamentals, and vocabulary building, emphasizing conversation.

WELSH 101B : First-Year Welsh. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, grammar fundamentals, and vocabulary building, emphasizing conversation.

WELSH 102 : First-Year Welsh. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Welsh 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, grammar fundamentals, and vocabulary building, emphasizing conversation.

200-Level Courses

WELSH 201 : Second-Year Welsh. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Welsh 101 and 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

Back to Center for Language Studies Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Center for Languate Studies Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professor

Clifford, Ray T.
COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Center for Language Studies
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Minnesota, 1977

Associate Professor

Bush, Michael Douglas
COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Center for Language Studies
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MBA, University of Missouri, 1976
PhD, Ohio State University, 1983

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Life Sciences Student Services

Shauna C. Anderson, Assistant Dean
379-380 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Life Sciences Preparation (Premajor Program)

The program has open enrollment.

The Discipline

This is a premajor program for students interested in biology or life sciences and haven't decided on a specific major. It will allow students to investigate the science classes and then move to a major in the college without losing time to graduation.

Learning Outcomes

1. Describe the services offered by the Life Sciences Student Services
2. The preparation program in Life Sciences is designed to allow students to investigate the various majors offered by the college by describing the following for each major:
    a. the discipline
    b. student learning outcomes and assessments used to measure them
    c. courses required
    d. possible careers or post-graduate opportunities

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Life Sciences Preparation (Premajor Program) (28–29 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following survey course:
   LFSCI 101 : Freshman Life Sciences Seminar. (.5:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Presentations of the various majors offered in the College of Life Sciences.

2. Complete the following:
   CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
   NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

   CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
   NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

   CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
   NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

   MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

   MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

   PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

   PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.

DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

3. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Life Science (LfSci)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

LFSCI 101 : Freshman Life Sciences Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Presentations of the various majors offered in the College of Life Sciences.

LFSCI 190R : College of Life Sciences Student Council. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Application for student council position.
DESCRIPTION: Active involvement on the student council for the College of Life Sciences. Issues facing students in the college explored and solutions suggested.

300-Level Courses

LFSCI 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

: Mentored Internship.

400-Level Courses

LFSCI 489R : Senior Library Thesis. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Prospectus approval by Life Sciences Student Services.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored library study that extensively explores relevant questions determined by an approved faculty mentor.

LFSCI 490R : Special Problems. (1-6:0.0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Life Sciences Student Services consent.

LFSCI 494R : Mentored Research. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.

LFSCI 499R : Senior Honors Thesis. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topic to be cleared with Honors Program Office and Life Sciences Student Services.

Back to Life Sciences Student Services Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Linguistics and English Language

William G. Eggington, Chair
Diane Strong-Krause, Associate Chair
Royal Skousen, Associate Chair
4064 JFSB, (801) 422-2937
E-mail: linguistics@byu.edu
Internet: http://linguistics.byu.edu

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All undergraduate degree programs in the Department of Linguistics and English Language are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Linguistics is the study of language in all its aspects—from speech sounds to sentence formation to meaning; from how language is organized and used in a social setting to how it is organized and processed in the brain or by computers. Linguists study language form, language change, language acquisition, and even the texts in which language is recorded. Linguists recognize that the communicative power of language is what brings cohesion to all human enterprises. For the student interested in the nature of language, linguistics is the subject to study.

The science of linguistics has many real-world applications, including translation, information storage/retrieval, lexicography, editing, and language teaching. In addition to its majors in general linguistics and in English language, BYU's Department of Linguistics and English Language offers undergraduate minor programs (as well as graduate degrees) in several of these areas.

Career Opportunities

A linguistics degree with an emphasis in computers may lead to jobs in high technology, e.g., machine translation, information retrieval, speech recognition and production software, and lexicography. Linguistics is also recognized as a strong specialization for those pursuing a career in military intelligence or technical writing.

The English language major is in many ways similar to the linguistics major, though its focus is more specifically on English linguistics. The major provides useful preparation for careers that require special attention to the English language, such as advertising and technical writing. The English language major along with a TESOL or editing minor is an especially strong combination.

The teaching of English to speakers of other languages is an applied linguistics area of high demand, both within the United States and around the world (see further description under TESOL below).

In addition, the linguistics and English language majors are excellent preparations for those planning graduate studies in areas as diverse as law, international business, tourism, library science, TESOL, communicative disorders, and speech pathology, not to mention graduate studies in specific languages or in linguistics itself.

General Information

The Department of Linguistics and English Language strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in English Language
BA in Linguistics

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Religious Education

370 JSB
(801) 422-2735

Dean: Terry B. Ball, Professor, Ancient Scripture
Associate Dean: Kent P. Jackson, Professor, Ancient Scripture
Associate Dean: Dennis A. Wright, Professor, Church History and Doctrine

Academic Departments and Curriculum Areas

Ancient Scripture
Church History and Doctrine

Research and Academic Support Areas

Religious Studies Center

Purposes

The mission of Religious Education at Brigham Young University is to build the kingdom of God by teaching and preserving the doctrine of the gospel of Jesus Christ. We spread the light of the Restoration through classroom instruction, gospel scholarship, and outreach to the larger community.

Religious Education oversees the teaching of and research into scripture, doctrine, LDS and Christian church history, and world religions. We strive to create a learning environment and provide resources that are "spiritually strengthening, intellectually enlarging, and character building" and an educational experience that results in "lifelong learning and service" (The Aims of a BYU Education).

Religious Education seeks to spread the light of restored truth to Latter-day Saints and to those not of the LDS faith in three ways:

1. Instruction. We seek in Religious Education to find new ways and more effective ways to communicate timeless truths and to provide "a stimulating setting where a commitment to excellence is expected and the full realization of human potential is pursued" (BYU Mission Statement). In general, we search for ways to enhance the educational experience and to build a faith in and a commitment to the restored gospel that is as stimulating and satisfying to the mind as it is soothing and settling to the heart.
2. Scholarship. The search for new truths and the quest to better understand well-known truths are central to the work of Religious Education. While the ultimate interpretation of doctrinal matters rests with apostles and prophets, we seek to discover historical backgrounds, provide cultural and linguistic details, and explore new avenues of understanding into our faith, history, and way of life.
3. Outreach. An important dimension of the work of Religious Education is outreach, the effort to teach, share, and discuss Mormonism in the larger non-LDS community of scholars and to foster understanding between men and women of all faiths.

Degrees Offered

Religious Education offers the master of religious education degree. For further information on this program, please contact Religious Education, 370 JSB, (801) 422-2735.

No other degree programs are offered in this area.

Scholarships and Awards

Graduate-level scholarships and awards are available to qualified students. Applications may be obtained from the Office of the Dean of Religious Education, 370 JSB.

Religious Studies Center

Richard N. Holzapfel, Director
167 HGB
(801) 422-2332
http://religion.byu.edu/rsc_about.php

The Religious Studies Center (RSC) is the research and publication arm of Religious Education. It continues to pursue its original charter to encourage and sponsor serious, faithful, gospel-related scholarship and the ensuing publication of that scholarship. It fulfills the charge to help meet the university's commitment to religious studies and Religious Education's aim to teach and preserve the doctrine of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It also serves the greater Church through the publication of the works of Religious Education faculty and other scholars who have written important, timely, scholarly work of a faith-promoting nature.

To encourage and promote religiously oriented scholarship, the RSC awards grants and provides other financial assistance. It proactively reaches out to faculty to encourage research in specific areas and supports them in the publication of their findings. To accomplish this the RSC sponsors two faculty mentors, known as area directors, who oversee and fund research in Church history and ancient scripture.

Minors

- Editing
- Humanities Computing
- Linguistics
- Linguistic Computing
- TESOL

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

- MA in Linguistics
- Cert in TESOL
- MA in TESOL

For more information see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in English Language (51 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite to all courses required for the English language major:
   ELANG 223 : Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   ELANG 273 : Empirical Methods in English Linguistics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: The use of large collections of texts for teaching and particularly for research, including the study of many different types of linguistic variation.

   ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

   ELANG 324 : History of the English Language. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic changes from Old English to modern English, including modern American dialects.

   ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

   ELANG 326 : English Semantics and Pragmatics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Structure of meaning in words, phrases, and discourse. Lexical semantics and the mental lexicon; phrase-level meaning; interaction of situation and meaning.

   ELANG 327 : English Phonetics and Phonology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, perception, and interaction of English speech sounds. Dialect variation.

   ELANG 495R : The Senior Course. (3:3.0:0.0)
   PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English language major status.
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of English language. Content varies; requires research and writing.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   ELANG 362 : Discourse Analysis. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Linguistic analysis of connected speech or written discourse, especially larger linguistic units above the clause level, such as conversational exchanges or written texts.

ELANG 468 : Varieties of English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes such as English-based pidgins and creoles.

LING 550 : Sociolinguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Research and theory in anthropological linguistics and sociolinguistics.

4. Complete one of the following period courses:
ELANG 525 : Old English 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Old English grammar and vocabulary; traditional syntactical patterns in various types of Old English prose and poetry.

ELANG 526 : Middle English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Detailed study of the principal dialects of Middle English, as illustrated in the literature of the period.

ELANG 527 : Early Modern English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: English language from about 1500 to 1800, with special emphasis on language of Shakespeare and the King James Bible.

5. Complete three courses from the following:
CHUM 210 : Instructional Applications Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to teaching: designing, authoring, and evaluating computer-based instructional materials for lab and classroom use.
NOTE: Recommended for teaching majors and minors.

CHUM 230 : Print Publishing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or word processing experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in print media; journals, newsletters, textbooks, and other scholarly publications.

CHUM 250 : Internet Publishing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in electronic media: Internet sites for classes, research projects, and academic organizations. Scripting for intelligent/dynamic Web pages.

CHUM 310 : Instructional Applications Programming 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 210.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced applications of computer technology to teaching: integrating digital graphics, sound, and video; hypertext and hypermedia; computer-based testing; network applications.

CHUM 355 : Text Encoding and Markup. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 250 or 260.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of markup languages (SGML, XML, etc.) and encoding standards for academic content. Practical experience encoding, processing, and delivering marked-up data.

ELANG 362 : Discourse Analysis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic analysis of connected speech or written discourse, especially larger linguistic units above the clause level, such as conversational exchanges or written texts.

ELANG 421R : Studies in Language or Editing. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ELANG 468 : Varieties of English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes such as English-based pidgins and creoles.

ELANG 521R : Studies in Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: English Spelling.

ELANG 522 : Language Policy and Planning in English Language Contexts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and practices of governing entities as they formulate policies relating to the status and codification of the English language.

ELANG 524 : History of the Book. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History and development of the book, including modern methods and practices.

ELANG 525 : Old English 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Old English grammar and vocabulary; traditional syntactical patterns in various types of Old English prose and poetry.

ELANG 526 : Middle English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Detailed study of the principal dialects of Middle English, as illustrated in the literature of the period.

ELANG 527 : Early Modern English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: English language from about 1500 to 1800, with special emphasis on language of Shakespeare and the King James Bible.

ELANG 529 : Structure of Modern English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 325, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: English syntax through modern grammars; theories underlying those grammars.

ELANG 535 : Language and Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literature from a language perspective; applying linguistic constructs to literary language; examining literary style; linguistic analysis of unfamiliar texts.

ELANG 548 : Old English 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 525.
DESCRIPTION: Additional reading in Old English, emphasizing sound changes, dialects, and textual production.

LING 450 : Introduction to Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and method of language change via comparison of daughter languages and reconstruction of their ancestral language: phonological, morphological, semantic, and lexical.

LING 485 : Corpus Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330, ELang 223, or ELang 273.
DESCRIPTION: Using large collections of texts for teaching and particularly for research, including many types of linguistic variation

LING 545 : Psycholinguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: How the mind interprets, stores, retrieves, and produces language. Anatomical structures and physiological processes of the brain dealing with language.

LING 550 : Sociolinguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Research and theory in anthropological linguistics and sociolinguistics.

Note: Only one computers and the humanities (CHum) course can be used to fill this requirement.

6. Complete 12 credit hours (to a 200-level or higher) of university course work (or the equivalent) in any single language. This may be the same language used to satisfy the GE Foreign Language option. A language relevant to the historical development of English is strongly recommended, namely Latin, French, German, or classical Greek.

Show all English Language (ELang) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Linguistics (47–53 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite:
   LING 330 : Introduction to Linguistics (Modern). (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic understanding of linguistic systems. Phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, and pragmatics.

2. Complete the following courses:
   LING 420 : Phonetics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: General inventory of speech sounds possible in language, from both an acoustic and articulatory point of view.

   LING 427 : Phonology and Morphology. (3:3.0:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to phonology and morphology in the world's languages emphasizing the analysis of English.

   LING 430 : Theoretical Syntax. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Theoretical comparison and contrast of different sentence types. Methods of argument to develop and critique generative theories of lexical categories, grammatical roles, and syntactic structure.

   LING 450 : Introduction to Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
   DESCRIPTION: Theory and method of language change via comparison of daughter languages and reconstruction of their ancestral language: phonological, morphological, semantic, and lexical.

   LING 490 : Senior Seminar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
   RECOMMENDED: Ling 420, 427, 430, 450.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing major issues in linguistics, writing a senior paper, and reviewing content of core courses.

3. Complete 15 credit hours (to a 200-level or higher) of university-level course work (or the equivalent) in a single foreign language (American Sign Language also qualifies). Students intending to pursue graduate studies in linguistics are strongly encouraged to study a non-Indo-European language. Non-native speakers of English may elect to use English to fill this requirement. They may choose to earn the credit by special examination or by taking classes (ESL 301, 302, 303, 304, and 305).

4. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Complete an approved university minor in one of the following areas (approx. 18-21 hours): TESOL, linguistic computing, or editing.
   b. Complete 15 hours of approved electives:
      1. Nine credit hours from linguistic (Ling) courses other than those in items 1 and 2 above.

2. Six credit hours from:
   Any additional linguistics (Ling) courses.
   Any English language (ELang) courses (except ELang 223).
   ANTHR 309 : Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

   PHIL 420 : Philosophy of Language. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
   DESCRIPTION: Meaning and reference, synonymy, metaphor, exemplification, translation; linguistic, artistic, and perceptual symbol systems.

   PSYCH 375 : Cognition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Perceptual organization; information processing; cognitive development; relationships between sensory analysis, perception, memory, learning, language, and problem solving.
   NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

   PSYCH 376 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F alternate years.
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Principles of language acquisition including communicative development in infancy, sematic and syntactic development, language and literacy in the school years, and effects of brain damage.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Linguistics (Ling) Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Editing (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

CHUM 230 : Print Publishing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or word processing experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in print media; journals, newsletters, textbooks, and other scholarly publications.

ELANG 223 : Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

ELANG 350 : Basic Editing Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Editing theory and practice, emphasizing copy editing and basic line editing.

ELANG 410R : Genre and Substantive Editing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring a different genre of publishing each semester, instruction in substantive editing.

2. Complete three hours of the following:

ELANG 430R : Editing for Publication. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 350, 410R; Chum 230.
DESCRIPTION: Refining copy editing and substantive editing skills through hands-on work with actual publications; one-on-one feedback and mentoring.

Show all English Language (ELang) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Linguistics (15 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following courses:

LING 330 : Introduction to Linguistics (Modern). (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic understanding of linguistic systems. Phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, and pragmatics.

LING 450 : Introduction to Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and method of language change via comparison of daughter languages and reconstruction of their ancestral language: phonological, morphological, semantic, and lexical.

2. Complete nine hours of electives from other Linguistics and English Language Department course work in consultation with a department advisor.

Show all Linguistics (Ling) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Linguistic Computing (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one course from the following prerequisite courses:
   ELANG 223 : Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

   LING 330 : Introduction to Linguistics (Modern). (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic understanding of linguistic systems. Phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, and pragmatics.

2. Complete one course from the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):
   CHUM 200 : Basic Humanities Computing Skills. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Word processing experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Software applications for computer-based instruction, academic publishing, and research; introduction to programming new applications.

   C S 100 : Fundamentals of Computing and Information. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Computing, information structures, programming principles, Internet, World Wide Web, text, spreadsheets, data representations for images, sound and video.
   NOTE: For nonmajors.

3. Complete the following:
   CHUM 220 : Linguistic Computing Programming 1. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for language applications: data types, character representation, flow of control, file input/output, string manipulation.

   CHUM 260 : Text Processing and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Applications of computer technology to research in language and literature: text processing, retrieval, and analysis tools for text corpora and online resources.

4. Complete 9 hours from the following:
   CHUM 200 : Basic Humanities Computing Skills. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Word processing experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Software applications for computer-based instruction, academic publishing, and research; introduction to programming new applications.

   Or
   C S 100 : Fundamentals of Computing and Information. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Computing, information structures, programming principles, Internet, World Wide Web, text, spreadsheets, data representations for images, sound and video.

Undergraduate Education

302 MSRB
(801) 422-3037
Email: ugrad@byu.edu

Dean: Daniel J. Fairbanks, Professor, Plant and Wildlife Sciences
Associate Dean—General Education: John D. Lamb, Professor, Chemistry and Biochemistry
Associate Dean—Honors Program: Madison U. Sowell, Professor, Italian and Comparative Literature
Associate Dean—University Writing: Gary L. Hatch, Associate Professor, English
Associate Dean—First-Year Experience: R. Steven Turley, Professor, Physics and Astronomy
Assistant Dean: Carolyn Tuitupou

The Office of Undergraduate Education supervises and fosters essential university-wide elements of the baccalaureate: General Education, Honors Program, University Writing, and First-Year Experience, including Freshman Academy and New Student Orientation. These interrelated programs together promote and champion teaching and learning within an integrated *university* education. They aim to enrich the educational experience and to benefit the life of each undergraduate student.

General Education

The General Education (GE) components of the university core are overseen by an associate dean and administrative assistant. The Faculty General Education Council, consisting of faculty members from a variety of disciplines and chaired by the associate dean, regularly reviews general education courses and has final authority to decide which courses meet GE requirements. From time to time the associate dean, in consultation with the dean and the administration, initiates a broad-based, systematic evaluation of the GE program that may result in recommendations for changes.

General Education requirements are set forth in the University Core section of this catalog. Beyond this and the more detailed listing in the current class schedule, the recommended source of information and advice about General Education requirements is the individual college advisement center. The ten college advisement centers, together with the University Advisement Center (2500 WSC), provide assistance with registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, appeals, and many other aspects of academic life. The General Education Office (350 MSRB) regularly consults with each advisement center on issues related to GE.

The General Education Office promotes the university forum assemblies, which are designed to complement specific GE components of the university core or the idea of liberal education itself. A forum speaker may be nominated by any member of the university community (student, faculty, or staff). Nominations are evaluated by the Forum Committee, comprising faculty and student representatives, which recommends speakers to the university administration.

In an ongoing effort to strengthen the GE offerings in the university core, the General Education Office is engaged in faculty and course development through the GE Academy on Teaching and Learning, faculty general education seminars, and grants for course development and enhancement. It also oversees faculty teaching awards for excellence in general education (including honors GE) courses: the Alcuin Fellowships and the Karl G. Maeser General Education Professorships. (For a description and list of current recipients, see the Maeser Fellowships and Alcuin Fellows section of this catalog.) General education courses are taught by faculty from throughout the university, and the General Education Office works closely with the colleges in a collaborative effort to foster a strong and engaging GE offering within the university core.

Honors Program

The Honors Program, open to all BYU students following a brief orientation, complements the university's expansive educational agenda by providing the benefits of a small liberal arts learning community. These benefits include opportunities to enroll in small classes with high-quality teaching and learning that challenge students to reach their highest potential; fostering a spirit of ongoing inquiry that includes undergraduate research in a mentored environment; and underscoring the importance of combining personal excellence, faithful discipleship, and meaningful service. See the Honors Program section of this catalog for details concerning the program's requirements, offerings, benefits, administration, extra-curricular opportunities, and student-operated advisement center.

University Writing

University Writing promotes effective written, oral, and visual communication, helping students to succeed in their academic work and laying a foundation for lifelong learning. *The Aims of a BYU Education* states that undergraduates should acquire "language abilities that enable students to listen, speak, read, and write well; to communicate effectively with a wide range of audiences in one's area of expertise as well as on general subjects." University Writing purposes to accomplish these objectives through general education courses in First-Year Writing and Advanced Written and Oral Communication—offered both in departments and in the Honors Program—as well as by enhancing writing instruction in courses throughout the curriculum.

Through the Writing Across the Curriculum (WAC) program, University Writing helps faculty members integrate writing instruction within their content courses. WAC trains teaching assistants as evaluators of writing; sponsors faculty workshops, often in conjunction with bringing writing experts to campus; and publishes a newsletter, *Writing Matters*. These efforts are supported by the Writing Fellows program. Writing Fellows is a discipline-based, peer-tutoring program that encourages and supports the development of mature student writing across the disciplines. University Writing also promotes student publication by encouraging faculty members to mentor students in research and writing and by supporting student

NOTE: For nonmajors.

CHUM 355 : Text Encoding and Markup. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 250 or 260.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of markup languages (SGML, XML, etc.) and encoding standards for academic content. Practical experience encoding, processing, and delivering marked-up data.

CHUM 360 : International Software and Text Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 220 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Developing international software that can be available in English and other languages. Globalization, internationalization, localization, Unicode, fonts, multilingual user interfaces, and working with foreign language texts.

CHUM 361 : Speech Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: CHum 260.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing and manipulating speech data. Developing software applications that include speech recognition and/or speech generation.

CHUM 489R : Humanities Computing Project. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Any 300-level computers in the humanities course.
DESCRIPTION: Applying principles from other courses to a substantial research or development project. Students work individually with faculty and technical advisors.

(3 hours required)
CHUM 490R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:ARR:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

(with coordinator approval)
CHUM 496R : Academic Internship. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: CHum 300-level course or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in publishing production (print or electronic), courseware/software development, museum/collection/textbase management, language/linguistics research or other application of computers in the humanities.

LING 480 : Problems in Translation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Proficiency in a second language.
DESCRIPTION: History, theory, and practice of human and machine translation.

LING 485 : Corpus Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330, ELang 223, or ELang 273.
DESCRIPTION: Using large collections of texts for teaching and particularly for research, including many types of linguistic variation

LING 580R : Problems in Linguistics and Applied Linguistics. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Advanced research in language acquisition, sociolinguistics, psycholinguistics, linguistics field study, applied linguistics.

(with coordinator approval)
LING 581 : Natural Language Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Good programming skills in at least one language (preferably LISP, Prolog, C, C++, Perl, or Java) and a knowledge of basic, discrete math. Upper-division linguistics/computers and the humanities students with less programming experience may enroll with instructor`s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive overview of natural language processing, including computational techniques, hands-on experience with linguistic technologies and corpora, language modeling approaches, and readings from current research.

Note: If CHum 200 or C S 100 was taken in item 2 above, it will also count toward the elective hours.

Show all Computers and the Humanities (CHum) Courses

Show all Linguistic (Ling) Courses The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Humanities Computing (15–18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete 9 credit hours from the following foundation courses, including at least one course incorporating programming:
   a. Courses with programming content:

CHUM 210* : Instructional Applications Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to teaching: designing, authoring, and evaluating computer-based instructional materials for lab and classroom use.
NOTE: Recommended for teaching majors and minors.

CHUM 220* : Linguistic Computing Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for language applications: data types, character representation, flow of control, file input/output, string manipulation.

CHUM 222* : Humanities Computing Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fundamental principles and skills of programming; creating humanities computing applications, including program design and logic, variables, modularity and object orientation, and critical problem solving.

or
C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

CHUM 250* : Internet Publishing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in electronic media: Internet sites for classes, research projects, and academic organizations. Scripting for intelligent/dynamic Web pages.

CHUM 260* : Text Processing and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of computer technology to research in language and literature: text processing, retrieval, and analysis tools for text corpora and online resources.

   b. Other CHum course options:

CHUM 230 : Print Publishing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or word processing experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in print media; journals, newsletters, textbooks, and other scholarly publications.

CHUM 240 : Databases for the Humanities. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Design and use of relational databases, oriented toward humanities and linguistic applications.

CHUM 290R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

(with coordinator approval)

2. Complete 3 credit hours of the following advanced courses:

CHUM 310 : Instructional Applications Programming 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 210.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced applications of computer technology to teaching: integrating digital graphics, sound, and video; hypertext and hypermedia; computer-based testing; network applications.

CHUM 330 : Print Publishing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 230.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of computer technology to academic publishing in print media: books, journals, and supporting scholarly publications.

CHUM 345 : Web Databases. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 240 or 250.
DESCRIPTION: Using advanced Internet applications and services to create dynamic, database-driven Web sites. Integrating database methods with Internet publishing approaches and principles. Techniques for Web-based applications like address books, discussion forums, surveys and adaptive quizzes, secure group/class sites, and user-maintained content.

CHUM 355 : Text Encoding and Markup. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 250 or 260.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of markup languages (SGML, XML, etc.) and encoding standards for academic content. Practical experience encoding, processing, and delivering marked-up data.

CHUM 360 : International Software and Text Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 220 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Developing international software that can be available in English and other languages. Globalization, internationalization, localization, Unicode, fonts, multilingual user interfaces, and working with foreign language texts.

CHUM 390R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

(with coordinator approval).

3. Complete 3 credit hours of project/integrative/capstone courses:

CHUM 450R : Internet Publishing Project. (3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: CHum 345 or 355 or instructor's consent (depending on project).
DESCRIPTION: Applying Internet publishing principles to a substantial development project. Students work as a group with faculty advisors/mentors.

CHUM 489R : Humanities Computing Project. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Any 300-level computers in the humanities course.
DESCRIPTION: Applying principles from other courses to a substantial research or development project. Students work individually with faculty and technical advisors.

CHUM 490R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:ARR:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

(with coordinator approval).

CHUM 496R : Academic Internship. (1-3:0:0)

PREREQUISITE: CHum 300-level course or equivalent experience.

DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in publishing production (print or electronic), courseware/software development, museum/collection/textbase management, language/linguistics research or other application of computers in the humanities.

A project/internship/capstone course in the student's major involving substantial computer work may also be used. See the Humanities Advisement Center.

Note: Students without basic computer literacy should take CHum 100 or CHum 200 or C S 100 before beginning the minor.

Show all Computers and the Humanities (CHum) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Computers and the Humanities (CHum)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CHUM 100R : Computing Tools for the Humanities. (.5-1:Arr:Arr)
DESCRIPTION: Modules introduce computer software used in humanities disciplines for teaching, research, writing, and publishing. Fundamentals of computer programming. Basics of processing text, sound, images, and video.

200-Level Courses

CHUM 200 : Basic Humanities Computing Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Word processing experience.
DESCRIPTION: Software applications for computer-based instruction, academic publishing, and research; introduction to programming new applications.

CHUM 210 : Instructional Applications Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to teaching: designing, authoring, and evaluating computer-based instructional materials for lab and classroom use.
NOTE: Recommended for teaching majors and minors.

CHUM 220 : Linguistic Computing Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for language applications: data types, character representation, flow of control, file input/output, string manipulation.

CHUM 222 : Humanities Computing Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fundamental principles and skills of programming; creating humanities computing applications, including program design and logic, variables, modularity and object orientation, and critical problem solving.

CHUM 230 : Print Publishing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or word processing experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in print media; journals, newsletters, textbooks, and other scholarly publications.

CHUM 240 : Databases for the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Design and use of relational databases, oriented toward humanities and linguistic applications.

CHUM 250 : Internet Publishing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to academic publishing in electronic media: Internet sites for classes, research projects, and academic organizations. Scripting for intelligent/dynamic Web pages.

CHUM 260 : Text Processing and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of computer technology to research in language and literature: text processing, retrieval, and analysis tools for text corpora and online resources.

CHUM 290R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

300-Level Courses

CHUM 310 : Instructional Applications Programming 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 210.

CHUM 330 : Print Publishing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 230.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of computer technology to academic publishing in print media: books, journals, and supporting scholarly publications.

CHUM 345 : Web Databases. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 240 or 250.
DESCRIPTION: Using advanced Internet applications and services to create dynamic, database-driven Web sites. Integrating database methods with Internet publishing approaches and principles. Techniques for Web-based applications like address books, discussion forums, surveys and adaptive quizzes, secure group/class sites, and user-maintained content.

CHUM 355 : Text Encoding and Markup. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 250 or 260.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of markup languages (SGML, XML, etc.) and encoding standards for academic content. Practical experience encoding, processing, and delivering marked-up data.

CHUM 360 : International Software and Text Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 220 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Developing international software that can be available in English and other languages. Globalization, internationalization, localization, Unicode, fonts, multilingual user interfaces, and working with foreign language texts.

CHUM 361 : Speech Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: CHum 260.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing and manipulating speech data. Developing software applications that include speech recognition and/or speech generation.

CHUM 390R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

400-Level Courses

CHUM 450R : Internet Publishing Project. (3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: CHum 345 or 355 or instructor's consent (depending on project).
DESCRIPTION: Applying Internet publishing principles to a substantial development project. Students work as a group with faculty advisors/mentors.

CHUM 489R : Humanities Computing Project. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Any 300-level computers in the humanities course.
DESCRIPTION: Applying principles from other courses to a substantial research or development project. Students work individually with faculty and technical advisors.

CHUM 490R : Current Topics and Issues. (1-3:ARR:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required.

CHUM 496R : Academic Internship. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: CHum 300-level course or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in publishing production (print or electronic), courseware/software development, museum/collection/textbase management, language/linguistics research or other application of computers in the humanities.

Back to Linguistics and English Language Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

English Language (ELang)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ELANG 105 : First-Year Writing for International Students. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Processes of academic writing, reading, and research for international students who have English as their second language.
NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement.

200-Level Courses

ELANG 223 : Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

ELANG 273 : Empirical Methods in English Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: The use of large collections of texts for teaching and particularly for research, including the study of many different types of linguistic variation.

300-Level Courses

ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

ELANG 324 : History of the English Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Basic changes from Old English to modern English, including modern American dialects.

ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

ELANG 326 : English Semantics and Pragmatics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Structure of meaning in words, phrases, and discourse. Lexical semantics and the mental lexicon; phrase-level meaning; interaction of situation and meaning.

ELANG 327 : English Phonetics and Phonology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, perception, and interaction of English speech sounds. Dialect variation.

ELANG 350 : Basic Editing Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Editing theory and practice, emphasizing copy editing and basic line editing.

ELANG 351R : Editing Student Journals. (1-2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on training and experience in all aspects of editing and publishing student journals.

ELANG 362 : Discourse Analysis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic analysis of connected speech or written discourse, especially larger linguistic units above the clause level, such as conversational exchanges or written texts.

ELANG 399R : Academic Internship: Editing and English Language. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

400-Level Courses

ELANG 410R : Genre and Substantive Editing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring a different genre of publishing each semester, instruction in substantive editing.

ELANG 421R : Studies in Language or Editing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ELANG 430R : Editing for Publication. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 350, 410R; Chum 230.
DESCRIPTION: Refining copy editing and substantive editing skills through hands-on work with actual publications; one-on-one feedback and mentoring.

ELANG 468 : Varieties of English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes such as English-based pidgins and creoles.

ELANG 495R : The Senior Course. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English language major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of English language. Content varies; requires research and writing.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ELANG 521R : Studies in Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: English Spelling.

ELANG 522 : Language Policy and Planning in English Language Contexts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and practices of governing entities as they formulate policies relating to the status and codification of the English language.

ELANG 524 : History of the Book. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History and development of the book, including modern methods and practices.

ELANG 525 : Old English 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Old English grammar and vocabulary; traditional syntactical patterns in various types of Old English prose and poetry.

ELANG 526 : Middle English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Detailed study of the principal dialects of Middle English, as illustrated in the literature of the period.

ELANG 527 : Early Modern English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: English language from about 1500 to 1800, with special emphasis on language of Shakespeare and the King James Bible.

ELANG 528 : Varieties of English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, 324; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes, including English-based pidgins and creoles.

ELANG 529 : Structure of Modern English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 325, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: English syntax through modern grammars; theories underlying those grammars.

ELANG 535 : Language and Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literature from a language perspective; applying linguistic constructs to literary language; examining literary style; linguistic analysis of unfamiliar texts.

ELANG 548 : Old English 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 525.
DESCRIPTION: Additional reading in Old English, emphasizing sound changes, dialects, and textual production.

Back to Linguistics and English Language Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Linguistics (Ling)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

LING 230 : Language, Mind, and the World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Broad overview of language as the medium that makes thinking, understanding, communications, and teaching possible.

LING 299R : Academic Internship: English Language Teaching. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ling 377R.
DESCRIPTION: Students with focused training teach specific English skills to speakers of other languages in the U.S. or abroad.

300-Level Courses

LING 330 : Introduction to Linguistics (Modern). (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic understanding of linguistic systems. Phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, and pragmatics.

LING 377R : Basic Training in TESOL. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Planned participation in IAS- or U.S.-based English teaching experience.
DESCRIPTION: Basic preparation to teach English to speakers of other languages in particular settings.
NOTE: Especially for international service volunteers who plan to teach ESL or EFL.

LING 399R : Academic Internship: Linguistics. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience and education related to linguistics.

400-Level Courses

LING 420 : Phonetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: General inventory of speech sounds possible in language, from both an acoustic and articulatory point of view.

LING 427 : Phonology and Morphology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to phonology and morphology in the world's languages emphasizing the analysis of English.

LING 430 : Theoretical Syntax. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical comparison and contrast of different sentence types. Methods of argument to develop and critique generative theories of lexical categories, grammatical roles, and syntactic structure.

LING 441 : Language Acquisition in TESOL. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding fundamental theories and processes of first and second language acquisition. How teachers can enhance language learning in English as a second or foreign language.

LING 450 : Introduction to Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and method of language change via comparison of daughter languages and reconstruction of their ancestral language: phonological, morphological, semantic, and lexical.

LING 461 : Language Assessment in TESOL. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441; Ling 477 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding key issues in language testing, writing good language tests and test items, and completing basic test and item analyses.

LING 473 : Literacy Development in TESOL. (2:2:.5)

academic journals.

Students have the opportunity to take part in any or all of these programs during their time at BYU to improve their abilities to communicate effectively in their own disciplines and across the curriculum.

First-Year Experience

2006 JKB
(801) 422-4243
Email: fye@byu.edu

The First-Year Experience Office (FYE) facilitates coordination of all university efforts that have an impact on new students. This includes helping new students develop habits of the mind to deepen and enrich their BYU experience, establish personal connections, find their way around campus, develop an awareness of available campus resources, and improve their sense of purpose and motivation by increasing their understanding of BYU's heritage and history. These efforts span the time between students' first contact with BYU and the end of their first year on campus.

Before students arrive at BYU, FYE coordinates projects that provide students and their parents with information through Web sites and e-mail. In collaboration with other university units, the office provides additional information and links about campus resources through mailings to new students (freshman and transfer), local firesides, and individual telephone contact. When students first arrive on campus, FYE—assisted by representatives from key university areas in a campus-wide undertaking—coordinates New Student Orientation to facilitate personal contact, an introduction to campus locations, campus life activities, advisement, and mentoring by peers and university faculty and staff. Throughout the student's first year, FYE provides additional transition assistance through Freshman Academy (see below), freshman seminars, peer mentoring, and other First-Year events. The seminars (Univ 101, together with Honrs 100) provide an opportunity for incoming students to have sustained engagement with a faculty member on an academic subject in a small-group context.

Course (Univ)

UNIV 101 : Freshman Seminar. (.5-2:Arr:Arr)

Freshman Academy

Director: Patricia B. Esplin
Associate Director: Fred Pinnegar
2014 JKB
(801) 422-8176 or 1-877-890-5451
frac@byu.edu

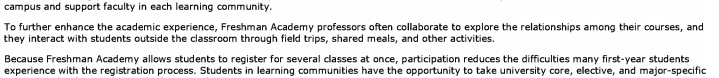
Freshman Academy is a one-semester learning communities program designed to integrate first-year students into the life of the university and connect them with campus resources. Relatively small groups of students take the same set of three or more classes together and may live near each other in residence halls. (Options for students who live off-campus are also available). Participation in Freshman Academy gives students an immediate sense of community and involvement in the life of the university.

Freshman Academy learning communities are a *mentored environment* in which upper-division students serve as peer mentors. These peer mentors, many of them former participants in the program, encourage students to adopt good learning habits, help them form study groups, and model successful learning practices. The peer mentors also help students connect with the cultural, academic, spiritual, and social resources available on campus and support faculty in each learning community.

To further enhance the academic experience, Freshman Academy professors often collaborate to explore the relationships among their courses, and they interact with students outside the classroom through field trips, shared meals, and other activities.

Because Freshman Academy allows students to register for several classes at once, participation reduces the difficulties many first-year students experience with the registration process. Students in learning communities have the opportunity to take university core, elective, and major-specific courses with other students who have similar interests.

The figure below is an example of a learning community composed solely of courses meeting university core requirements:



The next figure illustrates a learning community created for students with a particular major in mind. It combines university core and major courses:

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding basic processes of literacy development in English as a second or foreign language. How knowledge of these processes informs classroom literacy instruction and practices.

LING 477 : Methods and Strategies in TESOL. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223; Ling 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional methods and strategies for teaching English as a second or foreign language. Overview of curriculum development for teaching listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

LING 478 : Language Teaching Methods: MTC. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional methods and strategies for teaching second and foreign languages at the Missionary Training Center (MTC).

LING 480 : Problems in Translation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Proficiency in a second language.
DESCRIPTION: History, theory, and practice of human and machine translation.

LING 485 : Corpus Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330, ELang 223, or ELang 273.
DESCRIPTION: Using large collections of texts for teaching and particularly for research, including many types of linguistic variation

LING 490 : Senior Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
RECOMMENDED: Ling 420, 427, 430, 450.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing major issues in linguistics, writing a senior paper, and reviewing content of core courses.

LING 496R : Academic Internship: TESOL. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441, 473, 477.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in a domestic or international setting.
NOTE: International internships must be coordinated through International Study Programs. All internships require prior departmental approval.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

LING 500 : Introduction to Research in TESOL. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to TESOL graduate certificate or language acquisition MA program.
DESCRIPTION: Research questions in language teaching and learning, literature review, research design, data collection, and interpretation. Understanding research methods as used in others' studies.

LING 521 : Phonology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Distinctive values of speech sounds: their function in the communicative process. Analysis of phonological data via postulation of underlying forms and derivational rules.

LING 535 : Semantics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of semantic analysis with special emphasis on Jakobsonian and Peircean semiotics.

LING 540 : Language Acquisition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First- and second-language acquisition viewed in light of psycholinguistics and sociolinguistics.

LING 545 : Psycholinguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: How the mind interprets, stores, retrieves, and produces language. Anatomical structures and physiological processes of the brain dealing with language.

LING 550 : Sociolinguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Research and theory in anthropological linguistics and sociolinguistics.

LING 551 : Anthropological Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Language in culture and society: development, typology, and description.

LING 555 : Teaching Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
DESCRIPTION: What culture is, how it affects language learners and teachers, and development of U.S. lifestyle patterns.

LING 558 : Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ling 450 or equivalent.

LING 577 : TESOL Methods and Materials. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ESL 404 or native English speaker.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation course surveying concepts, procedures, and techniques in second/foreign language teaching methodology and materials selection. Includes observing actual classes and participating in a mentored teaching practicum.

LING 579 : TESOL Student Teaching. (3:0:8)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ling 577 and departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Sustained and supervised practice teaching at the English Language Center.

LING 580R : Problems in Linguistics and Applied Linguistics. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Advanced research in language acquisition, sociolinguistics, psycholinguistics, linguistics field study, applied linguistics.

LING 581 : Natural Language Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Good programming skills in at least one language (preferably LISP, Prolog, C, C++, Perl, or Java) and a knowledge of basic, discrete math. Upper-division linguistics/computers and the humanities students with less programming experience may enroll with instructor`s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive overview of natural language processing, including computational techniques, hands-on experience with linguistic technologies and corpora, language modeling approaches, and readings from current research.

LING 590R : Readings in Linguistics. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study of current linguistic literature. Occasional discussion sessions with instructor and other class members.
NOTE: Pass/fail grade only.

LING 595 : (Ling-FLang) Research Design in TESOL. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Ling 500; admission to TESOL MA (thesis option) or language acquisition MA program; preliminary draft of rationale and review of literature for MA thesis.
DESCRIPTION: Research design options for examining language acquisition and teaching. Designing research and writing the third chapter of the MA thesis.
NOTE: Students may enroll concurrently for up to 2 hours of Ling 699R (thesis) credit.

LING 596 : Research Design in Linguistics. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to linguistics MA program.
DESCRIPTION: Research options in linguistics. Selecting thesis topic and writing first chapters of MA thesis.
NOTE: Students may enroll concurrently for up to 2 hours of Ling 699R (thesis) credit.

LING 599R : Academic Internship: Linguistics. (1-9:9:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience under faculty supervision, with department approval.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Linguistics and English Language Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages

The Discipline

Preparation to teach English to speakers of other languages involves multidisciplinary course work in a number of areas, including linguistics, language acquisition, language assessment, and teaching methods and materials. The TESOL minor is designed to prepare teachers of English as a second or foreign language in general and offers students the flexibility to choose an emphasis in keeping with their professional interests. (The David O. McKay School of Education offers a minor which leads to an ESL endorsement. See Teaching English Language Learners)

Career Opportunities

TESOL minors are qualified for many overseas positions teaching English as a foreign language. They may also work in various ESL programs in the United States and other English-speaking countries. Possible teaching settings include adult community ESL classes, intensive English programs, and English for special purposes such as business or health.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in TESOL (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

ELANG 223 : Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

LING 441 : Language Acquisition in TESOL. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding fundamental theories and processes of first and second language acquisition. How teachers can enhance language learning in English as a second or foreign language.

LING 461 : Language Assessment in TESOL. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441; Ling 477 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding key issues in language testing, writing good language tests and test items, and completing basic test and item analyses.

LING 473 : Literacy Development in TESOL. (2:2:.5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding basic processes of literacy development in English as a second or foreign language. How knowledge of these processes informs classroom literacy instruction and practices.

LING 477 : Methods and Strategies in TESOL. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223; Ling 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional methods and strategies for teaching English as a second or foreign language. Overview of curriculum development for teaching listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

2. Complete one course from the following:

CHUM 210 : Instructional Applications Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 100R or 200 or computer experience.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology to teaching: designing, authoring, and evaluating computer-based instructional materials for lab and classroom use.
NOTE: Recommended for teaching majors and minors.

ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

3. Complete 3 hours of the following:

LING 496R : Academic Internship: TESOL. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223, Ling 441, 473, 477.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in a domestic or international setting.
NOTE: International internships must be coordinated through International Study Programs. All

internships require prior departmental approval.

Show all English Language (ELang) Courses

Show all Linguistics (Ling) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

English as a Second Language (ESL)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

ESL 301 : Advanced Academic English for International Students. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: For bilingual foreign students.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated skills course for nonnative English speakers, primarily focused on academic listening, speaking, and the basic skills needed for success at an American university.

ESL 302 : Advanced English Pronunciation for International Students. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For bilingual foreign students.
DESCRIPTION: Improving the speaking ability of nonnative English students, emphasizing rhetorical and communication strategies, pronunciation, stress, rhythm, intonation, and fluency.

ESL 303 : College Reading and Study Skills for International Students. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: For bilingual foreign students.
DESCRIPTION: Learning strategies to improve reading speed and to understand materials used in university classes.
NOTE: Should be taken during the first year (for nonnative English speakers).

ESL 304 : Academic Writing for International Students. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: For bilingual foreign students.
DESCRIPTION: Learning how to write essays, reports, and research papers acceptable in an American university
NOTE: Should be taken before ELang 105 or Engl 150.

ESL 305 : Applied Grammar for International Students. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in ESL 304 or ELang 105.
DESCRIPTION: Increasing correct grammer use in academic writing.
NOTE: For international students.

400-Level Courses

ESL 404 : ESL Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Research and writing techniques for prethesis work.
NOTE: For graduate international ESL students.

Back to Linguistics and English Language Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

BYU Undergraduate Catalog 2008-2009

Linguistics and English Language Faculty

Professors

Anderson, Neil J

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1989

Davies, Mark Edward

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1992

Eddington, David S

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1993

Eggington, William Gregory

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young Universityâ€'Hawaii, 1975
MA, University of Southern California, 1981
PhD, University of Southern California, 1985

Henrichsen, Lynn E

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
TESL Graduate Certificate, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975
EdD, University of Hawaii, Manoa, 1987

Manning, Alan D.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, 1988

Melby, Alan K.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1976

Skousen, Royal

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1971
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1972

Associate Professors

Chapman, Don William

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of Toronto, 1995

Elzinga, Dirk Allen

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1992
MA, University of Utah, 1993
PhD, University of Arizona, 1999

Gardner, Dee

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
CERT, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Northern Arizona University, 1999

Hallen, Cynthia Leah

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
TESOL Certificate, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of Arizona, 1991

Lonsdale, Deryle

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BSc, University of Alberta, Canada, 1981
MS, Carnegie Mellon University, 1992
PhD, Carnegie Mellon University, 1997

Nuckolls, Janis

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Chicago, 1990

Oaks, Dallin Dixon

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, University of Utah, 1986
PhD, Purdue University, 1990

Assistant Professors

Baker, Wendy

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 2002

Evans, Norman W.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: EdD, University of Southern California, 2001

Tanner, Mark W

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1982
MA, University of Southern California, 1985
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1991

Teaching Professor

Thorne, Melvin Jay

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, University of Kansas, 1980
PhD, University of Kansas, 1986

Associate Teaching Professors

Dant, Doris Ross

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997

Gardner, Marvin K.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1977

Strong-Krause, Diane

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Linguistics and English Language
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2001

Many Freshman Academy students receive priority placement in on-campus housing, allowing them to live near other students from their learning community. These residency provisions make it easier for students to form study groups, work on projects, and develop long-lasting relationships. Contact Residence Life at http://www.byu.edu/housing/oncampushousing/ to apply for on-campus housing. In addition to class-related activities, Freshman Academy learning communities socialize, attend cultural events, and participate in service-learning projects together. All of these activities contribute to the individual student's achievement of the academic and spiritual aims of a BYU education.

Participation in a Freshman Academy learning community helps students become aware of the responsibilities they owe to themselves and to others. It is a serious commitment, and the program expects students to be true to their word, to attend and participate in classes, to work collaboratively with fellow students, to respect the dignity and individuality of others, and to respond to the spiritual and temporal needs of individuals and communities. By interacting with others in these ways and taking responsibility for their own learning, Freshman Academy students develop the attributes of responsible and engaged citizens.

Participants in the Freshman Academy program reflect the composition of the entire BYU freshman class in the distribution of majors and levels of academic preparation. A few learning communities are composed entirely or partially of honors-designated courses for highly-prepared and motivated students. All first-semester students are encouraged to participate in Freshman Academy during either the fall or winter semesters or summer term.

For more information about Freshman Academy and to view learning community options, please visit http://academy.byu.edu.

Prestigious Scholarships and Fellowships

The Office of Prestigious Scholarships and Fellowships assists students in finding and applying for major externally funded scholarships and fellowships for undergraduate and graduate study (e.g., National Science Foundation, Fulbright, Rhodes, Goldwater, Truman, etc.) and scholarships for research opportunities, summer programs, and study abroad. Students are encouraged to review the online information describing each scholarship at www.byu.edu/scholarships. For more information contact Carolyn Tuitupou in 102B MSRB or e-mail prestigious_scholarships@byu.edu.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Marriott School of Management

Dean: Ned C. Hill
730 TNRB, (801) 422-4121

Associate Dean: W. Steve Albrecht
730 TNRB, (801) 422-3154

Associate Dean: Michael Thompson
730 TNRB, (801) 422-2794

Director, Undergraduate Management Office Programs: Joan Young
460 TNRB, (801) 422-2435

Marriott School of Management Advisement Center
460 TNRB, (801) 422-4285

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Marriott School of Management carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Management

Emphases:

General Business
Entrepreneurship
Finance
Global Supply Chain Management
Marketing Management
Organizational Behavior/HR Management
Strategy

Minors

Management
Strategy

Certificates

Global Management

For information on accounting or information systems degrees, see School of Accountancy or Information Systems Department.

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MAcc in Professional Accountancy
MAcc in Tax
MBA in Business Administration
MISM in Information Systems Management
MPA in Public Administration

Individual program brochures are available from the Marriott School of Management, 730 TNRB, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602-3113. Also refer to the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Engineering/Technology Management Degree Program

See Marriott School of Management in the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog and the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center.

The Discipline

Courses are designed to create opportunities for students to develop and apply their analytical and decision-making abilities. For this reason, the Marriott School programs make extensive use of faculty expertise, case studies, student projects, and internships.

Career Opportunities

Specific job descriptions are many and varied. Some examples are: banker, consultant, financial analyst, credit analyst, real estate developer, financial planner, human resource specialist, employee benefit specialist, personnel officer, business systems consultant/analyst, sales representative, account executive, research specialist, marketing analyst, management trainee, buyer, merchandiser, production manager, technical sales person, inventory manager, logistics manager, materials supervisor.

General Information

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Students are encouraged to apply to the Marriott School of Management during their sophomore year, as soon as they have completed the pre-management core courses.

Because of controlled enrollments in management programs, the competition for acceptance is keen. Those choosing to enter these majors should decide early, plan their schedules carefully, be aware of all the requirements, and stay informed about any changes by checking often with the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center.

Students interested in management as a major must make application for the management major. A separate application to the School of Accountancy or Information Systems Department is necessary for those seeking an accounting or information systems major. Students not accepted into the program should work closely with advisement personnel to select a new major outside the Marriott School.

Requirements for application are:

1. Cumulative GPA must be at least 3.0 in the pre-management courses, with no more than one repeat for each class. No grade lower than a C- will be acceptable.
   Not every student meeting the minimum requirements is guaranteed acceptance into the undergraduate program.

2. Demonstrate a knowledge of computer skills, including PowerPoint and spreadsheet analysis.
   Students may demonstrate PowerPoint and spreadsheet skills with either a minimum grade of B in an equivalent transfer course or a P grade in I Sys 100 and 101.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: General Business Emphasis (63-64 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The general business, or open, emphasis is available to students wishing to design their own program to meet specific goals such as working in a family business or preparing for a graduate program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.

2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.

3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
- DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
- NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
- NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
- NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
- DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in

management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:
ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.

DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete four Marriott School 300- and 400-level major courses that meet specific student needs (except Bus M 371R, 372, 380, 382, 384).

10. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Entrepreneurship Emphasis (66-67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The entrepreneurship emphasis is designed to acquaint students with the problems commonly encountered when starting, growing, and harvesting business ventures. Emphasis is on the entrepreneurial career and perspective, not on one-shot ventures.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.
2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.
3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
- DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
- NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
- NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
- NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
- DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in

management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:
ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.

DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete the following emphasis courses:
BUS M 472 : Entrepreneurial Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Marketing strategies for start-up companies. Topics include marketing to investors, internal marketing, and how to market products/services without a marketing budget.

BUS M 475 : Financing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 361, Org B 321; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and skills of entrepreneurship, emphasizing how new and emerging companies are financed. Applying functional tools to case situations.

BUS M 479 : (Bus M-Mfg) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: Bus M 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

Note: Bus M 472 and 475 must be completed before taking 479.

10. Complete two courses from the following:
BUS M 454 : Professional Selling and Sales Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of professional selling and sales management including personal selling skills; strategic role of personal selling; organizing, directing, controlling, and evaluating the sales force.

BUS M 462 : Services Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: introductory operations management course or instructor's consent; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and characteristics of service industries and service aspects of supply chains: sources of strategic advantage; process analysis and tools; quality.

BUS M 493 : Entrepreneurial Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Bus M 479.
DESCRIPTION: Directed practical experience in launching a business. Combination of strong academic base along with hands-on business development.

BUS M 538 : Managing Entrepreneurial Firms and Family Businesses. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Issues and problems facing managers of entrepreneurial enterprises and leaders of family-owned businesses. Includes start-up, growth, and exit strategies. Consulting project required.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses
The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Honors Program

102A MSRB
(801) 422-5497

Dean, Undergraduate Education: Daniel J. Fairbanks, Professor, Plant and Wildlife Sciences
Associate Dean—Honors/Honors Program Director: Madison U. Sowell, Professor, Italian and Comparative Literature
Assistant Dean, Undergraduate Education: Carolyn Tuitupou
Administrative Assistant: Shauna Barrick

Participation in Honors

The Honors Program provides an unusually rich and challenging experience for capable and motivated undergraduate students. Its purpose is to assist students as they establish lifelong patterns of learning and appreciation of the world's great treasures of knowledge. Honors education is not merely a more intensive general education or a more strenuous program in a major. Rather, it provides students with the advantages of an enriched education in a small-class setting with excellent professors, while utilizing all of the advantages of a large university. Students who pursue an honors education at Brigham Young University take honors courses that meet university core requirements; experience Great Works in literature, art, music, film, theater, and science; and participate in an intensive honors thesis experience in their major.

To graduate from BYU, students must meet not only the requirements of a major department but also the university core requirements in general education and religion. Most students complete the nonmajor requirements through courses in the general university curriculum. Because all students must complete core requirements, some required classes have high enrollments, and there is little opportunity for students to interact closely with the professors. The Honors Program invites capable and motivated students to satisfy university core requirements through honors as alternatives to the standard general and religious education programs. Honors courses have smaller enrollments (usually fewer than 30 students per class) and are focused on class discussion and writing.

University Honors is a distinction awarded to all graduates of BYU who have met the honors requirements as described below. This prestigious designation is recorded on the university diploma, on the official transcript of grades, and in the graduation program. It is widely recognized as an indication of exceptional academic achievement. Although it is hoped that students will choose to complete all of the requirements for the University Honors designation, those who do not intend to do so are welcome to participate in the Honors Program to whatever extent they choose. All students are invited to consider honors as a way to achieve the quality academic experiences they seek. Students may register for honors courses at any time during their undergraduate years without necessarily intending to complete all the honors graduation requirements.

Honors education is open to all students who choose to participate. Students who intend to graduate with University Honors must complete an enrollment form that may be obtained from the Honors Advisement Center in 102A Maeser Building (MSRB).

Facilities and Opportunities Available to Honors Students

The Honors Program is housed in the historic Maeser Building on the southwest part of campus. This quiet corner is surrounded by beautiful grounds and wooded areas. The building is named after Karl G. Maeser, the first principal of Brigham Young Academy (the school that later became Brigham Young University). A bronze statue of Karl G. Maeser stands at the building's east entrance. Constructed in 1911, the Maeser Building is the oldest building on the current campus. The building was restored in 1985 with modern electrical and ventilation systems but retains its historic architecture and decoration, its marble halls richly appointed with oak and brass trim.

Facilities for honors students in the Maeser Building include the Honors Reading Room in 150 MSRB, with study tables and a small library of reference works and classics; the Honors Student Lounge in 102 MSRB, where students can meet for informal discussions; an art gallery in the lower-floor hall; the Honors Advisement Center in 102A MSRB, where students receive counseling about their honors education; and the Martha Jane Knowlton Coray Lecture Hall in 321 MSRB, where classes, lectures, and musical concerts are held. Another Honors Reading Room is located in 3770 Harold B. Lee Library.

Students who have completed an enrollment for and who are active participants in the Honors Program are eligible for reduced-rate admission to selected musical and theatrical performances, some of which include visiting performers of international renown. They also have priority registration privileges for honors courses. The Honors Program sponsors lectures, concerts, symposia, and socials. Students can also participate in intercampus events with honors students from other universities and colleges. Each week, on Thursdays at 11:00 a.m., during fall and winter semesters, the Honors Program sponsors honors lectures featuring a religious or academic presentation by a professor or member of the community. Students are also invited to participate with the Honors Student Advisory Council, a group of student representatives who assist in policy development, social activities, and academic functions of the Honors Program.

Who Should Participate in Honors?

The characteristics that best define honors students are motivation and a strong desire to obtain the most from the educational experience that BYU has to offer. Honors students seek breadth in their education by taking honors courses outside their majors. They excel in their majors by learning how to conduct research and scholarly work within their chosen fields. They usually tend to work harder and spend more time on their course work than other students, not because their courses are more difficult but because they take courses that interest them. They attend concerts, plays, films, lectures, and art and science exhibitions, and they participate in informal discussions with their professors and fellow students. Because many of their classes are small and discussion-oriented, they are personally acquainted with their professors. They become well-rounded, literate, and humane scholars whose faith in the restored gospel is strong. Their thirst for knowledge lasts a lifetime. They are not necessarily those with the highest grade-point averages or the highest standardized test scores, nor do all honors students have scholarships.

Approximately 30 percent of the BYU student body participates in honors, and students benefit thereby from an enriched education. The Honors

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Finance Emphasis (66–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.
2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.
3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core.

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
- DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:
ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete the following finance junior core courses within the same semester:
ACC 440 : Corporate Financial Reporting. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, 210, Bus M 301.
DESCRIPTION: Accounting principles of corporate financial reporting. Judgments managers make preparing financial statement information. How complexities, alternatives, and impacts affect completed financial statements.
NOTE: For nonaccounting majors.

BUS M 401 : Advanced Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, mergers and acquisitions, and current financial problems.

BUS M 410 : Investments. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Security markets, security analysis, and portfolio management.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

10. Complete at least two finance elective courses from the following. Suggested options are as follows:

Corporate Finance:

BUS M 407 : Risk Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management of risk exposures in a business setting. The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with risk. Coverage includes both traditional insurable risks and financial risks.

BUS M 432 : International Corporate Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 430; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Financial aspects of multinational corporations operating within an international environment; direct foreign investment, foreign exchange regulations, capital markets, etc.

Asset Management:

BUS M 411 : Advanced Investments. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301, 410; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Current investment literature, efficient markets, modern portfolio theory, capital assets pricing, options pricing theory.

BUS M 415R : Portfolio Management. (1.5:1.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 401, 410, Acc 440, ManEc 453; by application only.
DESCRIPTION: Team management of actual investment portfolio for a full school year. Responsibility for economic forecasts, security selection, and portfolio strategy.

(two enrollments required).

Entrepreneurial Finance:

BUS M 475 : Financing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 361, Org B 321; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and skills of entrepreneurship, emphasizing how new and emerging companies are financed. Applying functional tools to case situations.

BUS M 479 : (Bus M-Mfg) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: Bus M 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

Financial Institutions:

BUS M 405 : Management of Financial Institutions. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.

DESCRIPTION: Management problems of commercial banks and nonbank financial institutions, emphasizing balance sheet management, regulation, and the process of intermediation.

BUS M 412 : Investments Academy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial principles to practical investment problems; insights into the investment banking profession.

International Finance:
BUS M 430 : Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

BUS M 432 : International Corporate Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 430; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Financial aspects of multinational corporations operating within an international environment; direct foreign investment, foreign exchange regulations, capital markets, etc.

Investment Banking: Complete two of the following courses:
BUS M 411 : Advanced Investments. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301, 410; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Current investment literature, efficient markets, modern portfolio theory, capital assets pricing, options pricing theory.

BUS M 412 : Investments Academy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial principles to practical investment problems; insights into the investment banking profession.

BUS M 415R : Portfolio Management. (1.5:1.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 401, 410, Acc 440, ManEc 453; by application only.
DESCRIPTION: Team management of actual investment portfolio for a full school year. Responsibility for economic forecasts, security selection, and portfolio strategy.

(two enrollments required).
Personal Financial Planning:
BUS M 406 : Insurance and Financial Services Academy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status, BusM 301.
DESCRIPTION: The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with personal risk. Introduction to property/casualty as well as life and health insurance issues and products.

BUS M 418 : Financial Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial principles to household decision making, stressing integration between areas. Income tax and estate planning, retirement, investments, portfolio management, and risk management.

Real Estate: Complete two of the following courses:
BUS M 413 : Real Estate Finance and Investment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Terminology, concepts, principles, and analytical techniques related to financing of and investment in real estate.

BUS M 414 : Real Estate Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status, BusM 301.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial and real estate principles to practical property investments; insights into the real estate profession.

BUS M 419 : Advanced Real Estate Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 413; finance junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Real estate financial investment and valuation analysis incorporating contemporary case studies; advanced analytical techniques, including simulation analysis and advanced valuation and portfolio analysis.

General Finance: Complete two electives from above except for Bus M 430 and 479.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Global Supply Chain Management Emphasis (66–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Supply chain management involves the control and coordination of materials and services from the original point of origin to the final point of consumption. Increasing competitiveness through higher quality, lower cost, greater responsiveness, and unique innovation is a critical aspect of supply chain management. Likewise, managing across boundaries within the firm and throughout the channel is emphasized. Course work is designed to prepare students for managerial positions in manufacturing and service industries in the areas of purchasing, operations, logistics, customer service, and supply chain management.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.
2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.
3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
- DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
- NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
- NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
- NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.

NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

Program invites all BYU students who seek an enhanced educational experience to take advantage of the many opportunities offered by the Honors Program.

Overview of Requirements for Graduation with University Honors

This section provides a brief overview of the requirements to graduate with University Honors. Detailed explanations of each requirement follow this section. The staff in the Honors Advisement Center, 102A MSRB, (801) 422-5497, is available to answer questions about honors requirements. To graduate with University Honors, a student must:

1. Complete an honors enrollment form.
2. Complete the honors curriculum requirement.
3. Complete the honors great works requirement.
4. Complete the honors advanced languages requirement.
5. Complete the honors service requirement.
6. Complete the honors thesis requirement.
7. Graduate with a cumulative grade point average of at least 3.5.
8. Submit a graduation portfolio that summarizes the student's academic experiences.

The requirements for graduation with University Honors complement both major and university core education. The honors curriculum, great works, and advanced languages requirements enhance the university core components; the honors thesis requirement enhances the major education component.

Detailed Explanations of Requirements for Graduation with University Honors

1. **Honors Enrollment Form**

   Students who intend to graduate with University Honors should complete as early as possible in their undergraduate program an enrollment form available at the Honors Advisement Center after a brief orientation. Students who have completed the enrollment form have certain privileges, among them the opportunity to preregister for honors courses and to receive reduced-rate admission to certain musical and theatre performances and films. Consultation with the advisement center allows the Honors Program to know students' plans so advisement personnel can help them register for the correct classes and keep them informed of honors activities.

2. **Honors Curriculum Requirement**

   The honors curriculum requirement enhances the core component of students' undergraduate education. Nearly all honors courses (Honrs) and honors sections of department courses meet the university core requirements that all BYU students must complete. Students should consult the University Core table to be sure which core requirements are met by the courses for which they choose to register.

   To fulfill the honors curriculum requirements, students must complete 22 credit hours selected from honors courses and honors sections of department courses, subject to the following limitations:

   a. Three of the 22 credit hours must be from one of the following writing courses: Honrs 150, Engl 150 (honors section), or Phil 150 (honors section).
   b. No more than 12 credit hours from honors sections of department courses can be used to meet this requirement. Of these, no more than 4 credit hours can be from honors sections of religion courses.
   c. No more than 4 credit hours of non-GE honors classes (Honrs 100, 290R, or 292R) can be used to meet this requirement.

   Honors options are available for nearly all university core requirements. Honrs 499R (honors thesis) does not count as credit for the honors curriculum requirement.

3. **Honors Great Works Requirement**

   The honors great works and arts engagement requirement introduces students to the world's treasures of literature, music, theatre, film, art, and science and technology. It is intended to enhance not just their undergraduate education but their entire life as it encourages them to develop a lifelong pattern of experiencing the great works of humankind. Students can fulfill this requirement entirely on their own, or they may include works of literature, music, theatre, film, art, and science that they study as part of their course work. BYU provides many opportunities to fulfill this requirement within its course offerings and its rich schedule of musical, theatrical, and artistic productions. Some of the great works are part of many honors courses. The Honors Program provides reduced-rate admission for honors students to attend selected performance events. Most faculty and student recitals and most art exhibitions are open to students and the public with no admission charge.

   This requirement must be met during the time students are undergraduates. They cannot reduce the requirement by counting works studied only during high school. Students will benefit most from this requirement if they spread it out over their undergraduate years. Each area requires students to study or attend twelve works, performances, or exhibitions—which is three per year in each area if spread out over a period of four years. A great works requirement packet is available in the Honors Advisement Center (102A MSRB) or electronically at http://honors.byu.edu. This packet includes the detailed information students will need and a checklist that they can use to ensure that they properly complete this requirement.

   To fulfill this requirement during their four years as an undergraduate, students must:

   a. Read twelve works of literature from the approved reading list on the honors Web site or in the great works requirement packet (or from approved substitutions to that list). Students must choose at least one work from each of the following categories of literature in the Western tradition: classical, medieval, renaissance and reformation, seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, nineteenth century, and twentieth century; and at least one work from the non-Western tradition. The remaining five works can be from any of the time periods and from Western or non-Western traditions. As students make their selections, they should choose at least one work from each of the following fields: social science, female authors, and persons of color.

      Inclusion of works not on the approved list is permitted but requires completion of a substitution letter (information available in the Honors Advisement Center) that must be preapproved by the Honors Program director or the dean.

   b. Attend twelve theatrical performances, including at least one play by Shakespeare.

   c. Attend twelve musical performances. The performances must include at least two symphonies, one concerto, one opera, two faculty or

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete the following emphasis courses:
BUS M 466 : Purchasing and Supply Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361.
DESCRIPTION: Focuses on upstream supply chain activities of supplier selection, management, and development. Negotiation, costing, product development, and commodity analysis.

BUS M 468 : Supply Chain Logistics. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of materials management (inbound transportation), physical distribution (outbound transportation), inventory, warehousing, facility location, customer service, packaging, and materials handling.

BUS M 469 : Integrated Supply Chain Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative and creative problem solving in designing and managing cohesive value-added conversion/transformation systems.

10. Complete two courses from the following:
BUS M 450 : Global Business Negotiations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Developing an effective negotiation framework for cross-national/cultural negotiation techniques relative to business and other life situations.

BUS M 462 : Services Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: introductory operations management course or instructor's consent; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and characteristics of service industries and service aspects of supply chains: sources of strategic advantage; process analysis and tools; quality.

BUS M 463 : Quality Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of quality management, strategic issues, philosophies, and tools used to implement and control quality.

BUS M 465 : Global Supply Chain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The emerging rules of a global marketplace and their influence on key supply chain activities and processes.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

College | Missionary Training Center

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Marketing Management Emphasis (66–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The marketing emphasis is designed to prepare students for marketing management responsibilities, product/brand management, industrial and consumer products sales management, market analysis, and entrepreneurial activities both in the U.S. and in other areas of the world.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.
2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.
3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed

before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core.

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.

DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete the following emphasis courses:
BUS M 442 : Marketing Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and methodology for conducting marketing research. Emphasis on solving problems faced by the marketing manager. Consulting research project required.

BUS M 459 : Marketing Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 442; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of finance, marketing, and case studies in economic concepts and techniques in marketing decision making and planning.

10. Complete three courses from the following:
BUS M 431 : International Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341, 430; major status.
DESCRIPTION: International market entry strategies, export marketing, joint ventures, and other market entry modes. Regional/National markets; cultural, political, legal environments. Negotiations, trade financing, marketing mix.

BUS M 440 : Database Marketing: Mining and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues in managing and developing online marketing databases for segmenting markets and developing marketing tactics. In-depth development of data mining techniques and advanced statistical analysis

BUS M 441 : High-Tech Marketing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies in managing high-tech products and services, including the role of promotion, target selection, pricing, product development, and connecting to customers.

BUS M 444 : Consumer Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Mental and emotional processes and physical actions that people engage in when selecting, purchasing, using, and discarding products and services to satisfy consumer needs and desires.

BUS M 448 : Competitive Intelligence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: 0verview of the intelligence process including information collection, intelligence analysis, dissemination, ethics and establishing the process from a managerial perspective.

BUS M 450 : Global Business Negotiations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Developing an effective negotiation framework for cross-national/cultural negotiation techniques relative to business and other life situations.

BUS M 454 : Professional Selling and Sales Management. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of professional selling and sales management including personal selling skills; strategic role of personal selling; organizing, directing, controlling, and evaluating the sales force.

BUS M 455 : Promotion Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies in promoting business and nonbusiness products, services, and institutions, including the role of promotion, target selection, media and copy decisions, and marketing research.

BUS M 456 : Retailing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341 (340 for nonmajors).
DESCRIPTION: Selection, location, and management of retail stores and systems, emphasizing profitability and integration of accounting, finance, and economic concepts and tools.

BUS M 457 : Internet Marketing of Products and Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integrates product, research, sales, and promotional strategy and concepts into an overall marketing plan for developing an Internet business. Term project developing an Internet business required.

BUS M 458R : Seminar in Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 340 or 341.
DESCRIPTION: Selected marketing issues, quantitative techniques and forecasting, advertising management, and industrial management.

BUS M 463 : Quality Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of quality management, strategic issues, philosophies, and tools used to implement and control quality.

BUS M 469 : Integrated Supply Chain Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative and creative problem solving in designing and managing cohesive value-added conversion/transformation systems.

BUS M 472 : Entrepreneurial Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Marketing strategies for start-up companies. Topics include marketing to investors, internal marketing, and how to market products/services without a marketing budget.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Organizational Behavior/Human Resource Management Emphasis (66–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.

2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.

3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the

"continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core.

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
- DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)

student recitals, one jazz performance, and one dance performance.

d. Attend twelve films from the approved list or presented through BYU's L. Tom Perry Special Collections or the International Cinema program. Films viewed as part of a university course also qualify. At least six of the films should be in a language other than English. (Foreign language films shown in International Cinema have English subtitles.)

e. Attend twelve art exhibitions (either traveling exhibitions or permanent collections) at local art museums (BYU Museum of Art, Springville Museum of Art, and Museum of Church History and Art) and/or at renowned national or international art museums. Students who have the opportunity to travel are strongly encouraged to visit museums and architectural sites to meet this requirement.

f. Engage twelve great ideas in science or technology through such means as in-class experiments, virtual lab exercises, scientific and mathematical treatises, and attendance at science fairs, exhibits, and germane lectures.

g. As part of their graduation portfolio, students submit twelve response papers that examine two works of literature, two theatrical works, two works of music, two films, two works of art, and two experiences with science or technology from the lists included in the great works requirement packet. The packet also contains detailed instructions on writing responses.

4. **Honors Advanced Languages Requirement**

Honors students must gain proficiency in a foreign language (at least two semesters of foreign language study, or the equivalent) and proficiency in advanced mathematics, statistics, or logic (at least one course from Honrs 250, Math 112/H, 113/H, 119, Phil 305, Psych 301, Stat 221/H, or an acceptable substitute). Fulfillment of this requirement meets and exceeds the core advanced Languages of Learning requirement in requiring both languages and math.

5. **Honors Service Requirement**

Students who participate in honors are multi-talented and highly motivated. The Honors Program encourages students to share their gifts with others through meaningful service. To complete this requirement students must participate in some form of service that draws upon their unique talents and abilities during their undergraduate years. The requirement is flexible in that it allows students to define the form of service they plan to use to meet it. Their contribution may be in a single project or spread out over several projects. Examples of service projects that students have used to complete this requirement include volunteer tutoring of high school or college students; assistance in programs that benefit people who are handicapped, elderly, ill, or impoverished; service as a volunteer in museums, hospitals, parks, or other public facilities; and participation on restoration or conservation projects. This service can be part of activities sponsored by educational, religious, government, business, or charitable organizations, including BYU and the LDS Church, or students can plan and carry out service on their own. For those students who serve full-time LDS missions, the service that meets this requirement should be carried out while a student and should be in addition to any service performed as a full-time missionary. Missions often provide students with skills and opportunities that they can use to provide significant service after their full-time missions are completed.

6. **Honors Thesis Requirement**

The honors thesis requirement gives students the opportunity to participate in original research or creative work in the discipline of their major. Honors students typically complete the thesis requirement during their junior and senior years after they have obtained sufficient training in their major to conduct independent work in a specialized academic field. Each student consults with a departmental honors coordinator to choose a faculty advisor in the department of his or her major and, in consultation with the advisor, chooses a thesis topic.

Students should complete significant course work within the subject area of the thesis (usually at least 30 credit hours, several of which are from 300- or 400-level major courses). The thesis is intended to acquaint students firsthand and in depth with the type of scholarly work that characterizes the field they intend to pursue professionally. For these reasons, only under rare circumstances is an honors thesis topic outside the major area approved. (In most cases students who complete a thesis outside the major do so in fields cognate to their majors.)

Before students begin work on an honors thesis, they must submit a written thesis proposal and have it approved by the Honors Program Office. Guidelines for writing the proposal are available in the Honors Advisement Center (102A MSRB) or electronically at http://honors.byu.edu. Students can request financial support as a part of the thesis proposal. Many honors students obtain competitive undergraduate research grants from BYU's Office of Research and Creative Activities for honors thesis work. Also, many professors and departments have research funding that can be devoted to research on an honors thesis. Personnel in the Honors Program can help students explore the various opportunities available to support their work on an honors thesis.

After completing thesis research and writing the thesis, each student must conduct a thesis defense. The defense committee consists of the thesis advisor, a faculty referee, and a representative of the Honors Program administration, who chairs the defense. After the thesis defense is completed and all final changes are incorporated into the thesis, the Honors Program will have the thesis bound and add it to the collection of honors theses housed in the Harold B. Lee Library Honors Reading Room (3770 HBLL).

7. **Graduate with a Cumulative Grade Point Average (GPA) of at Least 3.5**

Honors students are not necessarily those with the highest GPAs, although most perform very well in their classes. Rather than select easy courses to receive high grades, honors students tend to seek challenging courses taught by excellent professors, and they participate in a variety of activities. Nevertheless, honors students are expected to perform well academically, defined as a minimum GPA of 3.5 at the time of graduation.

8. **Graduation Portfolio Summarizing the Honors Experiences**

The honors portfolio is a record of a student's undergraduate experience. It is a file kept by all candidates for University Honors graduation and is submitted for review at the same time as the completed thesis. The portfolio contains samples of a student's best academic work from the undergraduate program. Although students should place their best work in the portfolio, the file is intended as a record of growth; thus early struggling attempts also have their place. It is always illuminating to students to see where they have been and how far they have come.

When submitted for examination, the portfolio should contain (but is not limited to):

a. A one- or two-page summary, semester by semester, of the major highlights and achievements of the student's undergraduate experience.
b. A one-page evaluation of the most memorable service the student contributed as an undergraduate.
c. A current transcript indicating a GPA of at least 3.5.
d. A list of three faculty members who know the student and can recommend his or her academic record.
e. A representative collection of the student's best academic work, reflecting educational progression throughout the undergraduate years.
f. A great works and arts engagement experience log.
g. Twelve great works and arts engagement response papers.

Note: The general Web site for the BYU Honors Program is http://honors.byu.edu.

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following after the integrated management core has been completed:
BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

9. Complete the following emphasis courses:
ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

ORG B 330 : Organizational Development and Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Macro topics in organizational behavior, including organizational structure, culture, design, change management, strategic implementation, and HR training and development.

ORG B 347 : Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices needed to serve as effective leaders in families, church, community, and work settings -- planning, decision making, self-awareness, effective human influence, and community building.

10. Complete two courses from the following:
ORG B 428 : Talent Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Topics related to managing highly skilled employees: succession planning, attracting and retaining employees, employment brand, labor market competition, executive recruiting and talent metrics.

ORG B 429 : Compensation, Benefits, and Performance Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Wage and salary administration, incentives, employee benefits, grievance and discipline systems, performance appraisal.

ORG B 431 : International Human Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to organizational behavior/human resource management emphasis.
DESCRIPTION: International policies and practices in organizational behavior and human resource management.

ORG B 490R : Professional Development Seminar. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in organizational behavior. Course content varies from year to year.

(3 hours required).
M B A 547 : Labor Relations and Employment Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: U.S./International labor/industrial relations. History, labor law, union organizing campaigns, contract negotiations, arbitration, union avoidance. Employment discrimination, work policies, and workplace safety and health.

11. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU

Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Management: Strategy Emphasis (63–64 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond the Integrated Management Core. No transfer courses will be accepted for the Integrated Management Core courses.
2. Only courses sufficient for a single emphasis are permitted.
3. Complete the following Premanagement Core Courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete and submit the "continuance" form to the college advisement center. Based on student performance to date, permission may be granted to take some restricted major-only Management Core 1 courses.

4. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.

5. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
- DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
- NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
- DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
- NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
- DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

Note: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in the Integrated Management Core.

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
- DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
- DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

7. Complete the following additional courses:
ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

And complete one course from the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

And complete one course from the following:

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

8. Complete the following:
BUS M 480 : Strategy 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Structured problem solving, strategic thinking, and basic strategy concepts to prepare students to analyze and understand the sources of competitive advantage and superior firm performance.

BUS M 481 : Strategy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced strategy topics such as growth and diversification strategy, pricing strategy, game theory and competitor analysis, strategy as real options, and strategic flexibility and commitment.

BUS M 482 : Strategy Implementation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative course on strategy formulation and implementation, including a field study. Topics include organizational alignment (structure and processes that fit the stragety), change management, and strategic leadership.

9. Complete two courses from the following:

BUS M 401 : Advanced Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, mergers and acquisitions, and current financial problems.

Or

BUS M 475 : Financing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 361, Org B 321; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and skills of entrepreneurship, emphasizing how new and emerging companies are financed. Applying functional tools to case situations.

BUS M 448 : Competitive Intelligence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: 0verview of the intelligence process including information collection, intelligence analysis, dissemination, ethics and establishing the process from a managerial perspective.

BUS M 479 : (Bus M-Mfg) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: Bus M 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

BUS M 483R : Topics in Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the management program.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and instructors vary.

I SYS 520 : Spreadsheet Automation and Modeling. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: I Sys 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Programming in Excel VBA; automating common tasks; retrieving data from web servers; building optimization models.

10. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Management (22 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. D– credit will be allowed in courses for the management minor, although a 2.25 GPA in minor courses is required.

2. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

Or
ACC 201 : Principles of Financial Accounting. (3:3:1)
DESCRIPTION: First course in concepts and methods underlying financial statements.
NOTE: Independent Study only.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

(or equivalent).
MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

(or 112 or 119).
STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note: students should complete prerequisite courses before taking functional courses.

3. Complete the following Marriott School functional courses:

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

4. Complete one course from the following:
BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

5. No more than one transfer class will be accepted as a substitute for Org B 320, Bus M 300, 340.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Strategy (27–28 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
- NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

2. Complete one course from the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
- DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
- NOTE: Independent Study also.

ACC 201 : Principles of Financial Accounting. (3:3:1)
- DESCRIPTION: First course in concepts and methods underlying financial statements.
- NOTE: Independent Study only.

3. Complete the following:

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
- NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 480 : Strategy 1. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
- DESCRIPTION: Structured problem solving, strategic thinking, and basic strategy concepts to prepare students to analyze and understand the sources of competitive advantage and superior firm performance.

BUS M 481 : Strategy 2. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
- DESCRIPTION: Advanced strategy topics such as growth and diversification strategy, pricing strategy, game theory and competitor analysis, strategy as real options, and strategic flexibility and commitment.

BUS M 482 : Strategy Implementation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative course on strategy formulation and implementation, including a field study. Topics include organizational alignment (structure and processes that fit the stragety), change management, and strategic leadership.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Recommended Courses

BUS M 401 : Advanced Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, mergers and acquisitions, and current financial problems.

BUS M 479 : (Bus M-Mfg) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: Bus M 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Show all Managerial Economics (ManEc) Courses

Show all Management Communication (M Com) Courses

Show all Organizational Behavior (Org B) Courses

Show all Public Management (P Mgt) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Honors (Honrs) Courses

Dates and times for Honors Program courses are listed in the current class schedule under Honors Program.

The Honors Program Course Guide also contains a complete list of honors courses and detailed course descriptions. It is an essential supplement to the undergraduate catalog and the class schedule. To obtain the course guide or further information about the Honors Program, contact the Honors Advisement Center: 102A MSRB, telephone (801) 422-5497, or visit the Web site at http://honors.byu.edu.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Certificate in Global Management (12 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

The global management certificate is intended to provide a theoretical and practical understanding of global business issues and enhance international career opportunities. The certificate is available to students admitted to the Marriott School of Management.

1. Complete the following:
   BUS M 430 : Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

2. Complete one course from the following:
   BUS M 431 : International Marketing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341, 430; major status.
   DESCRIPTION: International market entry strategies, export marketing, joint ventures, and other market entry modes. Regional/National markets; cultural, political, legal environments. Negotiations, trade financing, marketing mix.

   BUS M 432 : International Corporate Finance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 430; major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Financial aspects of multinational corporations operating within an international environment; direct foreign investment, foreign exchange regulations, capital markets, etc.

   BUS M 465 : Global Supply Chain. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: The emerging rules of a global marketplace and their influence on key supply chain activities and processes.

   BUS M 495R : E-Business Projects. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: On demand.
   PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Consulting/Field studies projects in e-business.

   M B A 539 : Theory and Practice of Third-World Development. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Paradigms of economic development; strategies and applications in various societies.

3. Complete the following business language course:
   BUS M 596R : Business Language. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: For experienced speakers of the language being taught. Emphasizes business concepts; practice and case study including conversation, reading,and presenting, while enriching business vocabulary.

   : Business Arabic.
   : Business Chinese.
   : Business English.
   : Business French.
   : Business German.
   : Business Italian.

: Business Japanese.
: Business Korean.
: Business Portuguese.
: Business Russian.
: Business Spanish.

(available in Arabic, Chinese, English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese, Russian, or Spanish).

4. Complete the international business experience in the form of an international internship, international field study, or business Study Abroad program.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU

Show all Business Management (Bus M) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mathematics

Tyler Jarvis, Chair
290 TMCB, (801) 422-2061

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Mathematics is open enrollment.

The Discipline

Mathematics is a means of dealing with order, pattern, and number as seen in the world around us. The abilities to compute, to think logically, and to take a reasoned approach to solving problems are highly valued in society and are characteristics of any educated person. Mathematics is not just a body of knowledge, but a process of analysis, reasoning, comparison, deduction, generalization, and problem solving.

A mathematician's stock in trade is the ability to solve problems and to explain the solutions to others. Having once determined what the right questions are, solving problems involves analyzing both concrete and abstract situations, relating them to mathematical ideas, and using mathematical techniques to work toward solutions. Explaining the solution involves pointing out what has been solved and why the solution is valid.

Career Opportunities

Majors in mathematics (BS) prepare for a wide variety of careers. Some enter graduate school or professional schools and prepare for careers in such fields as college teaching, consulting, research and development, law, medicine, and business administration. Others take positions in government agencies, industrial laboratories, information management firms, or business organizations. All of them spend much time communicating with colleagues about the problems they are solving as they continue to learn more mathematics and share mathematical ideas with others.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BS in Mathematics

Minor

Mathematics

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Mathematics
PhD in Mathematics

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Advisement

Upon completion of five core courses (from Math 112, 113, 190, 214, 343), undergraduate majors are required to meet with an assigned faculty advisor. Students whose grade point average is less than a B in the five core courses need to realize that advanced courses require much more depth of understanding and may be difficult for them.

Students who are considering graduate work in mathematics may receive advice from the graduate coordinator.

General Information

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   4 units of English
   1 unit of physics or chemistry.
   4 units of mathematics, including 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and .5 unit of trigonometry. This qualifies a student to begin college mathematics with Math 112. If calculus is available in high school, a student planning to major in mathematics is strongly encouraged to take it; doing so requires completing one of the preceding algebra units before high school.
   Advanced Placement (AP) credit is available in mathematics as follows:
   - A score of 3 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 111; a score of 4 or 5 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 112.
   - A score of 3 on the calculus BC exam gives credit in Math 110 and 111; a score of 4 on the calculus BC exam gives credit in Math 110 and 112; a score of 5 on the calculus BC exam gives credit in Math 112 and 113.
   - An AP student without credit in Math 112 must begin with Math 112; an AP student without credit in Math 113 must begin with Math 112 or 113.

   AP students should direct Educational Testing Service (ETS) to report scores to BYU to have credit posted.

   Questions regarding placement should be directed to the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB.

2. Majors are strongly urged to study Econ 110, Phscs 121 and 220 during their first two years.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Mathematics (54 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Grades of C- or below will not be acceptable in major courses.

2. Complete the following core requirements:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 121R : Seminar in Mathematics. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- RECOMMENDED: Math 112, 113.
- DESCRIPTION: Careers, topics, and problems in mathematics.

MATH 190 : Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment with instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
- DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
- DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
- DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner

product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

MATH 371 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

Note: Math 112, 113 should be honors sections. Math 121R is a one-half credit seminar that must be taken at least twice.

3. Complete the following:
   MATH 316 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 315.
   DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

   MATH 332 : Introduction to Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or 316.
   DESCRIPTION: Complex algebra, analytic functions, integration in the complex plane, infinite series, theory of residues, conformal mapping.

4. Complete the following:
   C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

5. Complete one of the following:
   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 441 : Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
   DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

   STAT 470 : Statistical Theory for Actuaries. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
   DESCRIPTION: Probability theory; discrete, continuous, mixture random variables; loss distributions; moment-generating functions; conditional probability, expectation; total probability; stochastic independence; transformations. Prepares for Exam P.

6. With signed approval by a department advisor, select a minimum of three upper-division elective courses to form a coherent set with an identified educational goal.

7. Complete an additional six hours from the following:
   MATH 300 : (Math-MthEd) History and Philosophy of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   DESCRIPTION: Historical development of important mathematical ideas and philosophies; implications for the mathematical curriculum.

   MATH 331 : (Math - EC En 370) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
   DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

MATH 347 : Introduction to Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Boundary value problems; transform methods; Fourier series; Bessel functions; Legendre polynomials.

MATH 350 : Combinatorics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Permutations, combinations, recurrence relations, applications.

MATH 355 : Graph Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

MATH 362 : (Math-MthEd) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

MATH 372 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 371.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MATH 387 : Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations; congruences; quadratic reciprocity; unique factorization, prime distribution or Diophantine equations.

MATH 410 : Introduction to Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Root finding, interpolation, curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, multiple integrals, direct solvers for linear systems, least squares, rational approximations, Fourier and other orthogonal methods.

MATH 411 : Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Iterative solvers for linear systems, eigenvalue, eigenvector approximations, numerical solutions to nonlinear systems, numerical techniques for initial and boundary value problems, elementary solvers for PDEs.

MATH 435 : Mathematical Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 331.
DESCRIPTION: The binomial asset pricing model (discrete probability). Martingales, pricing of derivative securities, random walk in financial models, random interest rates.

MATH 451 : Introduction to Topology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315.
DESCRIPTION: Developing topological concepts, beginning from a linear setting. Developing proofs or counterexamples from axioms to a structured sequence of topological propositions using only notes provided.

MATH 460R : Topics in Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 362, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics selected from the various aspects of synthetic, analytic, algebraic, and differential geometry.

MATH 465 : Differential Geometry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Math 214; 315 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 316 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Geometry of smooth curves and surfaces. Topics include the first and second fundamental forms, the Gauss map, orientability of surfaces, Gaussian and mean curvature, geodesics, minimal surfaces and the Gauss-Bonnet Theorem.

MATH 480 : Mathematical Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, 343, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Construction, solution, and interpretation of discrete and continuous models applied to problems in the physical, natural, and social sciences.

MATH 495R : Readings in Mathematics. (.5-2:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directed readings beyond the scope of usual undergraduate courses.

MATH 510 : Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 410; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical matrix algebra, orthogonalization and least squares methods, unsymmetric and symmetric eigenvalue problems, iterative methods, advanced solvers for partial differential equations.

MATH 511 : Numerical Methods for Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 347; 410; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Finite difference and finite volume methods for partial differential equations. Stability, consistency, and convergence theory.

MATH 513R : Advanced Topics in Applied Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent

MATH 521 : Methods of Applied Mathematics 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Possible topics include variational, integral, and partial differential equations; spectral and transform methods; nonlinear waves; Green's functions; scaling and asymptotic analysis; perturbation theory; continuum mechanics.

MATH 522 : Methods of Applied Mathematics 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Possible topics include variational, integral, and partial differential equations; spectral and transform methods; nonlinear waves; Green's functions; scaling and asymptotic analysis; perturbation theory; continuum mechanics.

MATH 532 : Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 332 or instructor`s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to theory of complex analysis at beginning graduate level. Topics: Cauchy integral equations, Riemann surfaces, Picard's theorem, etc.

MATH 534 : Introduction to Dynamical Systems 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 334; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Discrete dynamical systems; iterations of maps on the line and the plane; bifurcation theory; chaos, Julia sets, and fractals. Computational experimentation.

MATH 541 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

MATH 542 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

MATH 543 : Advanced Probability 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 314, 315, Stat 441; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory and its applications. Topics include random variables, independence and conditioning, laws of large numbers, random walks, martingales, Markov chains, renewal processes, ergodic theorems, Brownian motion, and stochastic integration.

MATH 544 : Advanced Probability 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 315, 316, Stat 441; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory and its applications. Topics include random variables, independence and conditioning, laws of large numbers, random walks, martingales, Markov chains, renewal processes, ergodic theorems, Brownian motion, and stochastic integration.

MATH 547 : Partial Differential Equations 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Math 314, 315; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include the method of characteristics, elliptic equations, potential theory, parabolic equations and systems, maximum principles, linear and nonlinear waves, Hamilton-Jacobi equations, Fourier transforms, Green's functions, distributions, and energy methods.

MATH 548 : Partial Differential Equations 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Math 315, 316; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include the method of characteristics, elliptic equations, potential theory, parabolic equations and systems, maximum principles, linear and nonlinear waves, Hamilton-Jacobi equations, Fourier transforms, Green's functions, distributions, and energy methods.

MATH 553 : Foundations of Topology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 451 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Naive set theory, topological spaces, product spaces, subspaces, continuous functions, connectedness, compactness, countability, separation axioms, metrization, complete metric spaces, function spaces, and Baire spaces.

MATH 554 : Foundations of Topology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 553 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental group, retractions and fixed points, homotopy types, separation theorems, classification of surfaces, Seifert-van Kampen Theorem, classification of covering spaces, and applications to group theory.

MATH 561 : Introduction to Algebraic Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 671 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Projective varieties, curves, surfaces, differential forms, and divisors.

MATH 562 : Introduction to Algebraic Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 671 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Projective varieties, curves, surfaces, differential forms, and divisors.

MATH 570 : Matrix Analysis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Math 302 or 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Special classes of matrices, canonical forms, matrix and vector norms, localization of eigenvalues, matrix functions, applications.

MATH 586 : Introduction to Algebraic Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 372 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Algebraic integers; different and discriminant; decomposition of primes; class group; Dirichlet unit

theorem; Dedekind zeta function; cyclotomic fields; valuations; completions.

MATH 587 : Introduction to Analytic Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 332 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Arithmetical functions; distribution of primes; Dirichlet characters; Dirichlet's theorem; Gauss sums; primitive roots; Dirichlet L-functions; Riemann zeta-function; prime number theorem; partitions.

8. Students who continue toward graduate work should complete:

MATH 372 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 371.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MATH 532 : Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 332 or instructor`s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to theory of complex analysis at beginning graduate level. Topics: Cauchy integral equations, Riemann surfaces, Picard's theorem, etc.

MATH 541 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

MATH 542 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

9. Those planning for doctoral work should also complete Math 451, 553, and 554 and are advised to gain competence in one or two languages from French, German, and Russian.

10. Students are required to take the mathematics major field test the last semester before they graduate. The test is an ETS (Educational Testing Service) standardized assessment test of undergraduate mathematics. Go to ETS Major Field Tests for a test description and sample problems. A passing score is required. This test does not appear on the transcript or affect the GPA.

11. Students must participate in an exit interview before graduation.

Recommended Courses

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Mathematics (Math) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

A. University Core, Beginning Fall 2004

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Note: 300-level courses are upper-division versions of their 200-level counterparts. Courses marked with * simultaneously meet two core requirements.

1. Citizenship

American Heritage

HONRS 240 : American Government and Society. (3:3:0)
American Government and Society.

Global and Cultural Awareness

HONRS 202 : Civilization 2: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3:3:0)
Civilization 2: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 208R* : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 209R* : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 231R : Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 232R : History: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
History: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 247R : Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 261* : Social Science Principles and Reasoning: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3:3:0)
Social Science Principles and Reasoning: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 308R* : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 309R* : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 331R : Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 332R : History: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
History: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 347R : Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness.

2. Skills

First-Year Writing

HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors University Writing.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

Advanced Written and Oral Communication

HONRS 300R : Advanced Writing. (3:3:0)
Advanced Writing.
PREREQUISITE: Completion of First-Year Writing requirement.
DESCRIPTION: Approaches to advanced writing that differ from departmental offerings.

Languages of Learning

HONRS 250 : Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World. (3:3:0)
Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World.
DESCRIPTION: Developing skills in arriving at quantitative models for the world as we see it. Some math skills reviewed and some new ones introduced.

3. Arts, Letters, and Sciences

Civilization

HONRS 201 : Civilization 1. (3:3:)
Civilization 1.
DESCRIPTION: Colloquium or seminar in the history of civilization from antiquity to ca. A.D. 1500.
HONRS 202 : Civilization 2. (3:3:0)
Civilization 2.
DESCRIPTION: Colloquium or seminar in the history of civilization from ca. A.D. 1500 to the present.

Arts

HONRS 202* : Civilization 2: Arts. (3:3:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Mathematics (20–22 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Grades of C- or below will not be accepted.

2. Complete the following courses:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 190 : Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment with instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
- DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

3. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
- DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

4. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
- DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 331 : (Math - EC En 370) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

MATH 332 : Introduction to Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Complex algebra, analytic functions, integration in the complex plane, infinite series, theory of residues, conformal mapping.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 347 : Introduction to Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Boundary value problems; transform methods; Fourier series; Bessel functions; Legendre polynomials.

MATH 355 : Graph Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

MATH 362 : (Math-MthEd) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

MATH 371 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

or any 400- or 500-level mathematics course.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Mathematics (Math) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mathematics (Math)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

Note: for courses containing material preparatory to Math 97 (up through beginning algebra) please refer to Independent Study.

MATH 097 : Intermediate Algebra. (0:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Elementary logic, real number system, equations and inequalities (linear, polynomial, rational, and radical expressions), graphing, function notation, inverse function, exponential functions, systems of equations, variations.
NOTE: Fee.

100-Level Courses

MATH 102 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Practicing and applying quantitative reasoning: personal finance, consumer statistics, etc.
NOTE: For students who do not need developmental algebra for subsequent courses.

MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

MATH 111 : Trigonometry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Circular functions, triangle relationships, identities, inverse trig functions, trigonometric equations, vectors, complex numbers, DeMoivre's theorem.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Calculus 1.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Calculus 2.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

MATH 121R : Seminar in Mathematics. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Math 112, 113.
DESCRIPTION: Careers, topics, and problems in mathematics.

MATH 190 : Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

200-Level Courses

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

300-Level Courses

MATH 300 : (Math-MthEd) History and Philosophy of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Historical development of important mathematical ideas and philosophies; implications for the mathematical curriculum.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 316 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 331 : (Math - EC En 370) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

MATH 332 : Introduction to Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Complex algebra, analytic functions, integration in the complex plane, infinite series, theory of residues, conformal mapping.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

: Honors Elementary Linear Algebra.

MATH 347 : Introduction to Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Boundary value problems; transform methods; Fourier series; Bessel functions; Legendre polynomials.

MATH 350 : Combinatorics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Permutations, combinations, recurrence relations, applications.

MATH 355 : Graph Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

MATH 362 : (Math-MthEd) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

MATH 371 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MATH 372 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 371.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MATH 387 : Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations; congruences; quadratic reciprocity; unique factorization, prime distribution or Diophantine equations.

MATH 391R : Seminar in Mathematics. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics from classical problems of antiquity, combinatorial mathematics, graph theory, real functions, number theory, functional equations.

MATH 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:9:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

400-Level Courses

MATH 410 : Introduction to Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Root finding, interpolation, curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, multiple integrals, direct solvers for linear systems, least squares, rational approximations, Fourier and other orthogonal methods.

MATH 411 : Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Iterative solvers for linear systems, eigenvalue, eigenvector approximations, numerical solutions to nonlinear systems, numerical techniques for initial and boundary value problems, elementary solvers for PDEs.

MATH 435 : Mathematical Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 331.
DESCRIPTION: The binomial asset pricing model (discrete probability). Martingales, pricing of derivative securities, random walk in financial models, random interest rates.

MATH 451 : Introduction to Topology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315.
DESCRIPTION: Developing topological concepts, beginning from a linear setting. Developing proofs or counterexamples from axioms to a structured sequence of topological propositions using only notes provided.

MATH 460R : Topics in Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 362, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics selected from the various aspects of synthetic, analytic, algebraic, and differential geometry.

MATH 465 : Differential Geometry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Math 214; 315 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 316 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Geometry of smooth curves and surfaces. Topics include the first and second fundamental forms, the Gauss map, orientability of surfaces, Gaussian and mean curvature, geodesics, minimal surfaces and the Gauss-Bonnet Theorem.

MATH 480 : Mathematical Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, 343, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Construction, solution, and interpretation of discrete and continuous models applied to problems in the physical, natural, and social sciences.

MATH 495R : Readings in Mathematics. (.5-2:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directed readings beyond the scope of usual undergraduate courses.

MATH 499R : Senior Thesis. (.5-3:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

MATH 510 : Numerical Methods for Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 410; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical matrix algebra, orthogonalization and least squares methods, unsymmetric and symmetric eigenvalue problems, iterative methods, advanced solvers for partial differential equations.

MATH 511 : Numerical Methods for Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 347; 410; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Finite difference and finite volume methods for partial differential equations. Stability, consistency, and convergence theory.

MATH 513R : Advanced Topics in Applied Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent

MATH 521 : Methods of Applied Mathematics 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Possible topics include variational, integral, and partial differential equations; spectral and transform methods; nonlinear waves; Green's functions; scaling and asymptotic analysis; perturbation theory; continuum mechanics.

MATH 522 : Methods of Applied Mathematics 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Math 334, 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Possible topics include variational, integral, and partial differential equations; spectral and transform methods; nonlinear waves; Green's functions; scaling and asymptotic analysis; perturbation theory; continuum mechanics.

MATH 532 : Complex Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 332 or instructor`s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to theory of complex analysis at beginning graduate level. Topics: Cauchy integral equations, Riemann surfaces, Picard's theorem, etc.

MATH 534 : Introduction to Dynamical Systems 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 334; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Discrete dynamical systems; iterations of maps on the line and the plane; bifurcation theory; chaos, Julia sets, and fractals. Computational experimentation.

MATH 541 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

MATH 542 : Real Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315, 343; 214 or 316.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

MATH 543 : Advanced Probability 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 314, 315, Stat 441; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory and its applications. Topics include random variables, independence and conditioning, laws of large numbers, random walks, martingales, Markov chains, renewal processes, ergodic theorems, Brownian motion, and stochastic integration.

MATH 544 : Advanced Probability 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 315, 316, Stat 441; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory and its applications. Topics include random variables, independence and conditioning, laws of large numbers, random walks, martingales, Markov chains, renewal processes, ergodic theorems, Brownian motion, and stochastic integration.

MATH 547 : Partial Differential Equations 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Math 314, 315; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include the method of characteristics, elliptic equations, potential theory, parabolic equations and systems, maximum principles, linear and nonlinear waves, Hamilton-Jacobi equations, Fourier transforms, Green's functions, distributions, and energy methods.

MATH 548 : Partial Differential Equations 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Math 315, 316; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include the method of characteristics, elliptic equations, potential theory, parabolic equations and systems, maximum principles, linear and nonlinear waves, Hamilton-Jacobi equations, Fourier transforms, Green's functions, distributions, and energy methods.

MATH 553 : Foundations of Topology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 451 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Naive set theory, topological spaces, product spaces, subspaces, continuous functions, connectedness, compactness, countability, separation axioms, metrization, complete metric spaces, function spaces, and Baire spaces.

MATH 554 : Foundations of Topology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 553 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental group, retractions and fixed points, homotopy types, separation theorems, classification of surfaces, Seifert-van Kampen Theorem, classification of covering spaces, and applications to group theory.

MATH 561 : Introduction to Algebraic Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 671 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Projective varieties, curves, surfaces, differential forms, and divisors.

MATH 562 : Introduction to Algebraic Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 671 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Projective varieties, curves, surfaces, differential forms, and divisors.

MATH 570 : Matrix Analysis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Math 302 or 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Special classes of matrices, canonical forms, matrix and vector norms, localization of eigenvalues, matrix functions, applications.

MATH 586 : Introduction to Algebraic Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 372 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Algebraic integers; different and discriminant; decomposition of primes; class group; Dirichlet unit theorem; Dedekind zeta function; cyclotomic fields; valuations; completions.

MATH 587 : Introduction to Analytic Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 332 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Arithmetical functions; distribution of primes; Dirichlet characters; Dirichlet's theorem; Gauss sums; primitive roots; Dirichlet L-functions; Riemann zeta-function; prime number theorem; partitions.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Mathematics Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Mathematics Faculty

Professors

Baker, Roger C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Birkbeck College, London, 1968
PhD, Birkbeck College, London, 1971

Barrett, Wayne Walton

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1968
MS, New York University, 1975
PhD, New York University, 1975

Cannon, James W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, University of Utah, 1969

Chahal, Jasbir S

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: MA, Punjab University, India 1970
PhD, Johns Hopkins University, 1979

Fearnley, Lawrence

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of London, 1953
PhD, University of Utah, 1959

Forcade, Rodney W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Chicago, 1961
MS, University of Chicago, 1963
PhD, University of Washington, 1971

Humphries, Stephen P

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BSc, University of Wales, 1974
MSc, University of Wales, 1978
PhD, University of Wales, 1983

Jarvis, Tyler J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Princeton University, 1992
PhD, Princeton University, 1994

Kuttler, Kenneth L

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1981

Lang, William E

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Carleton College, 1974
MS, Yale University, 1975
PhD, Harvard University, 1978

Lu, Kening

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Sichuan University, China, 1982
MS, Sichuan University, China, 1985
PhD, Michigan State University, 1988

Ouyang, Tiancheng

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: MS, Nankai University, China, 1981
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1989

Smith, William V.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1973
PhD, University of Utah, 1978

Wright, David Grant

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1973

Associate Professors

Cardon, David Alan

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Stanford University, 1993
PhD, Stanford University, 1996

Chow, Shue-Sum

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Canterbury, New Zealand, 1979
PhD, Australian National University, Australia, 1983

Conner, Gregory

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Humboldt State University, 1987
MS, University of Utah, 1989
PhD, University of Utah, 1992

Dallon, John Carlile

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1989
MS, University of Utah, 1991
PhD, University of Utah, 1996

Dorff, Michael John

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, University of New Hampshire, 1992
PhD, University of Kentucky, Lexington, 1997

Civilization 2: Arts.
DESCRIPTION: Colloquium or seminar in the history of civilization from ca. A.D. 1500 to the present.
HONRS 204R : Fine Arts. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Fine Arts.
HONRS 205R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 209R* : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 304R : Fine Arts. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Fine Arts.
HONRS 306R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 309R* : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.

Letters

HONRS 202* : Civilization 2: Letters. (3:3:0)
Civilization 2: Letters.
HONRS 203R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
HONRS 205R : Philosophy. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Philosophy.
HONRS 206R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 208R* : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 303R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
HONRS 305R : Philosophy. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Philosophy.
HONRS 306R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 308R* : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.

Scientific Principles and Reasoning

HONRS 259 : Physical Science Principles and Reasoning. (3:3:0)
Physical Science Principles and Reasoning.
HONRS 260 : Biological Science Principles and Reasoning. (3:3:0)
Biological Science Principles and Reasoning.
HONRS 261 : Social Science Principles and Reasoning. (3:3:0)
Social Science Principles and Reasoning.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245
- Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Doud, Darrin M

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1999
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1999

Glasgow, Scott Alan

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Arizona, 1993

Grant, Christopher P

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Utah, 1991

Halverson, Denise M

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, 1999

Li, Xian-Jin

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Hunan Normal University, China, 1982
MS, Academia Sinica, Beijing, China, 1985
PhD, Purdue University, 1993

Swenson, Eric Lewis

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1993

Tolman, Lawrence Kirk

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1960
MS, Brigham Young University, 1961
PhD, University of New Mexico, 1972

Villamizar, Vianey

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Universidad Central de Venezuela, 1977
MS, Universidad Central de Venezuela, 1983
PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1987

Assistant Professors

Bakker, Lennard Frank

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Victoria, Canada, 1991
MS, University of Victoria, Canada, 1993
PhD, Queen's University, Canada, 1997

Fisher, Todd

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1998
MS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Northwestern University, 2004

Humpherys, Jeffrey C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1995
MA, Indiana University, 1997
PhD, Indiana University, 2002

Purcell, Jessica

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1998
MS, University of Michigan, 1999
PhD, Stanford University, 2004

Associate Teaching Professor

McKay, Steven M

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1983
MS, Utah State University, 1985
PhD, Colorado State University, 1990

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mathematics Education

Gerald M. Armstrong, Chair
167 TMCB, (801) 422-1735

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

Candidates for all teacher preparation programs are required to complete an application that includes core criteria for each program. Applications are available from the Mathematics Education Department.

The Discipline

Mathematics is the discipline through which we make sense of the order, patterns, and quantitative situations we perceive in the world around us. The foundational skills of this discipline—the abilities to formulate, focus, and solve problems; to articulate, test, and justify conjectures; to communicate one's reasoning about quantities and the relationships between them; and to see connections between different mathematical ideas and real-world contexts—are highly valued in society and are characteristics of any educated person. Mathematics is not only a body of knowledge but also a process of analysis, reasoning, comparison, deduction, generalization, and problem solving.

Mathematics educators depend heavily upon their own understanding of mathematics in order to identify and articulate the mathematical ideas they want students to learn, to assess which concepts their students already possess that might serve as a foundation for learning, and to develop activities that help students develop rich understandings. They also use their understanding of the nature of the discipline to structure a culture of inquiry, reasoning, and problem solving in their classrooms.

Courses in the undergraduate program are designed to help prospective teachers plan, manage, and implement classroom activities that facilitate students' learning of mathematics. Specific program goals include (1) mastery of the foundational skills of mathematics, (2) deep reflection on mathematics learning at all levels through observation of and participation in high-quality classroom practice, (3) increased autonomy and confidence as an investigator, active learner, and productive thinker, and (4) extended field experience, informed by the best current understanding.

Program faculty include educational and mathematical researchers, specialists in both preservice and inservice teacher education, and school practitioners, spanning a broad range of interest and experience.

Career Opportunities

Majors in mathematics education prepare for careers in teaching at the middle school and junior and high school levels or graduate studies in the field.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BS in Mathematics Education

Minor

Mathematics Education

Students should see their college advisement center and department advisors for information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Mathematics Education

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Advisement

Upon completion of five core courses (Math 112 [honors section], 113 [honors section], 190, MthEd 117, Sc Ed 276R), undergraduate majors are required to meet with the undergraduate advisor to begin the program admissions process. Students whose grade point averages are less than a B in the first five core courses need to realize that advanced courses require much more depth of understanding and may be difficult for them.

Students who are considering graduate work in mathematics education may receive advice from the graduate coordinator.

General Information

It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:

- 4 units of English.
- 1 unit of physics or chemistry.
- 4 units of mathematics, including 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and .5 unit of trigonometry. This qualifies a student to begin college mathematics with Math 112 (honors section). If calculus is available in high school, a student planning to major in mathematics education is strongly encouraged to take it; doing so requires completing one of the preceding algebra units before high school.
- Advanced Placement (AP) credit is available in mathematics as follows:
  - A score of 3 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 111; a score of 4 or 5 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 112.
  - A score of 3, 4, or 5 on the calculus BC exam gives credit in Math 112 and 113.
  - An AP student without credit in Math 112 must begin with Math 112 (honors section); an AP student without credit in Math 113 must begin with Math 112 or 113 (honors sections).
  - AP students with credit in Math 113 are urged to begin with Math 113 (honors section) anyway, unless they scored 5 on the calculus BC exam.
  - AP students should direct Educational Testing Service (ETS) to report scores to BYU to have credit posted.

Questions regarding placement should be directed to the Mathematics Education Department, 167 TMCB.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Mathematics Education (74 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Grades below C- will not be acceptable in major courses.

2. Complete the following core requirements:

MTHED 117 : Critical Review of School Mathematics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
- DESCRIPTION: Strengthen understanding of high-school mathematics; gain awareness as mathematics learners in learning communities; learn how to support collaborative communities as teachers.

MTHED 218 : Task Design and Assessment of Student Understanding. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, Sc Ed 276R.
- DESCRIPTION: Building tasks that elicit important mathematical ideas. Reflecting on and assessing the success of tasks through questioning and other methods of formative assessment.

MTHED 308 : Mathematics Teaching with Technology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343, 362; basic computer literacy.
- DESCRIPTION: Using technology to teach and understand mathematics. Math-specific software and calculators used to investigate Euclidean geometry, non-Euclidean geometry, algorithms, probabilities, etc., research regarding effectiveness.

MTHED 377 : Mathematics Teaching in the Public Schools. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R, departmental consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Mathematics teaching practice in grades 7-12, including lesson/task design, curriculum evaluation, and classroom management in context of practice teaching.

MTHED 378 : Practicum in Mathematics Education. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R; concurrent enrollment in MthEd 377.
- DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

Note 1: Prerequisites for all mathematics education courses will be strictly adhered to.

Note 2: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in MthEd 377.

3. Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 190 : Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

MATH 371 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MTHED 300 : (MthEd-Math) History and Philosophy of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Historical development of important mathematical ideas and philosophies; implications for the mathematical curriculum.

MTHED 362 : (MthEd-Math) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

STAT 301 : Statistics and Probability for Secondary Educators. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Statistics and probability, emphasizing secondary-specific curriculum. Principles of counting, probability distributions, density functions, graphical methods, descriptive and inferential statistics, computer package.

Note: Math 112 and 113 must be honors sections.

4. Complete one course from the following:
MATH 350 : Combinatorics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Permutations, combinations, recurrence relations, applications.

MATH 355 : Graph Theory. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

MATH 387 : Number Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations; congruences; quadratic reciprocity; unique factorization, prime distribution or Diophantine equations.

5. A teaching minor is not needed for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.

6. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

(Four hours required)

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

   b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.

: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Mathematics Education (MthEd) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Mathematics Education (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The mathematics education minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Program Requirements

1. Grades below C- will not be accepted.

2. Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 190 : Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment with instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
- DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

MATH 362 : (Math-MthEd) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
- DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

MTHED 117 : Critical Review of School Mathematics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
- DESCRIPTION: Strengthen understanding of high-school mathematics; gain awareness as mathematics learners in learning communities; learn how to support collaborative communities as teachers.

MTHED 218 : Task Design and Assessment of Student Understanding. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, Sc Ed 276R.
- DESCRIPTION: Building tasks that elicit important mathematical ideas. Reflecting on and assessing the success of

tasks through questioning and other methods of formative assessment.

MTHED 308 : Mathematics Teaching with Technology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343, 362; basic computer literacy.
DESCRIPTION: Using technology to teach and understand mathematics. Math-specific software and calculators used to investigate Euclidean geometry, non-Euclidean geometry, algorithms, probabilities, etc., research regarding effectiveness.

MTHED 377 : Mathematics Teaching in the Public Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R, departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics teaching practice in grades 7-12, including lesson/task design, curriculum evaluation, and classroom management in context of practice teaching.

MTHED 378 : Practicum in Mathematics Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R; concurrent enrollment in MthEd 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

STAT 301 : Statistics and Probability for Secondary Educators. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Statistics and probability, emphasizing secondary-specific curriculum. Principles of counting, probability distributions, density functions, graphical methods, descriptive and inferential statistics, computer package.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Mathematics Education (MthEd) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

B. General Education Electives Before Fall 2004

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Courses meeting the remaining pre-2004 GE requirements—American Heritage, Languages of Learning, Arts and Sciences Core—carry over into the new program.

Arts and Letters

HONRS 203R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
HONRS 204R : Fine Arts. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Fine Arts.
HONRS 205R : Philosophy. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Philosophy.
HONRS 206R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 207R : Language. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Language.
HONRS 208R : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 209R : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 210R : Civilization and Culture. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Civilization and Culture.
HONRS 211R : Colloquium in Arts and Letters. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Colloquium in Arts and Letters.
HONRS 303R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
HONRS 304R : Fine Arts. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Fine Arts.
HONRS 305R : Philosophy. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Philosophy.
HONRS 306R : Humanities. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Humanities.
HONRS 307R : Language. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Language.
HONRS 308R : Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Letters: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 309R : Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Arts: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 310R : Civilization and Culture. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Civilization and Culture.

Social and Behavioral Sciences

HONRS 221R : Colloqulum in the Social Sciences. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Colloquium in the Social Sciences.
HONRS 222R : History. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
History.
HONRS 223R : Behavioral Science. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Behavioral Science.
HONRS 224R : Political Science. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Political Science.
HONRS 225R : Sociology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Sociology.
HONRS 226R : Anthropology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Anthropology.
HONRS 227R : Economics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Economics.
HONRS 228R : Education. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Education.
HONRS 229R : Business. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Business.
HONRS 230R : Civilization and Culture. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Civilization and Culture.
HONRS 231R : Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 232R : History: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
History: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 261 : Social Science Principles and Reasoning. (3:3:0)
Social Science Principles and Reasoning.
HONRS 322R : History. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
History.
HONRS 323R : Behavioral Science. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Behavioral Science.
HONRS 324R : Political Science. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Political Science.
HONRS 325R : Sociology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Sociology.
HONRS 326R : Anthropology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mathematics Education (MthEd)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

MTHED 117 : Critical Review of School Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Strengthen understanding of high-school mathematics; gain awareness as mathematics learners in learning communities; learn how to support collaborative communities as teachers.

200-Level Courses

MTHED 218 : Task Design and Assessment of Student Understanding. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Building tasks that elicit important mathematical ideas. Reflecting on and assessing the success of tasks through questioning and other methods of formative assessment.

300-Level Courses

MTHED 300 : (MthEd-Math) History and Philosophy of Mathematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Historical development of important mathematical ideas and philosophies; implications for the mathematical curriculum.

MTHED 305 : Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of number, measurement, and informal geometry in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 306 : Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 305; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of rational numbers and proportional reasoning, probability, and early algebraic reasoning in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 308 : Mathematics Teaching with Technology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343, 362; basic computer literacy.
DESCRIPTION: Using technology to teach and understand mathematics. Math-specific software and calculators used to investigate Euclidean geometry, non-Euclidean geometry, algorithms, probabilities, etc., research regarding effectiveness.

MTHED 362 : (MthEd-Math) Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112, 190.
DESCRIPTION: Logical and historical development of Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, transformations and symmetry; relationships among axiomatic systems; use of software and other geometric models; proofs and Van Hiele levels.

MTHED 377 : Mathematics Teaching in the Public Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343, MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R, departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics teaching practice in grades 7-12, including lesson/task design, curriculum evaluation, and classroom management in context of practice teaching.

MTHED 378 : Practicum in Mathematics Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 117, 218, Sc Ed 276R; concurrent enrollment in MthEd 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

400-Level Courses

MTHED 495R : Readings in Mathematics Education. (.5-2:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directed readings beyond scope of usual undergraduate courses.

MTHED 499R : Senior Thesis. (.5-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

MTHED 550 : Problem Solving. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Strong background in undergraduate mathematics; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving and building explanations and presenting solutions to conceptually important problems. Connections between problem solving and understanding, and implications for teaching and learning.

MTHED 562 : Euclidean Geometry: Content, Learning, and Teaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Math 362 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Euclidean geometry, including classical problems, polyhedra, transformations, congruence, similarity, integer geometry, minimization; technology in geometry, Van Hiele levels, role of proof, and high school curriculum.

MTHED 585R : Research Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Graduate student status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on introduction to department research projects. Data analysis, discussion of theoretical frameworks, and reflection on possible implications.

MTHED 590 : Foundational Issues in Learning Mathematics. (3:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: Teaching certificate or completion of student teaching.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to research in mathematics learning; mathematical thinking; cognitive, social, and philosophical approaches to describing mathematics learning. Lab experience in classrooms.

MTHED 591 : Scholarly Inquiry in Mathematics Education. (3:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 590.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to scholarly inquiry in mathematics education; issues in research methodology. Lab experience in classrooms.

MTHED 598R : Topics in Mathematics Education. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Includes specific research areas and curriculum studies of school mathematics topics (i.e. geometry, algebra, and calculus).

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Mathematics Education Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Mathematics Education Faculty

Professors

Speiser, Robert David

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Cornell College, 1965
PhD, Cornell University, 1970

Williams, Steven R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1989

Associate Professors

Armstrong, Gerald M

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1963
MS, Brigham Young University, 1965
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1971

Lawlor, Gary Reid

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Stanford University, 1988

Peterson, Blake Ellis

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1986
MS, Washington State University, 1990
PhD, Washington State University, 1993

Siebert, Daniel Kevin

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 2000

Walter, Charles N

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of New Mexico, 1963
MA, University of New Mexico, 1965
PhD, University of New Mexico, 1970

Assistant Professors

Belnap, Jason Knight

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1996
MS, University of Arizona, 1998
PhD, University of Arizona, 2005

Leatham, Keith Rigby

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young Universityâ€"Idaho, 1989
BS, Utah State University, 1992
MS, Utah State University, 1998
PhD, University of Georgia, 2002

Walter, Janet Guymon

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
EdD, Rutgers University, 2004

Teaching Professor

Voyles, Jacqueline Taylor

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Idaho State University, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1987

Assistant Teaching Professor

Hendrickson, Scott

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Mathematics Education
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984

Instructor

Corey, Douglas Lyman

COLLEGE:	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT:	Mathematics Education
RANK:	Instructor
DEGREES:	BA, Brigham Young University, 1999
	MA, Brigham Young University, 2001
	MA, University of Michigan, 2004
	PhD, University of Michigan, 2007

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mechanical Engineering

Timothy W. McLain, Chair
435-A CTB, (801) 422-2625

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, (801) 422-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Mechanical Engineering carries special enrollment limitations at the junior level. Please see Professional Program Acceptance below and the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BS in Mechanical Engineering

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Mechanical Engineering
PhD in Mechanical Engineering

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Discipline

Mechanical engineers work with concepts, ideas, and products that are primarily mechanical or energy related. Mechanical engineering is a broad discipline that prepares a person to contribute in a wide range of fields such as aerospace, computer graphics, power generation, machine tools, petroleum, agricultural and construction equipment, medicine, government, and all types of transportation. A mechanical engineer may work in research, design, analysis, manufacturing, testing, operations, sales, or management. Engineers use critical problem-solving methods and basic principles of mathematics and science to creatively solve problems.

Educational Objectives

The Brigham Young University Department of Mechanical Engineering undergraduate bachelor of science program pursues the following objectives:

1. Teach the fundamental concepts of math, science, and mechanical engineering to produce graduates who demonstrate technical excellence and provide service to their profession, community, family, and church.
2. Instill a desire and ability to learn continuously, both through study and faith, to enable graduates to meet the changing demands of their profession and personal life.
3. Provide practical and open-ended engineering experiences to develop graduates who think independently and demonstrate leadership and creativity.
4. Engage students in activities to produce graduates who communicate and work effectively and ethically with people of diverse backgrounds.

Program Outcomes

To assure that these objectives are reached, the department has articulated twelve outcomes of the BS program. Each student graduating from this program is expected to have:

1. A basic understanding of fundamental physical phenomena and governing principles.
2. The ability to develop and solve mathematical models of fundamental physical phenomena and apply them to predict the behavior of

engineering systems.

3. The ability to use engineering principles to design an innovative system, component, or process to meet desired needs.
4. The expertise to plan and conduct an experimental program and evaluate the results.
5. The ability to use modern engineering tools and techniques in engineering practice.
6. An understanding of manufacturing processes and planning.
7. Effective oral and written communication skills.
8. The ability to work with and lead others to accomplish goals.
9. An appreciation of history, philosophy, literature, science, and the fine arts and how they influence the culture and behavior of societies.
10. Personal behavior demonstrating and practicing high moral and ethical standards.
11. The ability to practice engineering in a global environment.
12. A desire for and commitment to lifelong learning and service.

All courses in the curriculum are designed to help achieve these outcomes.

The curriculum in mechanical engineering is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET).

Career Opportunities

A bachelor of science degree in mechanical engineering provides widely recognized professional training for careers in industry, government, and other areas. Most industrial companies hire some mechanical engineers. Companies that make mechanical or energy-related products may hire mostly mechanical engineers. As a result, many mechanical engineering positions are available worldwide. Mechanical engineers have job opportunities in companies involved in such areas as aircraft and spacecraft design; manufacturing processes; product safety and reliability; solar energy; electronic equipment packaging and cooling; power plant design; jet, train, truck, and automobile engines; environmental protection; artificial intelligence; robotics; medical and hospital equipment; new material development and applications; and technical writing. Increasing numbers of positions utilize foreign language experience.

A graduate in mechanical engineering is prepared for advanced studies in the field as well as in a variety of other disciplines, including law, medicine, and business administration. Perhaps most important to graduates are the problem-solving strategies and thinking processes acquired in the study of mechanical engineering that help one to succeed in any area of endeavor.

General Information

Any student may choose to major in mechanical engineering and to enroll in all classes in the preprofessional program (items 1 and 2 under BS Mechanical Engineering Major Requirements).

Professional Program Acceptance

Students must be accepted into the professional program before they may take the professional Me En core or technical electives (items 4 and 5 in major requirements). To apply, students must have completed the following four courses at a college or university (neither AP nor concurrent enrollment credit meet this requirement):

1. One course from the basic science core (item 1 in the major requirements).
2. One course from the mathematics core (item 2 in the major requirements).
3. Me En 172.
4. CE En 103.

Only one repeat is allowed in any of these courses for purposes of determining professional program acceptance. If a student has taken more than four professional application courses or has repeated any of these courses, all grades received in the professional application courses will be considered in determining professional program acceptance.

A fixed number of students is granted acceptance to the professional program each year. Acceptance is based primarily upon the grade point average for the professional application courses. Because the class size is fixed, the GPA necessary for admission varies from year to year. Historically, students with a GPA of 2.9 or above in the professional application courses have been admitted to the professional program.

Normal application deadlines are June 1, October 1, and February 1. Applications from transfer students who have been admitted to the university may be considered at other times.

Professional program application forms are available in the college advisement center.

Academic Standards and Continuance

On gaining acceptance into the professional program, students must maintain a minimum university cumulative grade point average of 2.0. No more than 6 credit hours of grades below C- in major courses may be applied toward graduation. A professional program course may not be retaken more than once.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Mechanical Engineering (94.5–95.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following basic science core:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
- DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

Note: Students without high school physics should start with Phscs 121.

2. Complete one of the following mathematics core sequences:
   a. MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
      - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
      - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
      - NOTE: Honors also.

      MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
      - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
      - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
      - NOTE: Honors also.

      MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
      - OFFERED: F, W
      - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
      - DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

      MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
      - OFFERED: F, W
      - PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.

DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

b. MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

3. Complete the following preprofessional engineering courses:
CE EN 103 : Engineering Mechanics--Statics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119 or concurrent enrollment (if 119, then Math 111 must have already been taken).
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

CE EN 203 : Engineering Mechanics--Mechanics of Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts of elastic stress and strain relations; cylinders and spheres; torsion; beam theory, including bending stresses; deflections; and two-dimensional elastic theory.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CE EN 204 : Engineering Mechanic--Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103 or Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of dynamics applied to particles, systems of particles, rigid bodies, vibration systems, and nonrigid particles systems.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

EC EN 301 : Elements of Electrical Engineering. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Linear electric circuits, computer organization, and logic circuits for nonmajors.
NOTE: Fee.

ME EN 172 : Engineering Graphics--Principles and Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engineering and technology major status.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive applications of CAD-based national (ANSI) and international (ISO) graphics standards, including coordinate and geometric dimensioning and tolerancing practices, manufacturing, and product verification procedures.

ME EN 191 : New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics of special interest to new mechanical engineering majors.
NOTE: Required of all first-semester freshman and transfer students.

ME EN 250 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and properties of solid materials and their behavior as applied to engineering.

ME EN 282 : Manufacturing Processes. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203, MeEn 250.
DESCRIPTION: Common manufacturing processes, including technological limitations and economic considerations. Influence of product design on process selection and manufacturing efficiency.

4. Complete the following professional mechanical engineering core:

ME EN 312 : Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 373 or concurrent enrollment; 321, 363.
DESCRIPTION: Physics and modeling of fluid flow; fluid statics, dimensional analysis, momentum, internal and external viscous flow, compressible flow, and fluid machinery.

ME EN 321 : Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of thermal energy and work; principle of state, conservation of mass, conservation of energy, increase of entropy principle; application to thermal and mechanical processes.

ME EN 335 : Dynamic System Modeling and Analysis. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334, MeEn 363, 373, CEEn 204.
DESCRIPTION: Formulating mathematical models for mechanical, electrical, fluid, and combined systems; numerical solution of motion equations; first- and second-order systems, frequency response, and transfer functions.

ME EN 340 : Heat Transfer. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 312.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of heat transfer; basics of conduction, convection, and radiation; mass transfer by analogy; heat exchangers; computer applications to practical design and analysis problems.

ME EN 363 : Elementary Instrumentation. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; ECEn 301; Engl 316 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of mechanical measuring systems; sensors, signal conditioning, statistical error analysis, dynamic response, standards.

ME EN 372 : Mechanical System Design Fundamentals. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203, MeEn 172, 250, 282; 373 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Static and dynamic stress and failure analysis for mechanical systems.

ME EN 373 : Introduction to Scientific Computing and Computer-Aided Engineering. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; concurrent enrollment in Math 214 or 302.
DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for engineers taught in context of solving physical systems using numerical methods. Student will program solutions using the C++ language, spreadsheets, symbolic solvers, etc.

ME EN 475 : Integrated Product and Process Design 1. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 321, 363, 372, 373; senior standing (fewer than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical engineering, manufacturing engineering technology, industrial design, or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.
NOTE: MeEn 475 and 476 must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

Anthropology.
HONRS 327R : Economics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Economics.
HONRS 328R : Education. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Education.
HONRS 329R : Business. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Business.
HONRS 330R : Civilization and Culture. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Civilization and Culture.
HONRS 331R : Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Social Science: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 332R : History: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
History: Global and Cultural Awareness.

Natural Sciences

HONRS 241R : Colloquium in the Sciences. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Colloquium in the Sciences.
HONRS 242R : Mathematics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Mathematics.
HONRS 243R : Physical Science, Elective. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Physical Science, Elective.
HONRS 244R : Biological Science, Elective. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Biological Science, Elective.
HONRS 245R : Technology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Technology.
HONRS 246R : Statistics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Statistics.
HONRS 247R : Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness.
HONRS 342R : Mathematics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Mathematics.
HONRS 343R : Physical Science, Elective. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Physical Science, Elective.
HONRS 344R : Biological Science, Elective. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Biological Science, Elective.
HONRS 345R : Technology. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Technology.
HONRS 346R : Statistics. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Statistics.
HONRS 347R : Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness. (3-6:ARR:0)
Natural Sciences: Global and Cultural Awareness.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

ME EN 476 : Integrated Product and Process Design 2. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 321, 363, 372, 373; senior standing (fewer than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical engineering, manufacturing engineering technology, industrial design, or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.
NOTE: MeEn 475 and 476 must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

5. Complete the following supporting courses:
ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

6. Complete 15 hours (five courses) of technical electives.

The purpose of these courses is to strengthen the engineering education of the student by a) deepening the student's understanding of engineering and/or science fundamentals, b) helping the student learn to apply engineering fundamentals in specific areas of interest, and/or c) helping the student to develop critical skills related to engineering practice.

The technical electives are normally 400-level or higher mechanical engineering courses, but other courses may be used as long as the following requirements are met:

- At least three courses must be in mechanical engineering.
- No courses may be below the 300 level.
- A maximum of 3 credit hours in Me En 495R, 595R, or other independent project courses may be applied to meet technical elective requirements.
- All courses must be of an acceptable level from mechanical engineering, civil engineering, chemical engineering, computer engineering, electrical engineering, mathematics, statistics, physics, chemistry, or computer science; or be on the approved elective list in the department office. If a student wishes to count a course outside these areas as an elective, approval must be granted *before* the course is taken. Approval is requested by submitting a one-page petition to the department undergraduate committee that lists all of the proposed electives and demonstrates how the proposed exception meets the purposes described above.
- No course used to satisfy other major requirements for graduation may be used as an elective.

A. *General Elective Option*

Complete a total of 15 elective hours from the following:

1. Complete a minimum of 9 hours from 400- or 500-level mechanical engineering courses.
2. Complete a maximum of 6 hours of acceptable electives outside of mechanical engineering.

B. *Manufacturing Option*

The Society of Manufacturing Engineers has identified four areas of competency for manufacturing engineering as follows: (1) materials and manufacturing processes; (2) process, assembly and product engineering; (3) manufacturing competitiveness; and (4) manufacturing systems design.

An option in manufacturing engineering is available. It may be completed by taking the following 15 hours of technical electives:

1. Complete 3 hours from the following:
ME EN 585 : Manufacturing Competitiveness: Quality and Productivity. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Me En 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Production strategies to improve quality, decrease cost, and increase throughput to create market advantage; effective production management systems; applying quality improvement tools to process data; theory of constraints and lean production.

MFG 532 : Manufacturing Systems. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 480 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing lean manufacturing systems. Numerous examples and case studies from industry demonstrating principles of lean production, inventory management, and lean distribution. Project with a local company to gain confidence with these principles in an industrial setting.

2. Complete 3 hours from the following:

ME EN 482 : Manufacturing Systems Analysis and Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 250, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, synthesis, and control of processing and assembly operations; mathematical modeling of manufacturing processes; systems integration; applying conservation principles to processing and assembly operations.

ME EN 486 : Automation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Determining appropriate levels of manufacturing automation based on economics and productivity. Elements of automation, including sensors, robots, conveyors, and part feeders.

ME EN 537 : Advanced Mechanisms, Robotics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 437 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Kinematics and dynamics of advanced mechanisms, such as robots, with computer simulation of mechanism motion.

3. Complete 3 hours from the following:

ME EN 452 : Intermediate Materials. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250, 372; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mechanical behavior of engineering materials including metals, plastics, ceramics, and composites.

ME EN 456 : Composite Material Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250.
DESCRIPTION: Macro- and micro-mechanical analysis and design of uni- and multidirectional composite materials.

ME EN 477 : Design for Manufacture and Assembly. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 282, 372; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design practice for manufacturing considerations. Surface finish, tolerances, GD&T, and inspection and gaging principles. Application of computer-aided tolerancing and inspection.

ME EN 558 : Metallurgy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of physical metallurgy and their application to design.

ME EN 584 : Manufacturing Process Machine Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying machine design principles to manufacturing process machines and tooling; integrating machine elements; precision machine design. Designing and analyzing the effects of loading, combined stresses, and deflections on machine process capability. Sensors applied to process machines.

4. Complete 3 additional hours from the manufacturing electives list.

5. Complete 3 additional hours from the mechanical engineering general elective list.

When combined with required courses for all mechanical engineering majors related to manufacturing, namely Me En 250, 282, 475/476, and Stat 332, this option provides a strong foundation in manufacturing engineering.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Mechanical Engineering (Me En) Courses

BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Mechanical Engineering (Me En)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ME EN 172 : Engineering Graphics--Principles and Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engineering and technology major status.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive applications of CAD-based national (ANSI) and international (ISO) graphics standards, including coordinate and geometric dimensioning and tolerancing practices, manufacturing, and product verification procedures.

ME EN 191 : New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics of special interest to new mechanical engineering majors.
NOTE: Required of all first-semester freshman and transfer students.

ME EN 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

ME EN 250 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and properties of solid materials and their behavior as applied to engineering.

ME EN 282 : Manufacturing Processes. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203, MeEn 250.
DESCRIPTION: Common manufacturing processes, including technological limitations and economic considerations. Influence of product design on process selection and manufacturing efficiency.

300-Level Courses

ME EN 312 : Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 373 or concurrent enrollment; 321, 363.
DESCRIPTION: Physics and modeling of fluid flow; fluid statics, dimensional analysis, momentum, internal and external viscous flow, compressible flow, and fluid machinery.

ME EN 321 : Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of thermal energy and work; principle of state, conservation of mass, conservation of energy, increase of entropy principle; application to thermal and mechanical processes.

ME EN 335 : Dynamic System Modeling and Analysis. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334, MeEn 363, 373, CEEn 204.
DESCRIPTION: Formulating mathematical models for mechanical, electrical, fluid, and combined systems; numerical solution of motion equations; first- and second-order systems, frequency response, and transfer functions.

ME EN 340 : Heat Transfer. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 312.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of heat transfer; basics of conduction, convection, and radiation; mass transfer by analogy; heat exchangers; computer applications to practical design and analysis problems.

ME EN 363 : Elementary Instrumentation. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; ECEn 301; Engl 316 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of mechanical measuring systems; sensors, signal conditioning, statistical error analysis, dynamic response, standards.

ME EN 372 : Mechanical System Design Fundamentals. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su

ME EN 373 : Introduction to Scientific Computing and Computer-Aided Engineering. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; concurrent enrollment in Math 214 or 302.
DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for engineers taught in context of solving physical systems using numerical methods. Student will program solutions using the C++ language, spreadsheets, symbolic solvers, etc.

400-Level Courses

ME EN 412 : Applications of Fluid Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 312.
DESCRIPTION: One-dimensional compressible flow, shocks, expansions, nozzles; turbomachinery design and performance; pumps, compressors, fans, and turbines; introduction to CFD with applications.

ME EN 415 : Applied Aerodynamics and Flight Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 312.
DESCRIPTION: Modern applied aerodynamics, including performance, stability, and control of aerospace vehicles.

ME EN 422 : Applied Thermodynamics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W; Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Me En 321, 363, 373.
DESCRIPTION: Applied engineering thermodynamics including air and steam power cycles, thermodynamic relations, and introduction to combustion and equilibrium chemical reactions.

ME EN 425 : Internal Combustion Engines. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental operating characteristics of internal combustion engines, spark and compression ignition. Thermodynamic cycle analysis, performance and emissions characterization, and dynamometer testing on CFR and production engines.

ME EN 426 : Gas Turbine and Jet Engine Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 312, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design and synthesis of land-based and aircraft gas turbines utilizing fluid flow and thermodynamic fundamentals. Extensive discussion of turbojet, turbofan, and turboprop engines.

ME EN 431 : (Me En-EC En 483) Design of Control Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 335 or EC En 380.
DESCRIPTION: Classical frequency response and time domain design of control systems. State variable control and computer simulation of control systems.

ME EN 437 : Kinematics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: CE En 204; Math 303 or 334; Me En 373.
DESCRIPTION: Relative motion of links in mechanisms; velocities and accelerations of machine parts; rolling contact; cams; synthesis of mechanisms. Includes computer-aided engineering techniques.

ME EN 452 : Intermediate Materials. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250, 372; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mechanical behavior of engineering materials including metals, plastics, ceramics, and composites.

ME EN 456 : Composite Material Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250.
DESCRIPTION: Macro- and micro-mechanical analysis and design of uni- and multidirectional composite materials.

ME EN 471 : Computer-Aided Engineering Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 172, 373, CE En 203, 204.
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer-aided engineering tools to design; 3-D geometry and solid modeling; applying finite element analysis, kinematic analysis, and other software to engineering analysis.

ME EN 472 : Mechanical Systems Design Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 372.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, analysis, and design of mechanical systems and components.

ME EN 475 : Integrated Product and Process Design 1. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 321, 363, 372, 373; senior standing (fewer than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical engineering, manufacturing engineering technology, industrial design, or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.
NOTE: MeEn 475 and 476 must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

ME EN 476 : Integrated Product and Process Design 2. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 321, 363, 372, 373; senior standing (fewer than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical engineering, manufacturing engineering technology, industrial design, or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.

ME EN 477 : Design for Manufacture and Assembly. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 282, 372; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design practice for manufacturing considerations. Surface finish, tolerances, GD&T, and inspection and gaging principles. Application of computer-aided tolerancing and inspection.

ME EN 482 : Manufacturing Systems Analysis and Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 250, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, synthesis, and control of processing and assembly operations; mathematical modeling of manufacturing processes; systems integration; applying conservation principles to processing and assembly operations.

ME EN 486 : Automation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Determining appropriate levels of manufacturing automation based on economics and productivity. Elements of automation, including sensors, robots, conveyors, and part feeders.

ME EN 495R : Mentored Learning for Undergraduates in Mechanical Engineering. (1-6:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Independent learning with a faculty member.

ME EN 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ME EN 500 : (MeEn-CEEn) Design and Materials Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203; MeEn 372 or CEEn 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Applied and residual stress; materials selection; static, impact, and fatigue strength; fatigue damage; surface treatments; elastic deflection and stability--all as applied to mechanical design.

ME EN 501 : (MeEn-CEEn) Stress Analysis and Design of Mechanical Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stress analysis and deflection of structures; general bending and torsion, with computer applications to mechanical and aerospace structure design.

ME EN 503 : (MeEn-CEEn) Plasticity and Fracture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203; MeEn 250; Math 303; senior standing or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Tensor algebra; stress and deformation tensors; relationships between dislocation slip, yielding, plastic constitutive behavior, and microstructure development; cracks and linear elastic fracture mechanics.

ME EN 504 : (Me En-CE En) Computer Structural Analysis and Optimization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Linear algebra; CE En 321 or Me En 372; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Matrix analysis of rods, shafts, beams, trusses, frames, and grids using the generalized stiffness method. Optimization methods for these structures. Organizing computer programs for structural analysis and structural optimization.

ME EN 506 : (MeEn-CEEn) Continuum Mechanics and Finite Element Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Linear algebra; CE En 321 or Me En 372; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Equilibrium, constitutive, and compatibility equations; closed-form solutions from elasticity; finite element theory, programming, and usage; membrane, axisymmetric, and solid elements. Application to heat transfer, fluid mechanics, and seepage.

ME EN 508 : (Me En-CE En) Structural Vibrations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamic analysis of single degree-of-freedom, discrete multi-degree-of-freedom, and continuous systems. Applications include aerospace, civil structures, and mechanical components.

ME EN 510 : Compressible Fluid Flow. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Me En 312 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: One-dimensional analysis of compressible flow with area change, friction, heat transfer, shock waves, and combined effects, including experimental methods.

ME EN 512 : Intermediate Fluid Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 312 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of fluid properties, Navier-Stokes equations, exact and similarity solutions, introduction to potential flows, stream functions, lift and drag, boundary layers, vorticity, and turbulence.

ME EN 521 : Intermediate Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Me En 422 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of first and second law analysis; exergy; equations of state and other thermodynamic relations; properties of mixtures and multiphase systems; chemical reactions and equilibrium.

ME EN 522 : Combustion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

ME EN 523 : (Me En-CE En) Aircraft Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Requirements, objectives, loads, materials, and tools for design of airframe structures; static behavior of thin-wall structures; durability and damage tolerance; certification and testing. Airframe component team design project.

ME EN 534 : Dynamics of Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 335 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Hamiltonian and Lagrangian dynamics, generalized coordinates, linear and angular momentum, Euler angles, rigid-body motions, and gyroscopic effects. Theory taught with applications integrated.

ME EN 535 : Mechanical Vibrations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 335 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to energy methods for system modeling, eigenvalues and mode shapes, frequency response, and spectral characterization of vibrations.

ME EN 537 : Advanced Mechanisms, Robotics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 437 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Kinematics and dynamics of advanced mechanisms, such as robots, with computer simulation of mechanism motion.

ME EN 538 : Compliant Mechanisms. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Me En 372; 475 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design and analysis of compliant mechanisms and compliant structures. Large-deflection analysis/force displacement relationships; mechanisms synthesis.

ME EN 540 : Intermediate Heat and Mass Transfer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 340 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical approaches to conduction, convection, and radiation heat transfer. Introduction to mass transfer.

ME EN 541 : Numerical Heat Transfer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 340 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Heat transfer analysis by numerical methods. Finite difference and finite element methods, stability, and error analysis.

ME EN 550 : (Me En-EC En) Microelectromechanical Systems (MEMS). (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: EC En 450 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, fabrication, and applications of MEMS. Mechanical properties governing their design and reliability and the processing technologies used to fabricate them.

ME EN 557 : Corrosion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles, eight common forms of corrosion, testing, materials, applications, modern theory, and high temperature metal-gas reactions.

ME EN 558 : Metallurgy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of physical metallurgy and their application to design.

ME EN 561 : (Me En-Phscs) Fundamentals of Acoustics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123 or equivalent; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sound generation, transmission, reflection, and reception. Vibrating systems, elastic media, mechanical energy, and radiation. Sound in tubes and cavities. Acoustic filters. Noise measurement and perception.

ME EN 562 : (Me En-Phscs 660) Analysis of Acoustic Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 561 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing and modeling electro-mechano-acoustic systems. Transducers, calibration, and acoustical measurements. Sound sources, arrays, coupling, radiation, and directivity. Duct acoustics. Energy-based acoustics.

ME EN 564 : Digital Instrumentation and Mechatronic Systems. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 363 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design and analysis of instrumentation systems, fundamental sensor characteristics, and computer data acquisition; time and frequency domain modeling with analog and digital components.

ME EN 570 : (Me En-CE En) Computer-Aided Engineering Software Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 373 or C programming.
DESCRIPTION: Programming methods for development of engineering software. Data structures, architecture, libraries, and graphical user interfaces, with applications to CAD systems.

ME EN 572 : (Me En-CE En) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

ME EN 574 : Product Development Automation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Prerequisite: Me En 475, 476; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design automation, network modeling of design systems, mass customization, agent-based methods, transnational design systems. Aerospace, automotive, and consumer product applications.

ME EN 575 : (Me En-CE En) Optimization Techniques in Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302 and FORTRAN, C, or similar computer language.
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer optimization techniques to constrained engineering design. Theory and use of state-of-the-art computer routines. Robust design methods.
NOTE: Fee.

ME EN 576 : Product Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 475 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Emerging design methodology and design strategies for complex systems, including decomposition methods and sensitivity analysis. Advanced CAD/CAE/CAM technologies applied to design.

ME EN 578 : CAD/Cam Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced FORTRAN, C, or C++.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices involved in parametric surface and solid modeling, associativity, NC tool path generation, etc. Construction of complete CAD models for design, analysis, and manufacture.

ME EN 584 : Manufacturing Process Machine Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MeEn 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying machine design principles to manufacturing process machines and tooling; integrating machine elements; precision machine design. Designing and analyzing the effects of loading, combined stresses, and deflections on machine process capability. Sensors applied to process machines.

ME EN 585 : Manufacturing Competitiveness: Quality and Productivity. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Me En 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Production strategies to improve quality, decrease cost, and increase throughput to create market advantage; effective production management systems; applying quality improvement tools to process data; theory of constraints and lean production.

ME EN 595R : Special Topics in Mechanical Engineering. (.5-18:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's consent.

: Topics in Materials.
: Topics in Mechanical Design.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Mechanical Engineering Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Mechanical Engineering Faculty

Professors

Adams, Brent Larsen

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1974
MS, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1976
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1979

Chase, Kenneth W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1962
MS, Brigham Young University, 1964
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1972

Howell, Larry L

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Purdue University, 1991
PhD, Purdue University, 1993

Magleby, Spencer P

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1988

McLain, Timothy Wayne

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Stanford University, 1995

Parkinson, Alan Roger

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1979
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1982
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2003

Red, Walter Edward

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS/MA, Rice University, 1965
PhD, Arizona State University, 1972

Smith, Craig C

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1973

Todd, Robert H

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, California State University, Northridge, 1964
MS, Stanford University, 1965
PhD, Stanford University, 1971

Webb, Brent W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Purdue University, 1986

Associate Professors

Cox, Jordan Jay

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Purdue University, 1991

Fullwood, David

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BSc, University of York, 1987
MS, University of Utah, 1989
PhD, University of London, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 2005

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

C. Other Honors Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

HONRS 100 : Honors Experience. (.5-2:Arr:Arr)
Honors Experience.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory seminar for incoming honors students.
HONRS 290R : Great Works and Arts Engagement. (1-3:ARR:0)
Great Works and Arts Engagement.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in great works and arts engagement; topics vary.
HONRS 292R : Special Projects. (1-3:ARR:0)
Special Projects.
DESCRIPTION: Projects conducted under supervision of the Honors Program.
HONRS 295R : Special Topics. (1-3:ARR:0)
Special Topics.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary by section and semester.
HONRS 301R : Writing Practicum. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
Writing Practicum.
DESCRIPTION: Application of writing and editing skills in project-based format.
HONRS 492R : Special Projects. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
Special Projects.
DESCRIPTION: Projects conducted under supervision of the Honors Program.
HONRS 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)
Honors Thesis.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Gorrell, Steven E

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Virginia Tech, 1990
PhD, Iowa State University, 2001

Jensen, Charles Gregory

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Purdue University, 1993

Jones, Matthew R.

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1990
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1993

Nelson, Tracy W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Ohio State University, 1991
MS, Ohio State University, 1993
PhD, Ohio State University, 1998

Sorensen, Carl D

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1985

Tree, Dale R

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Purdue University, 1988
PhD, University of Wisconsin, 1992

Assistant Professors

Bowden, Anton

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1996
PhD, University of Utah, 2003

Colton, Mark Bryan

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1997
MS, University of Utah, 2001
PhD, University of Utah, 2006

Jensen, Brian

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Brigham Young University, 1998
MS, University of Michigan, 2004
PhD, University of Michigan, 2004

Mattson, Christopher A.

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 2003

Maynes, Daniel

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1992
MS, Utah State University, 1993
PhD, University of Utah, 1997

Thomson, Scott L

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MS, Brigham Young University, 2000
PhD, Purdue University, 2004

Vanderhoff, Julie

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Denver, 2002
MS, University of California, San Diego, 2004
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 2007

Teaching Professor

Eastman, Paul Frank

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Mechanical Engineering
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1960
PhD, University of Utah, 1965

Military Science (Army ROTC)

Major Theodore M. Leblow, Chair
320 ROTC, (801) 422-3601

Admission to Degree Program

Students must be accepted by the Department of Military Science into the program.

The Discipline

The Army Reserve Officer Training Corps (ROTC) Leadership Excellence Program is designed to produce highly qualified commissioned officers in the U.S. Regular Army, the U.S. Army Reserve, or the U.S. Army National Guard. Students specialize in the major field of their choice and graduate with the ability to function as a junior executive.

Career Opportunities

Officer in the U.S. Army in the career field of:

Adjutant General's Corps (Human Resource Administration)
Air Defense Artillery
Armor
Aviation (Pilots)
Chemical Corps
Engineers
Field Artillery
Finance Corps
Infantry
Judge Advocate General's Corps (Legal)
Medical Service Corps (nurses, doctors, and health care administrators)
Military Intelligence
Military Police (Law Enforcement)
Ordnance Corps (Logistics)
Quartermaster Corps (Logistics)
Signal Corps (Information Technology)
Transportation Corps (Logistics)

General Information

Textbooks, Uniforms, and Allowances. All textbooks, uniforms, and training materials are furnished by the U.S. Army. Those in the advanced course receive a $450 to $500 monthly allowance and approximately $800 for participation in the national Leadership Development and Assessment Course for five weeks during the summer between the junior and senior year.

Army ROTC Scholarship Program. Scholarships are available on a competitive basis. Senior students in high school may qualify for a four-year scholarship. College students may also qualify for a four-, three-, or two-year scholarship. The scholarship provides for tuition and fees or room and board, a textbook allowance, and from $300 to $500 per month (up to ten months per year) for the period of the scholarship. Students who qualify must complete their degree program prior to their thirty-fifth birthday. Contact the Military Science Department for application procedures and specifics.

SMP Program (Simultaneous Membership Program). Students already members of the Army Reserve or National Guard may concurrently participate in ROTC and qualify for additional pay and benefits, to include tuition assistance.

Extracurricular Activities. Army ROTC cadets extend academic and laboratory associations into a variety of extracurricular ROTC activities. Among these are the Ranger Challenge, Army Color Guard, Cannon Crew, annual Military Ball, and many school service projects performed by the corps of cadets.

LDS Missions. Students, including scholarship recipients, who wish to serve a two-year LDS mission can do so most conveniently between their freshman and sophomore years. This allows students to be on campus during the spring of their sophomore year to facilitate their selection for the advanced course. Interruptions of the program at other times for a mission may be arranged by obtaining individual approval from the professor of military science.

Leadership Laboratory and Course Fee. Each course requires a corresponding leadership lab, which meets on Thursdays for three hours. The labs require physical activity, including: land navigation, mountaineering, rope bridging, marksmanship, and tactical training. Students are also expected to attend physical fitness training and one field training exercise per semester. A course fee of $40 is required of each participating student to cover cadet activity expenses.

Graduation Requirements in Wellness. Students in the Army ROTC Program may complete the Wellness requirements listed in the University Core Summary section of this catalog by participating in the leadership laboratory for eight semesters. Physical education credit may be received if the student enrolls in ExSc 143R.

Program of Instruction. The ROTC Leadership Excellence Program is designed to produce commissioned officers for the United States Army. It has been described as the best leadership program in the nation. Training is experiential and demands that students practice leadership skills while completing their baccalaureate degree in their chosen course of study. Ultimately, students become qualified to serve as commissioned officers in the Regular Army, National Guard, or Army Reserve. Upon graduation and follow-on training, these officers immediately become the leaders of soldiers

deployed abroad or at home in defense of the United States and her values. After graduation, it is possible for Reserve or Guard officers to fulfill their military obligation and pursue a civilian career simultaneously. Following the completion of service, BYU ROTC graduates often become effective leaders in their community, business, and church endeavors for the balance of their lives.

Program Requirements

1. The traditional Army ROTC Leadership Excellence Program extends over a four-year period compatible with normal progression through four years of college. It consists of two phases: a two-year basic course during the freshman and sophomore years and an advanced course designed for completion during the junior and senior years. Also included is a five-week Leadership Development and Assessment Course normally attended in the summer before the senior year. Students may receive academic credit for the first two years of ROTC by attending the month-long Leaders' Training Course, (LTC) during the summer before the start of the advanced course.

   Scholarship students and students wishing to participate in the advance course must pass the Army Physical Fitness Test with a score of 60 points in each event. See an Army ROTC faculty member for more information.

   Two-year program: Qualified veterans or students with placement credit for the basic course or LTC with requirements for the advanced course. Applicants for this two-year program may be upper-division or graduate students, provided a minimum of four semesters remain at BYU at the time of entry into the program. Students must complete a physical examination and other associated requirements. The professor of military science must approve any exceptions for those seeking to accelerate the advance course and earn an officer's commission in less than two years.

2. Non-scholarship freshman and sophomore students incur no military obligation. Upon entering the advanced course, students agree to enlist in the U.S. Army Reserve Control Group for a period of eight years; they are then sworn into the reserve and begin to receive the monthly $450 to $500 subsistence allowance.

3. Non-U.S. citizens may participate in the basic course provided they obtain approval from their consulate and the BYU international student division and their travel documents are in order. International students apply for enrollment on a case-by-case basis but cannot participate in the advanced course unless they are pending citizenship. They may not be commissioned as officers until they are U.S. citizens.

4. To receive a commission as a second lieutenant in the U.S. Army, students must earn a baccalaureate degree and complete the advanced course. Those who are in a five-year academic program, such as engineering, may complete their Army ROTC courses at any point before graduation.

5. Upon commissioning, the new second lieutenant incurs an obligation to the U.S. Army, which may be filled by serving on Active Duty, in the U.S. Army Reserve, National Guard, Individual Ready Reserve (IRR), or various combinations of the above.

6. The basic course comprises the following:
   Mil S 120, 121, 220, 221.

7. The advanced course comprises the following:
   Mil S 320, 321, 420, 421.

8. Professional Military Education (PME): Before being commissioned, each cadet must complete one of the following military history courses during their course of study at BYU:
   Hist 220, 221, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 398R.

Note: Courses not specified above may satisfy the requirement but must be approved by the professor of military science.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Military Science (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

MIL S 320 : Adaptive Team Leadership. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Adaptive leadership skills; demands of leadership in tactical and garrison situations. Cadets have multiple opportunities to lead one another and receive feedback on leadership abilities. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 321 : Leadership in Changing Environments. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Using intense real-world leadership situations to build skills in leading small units, decision-making, persuasion, and motivation when "under fire." Final preparation and evaluation prior to attendance at Leader Development and Assessment Course (LDAC). Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 420 : Developing Adaptive Leaders. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Developing proficiency in planning, executing, and assessing operations; functioning on a staff; and providing feedback to subordinates with situational real-world opportunities to assess risk, make decisions, and coach others. Emphasizes leadership ethics. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 421 : Leadership in a Complex World. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of leading military operations. Subjects include military law, principles of war, operations, training, and logistics. Presented in context of modern battlefield. Culminates with commission as an officer in the U.S. Army. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

Show all Military Science (Mil S) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Military Science (Army ROTC) (Mil S)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

MIL S 120 : Leadership and Personal Development. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Developing comprehension of Army leadership dimensions, focusing on critical thinking, time management, and fitness. Introduction to the corps of cadets; building courage and self-confidence. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 121 : Introduction to Tactical Leadership. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Leadership fundamentals; setting direction, problem solving, listening, presentation skills, and providing feedback. Integration into the corps of cadets through tactical field training. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

200-Level Courses

MIL S 220 : Innovative Team Leadership. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Creative leadership strategies and styles; team dynamics; leadership theory; the Army leadership framework. Includes basics of land navigation and squad tactics. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 221 : Foundations of Tactical Leadership. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Challenges of leading tactical teams in contemporary operations environment of the U.S. Army, focusing on Army Orders process, terrain analysis, and adaptive leadership. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

300-Level Courses

MIL S 320 : Adaptive Team Leadership. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Adaptive leadership skills; demands of leadership in tactical and garrison situations. Cadets have multiple opportunities to lead one another and receive feedback on leadership abilities. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 321 : Leadership in Changing Environments. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Using intense real-world leadership situations to build skills in leading small units, decision-making, persuasion, and motivation when "under fire." Final preparation and evaluation prior to attendance at Leader Development and Assessment Course (LDAC). Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 325R : Staff Organization and Operations. (1-2:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in Army Staff Operations. Various opportunities for leadership and organiztional experience. Lab included.

400-Level Courses

MIL S 420 : Developing Adaptive Leaders. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Developing proficiency in planning, executing, and assessing operations; functioning on a staff; and providing feedback to subordinates with situational real-world opportunities to assess risk, make decisions, and coach others. Emphasizes leadership ethics. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 421 : Leadership in a Complex World. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Must be contracted in ROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of leading military operations. Subjects include military law, principles of war, operations, training, and logistics. Presented in context of modern battlefield. Culminates with commission as an officer in the U.S. Army. Lab included.
NOTE: Fee.

MIL S 425R : Leadership in a Complex World. (2:3:16)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Current enrollment in AROTC program.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on fitness and tactical proficiency. Participation on University Ranger Challenge Team. Requires commitment and endurance. Provides insight into advanced Army professional training.

Back to Military Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Military Science Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Assistant Professor

Weisler, Gregory

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Military Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BBA, Prairie View A&M University, 1987
MA, Baylor University, 1994
MA, Emory University, 2004

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Microbiology and Molecular Biology

Brent L. Nielsen, Chair
775 WIDB, (801) 422-1102
Internet: http://www.mmbio.byu.edu

Department Advisement
Elaine Rotz
767 WIDB, (801) 422-4293

Life Sciences Student Services
379 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Microbiology and Molecular Biology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for clinical laboratory science.

The Discipline

The Microbiology and Molecular Biology Department offers degrees in microbiology, molecular biology, and clinical laboratory science. A wide range of courses may be incorporated into a program of study, including: ecology, genetics, immunology, microbial physiology, molecular biology, molecular evolution, parasitology, and pathogenesis.

Career Opportunities

Graduates are employed in a wide variety of positions in industry, hospitals, government agencies, and universities. Majors from this department are an excellent preprofessional course of study for those interested in medicine, dentistry, law, or business.

The following courses are recommended for those students interested in graduate and professional programs:

Chem 351, 352, 353, 481.
Math 119 or higher.
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
Stat 221.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Clinical Laboratory Science
BS in Microbiology
BS in Molecular Biology

Minors

Microbiology
Molecular Biology

Students should see their department advisor for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Microbiology
MS in Molecular Biology
PhD in Microbiology
PhD in Molecular Biology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Departmental Sections of Honors Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Selected departments offer designated honors sections of introductory courses that meet particular university core requirements as well as honors requirements. Dates and times are listed in the current class schedule, and courses are designated by the word *honors* in the title. Approved departmental honors courses include:

A HTG 100 : Honors American Heritage (3:3:0)
Honors American Heritage
ANTHR 101 : Honors Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
Honors Social/Cultural Anthropology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social /cultural anthropology.
ANTHR 110 : Honors Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Archaeology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.
ARTHC 111 : Honors Introduction to Art History. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Art History.
DESCRIPTION: Topical approach to art history and appreciation.
BIO 100 : Honors Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
Honors Principles of Biology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.
CHEM 111 : Honors Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
Honors Principles of Chemistry.
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.
CL CV 110 : Honors Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Illiad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
NOTE: All readings in English.
CL CV 201 : Honors Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
Honors Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to Renaissance.
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.
CL CV 202 : Honors Classical Tradition 2: Reformation to Modern. (3:3:0)
Honors Classical Tradition 2: Reformation to Modern.
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from the Reformation to the twentieth century, emphasizing the heritage of Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.
CL CV 241 : Honors Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
Honors Greek and Roman Mythology.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heros, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representatives in the visual arts.
CMLIT 201 : Honors Civilization: Literature 1. (3:3:0)
Honors Civilization: Literature 1.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from antiquity to early Italian Renaissance, emphasizing socioeconomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.
CMLIT 202 : Honors Civilization: Literature 2. (3:3:0)
Honors Civilization: Literature 2.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, emphasizing socioeconomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.
DANCE 260 : Honors Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Dance.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art form studied through lecture, reading, research, multimedia presentations, and practical movement experiences.
NOTE: No previous dance experience required.
ECON 110 : Honors Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
Honors Economic Principles and Problems.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
ENGL 150 : Honors Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
Honors Writing and Rhetoric.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.
ENGL 201 : Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 1. (3:3:0)
Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 1.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Clinical Laboratory Science (63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Students who want to practice clinical laboratory science/medical technology in diagnostic laboratories or pursue related options choose this degree. The program in clinical laboratory science is accredited by the National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (8410 West Bryn Mawr Avenue, Suite 670, Chicago, IL 60631, [773] 714-8880).

Admittance Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must complete the following courses before applying to the program:
   CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
   - NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

   MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
   - DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

   MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

   PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

2. Application deadlines are March 1 for fall semester admittance and October 1 for winter semester admittance.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following life sciences core requirements:
   MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
   - DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

   MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete the following chemistry courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

3. Complete the following department courses:

MMBIO 102 : Introduction to Clinical Laboratory Techniques. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Hospital laboratory techniques.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 392 : Hematology. (2.5:2.5:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Normal and abnormal hematology.

MMBIO 393 : Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2.5:2.5:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of bloodbanking and coagulation theory.

MMBIO 394 : Practical Hematology. (2:0:7)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 392 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 392; medical laboratory techniques in hematology.

MMBIO 395 : Practical Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2:0:7)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 393 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 393; medical laboratory techniques in immunohematology and coagulation theory.

MMBIO 407 : Clinical Microbiology. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Approaches to laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases.

MMBIO 417 : Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases. Laboratory included.

MMBIO 420 : Pathophysiology and Laboratory Diagnosis in Clinical Chemistry. (5:4:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory diagnosis of disorders involving the major systems of the human body.

MMBIO 421 : Laboratory Techniques in Clinical Chemistry and Diagnostic Molecular Biology. (4:0:14)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in MMBio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Medical laboratory techniques in urinalysis, clinical chemistry, and diagnostic molecular genetics.

MMBIO 491 : Concept Applications in Laboratory Medicine. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into clinical laboratory science program.
DESCRIPTION: Case presentations of various medical disorders.

4. Complete an internship experience. During one semester and one term, complete at least 2 hours from the following:
   MMBIO 496R : Clinical Experience. (1-9:0:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: MMBio 392, 393, 394, 395, 407, 417, 420, 421, 491.
   DESCRIPTION: Performing the full range of clinical laboratory tests in an affiliated clinical facility. A six-month internship experience.

5. Complete an exit interview.

6. Pass the BYU comprehensive exam offered during the clinical experience.

Recommended Courses

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBIO) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Microbiology (61–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is the preferred degree for microbiology majors who desire an advanced degree (master's or doctorate) in microbiology.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

MMBIO 151 : Introduction to Microbiology. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic biology emphasizing cell structure, function, and metabolism. Introduction to bacterial genetics, microbial diversity, and microbial ecology.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

2. Complete the following chemistry courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su

PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

3. Complete four courses from the following (at least two of which must have a lab component):

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 464 : Bacterial Pathogenesis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of bacterial pathogenesis, emphasizing the molecular interactions of

medically important bacteria and their hosts.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

Note: MMBio 463 and 465 can be taken with or without the MMBio 467 or 466 labs, respectively.

4. Complete one of the following options:
Either
PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

Or
STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

5. Complete at least 10 hours from the following:
BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

MMBIO 390R : Readings in Molecular Biology. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360.
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings in molecular biology.

MMBIO 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:40)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

MMBIO 407 : Clinical Microbiology. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Approaches to laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases.

MMBIO 417 : Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases. Laboratory included.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

MMBIO 466 : Virology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 465 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises illustrating in vitro behavior of selected viruses. Developing laboratory skills for virus studies.

MMBIO 467 : Immunology Lab. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 463 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises in advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research.

MMBIO 554 : Molecular Virology. (2:2.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 354, 454; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular mechanisms of virus architecture, attachment and entry pathways, replication strategies, oncogenesis, evolution, and mechanisms of pathogenesis.

NDFS 361 : Food Microbiology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221, 222; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenic and spoilage microorganisms in foods and their control. Beneficial microorganisms in food systems. Influence of the food system on growth and survival of microorganisms.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 514 : Soil Microbiology. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

or courses not chosen under item 4 above:

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 464 : Bacterial Pathogenesis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of bacterial pathogenesis, emphasizing the molecular interactions of medically important bacteria and their hosts.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

Note: Only 3 hours of MMBio 399R and 494R combined will count toward major hours.

6. Pass the Biology Major Field Exam.
7. Complete an exit interview.

Recommended Courses

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

or
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

Note: Students desiring a minor in chemistry must take Chem 223 and 2 hours of Chem 353.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBIO) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from antiquity through the early Italian Renaissance, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

ENGL 202 : Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 2. (3:3:0)
Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 2.
OFFERED: W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 201.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

ENGL 311 : Honors Writing About the Arts and Humanities. (3:3:0)
Honors Writing About the Arts and Humanities.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing for both academic and mass audiences about the functions, meanings, values, and qualities of art and the humanities. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 312 : Honors Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors Persuasive Writing.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 315 : Honors Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
Honors Writing in the Social Sciences.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 316 : Honors Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
Honors Technical Communication.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

EXSC 349 : Honors Body, Mind, Spirit. (3:3:0)
Honors Body, Mind, Spirit.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Sacredness of the body and its meaningfulness to the whole being. Comparative approach utilizing ideas fom the restored gospel and Western and Eastern philosophy (nature of being).

FREN 202 : Honors Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
Honors Intermediate French, Part 2.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

GEOG 120 : Honors Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
Honors Geography and World Affairs.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

GEOL 101 : Honors Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
Honors Introduction to Geology.

GERM 330 : Honors Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
Honors Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 340 : Honors: Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
Honors: Writing About Literature.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

HEB 133 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 301.

HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

HIST 201 : Honors World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
Honors World Civilization to 1500.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 202 : Honors World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
Honors World Civilization from 1500.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Molecular Biology (64–68 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete the following chemistry courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.

NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

3. Complete the following molecular biology courses:

MMBIO 265 : (MMBio-Bio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

MMBIO 390R : Readings in Molecular Biology. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360.
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings in molecular biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

MMBIO 490R : Molecular Biology Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 441; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of current literature and research in molecular biology.

4. Complete two registrations of the following (not same semester or term) for a total of 3 hours as approved by mentor:

MMBIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research.

5. Complete one of the following options:

Either

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

Or

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

6. Complete the following:

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

7. Complete at least 10 hours (one of which must include a lab) from the following:

BIO 465† : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 468 : Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462; 481 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, equilibria, transport properties, kinetics, spectroscopic applications, computational methods, structural biochemistry.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems,

signal transduction.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584† : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586† : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

MMBIO 151† : Introduction to Microbiology. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic biology emphasizing cell structure, function, and metabolism. Introduction to bacterial genetics, microbial diversity, and microbial ecology.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:40)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 460† : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 463† : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

MMBIO 466† : Virology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 465 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises illustrating in vitro behavior of selected viruses. Developing laboratory skills for virus studies.

MMBIO 467† : Immunology Lab. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 463 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises in advanced concepts of immunological processes.

PDBIO 482† : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PDBIO 582† : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

PWS 525 : Plant Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and genetic interactions in plant development.

PWS 580† : Plant Transformation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and methods of plant transformation.

PWS 586 : Plant Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360, PWS 340, 440; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular aspects of the structural and functional characteristics of plant cells, emphasizing characteristics of plant cells setting them apart from animal cells.

Note 1: Only 3 hours of MMBio 399R will count toward major hours.
Note 2: † indicates a course with a lab included.

8. Pass the Biology Major Field Exam.
9. Complete an exit interview.

Recommended Courses

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu,
Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBIO) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Microbiology (14–16 hours, plus prerequisites in coupled major)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

MMBIO 151 : Introduction to Microbiology. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic biology emphasizing cell structure, function, and metabolism. Introduction to bacterial genetics, microbial diversity, and microbial ecology.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

2. Complete two courses from the following (at least one must have a lab component):

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 464 : Bacterial Pathogenesis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of bacterial pathogenesis, emphasizing the molecular interactions of medically important bacteria and their hosts.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

Show all Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBIO) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Molecular Biology (11 hours, plus prerequisites in coupled major)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

MMBIO 265 : (MMBio-Bio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

2. Complete at least 3 hours from the following:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 465 : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 468 : Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462; 481 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, equilibria, transport properties, kinetics, spectroscopic applications, computational methods, structural biochemistry.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

MMBIO 151 : Introduction to Microbiology. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic biology emphasizing cell structure, function, and metabolism. Introduction to bacterial genetics, microbial diversity, and microbial ecology.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:40)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)

HUM 201 : Honors Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
Honors Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

HUM 202 : Honors Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
Honors Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

HUM 261 : Honors American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0)
Honors American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876.
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

HUM 262 : Honors American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0)
Honors American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

LATIN 111 : Honors Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
Honors Beginning Latin Accelerated.
DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

MATH 112 : Honors Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
Honors Calculus 1.
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.

MATH 113 : Honors Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
Honors Calculus 2.
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.

M COM 320 : Honors Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
Honors Communication in Organizational Settings.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

MMBIO 221 : Honors General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
Honors General Microbiology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MUSIC 101 : Honors Introduction to Music. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Music.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: nonmajor music status.
DESCRIPTION: Designed to aid nonmusic majors in developing skills needed for listening to music creatively. Emphasis on masterworks of Western music from major style periods.

MUSIC 201 : Honors Civilization: Music 1. (3:3:0)
Honors Civilization: Music 1.
OFFERED: F, Sp, or Su on demand
PREREQUISITE: Ability to read musical notation.
DESCRIPTION: History of civilization from Greek antiquity through the seventeenth century, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

MUSIC 202 : Honors Civilization: Music 2. (3:3:0)
Honors Civilization: Music 2.
OFFERED: W, Sp, or Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Ability to read musical notation.
DESCRIPTION: History of civilization from the eighteenth century through the present day, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience, examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PDBIO 120 : Honors Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
Honors Science of Biology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PHIL 110 : Honors Introduction to Philosophy. (3:3:0)
Honors Introduction to Philosophy.
DESCRIPTION: Articulating, assessing, and defending fundamental positions on topics such as reason, knowledge, science, education, ethics, politics, and religion.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

PHIL 150 : Honors Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors Reasoning and Writing.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

PHIL 201 : Honors History of Philosophy 1. (3:3:0)
Honors History of Philosophy 1.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

MMBIO 466 : Virology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 465 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises illustrating in vitro behavior of selected viruses. Developing laboratory skills for virus studies.

MMBIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PDBIO 582 : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

PWS 525 : Plant Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and genetic interactions in plant development.

PWS 580 : Plant Transformation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and methods of plant transformation.

PWS 586 : Plant Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360, PWS 340, 440; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular aspects of the structural and functional characteristics of plant cells, emphasizing characteristics of plant cells setting them apart from animal cells.

Note: Be aware of prerequisites for the above courses (usually filled in a coupled major).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBIO) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Microbiology and Molecular Biology (MMBio)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

MMBIO 102 : Introduction to Clinical Laboratory Techniques. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Hospital laboratory techniques.

MMBIO 151 : Introduction to Microbiology. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic biology emphasizing cell structure, function, and metabolism. Introduction to bacterial genetics, microbial diversity, and microbial ecology.

200-Level Courses

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

: Honors General Microbiology.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

MMBIO 265 : (MMBio-Bio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

300-Level Courses

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 362R : Survey of Careers in Microbiology. (1:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures and field trips surveying career choices.

MMBIO 390R : Readings in Molecular Biology. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360.
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings in molecular biology.

MMBIO 392 : Hematology. (2.5:2.5:1)
OFFERED: W

MMBIO 393 : Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2.5:2.5:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of bloodbanking and coagulation theory.

MMBIO 394 : Practical Hematology. (2:0:7)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 392 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 392; medical laboratory techniques in hematology.

MMBIO 395 : Practical Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2:0:7)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 393 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 393; medical laboratory techniques in immunohematology and coagulation theory.

MMBIO 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:40)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

400-Level Courses

MMBIO 407 : Clinical Microbiology. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Approaches to laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases.

MMBIO 417 : Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases. Laboratory included.

MMBIO 420 : Pathophysiology and Laboratory Diagnosis in Clinical Chemistry. (5:4:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory diagnosis of disorders involving the major systems of the human body.

MMBIO 421 : Laboratory Techniques in Clinical Chemistry and Diagnostic Molecular Biology. (4:0:14)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in MMBio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Medical laboratory techniques in urinalysis, clinical chemistry, and diagnostic molecular genetics.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 464 : Bacterial Pathogenesis. (4:3:3)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of bacterial pathogenesis, emphasizing the molecular interactions of medically important bacteria and their hosts.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

MMBIO 466 : Virology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 465 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises illustrating in vitro behavior of selected viruses. Developing laboratory skills for virus studies.

MMBIO 467 : Immunology Lab. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 463 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises in advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 490R : Molecular Biology Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 441; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of current literature and research in molecular biology.

MMBIO 491 : Concept Applications in Laboratory Medicine. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into clinical laboratory science program.
DESCRIPTION: Case presentations of various medical disorders.

MMBIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research.

MMBIO 496R : Clinical Experience. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 392, 393, 394, 395, 407, 417, 420, 421, 491.
DESCRIPTION: Performing the full range of clinical laboratory tests in an affiliated clinical facility. A six-month internship experience.

MMBIO 499R : Senior Honors Thesis. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Topic to be cleared with Honors Program and Department of Microbiology and Molecular Biology.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

MMBIO 518 : Select Pathogens. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 453 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current literature in special pathogens.

MMBIO 551R : Current Topics in Microbiology and Molecular Biology. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from current literature on a specific topic; student presentations and discussion.

: Cell Biology
: Evolution.
: Gene Expression.
: Immunology.
: Microbial Ecology.
: Microbial Genetics.
: Microbial Physiology.
: Parasitology.
: Pathogenic Microbiology.
: Virology.

MMBIO 554 : Molecular Virology. (2:2.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 354, 454; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular mechanisms of virus architecture, attachment and entry pathways, replication strategies, oncogenesis, evolution, and mechanisms of pathogenesis.

MMBIO 557 : Genes and Cancer. (2:2.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular basis of human cancers, emphasizing oncogenes, tumor suppressor genes, chromosomal instability, hereditary cancers, chemical and physical carcinogens, and viral carcinogenesis.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Microbiology and Molecular Biology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Microbiology and Molecular Biology Faculty

Professors

Anderson, Shauna Christine

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1965
BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1973
PhD, University of Washington, 1984

Bradshaw, William S

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Harvard University, 1963
PhD, University of Illinios, Urbana, 1968

Harker, Alan Reed

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1976
PhD, University of Utah, 1982

Johnson, F Brent

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MS, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1970

Murray, Byron Kerr

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1964
BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MS, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1971

Nielsen, Brent Lynn

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, Oregon State University, 1985

O'Neill, Kim L

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BSc, University Of Ulster, Northern Ireland, 1980
DPhil, University of Ulster, Northern Ireland, 1986

Robison, Richard A

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1988

Associate Professors

Breakwell, Donald P

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Purdue University, 1988
PhD, Purdue University, 1992

Bridgewater, Laura Clarke

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, George Washington University, 1995

McCleary, William

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of California, Berkley, 1990

Assistant Professors

Adams, Byron James

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, University of Nebraska, 1998

Burnett, Sandra H.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Moledular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1992
MS, Utah State University, 1993
PhD, University of Kentucky, 2000

Erickson, David L.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Calgary, 2003

Evans, Richard Paul

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Medical College of Virginia, 1983
BS, Brigham Young University, 1995

Griffitts, Joel Shelby

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Stanford University, 1999
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 2004

Lin, Chin-Yo

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Harvard University, 2001

Wilson, Eric

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1990
MS, Utah State University, 1994
PhD, Montana State University, 2000

Teaching Professor

Cockayne, Susan

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Microbiology and Molecular Biology
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1972
MS, University of Utah, 1979
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1990

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Music

Dale E. Monson, Director
C-550 HFAC, (801) 422-3083
www.music.byu.edu/

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, (801) 422-3777
www.cfac.byu.edu/

Admission to Degree Program

Enrollment in the School of Music's degree programs is limited. Prospective majors must pass an audition and aural skills exam. Please consult the General Information section below and visit the college advisement center for details.

The Discipline

The School of Music respects and celebrates the historic position of music at the heart of a liberal education and the gospel. From ancient times, music has proven its power to enlighten the understanding, strengthen the spirit, and shape character. With this power music civilizes and invigorates any society in which it is cultivated.

In the School of Music the student learns self-discipline through rigorous practice in pursuit of accurate and passionate performance. The student also learns cooperation and mutual sensitivity through ensemble work. In the study of music theory and history, the student comes to hear and appreciate the grammar and syntax of various musical languages, to distinguish nuances of style, and to grasp the ways in which styles intertwine with ideas.

Students learn in a variety of situations: private lessons, small seminars, multimedia labs, and large lectures. These are offered with a holistic approach that embraces academic rigor, intuitive insight, physical grace, and spiritual eloquence.

Career Opportunities

The School of Music leads its students toward careers in performance, studio teaching, music education, creating and managing music projects for the media, recording and sound technology, arts management, music journalism, composition, music therapy, and other music-related professions. Because the music curriculum is rigorous, it is also an excellent pre-professional course of study for those interested in fields as diverse as law, business, library science, or medicine. Whatever degrees one obtains, however, an education in music pertains not only to earning a living through the art but also using the art to enhance one's satisfaction and joy in living.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BA in Music
- BM in Jazz Studies
- BM in Media Music Studies
- BM in Music Composition
- BM in Music Education
  - Emphases:
    - K-12 Choral
    - K-12 Instrumental
    - Elementary Music Specialist
- BM in Music Performance
  - Emphases:
    - Brass
    - Combined Piano and Organ
    - Organ
    - Percussion
    - Piano
    - String
    - Vocal
    - Woodwind
- BM in Sound Recording Technology

Minor
- Music

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Music
MM in Music

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. Admission applications to the School of Music must be received by January 15.
2. All entering students (including transfer students) must pass a performance audition on their major instrument (or voice). Live auditions are held on the last Saturday of January. Students who cannot attend the live audition must submit an audio or VHS videotape for consideration; these tapes must be received by January 15. See the School of Music office (C-550 HFAC) for further details regarding the audition process and requirements, or call (801) 422-3083.
3. All entering students must also pass an aural skills examination. They may take this examination in one of three ways: (1) in a group, at admissions auditions on the last Saturday of January; (2) individually, at the BYU Testing Center (call [801] 422-6129 to schedule times), or (3) individually by proctor at other locations (call the School of Music office to arrange). Students may take the exam as many times as desired to improve their score. (Students who receive a score of 4 or 5 on the aural part of the AP music exam are exempt from this test.)
4. All students who do not have a keyboard emphasis (piano or organ) must complete the piano proficiency requirement by the end of the sophomore year. Students can fulfill this requirement by (1) taking one or both of Music 221, 222, or by (2) taking the Piano Proficiency Exam. (Call the School of Music for more details.)
5. Upon acceptance as a music major, each student must meet with their academic advisor in the college advisement center.
6. Students who pass either part of the AP Music Test with at least a score of 4 should check with the college advisement center before registering for core courses.
7. All major performance instruction must be in the same instrument (or voice).
8. All students registered in Music 161, 250R, 260R, 360R, or 460R must complete an examination before a faculty jury on their major instrument (or voice) near the end of each semester of performance study. (With the approval of the faculty, students may elect to substitute a juried public recital for a jury examination.) Students wanting to enter Music 360R or 460R (normally after the sophomore year) must first be granted approval to do so by a faculty jury.
9. All students must fulfill the ensemble requirements of their individual degree programs as described below. Ensemble requirements are filled through a mixture of assigned "Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles" (Music 311R [University Chorale] if placed by audition, 312R [Men's Chorus], 313R [Women's Chorus], 314R [Concert Choir], 315R [University Singers], 325R [Symphonic Band], 326R [Wind Symphony], 337R [Symphony Orchestra], and 338R [Philharmonic Orchestra]) and "Category 2: Other Ensembles Approved for the Major," as allowed in each degree program. Only one approved large ensemble per semester may count toward this requirement, and this ensemble assignment is determined by the student's major instrumental teacher or by choral audition, not by the student. The total ensemble requirement should be completed in consecutive semesters of enrollment beginning the freshman year. Students may not enroll in more than two conducted or directed ensembles per semester.
10. All transfer students must have their previous university work in music evaluated by the appropriate BYU School of Music faculty members to determine what credits will be accepted in the transfer (see the college advisement center for referrals). We subscribe to the policy of the National Association of Schools of Music and carry no obligation to accept upper-division music credits from other member schools.
11. If any course the School of Music is failed twice, the student is dropped from the major.
12. Students temporarily leaving the School of Music or private studio instruction (for a mission, Study Abroad, etc.) for one or more semesters before their major requirement is completed are required to file a deferment form with the School of Music office (C-550 HFAC). Failure to do so may result in the loss of any music scholarship as well as private studio instruction in the semester or two following the student's return to BYU.
13. It is expected that School of Music students attend at least eight concerts and two School of Music-sponsored lectures each semester, in the process seeking greater exposure to a more diverse variety of music literature and thought. For more information see the "Undergraduate Handbook" published by the School of Music.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

PHIL 202 : Honors History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
Honors History of Philosophy 2.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
PHIL 210 : Honors Science and Civilization 1. (3:3:0)
Honors Science and Civilization 1.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization from Greek antiquity to sciencific revolution; methods in early science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
PHIL 211 : Honors Science and Civilization 2. (3:3:0)
Honors Science and Civilization 2.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 210.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization from scientific revolution to present; concepts and methods in modern science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
PHIL 300 : Honors Philosophical Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors Philosophical Writing.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 150, 205; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Writing philosophical papers about philosophical texts or problems. Research methods in philosophy. Library research paper.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.
PHIL 423 : (Phil-Phscs314) Honors History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
(Phil-Phscs314) Honors History and Philosophy of Science.
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.
PHY S 100 : Honors Physical Science. (3:3:ARR)
Honors Physical Science.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual lectures and demonstrations of the most significant and universal laws and models describing the physical world by faculty from Physics and Astronomy, Chemistry and Biochemistry, and Geology departments.
NOTE: Satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.
PHSCS 127 : Honors Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
Honors Descriptive Astronomy.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.
PL SC 110 : Honors American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Honors American Government and Politics.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.
NOTE: Independent Study also.
PL SC 150 : Honors Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Honors Comparative Government and Politics.
DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.
PL SC 201 : Honors Western Political Heritage 1. (3:3:0)
Honors Western Political Heritage 1.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of political philosophy and scriptures; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
PL SC 202 : Honors Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0)
Honors Western Political Heritage 2.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
PSYCH 111 : Honors General Psychology. (3:3:0)
Honors General Psychology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.
SFL 160 : Honors: Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
Honors: Introduction to Family Processes.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
SOC 111 : Honors Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
Honors Introductory Sociology.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Social group influcence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.
SOC 112 : Honors Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
Honors Current Social Problems.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.
STAT 221 : Honors Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
Honors Principles of Statistics.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

Religious Education:

REL A 121 : Honors The Book of Mormon. (2:2:0)
Honors The Book of Mormon.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Narrative, doctrines, and precepts of the Book of Mormon. Covers 1 Nephi through Alma 29.
NOTE: *Returned missionaries must enroll in sections designated specifically for returned missionaries.*
REL A 122 : Honors The Book of Mormon. (2:2:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Music (57–76 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The bachelor of arts degree offers a broad liberal arts education with a concentration in music. It also provides excellent preparation for a variety of professional music careers or graduate work in theory or musicology.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center to obtain information concerning official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.

The

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
      DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
      NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

      : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
      : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Cello.
      : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
      : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
      : Performance Instruction: Flute.
      : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
      : Performance Instruction: Harp.
      : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
      : Performance Instruction: Horn.
      : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
      : Performance Instruction: Organ.
      : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Piano.
      : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
      : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
      : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
      : Performance Instruction: Strings.
      : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
      : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
      : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
      : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
      : Performance Instruction: Viola.
      : Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(8 hours).

b. Vocalists complete the following:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(6 hours).

4. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for four semesters, including 2-3 hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and 1-2 hours from the following Category 2 ensembles:

MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 323R : Marching Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 332R : Show Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Vocal Jazz)
MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Jazz Ensemble)
MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

MUSIC 339R : Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Brass Choir.
: Brass Ensemble.
: Trombone Choir.

MUSIC 342R : Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 344R : Keyboard in Ensemble. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Music 260R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Accompanying and ensemble performance.

MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

MUSIC 441R : New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

5. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

6. Complete 3–20 prerequisite hours in foreign language studies as required to meet the GE Languages of Learning requirement. (Prerequisite courses may be waived for those students who have equivalent language experience.) ASL may not be used.

7. Complete one course from a GE Arts or Letters requirement outside music (in addition to the GE requirement) or one humanities course approved by faculty advisor.

8. Complete two of the following music elective courses:
MUSIC 203 : World Music Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional music of selected cultures of Asia, Oceania, Africa, Europe, and the Americas, including both folk and art music traditions.

MUSIC 204 : History of Jazz. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Fostering an understanding and appreciation of jazz, America's unique contribution to the world's music.

MUSIC 206 : Survey of Latin American Music. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: A historical survey of folk music and art music indigenous to countries of the Caribbean and Central and South America.

MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

MUSIC 500 : Musical Research Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.

MUSIC 503 : Aesthetics. (3:3:0)
MUSIC 581 : Twentieth-Century Orchestration. (3:3:0)
MUSIC 583 : Sixteenth-Century Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
MUSIC 595 : Score Analysis. (2:2:0)
MUSIC 596 : Schenker Analysis. (3:3:0)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Jazz Studies (79 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The bachelor of music degree in jazz studies prepares the student with a broadbased music preparation and specialized course work leading to graduate studies in jazz or a career in jazz-related performing, arranging, or studio teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.

The

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
      DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
      NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

      : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
      : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Cello.
      : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
      : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
      : Performance Instruction: Flute.
      : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
      : Performance Instruction: Harp.
      : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
      : Performance Instruction: Horn.
      : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
      : Performance Instruction: Organ.
      : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Piano.
      : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
      : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
      : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
      : Performance Instruction: Strings.
      : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
      : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
      : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
      : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
      : Performance Instruction: Viola.
      : Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(8 hours).

b. Vocalists complete the following:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(6 hours).

4. Complete four hours of the following:

MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

5. Present two recitals: Music 249R should be the culmination to Music 260R, and Music 349R should be taken concurrently with the second semester of Music 360R. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

6. Complete at least one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for four semesters.

7. Complete four hours of the following:

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

(up to one semester).

8. Complete four semesters of the following:
MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

9. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

10. Complete the following:
MUSIC 186 : Songwriting 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Basic music reading and keyboard skills.
DESCRIPTION: Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

MUSIC 284 : Jazz Improvisation 1. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation: theory and technique.

MUSIC 384 : Jazz Improvisation 2. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 284 or director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate improvisation: theory and technique.

MUSIC 391 : Jazz Keyboard. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 222, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.

Honors The Book of Mormon.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Narrative, doctrines, and precepts of the Book of Mormon. Covers Alma 30 through Moroni 10.
NOTE: *Returned missionaries must enroll in sections designated specifically for returned missionaries.*

REL A 211 : Honors: The New Testament. (2:2:0)
Honors: The New Testament.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the life and teachings of Jesus Christ set forth in the four Gospels.

REL A 212 : Honors: The New Testament. (2:2:0)
Honors: The New Testament.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the acts of the Apostles through the Revelation of John.

REL A 301 : Honors: The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Old Testament.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel..

REL A 302 : Honors: The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Old Testament.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers 1 Kings through Malachi.

REL A 304 : Honors: Writings of Isaiah. (2:2:0)
Honors: Writings of Isaiah.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Teachings and prophecies of Isaiah in light of their historical context and relevance to latter-day people.

REL A 327 : Honors: The Pearl of Great Price. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Pearl of Great Price.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background and doctrines of the Pearl of Great Price.

REL A 392R : Honors: Special Studies in Religion: Ancient Scripture. (.5-3:ARR:0)
Honors: Special Studies in Religion: Ancient Scripture.
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

REL C 130 : Honors Missionary Preparation. (2:2:0)
Honors Missionary Preparation.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Focuses upon the purpose, skills, and doctrines of missionary work and prepares prospective missionaries for a more meaningful MTC and mission experience.
NOTE: Recommended for all prospective missionaries. This class may not be taken or retaken by returned missionaries.

REL C 234 : Honors: LDS Marriage and Family. (2:2:0)
Honors: LDS Marriage and Family.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: LDS doctrines and principles of marriage and family.

REL C 261 : Honors Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
Honors Introduction to Family History (Genealogy).
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.

REL C 324 : Honors: The Doctrine and Covenants. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Doctrine and Covenants.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Origin, content, and teachings of the Doctrine and Covenants. Covers Sections 1 through 76.

REL C 325 : Honors: The Doctrine and Covenants. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Doctrine and Covenants.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Origin, content, and teachings of the Doctrine and Covenants. Covers Sections 77 through Official Declaration 2.

REL C 333 : Honors: The Living Prophets. (2:2:0)
Honors: The Living Prophets.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Doctrines, administration, backgrounds, and current teachings of the living prophets, seers, and revelators.

REL C 341 : Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1805 to 1844. (2:2:0)
Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1805 to 1844.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the birth of Joseph Smith to his martyrdom.

REL C 342 : Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1845 to 1900. (2:2:0)
Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1845 to 1900.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the martyrdom of Joseph Smith through the administration of Lorenzo Snow.

REL C 343 : Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1901 to the Present. (2:2:0)
Honors Latter-day Saint History, 1901 to the Present.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the administration of Joseph F. Smith to the present.

REL C 344 : Honors Latter-day Saint History: The International Church. (2:2:0)
Honors Latter-day Saint History: The International Church.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from 1830 to the present in Britain, Europe, the Pacific, Asia, Latin America, Africa, the Near East, and other areas.

REL C 351 : Honors Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel. (3:3:0)
Honors Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of non-Christian religions in light of the restored gospel.

REL C 355 : Honors Judaism and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
Honors Judaism and the Gospel.

DESCRIPTION: Lead sheets, chord voicings, and other aspects of jazz performance practice.

MUSIC 394 : Jazz Styles and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth experience in recognizing and differentiating jazz styles, including analyzing and transcribing solo and ensemble jazz materials.

MUSIC 468 : Jazz Pedagogy. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F and on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and teaching jazz in the secondary school. Designed for the music educator.

MUSIC 485 : Jazz Arranging and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 295.
DESCRIPTION: Developing concepts and skills related to the orchestration, arranging, and composition of jazz and related contemporary styles of music.

11. Complete five hours of music electives. Music 203, 210R (finale section), and 286 are recommended. See faculty advisor.

Recommended Courses

The following are recommended jazz-related GE courses:

MUSIC 204 : History of Jazz. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Fostering an understanding and appreciation of jazz, America's unique contribution to the world's music.

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Media Music Studies (75 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

A major in media music studies prepares the student for music industry opportunities in creating and managing music for the media (radio, TV, records, film). The program combines rigorous grounding in traditional repertoires with preprofessional course work and project experience in current industry models and musical styles.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
      DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
      NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

      : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
      : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Cello.
      : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
      : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
      : Performance Instruction: Flute.
      : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
      : Performance Instruction: Harp.
      : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
      : Performance Instruction: Horn.
      : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
      : Performance Instruction: Organ.
      : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Piano.
      : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
      : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
      : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
      : Performance Instruction: Strings.
      : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
      : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
      : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
      : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
      : Performance Instruction: Viola.

: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(8 hours).

b. Vocalists complete the following:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(6 hours).

4. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for four semesters, including 2-3 hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and 1-2 hours from the following Category 2 ensembles:

MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 323R : Marching Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 332R : Show Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Vocal Jazz)
MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Jazz Ensemble)
MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

MUSIC 339R : Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Brass Choir.
: Brass Ensemble.
: Trombone Choir.

MUSIC 342R : Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 344R : Keyboard in Ensemble. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 260R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Accompanying and ensemble performance.

MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

MUSIC 441R : New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

5. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

6. Complete the following specialized courses:
MUSIC 186 : Songwriting 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Basic music reading and keyboard skills.
DESCRIPTION: Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

MUSIC 286 : Introduction to the Music Business. (2:2:)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.

DESCRIPTION: The music business and its models. Guided research topics for all musicians.

MUSIC 386R : Songwriting 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; Music 186.
DESCRIPTION: Projects in advanced songwriting.

MUSIC 389 : Projects in Music for Media. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music major status, Music 186; 295 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory projects in scoring for broadcast media, publication, and studio recording.

7. Present a juried recital (Music 349R) during the junior year.

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Consultation with the division coordinator is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

8. Complete four hours of the following:
MUSIC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Internship or externship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

9. Complete eight hours from the following:
MUSIC 188 : Composition 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 195 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to principles of recent art music; composition and performance of student works for one to five instruments.

MUSIC 251 : Audio: Basic Principles 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Basic recording studio procedures and principles. Foundation course for major in sound recording technology.

MUSIC 284 : Jazz Improvisation 1. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation: theory and technique.

MUSIC 287 : Electronic Music Composition. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 188 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to composition with digital audio and related media.

MUSIC 351 : Audio Applications 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 251, 256, 257, Math 110, Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

MUSIC 352 : Audio Applications 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 351.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

MUSIC 355R : Recording Workshop. (1:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 251 or 257.
DESCRIPTION: Studio projects in multitrack recording for records, broadcast, film, and television.

: Digital Projects 1.
: Digital Projects 2.
: System Design Projects.

MUSIC 391 : Jazz Keyboard. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 222, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Lead sheets, chord voicings, and other aspects of jazz performance practice.

MUSIC 489 : Film Scoring. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 389; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to techniques and technology of film scoring.

TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

Note: Music 251, 355R, 489, and TMA 102 are strongly recommended.

10. Complete two hours from one of the following preprofessional instruction:
MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction: Songwriting. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction: Songwriting.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.
MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

11. Complete six hours from the following:
MUSIC 203 : World Music Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional music of selected cultures of Asia, Oceania, Africa, Europe, and the Americas, including both folk and art music traditions.

MUSIC 204 : History of Jazz. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Fostering an understanding and appreciation of jazz, America's unique contribution to the world's music.

MUSIC 210R : Topics in Music. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

(finale section)
MUSIC 288 : Composition 2. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 287.
DESCRIPTION: Invention and exploration of sound, control of multivoiced textures and larger forms, and recent art music.

MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 482 : Choral Arranging. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Study of published choral arrangements, as well as techniques for adapting and arranging for choirs.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

MUSIC 485 : Jazz Arranging and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 295.
DESCRIPTION: Developing concepts and skills related to the orchestration, arranging, and composition of jazz and related contemporary styles of music.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Composition (78 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BM in composition degree program teaches young composers to write with modern and experimental music vocabularies as well as historic vocabularies, write for diverse color combinations (including orchestral and electroacoustic), and recruit and rehearse players to perform their music.

The music composition major prepares the student for graduate study in composition and theory or may lead to a professional career in composing, arranging, or related fields.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Judaism in light of the restored gospel.

REL C 356 : Honors Islam and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
Honors Islam and the Gospel.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Islam in light of the restored gospel.

REL C 393R : Honors: Special Studies in Religion: Church History and Doctrine. (.5-3:ARR:0)
Honors: Special Studies in Religion: Church History and Doctrine.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

REL C 431 : Honors Doctrines of the Gospel. (2:2:0)
Honors Doctrines of the Gospel.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints as taught in the scriptures and by latter-day prophets. Intended as a capstone experience to integrate doctrines and principles of the plan of salvation.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

Students should consult the departmental listings in this catalog, the current class schedule, and the Honors Program Course Guide (http://honors.byu.edu) for further details about these courses.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

The

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
      DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
      NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

      : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
      : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Cello.
      : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
      : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
      : Performance Instruction: Flute.
      : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
      : Performance Instruction: Harp.
      : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
      : Performance Instruction: Horn.
      : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
      : Performance Instruction: Organ.
      : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Piano.
      : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
      : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
      : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
      : Performance Instruction: Strings.
      : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
      : Performance Instruction: Trombone.

: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(8 hours).

b. Vocalists complete the following:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(6 hours).

4. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for four semesters, including 2-3 hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and 1-2 hours from the following Category 2 ensembles:

MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 323R : Marching Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 332R : Show Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Vocal Jazz)
MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Jazz Ensemble)
MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

MUSIC 339R : Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Brass Choir.
: Brass Ensemble.
: Trombone Choir.

MUSIC 342R : Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 344R : Keyboard In Ensemble. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 260R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Accompanying and ensemble performance.

MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

MUSIC 441R : New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

5. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

6. Complete the following lower-division composition courses:

MUSIC 188 : Composition 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 195 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to principles of recent art music; composition and performance of student works for one to five instruments.

MUSIC 287 : Electronic Music Composition. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 188 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to composition with digital audio and related media.

MUSIC 288 : Composition 2. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 287.
DESCRIPTION: Invention and exploration of sound, control of multivoiced textures and larger forms, and recent art music.

7. Complete eight hours of the following upper-division composition seminar:
MUSIC 387R : Composition 3. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 222, 288, 294, 296, 298, and junior-level screening.
DESCRIPTION: Composition lessons and seminars in principles and techniques of recent art music.

8. Complete the following:
MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

MUSIC 581 : Twentieth-Century Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 481.
DESCRIPTION: New techniques for standard and new instruments; analysis and listening.

MUSIC 583 : Sixteenth-Century Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 483.
DESCRIPTION: Strict modal counterpoint in sixteenth- century style (Palestrina); includes species, text setting, and motet.

9. Present a juried composition recital (Music 449R) during the senior year.

Recital: Enroll in 449R (1 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

10. After consulting with faculty advisor, complete 4 hours of music electives.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis (87 hours, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

A degree in music education prepares the student for K-12 licensure as a public school music teacher with a choral emphasis. The degree program is a composite of music and education. Graduates may obtain a teaching position, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as professional preparation for other fields of endeavor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center and enroll in Music 176 winter semester or summer term. This course is prerequisite to official acceptance into music education.
2. Proficiency requirements: All professional education courses (below) and Music 260R, 262, 263, and 363 credits **must be completed before student teaching** (Sc Ed 476R). Twenty minutes of solo performance time and ten minutes of chamber music performance time are required, which may be accomplished through master classes, recitals, juries, or in-class performances in Sc Ed 276R and 476R. Students opting for a juried recital must register for Music 349R.
3. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

4. Complete the following:
MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

5. Complete six hours of the following in voice (students must be enrolled in 250R or 260R each semester in residence up to six semesters):
MUSIC 250R : Performance Study: Voice. (.5-1:0.5:0)
Performance Study: Voice.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status (K-12 Choral Emphas or Elementary Music Specialist Emphasis only).
DESCRIPTION: Performance study, private instruction, and studio class. From one to three hours of daily practice required.
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction: Voice. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction: Voice.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

6. Music education majors must enroll in at least one hour of large ensemble each semester for seven semesters within student's area of specialization. At least one hour must be the 311R evening section.

7. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

8. Complete the following:

MUSIC 176 : Careers in Music Education. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Examining preschool through college teaching career options in music; seeking a good fit between personal aspirations, attributes, skills, and job requirements.
NOTE: Open to music majors and nonmajors.

MUSIC 276 : General Music Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198 or concurrent enrollment; ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching general music, K--12. Cognitive development and learning styles as a basis for instructional strategies. Includes Dalcroze, Orff, and Kodaly.

MUSIC 363 : Vocal Pedagogy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physiology, acoustics, and pedagogy of singing.

MUSIC 374 : Percussion Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F (instrumental education), W (choral education)
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and teach percussion instruments; survey of instructional materials.

: Percussion Workshop: Choral.

MUSIC 376A : Choral Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and application of learning theory.

MUSIC 376B : Choral Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum design, score analysis and preparation, choral arranging, rehearsal techniques, survey of literature, and vocal pedagogy, including treble voice and changing voice; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

MUSIC 482 : Choral Arranging. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Study of published choral arrangements, as well as techniques for adapting and arranging for

choirs.

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 375 : Theory and Methods of Secondary Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Disciplines of education; analysis of educational practice and relationship between theories and research on education and the practice of teaching.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Sc Ed 375.

   b. Complete 12 hours of student teaching:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis (92 hours, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

A degree in music education prepares the student for K-12 licensure as a public school music teacher with a instrumental emphasis. The degree program is a composite of music and education. Graduates may obtain a teaching position, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as professional preparation for other fields of endeavor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center and enroll in Music 176 winter semester or summer term. This course is prerequisite to official acceptance into music education.
2. Proficiency requirements: All professional education courses (below) and Music 260R, and 360R requirements in a woodwind, brass, string, pr percussion instrument must be completed before student teaching (Sc Ed 476R). Twenty minutes of solo performance time and ten minutes of chamber music performance time are required, which may be accomplished through master classes, recitals, juries, or in-class performances in Sc Ed 276R and 476R. Students opting for a juried recital must register for Music 349R.
3. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

Division of Continuing Education

399 HCEB
(801) 422-4146

Dean: Richard C. Eddy
Associate Dean: Kenneth W. Anderson
Associate Dean: Wayne J. Lott
Assistant to the Dean—Financial and Administrative Services: Darin R. Oviatt
Assistant to the Dean—Assessment: Jeff E. Hoyt
Assistant to the Dean—Compliance: Justin K. Johansen
Assistant to the Dean—Development: Gary L. Bauer

The purpose of the Division of Continuing Education is to provide educational programs and university services for part-time and off-campus students. These educational opportunities also assist regular daytime students. BYU cooperates with the Continuing Education programs sponsored by the Church Educational System and its components. The same university standards required of regular day students apply to those enrolled through the Division of Continuing Education while they are on campus.

Organization. Continuing Education programs represent both BYU and the Church Educational System, and the department and center descriptions will be distinguished in the material that follows.

Requirements for Enrollment in Continuing Education Classes

Noncredit classes are open to anyone having the desire and the necessary ability.

Credit classes are open to:

1. Matriculated students.
2. Anyone twenty-three years of age or older. (Some exceptions exist at the BYU Salt Lake Center.)
3. Individuals desiring to audit courses.
4. High school students in their junior or senior year who have a 3.0 GPA (may concurrently enroll in selected workshops and seminars if authorized by the University Admissions Committee).

Students who have been suspended from Brigham Young University or any other institution of higher learning for any reason are not eligible to register in Continuing Education credit classes until such suspension is cleared. Independent Study courses are an exception.

Enrollment Limitations. Persons enrolling in credit courses offered by the Division of Continuing Education who are officially admitted to the university can take any courses offered to a maximum of 18 credit hours per semester (9 hours per term). All others, twenty-three years of age and older, who have not been formally admitted to the university are limited to a maximum of 8.5 credit hours per semester (4 hours during spring or summer term). Contact the Division of Continuing Education for any additional conditions of enrollment.

Student Responsibility. Acceptance in a Continuing Education course *does not* constitute acceptance by BYU or any other university on a degree-seeking basis. It is the student's responsibility to gain admission to the university of his or her choice as a degree-seeking student through the normal procedures. At BYU students may accomplish this through the Office of Admissions.

Note: Students enrolled in the Division of Continuing Education would not be eligible for university employment, housing, or financial aid except for that assistance available to part-time students through the Division of Continuing Education.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

4. Complete eight hours of the following:

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.

: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete four hours of the following:
   MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
   Performance Instruction.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

6. Music education majors must enroll in at least one hour of large ensemble each semester for seven semesters. Those who play woodwind, brass, or percussion instruments must enroll in one semester of marching band, which may be counted toward the 7-hour large ensemble requirement if it is completed after the student has been officially accepted as a degree candidate in instrumental music education (after freshman year).

7. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

8. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 176 : Careers in Music Education. (1:1:1)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Examining preschool through college teaching career options in music; seeking a good fit between personal aspirations, attributes, skills, and job requirements.
   NOTE: Open to music majors and nonmajors.

   MUSIC 276 : General Music Methods. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198 or concurrent enrollment; ScEd 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching general music, K--12. Cognitive development and learning styles as a basis for instructional strategies. Includes Dalcroze, Orff, and Kodaly.

   MUSIC 372A : Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
   DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and to teach woodwind instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on clarinet and saxophone.

   MUSIC 372B : Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 372A. Emphasis on flute, oboe, and bassoon.

MUSIC 373A : Brass Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and to teach brass instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on trumpet and French horn.

MUSIC 373B : Brass Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 373A. Emphasis on trombone, baritone, and tuba.

MUSIC 374 : Percussion Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F (instrumental education), W (choral education)
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and teach percussion instruments; survey of instructional materials.

: Percussion Workshop: Choral.

MUSIC 375A : String Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and teach string instruments; survey of instructional materials, emphasis on violin and viola.

MUSIC 375B : String Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 375A. Emphasis on cello and bass.

MUSIC 377A : Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and applying learning theory.

MUSIC 377B : Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 271, 276, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum design, evaluating ensemble performance, advanced rehearsal techniques, administering secondary instrumental music programs; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

Note: Percussionists complete Music 273A, B instead of 374.

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.

: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 375 : Theory and Methods of Secondary Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Disciplines of education; analysis of educational practice and relationship between theories and research on education and the practice of teaching.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Sc Ed 276R.

b. Complete 12 hours of student teaching:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Education: Elementary Music Specialist Emphasis (117.5 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

A five-year program, the degree offers a dual major in elementary music education and elementary education. It will also prepare the student for licensure as an elementary classroom teacher and as an elementary music specialist. Graduates may obtain a teaching position in either area or a combination of both, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as preparation for other fields of endeavor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

The

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

Note: Music 235 must be a choral section.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 111R : Basic Vocal Skills. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice for nonmusic majors.

   b. Vocalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
      DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

4. Complete six hours of the following in your major instrument or voice (students must be enrolled in 250R or 260R each semester in residence up to six semesters):
   MUSIC 250R : Performance Study. (.5-1:0.5:0)
   Performance Study.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music major status (K-12 Choral Emphas or Elementary Music Specialist Emphasis only).
   DESCRIPTION: Performance study, private instruction, and studio class.
   NOTE: From one to three hours of daily practice required. Fee.
   MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

   : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
   : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Cello.

: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete at least one hour of large ensemble each semester for four semesters. Piano and vocal emphasis majors should participate in choral ensembles. At least one choral ensemble experience is recommended for instrumental emphasis majors.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:

MUSIC 271 : Musicality in the Elementary School. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of authentic folk song and art music tonal systems and structures; their use in developing musical intuition through singing, movement, listening, and playing instruments.

MUSIC 272 : Developing Children's Musicality, Grades K--2. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 271.
DESCRIPTION: Literature-based curriculum design and planning, grades K--2. Issues of pure intonation and vocal/aural development. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

MUSIC 371 : Developing Children's Musicality, Grades 3--5. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 271, 272.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 272 for grades 3--5, emphasizing the relationship of classroom literature to choral experience and instrumental musicianship. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

MUSIC 471 : Practicum in Children's Musicality. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 271, 272, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy for grades 6 and beyond. Children's choir development, including arranging and adapting vocal and instrumental music. Extended pre-student teaching in a demonstration school.

8. Make formal application for admission to the elementary education program through the Teacher Education Department (201) MCKB).

9. Students who receive a grade lower than C– in any of the professional or support courses, or whose GPA drops below 2.85 in any of the professional or support courses, will be discontinued from the elementary education program.

10. Complete all GE courses, including the following, prior to beginning program:
EXSC 169 : Elementary Skills and Activities. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical skills and activities specific to elementary-age children.
NOTE: Required for elementary education majors. Meets one Wellness physical education activity requirement.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

11. Complete an application seminar (seminar schedule posted on Education Advisement and Certification Center Web page and in 120 MCKB).

12. Complete the following courses after admission to the program:
CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

DANCE 326 : Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

EDLF 452 : Foundations of Education. (.5-2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the philosophical, sociological, and historical foundations of American education, with special reference to current issues in U.S. public schooling.

EL ED 302 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

EL ED 354 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 1. (1:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 356.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in the primary grades.

EL ED 355 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 357.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in grades three to six.

EL ED 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 354.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

EL ED 357 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Intermediate Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 355.
DESCRIPTION: Issues and practices for teaching language arts in grades three to six, including content area reading and writing, literature, comprehending and responding, vocabulary development, and structural analysis applications.

EL ED 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 362.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

EL ED 362 : Practicum in Teaching Mathematics. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 361.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in El Ed 361 in an elementary school classroom.

EL ED 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

EL ED 365 : Teaching Social Studies in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing instructional methods and curriculum design to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

EL ED 372 : Instruction and Assessment. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Taken during second professional semester. Extended planning, integrated units, teaching strategies, management problems, and assessment and reporting of student progress.

EXSC 375 : Physical Education for Elementary School Teachers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 169.

HLTH 361 : School Health for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preparing for the role as a health educator, emphasizing skill-based teaching methods and acquisition of teaching resources.

IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

IP&T 301 : Educational Psychology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of educational psychology applied to teaching, including learning theory,

instructional strategies, assessment of learning outcomes, and classroom inquiry.

MTHED 305 : Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of number, measurement, and informal geometry in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 306 : Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 305; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of rational numbers and proportional reasoning, probability, and early algebraic reasoning in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

VAEDU 326 : Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

13. Complete 12 hours of one of the following (prior application required):

EL ED 400R : Elementary Student-Teaching Internship. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See EAC for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: Semester-long or two consecutive term, full-day student teaching internship in the public schools. Seminar attendance required.

EL ED 496R : Academic Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools in lieu of El Ed 400, student teaching.

Recommended Courses

The following courses are strongly recommended:

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

BIO 101 : Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 100.
NOTE: Required of all elementary education and early childhood education majors; enrollment limited to elementary education of early childhood education majors.

ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

PHY S 111A : Physical Science A Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises that illustrate physics and chemistry principles.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Evening Classes

Scott L. Howell, Director
122 HCEB
(801) 422-2872

The Department of Evening Classes is a nondegree-awarding university program whose mission is to support academic departments and colleges by offering courses into the evening hours. The department also supports enrollments for part-time students from the community who are at least 23 years of age. Tuition rates for courses taught through Evening Classes are equivalent to those taught during the day.

All courses taught through Evening Classes are listed online in the university's official class schedule at http://saas.byu.edu/classSchedule/ and also for Evening Classes at http://ce.byu.edu/eve

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

NOTE: To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B. Church of Jesus

PHY S 111B : Physical Science B Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises that illustrate geology principles.
NOTE: To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Brass Emphasis (77 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the student for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete 12 hours of the following:
   MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

   : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
   : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
   : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Cello.
   : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
   : Performance Instruction: Conducting.
   : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
   : Performance Instruction: Flute.
   : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
   : Performance Instruction: Harp.
   : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
   : Performance Instruction: Horn.
   : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
   : Performance Instruction: Organ.
   : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Piano.
   : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
   : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
   : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
   : Performance Instruction: Strings.
   : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
   : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
   : Performance Instruction: Viola.
   : Performance Instruction: Violin.
   : Performance Instruction: Voice.
   : Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for eight semesters.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 368 : Brass Pedagogy. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Brass performance major status or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 405 : Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

8. Complete four hours from the following:
   MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: audition.

   MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

   : Brass Choir.
   : Brass Ensemble.
   : Trombone Choir.

9. Complete five hours of music electives (Music 407 is recommended). See faculty advisor.

10. Present a juried recital (Music 349R) during the junior year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Combined Piano and Organ Emphasis (77 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the student for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following divided between piano and organ:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete eight hours of the following divided between piano and organ:
MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.

NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

5. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for six semesters, including two or four hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and two or four hours of the Category 2 ensemble Music 344R; each two hours of 344R must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:

MUSIC 166 : Organ Registration. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent private or group instruction in organ or instructor's consent
DESCRIPTION: Organ stops and their application to various performance styles.

MUSIC 264 : Keyboard Foundations 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, 260R.
DESCRIPTION: Sight-reading, harmonization, improvisation, and technique at the keyboard.

MUSIC 265 : Keyboard Foundations 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 264.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 264.

MUSIC 364 : Keyboard Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic pedagogical principles as applied to keyboard instruments.

MUSIC 365 : Piano Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 366 : Organ Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 466R : Organ Practicum. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: W odd year, F odd year
PREREQUISITE: Music 166 or organ performance major status. Must be taken in consecutive winter and fall semesters.
DESCRIPTION: Developing various practical skills required of the organist.

8. Complete two hours of the following:
   MUSIC 470R : Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

   : Studio Teaching Bassoon.
   : Studio Teaching Cello.
   : Studio Teaching Clarinet.
   : Studio Teaching Flute.
   : Studio Teaching Guitar.
   : Studio Teaching Harp.
   : Studio Teaching Horn.
   : Studio Teaching Oboe.
   : Studio Teaching Organ.
   : Studio Teaching Percussion.
   : Studio Teaching Piano.
   : Studio Teaching Saxophone.
   : Studio Teaching String Bass.
   : Studio Teaching Trombone.
   : Studio Teaching Trumpet.
   : Studio Teaching Tuba.
   : Studio Teaching Viola.
   : Studio Teaching Violin.

9. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 469 : Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

10. Complete three courses from the following:
    MUSIC 403A : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
    OFFERED: F
    PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
    DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

    MUSIC 403B : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
    OFFERED: W
    PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
    DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 403A.

    MUSIC 404A : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
    OFFERED: F odd years
    PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
    DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

    MUSIC 404B : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
    OFFERED: W even years
    PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
    DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 404A.

11. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 249R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Organ Emphasis (78 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the student for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Independent Study

R. Dwight Laws, Director
209 HCEB
(801) 422-2868

Independent Study is a university "outreach program" that can bring the BYU experience to students anytime, anywhere. Through Independent Study, BYU offers nearly 250 college-level credit courses, providing a practical and flexible solution for university students with scheduling problems and for working students, armed forces personnel, teachers, and others who cannot take all their classes in residence.

Up to 36 semester hours of work completed through Independent Study can be used toward a bachelor's degree from BYU, and courses are also available for teacher recertification. Individual high school-level courses, a full-curriculum high school transcript program, and noncredit courses for personal development and enrichment are also available.

Students may register for an Independent Study course at any time during the year. Students are given one year to complete a course, although most do so in less time. Catalogs are available without charge and list all the courses available, current fees, and enrollment policies and procedures.

Independent Study now has most courses on the Internet at http://elearn.byu.edu

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete four hours of the following:
MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

5. Complete six hours of the followino:

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Conducting.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

6. Complete one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for four semesters. The Category 2 ensemble Music 344R may substitute for two of these four hours, but the two hours must be in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

7. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

8. Complete the following:

MUSIC 166 : Organ Registration. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Concurrent private or group instruction in organ or instructor's consent
DESCRIPTION: Organ stops and their application to various performance styles.

MUSIC 264 : Keyboard Foundations 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, 260R.
DESCRIPTION: Sight-reading, harmonization, improvisation, and technique at the keyboard.

MUSIC 265 : Keyboard Foundations 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 264.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 264.

MUSIC 364 : Keyboard Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic pedagogical principles as applied to keyboard instruments.

MUSIC 366 : Organ Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 404A : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 404B : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 404A.

MUSIC 466R : Organ Practicum. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W odd year, F odd year
PREREQUISITE: Music 166 or organ performance major status. Must be taken in consecutive winter and fall semesters.
DESCRIPTION: Developing various practical skills required of the organist.

(twice).

Note: Two semesters of Music 466R must be taken in consecutive winter and fall semesters.

9. Complete two hours of the following:
MUSIC 470R : Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

: Studio Teaching Bassoon.
: Studio Teaching Cello.
: Studio Teaching Clarinet.
: Studio Teaching Flute.
: Studio Teaching Guitar.
: Studio Teaching Harp.
: Studio Teaching Horn.
: Studio Teaching Oboe.
: Studio Teaching Organ.
: Studio Teaching Percussion.
: Studio Teaching Piano.
: Studio Teaching Saxophone.
: Studio Teaching String Bass.
: Studio Teaching Trombone.
: Studio Teaching Trumpet.
: Studio Teaching Tuba.
: Studio Teaching Viola.
: Studio Teaching Violin.

10. Complete the following:

MUSIC 469 : Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

11. Complete one course from the following:
MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

12. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 249R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Percussion Emphasis (76 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the student for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete 12 hours of the following:
   MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

   : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
   : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
   : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Cello.
   : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
   : Performance Instruction: Conducting.
   : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
   : Performance Instruction: Flute.
   : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
   : Performance Instruction: Harp.
   : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
   : Performance Instruction: Horn.
   : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
   : Performance Instruction: Organ.
   : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Piano.
   : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
   : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
   : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
   : Performance Instruction: Strings.
   : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
   : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
   : Performance Instruction: Viola.
   : Performance Instruction: Violin.
   : Performance Instruction: Voice.
   : Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for eight semesters.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 273A : Percussion Techniques. (.5:1:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Percussion performance major or music education major with percussion emphasis.
DESCRIPTION: Accessory and concert percussion instruments and related performance literature.

MUSIC 273B : Percussion Techniques. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 273A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to world percussion, drum set, and marching percussion techniques.

MUSIC 405 : Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

8. Complete five hours from the following:
   MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

   MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: audition.

   MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

9. Complete five hours of music electives. See faculty advisor.

10. Present a juried recital (Music 349R) during the junior year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Piano Emphasis (78 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The keyboard performance degree prepares students for professional work as performers and studio teachers. The degree includes a strong pedagogy emphasis, including supervised teaching. Many performance majors continue their studies on the graduate level to further prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete four hours of the following:
MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

5. Complete six hours of the followino:

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Conferences and Workshops

Steven W. Taggart, Director
130 HCEB
(801) 422-3559

The Department of Conferences and Workshops assists the university's colleges, schools, and departments in developing and offering hundreds of outreach programs per year. A variety of both credit and noncredit programs are offered, including conferences, workshops, symposia, short courses, seminars, association meetings, test-prep courses, and youth camps. These programs use both campus and off-campus facilities in extending university offerings to alumni, youth, the campus community, and other adults.

For a comprehensive listing of courses or for information on how we can help you plan a conference, visit our Web site at http://conferences.byu.edu

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Conducting.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

6. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for six semesters, including two or four hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and two or four hours of the Category 2 ensemble Music 344R; each two hours of 344R must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.

7. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

8. Complete the following:

MUSIC 264 : Keyboard Foundations 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, 260R.
DESCRIPTION: Sight-reading, harmonization, improvisation, and technique at the keyboard.

MUSIC 265 : Keyboard Foundations 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 264.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 264.

MUSIC 364 : Keyboard Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic pedagogical principles as applied to keyboard instruments.

MUSIC 365 : Piano Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 403A : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 403B : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 403A.

9. Complete two hours of the following:
MUSIC 470R : Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

: Studio Teaching Bassoon.
: Studio Teaching Cello.
: Studio Teaching Clarinet.
: Studio Teaching Flute.
: Studio Teaching Guitar.
: Studio Teaching Harp.
: Studio Teaching Horn.
: Studio Teaching Oboe.
: Studio Teaching Organ.
: Studio Teaching Percussion.
: Studio Teaching Piano.
: Studio Teaching Saxophone.
: Studio Teaching String Bass.
: Studio Teaching Trombone.
: Studio Teaching Trumpet.
: Studio Teaching Tuba.
: Studio Teaching Viola.
: Studio Teaching Violin.

10. Complete the following:
MUSIC 469 : Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

11. Complete four hours of the following:
MUSIC 115 : Basic Organ Skills. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in organ for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 116R : Organ Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 115 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 115.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(organ).

12. Complete one course from the following:
MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

13. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 249R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: String Emphasis (77 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the students for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete 12 hours of the following:
   MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

   : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
   : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
   : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Cello.
   : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
   : Performance Instruction: Conducting.
   : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
   : Performance Instruction: Flute.
   : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
   : Performance Instruction: Harp.
   : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
   : Performance Instruction: Horn.
   : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
   : Performance Instruction: Organ.
   : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Piano.
   : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
   : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
   : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
   : Performance Instruction: Strings.
   : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
   : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
   : Performance Instruction: Viola.
   : Performance Instruction: Violin.
   : Performance Instruction: Voice.
   : Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for eight semesters.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete one course from the following depending on instrument:
   MUSIC 369A : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)

Church of Jesus

OFFERED: F even yr.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on violin or viola, or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 369B : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on double bass or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 369C : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on cello or instructor's consent.

8. Complete the following:
MUSIC 406 : String Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

MUSIC 469 : Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

9. Complete one course from the following:
MUSIC 405 : Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

MUSIC 407 : Symphonic Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: on dem.
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

10. Complete two hours of the following:
MUSIC 470R : Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

: Studio Teaching Bassoon.
: Studio Teaching Cello.
: Studio Teaching Clarinet.
: Studio Teaching Flute.
: Studio Teaching Guitar.
: Studio Teaching Harp.
: Studio Teaching Horn.
: Studio Teaching Oboe.
: Studio Teaching Organ.
: Studio Teaching Percussion.
: Studio Teaching Piano.
: Studio Teaching Saxophone.
: Studio Teaching String Bass.
: Studio Teaching Trombone.
: Studio Teaching Trumpet.
: Studio Teaching Tuba.
: Studio Teaching Viola.
: Studio Teaching Violin.

11. Complete four hours from the following:
MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

12. Present a juried recital (Music 349R) during the junior year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Recommended Electives

MUSIC 462R : Orchestral Repertoire. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Music 460R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Performance instruction in standard orchestral repertoire.

: Orchestral Repertoire. Viola.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Bass
: Orchestral Repertoire: Cello.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Violin.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 473 : Suzuki Methods. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying the principles of Shinichi Suzuki to teaching. Emphasis on violin.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Vocal Emphasis (76 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The vocal performance degree program prepares students for professional work as performers and studio teachers. The degree includes a strong pedagogy emphasis, including supervised teaching. Many students in this program continue their studies on the graduate level to further prepare for a performing career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete the following:
MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

BYU Conference Center

Spencer E. Hansen, Manager
2255 CONF
(801) 422-7700

The BYU Conference Center is located east of the Marriott Center and adjacent to the Harman Continuing Education Building. The primary host facility for conference guests on campus, it is especially equipped to provide a favorable learning environment for guests participating in conferences, workshops, training seminars, and other educational programs. University units may sponsor or cosponsor conference center events. When certain qualifications are met, off-campus professional, government, corporate, civic, religious, family, or community organizations may also schedule events. The center is not available to promote a product or service or for other entrepreneurial efforts.

Those interested in scheduling the center are invited to contact the BYU Conference Center.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(six hours).

4. Complete eight hours of the following:
   MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
   Performance Instruction.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

5. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for eight semesters, including 2-6 hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and 2-6 hours of the following Category 2 ensembles:
   MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

   MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

   MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 363 : Vocal Pedagogy. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physiology, acoustics, and pedagogy of singing.

MUSIC 402A : Vocal Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature with emphasis on art song. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 472 : Supervised Teaching in Voice. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 363.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, and practicum in the methodology of studio voice instruction.

8. Complete eight hours from the following:

FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

ITAL 101 : First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

ITAL 102 : First-Year Italian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F,W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Ital 101.

9. Present a juried junior recital (Music 349R) and a juried senior recital (Music 449R).

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in Music 360R is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Recommended Electives

DANCE 164 : Movement for Musicians. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Developing strength, flexibility, responsiveness, centering, breath, and freedom of movement through both fine and gross motor activities.

MUSIC 259 : Psychology of Performance. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Psychological skills for performers. Topics include audition preparation, conquering stage fright, preventing overuse injury, attention control, creativity. Skills applicable to any performance situation.

MUSIC 261 : Contemporary Vocal Techniques. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 161 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary vocal styles and techniques, including pop/belt, stage, and studio singing.

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

Students intending to enter graduate school in voice should complete:

FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

ITAL 101 : First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Music Performance: Woodwind Emphasis (77 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The bachelor of music degree in performance prepares the students for professional work as a performer, a studio teacher, or a combination of both. Some will pursue advanced work on the graduate level to prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su

The

PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete eight hours of the following:
MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.

: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

4. Complete 12 hours of the following:
   MUSIC 460R : Performance Instruction. (1.5-3:1:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

   : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
   : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
   : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Cello.
   : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
   : Performance Instruction: Conducting.
   : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
   : Performance Instruction: Flute.
   : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
   : Performance Instruction: Harp.
   : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
   : Performance Instruction: Horn.
   : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
   : Performance Instruction: Organ.
   : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
   : Performance Instruction: Piano.
   : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
   : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
   : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
   : Performance Instruction: Strings.
   : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
   : Performance Instruction: Tuba.
   : Performance Instruction: Viola.
   : Performance Instruction: Violin.
   : Performance Instruction: Voice.
   : Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

5. Complete one hour of Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) each semester for eight semesters.

6. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:
   MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

   MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

   MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

   MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

   MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

7. Complete the following:
   MUSIC 367 : Woodwind Pedagogy. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Woodwind performance major status or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 405 : Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

8. Complete four hours from the following:
MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

(saxophone only)
MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

9. Complete five hours of music electives (Music 407 is recommended). See faculty advisor.

10. Present a juried recital (Music 349R) during the junior year. A juried senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.

Recital: Enroll in 349R (0.0 credit hours) or 449R (1.0 credit hour) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent enrollment in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center Scheduling Office (C-358, south lobby of de Jong Concert Hall) for further information.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BM in Sound Recording Technology (77 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Students majoring in sound recording technology prepare for engineering opportunities in the recording industry and related fields such as broadcasting and video sweetening. This degree gives students theoretical and practical experience in the recording of music in an acoustical environment and also includes course work in the digital recording and digital editing procedures that characterize the recording field today. The program combines rigorous grounding in traditional repertoires with preprofessional course work and project experience in recording.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into the degree program.
2. Complete the following lower-division music core courses:

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

The

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 198.

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
      DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
      NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

      : Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
      : Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Cello.
      : Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
      : Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
      : Performance Instruction: Flute.
      : Performance Instruction: Guitar.
      : Performance Instruction: Harp.
      : Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
      : Performance Instruction: Horn.
      : Performance Instruction: Oboe.
      : Performance Instruction: Organ.
      : Performance Instruction: Percussion.
      : Performance Instruction: Piano.
      : Performance Instruction: Recorder.
      : Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
      : Performance Instruction: String Bass.
      : Performance Instruction: Strings.
      : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
      : Performance Instruction: Trombone.
      : Performance Instruction: Trumpet.

: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(8 hours).

b. Vocalists complete the following:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.
: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

(6 hours).

4. Complete one hour of ensemble each semester for four semesters, including 2-3 hours from Category 1: Approved Large Ensembles (see General Information) and 1-2 hours from the following Category 2 ensembles:

MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

CES Adult Programs

R. Neil Carlile, Director
297 HCEB
(801) 422-7380

Church Educational System Continuing Education annually provides more than 300 religious education programs to more than 70,000 adult and youth patrons throughout the United States and Canada. These programs are designed to be spiritually strengthening, to inspire lifelong learning and service, to extend the blessings of learning, and to develop friends for the Church and the university. The primary programs offered are Adult Religion Classes, Best of Especially for Youth programs, Scripture Seminars, and Family Relation Seminars.

In addition, the department organizes Campus Education Week, which has been held at BYU since 1922. Featuring 1,000 classes and 200 presenters, this program serves approximately 22,000 students coming from each of the United States and several other countries.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 323R : Marching Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 332R : Show Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Vocal Jazz)
MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

(Jazz Ensemble)
MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

MUSIC 339R : Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Brass Choir.
: Brass Ensemble.
: Trombone Choir.

MUSIC 342R : Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 344R : Keyboard in Ensemble. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 260R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Accompanying and ensemble performance.

MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

MUSIC 441R : New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

5. Complete the following upper-division music core courses:

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

6. Complete the following specialized courses:

MUSIC 251 : Audio: Basic Principles 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Basic recording studio procedures and principles. Foundation course for major in sound recording technology.

MUSIC 252 : Audio: Basic Principles 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Music 251.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of basic recording studio procedures and principles, emphasizing signal path concepts.

MUSIC 256 : Recording Studio 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent, Phscs 167, Music 251, and music major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic recording theory, operational techniques, and procedures.

MUSIC 257 : Recording Studio 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 256.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 256.

MUSIC 286 : Introduction to the Music Business. (2:2:)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: The music business and its models. Guided research topics for all musicians.

MUSIC 351 : Audio Applications 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 251, 256, 257, Math 110, Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

MUSIC 352 : Audio Applications 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 351.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

7. Complete three sections of the following:
MUSIC 355R : Recording Workshop. (1:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 251 or 257.
DESCRIPTION: Studio projects in multitrack recording for records, broadcast, film, and television.

: Digital Projects 1.
: Digital Projects 2.
: System Design Projects.

(stereo mixing projects, surround mixing projects, sound design).

8. Complete four hours of the following:
MUSIC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Internship or externship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

9. Complete six hours from the following:
MUSIC 186 : Songwriting 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Basic music reading and keyboard skills.
DESCRIPTION: Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

MUSIC 203 : World Music Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional music of selected cultures of Asia, Oceania, Africa, Europe, and the Americas, including both folk and art music traditions.

MUSIC 204 : History of Jazz. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.

DESCRIPTION: Fostering an understanding and appreciation of jazz, America's unique contribution to the world's music.

MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction: Synthesizer. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.
(synthesizer)

MUSIC 386R : Songwriting 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; Music 186.
DESCRIPTION: Projects in advanced songwriting.

MUSIC 389 : Projects in Music for Media. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music major status, Music 186; 295 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory projects in scoring for broadcast media, publication, and studio recording.

TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

TMA 568 : Sound. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Basics in sound design and reinforcement. Work on departmental productions.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Music (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

MUSIC 101 : Introduction to Music. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status.
DESCRIPTION: Designed to aid nonmusic majors in developing skills needed for listening to music creatively. Emphasis on masterworks of Western music from major style periods.
NOTE: Honors also.

MUSIC 135 : Basic Conducting. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts and skills for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 190 : Music Fundamentals. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status.
DESCRIPTION: Organizational systems of music, their notation and aural patterns.
NOTE: Required for music minor.

2. Complete two hours of the following:

MUSIC 160R : Performance Study. (.5-1:.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status. Audition may be required.
DESCRIPTION: Private or semiprivate instruction. One to two hours of daily practice.
NOTE: Fee.

: Bassoon.
: Brass and Percussion.
: Carillon.
: Cello.
: Clarinet.
: Euphonium.
: Flute.
: Guitar.
: Harp.
: Harpsichord.
: Horn.
: Oboe.
: Organ.
: Percussion.
: Piano.
: Recorder.
: Saxophone.
: Songwriting.
: String Bass.
: Strings.
: Synthesizer.
: Trombone.
: Trumpet.
: Tuba.
: Viola.
: Violin.

: Voice.
: Woodwinds.

3. Complete four hours of performance ensemble.

4. Complete five hours of music electives.

Note: Transfer students should see the college advisement center for transferring classes for a minor.

Show all Music (Music) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Music (Music)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

A course without the R suffix may not be repeated more than one time to improve a grade. (Repeating a course with the R suffix does not change the original grade.)

100-Level Courses

MUSIC 101 : Introduction to Music. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status.
DESCRIPTION: Designed to aid nonmusic majors in developing skills needed for listening to music creatively. Emphasis on masterworks of Western music from major style periods.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Introduction to Music.

MUSIC 111R : Basic Vocal Skills. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 113 : Beginning Piano Techniques 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in piano for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 114R : Beginning Piano Techniques 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 113 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 113.

MUSIC 115 : Basic Organ Skills. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in organ for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 116R : Organ Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 115 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 115.

MUSIC 117 : Basic Guitar Skills. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in guitar for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 118R : Guitar Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 117 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 117.

MUSIC 135 : Basic Conducting. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts and skills for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 160R : Performance Study. (.5-1:.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status. Audition may be required.
DESCRIPTION: Private or semiprivate instruction. One to two hours of daily practice
NOTE: Fee.

: Bassoon.
: Brass and Percussion.
: Carillon.
: Cello.
: Clarinet.
: Euphonium.
: Flute.
: Guitar.
: Harp.
: Harpsichord.
: Horn.
: Oboe.

: Organ.
: Percussion.
: Piano.
: Recorder.
: Saxophone.
: Songwriting.
: String Bass.
: Strings.
: Synthesizer.
: Trombone.
: Trumpet.
: Tuba.
: Viola.
: Violin.
: Voice.
: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 166 : Organ Registration. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent private or group instruction in organ or instructor's consent
DESCRIPTION: Organ stops and their application to various performance styles.

MUSIC 176 : Careers in Music Education. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Examining preschool through college teaching career options in music; seeking a good fit between personal aspirations, attributes, skills, and job requirements.
NOTE: Open to music majors and nonmajors.

MUSIC 186 : Songwriting 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Basic music reading and keyboard skills.
DESCRIPTION: Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

MUSIC 188 : Composition 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 195 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to principles of recent art music; composition and performance of student works for one to five instruments.

MUSIC 189 : Introduction to Music Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI). (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of computer programs in all aspects of music composition, production; familiarity with worldwide music sites on the network; demonstrations of samplers and electronic sound sources.

MUSIC 190 : Music Fundamentals. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status.
DESCRIPTION: Organizational systems of music, their notation and aural patterns.
NOTE: Required for music minor.

MUSIC 193 : Dictation 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 195, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

MUSIC 194 : Dictation 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 198, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 193.

MUSIC 195 : Music Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 197.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

MUSIC 196 : Music Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in 194, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

MUSIC 197 : Sight Singing 1. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance as a music major; concurrent enrollment in Music 193, 195.
DESCRIPTION: Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

MUSIC 198 : Sight Singing 2. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 193, 195, 197; concurrent enrollment in Music 194, 196.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 197.

200-Level Courses

MUSIC 200 : Elements of Music. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Nonmusic major status and concurrent ensemble enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of basic musical processes, structures, styles, and common principles of music literature through lectures, demonstrations, and analytical experiences.

MUSIC 201 : Civilization: Music 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp or Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Ability to read musical notation.
DESCRIPTION: History of civilization from Greek antiquity through the seventeenth century, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Civilization: Music 1.

MUSIC 202 : Civilization: Music 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp, or Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Ability to read musical notation.
DESCRIPTION: History of civilization from the eighteenth century through the present day, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience, examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Civilization: Music 2.

MUSIC 203 : World Music Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional music of selected cultures of Asia, Oceania, Africa, Europe, and the Americas, including both folk and art music traditions.

MUSIC 204 : History of Jazz. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Fostering an understanding and appreciation of jazz, America's unique contribution to the world's music.

: Honors History of Jazz.

MUSIC 206 : Survey of Latin American Music. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: A historical survey of folk music and art music indigenous to countries of the Caribbean and Central and South America.

MUSIC 210R : Topics in Music. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

MUSIC 221 : Functional Piano Skills 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Piano skills determined by entrance diagnostic exam; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Provides music majors with basic keyboarding ability in such areas as sight reading, technique, harmonization, and score reading.

MUSIC 222 : Functional Piano Skills 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 221; music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 221.

MUSIC 235 : Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: music major status, C- or higher in Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

MUSIC 236 : Fundamentals for Choir Directors. (2:2.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 135 or 235 with grade of B- or better; concurrent enrollment in Music 135 or 235 with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Choral repertoire, score preparation, vocal production, vowels, consonants, intonation, blend, balance, warm-up, rehearsal techniques, and teaching basic music skills.

MUSIC 249R : Sophomore Recital. (0:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Music 260R and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals.
NOTE: Fee.

MUSIC 250R : Performance Study. (.5-1:0.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status (K-12 Choral Emphas or Elementary Music Specialist Emphasis only).
DESCRIPTION: Performance study, private instruction, and studio class.
NOTE: From one to three hours of daily practice required. Fee.

: Performance Study: Bassoon.
: Performance Study: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Study: Cello.
: Performance Study: Clarinet.
: Performance Study: Euphonium.
: Performance Study: Flute.

: Performance Study: Guitar.
: Performance Study: Harp.
: Performance Study: Harpsichord.
: Performance Study: Horn.
: Performance Study: Oboe.
: Performance Study: Organ.
: Performance Study: Percussion.
: Performance Study: Piano.
: Performance Study: Recorder.
: Performance Study: Saxophone.
: Performance Study: String Bass.
: Performance Study: Strings.
: Performance Study: Synthesizer.
: Performance Study: Trombone.
: Performance Study: Trumpet.
: Performance Study: Tuba.
: Performance Study: Viola.
: Performance Study: Violin.
: Performance Study: Voice.
: Performance Study: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 251 : Audio: Basic Principles 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Basic recording studio procedures and principles. Foundation course for major in sound recording technology.

MUSIC 252 : Audio: Basic Principles 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 251.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of basic recording studio procedures and principles, emphasizing signal path concepts.

MUSIC 256 : Recording Studio 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent, Phscs 167, Music 251, and music major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic recording theory, operational techniques, and procedures.

MUSIC 257 : Recording Studio 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 256.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 256.

MUSIC 259 : Psychology of Performance. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Psychological skills for performers. Topics include audition preparation, conquering stage fright, preventing overuse injury, attention control, creativity. Skills applicable to any performance situation.

MUSIC 260R : Performance Study. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Cello.
: Harpsichord.
: Horn.
: Organ.
: Percussion.
: Performance Study: Bassoon.
: Performance Study: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Study: Clarinet.
: Performance Study: Euphonium.
: Performance Study: Flute.
: Performance Study: Guitar.
: Performance Study: Oboe.
: Performance Study: String Bass.
: Performance Study: Strings.
: Performance Study: Synthesizer.
: Performance Study: Woodwinds.
: Performance Study: Harp.
: Piano.
: Recorder.
: Saxophone.
: Trombone.
: Trumpet.
: Tuba.
: Viola.
: Violin.
: Voice.

MUSIC 261 : Contemporary Vocal Techniques. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 161 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary vocal styles and techniques, including pop/belt, stage, and studio singing.

MUSIC 264 : Keyboard Foundations 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, 260R.
DESCRIPTION: Sight-reading, harmonization, improvisation, and technique at the keyboard.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

CES Youth Programs

Gregory M. Tanner, Director
164 HCEB
(801) 422-3817

Especially for Youth, youth conferences, and other enrichment programs are offered to youth by CES Youth Programs, both on the BYU campus and at localities nationwide. More than 60,000 participants are served, coming from virtually every state and province in the United States and Canada and from several foreign countries.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

MUSIC 265 : Keyboard Foundations 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 264.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 264.

MUSIC 271 : Musicality in the Elementary School. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of authentic folk song and art music tonal systems and structures; their use in developing musical intuition through singing, movement, listening, and playing instruments.

MUSIC 272 : Developing Children's Musicality, Grades K--2. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 271.
DESCRIPTION: Literature-based curriculum design and planning, grades K--2. Issues of pure intonation and vocal/aural development. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

MUSIC 273A : Percussion Techniques. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Percussion performance major or music education major with percussion emphasis.
DESCRIPTION: Accessory and concert percussion instruments and related performance literature.

MUSIC 273B : Percussion Techniques. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 273A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to world percussion, drum set, and marching percussion techniques.

MUSIC 276 : General Music Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198 or concurrent enrollment; ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching general music, K--12. Cognitive development and learning styles as a basis for instructional strategies. Includes Dalcroze, Orff, and Kodaly.

MUSIC 284 : Jazz Improvisation 1. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation: theory and technique.

MUSIC 286 : Introduction to the Music Business. (2:2:)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: The music business and its models. Guided research topics for all musicians.

MUSIC 287 : Electronic Music Composition. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 188 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to composition with digital audio and related media.

MUSIC 288 : Composition 2. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 287.
DESCRIPTION: Invention and exploration of sound, control of multivoiced textures and larger forms, and recent art music.

MUSIC 290 : Music Theory for MDT Majors. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 113 and music dance theatre (MDT) major status.
DESCRIPTION: Music theory, sight singing, aural dictation, and keyboard harmony.

MUSIC 293 : Dictation 3. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 194.

MUSIC 294 : Dictation 4. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 293.

MUSIC 295 : Music Theory 3. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 296 : Music Theory 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

MUSIC 297 : Sight Singing 3. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 194, 196, and 198; concurrent enrollment in Music 293 *and* 295.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

MUSIC 298 : Sight Singing 4. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297; concurrent enrollment in Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 297.

300-Level Courses

MUSIC 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Music 290; Dance 242; TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Dance 300 and TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Dance in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, and theatre.

MUSIC 301 : Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the sixteenth century.

MUSIC 302 : Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

MUSIC 303 : Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

MUSIC 304 : Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296, 298; 201, 202, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

MUSIC 311R : University Chorale. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
NOTE: No audition required.

MUSIC 312R : Men's Chorus. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.

MUSIC 313R : Women's Chorus. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.

MUSIC 314R : Concert Choir. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.

MUSIC 315R : University Singers. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition and director?s consent.

MUSIC 316R : Opera Workshop. (1:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic choral music and stage movement.

MUSIC 317R : Opera Ensemble. (.5-3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in operatic excerpts, chamber opera, and full productions for operatic soloists.

MUSIC 318R : Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 321R : University Orchestra. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
NOTE: No audition required. Does not satisfy large ensemble requirement for majors.

: University String Orchestra.

MUSIC 322R : University Band. (1:2:0)

OFFERED: W
NOTE: No audition required. Does not satisfy large ensemble requirement for majors.

MUSIC 323R : Marching Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 324R : Cougar Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: audition or director's consent.

MUSIC 325R : Symphonic Band. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

MUSIC 326R : Wind Symphony. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: music dance theatre BFA major status; TMA 114, 229, concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, and TMA 328.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, and TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

MUSIC 329R : Folk Ensemble. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional bluegrass ensemble.
NOTE: Performs with BYU International Folk Dancers.

MUSIC 330R : Steel Band. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 331R : Jazz Combos. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 332R : Show Band. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

MUSIC 333R : Jazz Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

: Jazz Lab Band.

MUSIC 334R : Synthesis. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 335R : Jazz Legacy Band. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional ensemble specializing in early jazz. Band occasionally tours off campus.

MUSIC 337R : Symphony Orchestra. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 338R : Philharmonic Orchestra. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 339R : Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: audition.

MUSIC 340R : Harp Ensemble. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 341R : Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Brass Choir.
: Brass Ensemble.

: Trombone Choir.

MUSIC 342R : Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 343R : Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 344R : Keyboard in Ensemble. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 260R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Accompanying and ensemble performance.

MUSIC 345R : Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 346R : String Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 347R : Vocal Point. (1:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

MUSIC 348R : Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: director's consent.

: Flute Choir.
: Saxophone Ensemble.
: Woodwind Ensemble.

MUSIC 349R : Junior Recital. (0:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Music 360R or 460R and instructor's consent. Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals.
NOTE: Fee.

MUSIC 351 : Audio Applications 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 251, 256, 257, Math 110, Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

MUSIC 352 : Audio Applications 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 351.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts in digital sound editing.

MUSIC 355R : Recording Workshop. (1:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 251 or 257.
DESCRIPTION: Studio projects in multitrack recording for records, broadcast, film, and television.

: Digital Projects 1.
: Digital Projects 2.
: System Design Projects.

MUSIC 359R : Performance Study. (1-2:1:1)
OFFERED: For those who have completed private instruction requirements for their degree. F, W. Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; completion of degree requirements in 260R, 360R, and 460R; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class requiring from one to four hours of daily practice.
NOTE: Fee.

MUSIC 360R : Performance Study. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Bassoon.
: Brass and Percussion.
: Cello.
: Clarinet.
: Conducting.
: Euphonium.
: Flute.
: Guitar.
: Harp.
: Harpsichord.
: Horn.
: Oboe.
: Organ.

: Percussion.
: Piano.
: Recorder.
: Saxophone.
: Songwriting.
: String Bass.
: Strings.
: Synthesizer.
: Trombone.
: Trumpet.
: Tuba.
: Viola.
: Violin.
: Voice.
: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 363 : Vocal Pedagogy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physiology, acoustics, and pedagogy of singing.

MUSIC 364 : Keyboard Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic pedagogical principles as applied to keyboard instruments.

MUSIC 365 : Piano Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 366 : Organ Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Music 364.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

MUSIC 367 : Woodwind Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Woodwind performance major status or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 368 : Brass Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Brass performance major status or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 369A : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F even yr.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on violin or viola, or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 369B : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on double bass or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 369C : String Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instrumental performance major status on cello or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 370 : Guitar Pedagogy. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: instrumental performance major status or instructor's consent.

MUSIC 371 : Developing Children's Musicality, Grades 3--5. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 271, 272.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 272 for grades 3--5, emphasizing the relationship of classroom literature to choral experience and instrumental musicianship. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

MUSIC 372A : Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and to teach woodwind instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on clarinet and saxophone.

MUSIC 372B : Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 372A. Emphasis on flute, oboe, and bassoon.

MUSIC 373A : Brass Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and to teach brass instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on trumpet and French horn.

MUSIC 373B : Brass Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.

MUSIC 374 : Percussion Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F (instrumental education), W (choral education)
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and teach percussion instruments; survey of instructional materials.

: Percussion Workshop: Choral.

MUSIC 375A : String Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to play and teach string instruments; survey of instructional materials, emphasis on violin and viola.

MUSIC 375B : String Workshop. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 194, 196, 198.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 375A. Emphasis on cello and bass.

MUSIC 376A : Choral Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and application of learning theory.

MUSIC 376B : Choral Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum design, score analysis and preparation, choral arranging, rehearsal techniques, survey of literature, and vocal pedagogy, including treble voice and changing voice; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

MUSIC 377A : Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 276, 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and applying learning theory.

MUSIC 377B : Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 221, 235, 271, 276, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum design, evaluating ensemble performance, advanced rehearsal techniques, administering secondary instrumental music programs; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

MUSIC 378 : Music for the Elementary Classroom Teacher. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Establishing a classroom environment for musical development; emphasis on appropriate songs, activities, resources, and teaching strategies.

MUSIC 384 : Jazz Improvisation 2. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 284 or director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate improvisation: theory and technique.

MUSIC 386R : Songwriting 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; Music 186.
DESCRIPTION: Projects in advanced songwriting.

MUSIC 387R : Composition 3. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Music 222, 288, 294, 296, 298, and junior-level screening.
DESCRIPTION: Composition lessons and seminars in principles and techniques of recent art music.

MUSIC 389 : Projects in Music for Media. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music major status, Music 186; 295 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory projects in scoring for broadcast media, publication, and studio recording.

MUSIC 391 : Jazz Keyboard. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music 222, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Lead sheets, chord voicings, and other aspects of jazz performance practice.

MUSIC 394 : Jazz Styles and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth experience in recognizing and differentiating jazz styles, including analyzing and transcribing solo and ensemble jazz materials.

MUSIC 395 : Form and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 293, 295, 297.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

MUSIC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su

400-Level Courses

MUSIC 402A : Vocal Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature with emphasis on art song. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 402B : Vocal Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 402A with emphasis on opera and oratorio.

MUSIC 403A : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 403B : Piano Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 403A.

MUSIC 404A : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 404B : Organ Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 404A.

MUSIC 405 : Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

MUSIC 406 : String Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

MUSIC 407 : Symphonic Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: on dem.
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

MUSIC 410R : Advanced Topics in Music. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 304; 222, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

MUSIC 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Dance 426, and TMA 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

MUSIC 441R : New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

MUSIC 449R : Senior Recital. (1:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: concurrent enrollment in Music 360R, 387R, or 460R, and instructor's consent. Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals.
NOTE: Fee.

MUSIC 460R : Performance Study. (1.5-3:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major in performance; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Bassoon.
: Brass and Percussion.
: Cello.
: Clarinet.
: Conducting.
: Euphonium.
: Flute.
: Guitar.
: Harp.

: Harpsichord.
: Horn.
: Oboe.
: Organ.
: Percussion.
: Piano.
: Recorder.
: Saxophone.
: String Bass.
: Strings.
: Trombone.
: Trumpet.
: Tuba.
: Viola.
: Violin.
: Voice.
: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 462R : Orchestral Repertoire. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Music 460R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Performance instruction in standard orchestral repertoire.

: Orchestral Repertoire. Viola.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Bass
: Orchestral Repertoire: Cello.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Violin.
: Orchestral Repertoire: Woodwinds.

MUSIC 466R : Organ Practicum. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W odd year, F odd year
PREREQUISITE: Music 166 or organ performance major status. Must be taken in consecutive winter and fall semesters.
DESCRIPTION: Developing various practical skills required of the organist.

MUSIC 468 : Jazz Pedagogy. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F and on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and teaching jazz in the secondary school. Designed for the music educator.

MUSIC 469 : Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

MUSIC 470R : Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

: Studio Teaching Bassoon.
: Studio Teaching Cello.
: Studio Teaching Clarinet.
: Studio Teaching Flute.
: Studio Teaching Guitar.
: Studio Teaching Harp.
: Studio Teaching Horn.
: Studio Teaching Oboe.
: Studio Teaching Organ.
: Studio Teaching Percussion.
: Studio Teaching Piano.
: Studio Teaching Saxophone.
: Studio Teaching String Bass.
: Studio Teaching Trombone.
: Studio Teaching Trumpet.
: Studio Teaching Tuba.
: Studio Teaching Viola.
: Studio Teaching Violin.

MUSIC 471 : Practicum in Children's Musicality. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 271, 272, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy for grades 6 and beyond. Children's choir development, including arranging and adapting vocal and instrumental music. Extended pre-student teaching in a demonstration school.

MUSIC 472 : Supervised Teaching in Voice. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 363.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, and practicum in the methodology of studio voice instruction.

MUSIC 473 : Suzuki Methods. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying the principles of Shinichi Suzuki to teaching. Emphasis on violin.

MUSIC 481 : Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

MUSIC 482 : Choral Arranging. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Study of published choral arrangements, as well as techniques for adapting and arranging for choirs.

MUSIC 483 : Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C- or higher in Music 294, 296, 298.
DESCRIPTION: Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

MUSIC 485 : Jazz Arranging and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 295.
DESCRIPTION: Developing concepts and skills related to the orchestration, arranging, and composition of jazz and related contemporary styles of music.

MUSIC 489 : Film Scoring. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 389; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to techniques and technology of film scoring.

MUSIC 494R : Independent Readings. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advising professor's consent as certified by completing a contract obtained from undergraduate studies secretary in E-579 HFAC.

MUSIC 498 : Senior Thesis. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status and faculty advisor's endorsement.

MUSIC 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

MUSIC 500 : Musical Research Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.

MUSIC 501 : Music Education Research Techniques. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.

MUSIC 503 : Aesthetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 304 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental questions of aesthetic theory from classical antiquity to the present, emphasizing musical aesthetics.

MUSIC 505A : Applied Literature. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Minimum of one enrollment in Music 402-407 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced survey and research of literature.

: Applied Literature: Brass Literature.
: Applied Literature: Organ Literature.
: Applied Literature: Percussion Literature.
: Applied Literature: Piano Literature.
: Applied Literature: String Literature.
: Applied Literature: Vocal Literature.
: Applied Literature: Woodwind Literature.

MUSIC 505B : Advanced Applied Literature. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Music 505A.
DESCRIPTION: Intensification and deeper study of Music 505A materials.

: Advanced Applied Literature: Brass Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: Organ Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: Percussion Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: Piano Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: String Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: Vocal Literature.
: Advanced Applied Literature: Woodwind Literature.

MUSIC 506 : Choral Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Concentrated analytical study and application of choral literature through Beethoven.

MUSIC 507 : Choral Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Concentrated analytical study and application of choral literature from post-Beethoven to the present.

MUSIC 508 : Orchestra Literature 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years

MUSIC 509 : Orchestra Literature 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Concentrated analytical study and application of orchestral literature of the romantic era and the 20th century.

MUSIC 510 : Band Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Concentrated study of band literature through analysis and conducting.

MUSIC 532R : Score Preparation and Conducting: Instrumental. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

MUSIC 533R : Choral Conducting and Development. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W odd years, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of score preparation, conducting, and choral development as elements of choral artistry.

MUSIC 534R : Score Preparation and Direction: Jazz. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Su odd years

MUSIC 560R : Performance Instruction. (1-2:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Graduate music student status.
DESCRIPTION: Performance instruction for students not specializing in performance, and for performance students wishing to study secondary instruments.
NOTE: Fee.

: Graduate Conducting Instruction.
: Graduate Organ Instruction.
: Graduate Piano Instruction.
: Graduate String Instruction.
: Graduate Voice Instruction.
: Graduate Woodwind Instruction.
: Harpsichord Instruction.

MUSIC 570 : Music for Elementary School Teachers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Music 371, 471, or elementary music teaching experience.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in teaching various music activities in the elementary school.

MUSIC 571 : Elementary Education Music Pedagogy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Music 371 and equivalent of elementary education teaching minor in music.
DESCRIPTION: Orff, Dalcroze, and Kodaly materials and techniques.

MUSIC 575R : Summer Music Workshops and Clinics. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)

: Instructional Methods 1.
: Instructional Methods 2.
: Instructional Methods 3.
: Literature and Research 2.
: Literature and Research 3.
: Literature and Research 1.
: Prepatory Musicianship.
: Teacher Musicianship 1.
: Teacher Musicianship 3.

MUSIC 576 : Fundamentals and Technlques of the Marching Band. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Music 294, 296.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, charting, and scoring for marching bands.
NOTE: For music education majors only.

MUSIC 581 : Twentieth-Century Orchestration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 481.
DESCRIPTION: New techniques for standard and new instruments; analysis and listening.

MUSIC 583 : Sixteenth-Century Counterpoint. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 483.
DESCRIPTION: Strict modal counterpoint in sixteenth- century style (Palestrina); includes species, text setting, and motet.

MUSIC 587R : Composition. (3:3:0)

MUSIC 591 : Advanced Topics in Keyboard Harmony. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

MUSIC 595 : Score Analysis. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of representative choral and instrumental works from the Renaissance through contemporary styles.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

BYU Salt Lake Center

Lee J. Glines, Director
345 West North Temple Street
3 Triad Center, Suite 300
Salt Lake City, UT 84180
Telephone: (801) 933-9400
Internet: http://ce.byu.edu/sl/

As the continuing education arm of the university in the Salt Lake Valley, the BYU Salt Lake Center offers courses through colleges and departments of the university. Most classes are held at night, making it possible for full-time and part-time students to take many of their required courses as well as general education and elective courses in Salt Lake City. Register for BYU Salt Lake Center classes by using the online registration screens on Route Y.

Students not admitted to Brigham Young University are welcome to take classes at the BYU Salt Lake Center provided they have earned a high school diploma (or passed the GED), are willing to live by the CES Honor Code and the BYU Dress and Grooming Standards, have received ecclesiastical endorsement, and have been cleared for enrollment at the center.

Students who are formally admitted to BYU's Bachelor of General Studies program are able to complete university core, religion, and many of their required emphasis courses at the Salt Lake Center. BGS admission gives registration eligibility for Salt Lake Center courses so no additional clearance is needed to enroll. For admission and program details, see the Bachelor of General Studies section.

The executive MPA (Master of Public Administration) program is offered at the center, allowing students to pursue a master's degree by attending classes one night each week while continuing to work during the day.

Professional development courses, a certification program in family history, and personal enrichment courses are also offered at the BYU Salt Lake Center.

Class schedules for each semester or term are available at the Web address noted above, at the BYU Web site, or on online registration system screens. Print versions can be obtained by contacting the BYU Salt Lake Center or picking them up at the information desk in the Wilkinson Student Center, the Smoot Administration Building, or the Harman Continuing Education Building. BYU Salt Lake Center Classes are also listed in the online BYU class schedules.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

MUSIC 596 : Schenker Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 303, 395; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Schenker's system of tonal analysis.

MUSIC 599R : Academic Internship. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Internship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to School of Music Department Home

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

School of Music Faculty

Professors

Brough, Ronald Paul

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, North Texas State University, 1981
MM, North Texas State University, 1983
DA, University of Northern Colorado, 1997

Bush, Douglas E

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MM, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1982

Call, Robert Steven

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Utah State University, 1971
MM, Utah State University, 1975
PhD, University of Utah, 2000

Dabczynski, Andrew H

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Eastman School of Music, 1976
MA, University of Connecticut, 1978
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1994

Durham, Thomas L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Utah, 1974
MM, University of Utah, 1975
PhD, University of Iowa, 1978

Giovannetti, Geralyn

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Western Ontario, 1978
MM, University of Western Ontario, 1980
DMA, University of Michigan, 1990

Hicks, Michael D

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1980
MM, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1981
DMA, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1984

Hopkin, J Arden

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1971
MM, North Texas State University, 1974
DMA, University of Rochester, 1978

Johnson, Steven P

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, California State University, Fullerton, 1976
MA, California State University, Fullerton, 1979
PhD, California State University, Los Angeles, 1989

Jones, Stephen Morrill

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BMu, Brigham Young University, 1983
MMu, University of Cincinnati, 1986
DMA, University of Cincinnati, 1989

Katseanes, Kory Lynn

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1974
BA, University of Utah, 1976
MA, University of Utah, 1979

Lindeman, Steve

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1977
MA, Queens College, City University of New York, 1983
PhD, Rutgers University, New Brunswick, 1995

Lowe, Laurence M

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, San Francisco Conservatory of Music, 1980
MM, Eastman School of Music, 1981

Monson, Dale Eugene

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham YOung University, 1975
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Columbia University, 1982

Peery-Fox, Irene

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, The Juilliard School, 1969
MS, The Juilliard School, 1972
DMA, Peabody Conservatory of Music, Johns Hopkins University, 1987

Powley, E Harrison

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Rochester, 1965
MA, University of Rochester, 1968
PhD, University of Rochester, 1975

Shumway, Jeffrey L.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Juilliard School of Music, 1977
DM, Indiana University East, 1982

Smith, Charles Raymond

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1975
MM, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1976
DM, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1982

Staheli, Ronald J

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MM, University of Southern California, 1973
DMA, University of Southern California, 1977

Vincent, Lawrence Paul

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MM, Northern Arizona University, 1978
DMA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1981

Associate Professors

Anderson, Richard Paul

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Arizona State University, 1968
MM, Northwestern University, 1970
DMA, University of Colorado, Boulder, 1986

Asplund, Christian T

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Mills College, 1993
DMA, University of Washington, 1998

Belknap, Monte L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Cincinnati Conservatory of Music, 1991
MM, University of Cincinnati Conservatory of Music, 1994

Bevan, Julie

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1973
MM, University of Southern California, 1975
MLIS, Dominican University, 1996

Bigelow, Anny Claudine

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1991
MM, Brigham Young University, 1994
DMA, University of Maryland, 2002

Boothe, Randall Wayne

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young Universityâ€'Hawaii, 1975
MM, Brigham Young University, 1979

Broomhead, G Paul

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1987
MM, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of Washington, 1999

Brown, David C

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1975
MM, University of Toledo, 1997

Clayton, April Diane

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Cincinnati, 1995
MM, University of Cincinnati, 1996
DMA, The Juilliard School, 2001

Cook, R Don

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1980
MM, Brigham Young University, 1982
DMA, University of Kansas, 1987

Hall, Rosalind Beth

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Royal Academy of Music, 1977
MM, Brigham Young University, 1992

Hansen, H Eric

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Peabody Conservatory of Music, 1988
MA, Peabody Conservatory of Music, 1989

Harker, Brian Cameron

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MPhil, Columbia University, 1995
PhD, Columbia University, 1997

Hinckley, Jaren Smith

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Utah, 1993
MM, Indiana University, 1995
DM, Florida State University, 2002

Holden, Scott L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Michigan, 1992
MM, The Juilliard School, 1995
DMA, Manhattan School of Music, 2002

Howard, Luke Benjamin

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: B Mus Ed, Sydney Conservatorium of Music, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Michigan, 1997

Jaccard, Jerry L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: B Mus Ed, University of Arizona, 1965
MME, Holy Names University, 1976
EdD, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, 1995

Kenney, Susan Hobson

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1978

Peterson, Donald L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
DMA, Arizona State University, 1986

Ricks, Steven Leon

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1993
MM, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1995
C.A.M.S., King's College, London, 2000
PhD, University of Utah, 2001

Smith, Christian B

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1991
MM, Brigham Young University, 1993
DMA, University of Michigan, 2006

Assistant Professors

Grimshaw, Jeremy

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BM, University of Utah, 1998
MA, Eastman School of Music, 2002
PhD, Eastman School of Music, 2005

Kimball, Wilford (Will) Wayne

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1994
MM, Duquesne University, 1997
DMA, Arizona State University, 2001

Reich, Diane Thueson

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BM, Utah State University, 1994
MM, Indiana University, 1997
DM, Indiana University, 2003

Associate Teaching Professor

Lockwood, Gayle G.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: School of Music
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1968
MM, University of Utah, 1971

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Music Dance Theatre

Admission to Degree Program

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring program admissions approval.

The Discipline

The BFA in music dance theatre (MDT) is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BFA in Music Dance Theatre

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Music Dance Theatre (76.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring program admissions approval. Please see the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Live and taped auditions for entrance into the MDT major are held in the January preceding fall registration. Students may begin the MDT major in the fall only.
2. Pass a proficiency examination in each of the three areas at the end of each semester.
3. Complete at least 40 hours in residence at BYU.
4. Any grade below C– in major courses is not acceptable for graduation. Dance technique courses require a minimum grade of B– for advancement to the next level.
5. Complete the following:

MUSIC 113 : Beginning Piano Techniques 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in piano for nonmusic majors.

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

MUSIC 261 : Contemporary Vocal Techniques. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 161 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary vocal styles and techniques, including pop/belt, stage, and studio singing.

MUSIC 290 : Music Theory for MDT Majors. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 113 and music dance theatre (MDT) major status.
DESCRIPTION: Music theory, sight singing, aural dictation, and keyboard harmony.

6. Complete four hours of the following:

MUSIC 260R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

: Performance Instruction: Bassoon.
: Performance Instruction: Brass and Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Cello.
: Performance Instruction: Clarinet.
: Performance Instruction: Euphonium.
: Performance Instruction: Flute.
: Performance Instruction: Guitar.
: Performance Instruction: Harp.
: Performance Instruction: Harpsichord.
: Performance Instruction: Horn.

Bachelor of General Studies Program (BGS)

Ellen Allred, Director
315 HCEB
(801) 422-4351, toll-free 888-298-3137

Brigham Young University's Bachelor of General Studies (BGS) Program offers former BYU students who are no longer able to attend BYU and have been away from the university for two or more years an opportunity to complete their bachelor's degree from home. Applicants must have already completed 30 credit hours at the BYU campus in Provo as an admitted day student and must abide by the Church Educational System Honor Code and receive an annual ecclesiastical endorsement. This program is not available to current BYU students.

Admission to Degree Program

Applicants complete the admission procedure through the Bachelor of General Studies Office and pay a fee of $30. The BGS program is open to former students who meet all of the following criteria:

- Have completed a minimum of 30 semester hours of BYU on-campus credit in Provo as an admitted day student.
- Have not completed any courses as a BYU day continuing student in the last two years.
- Have never completed a bachelor's or higher degree.
- Are in good standing (academic, financial, etc.) at all universities attended.
- Have a 2.0 or higher BYU and cumulative GPA. (If any academic disciplinary action—warning, probation, or suspension—has been taken against you, contact the BGS Office before proceeding with the application process.)
- Will abide by the Church Educational System Honor Code and receive an annual ecclesiastical endorsement.
- Have been approved by the BGS admissions committee.
- Have successfully completed the StDev 100 course (1-credit-hour Independent Study course taken **after provisional acceptance into program)**.

The Discipline

The bachelor of general studies degree is designed to help former BYU students utilize their previously earned credit as much as possible. The BGS uses the same BYU curriculum offered on campus and requires the same general education, religious education, and campus residency as on-campus degrees. Up to 90 of the required 120 credit hours may be earned through Independent Study. The major is general studies, with an emphasis in one of eight areas of study. The emphasis adds a measure of specialization and can be completed in one of the following areas: American studies, English and American literature, family history, family life, history, management, psychology, or writing.

Students may earn only one emphasis and do not have the option of creating custom-made areas of study. However, within the number of general electives available, students can utilize credit previously earned in a former major or choose to take courses in a particular concentration.

The BGS is a fully accredited bachelor's degree from Brigham Young University. Students pursue this program for a variety of reasons. Some desire a sense of accomplishment—to complete a degree they began years ago. Others are looking for career advancement or to eventually pursue a postgraduate degree.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a

: Performance Instruction: Oboe.
: Performance Instruction: Organ.
: Performance Instruction: Percussion.
: Performance Instruction: Piano.
: Performance Instruction: Recorder.
: Performance Instruction: Saxophone.
: Performance Instruction: String Bass.
: Performance Instruction: Strings.
: Performance Instruction: Synthesizer.
: Performance Instruction: Trombone.
: Performance Instruction: Trumpet.
: Performance Instruction: Tuba.
: Performance Instruction: Viola.
: Performance Instruction: Violin.
: Performance Instruction: Voice.
: Performance Instruction: Woodwinds.

7. Complete four hours of the following:
   MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
   Performance Instruction.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
   DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
   NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

8. Complete the following:
   DANCE 131 : Jazz Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

   DANCE 135 : Tap Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

   DANCE 231 : Jazz Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 131 or equivalent; 240R or 290.

   DANCE 235 : Tap Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 135 or equivalent.

   DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

   DANCE 243R : Studio Workshop in Modern Dance Technique and Theory. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 244R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Technique and theory in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 244R : Studio Workship in Modern Dance Improvisation and Composition. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation and composition in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 290 : Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp

   DANCE 291R : Ballet Technique 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 290 or equivalent.

   DANCE 331 : Jazz Dance Technique 2. (1.5:0:4.5)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 231 or equivalent; 241R, 242, or 291R.

   DANCE 361 : Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:6)
   OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Dance 231, 235, 243, 244, 291R, TMA 229.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

DANCE 390R : Ballet Technique 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

9. Complete the following:

TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

TMA 121 : Voice and Diction. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: MDT or theatre education major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills involved in producing an effective voice; International Phonetic Alphabet. Lab required.

TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

TMA 124 : Acting. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114, 123. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: Acting BFA majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 127, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating acting skills; building a character through exercises and scene work.

TMA 223 : Acting Improvisation. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting, BFA acting, or MDT major status; TMA 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 222, 224, Dance 140R.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery of emotion, thought process, and impulse through improvisation.

TMA 229 : Musical Scene Study. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 124, Music 161, Dance 140. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of two genres of musical theatre; text analysis, research, written assignments.

TMA 267 : Makeup 1. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

TMA 421 : The Business: Marketing Yourself as a Performer. (1:1.5:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the entertainment industry, including telephone interviews with entertainment industry personnel. Required research project.

TMA 427 : Auditions. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 225, 229, 324, 424. BFA MDT majors: TMA 229, 324 (or 424), Dance 240. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 425.
DESCRIPTION: Auditions, cold reading, resumes, and the business end of acting, music, and dance for the professional performer.

10. Complete concurrently the following MDT Seminar courses:

MUSIC 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: music dance theatre BFA major status; TMA 114, 229, concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, and TMA 328.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, and TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

DANCE 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: music dance theatre BFA major status; TMA 114, 229; concurrent enrollment in Music 328, TMA 328.

RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

TMA 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA MDT major status; TMA 229; Concurrent enrollment in Dance 328, Music 328.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

11. Complete concurrently the following History of Music Dance Theatre courses:
MUSIC 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Music 290; Dance 242; TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Dance 300 and TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Dance in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, and theatre.

DANCE 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 290, Dance 243R, 244R, TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Music 300 and TMA 300.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, and TMA 328.
DESCRIPTION: Dance in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, theatre.

TMA 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: MDT major status; Music 290, Dance 243R, 244R, TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Dance 300, Music 300.
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, TMA 328.
DESCRIPTION: Theatre in the Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, and theatre.

12. Complete concurrently the following Senior Performance Project courses:
MUSIC 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Dance 426, and TMA 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

DANCE 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Music 426, and TMA 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

TMA 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:5)
PREREQUISITE: MDT major status; TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Music 426, Dance 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

13. Complete 9.5 hours of electives from the following music, dance, or theatre courses:
MUSIC 186 : Songwriting 1. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Basic music reading and keyboard skills.
DESCRIPTION: Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

MUSIC 319R : Music Theatre Performance. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: audition and director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

: Living Legends Performance.
: Young Ambassador Performance.

MUSIC 360R : Performance Instruction. (.5-2:1:1)
Performance Instruction.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; jury approval.
DESCRIPTION: Private instruction and studio class.
NOTE: From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.
MUSIC 363 : Vocal Pedagogy. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physiology, acoustics, and pedagogy of singing.

MUSIC 386R : Songwriting 2. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music major status; Music 186.
DESCRIPTION: Projects in advanced songwriting.

MUSIC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Internship or externship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

MUSIC 402A : Vocal Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of literature with emphasis on art song. Research in area of concentration.

MUSIC 402B : Vocal Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Music 402A with emphasis on opera and oratorio.

MUSIC 472 : Supervised Teaching in Voice. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Music 363.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, and practicum in the methodology of studio voice instruction.

DANCE 240R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills and basic theories.

DANCE 335 : Tap Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 235 or equivalent.

DANCE 340R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.

DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballet.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballroom.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: World Dance.

DANCE 363 : Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

DANCE 368R : DancEnsemble - Modern Dance Performance and Choreography. (1-2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in modern dance choreography and performance.

DANCE 390R : Ballet Technique 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 391R : Ballet Technique 4. (2.5:0:7.5)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 393R : Ballet Pointe, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R.

DANCE 399R : Academic Internship: Dance. (.5-4:0:50)

DANCE 429R : Dance Performance 2. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

DANCE 440R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or equivalent; instructor's consent.

DANCE 462 : Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362.
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

DANCE 468R : The Dancers' Company - Modern Dance Performance. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performing modern dance repertory and new works on and off campus.

DANCE 490R : Ballet Technique 5. (3:0:9.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ballet technique, including advanced pointe work for women and advanced technique for men.

DANCE 495R : Pas de Deux. (1:0:ARR)
DANCE 498R : Ballet Performance Company. (2:0:10)
DANCE 540R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 5. (2:0:5)
DANCE 562R : Modern Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:4)
DANCE 563R : Modern Dance Improvisation, Advanced. (1:0:4)

TMA 100 : Introduction to Visual Literacy. (3:2:2)
TMA 127 : Beginning Stage Combat. (1:2:1)
TMA 215R : Workshop 1: Special Projects. (.5-6:0:ARR)
TMA 224 : Acting for Film and TV. (3:6:ARR)
TMA 225 : Neutral Mask. (2:2:0)
TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
TMA 322 : Classical Voice. (2:4:0)
TMA 324 : Acting Classics. (3:6:0)
TMA 325 : Stage Combat. (2:4:2)
TMA 329 : Theatre and Film Acting Conservatory. (3:6:ARR)
TMA 336 : Directing Principles and Practices. (3:4:1)
TMA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
TMA 420R : Performance Workshop 2. (.5-3:0:ARR)
TMA 422 : Dialects. (2:4:1)
TMA 424 : Advanced Acting. (3:6:0)
TMA 425 : Character Mask. (2:4:0)
TMA 429 : Performance: Recital. (3:2:4)
TMA 443R : Writer/Director/Actor Workshop. (3:6:1)
TMA 515R : Workshop 3: Special Projects. (1-6:0:ARR)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Dance Courses

Show all Music Courses

Show all Theatre and Media Arts Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science

Oscar A. Pike, Chair
S-221 ESC, (801) 422-3912

Life Sciences Student Services
379 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Degree Program

Some degree programs in the Department of Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the department for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Dietetics
BS in Food Science
BS in Nutritional Science

Minor

Nutrition

Students should see Life Sciences Student Services for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Note: For the molecular biology program, see Microbiology and Molecular Biology.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Food Science
MS in Nutritional Science

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Dietetics (80 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see below for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Following prerequisite courses, the Didactic Program in Dietetics (DPD) consists primarily of dietetics course work at the junior and senior level. The Brigham Young University Didactic Program in Dietetics is currently granted accreditation status by the Commission on Accreditation for Dietetics Education of the American Dietetic Association, 120 South Riverside Plaza, Suite 2000, Chicago, IL 60606-6995, (312) 899-4876. Following graduation, students must gain acceptance into and complete a dietetic internship (DI) to qualify for the national examination required for Registered Dietitian (RD) status.

Program Acceptance Requirements

1. Students must apply by February 15 for admission into the professional sequence in the fall. Formal acceptance is required to continue with the professional sequence.
2. Enrollment is limited to 40 students.
3. Four of the following eight courses must be completed at the time of application: Acc 200, Chem 285, MMBio 221, NDFS 100, 200, 290; PDBio 220, 305.
4. Major GPA and performance in nutrition, dietetics, and food science courses will be considered. Successful applicants typically have a major GPA greater than 3.0 and nutrition, dietetics, and food science course grades greater than B–.
5. Applicants need at least 300 hours of dietetics-related work and/or volunteer experience.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following courses (to be completed before professional sequence):

   A. Complete the following:

   NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

   NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

   NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

   NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
   DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 290 : Introduction to Dietetics. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The profession of dietetics; exposure to specialty areas through guest lectures.

B. Complete the following:
CHEM 101** : Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases.
NOTE: Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

CHEM 285*** : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

****Note:** Or an equivalent general chemistry course from high school or junior college.

*****Note:** Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 481 sequence is recommended for students interested in medical or dental school or graduate programs in nutrition.

C. Complete one course from the following:
CHEM 103 : Introductory Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory laboratory techniques required for simple classical experiments in chemistry.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

D. Complete the following:
ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence

intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.

NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following professional sequence courses (after being admitted into the program):

NDFS 300 : Clinical Nutrition 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; physiology, biochemistry; dietetics major status.
DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.

NDFS 356 : Clinical Nutrition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300.
DESCRIPTION: Medical nutrition therapy across disease states; continuation of NDFS 300.

NDFS 374 : Food Production Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200, 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Managing processes and techniques of quantity food production in commercial and institutional food systems.

NDFS 375 : Food Production Management Laboratory. (2:0:8)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 374 or concurrent enrollment.

NDFS 400 : Community Nutrition. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dietetics major or NDFS 200 or 201.
DESCRIPTION: Public health nutrition applied to community programs.

NDFS 401 : Community Nutrition Fieldwork. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NFDS 300, concurrent enrollment in NDFS 400, and dietetics major status.
DESCRIPTION: Experience in public health and community nutrition programs.

NDFS 405 : Nutrition Assessment Lab. (.5:0:3)
OFFERED: F on block
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300, 356.
DESCRIPTION: Developing skill in anthropometric, biochemical, clinical, and dietary parameters of nutritional assessment.

NDFS 424 : Nutrition Through the Life Cycle. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300 or 305 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dietary recommendations for pregnancy and lactation; infant feeding; nutritional requirements, diet, and health concerns of preschoolers, school-age children, adolescents, and the elderly.

NDFS 435 : Nutritional Biochemistry. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Metabolic interrelationships among nutrients.

NDFS 440 : Teaching Methods in Dietetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Learning settings, learning theory; curriculum development and dissemination for dietetics majors.

NDFS 445 : Food Service Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 374.
DESCRIPTION: Input, transformation, and output in the food service system; emphasizes procurement, production, service, and sanitation.

NDFS 458 : Management in Dietetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 445.
DESCRIPTION: Management cycle and theory applied to clinical and administrative dietetics.

NDFS 466 : Advanced Dietetics Practice. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 356, 445.
DESCRIPTION: Skill development in specialized topics of medical nutrition therapy and administrative dietetics.

NDFS 475 : Research Methods in Dietetics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 466.
DESCRIPTION: Research techniques in a variety of dietetics practice areas.

NDFS 490 : Professionalism Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in dietetics program.
DESCRIPTION: Issues in professional practice.

NDFS 491 : Internship Preparation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in dietetics program.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting internship sites and preparing dietetic internship application packet.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

Recommended Courses

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

NDFS 361 : Food Microbiology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221, 222; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenic and spoilage microorganisms in foods and their control. Beneficial microorganisms in food systems. Influence of the food system on growth and survival of microorganisms.

NDFS 380 : International Nutrition and Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of nutrient deficiencies common in developing countries. Appropriate interventions to prevent or treat malnutrition.

Recommended Minors

complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BGS in General Studies

Emphases

American Studies
English and American Literature
Family History
Family Life
History
Management
Psychology
Writing

Students should see the BGS office for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

General Information

To earn a bachelor of general studies degree, students must complete the following requirements:

1. A minimum of 120 semester hours of earned credit, which breaks down as follows:

StDev 100 Independent Study course	(1 hour)
University core	(48.5 hours minimum)
Emphasis requirements	(30 hours)
StDev 490 Independent Study course	(2 hours)
General electives	(10–39 hours)

2. 30 hours of BYU campus residency
3. 40 credit hours of 300- or 400-level courses, including 15 hours in the emphasis.

The following policies also apply:

1. A minimum of 10 hours in the area of emphasis must be enrolled in and completed through BYU **after** formal admission to the BGS program. All emphasis courses taken after admission to BGS must be BYU courses.
2. Students must earn a minimum 2.0 BYU, cumulative, and emphasis grade point average (management emphasis requires 2.25).
3. The program must be completed in eight years (or fewer).

BGS course and credit requirements can be filled in the following ways:

Prior Courses and Credits Transferred into the Program

1. Credits earned previously through BYU.
2. Credits earned previously at accredited colleges and universities.

Courses and Credits Earned After Admission to the Program

Once admitted to the BGS program, it is expected that any remaining course work will be completed through BYU. This can be done in the following ways:

1. Courses completed through BYU Independent Study.
2. Courses completed at the BYU Salt Lake Center.
3. Courses completed through BYU Evening Classes.
4. Courses completed at BYU during spring and summer terms.

The Church of Jesus

The following minors are very complementary to a dietetics major, but any area of interest could be considered:

Business
Communication
Gerontology (See School of Family Life).
International Development
Spanish

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS) Courses

Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Food Science (65–68 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Food science is the multidisciplinary study of food and the application of knowledge thus gained to developing food products and processes, preserving and storing food, and assuring food safety and quality. Food science addresses the conversion of raw agricultural products into a nutritious, convenient, and economical food supply. Most of the food products available in grocery stores were developed, produced, and tested by food scientists. Students graduating in food science are well prepared for immediate employment in the food industry. The technical track curriculum is approved by the Institute of Food Technologists, the principal professional organization of food scientists, and provides excellent preparation as a premedical, predental, or other preprofessional major. With the addition of one credit hour, students graduating in the technical track are able to obtain a minor in chemistry. Students pursuing the management track are eligible to apply for a business minor and are well prepared for graduate studies in a Master of Business Administration (MBA) program.

Valuable experience is gained through numerous opportunities available in the program, including faculty-mentored research, employment within the department, and paid food industry internships. Students also develop a network of professional contacts through participation in the Food Science Club, professional organizations, and national competitions. Scholarships are available from department, college, university, and professional organizations.

Career Opportunities

Exciting careers are available in such areas as food product development, production management and sales, ensuring food safety and quality, or basic research. Salaries are highly competitive. Typically there are not enough graduates to fill all the unique and challenging opportunities available in the worldwide, multibillion dollar food industry. The many facets of food science provide employment in large and small food companies, food ingredient companies, government agencies, and universities. Graduates are prepared for immediate employment, further study toward advanced degrees, or professional programs such as medicine, dentistry, pharmacy, law, and business.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Consult with a faculty advisor prior to finalizing your curriculum plan.
2. Complete the following core requirements:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
- DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
- NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 350 : Food Analysis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352, 353; NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, methods and techniques of qualitative and quantitative physical, chemical, and biological analysis of food and food ingredients.

NDFS 355 : Food Process Engineering. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 and calculus.
DESCRIPTION: Mass and energy balances, thermodynamics, fluid flow, heat and mass transfer; unit operations in food processing, including thermal processing, frying, irradiation, refrigeration, freezing, and dehydration.

NDFS 361 : Food Microbiology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221, 222; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenic and spoilage microorganisms in foods and their control. Beneficial microorganisms in food systems. Influence of the food system on growth and survival of microorganisms.

NDFS 362 : Food Commodity Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Characteristics of raw food material; principles of food preservation and food processing techniques; packaging materials and methods; sanitation and water and waste management.

NDFS 462 : Food Regulations and Quality Assurance. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Federal and international food regulations and methods of assuring food quality.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

3. Complete one of the following tracks:
   A. Food science technical track:
      1. Complete the following:

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

(1 hour minimum)
CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 450 : Food Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and properties of food components, including water, carbohydrates, protein, lipids, other nutrients, and food additives. Chemistry of changes occurring during processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 464 : Food Sensory Evaluation. (1::3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 465.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical and affective methods of assessing sensory properties of food using statistical methods. Laboratory experience in sensory research and techniques. Integrative capstone course.

NDFS 465 : Food Product Development. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 350, 355, 361, 362, 462, or concurrent enrollment; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 464.
DESCRIPTION: Integration and application of food science principles to develop new food products. Laboratory experience in food product design and development. Integrative capstone course.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

2. Complete one course from the following:
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

B. Food industry management track:

1. Complete the following:
ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 488 : Agribusiness Management 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Econ 110; Bus M 300 or 340 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understanding competitive forces and the development of sustainable competitive advantage for firms in the food, fiber, and horticulture industries.

BUS M 489 : Agribusiness Management 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 (or equivalent), Econ 110 (or equivalent), Bus M 340.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing marketing plans and programs for companies participating in the value chain of agribusiness industries.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 191 : Introduction to Food Science. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Guest lectures and exposure to vocations in food science.

NDFS 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:ARR:ARR)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus work experience sponsored by industrial, government, or academic institutions.

(1 hour minimum required)

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

2. Complete one course from the following guest lecture series:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

3. Complete one of the following major electives:

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 450 : Food Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and properties of food components, including water, carbohydrates, protein, lipids, other nutrients, and food additives. Chemistry of changes occurring during processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 465 : Food Product Development. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 350, 355, 361, 362, 462, or concurrent enrollment; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 464.
DESCRIPTION: Integration and application of food science principles to develop new food products. Laboratory experience in food product design and development. Integrative capstone course.

4. During the junior year or upon declaring food science as a major, students are strongly encouraged to select one of the following options to enhance career preparation (students in food industry management track MUST take 1 credit hour of NDFS 399R to graduate):
   A. Choose a research topic and faculty mentor. Working in a research laboratory for 10–20 hours per week over the course of eight months, the student has daily contact with graduate students, technicians, and fellow undergraduate colleagues and frequent interactions with a faculty mentor. Student research often leads to participation in a publication and/or a presentation at a professional meeting. NDFS 494R credit is available.

   B. Produce a senior thesis in collaboration with a faculty mentor, derived primarily from library study that extensively explores the relevant questions. The thesis is written in the format of a scientific review paper. NDFS 494R credit is available.

C. Work in an approved, faculty-supervised summer internship with a food company (generally the internship does not include study abroad.) NDFS 399R credit is available.

Recommended Courses

Consult with a faculty advisor before selecting:

1. Food science technical track:

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

IAS 220 : Introduction to Development Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of international development in non-formal education, micro-enterprises, community organizations; hunger, poverty, and other special problems in developing areas of the world.

MFG 201 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Egyptian antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 202 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 355 : Plastics Materials and Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding plastic materials, properties, and uses. Survey of plastic-manufacturing processes. Designing plastic products and manufacturing systems.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 191 : Introduction to Food Science. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Guest lectures and exposure to vocations in food science.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

2. Food industry mangement track:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

or

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

IAS 220 : Introduction to Development Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of international development in non-formal education, micro-enterprises, community organizations; hunger, poverty, and other special problems in developing areas of the world.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

MFG 201 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Egyptian antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 202 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 479 : (Mfg-BusM) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: BusM 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 450 : Food Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and properties of food components, including water, carbohydrates, protein, lipids, other nutrients, and food additives. Chemistry of changes occurring during processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 464 : Food Sensory Evaluation. (1::3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 465.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical and affective methods of assessing sensory properties of food using statistical methods.

Laboratory experience in sensory research and techniques. Integrative capstone course.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Nutritional Science (61 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This degree provides excellent preparation for those individuals in preprofessional programs (e.g., premedicine, predentistry, prelaw) or for an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in nutrition or biological sciences.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core requirements:

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 305 : Nutritional Implications of Disease. (4:4:0)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305.
- DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.
- NOTE: For nutritional science majors.

NDFS 394 : Nutrition Research Fundamentals. (1:1:0)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Design and protocols for and ethics of research with human subjects and animals. Scientific literature searches and presentations.

NDFS 435 : Nutritional Biochemistry. (4:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305; Chem 481 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Metabolic interrelationships among nutrients.

2. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 8 hours from the following:

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
- DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: American Studies Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

   HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

   PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

3. Complete 18 hours from the following:
   A HTG 100 : American Heritage. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of American constitutional and economic principles, and patterns of historical development.

   ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

   ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
   DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

   ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
   DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

   ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.

DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

NDFS 380 : International Nutrition and Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of nutrient deficiencies common in developing countries. Appropriate interventions to prevent or treat malnutrition.

NDFS 400 : Community Nutrition. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dietetics major or NDFS 200 or 201.
DESCRIPTION: Public health nutrition applied to community programs.

NDFS 424 : Nutrition Through the Life Cycle. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300 or 305 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dietary recommendations for pregnancy and lactation; infant feeding; nutritional requirements, diet, and health concerns of preschoolers, school-age children, adolescents, and the elderly.

NDFS 494R : Undergraduate Research in Nutrition, Dietetics, or Food Science. (1-3:0:9)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's and department chair's consent; 14 hours of nutrition, dietetics, and food science courses.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research experience or library thesis.

(up to 3 hours)
PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

3. Complete the following:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

(1 hour required)
CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Recommended Courses

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

HLTH 345 : Principles of Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation and control of epidemics.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Nutrition (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Many of these courses have prerequisites. Most students choosing this minor will have completed the prerequisites as part of their major. Other students will need to complete them.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

2. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 10 hours from the following:

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

NDFS 305 : Nutritional Implications of Disease. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.
NOTE: For nutritional science majors.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

NDFS 380 : International Nutrition and Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of nutrient deficiencies common in developing countries. Appropriate interventions to prevent or treat malnutrition.

NDFS 400 : Community Nutrition. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dietetics major or NDFS 200 or 201.
DESCRIPTION: Public health nutrition applied to community programs.

NDFS 424 : Nutrition Through the Life Cycle. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300 or 305 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dietary recommendations for pregnancy and lactation; infant feeding; nutritional requirements, diet, and health concerns of preschoolers, school-age children, adolescents, and the elderly.

NDFS 435 : Nutritional Biochemistry. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Metabolic interrelationships among nutrients.

Show all Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science (NDFS)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 191 : Introduction to Food Science. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Guest lectures and exposure to vocations in food science.

200-Level Courses

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 290 : Introduction to Dietetics. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The profession of dietetics; exposure to specialty areas through guest lectures.

NDFS 292R : Fieldwork in Dietetics. (.5-2:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fieldwork for international students.

300-Level Courses

NDFS 300 : Clinical Nutrition 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; physiology, biochemistry; dietetics major status.
DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.

NDFS 305 : Nutritional Implications of Disease. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.
NOTE: For nutritional science majors.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

NDFS 330 : Comparative Animal Nutrition. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Comparative digestion, absorption, and utilization of nutrients and nutritional applications of domestic, pet, and wildlife species.

NDFS 350 : Food Analysis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352, 353; NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, methods and techniques of qualitative and quantitative physical, chemical, and biological analysis of food and food ingredients.

NDFS 355 : Food Process Engineering. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 and calculus.
DESCRIPTION: Mass and energy balances, thermodynamics, fluid flow, heat and mass transfer; unit operations in food processing, including thermal processing, frying, irradiation, refrigeration, freezing, and dehydration.

NDFS 356 : Clinical Nutrition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300.
DESCRIPTION: Medical nutrition therapy across disease states; continuation of NDFS 300.

NDFS 361 : Food Microbiology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221, 222; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenic and spoilage microorganisms in foods and their control. Beneficial microorganisms in food systems. Influence of the food system on growth and survival of microorganisms.

NDFS 362 : Food Commodity Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Characteristics of raw food material; principles of food preservation and food processing techniques; packaging materials and methods; sanitation and water and waste management.

NDFS 374 : Food Production Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200, 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Managing processes and techniques of quantity food production in commercial and institutional food systems.

NDFS 375 : Food Production Management Laboratory. (2:0:8)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 374 or concurrent enrollment.

NDFS 380 : International Nutrition and Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of nutrient deficiencies common in developing countries. Appropriate interventions to prevent or treat malnutrition.

NDFS 390R : Special Topics in Food Science and Nutrition. (1-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

NDFS 394 : Nutrition Research Fundamentals. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design and protocols for and ethics of research with human subjects and animals. Scientific literature searches and presentations.

NDFS 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus work experience sponsored by industrial, government, or academic institutions.

400-Level Courses

NDFS 400 : Community Nutrition. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dietetics major or NDFS 200 or 201.
DESCRIPTION: Public health nutrition applied to community programs.

NDFS 401 : Community Nutrition Fieldwork. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NFDS 300, concurrent enrollment in NDFS 400, and dietetics major status.
DESCRIPTION: Experience in public health and community nutrition programs.

NDFS 405 : Nutrition Assessment Lab. (.5:0:3)
OFFERED: F on block
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300, 356.
DESCRIPTION: Developing skill in anthropometric, biochemical, clinical, and dietary parameters of nutritional assessment.

NDFS 424 : Nutrition Through the Life Cycle. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300 or 305 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dietary recommendations for pregnancy and lactation; infant feeding; nutritional requirements, diet, and health concerns of preschoolers, school-age children, adolescents, and the elderly.

NDFS 435 : Nutritional Biochemistry. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Metabolic interrelationships among nutrients.

NDFS 440 : Teaching Methods in Dietetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Learning settings, learning theory; curriculum development and dissemination for dietetics majors.

NDFS 445 : Food Service Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 374.
DESCRIPTION: Input, transformation, and output in the food service system; emphasizes procurement, production, service, and sanitation.

NDFS 450 : Food Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and properties of food components, including water, carbohydrates, protein, lipids, other nutrients, and food additives. Chemistry of changes occurring during processing, storage, and utilization.

NDFS 458 : Management in Dietetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 445.
DESCRIPTION: Management cycle and theory applied to clinical and administrative dietetics.

NDFS 462 : Food Regulations and Quality Assurance. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, NDFS 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Federal and international food regulations and methods of assuring food quality.

NDFS 464 : Food Sensory Evaluation. (1::3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 465.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical and affective methods of assessing sensory properties of food using statistical methods. Laboratory experience in sensory research and techniques. Integrative capstone course.

NDFS 465 : Food Product Development. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 350, 355, 361, 362, 462, or concurrent enrollment; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 464.
DESCRIPTION: Integration and application of food science principles to develop new food products. Laboratory experience in food product design and development. Integrative capstone course.

NDFS 466 : Advanced Dietetics Practice. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 356, 445.
DESCRIPTION: Skill development in specialized topics of medical nutrition therapy and administrative dietetics.

NDFS 475 : Research Methods in Dietetics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 466.
DESCRIPTION: Research techniques in a variety of dietetics practice areas.

NDFS 490 : Professionalism Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in dietetics program.
DESCRIPTION: Issues in professional practice.

NDFS 491 : Internship Preparation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in dietetics program.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting internship sites and preparing dietetic internship application packet.

NDFS 492 : Fieldwork in Nutrition, Dietetics, or Food Science. (1-8:0:24)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: 12-15 hours in nutrition, dietetics, and food science; instructor's consent.

NDFS 494R : Undergraduate Research in Nutrition, Dietetics, or Food Science. (1-3:0:9)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's and department chair's consent; 14 hours of nutrition, dietetics, and food science courses.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research experience or library thesis.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

NDFS 520R : Supervised Practice Experience. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into dietetic internship.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised practice experience in clinical, management, and community dietetics settings.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science Department Home

Printable PDF

Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Christensen, Merrill J
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
- **RANK:** Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
  PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1982

Johnston, N Paul
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
- **RANK:** Professor
- **DEGREES:** BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
  MS, Oregon State University, 1967
  MBA, University of Utah, 1969
  PhD, Oregon State University, 1971

Ogden, Lynn Verl
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
- **RANK:** Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Utah State University, 1966
  MS, Utah State University, 1967
  PhD, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1973

Pike, Oscar A.
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
- **RANK:** Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
  MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
  PhD, Purdue University, 1986

Associate Professors

Brown, Lora Beth
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
- **RANK:** Associate Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Iowa State University, 1965
  MS, Cornell University, 1967
  EdD, Brigham Young University, 1982

Dunn, Michael L
- **COLLEGE:** Life Sciences
- **DEPARTMENT:** Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science

PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

HIST 373 : Civil War Era, 1848-1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of the war, major military events (leaders, campaigns, soldiers), war on the home fronts, why the South lost, Reconstruction, the legacy of the war.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

PL SC 316 : American Political Parties. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Electoral and policy-making roles of American political parties today and their future in American politics.

PL SC 321 : The Media in American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: News media's role in processes of American politics, including electoral process, legislative process, and public policy-making.

The following BYU campus undergraduate courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) may be used to satisfy emphasis elective requirements:

Any American Studies course

Art history and curatorial studies dealing with American art and architecture.

English courses dealing with American literature.

History courses dealing with American history.

Native American Studies.

Political science courses dealing specifically with the American political system and thought.

Humanities courses dealing with American humanities.

4. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Cornell University, 1996

Nyland, Nora Kay
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, Kansas State University, 1989

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Assistant Professors

Davidson, Robert Ted
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1992
MS, Utah State University, 1994
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1998

Hancock, Chad R.
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Missouri, Columbia, 2005

Parker, Tory L.
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
MS, Brigham Young University, 2004
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2008

Richards, Rickelle
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 2001
MPH, Tulane University School of Public Health & Tropical Medicine, 2003
PhD, RD, University of Minnesota, 2007

Steele, Frost M
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Purdue University, 1990

Teaching Professor

McGuire, Diana L
COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974

MS, Brigham Young University, 1976

Associate Teaching Professor

Fullmer, Susan

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Nutrition, Dietetics, and Food Science
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1986
MS, University of Utah, 1989
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2004

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Neuroscience Center

Neuroscience Center Office
1055 SWKT, (801) 422-1218

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

College of Life Sciences Academic Advisement Office
380 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

The neuroscience undergraduate program is an interdisciplinary program that allows students to seek advisement at the College of Life Sciences Academic Advisement Office or the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center.

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Neuroscience Center carries special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Neuroscience is the field of study covering the development and function of the central nervous system and its connection to influencing/regulating behavior. The study of neuroscience examines topics such as neuroanatomy, neuropsychopharmacology, neurophysiology, molecular neurobiology, and neuroendocrinology. The interdisciplinary nature of neuroscience requires the tools provided by experience and training in calculus, general biology, genetics, physiology, molecular biology, chemistry (general, organic, and biochemistry), physics, psychology (hormones and behavior, memory, cognition, sensation, and perception), and research design and analysis.

The objectives for students pursuing a major in neuroscience are to (1) establish and promote an interdisciplinary education in neuroscience, (2) produce scientifically literate individuals having the ability to design, conduct, and analyze research activities, and (3) have students think critically in an integrative fashion based upon research-rich and inquiry-based academic curricula.

Career Opportunities

Neuroscience prepares students to pursue advanced degrees in graduate school or to enter into the pharmaceutical and biotechnology workforce. Neuroscience is an excellent preprofessional field of study for those interested in health professions, law, or business.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS in Neuroscience

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Neuroscience (66-68 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the Family, Home, and Social Sciences College Advisement Center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
   - NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

   PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

2. Students must have a minimum grade of C+ for each of the above courses before being accepted to the major. Grades will be accepted from transfer students for chemistry and introductory biology. Information regarding the average grades earned in prerequisite courses by students accepted into the major can be obtained from the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center.

3. Complete the following:

   MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
   - DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

   NEURO 205 : Neurobiology. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W
   - PREREQUISITE: Neuroscience majors or pre-neuroscience majors.
   - DESCRIPTION: The nervous system; cellular communication, neural basis of behavior, and hormonal influences.

   NEURO 360 : Neuroanatomy. (2:2:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205.
   - DESCRIPTION: Functonal anatomy of the human brain and spinal cord, including surface and cross-sectional gross anatomy, microscopic anatomy, and sensory, motor, and integrative systems' circuitry.

   NEURO 380 : Behavioral Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205; neuroscience major status.
   - DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of anatomical, physiological, and chemical bases of behavioral expression.

   NEURO 480 : Advanced Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W
   - PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205, Biol 360; neuroscience majors only.

DESCRIPTION: Principles of neural science. Structure-function relationships and integration of the nervous system.

NEURO 481 : Neuroscience Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 480 or concurrent enrollment; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Exposure to classical/modern experiments in neuroscience.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

4. Complete the following:

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

5. Complete one of the following options

Either

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.

DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

Or

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

6. Complete the following:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

7. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

8. Complete at least 10 hours from three different departments from the following electives:

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

NEURO 449R** : Undergraduate Research Experience. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience in neuroscience.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 565** : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PDBIO 568** : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

PSYCH 370*** : Sensation and Perception. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent; or Neuro 105 for neuroscience majors.
DESCRIPTION: Sensory basis of perception and principles of perceptual organization.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 375 : Cognition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Perceptual organization; information processing; cognitive development; relationships between sensory analysis, perception, memory, learning, language, and problem solving.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 382 : Stress Psychobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent. (Neuro 205 will substitute for Psych 302.)
DESCRIPTION: Behavioral neurobiology of stress.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 584** : Cognitive Neuroscience. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of neurobiological bases of perception and cognition.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

Either

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

Or

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note: Students should carefully consult with the Neuroscience Center and faculty regarding which electives they should take to best support their postgraduate plans.

**These courses require the instructor's signature before enrolling.

***This course is strongly recommended.

Recommended Courses

In addition to the above courses, students may find the following courses helpful (see Preprofessional Advisement Center, 3326 WSC):

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

STDEV 139 : Introduction to Health Professions. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of health professions: medical, dental, and other specialties. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners and clinicians.

STDEV 227 : Preview of Optometry. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of optometry with lectures by optometrists; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 229 : Preview of Dentistry. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of dentistry with lectures by dentists; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 239 : Preview of Medicine. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of medical practice with lectures by doctors; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 329 : Dental School Preparation Laboratory Experience. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Dental laboratory practices; tooth terminology, morphology, and anatomy. Procedures including oral pathology, diagnosis, and X-rays.

STDEV 399R : Health Professions Internship. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Internships with health care providers.

: Dental Internship.
: Medical Internship.

STDEV 439 : Medical and Dental School Application. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for medical and dental school applications; entire application process, including school identification and submission.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Neuroscience (Neuro) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Neuroscience (Neuro)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

NEURO 205 : Neurobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuroscience majors or pre-neuroscience majors.
DESCRIPTION: The nervous system; cellular communication, neural basis of behavior, and hormonal influences.

300-Level Courses

NEURO 360 : Neuroanatomy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205.
DESCRIPTION: Functonal anatomy of the human brain and spinal cord, including surface and cross-sectional gross anatomy, microscopic anatomy, and sensory, motor, and integrative systems' circuitry.

NEURO 380 : Behavioral Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205; neuroscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of anatomical, physiological, and chemical bases of behavioral expression.

400-Level Courses

NEURO 449R : Undergraduate Research Experience. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience in neuroscience.

NEURO 480 : Advanced Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205, Biol 360; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of neural science. Structure-function relationships and integration of the nervous system.

NEURO 481 : Neuroscience Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 480 or concurrent enrollment; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Exposure to classical/modern experiments in neuroscience.

NEURO 496R : Neuroscience Academic Internship. (.5-12:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus internship experience in neuroscience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Neuroscience Center Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: English and American Literature Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

   And complete two courses from the following:

   ENGL 291 : British Literary History 1. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in early English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

   ENGL 292 : British Literary History 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in later English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

   ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

3. Complete 18 hours from the following:
   ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
   DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

   ENGL 350 : The Bible as Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Literary artistry, human values, and cultural significance of the Bible.

   ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
   DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Nursing

Beth Y. Cole, Dean
500A SWKT, (801) 422-5626

Patricia Ravert, Associate Dean for Undergraduate Academic Affairs
500D SWKT, (801) 422-1167

Mary Williams, Associate Dean for Graduate Academic Affairs and Faculty Affairs
500E SWKT, (801) 422-5626

College of Nursing Advisement Center
551 SWKT, (801) 422-4173

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the College of Nursing carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Brigham Young University's baccalaureate nursing program prepares general clinicians with the knowledge, skills, leadership abilities, and values commensurate with professional nursing practice. Nursing education builds on the sciences, humanities, and religious studies to develop the strong theoretical and practical base necessary to understand and meet the needs of people in various health care settings.

Learning comes alive as students move from the classroom through the clinical simulation laboratory to actual patient care. Students assess, diagnose, and treat actual and potential human responses in an effort to promote, restore, or maintain health. Baccalaureate graduates develop their ability to be sensitive to the welfare of others, communicate effectively, evaluate research findings, think critically, solve problems, and utilize appropriate technology as they provide quality nursing care to people of all ages and from diverse backgrounds.

Career Opportunities

Career positions are available in various health care settings.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS in Nursing

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Nursing

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Undergraduate Admittance Requirements

The following criteria have been established for acceptance and progression in the baccalaureate program.

1. Be fully matriculated at BYU.
2. Acceptance into the nursing major is competitive and restricted to a limited number of openings each year. Not all students who meet the minimum requirements are guaranteed acceptance into the program.

   Applicants are evaluated on a variety of criteria using a point system. Admission criteria has included academic progression; written communication skills; community, school, and church service; recommendations from employers and/or educators; and the professional judgment of the admissions committee. In the last three years, the average GPA of students accepted into the program has been from 3.76 to 3.87, with a range of 3.387 to 4.0.

3. Complete the following before beginning nursing courses:
   Chem 285.
   MFHD 210 or Psych 220.
   Nurs 180.
   PDBio 305.
   And an additional 16–20 hours from the university core.

   Note: Students may apply to the baccalaureate program during the semester they are completing prerequisite courses.

4. Students with English as a second language: Take the English Proficiency Examination plus all ESL service courses as recommended by the examination outcome. Successfully complete Nurs 102. The college requires a TOEFL score of at least 580 (paper based) or 237 (computer based) or 92 (IBT).

5. Maintain a C grade or above in all nursing courses, including prerequisite and supporting courses. A grade of C– does not allow advancement to the next course in the sequence.

Note: Notify the college advisement center before dropping or interrupting course work.

Note: Transfer credit older than seven years will not apply to the major without prior approval of the associate dean, undergraduate affairs.

Note: Students may repeat prerequisite courses only one time. More than one repeat may adversely affect admission.

Applicants who meet the above criteria are eligible to be considered for acceptance. Students who have been admitted to BYU must apply for the nursing program through the college advisement center (551 SWKT). Students are accepted fall and winter semesters. Application deadlines and requirements are available online at http://nursing.byu.edu/academics/UnderGrad/advisement.asp. Nursing applicants are required to have a current CPR certification (see advisement center for CPR requirements) and a current first aid certification when applying. Once accepted, students are required to have a physical examination, pass background checks, and submit immunization records to the Nursing Advisement Center. Students are responsible for the cost of these required elements.

Computers are used in all health care facilities; and students are expected to be computer literate when accepted into the College of Nursing.

General Information

The college nursing program is accredited by the Commission on Collegiate Nursing Education.

Clinical Assignments and Transportation.

Educational experiences are located in Utah, Salt Lake, and Davis counties. Didactic courses are taught in Provo. Clinical experiences are in agencies throughout the Wasatch Front. Visits to agencies and client homes are also required. To achieve the best possible clinical education, students will need to travel throughout their course work. Access to a car is highly recommended. Students are responsible for their own transportation. Transcultural rural and international clinical experiences are also available.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Nursing (94 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring college admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. A C grade or above must be maintained in all required courses.

2. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

   NURS 180 : Preview of Nursing. (1:2:0)
   OFFERED: F on block, W on block, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Development of nursing as a profession; the issues and trends evident throughout nursing history, and their impact on nursing today.

   PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
   RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
   DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
   NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

   Note: Chem 101 or an acceptable score on the Chemistry Placement Exam is prerequisite to Chem 285 if the student has completed no previous chemistry course work.

3. Complete one course from the following prerequisite courses:

   SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   PSYCH 220 : Human Development: Life Span. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Interaction of psychological, biological, and social influences on behavior and psychological development through the life span.

4. Be admitted to the program.

5. Complete the following supporting courses:

   MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
   DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
   NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note: Math 110 (or equivalent) may need to be taken prior to Stat 221.

6. Complete one course from the following:
ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

7. Complete the following:
NURS 294 : Health Assessment and Promotion. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nursing major status; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 100, MMBio 221, 222, PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring and applying health assessment knowledge and skills. Health promotion, health maintenance,and therapeutic communication.

NURS 295 : Fundamental Nursing Concepts and Care. (2:1.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 296, 297, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring and applying basic nursing skills and concepts; utilizing the nursing process: assessment, diagnosis, planning, implementation, and evaluation. Skills lab included.

NURS 296 : Introduction to Community Health Nursing. (1:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 297, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Basic community health nursing concepts, emphasizing health of groups.

NURS 297 : Nursing Care of the Older Adult. (3.5:2:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 296, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Applying assessment, communication, critical thinking, and technical skills to optimize the functional status of older adults through health promotion, risk reduction, and disease prevention strategies.

NURS 300 : Pharmacology in Nursing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Nurs 295, 296, 297, 320; concurrent enrollment in PDBio 365, Nurs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Common categories of drugs: their action, use and desired and undesired effects; implications for nursing care.

NURS 320 : Scholarly Inquiry in Nursing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294; Stat 221 or concurrent enrollment; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 296, and 297.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge of the research process, identifying clinical problems, evaluating and using evidence, and engaging in advanced writing and oral communication in the discipline.
NOTE: Completion of both Nurs 320 and 339 fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication.

NURS 330 : Nursing Care of Adults with Acute and Chronic Illnesses. (8:3:14)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Nurs 295, 296, 297, 320; concurrent enrollment in PDBio 365, Nurs 300.
DESCRIPTION: Care of acutely/chronically ill adults in inpatient settings; professional behavior; illness implications for patients/families; proficiency in technical skills.

NURS 339 : Ethics in Nursing. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethical principles and theories, emphasizing role of ethics in nursing; instruction and practice in advanced oral and written communication skills for professional nursing practice.
NOTE: Completion of both Nurs 320 and Nurs 339 fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication.

NURS 340 : Nursing Care of the Childbearing Family. (4:2.0:6.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 339, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Care of childbearing families from diverse backgrounds. Health promotion, assessment, and interventions related to complicated and uncomplicated pregnancy and birth.

NURS 360 : Nursing Care of the Child-Rearing Family. (4:2.0:6.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 339, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Care of children and their families from diverse backgrounds. Health promotion, disease prevention, care of acute and chronic illness, and growth development.

NURS 400 : Global Health and Human Diversity. (4:1.5:7)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of nursing in diverse populations within a global context. Clinical experiences for some sections include costs for travel, housing, meals, and incidental expenses.

NURS 460 : Psychiactric Nursing. (3.5:2:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360, Psych 342; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 470.
DESCRIPTION: Nursing care for clients with complex psychiatric disorders.

NURS 470 : Nursing Care of Adults in Crisis. (6.5:3:10.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360, Psych 342; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 460.
DESCRIPTION: Nursing intervention for individuals and families in crisis.

NURS 480 : Senior Seminar. (1:2.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Nurs 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 490.
DESCRIPTION: Characteristics of the nursing profession; professional behaviors and values. Review of nursing history.

NURS 489 : Advanced Community Health Nursing. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 400, 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 480, 490.
DESCRIPTION: Application of community health nursing concepts emphasizing the health of individuals, groups, and families.

NURS 490 : Nursing Capstone. (8:4:18)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 480.
DESCRIPTION: Clinical synthesis experience with focus on planning, delivering, and managing patient care in complex environments. Leadership components incorporated into clinical experiences and practices.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Nursing (Nurs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Nursing (Nurs)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

NURS 102 : Nursing and Medical Terminology. (2:2:0)
DESCRIPTION: Nursing and medical terminology for prenursing and beginning nursing students or those interested in health occupations.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

NURS 180 : Preview of Nursing. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F on block, W on block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Development of nursing as a profession; the issues and trends evident throughout nursing history, and their impact on nursing today.

200-Level Courses

NURS 288 : Family Health Management. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Non-nursing major status.
DESCRIPTION: Promotion and maintenance of health over the life span, emphasizing current issues affecting family health.

NURS 294 : Health Assessment and Promotion. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nursing major status; concurrent enrollment in NDFS 100, MMBio 221, 222, PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring and applying health assessment knowledge and skills. Health promotion, health maintenance,and therapeutic communication.

NURS 295 : Fundamental Nursing Concepts and Care. (2:1.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 296, 297, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring and applying basic nursing skills and concepts; utilizing the nursing process: assessment, diagnosis, planning, implementation, and evaluation. Skills lab included.

NURS 296 : Introduction to Community Health Nursing. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 297, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Basic community health nursing concepts, emphasizing health of groups.

NURS 297 : Nursing Care of the Older Adult. (3.5:2:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294, Stat 221; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 296, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Applying assessment, communication, critical thinking, and technical skills to optimize the functional status of older adults through health promotion, risk reduction, and disease prevention strategies.

300-Level Courses

NURS 300 : Pharmacology in Nursing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Nurs 295, 296, 297, 320; concurrent enrollment in PDBio 365, Nurs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Common categories of drugs: their action, use and desired and undesired effects; implications for nursing care.

NURS 320 : Scholarly Inquiry in Nursing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 294; Stat 221 or concurrent enrollment; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 295, 296, and 297.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge of the research process, identifying clinical problems, evaluating and using evidence, and engaging in advanced writing and oral communication in the discipline.
NOTE: Completion of both Nurs 320 and 339 fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication.

NURS 330 : Nursing Care of Adults with Acute and Chronic Illnesses. (8:3:14)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Nurs 295, 296, 297, 320; concurrent enrollment in PDBio 365, Nurs 300.
DESCRIPTION: Care of acutely/chronically ill adults in inpatient settings; professional behavior; illness implications for patients/families; proficiency in technical skills.

NURS 339 : Ethics in Nursing. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethical principles and theories, emphasizing role of ethics in nursing; instruction and practice in advanced oral and written communication skills for professional nursing practice.
NOTE: Completion of both Nurs 320 and Nurs 339 fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication.

NURS 340 : Nursing Care of the Childbearing Family. (4:2.0:6.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 339, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Care of childbearing families from diverse backgrounds. Health promotion, assessment, and interventions related to complicated and uncomplicated pregnancy and birth.

NURS 360 : Nursing Care of the Child-Rearing Family. (4:2.0:6.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 365, Nurs 300, 330; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 339, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Care of children and their families from diverse backgrounds. Health promotion, disease prevention, care of acute and chronic illness, and growth development.

NURS 390R : Independent Study in the Practice of Nursing. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

NURS 399R : Academic Internship in Nursing Practice. (1-4:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 297; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

400-Level Courses

NURS 400 : Global Health and Human Diversity. (4:1.5:7)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of nursing in diverse populations within a global context. Clinical experiences for some sections include costs for travel, housing, meals, and incidental expenses.

NURS 460 : Psychiactric Nursing. (3.5:2:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360, Psych 342; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 470.
DESCRIPTION: Nursing care for clients with complex psychiatric disorders.

NURS 470 : Nursing Care of Adults in Crisis. (6.5:3:10.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 339, 340, 360, Psych 342; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 460.
DESCRIPTION: Nursing intervention for individuals and families in crisis.

NURS 480 : Senior Seminar. (1:2.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 490.
DESCRIPTION: Characteristics of the nursing profession; professional behaviors and values. Review of nursing history.

NURS 489 : Advanced Community Health Nursing. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 400, 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 480, 490.
DESCRIPTION: Application of community health nursing concepts emphasizing the health of individuals, groups, and families.

NURS 490 : Nursing Capstone. (8:4:18)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Nurs 460, 470; concurrent enrollment in Nurs 480.
DESCRIPTION: Clinical synthesis experience with focus on planning, delivering, and managing patient care in complex environments. Leadership components incorporated into clinical experiences and practices.

NURS 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-3:0:0)
DESCRIPTION: Honors thesis preparation.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

NURS 555 : Pharmacology in Advanced Practice. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of pharmacology and drug therapy for advanced practice nurses.

NURS 590R : Independent Study. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized study.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Nursing Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML

Nursing Faculty

Professors

Callister, Lynn Clark

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1964
MN, Wichita State University, 1988
PhD, University of Utah, 1993

Cole, Beth V.

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BSN, University of Cincinnati, 1965
MS, Boston University, 1967
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1978

Mandleco, Barbara L

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BSN, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1967
MN, University of Florida, 1968
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1991

Associate Professors

Beckstrand, Renea L

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1979
AS, Brigham Young University, 1981
BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Utah, 2001

Berry, Judith Gould

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Catholic University of America, 1984
PhD, Rush University, 2006

Coverston, Catherine

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1969
BS, University of the State of New York, Albany, 1987
MS, Medical College of Georgia, 1989
PhD, University of Utah, 2001

Memmott, Rae Jeanne

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MS, University of Colorado, 1967

Ravert, Patricia (Patty) Kay

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1974
BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Utah, 2004

Rushton, Patricia

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1989

Williams, Mary

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, University of Utah, 1980
PhD, University of Arizona, 1991

Assistant Professors

Birkhead, Ana

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Phoenix, 1997
MS, University of Phoenix, 1999
PhD, University of California, 2007

Dearing, Karen S

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AD, Weber State College, 1975
BS, University of Utah, 1976
MS, University of Utah, 1978
PhD, University of Utah, 2003

Freeborn, Donna Susan

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1974
BS, Chapman University, 1983
MS, University of California, Los Angeles, 1994

ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

ENGL 366 : Studies in Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ENGL 374 : English Literature from 1780 to 1832: The Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Blake, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 382 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres.
NOTE: For English majors and minors.

ENGL 385 : English Literature 1603-1660: The Late Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Stuart period.

ENGL 395R : Studies in Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

(section 1)
ENGL 420 : Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers.

BYU undergraduate campus courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) as follows:

Any English courses dealing with English and American literature may also be used to satisfy emphasis elective requirements.

4. Complete the following as the last course in the emphasis:
ENGL 495 : The Senior Course. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires research and writing.

(section 3)

5. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate

Heise, Barbara A

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, Missouri Southern State College, 1983
BS, Missouri Southern State College, 1986
MS, State University of New York, 1989
PhD, University of Virginia, 2007

Lassetter, Jane H

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1981
BS, Brigham Young University, 1998
MS, Brigham Young University, 2001

Maughan, Erin D

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MS, University of Utah, 2000
PhD, University of Utah, 2006

Thompson, Pam

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Texas Christian University, 1982
JD, Southern Methodist University, 2003

Associate Teaching Professors

Abegglen, JoAnn

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988

Anderson, Vickie Lane

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1973
BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983

Blad, Kent Dean

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AA, Snow College, 1983
BS, University of Utah, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1999

Christiaens, Glenda

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1994
MS, University of Utah, 1999

Mills, Debra Ann

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1974
BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989

Stoneman, Eva Pearl

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1959
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997

Assistant Teaching Professors

Campbell, Lora Jean

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, University of Utah, 1974

Corbett, Cheryl

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1996

Cox, Amy Harmer

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
MS, Brigham Young University, 2000

Heaston, Sondra

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AD, Weber State University, 1987
BS, Weber State University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 2005

Hubert, Peggy Hammond

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1983
BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MS, Brigham Young University, 2001

Martin, Kristine E.

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, George Mason University, 1999

Palmer, Sheri Patten

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1983
BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, Idaho State University, 1990

Reed, Shelly Jensen

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MSN, University of Utah, 1992

Ulberg, Ronald Stanley

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
AS, Weber State University, 1989
BS, University of Phoenix, 1992
MN, University of Phoenix, 2000

Instructors

Carlton, Troy W

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: AS, Weber State University, 1982
BS, University of Utah, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1996

Himes, Deborah

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, University of Utah, 1996

Kohl, James

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BSN, University of San Diego, 1989
MS, University of Maryland, Baltimore, 1996

Luthy, Beth

COLLEGE: Nursing
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: ADN, Utah Valley State College, 2000
BS, Brigham Young University, 2003
MS, Brigham Young University, 2005

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Organizational Leadership and Strategy

William Gerard Sanders, Chair
790 TNRB, (801) 422-2794

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Management Communication (M Com)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

: Honors Communication in Organizational Settings.

M COM 321 : Presenting in Organizational Settings. (1:1:1)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into a Marriott School major program.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and delivering informative and persuasive presentations for professional organizations. Employment interviewing. Presentations will be videotaped.

400-Level Courses

M COM 490R : Special Topics in Management Communication. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: MCom 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Special subjects as announced before each semester.

Back to Marriott School of Management Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Organizational Behavior (Org B)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

ORG B 330 : Organizational Development and Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Macro topics in organizational behavior, including organizational structure, culture, design, change management, strategic implementation, and HR training and development.

ORG B 347 : Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices needed to serve as effective leaders in families, church, community, and work settings -- planning, decision making, self-awareness, effective human influence, and community building.

400-Level Courses

ORG B 400 : Business Ethics. (2:2:0)
DESCRIPTION: Moral leadership, character development, and multiple perspectives for making ethical decisions in organizations.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ORG B 428 : Talent Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Topics related to managing highly skilled employees: succession planning, attracting and retaining employees, employment brand, labor market competition, executive recruiting and talent metrics.

ORG B 429 : Compensation, Benefits, and Performance Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Wage and salary administration, incentives, employee benefits, grievance and discipline systems, performance appraisal.

ORG B 431 : International Human Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to organizational behavior/human resource management emphasis.
DESCRIPTION: International policies and practices in organizational behavior and human resource management.

ORG B 490R : Professional Development Seminar. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in organizational behavior. Course content varies from year to year.

Graduate Courses

For 500-, 600-, and 700-level courses, see Business Administration in the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Marriott School of Management Department Home

Organizational Leadership and Strategy Faculty

Professors

Baker, William H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Southern Utah State College, 1969
MS, Brigham Young University, 1970
EdD, Oklahoma State University, 1974

Cherrington, David J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
DBA, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1970
MBA, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1970

DeTienne, Kristen B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, California State University, Long Beach, 1987
MA, University of Southern California, 1990
PhD, University of Southern California, 1991

Dyer, Jeffrey H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1984

Dyer, W. Gibb

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1979

Mills, Gordon E.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1970

Timm, Paul R.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, State University of New York, 1968
MA, Ohio University, Athens, 1969
PhD, Florida State University, 1977

Whetten, David A.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MS, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, Cornell University, 1974

Wilkins, Alan

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Stanford University, 1979

Woodworth, Warner P.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1970
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1974

Associate Professors

Godfrey, Paul C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1983
MBA, University of Washington, 1989
PhD, University of Washington, 1994

Jackson, W. Burke

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Yale University, 1963
MBA, Rutgers University, 1964
MS, Stanford University, 1968
PhD, Stanford University, 1978

Jennings, Dave

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Utah, 2002

Nielson, Troy

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Utah, 1998

Sanders, Wm. Gerard (Gerry)

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1996

Thompson, Michael P.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1978
PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1985

Assistant Professors

Bingham, John B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1998
MS, University of Utah, 2000
PhD, Texas A&M University, 2005

Bryce, David J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1991
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 2003

Felin, Teppo

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1997
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, University of Utah, 2005

Hansen, Mark H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1996

Hendron, Michael Greg

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MBA, University of Virginia, 2000

Jensen, Robert J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 2006

Madsen, Peter Micah

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2006

Sillito, Sheli

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Organizational Leadership and Strategy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MOB, Brigham Young University, 2000

accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physiology and Developmental Biology

James P. Porter, Chair
574 WIDB, (801) 422-2006

Life Sciences Student Services
379 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Physiology and Developmental Biology are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Physiology is the study of the *functions* of the body systems. Developmental biology is the study of how specific genes govern differentiation of cells, tissues, and organs with unique structure and functions. Both disciplines require a firm foundation of mathematics, chemistry, physics, and cellular biology. The related area of biophysics uses the methods of physics, chemistry, mathematics, and biology to investigate the *physical* basis of life.

Upper-division courses require synthesizing and integrating information from many areas of science to allow understanding of such remarkable processes as how the heart pumps blood, how neurons communicate with one another, how insulin regulates blood sugar, and how specific gene products determine the morphology and functional capacity of the nervous system. Knowledge in these areas is expanding rapidly as new techniques are applied in molecular biology. Hence, significant exposure to the concepts and techniques of molecular biology is an important component of the major.

Career Opportunities

A major in physiology and developmental biology prepares students to pursue advanced degrees in either the biological sciences or nonbiological fields or to enter directly into employment. This major provides outstanding preparation for students seeking admittance into professional programs in medicine, dentistry, optometry, podiatry, chiropractic, or pharmacy. Students who have aspirations of doing health-related research will find a challenging, thorough preparation for entrance into graduate programs and beyond. Graduates of the program will also have the academic and laboratory skills necessary for employment in medical, biotechnological, and pharmaceutical industries. This degree offers students pursuing advanced degrees in business, public management, or law the knowledge and training necessary to be admitted into professional schools and work in governmental agencies, health care and biotechnical industries, and patent or health care law.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Biophysics
BS in Physiology and Developmental Biology

Students should see the Life Sciences Student Services for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Note: For the neuroscience program, see the Neuroscience Center section.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS and PhD degrees are offered. For information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog and the Web page for the College of Life Sciences.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Biophysics (71.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following life sciences core courses:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete the following chemistry courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.

NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

(1 hour required)
CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

3. Complete one course from the following:

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 468 : Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462; 481 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, equilibria, transport properties, kinetics, spectroscopic applications, computational methods, structural biochemistry.

4. Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

5. Complete the following major core courses:
PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

PDBIO 455R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar (research) presentations for undergraduates in physiology and developmental biology.

6. Complete the following capstone course:
PDBIO 568 : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

7. Complete 9 hours from the following. At least 4 hours must come from the mentored experience and at least 3 hours from electives.
a. Mentored laboratory experience (must be in an approved biophysics lab):
PDBIO 494R : Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic (entry level) research laboratory experience for students interested in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 495R : Advanced Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: 2 credit hours of PDBio 494R.
DESCRIPTION: Senior level research laboratory experience for majors in physiology and developmental biology.

b. Electives
CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 489 : Structural Biochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular structures of proteins, RNA and DNA as determinants of biological function. Topics include thermodynamics of folding and binding, structural determination, spectroscopy, modeling, protein recognition.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 583 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biological methods used in biochemistry, including immunotechniques, bioinformatics, and selected recombinant DNA techniques.
NOTE: Second of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

EC EN 301 : Elements of Electrical Engineering. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Linear electric circuits, computer organization, and logic circuits for nonmajors.
NOTE: Fee.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

NEURO 480 : Advanced Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205, Biol 360; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of neural science. Structure-function relationships and integration of the nervous system.

PDBIO 325 : Tissue Biology (with lab). (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 120.
DESCRIPTION: Human anatomy and histology; function of cells in tissue; early stages of embryology.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PDBIO 450R : Topics in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: Clinical Pharmacology.
: Herbal Pharmacology.
: Protein Expression in Bacteria.
: Techniques in Embryology.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 565 : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple.

Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physiology and Developmental Biology (PDBio) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Physiology and Developmental Biology (65–66 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following life sciences core courses:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete the following chemistry and physics courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.

NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

3. Complete the following major core courses:

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 325 : Tissue Biology (with lab). (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 120.
DESCRIPTION: Human anatomy and histology; function of cells in tissue; early stages of embryology.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

PDBIO 455R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Seminar. (.5:1:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar (research) presentations for undergraduates in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

4. Complete one course from the following:

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

5. Complete one course from the following advanced molecular courses:

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 489 : Structural Biochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular structures of proteins, RNA and DNA as determinants of biological function. Topics include thermodynamics of folding and binding, structural determination, spectroscopy, modeling, protein recognition.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

6. Complete one course from the following capstone courses:

NEURO 480 : Advanced Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205, Biol 360; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of neural science. Structure-function relationships and integration of the nervous system.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 562 : Reproductive Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 481, PDBio 482; or equivalents.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: Family History Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. In consultation with a BGS advisor, select a geographic area of interest (i.e., United States, New England, Latin America, British Isles, Europe, etc.) and select options that correspond to that area.

3. Recommended foundational course (may count toward religion credits):
   REL C 261 : Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.
   NOTE: Honors also.

4. Complete the following introductory course:
   HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

5. Complete two of the following area source courses:
   HIST 403 : U.S. - Midwest Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Midwestern states research.

   HIST 404 : U.S. - Southern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Southern states research.

   HIST 409R : Germanic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic-speaking countries.

   (section 1)
   HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

   HIST 413 : England/Wales Since 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales since 1700.

   HIST 414 : Scottish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scotland.

DESCRIPTION: Mammalian reproductive physiology.

PDBIO 565 : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PDBIO 568 : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

PDBIO 582 : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

7. Complete 6.5 hours from the following courses, including at least 1 hour from the mentored experience list and at least 2 hours from the advanced laboratory requirement list.
   a. Mentored experience:

PDBIO 349R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Teaching Seminar. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: B or above in the specific physiology and developmental biology course; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate students teaching small help sections for lecture portion of physiology and developomental biology courses or helping to teach departmental student laboratory.

PDBIO 494R : Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic (entry level) research laboratory experience for students interested in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 550R : Advanced Topics in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Close interaction between small groups of students and instructor on topics in physiology, developmental biology, or biophysics.

   b. Advanced laboratory experience:

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 583 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biological methods used in biochemistry, including immunotechniques, bioinformatics, and selected recombinant DNA techniques.
NOTE: Second of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

PDBIO 399R : Academic Internship: Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in off-campus laboratories with a focus related to physiology, biophysics, or developmental biology.

PDBIO 495R : Advanced Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: 2 credit hours of PDBio 494R.
DESCRIPTION: Senior level research laboratory experience for majors in physiology and developmental biology.

c. Elective courses (courses used to fill any requirements listed above cannot count for this requirement):

BIO 265 : (Bio-MMBio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 489 : Structural Biochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular structures of proteins, RNA and DNA as determinants of biological function. Topics include thermodynamics of folding and binding, structural determination, spectroscopy, modeling, protein recognition.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 583 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 2. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biological methods used in biochemistry, including immunotechniques, bioinformatics, and selected recombinant DNA techniques.
NOTE: Second of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

EXSC 463 : Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 464 : Exercise Physiology Lab. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.

MMBIO 265 : (MMBio-Bio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 417 : Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases. Laboratory included.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient

deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NEURO 480 : Advanced Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Neuro 205, Biol 360; neuroscience majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of neural science. Structure-function relationships and integration of the nervous system.

PDBIO 320 : Dissection Techniques in Human Anatomy. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of human cadaver dissection.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PDBIO 450R : Topics in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: Clinical Pharmacology.
: Herbal Pharmacology.
: Protein Expression in Bacteria.
: Techniques in Embryology.

PDBIO 455R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar (research) presentations for undergraduates in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 562 : Reproductive Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 481, PDBio 482; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian reproductive physiology.

PDBIO 565 : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PDBIO 568 : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

PDBIO 582 : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

PWS 265 : (PWS-Bio-MMBio) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

Recommended Courses

Professional schools and graduate programs may require additional courses not required for this major, such as Phscs 107, 108, Chem, calculus, or statistics. Contact the programs to which you may apply to determine the specific courses required.

Students considering professional or graduate degrees should take at least two semesters of mathematical courses. The recommended sequences are:

1. Math 119, Stat 221 for students who want exposure to calculus and statistics.
2. Math 112, 113 for students who want a firm foundation in calculus.
3. Math 112, 113, Stat 221 for students who want a firm foundation in both calculus and statistics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physiology and Developmental Biology (PDBio) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physiology and Developmental Biology (PDBio)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

: Honors Science of Biology.

200-Level Courses

PDBIO 205 : Human Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Body systems and influence of heredity.
NOTE: For nonbiology majors.

PDBIO 210 : Human Anatomy (without lab). (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. No lab included.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

300-Level Courses

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

PDBIO 320 : Dissection Techniques in Human Anatomy. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of human cadaver dissection.

PDBIO 325 : Tissue Biology (with lab). (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 120.
DESCRIPTION: Human anatomy and histology; function of cells in tissue; early stages of embryology.

PDBIO 349R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Teaching Seminar. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: B or above in the specific physiology and developmental biology course; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate students teaching small help sections for lecture portion of physiology and developmental biology courses or helping to teach departmental student laboratory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PDBIO 399R : Academic Internship: Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in off-campus laboratories with a focus related to physiology, biophysics, or developmental biology.

400-Level Courses

PDBIO 450R : Topics in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: Clinical Pharmacology.
: Herbal Pharmacology.
: Protein Expression in Bacteria.
: Techniques in Embryology.

PDBIO 455R : Physiology and Developmental Biology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar (research) presentations for undergraduates in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

PDBIO 494R : Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic (entry level) research laboratory experience for students interested in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 495R : Advanced Undergraduate Research in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: 2 credit hours of PDBio 494R.
DESCRIPTION: Senior level research laboratory experience for majors in physiology and developmental biology.

PDBIO 499R : Senior Honors Thesis. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Honors thesis. Topic to be cleared with Honors Program and Physiology and Developmental Biology Department.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PDBIO 550R : Advanced Topics in Physiology and Developmental Biology. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Close interaction between small groups of students and instructor on topics in physiology, developmental biology, or biophysics.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 562 : Reproductive Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 481, PDBio 482; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian reproductive physiology.

PDBIO 565 : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PDBIO 568 : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

The

PDBIO 582 : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Physiology and Developmental Biology Department Home

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Physiology and Developmental Biology Faculty

Professors

Bell, John David

COLLEGE: Life sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 1987

Busath, David Don

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1974
MD, University of Utah, 1978

Judd, Allan M

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, West Virginia University, 1982

Lephart, Edwin D

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, 1989

Porter, James Paul

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, University of California, San Francisco, 1982

Rhees, Reuben Ward

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, Colorado State University, 1971

Seegmiller, Robert E

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1965
MS, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, McGill University, 1970

Winder, William W

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1971

Woodbury, Dixon John

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1980
BA, University of Utah, 1980
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 1986

Woolley, Bruce

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1965
PharmD, University of Southern California, 1972

Associate Professors

Kooyman, David Lee

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ottumwa Heights College, 1974
BS, California State Polytechnic University, Pomona, 1982
MS, California State Polytechnic University, Pomona, 1986
PhD, Ohio University, Athens, 1993

Silcox, Roy W

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, North Carolina State University, 1984
PhD, North Carolina State University, 1986

Sudweeks, Sterling N

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of Utah, 1997

HIST 415 : Irish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Ireland.

6. Complete one of the following social history courses:
HIST 319 : The Family in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

7. Complete one of the following handwriting courses:
GERM 490R : Special Studies in German. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
NOTE: Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances. Not applicable to German major or minor.

(section 3)
HIST 390R : Special Topics in History. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Presented by visiting or regular faculty. Varied topics include oral history, demographics, psychohistory, Christianity in history, etc.

(section 1)
HIST 421 : England Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the British Isles, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

8. Complete one of the following area history courses:
GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 322 : English History to 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

9. Complete 6 hours from the following elective courses (including any area source or handwriting courses not used for core above):
ENGL 220 : Composing Personal History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Composing personal history through writing, mementos, oral history, chronologies, letters, documents, journals, and other mediums.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 481R : Directed Research in Family History. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Student research directed by faculty member on family history topic of mutual interest.

REL C 393R : Special Studies in Religion: Church History and Doctrine. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

: Book of Mormon Witnesses.
: Doctrine and Teachings of Joseph Smith.
: Family History in Great Britain.
: LDS Temples.

Assistant Professors

Barrow, Jeffery Richard

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of Utah, 1999

Brown, Michael D

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Colorado State University, 1998
PhD, Colorado State University, 1999

Edwards, Jeff Glen

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Utah, 2003

Hansen, Marc DH

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Stanford University, 2002

Stark, Michael Robert

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physiology and Developmental Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Idaho State University, 1994
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 1998

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Philosophy

Daniel Graham, Chair
4086 JFSB, (801) 422-2721

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Philosophy are open enrollment.

The Discipline

From its first appearance in ancient Greece down to the present, philosophy has sought to understand the world and the place of human beings within it. As it frames ideas by means of which to clarify and explain experience, philosophy discloses its faith in the ultimate lucidity of things. Philosophy's respect for the authority of intelligence fosters a preference for persuasion that is fundamental to personal growth and democratic society.

Students who study philosophy will find that it not only provides insight into life's fundamental concerns, it also helps them develop their capacity for clear thinking and perceptive judgment. Such competence will serve them well as they pursue further education or begin their careers.

Career Opportunities

Philosophy offers excellent career preparation, but not in the way that, say, accounting does. The value of a major in philosophy resides in the intellectual development it promotes. It lays a foundation on which more specialized study may build. In various standardized tests, philosophy majors tend to do extremely well on the verbal aptitude and on the analytic thinking sections. So philosophy can prepare a student for any type of work that requires highly developed reading and writing skills. Students who elect to major in philosophy should look beyond their bachelor's degree right from the start. For example, philosophy is an excellent background for the study of law or medicine. Those who intend to enter graduate school will need to start early on the foreign-language requirement.

General Information

The Department of Philosophy strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BA in Philosophy

Minors

Philosophy
Logic

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Philosophy (43 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following sources and methods courses:

PHIL 201 : History of Philosophy 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

PHIL 300 : Philosophical Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 150, 205; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Writing philosophical papers about philosophical texts or problems. Research methods in philosophy. Library research paper.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

2. Complete two of the following historical periods courses (should not be in the same period):

PHIL 320R : Studies in Ancient Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Aristotle.
: Buddhism.
: Chinese Philosophy.
: Church Fathers.
: Greek Epistemology.
: Greek Ethics.
: Greek Logic.
: Greek Metaphysics.
: Greek Philosophy of Religion.
: Greek Political Theory.
: Greek Science.

: Helenistic Philosophy.
: Hindu Philosophy.
: Neo-Platonism.
: Plato.
: Plotinus.
: Pre-Socratics.
: Socrates.
: Stoicism.
: Topics in Greek Philosophy.

PHIL 330R : Studies in Medieval Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Anselm.
: Aquinas.
: Augustine.
: Averroes.
: Boethius.
: Bonaventure.
: Duns Scotus.
: Maimonides.
: Medieval Arabic Philosophers.
: Medieval Epistemology.
: Medieval Ethics.
: Medieval Jewish Philosophers.
: Medieval Logic.
: Medieval Metaphysics.
: Medieval Philosophy and Religion.
: Medieval Political Theory.
: Medieval Science.
: Meister Eckhart.
: Topics in Medieval Philosophy.
: William of Ockham.

PHIL 340R : Studies in Modern Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 202.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Alexander.
: Bentham.
: Bergson.
: Berkeley.
: Bosanquet.
: Bradley.
: British Empiricism.
: British Idealism.
: Continental Rationalism.
: Descartes and Locke.
: Descartes.
: Dewey.
: German Idealism.
: Hegel.
: Hobbes.
: Hume.
: J. S. Mill.
: Kant.
: Kierkegaard.
: Leibniz.
: Locke.
: Modern Political Theory.
: Nietzsche and Freud.
: Nietzsche.
: Peirce.
: Pragmatism.
: Schopenhauer.
: Spinoza.
: Topics in Modern Philosophy.
: Utilitarianism.
: William James.

PHIL 350R : Studies in Contemporary Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Contemporary Analytical Philosophy.
: Contemporary French Philosophy.
: Contemporary Political Theory.
: Continental Philosophy.
: Derrida.
: Dufrenne.
: Existentialism.
: Foucault.
: Frege.
: Gadamer.
: Heidegger.
: Hermeneutics.
: Husserl.
: Leotard.
: Levinas.
: Logical Positivism.
: Marion.
: Merleau-Ponty.
: Moore.
: Oakeshott.
: Ordinary Language of Philosophy.
: Phenomenology.
: Philosophy and Film.
: Philosophy and Literature.
: Philosophy of Architecture.
: Philosophy of Cognitive Science.
: Philosophy of History.
: Philosophy of Mind.
: Philosophy of Psychology.
: Philosophy of Social Science.
: Philosophy of Theology.
: Ricoeur.
: Russell.
: Sartre.
: Topics in Contemporary Philosophy.
: Truth.
: Whitehead.
: Wittgenstein.

3. Complete one of the following values and conduct courses:

PHIL 213 : Introduction to Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and justification of moral standards, beliefs, and decisions.

PHIL 214 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The experience of beauty in nature, in literature, and in the arts.

PHIL 215 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Existence and nature of God, God's foreknowledge and man's free will, faith, immortality, and religious experience and language.

PHIL 218 : Science and Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Irregularly (check with department).
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Epistemological and metaphysical similarities and differences undergirding historical problems in science and religion. Nature and effects of past reconciliations; possibility and desirability of current reconciliations.

PHIL 413 : Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.

DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or problems.

PHIL 414R : Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: one philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics in aesthetics.

PHIL 416 : Philosophy of Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: The relation between natural and enacted law; theories of punishment; utilitarian and nonutilitarian theories of law; liberty.

4. Complete two of the following knowledge and reality courses:

PHIL 405 : Metalogic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phil 305.
DESCRIPTION: Completeness and undecidability of predicate logic; incompleteness of arithmetic and set theory; treatment of related philosophical topics and of nonclassical topics as time permits.

PHIL 415 : Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or problems.

PHIL 420 : Philosophy of Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Meaning and reference, synonymy, metaphor, exemplification, translation; linguistic, artistic, and perceptual symbol systems.

PHIL 421 : Metaphysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Basic categories of being: appearance and reality, law, causality, space, time, eternity, deity.

PHIL 422 : Epistemology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Meaning, limits, and justification of knowledge.

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

5. Complete 12 additional hours (excluding 499R) (with no more than three hours of 449R). Students must have a total of 27 credit hours of upper-division course work (300-level or above) in the major.

6. Complete the following seminar:

PHIL 490 : Senior Seminar. (1:1.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Review of philosophical principles and advanced writing experiences culminating in a publishable paper.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Philosophy (Phil) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Philosophy (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

PHIL 201 : History of Philosophy 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

2. Complete three other philosophy courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Philosophy (Phil) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Logic (15 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

PHIL 405 : Metalogic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phil 305.
DESCRIPTION: Completeness and undecidability of predicate logic; incompleteness of arithmetic and set theory; treatment of related philosophical topics and of nonclassical topics as time permits.

2. Complete two other approved courses.
3. No more than nine hours may double-count for the philosophy major and the logic minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Philosophy (Phil) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Philosophy (Phil)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PHIL 110 : Introduction to Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Articulating, assessing, and defending fundamental positions on topics such as reason, knowledge, science, education, ethics, politics, and religion.

: Honors Introduction to Philosophy.

PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

: Honors Reasoning and Writing.

200-Level Courses

PHIL 201 : History of Philosophy 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors History of Philosophy 1.

PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors History of Philosophy 2.

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

PHIL 210 : Science and Civilization 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization from Greek antiquity to scientific revolution; methods in early science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors Science and Civilization 1.

PHIL 211 : Science and Civilization 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 210.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization from scientific revolution to present; concepts and methods in modern science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors Science and Civilization 2.

PHIL 213 : Introduction to Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and justification of moral standards, beliefs, and decisions.

PHIL 214 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The experience of beauty in nature, in literature, and in the arts.

PHIL 215 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Existence and nature of God, God's foreknowledge and man's free will, faith, immortality, and religious experience and language.

PHIL 218 : Science and Religion. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: Irregularly (check with department).
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Epistemological and metaphysical similarities and differences undergirding historical problems in science and religion. Nature and effects of past reconciliations; possibility and desirability of current reconciliations.

300-Level Courses

PHIL 300 : Philosophical Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 150, 205; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Writing philosophical papers about philosophical texts or problems. Research methods in philosophy. Library research paper.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

: Honors Philosophical Writing.

PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

PHIL 320R : Studies in Ancient Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Aristotle.
: Buddhism.
: Chinese Philosophy.
: Church Fathers.
: Greek Epistemology.
: Greek Ethics.
: Greek Logic.
: Greek Metaphysics.
: Greek Philosophy of Religion.
: Greek Political Theory.
: Greek Science.
: Helenistic Philosophy.
: Hindu Philosophy.
: Neo-Platonism.
: Plato.
: Plotinus.
: Pre-Socratics.
: Socrates.
: Stoicism.
: Topics in Greek Philosophy.

PHIL 330R : Studies in Medieval Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Anselm.
: Aquinas.
: Augustine.
: Averroes.
: Boethius.
: Bonaventure.
: Duns Scotus.
: Maimonides.
: Medieval Arabic Philosophers.
: Medieval Epistemology.
: Medieval Ethics.
: Medieval Jewish Philosophers.
: Medieval Logic.
: Medieval Metaphysics.
: Medieval Philosophy and Religion.
: Medieval Political Theory.
: Medieval Science.
: Meister Eckhart.
: Topics in Medieval Philosophy.
: William of Ockham.

PHIL 340R : Studies in Modern Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 202.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Alexander.
: Bentham.
: Bergson.
: Berkeley.
: Bosanquet.
: Bradley.
: British Empiricism.
: British Idealism.
: Continental Rationalism.
: Descartes and Locke.

: Latter-Day Saints in Wartime.
: Lectures on Faith.
: Men and Women of Mormonism.
: Presidents of the Church.

(section 6)

Note: A maximum of 3 hours of directed research credit can be counted toward the 6 hours of electives.

10. Other BYU campus classes (including Evening and Salt Lake Center classes) dealing with social history, handwriting, area source, and area history for geographic areas not offered through Independent Study may be substituted for core courses above. Obtain prior approval before enrolling.

11. Complete 6 hours from the following as the last courses in the emphasis:

HIST 433 : Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

HIST 482 : Professional Paths and Credentials in Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

HIST 496R : Academic Internship: Family History. (.5-5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

(3 hours maximum)

12. Complete the following capstone course:

STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

: Descartes.
: Dewey.
: German Idealism.
: Hegel.
: Hobbes.
: Hume.
: J. S. Mill.
: Kant.
: Kierkegaard.
: Leibniz.
: Locke.
: Modern Political Theory.
: Nietzsche and Freud.
: Nietzsche.
: Peirce.
: Pragmatism.
: Schopenhauer.
: Spinoza.
: Topics in Modern Philosophy.
: Utilitarianism.
: William James.

PHIL 350R : Studies in Contemporary Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Contemporary Analytical Philosophy.
: Contemporary French Philosophy.
: Contemporary Political Theory.
: Continental Philosophy.
: Derrida.
: Dufrenne.
: Existentialism.
: Foucault.
: Frege.
: Gadamer.
: Heidegger.
: Hermeneutics.
: Husserl.
: Leotard.
: Levinas.
: Logical Positivism.
: Marion.
: Merleau-Ponty.
: Moore.
: Oakeshott.
: Ordinary Language of Philosophy.
: Phenomenology.
: Philosophy and Film.
: Philosophy and Literature.
: Philosophy of Architecture.
: Philosophy of Cognitive Science.
: Philosophy of History.
: Philosophy of Mind.
: Philosophy of Psychology.
: Philosophy of Social Science.
: Philosophy of Theology.
: Ricoeur.
: Russell.
: Sartre.
: Topics in Contemporary Philosophy.
: Truth.
: Whitehead.
: Wittgenstein.

400-Level Courses

PHIL 405 : Metalogic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phil 305.
DESCRIPTION: Completeness and undecidability of predicate logic; incompleteness of arithmetic and set theory; treatment of related philosophical topics and of nonclassical topics as time permits.

PHIL 413 : Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or problems.

PHIL 414R : Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: one philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics in aesthetics.

PHIL 415 : Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or problems.

PHIL 416 : Philosophy of Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: The relation between natural and enacted law; theories of punishment; utilitarian and nonutilitarian theories of law; liberty.

PHIL 420 : Philosophy of Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Meaning and reference, synonymy, metaphor, exemplification, translation; linguistic, artistic, and perceptual symbol systems.

PHIL 421 : Metaphysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Basic categories of being: appearance and reality, law, causality, space, time, eternity, deity.

PHIL 422 : Epistemology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Meaning, limits, and justification of knowledge.

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

: (Phil-Phscs314) Honors History and Philosophy of Science.

PHIL 449R : Philosophical Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures on philosophical topics by faculty and advanced students.

PHIL 490 : Senior Seminar. (1:1.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Review of philosophical principles and advanced writing experiences culminating in a publishable paper.

PHIL 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topic or figure in philosophy

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PHIL 501R : Graduate Seminar. (.5-5:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topic, figure, or movement in philosophy, as announced in current class schedule.

Back to Philosophy Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Philosophy Faculty

Professors

Carter, K Codell

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1963
MA, University of Utah, 1964
PhD, Cornell University, 1968

Faulconer, James E

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Pennsylvania State University, 1975
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1977

Graham, Daniel Watkins

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Davidson College, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1980

Grandy, David Alan

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1990
PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1994

Packard, Dennis J

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Miracosta College, 1966
BA, Stanford University, 1968
PhD, Stanford University, 1974

Paulsen, David Lamont

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Snow College, 1957
BS, Brigham Young University, 1961
JD, University of Chicago, 1964
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1975

Rasmussen, Dennis Fletcher

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1966
PHM, Yale University, 1968
PhD, Yale University, 1970

Warner, C Terry

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1963
MA, Yale University, 1965
PhD, Yale University, 1967

Wrathall, Mark A

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
AM, Boston College, 1991
JD, Harvard University, 1991
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1996

Associate Professors

Anderson, Travis

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
BFA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Loyola University, Chicago, 1989
PhD, Loyola University, Chicago, 1992

Siebach, James Leslie

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1994

Assistant Professors

Hedengren, Paul C

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brown University, 1971
MA, Brown University, 1973
PhD, University of Toronto, 1983

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Philosophy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1998
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2005

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physical Science

M. Randall Skinner, Coordinator
S-385 ESC, (801) 422-6083

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Teaching Physical Science (77.5–78.5 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 501 : Safe Chemical Practices. (.5:.5:0)
OFFERED: W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: University and department safety policies. Chemical hazards, fire safety, and biosafety, including laws.

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 127 : Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

PHSCS 137 : Introduction to the Atmosphere and Weather. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical introduction to characteristics of the atmosphere, emphasizing structure and dynamic behavior, including the environmental impact of man.

3. Complete one course from the following:

GEOL 100 : Dinosaurs. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on examination of vertebrate fossils -- especially dinosaurs. For nonscience majors. Field trips.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

4. Declare major status by application available online at the Teacher Education Department Web site by January 15 for Fall semester and September 15 for Winter semester.

5. A grade lower than a C- will not be accepted in any of the professional education courses.

6. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

PHY S 276 : Exploration of Teaching. (4:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

PHY S 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 276; fingerprint and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

PHY S 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Phy S 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Phy S 276.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physical Science (Phy S) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: Family Life Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

   SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   SFL 223 : Preparation for Marriage. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Factors related to quality relationships, mate selection, and the transition into marriage.

   SFL 224 : Marriage Enhancement. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Designed primarily for those who are married or engaged. Couples are encouraged to enroll together.

   SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

4. Complete 15 hours from the following elective courses:
   CPSE 515R : Current Topics in Counseling. (.5-3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
   NOTE: CPSE 515R credit may count toward a graduate degree if prior approval is obtained.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physical Science (Phy S)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PHY S 100 : Physical Science. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual lectures and demonstrations of the most significant and universal laws and models describing the physical world by faculty from the Physics and Astronomy, Chemistry and Biochemistry, and Geology departments.
NOTE: Satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

: Honors Physical Science.

PHY S 110A : Physical Science A. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Classical and modern physics and chemistry as they relate to current concepts of the physical world. Lab exercises illustrate many topics with concrete examples.
NOTE: With PhyS 110B satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

PHY S 110B : Physical Science B. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and methods used in geology to interpret rock record, protect and make use of earth materials, and better understand natural environment and how to live in it. Lab studies, field trips, home projects.
NOTE: With PhyS 110A satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

PHY S 111A : Physical Science A Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises that illustrate physics and chemistry principles.
NOTE: To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B.

PHY S 111B : Physical Science B Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises that illustrate geology principles.
NOTE: To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B.

200-Level Courses

PHY S 276 : Exploration of Teaching. (4:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

300-Level Courses

PHY S 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 276; fingerprint and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

PHY S 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Phy S 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

Back to Physical Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physics and Astronomy

Ross L. Spencer, Chair
N-281A ESC, (801) 422-2341

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Physics and Astronomy are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Over the centuries physicists and astronomers have studied the fundamental principles that govern the structure and dynamics of matter and energy in the physical world, from subatomic particles to the cosmos. Physicists also apply this understanding to the development of new technologies. For example, physicists invented the first lasers and semiconductor electronic devices.

Physics and astronomy students learn to approach complex problems in science and technology from a broad background in mechanics, electricity and magnetism, statistical and thermal physics, quantum mechanics, relativity, and optics. The tools they develop at BYU include problem solving by mathematical and computational modeling, as well as experimental discovery and analysis. All students gain professional experience in a research, capstone, or internship project, usually in close association with faculty. Together these experiences can provide excellent preparation for employment or for graduate studies in physics, other sciences, engineering, medicine, law, or business.

Most physicists and astronomers work in research and development in industrial, government, or university labs to solve new problems in technology and science. They also share the beauty discovered in our physical universe by teaching in high schools, colleges, and universities.

Career Opportunities

A degree in physics or physics–astronomy can provide:

1. Preparation for those who intend to enter industrial or governmental service as physicists or astronomers.
2. Education for those who intend to pursue graduate work in physics or astronomy.
3. Education in the subject matter of physics for prospective teachers of the physical sciences.
4. Undergraduate education for those who will pursue graduate work in the professions: business (e.g., an MBA), law, medicine, etc.
5. Fundamental background for other physical sciences and engineering, in preparation for graduate study in these fields.
6. Physics fundamentals required by the biological science, medical, dental, nursing, and related programs.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Applied Physics
Emphases:
Computer Science
Selected Options

BS in Physics
BS in Physics-Astronomy
BS in Physics Teaching

Minors

Astronomy
Physics
Physics Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs. The

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Physics
PhD in Physics
PhD in Physics and Astronomy

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   3 units of English
   1 unit of physical science, either chemistry or physics.
   4 units of mathematics, consisting of algebra, geometry, trigonometry, and calculus. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 113, Calculus 2.

   Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, high school preparation in this subject is of particular importance.
2. Students in physics should take mathematics beginning the first semester of the freshman year. Physics majors should ordinarily begin with Math 113. If preparation is inadequate, students might wish to enter the university during the spring or summer term and bring their mathematics preparation to the point where they can take Math 113 concurrently with Phscs 121 during the fall semester.
3. Students are strongly urged to learn to use a computer, including some knowledge of programming.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Applied Physics: Computer Science Emphasis (62.5–65.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey of BYU undergraduate physics and astronomy programs, careers in physics and astronomy, and current physics and astronomy research.
NOTE: Take first semester after registered as physics major.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple. Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.

DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 318 : Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; Phscs 230.
DESCRIPTION: Classical equations of physical fields; algebra of complex variables; applying Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

PHSCS 321 : Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 230; Math 303 or 334 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

PHSCS 330 : Computational Physics Lab 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 230; 321 or concurrent enrollment; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations, linear algebra and eigenvalues, chaos theory. Applications to dynamics. Introduction to programming in Matlab.

PHSCS 430 : Computational Physics Lab 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Static and dynamic boundary value problems, partial differential equations. Applications in electrostatics, thermodynamics, waves, and quantum mechanics. Programming with Matlab.

PHSCS 441 : Electrostatics and Magnetism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 318.
DESCRIPTION: Classical theory of static electric and magnetic fields.

PHSCS 581 : Solid-State Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the physics of solids. Crystal structure and symmetry, X-ray diffraction, lattice vibrations, metals and semiconductors, superconductivity, thermal properties, magnetic properties, and dielectric and optical properties.

Note: Phscs 191 should be taken the first semester.

3. Complete one of the following options:

Either

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Or

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

4. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

5. Complete the following:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

6. Complete one course from the following:

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

C S 330 : Concepts of Programming Languages. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts characterizing high-level computer programming languages, process and data abstration, encapsulation, inheritance, functional programming, logic programming, scanners, and parsers.

EC EN 124 : (EC En-C S) Introduction to Computing Systems. (3:3:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming: logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, algorithm analysis.

EC EN 224 : Fundamentals of Digital Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CS-ECEn 124.
DESCRIPTION: Digital logic: theory, design, and implementation of combinational and sequential logic. Laboratory experience in construction of digital logic circuits.

EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

EC EN 450 : Introduction to Semiconductor Devices. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, Phscs 281.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of electronic and optical solid state devices; includes semiconductor materials, bipolar and FET device physics and modeling, optical properties of semiconductors, and lasers.

PHSCS 513R : Special Topics in Contemporary Physics. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics generally related to recent developments in physics.

7. Complete one course from the following:

PHSCS 360 : Statistical and Thermal Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics, with applications.

PHSCS 427 : Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 227, 228.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

PHSCS 442 : Electrodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 441.
DESCRIPTION: Maxwell?s equations, radiation, interaction of electromagnetic fields with matter, and special relativity.

PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

PHSCS 545 : Introduction to Plasma Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 321, 431, 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plasma physics, including single-particle motion and both fluid and kinetic models of plasma behavior.

PHSCS 561 : (Phscs-Me En) Fundamentals of Acoustics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123 or equivalent; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sound generation, transmission, reflection, and reception. Vibrating systems, elastic media, mechanical energy, and radiation. Sound in tubes and cavities. Acoustic filters. Noise measurement and perception.

PHSCS 571 : Laser Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alt. yr.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 471 or basic understanding of electromagnetic waves and optics.
DESCRIPTION: Laser amplification, cavity design, and control and characterization of temporal and spatial modes. Applications in nonlinear optics and atomic physics.

PHSCS 585 : Thin-Film Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation, characterization, use, and special properties of modern thin films; interdisciplinary treatment. Of interest to students in applied physics and engineering.

8. Complete a capstone project, including the following:
   a. Meet with department applied physics capstone project coordinator early in the junior year or before to obtain information about projects and procedures.
   b. Complete 2 hours of the following
      PHSCS 492R : Capstone Project in Applied Physics. (.5-3:0:ARR)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      DESCRIPTION: Senior capstone projects in applied physics. Topic must be approved by department applied physics capstone project coordinator or department chair.

9. Take a department exit examination in the senior year.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Applied Physics: Selected Options Emphasis (57.5–61.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Consult with a faculty advisor as early as possible to choose electives.
3. Complete the following:

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey of BYU undergraduate physics and astronomy programs, careers in physics and astronomy, and current physics and astronomy research.
NOTE: Take first semester after registered as physics major.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple. Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 245 : Experiments in Contemporary Physics. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 240.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth, multi-period experiments in contemporary physics, using advanced instrumentation.

PHSCS 318 : Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; Phscs 230.
DESCRIPTION: Classical equations of physical fields; algebra of complex variables; applying Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

PHSCS 321 : Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 230; Math 303 or 334 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

PHSCS 330 : Computational Physics Lab 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 230; 321 or concurrent enrollment; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations, linear algebra and eigenvalues, chaos theory. Applications to dynamics. Introduction to programming in Matlab.

PHSCS 430 : Computational Physics Lab 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Static and dynamic boundary value problems, partial differential equations. Applications in electrostatics, thermodynamics, waves, and quantum mechanics. Programming with Matlab.

PHSCS 441 : Electrostatics and Magnetism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 318.
DESCRIPTION: Classical theory of static electric and magnetic fields.

Note: Phscs 191 should be taken the first semester.

4. Complete one course from the following:

EC EN 466 : Introduction to Optical Engineering. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462.
DESCRIPTION: Introduces principles and practices of optical engineering including optical communications system and components.

PHSCS 442 : Electrodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 441.
DESCRIPTION: Maxwell?s equations, radiation, interaction of electromagnetic fields with matter, and special relativity.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

5. After gaining department chair's approval of courses selected to define an option, complete an additional 12 hours of electives (cannot include any courses already taken above). These 12 hours must consist of a coherent set of upper-division courses with an identified educational goal.

6. Complete one of the following options:

: Classroom Behavior Management.
: Current Topics in Educational Psychology.
: Current Topics in Special Education.
: Effective Teaching.
: Gifted and Talented.
: Iss Comm Sci Dsrd
: Learning Disabled.
: Motivation.
: Program Evaluation.
: Self-Concept.

(section 2)

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

ENGL 420 : Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

HIST 433 : Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

IP&T 515R : Special Topics in Instructional Psychology and Technology. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su on demand.

: Evaluating Student Learning.
: Instructional Techniques in Teaching.
: Program Evaluation.
: Tutoring Children in Reading.

(section 26)

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 320 : Developmental Psychology: Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

Either

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Or

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

7. Complete one course from the following:
   MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
   DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

   MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
   DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

8. Complete a capstone project, including the following:
   a. Meet with department applied physics capstone project coordinator early in the junior year or before to obtain information about projects and procedures.
   b. Complete 2 hours of the following
      PHSCS 492R : Capstone Project in Applied Physics. (.5-3:0:ARR)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      DESCRIPTION: Senior capstone projects in applied physics. Topic must be approved by department applied physics capstone project coordinator or department chair.

9. Take a department exit examination in the senior year.

Sample Elective Courses

Acoustics:

PHSCS 561 : (Phscs-Me En) Fundamentals of Acoustics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123 or equivalent; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sound generation, transmission, reflection, and reception. Vibrating systems, elastic media, mechanical energy, and radiation. Sound in tubes and cavities. Acoustic filters. Noise measurement and perception.

ME EN 562 : (Me En-Phscs 660) Analysis of Acoustic Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 561 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing and modeling electro-mechano-acoustic systems. Transducers, calibration, and acoustical

measurements. Sound sources, arrays, coupling, radiation, and directivity. Duct acoustics. Energy-based acoustics.

and choices from

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

EC EN 487 : Introduction to Discrete-Time Signal Processing. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 370, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Digital signal processing, fast Fourier transforms, digital filter design, spectrum analysis. Applications in speech processing, SONAR, communications, etc.

ME EN 363 : Elementary Instrumentation. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; ECEn 301; Engl 316 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of mechanical measuring systems; sensors, signal conditioning, statistical error analysis, dynamic response, standards.

Biophysics:
Biology
Biochemistry
PDBIO 568 : Cellular Electrophysiology and Biophysics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362, Phscs 140, 220; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using electrophysiology and biophysics as an approach to study of physiology. Extensive look at ion channels and cell signaling.

Electrical Engineering (graduate school preparation):
EC EN 320 : Digital System Design. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212, 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced digital design, including hardware description languages, electrical properties of digital circuits, synchronous and asynchronous circuits, computer arithmetic, and interfacing to external circuitry.

EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

and 400-level courses.

Materials Science (graduate school preparation):
PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 452 : Applications of Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 451.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of quantum mechanics to atomic, molecular, statistical, condensed-matter, and nuclear physics; elementary particles.

PHSCS 581 : Solid-State Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the physics of solids. Crystal structure and symmetry, X-ray diffraction, lattice vibrations, metals and semiconductors, superconductivity, thermal properties, magnetic properties, and dielectric and optical properties.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction

energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

or
CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

Microelectronics/Semiconductor Devices:
CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CH EN 381 : Introduction to Semiconductor Processing. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or equivalent; Math 303 or equivalent; Ch En 273 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Unit operations related to silicon-based semiconductor processing, including substrate preparation, photolithography, doping, etching, and thin film formation. Lab included.

PHSCS 281 : Principles of Solid State Physics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physics of solids, including laboratory experience.
NOTE: For students in science, computer science, technology, and engineering.

or
PHSCS 581 : Solid-State Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the physics of solids. Crystal structure and symmetry, X-ray diffraction, lattice vibrations, metals and semiconductors, superconductivity, thermal properties, magnetic properties, and dielectric and optical properties.

EC EN 450 : Introduction to Semiconductor Devices. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, Phscs 281.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of electronic and optical solid state devices; includes semiconductor materials, bipolar and FET device physics and modeling, optical properties of semiconductors, and lasers.

or
PHSCS 587 : Physics of Semiconductor Devices. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 281 or 581 or ECEn 450.
DESCRIPTION: Device physics, with an in-depth study of the MOS transistor and other nanoscale computing devices.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

Nuclear Physics (power generation for industry or navy):

PHSCS 360 : Statistical and Thermal Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics, with applications.

PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 452 : Applications of Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 451.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of quantum mechanics to atomic, molecular, statistical, condensed-matter, and nuclear physics; elementary particles.

ME EN 422 : Applied Thermodynamics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W; Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Me En 321, 363, 373.
DESCRIPTION: Applied engineering thermodynamics including air and steam power cycles, thermodynamic relations, and introduction to combustion and equilibrium chemical reactions.

Optical Communication Engineering:

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

PHSCS 571 : Laser Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alt. yr.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 471 or basic understanding of electromagnetic waves and optics.
DESCRIPTION: Laser amplification, cavity design, and control and characterization of temporal and spatial modes. Applications in nonlinear optics and atomic physics.

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

EC EN 466 : Introduction to Optical Engineering. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462.
DESCRIPTION: Introduces principles and practices of optical engineering including optical communications system and components.

EC EN 555 : Optoelectronic Devices. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 450 or equivalent or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, operation, and fabrication of modern optoelectronic devices, including photodiodes, photovoltaics, LEDs, and lasers.

EC EN 562 : Optical Communication Components and Systems. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462, 466; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fiber-optic communication system components and their operating and performance characteristics.

Optical/Laser Engineering:

PHSCS 442 : Electrodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 441.
DESCRIPTION: Maxwell?s equations, radiation, interaction of electromagnetic fields with matter, and special relativity.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

and/or
PHSCS 571 : Laser Physics. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F alt. yr.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 471 or basic understanding of electromagnetic waves and optics.
DESCRIPTION: Laser amplification, cavity design, and control and characterization of temporal and spatial modes. Applications in nonlinear optics and atomic physics.

EC EN 466 : Introduction to Optical Engineering. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462.
DESCRIPTION: Introduces principles and practices of optical engineering including optical communications system and components.

EC EN 555 : Optoelectronic Devices. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 450 or equivalent or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, operation, and fabrication of modern optoelectronic devices, including photodiodes, photovoltaics, LEDs, and lasers.

and/or
EC EN 562 : Optical Communication Components and Systems. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462, 466; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fiber-optic communication system components and their operating and performance characteristics.

Premedicine, Prelaw (including patent law), Prebusiness:
Courses in specialty.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Physics (58.5–61.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey of BYU undergraduate physics and astronomy programs, careers in physics and astronomy, and current physics and astronomy research.
NOTE: Take first semester after registered as physics major.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple. Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.

DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 245 : Experiments in Contemporary Physics. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 240.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth, multi-period experiments in contemporary physics, using advanced instrumentation.

PHSCS 318 : Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; Phscs 230.
DESCRIPTION: Classical equations of physical fields; algebra of complex variables; applying Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

PHSCS 321 : Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 230; Math 303 or 334 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

PHSCS 330 : Computational Physics Lab 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 230; 321 or concurrent enrollment; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations, linear algebra and eigenvalues, chaos theory. Applications to dynamics. Introduction to programming in Matlab.

PHSCS 360 : Statistical and Thermal Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics, with applications.

PHSCS 430 : Computational Physics Lab 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Static and dynamic boundary value problems, partial differential equations. Applications in electrostatics, thermodynamics, waves, and quantum mechanics. Programming with Matlab.

PHSCS 441 : Electrostatics and Magnetism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 318.
DESCRIPTION: Classical theory of static electric and magnetic fields.

PHSCS 442 : Electrodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 441.
DESCRIPTION: Maxwell?s equations, radiation, interaction of electromagnetic fields with matter, and special relativity.

PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 452 : Applications of Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 451.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of quantum mechanics to atomic, molecular, statistical, condensed-matter, and nuclear physics; elementary particles.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

Note: Phscs 191 should be taken the first semester.

3. Complete one of the following options:

Either

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Or

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

4. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

5. Complete a senior thesis, including the following:
   a. Meet with department undergraduate research coordinator early in the junior year or before to obtain information about research projects and senior thesis procedures.
   b. Complete two hours of the following

PHSCS 498R : Senior Thesis. (.5-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individually directed research for seniors.
NOTE: Thesis topic must be cleared by faculty member before registration.

6. Take a department exit examination in the senior year.

Recommended Course

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Physics-Astronomy (61.5–64.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey of BYU undergraduate physics and astronomy programs, careers in physics and astronomy, and current physics and astronomy research.
NOTE: Take first semester after registered as physics major.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 227 : Solar System Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123; Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of light and matter, Newton's laws, solar-system dynamics, and planetary surfaces and atmospheres.

PHSCS 228 : Stellar and Extragalactic Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, Phscs 227.

PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, mental, emotional, and social development of the child.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

REL C 261 : Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.
NOTE: Honors also.

SFL 110 : Food Preparation in the Home. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles of cooking and skill development in food preparation techniques. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

Any core course not used above.

BYU undergraduate campus courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) as follows:

Courses from the School of Family Life may also be used to satisfy the emphasis elective requirements.

5. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

DESCRIPTION: Stellar atmospheres, stellar interiors, stellar evolution, interstellar matter, galactic structure, external galaxies, and cosmology.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple. Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 318 : Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; Phscs 230.
DESCRIPTION: Classical equations of physical fields; algebra of complex variables; applying Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

PHSCS 321 : Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 230; Math 303 or 334 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

PHSCS 329 : Observational Astronomy. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 127 (or 227 and 228).
DESCRIPTION: Basic techniques of observational astronomy, emphasizing practical experience in optical data acquisition and analysis.

PHSCS 330 : Computational Physics Lab 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 230; 321 or concurrent enrollment; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations, linear algebra and eigenvalues, chaos theory. Applications to dynamics. Introduction to programming in Matlab.

PHSCS 360 : Statistical and Thermal Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics, with applications.

PHSCS 427 : Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 227, 228.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

PHSCS 428 : Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 227, 228.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

Note: Phscs 191 should be taken the first semester.

3. Complete one of the following options:

Either

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Or

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

4. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

5. Complete a senior thesis, including the following:
   a. Meet with department undergraduate research coordinator early in the junior year or before to obtain information about research projects and senior thesis procedures.
   b. Complete two hours of the following

PHSCS 498R : Senior Thesis. (.5-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individually directed research for seniors.
NOTE: Thesis topic must be cleared by faculty member before registration.

6. Take a department exit examination in the senior year.

Recommended Course

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Physics Teaching (74.5–77.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Contact the Education Advisement and Certification Office for entrance requirements into the licensure program.
3. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following:

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 127 : Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey of BYU undergraduate physics and astronomy programs, careers in physics and astronomy, and current physics and astronomy research.
NOTE: Take first semester after registered as physics major.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

Note: Phscs 191 should be taken the first semester.

5. Complete one course from the following:

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

PHSCS 314 : (Phscs-Phil 423) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

6. Complete the following:

Either

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Or

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

7. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

8. Complete an additional nine hours from the following or any 300-, 400-, or 550-level physics course not already taken. At least six hours must be upper-division physics courses (Phscs 321 and 471 are highly recommended):

PHSCS 137 : Introduction to the Atmosphere and Weather. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical introduction to characteristics of the atmosphere, emphasizing structure and dynamic behavior, including the environmental impact of man.

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

PHSCS 281 : Principles of Solid State Physics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physics of solids, including laboratory experience.
NOTE: For students in science, computer science, technology, and engineering.

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

PHY S 276 : Exploration of Teaching. (4:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

PHY S 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 276; fingerprint and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

PHY S 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Phy S 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Phy S 377.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

10. Take a department exit examination in the senior year.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Astronomy (23 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 127 : Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

PHSCS 227 : Solar System Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123; Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of light and matter, Newton's laws, solar-system dynamics, and planetary surfaces and atmospheres.

PHSCS 228 : Stellar and Extragalactic Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, Phscs 227.
DESCRIPTION: Stellar atmospheres, stellar interiors, stellar evolution, interstellar matter, galactic structure, external galaxies, and cosmology.

PHSCS 329 : Observational Astronomy. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 127 (or 227 and 228).
DESCRIPTION: Basic techniques of observational astronomy, emphasizing practical experience in optical data acquisition and analysis.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Physics (24 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: History Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

   HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

3. Complete 18 hours from the following (at least one course must be chosen from each of three of the four following geographic areas):
   a. Asia or the Near East
      HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W
      DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

      HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
      DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

   b. Europe
      HIST 322 : English History to 1689. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F even years; Independent Study also.
      DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

      HIST 323 : English History Since 1689. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W odd years.
      DESCRIPTION: Emergence of Britain as a great colonial and industrial power, as well as more recent decline

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Physics Teaching (26 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The physics teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Program Requirements

Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 314 : (Phscs-Phil 423) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Physics and Astronomy (Phscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Physics and Astronomy (Phscs)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PHSCS 101 : Fundamentals of Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Principles of classical and modern physics as they relate to current concepts of our physical environment.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 127 : Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

: Honors Descriptive Astronomy.

PHSCS 137 : Introduction to the Atmosphere and Weather. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical introduction to characteristics of the atmosphere, emphasizing structure and dynamic behavior, including the environmental impact of man.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

PHSCS 191 : Introduction to Physics Careers and Research. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F

PHSCS 198 : Physics and Mathematics Review. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121; Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Review of mathematics and introductory physics for returning missionaries and others returning after a significant break.

200-Level Courses

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

PHSCS 227 : Solar System Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123; Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of light and matter, Newton's laws, solar-system dynamics, and planetary surfaces and atmospheres.

PHSCS 228 : Stellar and Extragalactic Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, Phscs 227.
DESCRIPTION: Stellar atmospheres, stellar interiors, stellar evolution, interstellar matter, galactic structure, external galaxies, and cosmology.

PHSCS 230 : Computational Physics Lab 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical and symbolic differentiation, integration, and differential equations, using Maple. Applications in mechanics, optics, and special relativity.

PHSCS 240 : Design, Fabrication, and Use of Scientific Apparatus. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 145.
DESCRIPTION: Machining, computer interfacing, controls, and vacuum systems.

PHSCS 245 : Experiments in Contemporary Physics. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 240.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth, multi-period experiments in contemporary physics, using advanced instrumentation.

PHSCS 281 : Principles of Solid State Physics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physics of solids, including laboratory experience.
NOTE: For students in science, computer science, technology, and engineering.

PHSCS 297R : Introduction to Research. (1-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised research experience.

300-Level Courses

PHSCS 313R : Special Topics in Physics. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in physics for undergraduate physics majors.

PHSCS 314 : (Phscs-Phil 423) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

PHSCS 318 : Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 303 or 334; Phscs 230.
DESCRIPTION: Classical equations of physical fields; algebra of complex variables; applying Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

PHSCS 321 : Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 230; Math 303 or 334 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 330.
DESCRIPTION: Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

PHSCS 329 : Observational Astronomy. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 127 (or 227 and 228).

PHSCS 330 : Computational Physics Lab 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 230; 321 or concurrent enrollment; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations, linear algebra and eigenvalues, chaos theory. Applications to dynamics. Introduction to programming in Matlab.

PHSCS 360 : Statistical and Thermal Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics, with applications.

PHSCS 391R : Seminar in Current Physics. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W on demand

PHSCS 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Both department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
NOTE: For students engaged in the cooperative education program.

400-Level Courses

PHSCS 416A : Writing in Physics 1. (1:3:0)
OFFERED: W on block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Completed research for thesis or capstone project.
DESCRIPTION: Writing scientific and technical articles and proposals. Writing and presentation skills applied to senior thesis or capstone project. Resources and guidelines for publishing in physics.

PHSCS 416B : Writing In Physics 2. (2:3:0)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 416A.
DESCRIPTION: Writing scientific and technical articles and proposals. Writing and presentation skills applied to senior thesis or capstone project. Resources and guidelines for publishing in physics.

PHSCS 427 : Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 227, 228.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

PHSCS 428 : Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 227, 228.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

PHSCS 430 : Computational Physics Lab 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Static and dynamic boundary value problems, partial differential equations. Applications in electrostatics, thermodynamics, waves, and quantum mechanics. Programming with Matlab.

PHSCS 441 : Electrostatics and Magnetism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220, 318.
DESCRIPTION: Classical theory of static electric and magnetic fields.

PHSCS 442 : Electrodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 441.
DESCRIPTION: Maxwell?s equations, radiation, interaction of electromagnetic fields with matter, and special relativity.

PHSCS 451 : Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

PHSCS 452 : Applications of Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 451.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of quantum mechanics to atomic, molecular, statistical, condensed-matter, and nuclear physics; elementary particles.

PHSCS 471 : Principles of Optics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123, 220.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic wave phenomena, including polarization effects, interference, coherence, dispersion, ray theory, diffraction; introduction to quantum nature of light. Laboratory component emphasizes applications.

PHSCS 492R : Capstone Project in Applied Physics. (.5-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Senior capstone projects in applied physics. Topic must be approved by department applied physics capstone project coordinator or department chair.

PHSCS 497R : Research In Physics. (1-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PHSCS 498R : Senior Thesis. (.5-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individually directed research for seniors.
NOTE: Thesis topic must be cleared by faculty member before registration.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PHSCS 513R : Special Topics in Contemporary Physics. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics generally related to recent developments in physics.

PHSCS 529 : Advanced Observational Astronomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 427, 428.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced techniques of observational astronomy, emphasizing knowledge and skills necessary to carry out observational scientific investigation in astronomy.

PHSCS 545 : Introduction to Plasma Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 321, 431, 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plasma physics, including single-particle motion and both fluid and kinetic models of plasma behavior.

PHSCS 561 : (Phscs-Me En) Fundamentals of Acoustics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123 or equivalent; Math 303 or 334 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 318, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sound generation, transmission, reflection, and reception. Vibrating systems, elastic media, mechanical energy, and radiation. Sound in tubes and cavities. Acoustic filters. Noise measurement and perception.

PHSCS 571 : Laser Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alt. yr.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 471 or basic understanding of electromagnetic waves and optics.
DESCRIPTION: Laser amplification, cavity design, and control and characterization of temporal and spatial modes. Applications in nonlinear optics and atomic physics.

PHSCS 581 : Solid-State Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the physics of solids. Crystal structure and symmetry, X-ray diffraction, lattice vibrations, metals and semiconductors, superconductivity, thermal properties, magnetic properties, and dielectric and optical properties.

PHSCS 583 : Physics of Nanostructures, Surfaces, and Interfaces. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 281 or 581 or equivalent; Phscs 451 or Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Properties of nanostructures, surfaces, and interfaces; experimental methods. Applications to emerging problems and opportunities in science and technology. Emphasis on concepts.

PHSCS 585 : Thin-Film Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation, characterization, use, and special properties of modern thin films; interdisciplinary treatment. Of interest to students in applied physics and engineering.

PHSCS 587 : Physics of Semiconductor Devices. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 281 or 581 or ECEn 450.
DESCRIPTION: Device physics, with an in-depth study of the MOS transistor and other nanoscale computing devices.

PHSCS 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Cooperative education internships off campus.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Physics and Astronomy Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

Physics and Astronomy Faculty

Professors

Allred, David D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Princeton University, 1973
PhD, Princeton University, 1977

Berrondo, Manuel

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Mexico, 1966
PhD, University of Uppsala, Sweden, 1969

Clark, Robert Beck

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Yale University, 1963
PhM, Yale University, 1967
PhD, Yale University, 1968

Moody, Joseph Ward

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1984
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1986

Peatross, Justin Bruce

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, University of Rochester, 1990
PhD, University of Rochester, 1993

Rees, Lawrence B

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, University of Maryland, College Park, 1979
PhD, University of Maryland, College Park, 1983

Sommerfeldt, Scott D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BM, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1989

Spencer, Ross Loren

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1976
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1979

Stokes, Harold T

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, University of Utah, 1977

Taylor, Benjamin Joseph

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Pasadena City College, 1962
BA, University of California, Berkeley, 1964
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1969

Turley, R. Steven

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1984

Associate Professors

Bergeson, Scott D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1995

Campbell, Branton J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1995
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1999

Christensen, Clark G

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, California Institute of Technology, 1972

Colton, John S

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, University of California, Berkeley, 1997
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2000

Davis, Robert Clinton

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Utah, 1996

Durfee, Dallin S

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1999

Hart, Grant W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of Maryland, College Park, 1983

Hart, Gus L. W.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, University of California, Davis, 1997
PhD, University of California, Davis, 1999

Hess, Bret C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young Iniversity, 1982
PhD, Iowa State University, 1988

Hintz, Eric G.B.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Case Western Reserve University, 1988
BS, Case Western Reserve University, 1988
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1995

Hirschmann, Eric W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1996

Leishman, Timothy W.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 2000

Van Huele, Jean-FranÃ§ois S

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brussels Free University, Belgium, 1979
PhD, Brussels Free University, Belgium, 1987

Vanfleet, Richard R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, University of Illinois, 1994
PhD, University of Illinois, 1997

Assistant Professors

Chesnel, Karine

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: MS, Ecole Normale Superieure, 1999
PhD, Joseph Fourier University, France, 2002

Gee, Kent L

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
MS, Brigham Young University, 2002
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 2005

of Britain's influence. Emphasis also on cultural developments.

HIST 331 : Twentieth -Century Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The rise and fall of the Soviet Union and recent attempts to refashion the Russian economy and government.

c. Latin America
HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

d. United States
HIST 373 : Civil War Era, 1848-1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of the war, major military events (leaders, campaigns, soldiers), war on the home fronts, why the South lost, Reconstruction, the legacy of the war.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

BYU undergraduate campus courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) as follows:

Any BYU courses in history (not including family history) may also be used to satisfy the emphasis elective requirements.

4. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Neilsen, David W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1999

Stephens, Denise

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, New Mexico State University, 1999
PhD, New Mexico State University, 2002

Ware, Michael J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2001

Assistant Teaching Professor

Merrell, Duane B

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AS, College of Eastern Utah, 1980
BS, Utah State University, 1985
MA, Utah State University, 1988

Associate Research Professors

Joner, Michael Deloss

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Research Professor
DEGREES: AA, Clark College, 1975
BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MS, Brigham Young University, 1981

Peterson, Bryan G

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Physics and Astronomy
RANK: Associate Research Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Political Science

Darren G. Hawkins, Chair
745 SWKT, (801) 422-5526

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Political Science are open enrollment.

The Discipline

The political science major is designed to fulfill the admonition of the Doctrine and Covenants (88:79–80) to teach one another "things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms that ye may be prepared in all things."

Politics extends far beyond the immediate concerns of politicians or pollsters; it is essential to the human condition. Since we are all shaped by the institutions we inhabit, political science helps us to understand not only our world but ourselves. It involves fundamental choices concerning our life in communities whether locally, nationally, or globally. Without politics there could be only chaos and conflict. With politics there is the chance for order and thus the opportunity to seek prosperity and fulfillment. Often conflictual but just as often cooperative, politics reflects our basic needs and interests, our highest aspirations, and the often harsh requirements of power.

Political science involves this full range of inquiry, including questions of "who gets what," questions of the best or most just political order, and questions of the nature, uses, and abuses of power. Political science students will be exposed to a broad range of perspectives or great ideas about politics to better understand questions such as "Why is campaign finance reform so difficult?" "Why did the Soviet Union fall?" "Were the Athenians justified in condemning Socrates to death?" and "Do democracies fight fewer wars?" Students will learn a variety of methods ranging from statistical analysis of quantifiable data to historical comparison of institutions to reflection on influential texts. Before graduating, students will not only better define their own values and ideas about politics but also develop their own significant research project as political scientists. Students will be prepared "in all things" to influence their communities for the better.

Career Opportunities

The Political Science Department offers an undergraduate degree in political science for students who are preparing for graduate study in related fields, professional degrees (law or business), or a wide variety of public service occupations, or for liberal arts students who are interested in an undergraduate major that focuses on challenging questions facing modern society.

Students may emphasize the subfields of American politics, comparative politics, international politics, political philosophy, or public policy.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BA in Political Science

Minors

Political Science
Political Science Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

General Information

All political science students should enrich their undergraduate education and enhance their career prospects with an off-campus internship experience. Several high-quality opportunities are available for which credit may be earned toward the major or minor.

Washington Seminar. Students from any academic discipline spend a semester or term in Washington, D.C., working in government, business, communications, or the arts. Complementing course work involving readings and briefings on contemporary national issues is part of the curriculum. From 6 to 12 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

Utah State Legislature Internship. During each winter semester students from any academic discipline may work as interns in the Utah State Legislature. Students interested in legislative and public policy processes will particularly benefit from the experience. Complementing course work on state government can be taken in conjunction with the internship. From 6 to 12 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

State and Local Government Internships. Throughout the year students may intern with city, county, or state governments, as well as the district offices of U.S. senators and representatives (availability of positions may vary). From 3 to 6 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

International Internships. The International Internship Program at the David M. Kennedy Center places students in a variety of internships with foreign governments and international institutions.

Requirements

1. Internships should be completed during the junior or senior year. Prior to the internship students should have completed Pl Sc 110 and 200.
2. Students must have a cumulative grade point average of 2.7 or better (Washington Seminar requires a 3.0) and be in good academic standing. Strong research and writing skills are important qualifications.
3. All internship programs have a strong and complementing academic component to help students gain the most from their experience. Students completing any of the above internships must be enrolled for credit.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Political Science (50 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

See general description of the discipline.

Career Opportunities

Career choices open to graduates in political science include careers in law, teaching, business, journalism, the media, and libraries, as well as with interest groups and associations. In addition, majors are also placed with federal, state, and local governments and are found in elective politics. A number of these options do require additional graduate training.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 27 hours of political science courses must be taken in residency at BYU (BYU Independent Study courses do not meet this requirement).
2. Pl Sc 101, 102, and 297 do not count toward the major or minor.
3. Only 6 hours of 298R and 399R combined may count toward the major.
4. No cooperative education (internship) credit from other universities or colleges will be accepted toward the major.
5. Majors are strongly encouraged to take Phil 150 to complete the GE First-Year Writing requirement.
6. Pl Sc 200 is prerequisite to all upper-division courses and must be taken no later than the sophomore year.
7. Complete the following:
   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.
8. Complete two of the following foundation courses before higher-numbered courses (they do not need to be taken in order):
   PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

   PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

   PL SC 170 : Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

   Note: Students who do not take one of these three foundation courses must take a corresponding upper-division elective course. If you do not take Pl Sc 110, you must take one course selected from Pl Sc 310–319R, 320, 321, 322, or 410. If you do not take Pl Sc 150, you must take one course selected from Pl Sc 341–349R, 350–359R, 444, or 450–458. If you do not take Pl Sc 170, you must take one course selected from Pl Sc 370–379R, 380–388, or 470–474.

9. Complete one of the following foundation courses before higher-numbered courses:

PL SC 202 : Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

Note: If students do not take Pl Sc 201 or Phil 201, they must take an upper-division elective course selected from Pl Sc 300–309, 400–409, or 322, 334, 336, 364, 374, 473.

10. Complete the following methodology courses:

PL SC 200 : Political Inquiry. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of political science, including theory and techniques of qualitative and quantitative research design.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all upper-division courses.

PL SC 328 : Quantitative Political Methodology. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative techniques in political research.

Note: Pl Sc 200, along with a capstone seminar, fulfills the University Core Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement. Pl Sc 328 fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement (math option).

11. Complete one of the following theory courses during the junior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions):

PL SC 300 : Contemporary Political Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 201, 202; or Phil 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of political science, including the moral and ethical dimensions of politics.

PL SC 310 : Theories of American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Major theories and approaches used to explain American politics.

PL SC 330 : Theories of Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Major theories used in assessing public policies, including policy formation, interaction of politics and economics, institutions of policy making, and policy.

PL SC 350 : Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

PL SC 370 : Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

12. Complete 24 additional hours of political science electives, except 400, 410, 430, 450, 470. Only one 100-level course and one 200-level course may be counted.

13. Complete one of the following capstone seminars during the senior year. A completed capstone paper with at least a C– grade is required to receive a final grade in all capstone classes and fulfill the University Core Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement (note prerequisites in course descriptions):

PL SC 400 : Capstone Seminar in Political Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200, 201, 202, 300. For political science majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in political theory for students in their senior year.

PL SC 410 : Capstone Seminar in American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in American politics and government for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 430 : Capstone Seminar in Public Policy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in public policy for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science and public policy majors only.

PL SC 450 : Capstone Seminar in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in comparative politics and government for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 470 : Capstone Seminar in International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in international relations and politics for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

14. All students are strongly encouraged to complete an internship. Established programs are available through Washington Seminar, Utah State Legislature, or the Kennedy Center. Up to 6 hours of credit earned from an internship (399R) may be counted toward the major.

15. Students who plan no formal education beyond the bachelor's degree should take a double major or develop adequate skills through other courses that will enhance their employment opportunities. Consult the college advisement center or department Web site.
Students who plan to seek MA or PhD degrees are strongly encouraged to strengthen their quantitative and analytical skills. These students should consult with faculty about other skills that specific graduate programs might require.

16. Students scoring a 5 on the American Government and/or Comparative Government AP exams may substitute AP credit for Pl Sc 110 or Pl Sc 150, respectively. However, they are required to take at least one upper-division elective in each subfield in which they substitute AP credit for American Government and Politics or Comparative Government and Politics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Political Science (Pl Sc) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Political Science (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

   PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

   PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

   PL SC 170 : Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

2. Complete one course from the following:

   PL SC 202 : Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

   PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

3. Complete three additional upper-division courses.

4. Pl Sc 101, 102, and 297 cannot be counted toward the minor.

5. Students scoring a 5 on the American Government and/or Comparative Government AP exams may substitute AP credit for Pl Sc 110 or Pl Sc 150, respectively. However, they are required to take at least one upper-division elective in each subfield in which they substitute AP credit for American Government and Politics or Comparative Government and Politics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Political Science (Pl Sc) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Political Science Teaching (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

   PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

   PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

   PL SC 170 : Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

2. Complete one course from the following:

   PL SC 202 : Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

   PHIL 202 : History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand, Su on demand; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

3. Complete three additional upper-division courses.

4. Pl Sc 101, 102, and 297 cannot be counted toward the minor.

5. Students scoring a 5 on the American Government and/or Comparative Government AP exams may substitute AP credit for Pl Sc 110 or Pl Sc 150, respectively. However, they are required to take at least one upper-division elective in each subfield in which they substitute AP credit for American Government and Politics or Comparative Government and Politics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Political Science (Pl Sc) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Political Science (Pl Sc)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PL SC 101R : Current Events and Political Science. (1-2:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: An introduction to political science using both national and international current events. Introduces faculty, career opportunities, academic expectations, and campus resources. Appropriate for non-majors.

PL SC 102 : Review of U.S. Government for Washington Seminar Students. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Review of the essentials of American national government for nonmajors participating in the Washington Seminar.
NOTE: May not count toward a political science major or minor.

PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

: Honors American Government and Politics.

PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

: Honors Comparative Government and Politics.

PL SC 170 : Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

200-Level Courses

PL SC 200 : Political Inquiry. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of political science, including theory and techniques of qualitative and quantitative research design.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all upper-division courses.

PL SC 201 : Western Political Heritage 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of political philosophy and scriptures; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors Western Political Heritage 1.

PL SC 202 : Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

: Honors Western Political Heritage 2.

PL SC 297 : Internship Program Preparation. (1-2:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preparatory seminar for students who will be participating in departmental internship programs.

300-Level Courses

PL SC 300 : Contemporary Political Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 201, 202; or Phil 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of political science, including the moral and ethical dimensions of politics.

PL SC 301 : Philosophy of the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of the philosophy of scientific and normative inquiry.

PL SC 308 : Theories of Human Freedom. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Scope of human freedom at the metaphysical, individual, social, and political levels.

PL SC 309R : Topics in Political Philosophy. (3:3:0)

PL SC 310 : Theories of American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Major theories and approaches used to explain American politics.

PL SC 311 : State and Local Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Relation of state and national governments, forms of state governments and politics, types of municipal governments and their operation.

PL SC 312 : Japanese-American Internment: Topaz Plus. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
RECOMMENDED: Pl Sc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese-American internment in the context of American democracy. Assessing how this was allowed to happen in our democratic system of government. Focus on the situation at Topaz Relocation Camp (located near Delta, Utah) and the other nine camps; the cause for incarceration of such a sizeable number of citizens. Field trip to Topaz.

PL SC 313 : Interest Groups. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Theories on formation and maintenance of interest groups; tactics of groups in legislative, executive, bureaucratic, and court settings; influence of groups on elections and public policy.

PL SC 314 : The United States Presidency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Presidential power in the United States, focusing on major roles of the American presidency.

PL SC 315 : Congress and the Legislative Process. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Election process; structure, organization, and procedures of legislative bodies; relations with pressure groups, the president, and executive branch.

PL SC 316 : American Political Parties. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Electoral and policy-making roles of American political parties today and their future in American politics.

PL SC 317 : Public Opinion and Voting Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between attitudes, opinion, and voting behavior in American politics and institutions.

PL SC 318 : Campaigns and Elections. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Analyzes electoral process in the United States, including history, significance in governance, campaign strategy, finance, media role, etc.

PL SC 319R : Topics in American Government and Politics. (.5-3:3:0)

PL SC 320 : American Politics Through Literature. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: American politics through the novel and other literary works. Developing political concepts and themes that come from significant political novels.

PL SC 321 : The Media in American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: News media's role in processes of American politics, including electoral process, legislative process, and public policy-making.

PL SC 322 : Early American Political Thought: 1620-1865. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Core principles and seminal texts of American politics from Colonial times through the Lincoln administration.

PL SC 323 : Modern American Political Thought: 1865-Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Core principles and seminal texts of American politics from Reconstruction to the present.

PL SC 328 : Quantitative Political Methodology. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative techniques in political research.

PL SC 330 : Theories of Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Major theories used in assessing public policies, including policy formation, interaction of politics and economics, institutions of policy making, and policy.

PL SC 333 : Politics of Bureaucracy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and nature of bureaucracy; sources of power; political executives; staffs and agency personnel; conflicts with elected officials; public interest and bureaucratic control.

PL SC 334 : Public Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Sources of values, areas of conflict with government policy, means of value accommodation.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: Management Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following pre-core courses:
   I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
   NOTE: Fee.

   I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
   NOTE: Fee.

3. Then complete the following core 1 courses:
   ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

4. Next complete the following core 2 courses:
   BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
   NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

   BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer

PL SC 336 : Government and Religion. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Christian-Hebraic concepts of state. American experience with church-state relations (First Amendment problems). Policy issues of concern to contemporary religions.

PL SC 339R : Topics in Public Policy. (3:3:0)

PL SC 341 : Western European Politics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Politics and policy in western Europe. State-building, party systems, nationalism, and cooperation among advanced industrial countries in comparative, historical perspective. Social and Christian democracy; European Union.

PL SC 344 : Comparative Political Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of political economy from a comparative perspective. Classic theorists (Smith, Marx, Schumpeter, etc.); classic questions (industrialization, national economic policy, property, globalization, law, and economics).

PL SC 347 : Russia/Former Soviet Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative politics of Russia and Soviet successor states. Development of political systems from common Soviet heritage, emphasizing post-independence politics and institution building.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

PL SC 349R : Topics in Politics. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

PL SC 350 : Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

PL SC 351 : British Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Examination of the origin and contemporary operation of British political institutions as they relate to British society.

PL SC 352 : African Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes of change and development of nation states; African regionalism and relations with other nations; contemporary political issues.

PL SC 353 : China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 354 : Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 355 : Canadian Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of Canada and its government; Canada's role in the contemporary world

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

PL SC 359R : Topics in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)

PL SC 360 : Constitutional Law--American Federal System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

PL SC 361 : Constitutional Law--Rights and Immunities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

PL SC 364 : Jurisprudence. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Problem approach to ancient and modern legal philosophies, emphasizing the nature of justice and the relation of law to morality.

PL SC 369R : Topics in Law and Justice. (.5-3:3:0)

PL SC 370 : Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

PL SC 371 : Foreign Policy Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200, 370.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of research regarding multiple levels of foreign policy analysis: individual, group, bureaucratic, societal, economic, systemic.

PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

PL SC 373 : International Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and function of international law; recognition, succession, jurisdiction rights, and immunities of states; nationality and jurisdiction over nations.

PL SC 374 : Ethics and International Affairs. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Ethical considerations in study and practice of international politics. Realism, idealism, and other theories of state behavior subjected to ethical standards.

PL SC 375 : International Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: International institutions; transnational relations; rise of newer political organizations: League of Nations, United Nations, European communities, world religions, multinational corporations, terrorist groups, global regimes.

PL SC 376 : U.S. Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Formation, implementation, analysis, and criticism of themes in American foreign policy.

PL SC 377 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence.

PL SC 378 : International Conflict. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150 or 170.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of war; alliances and empires; military innovation; civil-military relations; fungibility of forces; terrorism; security studies methods; use and misuse of history.

PL SC 379R : Topics in International Relations. (.5-3:3:0)

PL SC 380 : International Relations of Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Factors that affect foreign relations of Latin American countries, including the U.S. role, emphasizing intervention, democracy, development, and trade.

PL SC 381 : International Relations of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interregional relations and conflicts, political economics, Arab nationalism, processes of political change, alliances, and superpower relations.

PL SC 382 : International Relations of North America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Examination and analysis of factors that affect foreign relations of Canada, U.S., and Mexico, emphasizing trade, security, migration, environment.

PL SC 385 : International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

PL SC 386 : Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

PL SC 388 : Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

PL SC 391 : Advanced Seminar on Current Issues. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance to Washington Seminar.
DESCRIPTION: Briefings and lectures from government officials and agencies, as well as directed readings on current issues.
NOTE: For students interning in Washington, D.C.

PL SC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Work-study on the international, national, state, and local level.

: Campaign Internship.
: City Government Intership.
: Congressional Internship.
: International Internship.
: State Government Internship.
: Utah Legislature Internship.
: Washington DC Internship.

400-Level Courses

PL SC 400 : Capstone Seminar in Political Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200, 201, 202, 300. For political science majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in political theory for students in their senior year.

PL SC 402 : Plato's Political Thought. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Plato's dialogues that contain political teachings or implications

PL SC 405 : Federalist Papers. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: The primary defense of the Constitution of the United States, which also constitutes the major commentary on that document.

PL SC 406 : Tocqueville on America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Alexis de Tocqueville's *Democracy in America*.

PL SC 408 : Hermeneutics, Deconstruction, and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Critical political theory, including writers such as Hegel, Nietzsche, Heiddegger, Gadamer, Derrida, and Levinas.

PL SC 410 : Capstone Seminar In American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in American politics and government for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 430 : Capstone Seminar in Public Policy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in public policy for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science and public policy majors only.

PL SC 444 : The Political Economy of Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 110, PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Political foundations of growth, providing public goods, and political reform in developing countries. Development and how institutions and culture shape it.

PL SC 450 : Capstone Seminar in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in comparative politics and government for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 452 : Islam and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tensions and accommodations between religion and politics in Muslim nations.

PL SC 458 : Totalitarianism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Totalitarian systems of government and philosophy in nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

PL SC 470 : Capstone Seminar in International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in international relations and politics for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 471 : Intelligence and National Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between theory and practice of intelligence and national security of states.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

PL SC 473 : Human Rights. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Causes of human rights violations and societal and state responses; nature, history, and impacts of international human rights norms; ways to define and promote rights.

PL SC 474 : Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

PL SC 475 : Civil Wars and Ethnic Violence. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Pl Sc 150, 170.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations of ethnic and nationalist identities and how they related to civil wars worldwide, emphasizing theoretical explanations of civil wars and their resolution. Key civil war cases examined.

PL SC 498R : Directed Individual Study. (.5-3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior status and department chair's and instructor's consent.

PL SC 499 : Honors Thesis. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Completion of lower-division political science major requirements.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PL SC 519R : Advanced Topics in American Government. (3:3:0)

PL SC 535 : Natural Resources Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes and politics of public policies related to natural resources. Problems of analysis and evaluation.

PL SC 536 : Environmental Regulation. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: Regulatory programs aimed at air and water pollution, hazardous waste, toxic chemicals, and other environmental problems. Alternative regulatory mechanisms and approaches.

PL SC 539R : Advanced Topics in Public Policy. (3:3:0)

PL SC 545 : Social Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Justifications for government intervention in families and individual lives, effectiveness of social policies.

PL SC 559R : Advanced Topics in Comparative Government. (3:3:0)

PL SC 570 : Advanced Theory of International Relations: Core Readings. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and research of international relations.

PL SC 579R : Advanced Topics in International Relations. (3:3:0)

: Topics on World Politics.

PL SC 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Internships for master's candidates.

: Graduate Internship.

Back to Political Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Political Science Faculty

Professors

Bowen, Donna Lee

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1968
MA, University of Chicago, 1972
PhD, University of Chicago, 1981

Bryner, Gary C

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1975
MS, University of Utah, 1978
PhD, Cornell University, 1982
JD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Davis, Richard

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Syracuse University, 1983
PhD, Syracuse University, 1986

Daynes, Byron W

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1963
MS, Brigham Young University, 1965
PhD, University of Chicago, 1971

Fry, Earl Howard

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1976

Hancock, Ralph C

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Harvard University, 1980
PhD, Harvard University, 1983

Hudson, Valerie M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Ohio State University, 1983
PhD, Ohio State University, 1983

Magleby, David Blyth

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1973
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1974
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1980

Patterson, Kelly D

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Columbia University, 1989

Associate Professors

Bohn, David Earle

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
MA, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, Columbia University, 1974

Christensen, Raymond V

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
JD, Harvard University, 1987
MA, Harvard University, 1990
PhD, Harvard University, 1992

Cooper, Scott

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Duke University, 1996
PhD, Duke University, 1999

Hawkins, Darren Greg

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA/BS, University of Utah, 1990
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1991
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1996

Hyer, Eric A

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Columbia University, 1981
MPhil, Columbia University, 1983
PhD, Columbia University, 1990

Nielson, Daniel L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 1997

Wilson, Sven Eric

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, University of Chicago, 1992
PhD, University of Chicago, 1997

Assistant Professors

Findley, Michael G.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2007

Gilchrist, Brent

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Carleton University, 1993
MA, Carleton University, 1996
PhD, Carleton University, 2002

Holland, Matthew S.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Duke University, 1998
PhD, Duke University, 2001

Karpowitz, Christopher

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996
CERT, Duke University, 1998
MA, Princeton University, 2000
PhD, Princeton University, 2006

Monson, Joseph Quin

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Ohio State University, 2004

Pope, Jeremy

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1997
MA, Stanford University, 2002
PhD, Stanford University, 2004

Schulzke, Charles Eric

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Boston College, 1995
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2002

Stiles, Kendall Wayne

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Political Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, Johns Hopkins University, 1987

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Psychology

Ramona Hopkins, Chair
1082 SWKT, (801) 422-1170

Karen Christensen, Coordinator of Student Programs
1097 SWKT, (801) 422-4560
Karen1@byu.edu

Psychology Student Support Services
1005 SWKT, (801) 422-5356
psychservices@byu.edu

Psychology Academic Internship and Tutoring
1005 SWKT, (801) 422-8952
psychinternship@byu.edu

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All undergraduate degree programs in the Department of Psychology are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Psychology is a traditional discipline in the liberal arts and sciences and is rooted in the Western intellectual tradition. Since its founding in the late nineteenth century, psychology has distinguished itself primarily as a science with a wide scope of interests. Many psychologists also provide treatment for a broad range of disorders, and others work to solve pressing social issues. The diverse world community of academic and professional psychologists is devoted to expanding our understanding of individual and collective behavior and applying that understanding toward improving the human condition.

The department joins students and faculty together to make a scientific and applied contribution to the discipline of psychology. Its faculty members and administrators are committed to an educational experience that excites learning and understanding in personal and collaborative settings. At the same time the department honors the restored gospel as vital for psychological theory, as a guide for professional conduct, and as a source of unique insight. Aware of the history of psychology and as active participants therein, faculty members hold students to high standards of individual and collective performance and understanding. Students are expected to respond to multiple styles of teaching and broad opportunities for engagement in research and application with serious and sustained interest and effort. In this way the department distinguishes itself as a community of scholarship, moral principle, and devotion to the elevation of humankind.

Career Opportunities

The psychology major is a gateway to professional employment and to advanced study in psychology. Psychologists engage in a variety of academic roles as teachers, researchers, and administrators and also provide counseling, clinical, and consulting services to individuals and organizations. Psychologists are employed by colleges and universities, public and private schools, clinics, and hospitals. They work in private practice and for corporations and government entities. The study of psychology has particular value for family life and for civic and cultural roles generally. The psychology major provides a well-informed perspective on human and organizational behavior in preparation for occupations in law enforcement, law, or business.

Most professional positions require a master's or doctoral degree, although a bachelor's degree may be sufficient to gain employment in mental health care, detention and probation services, auxiliary social work, personnel, or human resources. Further, the psychology major gives students a particularly strong background leading to graduate study in business, law, or medicine.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major
- BS in Psychology

Minors
- Psychology
- Psychology Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Psychology
PhD in Psychology
PhD in Clinical Psychology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved
XHTML CSS 508

market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

ORG B 400 : Business Ethics. (2:2:0)
DESCRIPTION: Moral leadership, character development, and multiple perspectives for making ethical decisions in organizations.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

5. Then complete two courses from the following:
ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

BUS M 430 : Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

ORG B 347 : Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices needed to serve as effective leaders in families, church, community, and work settings -- planning, decision making, self-awareness, effective human influence, and community building.

6. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Psychology (52–53 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 36 of the total major credits must be 300-level or above. (Students can enroll in 500-level courses on a space-available basis.)

2. At least 23 hours of psychology major credit must be received while in residence at BYU.

3. A maximum of 13 hours may be taken as Independent Study (only 8 of which may count as residence hours).

4. Complete one course from the following:

   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   - NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   - DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   - NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

5. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   PSYCH 101 : Orientation to the Psychology Major. (1:1:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Overview of curriculum and major requirements, faculty research programs and specialties, campus resources, and career possibilities.
   - NOTE: Required seminar for all students entering major.

   PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

   PSYCH 210 : A History of Psychology. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Psych 111.
   - RECOMMENDED: May be taken concurrently with Psych 301.
   - DESCRIPTION: Overview of psychological thinking from Ancient Greece to the present. Emphasizes a critical stance toward the assumptions and implications of major psychological theories.
   - NOTE: This course contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

   Note: These courses must be completed prior to enrollment in the courses listed in item 7 below.

6. Complete one multicultural issues course from the following:

   ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

SFL 354 : Cross-Cultural Family and Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of familial, social, and other factors in development.

SOC 113 : Multicultural America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Diverse cultural heritages in the United States. Cultures studied scientifically will include African American, Hispanic, Asian American, and Native American.

7. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
PSYCH 301 : Psychological Statistics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Psych 101, 111, 210.
DESCRIPTION: Descriptive analysis and hypothesis testing applied to psychological research data.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 210. Stat 221 will not substitute for this course. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 302 : Psychological Research Design and Analysis. (3:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 101, 111, 210, 301.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of designing, conducting, and reporting psychological investigations.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 303 or 304. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 304 : Psychological Testing. (3:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301.
DESCRIPTION: Construction and validation of standardized psychological tests.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 302 or 303. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

Note 1: Psych 301 is prerequisite to both Psych 302 and 304 and may be taken concurrently with 210.

Note 2: Psych 302 and 304 may be taken concurrently.

Note 3: Students considering application to graduate study are strongly encouraged to take Psych 300.

8. Complete one course from the following:
ENGL 315 : Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence, proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

PSYCH 303 : Writing Within Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 101, 111, 210, 301; Engl 150 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Psych 302 is highly recommended.
DESCRIPTION: Processes of research-oriented writing and presentation for psychology majors.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 302 or 304. Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement. Engl 315 will substitute for this course.

(May be taken concurrently with Psych 302 or 304.)

9. Complete one gender issues course from the following:
PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

RECOMMENDED: PISc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

WS 222 : (WS-Soc) Introduction to Women's Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Survey of scholarship about women's lives; new historical, sociological, psychological, and literary approaches that inform our understanding of women's experience.

Note: If Psych 306 is selected to fill this requirement, it cannot also be used to fill the requirement listed in item 10 (Cluster B).

10. Complete four courses in one of the following clusters, including the required course indicated. In addition, complete three of the courses listed in one or both of the other clusters (Psych 301, 302, and 304 are required prerequisites):

Cluster A — Developmental and Clinical Psychology:

Complete the following required course:

PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

Complete three courses from the following:

PSYCH 311 : Critical Issues in Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical and comparative examination of underlying theoretical and philosophical issues relavant to contemporary social, personality, and cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and psychotherapy.

PSYCH 320 : Developmental Psychology: Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, mental, emotional, and social development of the child.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 322 : Developmental Psychology: Adulthood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Stability and change in psychological, physiological, and interpersonal processes through early, middle, and late adulthood.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 343 : Child Psychopathology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mental disorders of childhood.

PSYCH 348 : Clinical Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personality theories, psychopathology, diagnostic interviewing and testing, psychotherapy techniques; research methods.
NOTE: Not a practicum.

Cluster B — Social Psychology:
Complete the following required course:
PSYCH 350 : (Psych-Soc) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

Complete three courses from the following:
PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 311 : Critical Issues in Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical and comparative examination of underlying theoretical and philosophical issues relavant to contemporary social, personality, and cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and psychotherapy.

PSYCH 330 : Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personal, interactional, and structural aspects of organizations; motivation, decision making, problem-solving communication, leadership, organizational structure, change.
NOTE: Org B 321 will not substitute for this course.

PSYCH 338 : Sport Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Application of psychological principles to sporting activities.

PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 352 : Applied Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304, 350; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying social psychological theory, research, and methods to such domains as law, business, education, the media, mental health, and physical health.

PSYCH 353 : LDS Perspectives and Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Relationships between theories of psychology and LDS thought.

PSYCH 354 : Psychology of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Classification of religious behavior and experience; source of religious motivation; religion and the growth process.

PSYCH 356 : Introduction to Health Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Psychology focusing on the Biopsychological Model, i.e., health issues from standpoint of biological, psychological, and social factors.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 358 : Leadership Development. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

PSYCH 359 : Environmental Psychology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between people and their physical context.

PSYCH 376 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of language acquisition including communicative development in infancy, sematic and syntactic development, language and literacy in the school years, and effects of brain damage.

Cluster C — Behavior, Brain, and Cognition:
Complete the following required course:
PSYCH 381 : Behavioral Neurobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent. (Neuro 205 will substitute for Psych 302.)
DESCRIPTION: Basic physiological, anatomical, and chemical foundations of psychology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

Complete three courses from the following:
PSYCH 311 : Critical Issues in Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical and comparative examination of underlying theoretical and philosophical issues relavant to contemporary social, personality, and cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and psychotherapy.

PSYCH 361 : Principles of Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of learning; representative experiments.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 365 : Motivation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Determinants of motivation, relationship of motives to emotion, cognition, personality, and action. Implications for understanding self and others.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 370 : Sensation and Perception. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent; or Neuro 105 for neuroscience majors.
DESCRIPTION: Sensory basis of perception and principles of perceptual organization.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 375 : Cognition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Perceptual organization; information processing; cognitive development; relationships between sensory analysis, perception, memory, learning, language, and problem solving.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 382 : Stress Psychobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent. (Neuro 205 will substitute for Psych 302.)
DESCRIPTION: Behavioral neurobiology of stress.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 387 : Introduction to Primate Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of primate behavior; the role of parental care on developmental outcome, functional neurobiology, and psychopathology.

11. Complete 3 hours from the following capstone seminars:

PSYCH 410R : Senior Practicum: Teaching of Psychology. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience as an undergraduate teaching assistant or Psych Central tutor or in other teaching-related activities, including research.

PSYCH 420R : Senior Practicum: Community Projects. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience in community-based service learning related to practice of psychology. Structured record of student's experience required.

PSYCH 430R : Senior Practicum: Research in Psychology. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience in psychological research--laboratory-based, field based, or otherwise. Student typically work with a research team.

Note 1: To enroll in a capstone seminar students must have completed Psych 101, 111, 210, 301, 302, and 304 (or be concurrently enrolled in 302 or 304); one core course from Cluster A, B, or C; and three other 300-level psychology courses (or be concurrently enrolled in the third course).

Note 2: Enrollment in Psych 399R will also meet the capstone seminar requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Psychology (Psych) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Psychology (19 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

   PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

   PSYCH 301 : Psychological Statistics. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Psych 101, 111, 210.
   DESCRIPTION: Descriptive analysis and hypothesis testing applied to psychological research data.
   NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 210. Stat 221 will not substitute for this course. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

2. Complete 12 elective hours from remaining undergraduate and 500-level courses; 9 hours must be 300-level or above. No more than 6 hours of Independent Study credit may count toward the minor. Students may enroll in 500-level courses with instructor's consent.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Psychology (Psych) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Psychology Teaching (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 361 : Principles of Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of learning; representative experiments.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

2. Complete 12 elective hours from remaining undergraduate and 500-level courses (Psych 240, 320, 350 are recommended); 9 hours must be 300-level or above. No more than 6 hours of Independent Study credit may count toward the minor. Students may enroll in 500-level courses with instructor's consent.

Note: The psychology teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Psychology (Psych) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Psychology (Psych)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PSYCH 101 : Orientation to the Psychology Major. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Overview of curriculum and major requirements, faculty research programs and specialties, campus resources, and career possibilities.
NOTE: Required seminar for all students entering major.

PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

: Honors General Psychology.

PSYCH 170 : Understanding and Improving Your Memory. (1:0:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of human learning and memory; study skills and methods for improving memory.
NOTE: Independent Study only.

200-Level Courses

PSYCH 210 : A History of Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 111.
RECOMMENDED: May be taken concurrently with Psych 301.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of psychological thinking from Ancient Greece to the present. Emphasizes a critical stance toward the assumptions and implications of major psychological theories.
NOTE: This course contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 212R : Special Topics in Psychology. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Small-group seminar focusing on a classical text or on readings related to a contemporary issue in theory and research.

PSYCH 220 : Human Development: Life Span. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of psychological, biological, and social influences on behavior and psychological development through the life span.

PSYCH 240 : Personal and Social Adjustment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of adjustment and application of psychological principles for coping with stress and interpersonal, emotional, and psychosexual difficulties.

PSYCH 270 : Improving Mental Skills. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Improving one or more of the following skills: remembering, studying, problem solving, or rapid reading.

300-Level Courses

PSYCH 300 : Applying to Graduate School. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of graduate programs in psychology; preparing application materials, including the Graduate Record Examination. (GRE).

PSYCH 301 : Psychological Statistics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Psych 101, 111, 210.
DESCRIPTION: Descriptive analysis and hypothesis testing applied to psychological research data.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 210. Stat 221 will not substitute for this course. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 302 : Psychological Research Design and Analysis. (3:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 101, 111, 210, 301.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of designing, conducting, and reporting psychological investigations.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 303 or 304. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 303 : Writing Within Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 101, 111, 210, 301; Engl 150 or equivalent.

PSYCH 304 : Psychological Testing. (3:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301.
DESCRIPTION: Construction and validation of standardized psychological tests.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 302 or 303. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 311 : Critical Issues in Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical and comparative examination of underlying theoretical and philosophical issues relavant to contemporary social, personality, and cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and psychotherapy.

PSYCH 320 : Developmental Psychology: Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, mental, emotional, and social development of the child.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 322 : Developmental Psychology: Adulthood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Stability and change in psychological, physiological, and interpersonal processes through early, middle, and late adulthood.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 330 : Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personal, interactional, and structural aspects of organizations; motivation, decision making, problem-solving communication, leadership, organizational structure, change.
NOTE: Org B 321 will not substitute for this course.

PSYCH 338 : Sport Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Application of psychological principles to sporting activities.

PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 343 : Child Psychopathology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mental disorders of childhood.

PSYCH 348 : Clinical Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personality theories, psychopathology, diagnostic interviewing and testing, psychotherapy techniques; research methods.
NOTE: Not a practicum.

PSYCH 350 : (Psych-Soc) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 352 : Applied Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304, 350; or instructor's consent.

paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

Note 1: At least four 300-level or above courses (either 11 or 12 credit hours) must be BYU courses.

Note 2: Emphasis requirements must be filled with credit less than 15 years old.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

PSYCH 353 : LDS Perspectives and Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Relationships between theories of psychology and LDS thought.

PSYCH 354 : Psychology of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Classification of religious behavior and experience; source of religious motivation; religion and the growth process.

PSYCH 356 : Introduction to Health Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Psychology focusing on the Biopsychological Model, i.e., health issues from standpoint of biological, psychological, and social factors.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 358 : Leadership Development. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

PSYCH 359 : Environmental Psychology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between people and their physical context.

PSYCH 361 : Principles of Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of learning; representative experiments.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 365 : Motivation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Determinants of motivation, relationship of motives to emotion, cognition, personality, and action. Implications for understanding self and others.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 370 : Sensation and Perception. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent; or Neuro 105 for neuroscience majors.
DESCRIPTION: Sensory basis of perception and principles of perceptual organization.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 375 : Cognition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Perceptual organization; information processing; cognitive development; relationships between sensory analysis, perception, memory, learning, language, and problem solving.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 376 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of language acquisition including communicative development in infancy, sematic and syntactic development, language and literacy in the school years, and effects of brain damage.

PSYCH 381 : Behavioral Neurobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent. (Neuro 205 will substitute for Psych 302.)
DESCRIPTION: Basic physiological, anatomical, and chemical foundations of psychology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 382 : Stress Psychobiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent. (Neuro 205 will substitute for Psych 302.)
DESCRIPTION: Behavioral neurobiology of stress.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 386R : Behavioral Neurobiology Laboratory. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381, 382; or concurrent enrollment and instructor's consent.

PSYCH 387 : Introduction to Primate Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of primate behavior; the role of parental care on developmental outcome, functional neurobiology, and psychopathology.

PSYCH 390R : Special Topics in Psychology. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

: Advanced Personality Studies.
: Comp. Animal Behavior.
: Ethology and Sociobiology.
: Forum Lecture.

PSYCH 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.

400-Level Courses

PSYCH 410R : Senior Practicum: Teaching of Psychology. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience as an undergraduate teaching assistant or Psych Central tutor or in other teaching-related activities, including research.

PSYCH 420R : Senior Practicum: Community Projects. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience in community-based service learning related to practice of psychology. Structured record of student's experience required.

PSYCH 430R : Senior Practicum: Research in Psychology. (1-8:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; cluster requirements (or concurrent enrollment in last elective course); or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone experience in psychological research--laboratory-based, field based, or otherwise. Student typically work with a research team.

PSYCH 492R : Supervised Instructional or Research Experience. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional activities or laboratory/field research.

PSYCH 495R : Independent Readings. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

PSYCH 499R : Independent Research. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PSYCH 501 : Data Analysis in Psychological Research 1. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301; or Stat 221, 222, 223; or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using and interpreting major quantitative methods in psychology; some commonly used computer methods.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 502 : Data Analysis in Psychological Research 2. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 501 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to multivariate data analysis methods, including multivariate analysis of variance, factor analysis, discriminant analysis, multivariate multiple regression, canonical correlation, structural equations modeling, cluster analysis, etc.

PSYCH 503 : Research Measurement. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 501 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Classical true score and item response theories; estimation procedures for instrument reliability and validity.

PSYCH 504 : Research Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Psych 501.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of designs used in psychotherapeutic literature, emphasizing critical analysis of empirical research.

PSYCH 505 : Clinical Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 503, 504; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of research examining processes and outcomes of psychological treatments for psychological disorders.

PSYCH 510 : History and Systems of Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 210 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of origins and development of modern psychology, including consideration of the schools and theoretical systems.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 511 : Philosophy of Science for the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent or admission to PhD program.
DESCRIPTION: Issues in philosophy of science as they apply to social sciences, including methods, epistemology, and construction of knowledge.

PSYCH 512 : Qualitative Research Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 501, 502; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of qualitative research emphasizing philosophical assumptions, question formulation, data gathering, interpretation, and presentation of findings.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 520 : Advanced Developmental Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 320, 321, or 322 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Major research in developmental psychology, emphasizing theory, content, and methodology.

PSYCH 531 : Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Psych 330 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personal and interpersonal aspects of organizational life: goal setting, decision making, problem solving, communication, control, leadership, motivation, and change.

PSYCH 535 : Behavior Modification Techniques. (3:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: Psych 361 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical application of behavior modification to academic discipline; emotional target behaviors of individuals and groups.

PSYCH 540 : Personality Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 341 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary theories of personality developed within the framework of major psychological systems.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 550 : Theory and Research in Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 350 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Current theories and research on interaction with others.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 552 : Applied Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 352 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of domains in which social psychological theory and research have been applied in field settings.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 555 : Group Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Psych-Soc 350 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on small-group processes and mass behavior.

PSYCH 560 : Learning Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 361 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of current theories and persistent issues.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 565 : Motivational Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 365 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical, historical, and empirical overview; recent trends and issues; role of animal studies; methodological issues.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 575 : Cognitive Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Psych 370, 375; or equivalents; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and research in perception, attention, language, problem solving, and other thinking processes.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 583 : Biological and Health Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381, 382; or equivalents; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of biological bases of behavior from perspective of health and disease.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 584 : Cognitive Neuroscience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381 or equivalent; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of neurobiological bases of perception and cognition.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 585 : Human Neuropsychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381, 382; or equivalents; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical study of brain-behavior relationships.

PSYCH 586 : Hormones and Behavior. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Psych 381, 382; or equivalents; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Neural and endocrine mechanisms underlying behavior.

PSYCH 587 : Sensory and Perceptual Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on demand, W on demand
PREREQUISITE: Psych 370, 381; or equivalents; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of sensory mechanisms and perceptual organization.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 592R : Supervised Teaching Experience. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
NOTE: For graduate teaching assistants.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved
XHTML CSS 508

Note: 500-level courses may be used by undergraduate students with instructor's consent only.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Psychology Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Psychology Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Ballif-Spanvill, Bonnie
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1962
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1966

Barlow, Sally H
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1971
MSW, University of Utah, 1973
PhD, University of Utah, 1978

Bigler, Erin David
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1975

Bloch, George J
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brandeis University, 1962
MA, Claremont Graduate School, 1965
PhD, Stanford University, 1968

Brown, Bruce Leonard
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MS, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, McGill University, Canada, 1969

Burlingame, Gary Michael
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Andrews University, 1978
MS, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, University of Utah, 1983

Higbee, Kenneth L
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MS, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, Purdue University, 1970

Higley, James Dee
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1983
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1985

Hopkins, Ramona O.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1975
BS, Westminster College, 1988
MS, University of Utah, 1992
PhD, University of Utah, 1996

Lambert, Michael J
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, University of Utah, 1971

Miller, Jr., Harold L
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Arizona State University, 1970
PhD, Harvard University, 1975

Pedersen, Darhl M
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1957
MS, Brigham Young University, 1958
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1962

Robinson, Paul W
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1965
MS, Utah State University, 1967
PhD, Utah State University, 1973

Slife, Brent D
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, William Jewell College, 1976
MS, Purdue University, 1977

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

PhD, Purdue University, 1981

Wells, Marion Gawain
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Dixie College, 1964
BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, Purdue University, Lafayette, 1972

Williams, Richard Nephi
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Purdue University, 1978
PhD, Purdue University, 1981

Associate Professors

Carpenter, Bruce N.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1977
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1980

Flom, Ross
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1992
MEd, Idaho State University, 1993
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1999

Gantt, Edwin Elray
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Duquesne University, 1994
PhD, Duquesne University, 1998

Hedges, Dawson W
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1984
MD, University of Utah, 1988

Ridge, Bob
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1993

Spackman, Matthew
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology

RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, Georgetown University, 1998

Spangler, Diane Louise
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Pomona College, 1989
MS, University of Oregon, 1991
PhD, University of Oregon, 1994

Steffensen, Scott C
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1980
PhD, University of Utah, 1987

Assistant Professors

Allen, Mark Douglas
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Johns Hopkins University, 2000

Baldwin, Scott
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
MS, University of Memphis, 2003
PhD, University of Memphis, 2006

Hardy, Sam A.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MA, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 2002
PhD, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 2005

Holt-Lunstad, Julianne
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Utah, 2001

South, Mikle
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Yale University, 1994
MS, University of Utah, 2001
PhD, University of Utah, 2005

Steffen, Patrick R.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences

DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, University of Miami, 1996
PhD, University of Miami, 1998

Warren, Jared S.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, University of Kansas, 1999
PhD, University of Kansas, 2003

Yamawaki, Niwako
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Utah, 2002

Associate Teaching Professor

Clayton, Claudia Jean
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Psychology
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, University of Utah, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1991

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Romney Institute of Public Management

Gary C. Cornia, Director
760-A TNRB, (801) 422-4221

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: Psychology Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

   PSYCH 301 : Psychological Statistics. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; Psych 101, 111, 210.
   DESCRIPTION: Descriptive analysis and hypothesis testing applied to psychological research data.
   NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Psych 210. Stat 221 will not substitute for this course. Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

   And complete two courses from the following:

   PSYCH 320 : Developmental Psychology: Childhood. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Physical, mental, emotional, and social development of the child.
   NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

   PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
   NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

   PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
   NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

   PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
   NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

3. Complete 17 hours from the following (including any courses not used for core above):
   ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Public Management (P Mgt)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

P MGT 321 : Financial Issues in Public and Not-for-Profit Management. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fund accounting, budgeting processes, and sources of revenue such as taxes, municipal bonds, user fees, donations, grants, dues, and ticket sales.

Graduate Courses

For 500-, 600-, and 700-level courses, see George W. Romney Institute of Public Management in the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Marriott School of Management Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Romney Institute of Public Management Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Adolphson, Donald L.
COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of California, Berkeley, 1966
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1968
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1973

Cornia, Gary C.
COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1972
MS, Utah State University, 1974
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1979

Walters, Lawrence C.
COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1987

Associate Professors

Hart, David W.
COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MPA, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, State University of New York, Albany, 1997

Seawright, Kristie Kay
COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977

BS, University of Utah, 1987
MBA, University of Utah, 1989
PhD, University of Utah, 1993

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Assistant Professors

Arbon, Chyleen A.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MPA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Utah, 2004

Facer, Rex L

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MPA, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, University of Georgia, 2002

Thompson, Jeffery A.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1999

Wadsworth, Lori L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, West Valley College, 1980
BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MPA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Utah, 2003

Assistant Lecturer

Miller, Aaron

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Romney Institute of Public Management
RANK: Assistant Lecturer
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 2002
JD, Brigham Young University, 2006
MPA, Brigham Young University, 2006

Plant and Wildlife Sciences

Val J. Anderson, Chair
275 WIDB, (801) 422-3527

College of Life Sciences Office of Academic Advisement Office
379 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Plant and Wildlife Sciences are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Disciplines in the Department of Plant and Wildlife Sciences focus on four of the great dilemmas facing mankind in the twenty-first century: harnessing biological technology to meet the needs of an expanding human population in the developing world; assessing and minimizing the impact of human activities on an increasingly vulnerable environment; management and conservation of wildlife and wildlands; and managing landscapes to meet increasing water, space, and other resource limitations while enhancing the aesthetic quality of urban environments.

Majors offered provide a flexible education for directly entering the job market or preparing for professional schools in business, engineering, the health professions (medical and dental schools), landscape architecture, law, public administration, or science.

Career Opportunities

Genetics and Biotechnology

The discipline of genetics and biotechnology focuses on applications of molecular biology and genomics to solve problems related to health, crop and animal production, forensics, and environmental remediation. This field holds tremendous promise for meeting food sustainability needs in the developing world, delivering medical treatments customized to each patient's genomic makeup, and reducing human impacts upon the environment. The major program educates students in scientific principles and current biotechniques through a combination of classroom instruction and mentored laboratory experience on original research projects with faculty and graduate students. Graduates are prepared for immediate employment in the biotechnology industry or for graduate study in biotechnology, molecular genetics, or the health professions. An optional, integrated track in biotechnology business affords students the option of obtaining a management minor through the Marriott School of Management in preparation for management careers in life sciences industries or for law school and subsequent careers as biological patent attorneys.

Environmental Science

Students majoring in environmental science learn fundamental principles of ecology; bioadversity; conservation; chemistry; engineering; geology; geography; and plant, animal (invertebrate/vertebrate), and soil sciences to help them solve environmental problems. They are prepared for graduate study and direct employment in fields dealing with assessing and remediating human-induced environmental impacts, as well as for careers in law, business, and the health professions.

Landscape Management

This program is accredited by the Professional Landcare Network (PLANET), the leading professional organization in landscape contracting. The major combines practice and instruction in horticultural science, business, and landscape design to prepare students for employment as managers in landscape contracting or for graduate studies in business, law, landscape architecture, and horticulture.

Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation

Wildlife and wildlands conservation is directed at managing wildland ecosystems-optimizing the function and services of natural ecosystems. Students are educated in wildland plants, animals, soils, and ecology, as well as wildlife and land management techniques. This focused approach not only qualifies students for four federal job series occupations but also prepares them to work for a wide array of government and private land-management and conservation agencies.

This degree program qualifies students for federal job series employment in wildlife biology, range conservation, ecology, zoology, and botany. It also prepares for graduate programs in renewable natural resources and for eventual professional agencies, including the U.S. Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management, Natural Resource Conservation Service, Fish and Wildlife Service, and Park Service. Graduates are well prepared to deal with complex issues involving wildlife and wildlands management and the overall conservation of natural resources.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0

- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

The

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Environmental Science
BS in Genetics and Biotechnology
BS in Landscape Management
BS in Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation

Minors

Environmental Science
Landscape Management

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs. Undergraduate advisement in major requirements is available from departmental faculty (assigned advisor).

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Agronomy
MS in Genetics and Biotechnology
MS in Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation
PhD in Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Environmental Science (56–57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following environmental science core courses:

PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

: Soil Conservation and Management.

PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

: Conservation and Management.
: Soil and Water.

PWS 345 : Air Pollution and Air Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Biogenic and anthropogenic factors influencing air pollution and air quality. How various compounds (COx, SOx, NOx, particulate matter, ozone, etc.) are generated and influence air quality. Other topics include global warming, coal-fired power generation, transportation-derived pollutants, smog, acid rain, ozone depletion, etc.

PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

PWS 491R : Undergraduate Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Current information in the plant and wildlife sciences.

2. Complete one course from the following:

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

PWS 490 : Case Studies. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary agricultural and environmental problems using decision case studies dealing with environmental technology issues and analysis.

PWS 494R : Mentored Learning Experience. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Registration required for mentored experiences.

: Analytical Techniques in Plant Biology.
: Analytical Techniques in Soil Science.
: Animal Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Animal Genetics and Breeding Techniques.
: Animal Reproductive Research Laboratory.
: Biotechnology Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Computation Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Field Techniques.
: Environmental Science Laboratory.
: Field Techniques in Environmental Soil Research.
: Molecular Genetics and Gene Mapping Laboratory.
: Plant Breeding Field Techniques.
: Plant Cell Biology Laboratory.
: Plant Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Plant ID / URME Team.
: Plant Physiology Laboratory.
: Plant Tissue Culture and Transformation Techniques.
: Plant and Animal Genomics Laboratory.
: Plant and Soil Science Field Techniques.
: Soil Microbiology Laboratory.
: Soil Physical Properties Laboratory.
: Soil and Water Chemistry Laboratory.
: Soil, Plant, and Water Science Laboratory.

(2 hours required).

3. Complete the following biology courses:

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

4. Complete at least 6 hours of the following supporting core courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

Or
CHEM 101 : Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases.
NOTE: Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

Or
CHEM 103 : Introductory Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory laboratory techniques required for simple classical experiments in chemistry.

CHEM 152 : Introductory Organic Chemistry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or adequate high school preparation in chemistry.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of structure and reactivity, properties and reactions of compound classes, syntheses.

Or
CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

Note: Recommended courses for graduate school track or preprofessional track: Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353.

5. Complete a minimum of 24 hours (9 hours maximum of lower-division courses) from the following:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection

of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
NOTE: Honors also.

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

Or
MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 330 : Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Personal, interactional, and structural aspects of organizations; motivation, decision making, problem-solving communication, leadership, organizational structure, change.
NOTE: Org B 321 will not substitute for this course.

PSYCH 338 : Sport Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Application of psychological principles to sporting activities.

PSYCH 350 : (Psych-Soc) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 358 : Leadership Development. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

PSYCH 361 : Principles of Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of learning; representative experiments.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 365 : Motivation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Determinants of motivation, relationship of motives to emotion, cognition, personality, and action. Implications for understanding self and others.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

BYU undergraduate campus courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) as follows:

Any BYU course in psychology may be used to satisfy the emphasis elective requirement.

4. Complete the following capstone course:
STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All

DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

Or
PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

Or
PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

PL SC 535 : Natural Resources Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes and politics of public policies related to natural resources. Problems of analysis and evaluation.

PL SC 536 : Environmental Regulation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Regulatory programs aimed at air and water pollution, hazardous waste, toxic chemicals, and other environmental problems. Alternative regulatory mechanisms and approaches.

PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 306 : Soil Fertility and Plant Nutrition Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 305 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory for studying nutrient-supplying power of soils, nutrient deficiencies and toxicities, and plant adaptation to nutritional stresses.

PWS 310 : Mentored Laboratory Techniques. (2:.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 107, MMBio 241.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored, systematic instruction in basic biotechnology techniques and their application in addressing molecular genetic research questions.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 331 : Science of Plant Pest Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying important insect, disease, and weed pest problems. Pest classification, biology, and methods of control.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 355 : Rangeland Vegetation Measurements and Analysis. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Field methodologies for vegetation inventories and analysis (density, biomass, cover, frequency, utilization, etc.) in wildland settings.

PWS 390R : Special Topics in Plant and Animal Sciences. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Various topics of importance in plant and animal sciences.

PWS 402 : Urban Soils and Water. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of water management, soil physics, and soil fertility used in a problem-solving environment addressing current challenges in managing soils and water in the urban landscape.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 416 : Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 310, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Restoration of disturbed lands.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 511 : Soil Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, Chem 105, Math 112 or 119; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical relationships of water, heat, and gases in soils; physical and chemical properties of clays. Mathematical modeling of physical properties and transport processes.

PWS 514 : Soil Microbiology. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Federal Register Requirements

The federal register requirements for environmental science ecology or physical science emphasis can be met by choosing appropriate electives. Ecology requires 30 semester hours of basic and applied biology, including at least 9 semester hours of ecology and 12 hours of physical and mathematical sciences. Physical science requires 25 semester hours of physical sciences (chemistry, physics, math, etc.)

Recommended courses from list of electives for various emphases:

A. Environmental Science (Physical Science Emphasis)
Complete 14 hours from the following:

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

B. Environmental Science (Ecology Emphasis)
Complete 18 hours from the following:

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 355 : Rangeland Vegetation Measurements and Analysis. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Field methodologies for vegetation inventories and analysis (density, biomass, cover, frequency, utilization, etc.) in wildland settings.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 416 : Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 310, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Restoration of disturbed lands.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.

The

DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

Preprofessional students should consult with the Preprofessional Advisement Center (3326 WSC) to determine which additional courses they will be required to complete.

The following courses are recommended for students who plan to pursue graduate degrees in environmental science.

Chem 351, 352, 353, 481.
Math 119 or higher.
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Genetics and Biotechnology (60 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
- NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.

DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PWS 265 : (PWS-Bio-MMBio) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

PWS 310 : Mentored Laboratory Techniques. (2:.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 107, MMBio 241.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored, systematic instruction in basic biotechnology techniques and their application in addressing molecular genetic research questions.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 488 : Readings in Biotechnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 340, PDBio 360.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 440 or PDBio 362.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course for the genetics and biotechnology major focusing on scientific literature relating to the biotechnological improvement of plants, animals, and microbes.
NOTE: Course should be taken the last year before graduation.

And complete one of the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

2. Complete 27 hours from one of the following tracks:

A. Plant Genetics and biotechnology core track:
1. Complete the following:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

PWS 410 : Advanced Biotechnology Instrumentation. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PWS 310R.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experiences using advanced biotechnology and genomics instrumentation and protocols.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

PWS 485 : Plant Breeding and Biotechnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 340.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to modern plant improvement through selective breeding and application of plant biotechnology.

2. Complete an additional 6 hours from the general major electives list below.

B. Animal genetics and biotechnology core track:
1. Complete the following:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PWS 410 : Advanced Biotechnology Instrumentation. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PWS 310R.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experiences using advanced biotechnology and genomics instrumentation and protocols.

2. Complete one of the following:

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

3. Complete an additional 7–8 hours from the general major electives list below.

C. Microbial genetics and biotechnology core track:

1. Complete the following:

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.

DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

PWS 410 : Advanced Biotechnology Instrumentation. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PWS 310R.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experiences using advanced biotechnology and genomics instrumentation and protocols.

2. Complete an additional 3 hours from the general major electives list below.

D. Bio-business core track:
1. Complete the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 488 : Agribusiness Management 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Econ 110; Bus M 300 or 340 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understanding competitive forces and the development of sustainable competitive advantage for firms in the food, fiber, and horticulture industries.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

2. Complete one of the following:

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 489 : Agribusiness Management 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 (or equivalent), Econ 110 (or equivalent), Bus M 340.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing marketing plans and programs for companies participating in the value chain of agribusiness industries.

3. Complete one of the following:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BGS in General Studies: Writing Emphasis (33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

   ENGL 218R : Creative Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Individual sections dealing with poetry, personal essays, drama, fiction, or science fiction, or combinations of these.

   M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

   And one additional advanced writing course from the following:

   ENGL 312 : Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
   DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.
   NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

   ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
   DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
   NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

   ENGL 314 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Writing about the functions, meanings, qualities, and contexts of literature for specialist and nonspecialist audiences using selected critical theories. Research paper.
   NOTE: Primarily for majors in literary studies. Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral

OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

4. Complete an additional 7 hours from the general major electives list below.

General Major Electives:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 365 : Computational Biology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265, C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Computational analysis of DNA data; introduction to bioinformatics databasing using Perl and SQL; configuration of UNIX workstations for bioinformatics analyses.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

BIO 465 : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

BIO 560 : Population Genetics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 420 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of population genetics applied to natural populations; drift, selection, and nonrandom mating; inferring population subdivision, migration, and gene flow.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 390R : Readings in Molecular Biology. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360.
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings in molecular biology.

MMBIO 430 : Advanced Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360; bioscience major status.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology.

MMBIO 441 : Advanced Molecular Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, Chem 352.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

MMBIO 442 : Advanced Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 241; MMBio 441 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory to accompany MMBio 441.

MMBIO 460 : Microbial Genetics. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, 240.
DESCRIPTION: How DNA governs complex bacterial functions. Classical and modern approaches to gene discovery, including genetic screens, gene mapping, targeted genetic manipulations, and analyzing gene activity.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

MMBIO 463 : Immunology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 464 : Bacterial Pathogenesis. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of bacterial pathogenesis, emphasizing the molecular interactions of medically important bacteria and their hosts.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

MMBIO 466 : Virology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 465 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises illustrating in vitro behavior of selected viruses. Developing laboratory skills for virus studies.

MMBIO 467 : Immunology Lab. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361; 463 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Laboratory exercises in advanced concepts of immunological processes.

MMBIO 490R : Molecular Biology Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 441; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical examination of current literature and research in molecular biology.

NDFS 330 : Comparative Animal Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Comparative digestion, absorption, and utilization of nutrients and nutritional applications of domestic, pet, and wildlife species.

PDBIO 325 : Tissue Biology (with lab). (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 120.
DESCRIPTION: Human anatomy and histology; function of cells in tissue; early stages of embryology.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PDBIO 562 : Reproductive Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 481, PDBio 482; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian reproductive physiology.

PDBIO 582 : Developmental Genetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Gene function and regulation during cell specification and differentiation, pattern formation, and organogenesis in developing embryo.

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

PWS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 301 : Plant Growth and Reproduction. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of plant propagation by seeds, cuttings, budding and grafting, and tissue culture.

PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

: Conservation and Management.
: Soil and Water.

PWS 306 : Soil Fertility and Plant Nutrition Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 305 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory for studying nutrient-supplying power of soils, nutrient deficiencies and toxicities, and plant adaptation to nutritional stresses.

PWS 331 : Science of Plant Pest Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying important insect, disease, and weed pest problems. Pest classification, biology, and methods of control.

PWS 431 : Integrated Management of Plant Pests. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282, 331.
DESCRIPTION: Diagnosing, identifiying, and managing of weed, insect, and disease problems in plants. Integrated pest management solutions. Proper pesticide management and safety.

PWS 494R : Mentored Learning Experience. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Registration required for mentored experiences.

: Analytical Techniques in Plant Biology.
: Analytical Techniques in Soil Science.
: Animal Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Animal Genetics and Breeding Techniques.
: Animal Reproductive Research Laboratory.
: Biotechnology Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Computation Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Field Techniques.
: Environmental Science Laboratory.
: Field Techniques in Environmental Soil Research.
: Molecular Genetics and Gene Mapping Laboratory.
: Plant Breeding Field Techniques.
: Plant Cell Biology Laboratory.
: Plant Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Plant ID / URME Team.
: Plant Physiology Laboratory.
: Plant Tissue Culture and Transformation Techniques.
: Plant and Animal Genomics Laboratory.
: Plant and Soil Science Field Techniques.
: Soil Microbiology Laboratory.
: Soil Physical Properties Laboratory.
: Soil and Water Chemistry Laboratory.
: Soil, Plant, and Water Science Laboratory.

PWS 514 : Soil Microbiology. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

PWS 559 : Plant Molecular Breeding. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 265, 340, 485; or equivalents; PWS 494R or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetic methods applied to improvement of economically important plants.

PWS 575 : Plant Pathology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or Bio 131; PWS 331 or MMBio 240; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts associated with symptoms, development, control, and classification of plant diseases.

PWS 586 : Plant Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360, PWS 340, 440; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular aspects of the structural and functional characteristics of plant cells, emphasizing characteristics of plant cells setting them apart from animal cells.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis

testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Recommended Courses

For preprofessional students in tracks A, B, or C above:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

For graduate school preparation in biotechnology:

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

For students seeking employment in the biotech industry:

PWS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

GE courses for bio-business students seeking a Marriott School of Management minor:

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and

hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Landscape Management (60.5–63.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following required departmental courses:

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

PWS 105 : Landscape Design Graphics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Communication through descriptive drawing and professional plan graphics: plan views, elevation, color, and computer-aided design.

PWS 198R : BYU Grounds Practicum. (.5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; concurrent employment with BYU Grounds Department.
DESCRIPTION: Multiple horticulture experiences through collaboration with BYU Grounds.

PWS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

PWS 211 : Landscape Structures. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and mechanics of hardscape design and construction.

PWS 212 : Landscape Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 211.
DESCRIPTION: Working methods of the landscape industry: irrigation, equipment, and materials.

PWS 214 : Landscape Bidding and Estimating. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Competitive bidding strategies, quantity takeoffs, bid analyses for landscape construction and maintenance.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 301 : Plant Growth and Reproduction. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of plant propagation by seeds, cuttings, budding and grafting, and tissue culture.

PWS 319 : Turf Science. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Management of turf relative to climate, soil, and use on the golf course, park, and private areas.

PWS 320 : Arboriculture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
RECOMMENDED: Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Biology and culture of woody plants for use in urban landscapes.

PWS 331 : Science of Plant Pest Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying important insect, disease, and weed pest problems. Pest classification, biology, and methods of control.

PWS 391R : Careers in Plant and Wildlife Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Current information on internships, career options, and employment preparation skills in the plant and wildlife sciences.
NOTE: For sophomores and juniors.

: Careers in Horticulture.

PWS 402 : Urban Soils and Water. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of water management, soil physics, and soil fertility used in a problem-solving environment addressing current challenges in managing soils and water in the urban landscape.

PWS 431 : Integrated Management of Plant Pests. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282, 331.
DESCRIPTION: Diagnosing, identifiying, and managing of weed, insect, and disease problems in plants. Integrated pest management solutions. Proper pesticide management and safety.

2. Complete the following required non-departmental courses:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 488 : Agribusiness Management 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Econ 110; Bus M 300 or 340 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understanding competitive forces and the development of sustainable competitive advantage for firms in the food, fiber, and horticulture industries.

BUS M 489 : Agribusiness Management 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 (or equivalent), Econ 110 (or equivalent), Bus M 340.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing marketing plans and programs for companies participating in the value chain of agribusiness industries.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
NOTE: Fee.

And complete one course from the following:

CHEM 101 : Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases.
NOTE: Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

3. Complete three courses from the following:

BIO 235 : Field Botany. (3:3:6)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, characteristics, and uses of common trees and shrubs.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

PWS 112 : Floral Design. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History and principles of floral design; identification, care, and handling of cut flowers; techniques of arranging flowers and other plant materials for home and professional use.
NOTE: Fee.

PWS 210 : Herbaceous Plants. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Identification and landscape use of flowers and groundcovers.

PWS 213 : Interior Plants and Landscapes. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identification and culture of plants used in the interior landscape industry; applying principles of design to the placement and use in interior landscapes.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 380 : Plant Community Design. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103, 105, Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Design and ecology of thematic plant communities.

Recommended Courses

A management minor is *strongly* recommended.

Completion of the following courses (some listed above) will meet the requirements for this minor:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 489 : Agribusiness Management 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 (or equivalent), Econ 110 (or equivalent), Bus M 340.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing marketing plans and programs for companies participating in the value chain of agribusiness industries.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

The following courses are also suggested:

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

For students planning to pursue a master's degree in landscape architecture (MLA), the following courses are also recommended:

Communication credit.

ENGL 315 : Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence, proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

3. Complete 15 hours from the following:

ELANG 350 : Basic Editing Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Editing theory and practice, emphasizing copy editing and basic line editing.

ENGL 220 : Composing Personal History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Composing personal history through writing, mementos, oral history, chronologies, letters, documents, journals, and other mediums.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ENGL 319R : Writing Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Creation of style and technique in poetry; discipline and practice of the poet.

ENGL 320R : Writing for Children and Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of writing prose and verse for youth readership. Specific attention to requirements of picture books, middle-grade novels, and young adult stories.

HIST 433 : Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

IP&T 515R : Special Topics in Instructional Psychology and Technology. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su on demand.

: Evaluating Student Learning.
: Instructional Techniques in Teaching.
: Program Evaluation.
: Tutoring Children in Reading.

(section 8)
TMA 251 : Playwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Basic playwriting principles through reading, completing writing assignments, testing, and writing the first draft of a one-act play.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BYU undergraduate campus courses (including Salt Lake Center courses) as follows:

BYU campus courses dealing with writing or the teaching of writing under English, theatre and media arts, communications, or foreign languages may also be used to satisfy the emphasis elective requirements. Only one additional GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication course (Engl 312, 313, 314, 315, and 316) may be used to satisfy the emphasis elective requirements.

4. Complete the following as the last course in the emphasis:

ENGL 495 : The Senior Course. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

CM 105 : Construction Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How and why specific types of contract documents and specifications are compiled for a project; reading and interpreting complex construction documents.
NOTE: Fee.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

PWS 380 : Plant Community Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103, 105, Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Design and ecology of thematic plant communities.

For students planning to pursue a master's degree in horticulture science (MS), the following courses are recommended:

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

Or
STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer

package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

: Conservation and Management.
: Soil and Water.

PWS 369 : Science of Plant Production. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of crop production related to agronomic and horticultural plants, including relationship of management principles and physiological processes in plants.

PWS 390R : Special Topics in Plant and Animal Sciences. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Various topics of importance in plant and animal sciences.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

PWS 494R : Mentored Learning Experience. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Registration required for mentored experiences.

: Analytical Techniques in Plant Biology.
: Analytical Techniques in Soil Science.
: Animal Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Animal Genetics and Breeding Techniques.
: Animal Reproductive Research Laboratory.
: Biotechnology Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Computation Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Field Techniques.
: Environmental Science Laboratory.
: Field Techniques in Environmental Soil Research.
: Molecular Genetics and Gene Mapping Laboratory.
: Plant Breeding Field Techniques.
: Plant Cell Biology Laboratory.
: Plant Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Plant ID / URME Team.
: Plant Physiology Laboratory.
: Plant Tissue Culture and Transformation Techniques.
: Plant and Animal Genomics Laboratory.
: Plant and Soil Science Field Techniques.
: Soil Microbiology Laboratory.
: Soil Physical Properties Laboratory.
: Soil and Water Chemistry Laboratory.
: Soil, Plant, and Water Science Laboratory.

PWS 511 : Soil Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, Chem 105, Math 112 or 119; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical relationships of water, heat, and gases in soils; physical and chemical properties of clays. Mathematical modeling of physical properties and transport processes.

College | Missionary Training Center

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation (63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

This degree program qualifies students for federal job series employment in wildlife biology, range conservation, fisheries, ecology, biology, zoology, and botany. It also prepares for graduate programs in renewable natural resources and for eventual professional affiliations with state wildlife agencies and a number of federal agencies, including the U.S. Forest Service, Natural Resource Conservation Service, Bureau of Land Management, Fish and Wildlife Service, and Park Service. Graduates are well prepared to deal with complex issues involving wildlife and wildlands management and the overall conservation of natural resources.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

BIO 447 : Mammalogy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian diversity, evolution, distribution, and natural history. Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

NDFS 330 : Comparative Animal Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Comparative digestion, absorption, and utilization of nutrients and nutritional applications of domestic, pet, and wildlife species.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 115 : Introduction to Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Assisting students in choosing individual professions and curricula.

PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 275 : (PWS - Bio) Genetics and Reproduction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Any general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of inheritance.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 350 : Rangeland Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth emphasizing rangeland ecosystems.

PWS 355 : Rangeland Vegetation Measurements and Analysis. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Field methodologies for vegetation inventories and analysis (density, biomass, cover, frequency, utilization, etc.) in wildland settings.

PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

PWS 416 : Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 310, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Restoration of disturbed lands.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 417 : Rangeland Planning and GIS. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 215, 225, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Development of a multiple-use natural resource plan for watershed forestry, recreation, wildlife, and livestock. Policies that govern planning and conflict resolution.

PWS 446 : (PWS-Bio) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics, evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

PWS 492 : Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course bringing together portfolios, student experiences, exams, and exercises necessary for completing and assessing wildlife and wildlands program learning outcomes.

2. Complete 21 elective credit hours from the following course list. With the help of your advisor, select courses to qualify for 2–3 federal job series (wildlife biologist, ecologist, range conservationist, GIS specialist, soil conservationist, botanist, fisheries biologist):

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 270 : Animal Restraint. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Restraint and first aid techniques for pet, laboratory, domestic, and wild animals.

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

BIO 442 : Advanced Invertebrate Zoology. (5:6:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Functional morphology, cladistics, ecology, behavior, and interrelationships of invertebrates.

BIO 443 : Ichthyology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

BIO 445 : Herpetology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

BIO 452 : Marine Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of marine ecology of planktonic, sublittoral, rocky shore, sandy shore, and mudflat communities. Extensive field trips.

BIO 453 : Development of Marine Animals. (3:0:6)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Culturing, studying, and reporting on the development of eggs, embryos, and larvae of marine animals.

BIO 525 : Animal Disease, Biosecurity, and Zoonoses. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 380 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Animal disease emphasizing prevention, organ systems affected, biosecurity, and zoonotic potential.

BIO 541 : Aquatic Entomology. (4:2:4)

OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, classification, biology, and functional ecology of aquatic insects. Field trips required.

BIO 556 : Limnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Lakes, reservoirs; their biota and physical/chemical properties.

BIO 557 : Stream and Wetland Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stream and wetland ecology; their biota and their physical/chemical properties.

BIO 558 : Aquatic Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 556 or 557 or concurrent registration.
DESCRIPTION: Field experience in aquatic ecology, including shoreline processes, fluvial mechanics, and quantitative and qualitative assessment of lotic and lentic systems. Overnight field trips required.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

PDBIO 482 : Developmental Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240, 241, 360.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Invertebrate and vertebrate developmental biology. Embryonic gastrulation, neurulation, pattering, etc. Modern approaches and research strategies. Emphasizes gene function, cell signaling, signal transduction during embryogenesis.

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

PWS 270 : Animal Husbandry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 270.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to animal husbandry and management techniques for domestic and wild animals.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.

DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 301 : Plant Growth and Reproduction. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of plant propagation by seeds, cuttings, budding and grafting, and tissue culture.

PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

: Soil Conservation and Management.

PWS 325 : Fisheries and Wetlands Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 225 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of fisheries and wetlands mangement, emphasizing managing fish populations and their diverse micro- and macro-habitats within the context of community and ecosystem dynamics. Case studies and models used to evaluate growth, recruitments, and mortality in age-structured populations in relationship to the dynamics of watershed and wetland landscapes.

PWS 357 : Techniques for Wildlife Investigations and Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 350, 355.
DESCRIPTION: Investigatiion and management of fish and wildlife populations. Methods for population assessment, capture, handling, marking, radio-telemetry, behavioral studies, and human disturbance. Lab is required.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 412 : Rangeland-Landscape Ecology and GIS. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 215.
DESCRIPTION: Characterizing heterogeneous ecosystems for understanding patterns and processes. Applying scale, resolution, patch dynamics, time change, etc. to rangeland ecosystems. Utilizing GIS, remote sensing, and GPS for collecting and analyzing data.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 424 : Wildlife Law Enforcement. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current and historical principles of federal and state wildlife law enforcement, case development, evidence, evaluation, human rights, and testimony.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

PWS 553 : Restoration Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, 416; Bio 350; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of ecosystem disturbance and plant succession; developing science and practice of ecological restoration; case studies of applied restoration.

PWS 554 : Wildlife Behavioral Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100, 350; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating principles of ethology, sociobiology, and behavioral ecology using examples from wildlife resources; behavioral sampling methods.
NOTE: Field trips required.

Recommended Courses for Preprofessional Track

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su

PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

Or
PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

Or
BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

GIS Applications

Students interested in GIS applications should consider a minor in geographic information systems (20-23 hours). See the Geography Department for details.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

research and writing.

(section 5 or 9)

5. Complete the following capstone course:
   STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: Independent Study only.
   PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.
   DESCRIPTION: Culminating course required for bachelor of general studies degree: analyze and evaluate BGS experience in light of the "Aims of a BYU Education" and summarize this experience in a reflective paper, integrate material learned in emphasis by completing a scholarly essay, and demonstrate accomplishment of learning outcomes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Environmental Science (16 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following environmental science core courses:
   PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

   PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
   DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

2. Complete a minimum of 11 credit hours from the following course lists:
   A. Complete at least 6 hours of the following supporting core courses:
      PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
      DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

      PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
      DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

      PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F
      PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
      RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
      DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

      : Soil Conservation and Management.

      PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W
      PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

      : Conservation and Management.
      : Soil and Water.

      PWS 345 : Air Pollution and Air Quality. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F
      DESCRIPTION: Biogenic and anthropogenic factors influencing air pollution and air quality. How various compounds (COx, SOx, NOx, particulate matter, ozone, etc.) are generated and influence air quality. Other topics include global warming, coal-fired power generation, transportation-

derived pollutants, smog, acid rain, ozone depletion, etc.

PWS 490 : Case Studies. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary agricultural and environmental problems using decision case studies dealing with environmental technology issues and analysis.

PWS 494R : Mentored Learning Experience. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Registration required for mentored experiences.

: Analytical Techniques in Plant Biology.
: Analytical Techniques in Soil Science.
: Animal Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Animal Genetics and Breeding Techniques.
: Animal Reproductive Research Laboratory.
: Biotechnology Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Computation Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Field Techniques.
: Environmental Science Laboratory.
: Field Techniques in Environmental Soil Research.
: Molecular Genetics and Gene Mapping Laboratory.
: Plant Breeding Field Techniques.
: Plant Cell Biology Laboratory.
: Plant Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Plant ID / URME Team.
: Plant Physiology Laboratory.
: Plant Tissue Culture and Transformation Techniques.
: Plant and Animal Genomics Laboratory.
: Plant and Soil Science Field Techniques.
: Soil Microbiology Laboratory.
: Soil Physical Properties Laboratory.
: Soil and Water Chemistry Laboratory.
: Soil, Plant, and Water Science Laboratory.

B. Complete up to 5 hours from the following:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

CHEM 101 : Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases.
NOTE: Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

CHEM 103 : Introductory Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory laboratory techniques required for simple classical experiments in chemistry.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 152 : Introductory Organic Chemistry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or adequate high school preparation in chemistry.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of structure and reactivity, properties and reactions of compound classes, syntheses.

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
NOTE: Honors also.

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

Or
PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHIL 205 : Deductive Logic. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

PL SC 535 : Natural Resources Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes and politics of public policies related to natural resources. Problems of analysis and evaluation.

PL SC 536 : Environmental Regulation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Regulatory programs aimed at air and water pollution, hazardous waste, toxic chemicals, and other environmental problems. Alternative regulatory mechanisms and approaches.

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 306 : Soil Fertility and Plant Nutrition Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 305 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory for studying nutrient-supplying power of soils, nutrient deficiencies and toxicities, and plant adaptation to nutritional stresses.

PWS 310 : Mentored Laboratory Techniques. (2:.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 107, MMBio 241.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored, systematic instruction in basic biotechnology techniques and their application in addressing molecular genetic research questions.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 331 : Science of Plant Pest Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying important insect, disease, and weed pest problems. Pest classification, biology, and methods of control.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 355 : Rangeland Vegetation Measurements and Analysis. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Field methodologies for vegetation inventories and analysis (density, biomass, cover, frequency, utilization, etc.) in wildland settings.

PWS 390R : Special Topics in Plant and Animal Sciences. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Various topics of importance in plant and animal sciences.

PWS 402 : Urban Soils and Water. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of water management, soil physics, and soil fertility used in a problem-solving environment addressing current challenges in managing soils and water in the urban landscape.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 416 : Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 310, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Restoration of disturbed lands.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 491R : Undergraduate Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Current information in the plant and wildlife sciences.

PWS 511 : Soil Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, Chem 105, Math 112 or 119; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical relationships of water, heat, and gases in soils; physical and chemical properties of clays. Mathematical modeling of physical properties and transport processes.

PWS 514 : Soil Microbiology. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Landscape Management (17.5–18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

PWS 214 : Landscape Bidding and Estimating. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Competitive bidding strategies, quantity takeoffs, bid analyses for landscape construction and maintenance.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 391R : Careers in Plant and Wildlife Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Current information on internships, career options, and employment preparation skills in the plant and wildlife sciences.
NOTE: For sophomores and juniors.

: Careers in Horticulture.

2. Complete one course from the following:

PWS 198R : BYU Grounds Practicum. (.5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; concurrent employment with BYU Grounds Department.
DESCRIPTION: Multiple horticulture experiences through collaboration with BYU Grounds.

PWS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 8 hours from the following:

Design

PWS 105 : Landscape Design Graphics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Communication through descriptive drawing and professional plan graphics: plan views, elevation, color, and computer-aided design.

PWS 112 : Floral Design. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History and principles of floral design; identification, care, and handling of cut flowers; techniques of arranging flowers and other plant materials for home and professional use.
NOTE: Fee.

PWS 213 : Interior Plants and Landscapes. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identification and culture of plants used in the interior landscape industry; applying principles of design to the placement and use in interior landscapes.

PWS 380 : Plant Community Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103, 105, Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Design and ecology of thematic plant communities.

Installation

PWS 211 : Landscape Structures. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and mechanics of hardscape design and construction.

PWS 212 : Landscape Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 211.
DESCRIPTION: Working methods of the landscape industry: irrigation, equipment, and materials.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 319 : Turf Science. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Management of turf relative to climate, soil, and use on the golf course, park, and private areas.

PWS 320 : Arboriculture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
RECOMMENDED: Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Biology and culture of woody plants for use in urban landscapes.

Maintenance

PWS 210 : Herbaceous Plants. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Identification and landscape use of flowers and groundcovers.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

PWS 319 : Turf Science. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Management of turf relative to climate, soil, and use on the golf course, park, and private areas.

PWS 320 : Arboriculture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
RECOMMENDED: Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Biology and culture of woody plants for use in urban landscapes.

PWS 431 : Integrated Management of Plant Pests. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282, 331.
DESCRIPTION: Diagnosing, identifiying, and managing of weed, insect, and disease problems in plants.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Accountancy

Kevin D. Stocks, Director
540A TNRB, (801) 422-4613
E-mail: kevin_stocks@byu.edu

Richard S. Dalebout, Associate Director
560A TNRB, (801) 422-2228
E-mail: dalebout@byu.edu

Marriott School of Management Advisement Center
460 TNRB, (801) 422-4285
Internet: www.marriottschool.byu.edu/advisement

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the school carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center for specific details.

The Discipline

Accounting has been called the language of business in which accountants control, analyze, and report the financial resources of an enterprise. A good understanding of accounting principles and practices can serve as the basis for a career in any business field.

Career Opportunities

Accountants provide critical input and guidance in profit-seeking organizations, service and charitable organizations, educational institutions, government, public accounting firms—indeed, any organization that exists today.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major

BS in Accounting

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center.

For information on management degrees, see Management section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MAcc in Professional Accountancy
MAcc in Tax

For more information see the current Marriott School of Management School of Accountancy Web site at http://marriottschool.byu.edu/soa and the BYU 20078–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Integrated pest management solutions. Proper pesticide management and safety.

Note 1: Electives need not be taken from the same emphasis to fill this requirement.

Note 2: PWS 100 will substitute for 3 hours under the elective requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Plant and Wildlife Sciences (PWS) Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PWS 100 : Living with Plants. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

PWS 105 : Landscape Design Graphics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Communication through descriptive drawing and professional plan graphics: plan views, elevation, color, and computer-aided design.

PWS 112 : Floral Design. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History and principles of floral design; identification, care, and handling of cut flowers; techniques of arranging flowers and other plant materials for home and professional use.
NOTE: Fee.

PWS 115 : Introduction to Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Assisting students in choosing individual professions and curricula.

PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

PWS 198R : BYU Grounds Practicum. (.5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; concurrent employment with BYU Grounds Department.
DESCRIPTION: Multiple horticulture experiences through collaboration with BYU Grounds.

PWS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

PWS 210 : Herbaceous Plants. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Identification and landscape use of flowers and groundcovers.

PWS 211 : Landscape Structures. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and mechanics of hardscape design and construction.

PWS 212 : Landscape Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 211.
DESCRIPTION: Working methods of the landscape industry: irrigation, equipment, and materials.

PWS 213 : Interior Plants and Landscapes. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identification and culture of plants used in the interior landscape industry; applying principles of design to the placement and use in interior landscapes.

PWS 214 : Landscape Bidding and Estimating. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; PWS 103.

PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 265 : (PWS-Bio-MMBio) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

PWS 270 : Animal Husbandry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 270.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to animal husbandry and management techniques for domestic and wild animals.

PWS 275 : (PWS - Bio) Genetics and Reproduction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Any general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of inheritance.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

300-Level Courses

PWS 301 : Plant Growth and Reproduction. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of plant propagation by seeds, cuttings, budding and grafting, and tissue culture.

PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

: Soil Conservation and Management.

PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

: Conservation and Management.
: Soil and Water.

PWS 306 : Soil Fertility and Plant Nutrition Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 305 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory for studying nutrient-supplying power of soils, nutrient deficiencies and toxicities, and plant adaptation to nutritional stresses.

PWS 310 : Mentored Laboratory Techniques. (2:.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 107, MMBio 241.
DESCRIPTION: Mentored, systematic instruction in basic biotechnology techniques and their application in addressing molecular genetic research questions.

PWS 319 : Turf Science. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Management of turf relative to climate, soil, and use on the golf course, park, and private areas.

PWS 320 : Arboriculture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
RECOMMENDED: Bio 235.

PWS 325 : Fisheries and Wetlands Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 225 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of fisheries and wetlands mangement, emphasizing managing fish populations and their diverse micro- and macro-habitats within the context of community and ecosystem dynamics. Case studies and models used to evaluate growth, recruitments, and mortality in age-structured populations in relationship to the dynamics of watershed and wetland landscapes.

PWS 330 : Rangeland Plant Identification and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

PWS 331 : Science of Plant Pest Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying important insect, disease, and weed pest problems. Pest classification, biology, and methods of control.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 344 : Natural History of Wildlife. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: PWS 225 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Wildlife species and their habitats, including ecology, life histories, adaptations, behavior, genetics and population viability variables, and the ethics of global stewardship. Field trips required.

PWS 345 : Air Pollution and Air Quality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Biogenic and anthropogenic factors influencing air pollution and air quality. How various compounds (COx, SOx, NOx, particulate matter, ozone, etc.) are generated and influence air quality. Other topics include global warming, coal-fired power generation, transportation-derived pollutants, smog, acid rain, ozone depletion, etc.

PWS 350 : Rangeland Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth emphasizing rangeland ecosystems.

PWS 355 : Rangeland Vegetation Measurements and Analysis. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Field methodologies for vegetation inventories and analysis (density, biomass, cover, frequency, utilization, etc.) in wildland settings.

PWS 357 : Techniques for Wildlife Investigations and Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 350, 355.
DESCRIPTION: Investigation and management of fish and wildlife populations. Methods for population assessment, capture, handling, marking, radio-telemetry, behavioral studies, and human disturbance. Lab is required.

PWS 369 : Science of Plant Production. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of crop production related to agronomic and horticultural plants, including relationship of management principles and physiological processes in plants.

PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

PWS 380 : Plant Community Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 103, 105, Bio 235.
DESCRIPTION: Design and ecology of thematic plant communities.

PWS 390R : Special Topics in Plant and Animal Sciences. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Various topics of importance in plant and animal sciences.

PWS 391R : Careers in Plant and Wildlife Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Current information on internships, career options, and employment preparation skills in the plant and wildlife sciences.
NOTE: For sophomores and juniors.

: Careers in Horticulture.

400-Level Courses

PWS 402 : Urban Soils and Water. (4:4:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of water management, soil physics, and soil fertility used in a problem-solving environment addressing current challenges in managing soils and water in the urban landscape.

PWS 410 : Advanced Biotechnology Instrumentation. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PWS 310R.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experiences using advanced biotechnology and genomics instrumentation and protocols.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 412 : Rangeland-Landscape Ecology and GIS. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 215.
DESCRIPTION: Characterizing heterogeneous ecosystems for understanding patterns and processes. Applying scale, resolution, patch dynamics, time change, etc. to rangeland ecosystems. Utilizing GIS, remote sensing, and GPS for collecting and analyzing data.

PWS 416 : Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 310, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Restoration of disturbed lands.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 417 : Rangeland Planning and GIS. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 215, 225, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Development of a multiple-use natural resource plan for watershed forestry, recreation, wildlife, and livestock. Policies that govern planning and conflict resolution.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 424 : Wildlife Law Enforcement. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current and historical principles of federal and state wildlife law enforcement, case development, evidence, evaluation, human rights, and testimony.

PWS 431 : Integrated Management of Plant Pests. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100, 282, 331.
DESCRIPTION: Diagnosing, identifiying, and managing of weed, insect, and disease problems in plants. Integrated pest management solutions. Proper pesticide management and safety.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

PWS 446 : (PWS-Bio) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics, evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

PWS 485 : Plant Breeding and Biotechnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 340.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to modern plant improvement through selective breeding and application of plant biotechnology.

PWS 487 : Readings in Animal Biotechnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Discussion of assigned literature in animal biotechnology.

PWS 488 : Readings in Biotechnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 340, PDBio 360.
RECOMMENDED: PWS 440 or PDBio 362.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course for the genetics and biotechnology major focusing on scientific literature relating to the biotechnological improvement of plants, animals, and microbes.
NOTE: Course should be taken the last year before graduation.

PWS 490 : Case Studies. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary agricultural and environmental problems using decision case studies dealing with environmental technology issues and analysis.

PWS 491R : Undergraduate Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Current information in the plant and wildlife sciences.

PWS 492 : Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course bringing together portfolios, student experiences, exams, and exercises necessary for completing and assessing wildlife and wildlands program learning outcomes.

PWS 494R : Mentored Learning Experience. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Registration required for mentored experiences.

: Analytical Techniques in Plant Biology.
: Analytical Techniques in Soil Science.
: Animal Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Animal Genetics and Breeding Techniques.
: Animal Reproductive Research Laboratory.
: Biotechnology Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Computation Laboratory.
: Environmental Science Field Techniques.
: Environmental Science Laboratory.
: Field Techniques in Environmental Soil Research.
: Molecular Genetics and Gene Mapping Laboratory.
: Plant Breeding Field Techniques.
: Plant Cell Biology Laboratory.
: Plant Cytogenetics Laboratory.
: Plant ID / URME Team.
: Plant Physiology Laboratory.
: Plant Tissue Culture and Transformation Techniques.
: Plant and Animal Genomics Laboratory.
: Plant and Soil Science Field Techniques.
: Soil Microbiology Laboratory.
: Soil Physical Properties Laboratory.
: Soil and Water Chemistry Laboratory.
: Soil, Plant, and Water Science Laboratory.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PWS 511 : Soil Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, Chem 105, Math 112 or 119; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical relationships of water, heat, and gases in soils; physical and chemical properties of clays. Mathematical modeling of physical properties and transport processes.

PWS 514 : Soil Microbiology. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

PWS 515 : Agrostology: Taxonomy and Ecology of Grasses. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Classification and ecology of grasses, emphasizing important forage species.

PWS 520 : Saline and Sodic Soils. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: PWS 305, Chem 105, 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties of saline and sodic soils and irrigation waters--their diagnosis, reclamation, and management for sustainable crop production.

PWS 525 : Plant Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and genetic interactions in plant development.

PWS 540R : Topics in Plant Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 440 or equivalent; PWS 494R or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Topics in advanced plant physiology.

: Advanced Topics in Crop Physiology.
: Advanced Topics in Plant Metabolism.
: Developmental Plant Physiology.

PWS 546 : World Bird Families. (3:4:2)

OFFERED: W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 446 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, composition, and characteristics of world bird families, using museum specimens.

PWS 551 : Quantitative Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350 or equivalent; Stat 221 or 511 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods for ecological sampling and data analysis.

PWS 552 : Terrestrial Ecosystems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and application of plant and animal distribution in terrestrial environments.

PWS 553 : Restoration Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282, 416; Bio 350; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of ecosystem disturbance and plant succession; developing science and practice of ecological restoration; case studies of applied restoration.

PWS 554 : Wildlife Behavioral Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 100, 350; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating principles of ethology, sociobiology, and behavioral ecology using examples from wildlife resources; behavioral sampling methods.
NOTE: Field trips required.

PWS 559 : Plant Molecular Breeding. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 265, 340, 485; or equivalents; PWS 494R or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular genetic methods applied to improvement of economically important plants.

PWS 560 : Soil and Plant Analysis. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory chemical analysis of soils and plant materials in soil and plant research.

PWS 575 : Plant Pathology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or Bio 131; PWS 331 or MMBio 240; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts associated with symptoms, development, control, and classification of plant diseases.

PWS 580 : Plant Transformation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360 or equivalent; PWS 586.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and methods of plant transformation.

PWS 586 : Plant Cell Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 360, PWS 340, 440; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular aspects of the structural and functional characteristics of plant cells, emphasizing characteristics of plant cells setting them apart from animal cells.

PWS 598R : Advanced Topics in the Plant and Wildlife Sciences. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Plant and Wildlife Sciences Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Plant and Wildlife Sciences Faculty

Professors

Allen, Phil S

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1990

Anderson, Val Jo

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Snow College, 1980
BS, Utah State University, 1982
MS, Utah State University, 1985
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1988

Black, Hal Lunt

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1966
MS, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, University of New Mexico, 1972

Booth, Gary M

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, College of Eastern Utah, 1961
BS, Utah State University, 1963
MS, Utah State University, 1966
PhD, University of California, Riverside, 1969

Christensen, Allen Clare

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1957
MS, University of California, Davis, 1960
PhD, Utah State University, 1979

Crookston, R. Kent

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1970
PhD, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1972

Fairbanks, Daniel J.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, University of Minnesota, 1985
PhD, University of Arizona, 1988

Flinders, Jerran T

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, Colorado State University, 1971

Hess, Wilford M

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1957
MS, Oregon State University, 1960
PhD, Oregon State University, 1962

Jolley, Von Dale

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MS, Iowa State University, 1974
PhD, Iowa State University, 1976

Kellems, Richard Owen

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Oregon State University, 1975
PhD, Oregon State University, 1976

Roundy, Bruce A

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Nevada, Reno, 1973
MS, University of Nevada, Reno, 1977
PhD, Utah State University, 1984

Terry, Richard Ellis

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1972
MS, Purdue University, 1974
PhD, Purdue University, 1976

White, Clayton M

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1960
PhD, University of Utah, 1968

Associate Professors

Coleman, Craig Eliot

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1992

Hopkins, Bryan Gene

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AAS, Ricks College, 1988
BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, Kansas State University, 1995

Jellen, Eric Nathan

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, University of Minnesota, 1988
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1992

General Information

Undergraduate Application Requirements

All new students entering the undergraduate accounting program commence their study at the beginning of the fall semester. Admission into the undergraduate accounting program is based on consideration of the following:

1. The applicant's overall GPA and GPA in the following preparatory courses: Acc 200, 210, M Com 320, and I Sys 201
2. The applicant's personal statement
3. Comments from professors
4. A review of the overall academic record of the applicant

Admission Policies

The following policies apply in making admission decisions for each fall semester cohort of students:

1. Admission to the undergraduate accounting program is by online application filed directly with the School of Accountancy. Applications are filed at http://marriottschool.byu.edu/soa/. Notice of admission decisions is given online.
2. Each year, the last day to apply to commence study in the fall semester is the last business day in June at 4:30 p.m. A student may, however, apply for fall semester admission as early as November 1 in the preceding year. In most cases admission decisions are made on a monthly basis.
3. Repeating the four preparatory courses (Acc 200, 210, M Com 320, and I Sys 201) to improve grades for purposes of admission is strongly discouraged. For these four courses: (1) a minimum 3.0 GPA is required, and (2) a grade of B or better is required in Acc 200 and Acc 210. The preparatory courses must be completed at the time of application.
4. The accounting program is designed for entry at the beginning of a student's junior year. Moreover, at the end of the junior year, many students immediately commence graduate studies. Therefore, a student entering the accounting program must have substantially completed general education requirements and the following introductory courses: Econ 110, Math 119, Stat 221. Exceptions may be allowed, but it should be understood that it is difficult to complete such courses after entry into the accounting program.
5. Potential applicants who will transfer from other schools are encouraged to take Acc 210 at BYU and include an ACT/SAT score with their application, if the test was taken. Grades transferred from other schools are discounted.
6. The School of Accountancy reserves the right to allow exceptions in the admission process where it is deemed necessary to admit the most qualified students.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Maughan, Peter Jeff

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, 1994

Robinson, Todd Fergus

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Cornell University, 1996

Smith, Thomas

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, 1987
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1992

Stevens, Mikel Ross

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Snow College, 1975
BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Arkansas, 1993

Woolstenhulme, Loreen Allphin

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of Utah, 1996

Assistant Professors

Geary, Bradley Dale

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Washington State University, 1999

Petersen, Steven L.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Oregon State Unversity, 2004

St. Clair, Sam

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1998
MS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 2004

Udall, Joshua

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MS, University of Idaho, 1997
PhD, University of Wisconsin, 2003

Assistant Teaching Professor

Jolley, Greg V

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MLA, Kansas State University, 1999

Senior Scientist

Webb, Bruce Lee

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Plant and Wildlife Sciences
RANK: Senior Scientist
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1972
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership

Patti A. Freeman, Chair
273C RB, (801) 422-1286

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
203 RB, (801) 422-3638

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Recreation Management and Youth Leadership are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Students in the Department of Recreation Management and Youth Leadership may choose an undergraduate emphasis from the following areas: leisure services management, therapeutic recreation, or Scouting administration. Though the three areas represent diverse and unique approaches, they share the commitment to a service-oriented profession.

Depending upon the particular emphasis, courses prepare students in the areas of leadership skills, systems management, budgeting and finance, program development, facilities management, and current issues in the recreation profession. Because of the nature of the profession, course work may not be limited to the Recreation Management and Youth Leadership Department. Course work in the related disciplines of business, behavioral sciences, health sciences, exercise sciences, family sciences, and life sciences may be required.

Career Opportunities

The curriculum will prepare students to provide professional services designed to meet the recreation, leisure, and youth leadership needs of communities, families, and individuals. Employment may be found in community (municipal/government) recreation agencies; private, commercial, industrial or military recreation programs; youth agencies and Scouting; clinical treatment settings (hospitals) or adaptive programs for people with disabilities; state and national parks; and/or educational settings.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major
BS in Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
Emphases:
Leisure Services Management
Therapeutic Recreation

Minor
Nonprofit Management

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Youth and Family Recreation

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Recreation Management and Youth Leadership: Leisure Services Management Emphasis (54 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following foundation requirements:

P MGT 321 : Financial Issues in Public and Not-for-Profit Management. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fund accounting, budgeting processes, and sources of revenue such as taxes, municipal bonds, user fees, donations, grants, dues, and ticket sales.

RMYL 189 : Field Studies in Leisure Services and Therapeutic Recreation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Field trips to exemplary leisure service and therapeutic recreation agencies. Facility operations, design, management techniques and philosophy, marketing, and accessibility.
NOTE: Fee.

RMYL 301 : Family Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the role of family recreation in building successful families.

RMYL 304 : Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

RMYL 307 : Accessible Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Making the recreation/leisure experience accessible to all people. Applications and implications of ADA in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 320 : Program Management. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and administering community programs.

RMYL 485 : Management of Recreation Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304.
DESCRIPTION: Personnel, financing, legal aspects, and city and departmental organization of recreation systems.

RMYL 486 : Legal Aspects and Risk Management of Leisure Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 307, 485.
DESCRIPTION: Legal and risk management issues in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 487 : Research and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 320 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Academic and practical training to assess community recreational needs.

RMYL 491 : Recreation Facility Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Developing facilities for public and private recreation programs.

2. Complete two hours from the following:
   RMYL 199R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (.5-3:1:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Internship or cooperative education experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript

3. Complete 12 hours from the following:
   RMYL 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Project. (.5-12:ARR:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Full-time professional internship.

4. Complete 12 additional hours from one of the following specializations:

Community Recreation

a. Complete the following:
   RMYL 412 : Computer Applications for the Recreation Profession. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: On demand.
   PREREQUISITE: For majors only.
   DESCRIPTION: Orienting the undergraduate student to computer applications in the field of recreation management and youth leadership.

b. Complete at least one business skills course from the following:
   BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
   NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

   ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

c. Complete at least one leisure management course from the following:
   RMYL 371 : Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

   RMYL 405 : Commercial Recreation. (3:3.0:0.0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Entrepreneurial strategies; economic concepts applied to commercial recreation; steps of feasibility study and operations management.
   NOTE: For junior and senior students.

   RMYL 483 : Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

   RMYL 493 : Park Planning and Development. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: On demand.

d. Complete at least one programming course from the following:
   EXSC 277 : Techniques of Lifeguarding. (2:1:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Swim competency test (given first day of class).
   DESCRIPTION: First-aid and lifeguard skills training, including instruction in CPR, and American Red Cross certification for lifeguard training.

   EXSC 278 : Water Safety Instructor Training. (2:1:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: ARC Swimmer--level competency.
   DESCRIPTION: Leads to American Red Cross WSI certification. Swimming teaching methods that include

teaching swimming to special needs students.

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

RMYL 215 : Social Recreation Leadership. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Leadership skills for directing large social groups.

RMYL 216 : Crafts for Recreation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Administering and developing hobby craft skills for the recreation practitioner.

RMYL 223R : Outdoor Skills Leadership. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth approach to leadership skills in selected outdoor specialty areas, including camping, hiking and survival, basic backpacking, winter camping, mountain biking, fly-fishing, sailing, river recreation, rock climbing, family outdoor recreation, and outdoor therapeutic recreation skills.

: Basic Backpacking.
: Camping Skills.
: Family Outdoor Recreation.
: Fly Fishing.
: Hiking and Survival.
: Mountain Biking.
: Outdoor Therapeutic Recreation Skills.
: River Recreation.
: Rock Climbing.
: Sailing.
: Ski Instructor.
: Wilderness Trek.
: Winter Camping.

(only one 223R course will count for the program).

Commercial Recreation

a. Complete the following:

RMYL 405 : Commercial Recreation. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Entrepreneurial strategies; economic concepts applied to commercial recreation; steps of feasibility study and operations management.
NOTE: For junior and senior students.

b. Complete nine hours from the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

RMYL 483 : Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

Outdoor Recreation
Complete the following:

RMYL 223R : Outdoor Skills Leadership. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth approach to leadership skills in selected outdoor specialty areas, including camping, hiking and survival, basic backpacking, winter camping, mountain biking, fly-fishing, sailing, river recreation, rock climbing, family outdoor recreation, and outdoor therapeutic recreation skills.

: Basic Backpacking.
: Camping Skills.
: Family Outdoor Recreation.
: Fly Fishing.
: Hiking and Survival.
: Mountain Biking.
: Outdoor Therapeutic Recreation Skills.
: River Recreation.
: Rock Climbing.
: Sailing.
: Ski Instructor.
: Wilderness Trek.
: Winter Camping.

(2 sections)

RMYL 426 : Conservation and Outdoor Leadership Training Preparation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Outdoor recreation, management, leadership, and interpretation as it prepares students physically, intellectually, and socially to participate fully in the COLT program.

RMYL 427 : Conservation and Outdoor Leadership Training. (5:5:5)
OFFERED: Sp
DESCRIPTION: An intensive, 6-week experience developing outdoor skills, leadership, and management competencies.
NOTE: Fee.

Youth Leadership
a. Complete the following:

RMYL 244 : Introduction to Youth Leadership. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Basic youth development and leadership theories applied to understanding adolescents' behavior, programming healthy developmental activities, and providing meaningful learning experiences through recreation.

RMYL 306 : Introduction to Nonprofit Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Leading in nonprofit organizations using effective administrative practices; financial issues;

history and development of nonprofits; organizational structure; membership requirements, fund raising, and marketing.

RMYL 451 : Fundraising and Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Oral and written communication skills; financial issues in the nonprofit field; current issues relating to nonprofit budgeting and fundraising; building and maintaining fund raising campaigns.

b. Complete four hours from the following:

ORG B 347 : Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices needed to serve as effective leaders in families, church, community, and work settings -- planning, decision making, self-awareness, effective human influence, and community building.

RMYL 215 : Social Recreation Leadership. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Leadership skills for directing large social groups.

RMYL 223R : Outdoor Skills Leadership. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth approach to leadership skills in selected outdoor specialty areas, including camping, hiking and survival, basic backpacking, winter camping, mountain biking, fly-fishing, sailing, river recreation, rock climbing, family outdoor recreation, and outdoor therapeutic recreation skills.

: Basic Backpacking.
: Camping Skills.
: Family Outdoor Recreation.
: Fly Fishing.
: Hiking and Survival.
: Mountain Biking.
: Outdoor Therapeutic Recreation Skills.
: River Recreation.
: Rock Climbing.
: Sailing.
: Ski Instructor.
: Wilderness Trek.
: Winter Camping.

RMYL 351R : Venturing Outdoor Leadership. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on leadership experience and learning about group dynamics through outdoor experiences within a BSA Venturing Crew.

RMYL 371 : Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

RMYL 412 : Computer Applications for the Recreation Profession. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: For majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Orienting the undergraduate student to computer applications in the field of recreation management and youth leadership.

RMYL 483 : Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

SFL 333 : (SFL-Soc 318) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Examining the developmental and social contexts of adolescents with emphasis on the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

College | Missionary Training Center

Note: Only one 223R or 351R course will count for the program.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Recreation Management and Youth Leadership (RMYL) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Recreation Management and Youth Leadership: Therapeutic Recreation Emphasis (57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

General Information

1. Students are advised to take Stat 221 to fulfill their Languages of Learning general education requirement.
2. First aid and CPR certification must be obtained before completing the RMYL 496R internship experience.
3. Most agencies now require therapeutic recreation specialists to be certified through the National Council on Therapeutic Recreation Certification (NCTRC). Students should consult the NCTRC candidate information at www.NCTRC.org to ensure eligibility to sit for the certification exam. To practice in the state of Utah, the law also requires a licensure exam.
4. Students will be required to complete two extensive advising sessions as they declare their major and as they begin their therapeutic recreation core courses.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following foundation requirements:

P MGT 321 : Financial Issues in Public and Not-for-Profit Management. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fund accounting, budgeting processes, and sources of revenue such as taxes, municipal bonds, user fees, donations, grants, dues, and ticket sales.

RMYL 189 : Field Studies in Leisure Services and Therapeutic Recreation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Field trips to exemplary leisure service and therapeutic recreation agencies. Facility operations, design, management techniques and philosophy, marketing, and accessibility.
NOTE: Fee.

RMYL 304 : Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

RMYL 307 : Accessible Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Making the recreation/leisure experience accessible to all people. Applications and implications of ADA in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 320 : Program Management. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and administering community programs.

RMYL 370 : Introduction to Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304, 307; PDBio 205 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy, agencies, professional organizations, services, programs, practices, and disability groups related to therapeutic recreation.

RMYL 471 : Assessment in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 189, 304, 370, PDBio 205, 220; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Patient assessment techniques and program plan development.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Accounting (70–71 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental acceptance. Please see the information above and/or the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for appliction to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 6 credit hours of transfer credit will be accepted toward the upper-division major requirements. No transfer credit will be accepted for the Junior Core or Integrated Management Core courses.

2. Demonstrate a knowledge of computer skills, including PowerPoint and spreadsheet analysis. Students may demonstrate PowerPoint and spreadsheet skills with either a minimum grade of B in an equivalent transfer course or a P grade in the following:

   I SYS 100 : Computer Spreadsheet Skills. (.5:0:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary.
   - NOTE: Fee.

   I SYS 101 : Computer Presentation Skills. (.5:0:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Basic computer skills focusing on developing presentations. No technical background necessary.
   - NOTE: Fee.

3. Complete the following Pre-Accounting courses:

   ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
   - DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
   - NOTE: Independent Study also.

   ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
   - PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
   - DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
   - NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

   I SYS 201 : Introduction to Management Information Systems. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: I Sys 100, 101, and declared business major.
   - DESCRIPTION: Using technology to solve business problems. Hands-on spreadsheet, database, and Internet software in a business context.

   M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
   - DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
   - NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

   Note: These four courses are used in determining admission to the undergraduate accounting program.

4. Complete the following introductory courses:

   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

RMYL 472 : Program Dynamics in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 471.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive, specific, and individual program design; assessment interviewing; documentation of patient progress and facilitation techniques; intervention strategies.

RMYL 473 : Issues in Administration of Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 471.
DESCRIPTION: Issues related to personnel/clinical supervision, standards of practice, ethical behavior, program evaluation, quality management, financing, organization, administration, leisure education, and credentialing in therapeutic recreation.

RMYL 486 : Legal Aspects and Risk Management of Leisure Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 307, 485.
DESCRIPTION: Legal and risk management issues in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 487 : Research and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 320 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Academic and practical training to assess community recreational needs.

2. Complete two hours from the following:
RMYL 199R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (.5-3:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Internship or cooperative education experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript

3. Complete 12 hours from the following:
RMYL 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Project. (.5-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Full-time professional internship.

4. Complete the following:
PDBIO 205 : Human Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Body systems and influence of heredity.
NOTE: For nonbiology majors.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PSYCH 220 : Human Development: Life Span. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of psychological, biological, and social influences on behavior and psychological development through the life span.

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Recreation Management and Youth Leadership (RMYL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Nonprofit Management (21 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

RMYL 199R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (.5-3:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Internship or cooperative education experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript

(Three hours required)

RMYL 304 : Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

RMYL 306 : Introduction to Nonprofit Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Leading in nonprofit organizations using effective administrative practices; financial issues; history and development of nonprofits; organizational structure; membership requirements, fund raising, and marketing.

RMYL 451 : Fundraising and Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Oral and written communication skills; financial issues in the nonprofit field; current issues relating to nonprofit budgeting and fundraising; building and maintaining fund raising campaigns.

RMYL 453 : Grant Writing. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Oral and written communication skills; financial issues in the nonprofit field; grant writing history; writing successful grants; needs of foundations.

RMYL 455 : Nonprofit Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Management practices in nonprofit setting; analyzing and evaluating personnel; measuring performance evaluations; articulating and appreciating volunteer motivations.

RMYL 497R : Special Topics and Research. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics and research in recreation management and youth leadership.

(One hour required)

2. Complete three hours from the following:

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

ORG B 347 : Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices needed to serve as effective leaders in families, church, community, and work settings -- planning, decision making, self-awareness, effective human influence, and

community building.

RMYL 457 : Boy Scouts of America Administration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Administrative practices used by nonprofit settings in which volunteers and professionals give leadership.

Or a specialization course as approved by advisor.

Show all Recreation Management and Youth Leadership (RMYL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Updated by the BYU Web Team, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4636 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership (RMYL)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

RMYL 123 : Introduction to Outdoor Recreation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Participation in a variety of outdoor activities.

RMYL 189 : Field Studies in Leisure Services and Therapeutic Recreation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Field trips to exemplary leisure service and therapeutic recreation agencies. Facility operations, design, management techniques and philosophy, marketing, and accessibility.
NOTE: Fee.

RMYL 199R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (.5-3:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Internship or cooperative education experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript

200-Level Courses

RMYL 215 : Social Recreation Leadership. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Leadership skills for directing large social groups.

RMYL 216 : Crafts for Recreation. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Administering and developing hobby craft skills for the recreation practitioner.

RMYL 223R : Outdoor Skills Leadership. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth approach to leadership skills in selected outdoor specialty areas, including camping, hiking and survival, basic backpacking, winter camping, mountain biking, fly-fishing, sailing, river recreation, rock climbing, family outdoor recreation, and outdoor therapeutic recreation skills.

: Basic Backpacking.
: Camping Skills.
: Family Outdoor Recreation.
: Fly Fishing.
: Hiking and Survival.
: Mountain Biking.
: Outdoor Therapeutic Recreation Skills.
: River Recreation.
: Rock Climbing.
: Sailing.
: Ski Instructor.
: Wilderness Trek.
: Winter Camping.

RMYL 244 : Introduction to Youth Leadership. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Basic youth development and leadership theories applied to understanding adolescents' behavior, programming healthy developmental activities, and providing meaningful learning experiences through recreation.

RMYL 265 : Scouting in the Church. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Scouting as a means to bring young men to Christ and accomplish the purposes of the Aaronic Priesthood.

300-Level Courses

RMYL 301 : Family Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the role of family recreation in building successful families.

RMYL 304 : Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

RMYL 306 : Introduction to Nonprofit Organizations. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Leading in nonprofit organizations using effective administrative practices; financial issues; history and development of nonprofits; organizational structure; membership requirements, fund raising, and marketing.

RMYL 307 : Accessible Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Making the recreation/leisure experience accessible to all people. Applications and implications of ADA in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 320 : Program Management. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and administering community programs.

RMYL 350 : Boy Scouts of America Programs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Boy Scouting, Varsity Scouting, and Venturing techniques in building codes of conduct, measurement of personal honor, and peer leadership ability.

RMYL 351R : Venturing Outdoor Leadership. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on leadership experience and learning about group dynamics through outdoor experiences within a BSA Venturing Crew.

RMYL 370 : Introduction to Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304, 307; PDBio 205 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy, agencies, professional organizations, services, programs, practices, and disability groups related to therapeutic recreation.

RMYL 371 : Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

400-Level Courses

RMYL 405 : Commercial Recreation. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Entrepreneurial strategies; economic concepts applied to commercial recreation; steps of feasibility study and operations management.
NOTE: For junior and senior students.

RMYL 412 : Computer Applications for the Recreation Profession. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: For majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Orienting the undergraduate student to computer applications in the field of recreation management and youth leadership.

RMYL 421 : Outdoor and Experiential Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy of outdoor and experiential education. Teaching methodologies and skills appropriate for outdoor education.

RMYL 422 : Organizing and Leadership of Outdoor Programs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Preparing to organize and lead effective and safe outdoor and adventure programs through experiential learning opportunities.

RMYL 423 : Management of Outdoor Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Social, economic, political, and resource issues related to natural resource management. Policies of federal land managing agencies.

RMYL 424 : Wilderness First Responder. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Preparing to provide basic and advanced first aid in back country settings using classroom and field instruction.

RMYL 426 : Conservation and Outdoor Leadership Training Preparation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Outdoor recreation, management, leadership, and interpretation as it prepares students physically, intellectually, and socially to participate fully in the COLT program.

RMYL 427 : Conservation and Outdoor Leadership Training. (5:5:5)
OFFERED: Sp
DESCRIPTION: An intensive, 6-week experience developing outdoor skills, leadership, and management competencies.
NOTE: Fee.

RMYL 451 : Fundraising and Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Oral and written communication skills; financial issues in the nonprofit field; current issues relating to nonprofit budgeting and fundraising; building and maintaining fund raising campaigns.

RMYL 453 : Grant Writing. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Oral and written communication skills; financial issues in the nonprofit field; grant writing history; writing successful grants; needs of foundations.

RMYL 455 : Nonprofit Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Management practices in nonprofit setting; analyzing and evaluating personnel; measuring performance evaluations; articulating and appreciating volunteer motivations.

RMYL 457 : Boy Scouts of America Administration. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Administrative practices used by nonprofit settings in which volunteers and professionals give leadership.

RMYL 471 : Assessment in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 189, 304, 370, PDBio 205, 220; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Patient assessment techniques and program plan development.

RMYL 472 : Program Dynamics in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 471.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive, specific, and individual program design; assessment interviewing; documentation of patient progress and facilitation techniques; intervention strategies.

RMYL 473 : Issues in Administration of Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 471.
DESCRIPTION: Issues related to personnel/clinical supervision, standards of practice, ethical behavior, program evaluation, quality management, financing, organization, administration, leisure education, and credentialing in therapeutic recreation.

RMYL 483 : Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

RMYL 485 : Management of Recreation Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 304.
DESCRIPTION: Personnel, financing, legal aspects, and city and departmental organization of recreation systems.

RMYL 486 : Legal Aspects and Risk Management of Leisure Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 307, 485.
DESCRIPTION: Legal and risk management issues in recreation/leisure settings.

RMYL 487 : Research and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 320 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Academic and practical training to assess community recreational needs.

RMYL 488R : Advanced Training. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced BSA training experiences such as Woodbadge, Camp School, JTL training, and Jamboree Leadership.

RMYL 491 : Recreation Facility Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing facilities for public and private recreation programs.

RMYL 493 : Park Planning and Development. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

RMYL 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Project. (.5-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Full-time professional internship.

RMYL 497R : Special Topics and Research. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics and research in recreation management and youth leadership.

RMYL 499R : Honors Thesis. (3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
PREREQUISITE: Departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Thesis project representing independent work and reflecting highest standards of undergraduate achievement.
NOTE: Must receive both departmental and Honors Program approval.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

RMYL 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-8:1:40)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Professional leadership practicum.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Recreation Management and Youth Leadership Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Freeman, Patti Ann
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Western Illinois University, 1990
PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1993

Gray, Howard R
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1977

Hill, Brian Jack
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Clemson University, 1994

Associate Professors

Harris, Bradley Dean
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 2007

Widmer, Mark Alan
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990

PhD, University of Utah, 1993

Zabriskie, Ramon B.

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, 2000

Assistant Professors

Lundberg, Neil R.

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Indiana University, 2006

Taniguchi, Stacy Tooru

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Alaska, Anchorage, 1975
MS, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2004

Ward, Peter Joseph

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1997
MBA, University of Utah, 2003
PhD, University of Utah, 2007

Teaching Professor

Palmer, Gary K

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MREd, Brigham Young University, 1967
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1981

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Ancient Scripture

Dennis L. Largey, Chair
375A JSB, (801) 422-2067

David M. Whitchurch, Associate Chair
303D JSB, (801) 422-2796

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

Or

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note: Where possible, it is recommended that these courses be taken before entering the Junior Core.

5. Complete the following Junior Core courses:

ACC 401 : Business and Accounting Information Systems. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Inputs, processing, outputs, and files of several transaction-processing subsystems. Foundation for understanding internal control. Variety of tools used to design, create, or document accounting information systems (AIS) to achieve organizational objectives.

ACC 402 : Cost and Managerial Accounting. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Cost and managerial accounting topics, including production processes, product costing, cost behavior analysis with regression, differential costing, capital budgeting, throughput accounting, performance measurement, and budgeting.

ACC 403 : Intermediate Financial Accounting 1. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Financial reporting issues for balance sheet, income statement, and cash-flow statement. Revenue recognition, accounting for long-term assets, investment securities, and derivative instruments; consolidation.

ACC 404 : Financial Accounting 2. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Accounting for receivables and inventory. Major reporting issues associated with liabilities and stockholder's equity. Introduction to computing basic and diluted earnings per share.

ACC 405 : Fundamentals of Taxation. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Tax principles applicable to business entities and individuals; tax compliance issues; tax planning as part of overall strategic planning process for businesses and individuals.

ACC 406 : Financial Statement Auditing. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to framework providing financial statement assurance; integrating accounting and business knowledge with concepts from other disciplines such as statistics and law; framework applied to major business cycles, providing specific knowledge in financial statement auditing.

6. Complete the following Integrated Management Core courses:

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Ancient Scripture (Rel A)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

Asterisk (*) denotes core courses.

100-Level Courses

REL A 121* : The Book of Mormon. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Narrative, doctrines, and precepts of the Book of Mormon. Covers 1 Nephi through Alma 29.
NOTE: Honors also. *Returned missionaries must enroll in sections designated specifically for returned missionaries.*

REL A 122* : The Book of Mormon. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Narrative, doctrines, and precepts of the Book of Mormon. Covers Alma 30 through Moroni 10.
NOTE: Honors also. *Returned missionaries must enroll in sections designated specifically for returned missionaries.*

200-Level Courses

REL A 211* : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the life and teachings of Jesus Christ set forth in the four Gospels.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 212* : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the Acts of the Apostles through the Revelation of John.
NOTE: Honors also.

300-Level Courses

REL A 301 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 302 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers 1 Kings through Malachi.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 304 : Writings of Isaiah. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Teachings and prophecies of Isaiah in light of their historical context and relevance to latter-day people.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 320 : The Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Historical significance of Joseph Smith's translation of the Bible, its relationship to the other standard works, and its doctrinal contributions.

REL A 327 : The Pearl of Great Price. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background and doctrines of the Pearl of Great Price.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 392R : Special Studies in Religion: Ancient Scripture. (.5-3:ARR:0)
Writings of John.
OFFERED: On demand; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

Jerusalem Center Courses (Rel A)

The following courses are offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

100-Level Courses

REL A 101 : Old Testament Survey. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the Old Testament, integrated with extensive field study in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 111* : New Testament Survey of the Gospels. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experience in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

200-Level Courses

REL A 200* : New Testament Studies. (.5-4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Integrated study of the New Testament and LDS history and prophecy in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
DESCRIPTION: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

300-Level Courses

REL A 300 : Old Testament Studies. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Study of the Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 303 : Old Testament Studies. (3:3:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Study of the Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 310* : New Testament Studies of the Gospels. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: Study of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experience in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

REL A 311* : New Testament Studies of the Gospels. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Study of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.
NOTE: Offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Ancient Scripture Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Ancient Scripture Faculty

Professors

Ball, Terry Briggs

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1992

Draper, Richard D

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
MA, Arizona State University, 1974
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1988

Griggs, C Wilfred

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1978

Hoskisson, Paul Y

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
PhD, Brandeis University, 1985

Jackson, Kent P.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, University of Michigan, 1976
PhD, University of Michigan, 1980

Judd, Daniel K

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Southern Utah State University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1987

Largey, Dennis

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young Universityâ€"Hawaii, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1981

Ludlow, Victor L

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, Brandeis University, 1979

Millet, Robert L.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Florida State University, 1983

Ogden, D. Kelly

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1971
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, Institute of Holy Land Studies, Jerusalem, 1978
PhD, University of Utah, 1982

Parrish, Alan K

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1968
MBA, Utah State University, 1972
EdD, University of Southern California, 1981

Pike, Dana M.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1990

Robinson, Stephen E

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, Duke University, 1978

Seely, David R

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1982
AM, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1985
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1990

Skinner, Andrew C

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Colorado, 1975
MAR, Iliff School of Theology, 1978
MTh, Harvard University, 1980
PhD, University of Denver, 1986

Stohlton, John Bailey

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1960
JD, George Washington University, 1964

Williams, Clyde J

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1978
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1989

Associate Professors

Hauglid, Brian Michael

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, University of Utah, 1991
PhD, University of Utah, 1998

Huntington, Ray Lynn

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Huntsman, Eric D.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, University of Pennsylvania, 1992
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1997

Ludlow, Jared W

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1994
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2000

Marsh, Jeffrey

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1981
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1989

Olson, Camille Fronk

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1976
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1996

Wayment, Thomas Arvel

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of California, Riverside, 1994
MA, Claremont Graduate School, 1998
PhD, Claremont Graduate School, 2000

Whitchurch, David M.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1977
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1991

Wilson, Keith J

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Utah, 1995

Assistant Professors

Belnap, Daniel Lee

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, Brigham Young University, 1999
MA, University of Chicago, 2002
PhD, University of Chicago, 2007

Judd, Frank F.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MA, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1997
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 2003

Muhlestein, Kerry

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2003

Strathearn, Gaye

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Claremont Graduate University, 2004

Swift, Charles

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2003

Szink, Terrence L

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1985
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2005

Teaching Professors

Johnson, Stanley A

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1979
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1987

Merrill, Byron R

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
JD, University of California, Davis, 1975

Parker, Todd B

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1974
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1978
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1985

Research Associate Professor

Rhodes, Michael Dennis

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Ancient Scripture
RANK: Research Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
BS, Air Force Institute of Technology, 1982
MS, University of New Mexico, 1989

Church History and Doctrine

Arnold K. Garr, Chair
375B JSB, (801) 422-3691

John P. Livingstone, Associate Chair
303E JSB, (801) 422-3692

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Church History and Doctrine (Rel C)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

Asterisk (*) denotes core courses.

100-Level Courses

REL C 100 : Introduction to the LDS Church. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Only for students who are not LDS.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrines, history, and practices of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints for students who are not members of the church.
NOTE: It is strongly recommended that this course be taken the first semester at BYU.

REL C 130 : Missionary Preparation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Focuses upon the purpose, skills, and doctrines of missionary work and prepares prospective missionaries for a more meaningful MTC and mission experience.
NOTE: Honors also. Recommended for all prospective missionaries. This class may not be taken or retaken by returned missionaries.

200-Level Courses

REL C 234 : LDS Marriage and Family. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: LDS doctrines and principles of marriage and family.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 261 : Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 293R : Specialized Studies in Family History (Genealogy). (1-2:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Rel C 261.
DESCRIPTION: Using documents from specific regional and organizational sources to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

: British Family History.
: Germanic/Slavic Family History.
: Hispanic Family History.
: LDS Family History.
: Native American Family History.
: Scandinavian Family History.
: Southern European Family History.
: United States and Canada Family History.

300-Level Courses

REL C 324* : The Doctrine and Covenants. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Origin, content, and teachings of the Doctrine and Covenants. Covers Sections 1 through 76.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 325* : The Doctrine and Covenants. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Origin, content, and teachings of the Doctrine and Covenants. Covers Sections 77 through Official Declaration 2.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 333 : The Living Prophets. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Doctrines, administration, backgrounds, and current teachings of the living prophets, seers, and revelators.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 341 : Latter-day Saint History, 1805 to 1844. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the birth of Joseph Smith to his martyrdom.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 342 : Latter-day Saint History, 1845 to 1900. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the martyrdom of Joseph Smith through the administration of Lorenzo Snow.

companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

BUS M 402 : Managerial Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Accounting junior core; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of financial management issues including capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, and long-term financial planning.

ORG B 321 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For Marriott School of Management majors only.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.

Note: If completing the MAcc, these courses will be replaced by the MSM Core.

7. Complete the following after Acc 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406:

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

ACC 453 : Money, the Financial System, and the Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of industry analysis and microeconomic principles in the macroeconomic environment that influences individuals and financial intermediaries that transact in money and credit markets.

Or

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

Note: If completing the MAcc, Bus M 498 should not be taken.

8. Complete Marriott School exit survey online.

*Hours include courses the may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Accounting Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

REL C 343 : Latter-day Saint History, 1901 to the Present. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the administration of Joseph F. Smith to the present.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 344 : Latter-day Saint History: The International Church. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from 1830 to the present in Britain, Europe, the Pacific, Asia, Latin America, Africa, the Near East, and other areas.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 350R : Religious Studies in a World Setting. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Religious studies related to Latter-day Saint foundations and doctrines as relevant to specific geographical regions (International Study Programs).

REL C 351 : Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of non-Christian religions in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 352 : Christian History and the Restored Gospel. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Christianity from its inception to the present in light of the restored gospel.

REL C 353 : American Christianity and the Restored Gospel. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of the major Christian faiths of America in light of the restored gospel.

REL C 355 : Judaism and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Judaism in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 356 : Islam and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Islam in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 370 : Introduction to Teaching Seminary. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy, objectives, subject-matter areas, and related problems associated with religious education at the secondary level.

REL C 393R : Special Studies in Religion: Church History and Doctrine. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

: Book of Mormon Witnesses.
: Doctrine and Teachings of Joseph Smith.
: Family History in Great Britain.
: LDS Temples.
: Latter-Day Saints in Wartime.
: Lectures on Faith.
: Men and Women of Mormonism.
: Presidents of the Church.

400-Level Courses

REL C 431 : Doctrines of the Gospel. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints as taught in the scriptures and by latter-day prophets. Intended as a capstone experience to integrate doctrines and principles of the plan of salvation.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 471 : Methods of Teaching Seminary. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
NOTE: For prospective seminary teachers only.

REL C 472 : Teaching the Developmentally Disabled. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Training prospective Church Educational System teachers to effectively teach religious education to youth who are developmentally disabled.

REL C 475 : Seminary Teaching Seminar. (.5-2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics pertinent to success of newly appointed seminary teachers preparatory to fall teaching.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Church History and Doctrine Department Home

BYU Undergraduate Catalog 2008-2009

Church History and Doctrine Faculty

Professors

Bennett, Richard Edmond

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, Wayne State University, 1984

Black, Susan E

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, California State College, San Bernardino, 1975
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1978

Brinley, Douglas E

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1964
MS, Utah State University, 1966
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1975

Choi, Dong Sull

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Korea University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1990

Cowan, Richard O

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Occidental College, 1958
MA, Stanford University, 1959
PhD, Stanford University, 1961

Flake, Lawrence R

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1969
DRE, Brigham Young University, 1970

Freeman, Robert C.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
JD, Western State University, 1989

Garr, Arnold Kent

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1969
MA, Utah State University, 1974
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1986

Holzapfel, Richard Neitzel

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, University of California, Irvine, 1990
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 1993

Keller, Roger R

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BMus, University of Colorado, 1968
MDiv, Princeton Theological Seminary, 1971
PhD, Duke University, 1975

Sperry, Kip

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MLS, Brigham Young University, 1974

Top, Brent LaMar

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1984

Woods, Fred E

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, University of Utah, 1991

Wright, Dennis Albert

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Idaho, 1968
MS, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Arizona State University, 1978

Associate Professors

Baugh, Alexander L.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1996

Boone, David Flake

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1992

Brooks, Kent Richmond

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1988

Chadwick, Jeffrey R.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1978
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Utah, 1992

Dorius, Guy L.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1984
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Doxey, Cynthia

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1985
MS, University of Utah, 1988
MPhil, University of Cambridge, England, 1991
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Goodman, Michael A

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: --, Brigham Young University, 2004

Harper, Steven Craig

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Utah State University, 1996
PhD, Lehigh University, 2001

Hedges, Andrew H

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1996

Livingstone, John Peter

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BSc, University of Alberta, Canada, 1974
MEd, University of Regina, Canada, 1981
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1986

Manscill, Craig Kent

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1978
MS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1987

Minert, Roger P.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Ohio State University, 1987
PhD, Ohio State University, 1991

Newell, Lloyd

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MA, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1999

Ostler, Craig James

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1995

Richardson, Matthew O.

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1990
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1996

Woodger, Mary Jane

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MEd, Utah State University, 1992
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1997

Assistant Professors

Esplin, Scott Clair

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Southern Utah University, 1997
MEd, Brigham Young University, 2001
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2006

Fluhman, J. Spencer

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2000
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2006

Gaskill, Alonzo L

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Idaho State University, 1991
MA, University of Notre Dame, 1995
PhD, Trinity Theological Seminary, Liverpool, 2000

Neilson, Reid L

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, Brigham Young University, 2001
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2002
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 2006

Teaching Professors

Bott, Randy LaMar

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1970
MEd, Utah State University, 1974
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1988

Perkins, Jerome Marvin

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1989

Instructor

Ostergar, Allen C

COLLEGE: Religious Education
DEPARTMENT: Church History and Doctrine
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: MPA, Brigham Young University, 1970

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Social Work

Gordon E. Limb, Director
2190A JFSB, (801) 422-6649

Kenneth W. Matheson, Associate Director and Undergraduate Coordinator
2177 JFSB, (801) 422-7447

Kevin M. Marett, Fieldwork Education Director
2165 JFSB, (801) 422-3211

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

School of Social Work Office
2190 JFSB, (801) 422-3282
Fax: (801) 422-0624
E-mail: socialwork@byu.edu
Web site: www.socialwork.byu.edu

The School of Social Work has been restructured effective November 1, 2007, and includes the discontinuance of the undergraduate social work degree. Because of this, all previously admitted students will be allowed to graduate but no new undergraduate students will be admitted.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MSW in Social Work

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Please see the school or visit the Web site for additional information.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Social Work (Soc W)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

SOC W 200 : Introduction to Social Work. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social welfare as a social institution; social work as a profession.

300-Level Courses

SOC W 322 : Human Behavior in the Social Environment. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Human growth and development from conception through end of life; biological, psychological, and sociological influences; normal development tasks; application of diverse theories to client situations.

SOC W 330 : Social Welfare Programs and Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: The Social Security Act, federal block grants, federal transfer programs, and the private social welfare sector.

SOC W 331 : Social Welfare Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc W 200.
DESCRIPTION: Social legislation processes; analysis of social policy and the knowledge available to social workers for involvement in social planning and policy change.

SOC W 360 : Social Work Practice with Individuals. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major status; PDBio 205 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of social work practice within a generalist framework; interventions with individuals.

SOC W 361 : Social Work Practice with Groups. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Soc W 360.
DESCRIPTION: Generalist social work practice; small group process as an agent for change and growth; task groups, therapy groups, and families as targets for change.

SOC W 390R : Special Topics in Social Work. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

400-Level Courses

SOC W 401 : Introduction to Social Work Research Methods and Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Soc W 402.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of qualitative and quantitative research methods used in designing, writing, conducting, and reporting a social work investigation in an agency.

SOC W 402 : Applied Social Work Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Soc W 401.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing data and interpreting results of introductory descriptive and inferential statistics. Graphing, central tendency variation, hypothesis testing, parameter estimation, measures of association, correlation, and regression.

SOC W 423 : Perspectives on Cultural Diversity. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Specific factors affecting social work intervention with clients of minority status, i.e., ethnicity, culture, race, lifestyle, etc.

SOC W 462 : Social Work Practice with Community Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major and senior status; Soc W 360, 361.
DESCRIPTION: Generalist social work practice; macro-level practice at organizational and community levels.

SOC W 475 : Substance Abuse. (2:2:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical/social overview of substance use in America and its associated problems; overview of each major drug type. Specific issues

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Accounting (Acc)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

Note 1: Students enrolled in nonbusiness programs requiring or recommending Acc 201 or 202 should enroll in 200.

Note 2: SOA 300-level classes are available to Marriott School of Management and certain other selected majors.

Note 3: All 400-level classes (except 440) are limited to accounting SOA majors.

200-Level Courses

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ACC 201 : Principles of Financial Accounting. (3:3:1)
DESCRIPTION: First course in concepts and methods underlying financial statements.
NOTE: Independent Study only.

ACC 202 : Principles of Managerial Accounting. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: Acc 201.
DESCRIPTION: Second course in the elementary series covering managerial problems and control of business operations.

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.
NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

ACC 241 : Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Marriott School of Management major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

300-Level Courses

ACC 343 : Business Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 241 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: The law relating to negotiable instruments, secured transactions, real property, wills and trusts, and bankruptcy.

400-Level Courses

ACC 401 : Business and Accounting Information Systems. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Inputs, processing, outputs, and files of several transaction-processing subsystems. Foundation for understanding internal control. Variety of tools used to design, create, or document accounting information systems (AIS) to achieve organizational objectives.

ACC 402 : Cost and Managerial Accounting. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Cost and managerial accounting topics, including production processes, product costing, cost behavior analysis with regression, differential costing, capital budgeting, throughput accounting, performance measurement, and budgeting.

ACC 403 : Intermediate Financial Accounting 1. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Financial reporting issues for balance sheet, income statement, and cash-flow statement. Revenue recognition, accounting for long-term assets, investment securities, and derivative instruments; consolidation.

ACC 404 : Financial Accounting 2. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Accounting for receivables and inventory. Major reporting issues associated with liabilities and stockholder's equity. Introduction to computing basic and diluted earnings per share.

ACC 405 : Fundamentals of Taxation. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Tax principles applicable to business entities and individuals; tax compliance issues; tax planning as part of overall strategic planning process for businesses and individuals.

SOC W 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Field Experience in Social Work. (1-10:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Soc W 360, 361, PDBio 205; concurrent enrollment in Soc W 462.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in social service agencies; relationship between theoretical concepts and practice.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

SOC W 570 : Crisis Intervention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Assessment and intervention in crisis situations with clients.

SOC W 571 : Basic Mediation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the conceptual knowledge and practical skills training for a mediator. Concepts taught include: gathering, managing conflict, identifying issues, active listening, reframing, problem solving, negotiating, and agreement writing.

SOC W 580 : Social Work in the School Setting. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of knowledge and skills essential to the practice of social work in educational settings; emphasizes practical interventions when working with student/family/teacher/community resources.

SOC W 581 : Social Services for the Aging. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Process and impact of social service delivery systems on the aged.
NOTE: Utah state certificate available.

SOC W 583 : Child Welfare Services 1, 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: State of Utah training. The effects of abuse and neglect on child development, including casework and case planning processes.

SOC W 584 : Child Welfare Services 3, 4. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: State of Utah training. The effects of abuse and neglect on development, along with attachment, loss, grief, and separation in placement.

SOC W 585 : Global Issues of Children at Risk. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing major challenges facing children and their families globally, including poverty, malnutrition, poor health care, gender-based discrimination, child labor and sexual exploitation, AIDS orphans, child soldiers, and refugees.

SOC W 595R : Directed Readings. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Social Work Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

BYU Undergraduate Catalog 2008-2009

School of Social Work Faculty

Professors

Cox, Shirley E Nissen

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1962
MSW, Howard University, 1967
DSW, University of Utah, 1986

Pehrson, Kyle Lynn

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Weber State College, 1969
MSW, University of Utah, 1971
PhD, Catholic University of America, 1980

Seipel, Michael M O

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1974
MSW, University of Utah, 1976
PhD, Cornell University, 1982

Walton, Elaine

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MSW, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Utah, 1991

Associate Professors

Limb, Gordon Earl

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2000

Norman, Judith L.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
BS, Portland State University, 1972
MSW, University of Utah, 1978
DSW, University of Utah, 1990

Roby, Jini L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MSW, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
JD, Brigham Young University, 1990

Spaid, Wanda M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Bethel College, 1969
MSW, University of Minnesota, 1971
DSW, University of Utah, 1988

Assistant Professor

Panos, Patrick Thomas

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1985
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MSW, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1993

Associate Teaching Professor

Marett, Kevin M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MSW, University of Utah, 1985
PhD, Purdue University, 1989

Clinical Professor

Matheson, Kenneth W

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Social Work
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MSW, University of Utah, 1970
DSW, University of Utah, 1976

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Sociology

Renata T. Forste, Chair
2008C JFSB, (801) 422-4453

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Sociology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Sociology is the study of social relations, for example, the study of social interaction and the relations of power in modern society, family and community life, organizations, and institutions. Among other things, sociologists study social change and social movements, diversity, and the origins of inequality and social conflict. The study of sociology includes learning about the theoretical perspectives and the diverse research methodologies that inform sociological analysis.

Career Opportunities

Students major in sociology in preparation for a number of different careers. Individuals are trained to analyze available information, summarize findings, draw conclusions, and solve problems. The study of sociology prepares a student for professional training in law, social work, public policy, and public or business administration. Sociology also provides training for occupations that do not require graduate training: commercial and retail sales, real estate, financial planning, information management and analysis, and market research. Students interested in working for nonprofit organizations and for government agencies should consider majoring in sociology. Students interested in studying criminology or a career in law enforcement may also consider sociology as a major.

Becoming a sociologist requires further graduate study, either a PhD or a master's degree.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Major
BS in Sociology
Minor
Sociology (General)

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Sociology
PhD in Sociology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Sociology (48 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 24 hours of sociology major courses must be taken in residence at BYU.

2. Complete one of the following introductory courses (preferably in sophomore year or earlier):
   SOC 111 : Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

   SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

3. Complete one of the following introductory statistics courses:
   SOC 306 : Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Introductory descriptive and inferential statistics; graphing, central tendency, variation, hypothesis testing and parameter estimation, measures of association, correlation, and regression.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

4. Complete the following introductory methodology courses:
   SOC 300 : Methods of Research in Sociology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Tools of social research; survey, experimentation, content analysis, secondary analysis, qualitative research, evaluation research, data processing and analysis, and report writing.

   SOC 307 : Data Analysis, Presentation, and Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112; 300; 306 or Stat 221; major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Framing research questions, locating available data, using programs and statistical packages for univariate and bivariate analysis, presenting and summarizing findings.

   Note: Students must declare a sociology major before registering for Soc 307.

5. Complete the following theory courses:
   SOC 310 : Foundations of Social Inquiry. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic ideas and arguments forming sociological inquiry, including philosophical foundations, philosophy of social science, and development of classical theory.

   SOC 311 : Contemporary Sociological Theory. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112; 310.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas, critiques, and arguments that form contemporary sociological inquiry.

Note: Soc 300, 307, 310 and Soc 306 or Stat 221 are foundational courses for the major. Students are encouraged to take these courses as early in their program of studies as possible. Students must complete these four courses with a C– or better grade in order to graduate with a degree in sociology.

6. Complete the following writing course:
ENGL 312 : Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

7. Complete at least one course from the following social diversity and inequality courses:
SOC 322 : Class Inequality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of class, status, and power differences.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

8. Complete the following social psychology course:
SOC 350 : (Soc-Psych) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.

9. Complete at least one course in advanced methodology:
SOC 404 : Qualitative Research Methods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 300, 307, 310, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Purposes, methods, and limitations of qualitative research. Includes participant observation and hermeneutics skills.

SOC 405 : Multiple Regression Analysis and Social Science Computing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: soc 300; 306 or Stat 221; 307.
DESCRIPTION: Data analysis and computer use in sociology; least squares and logistic regression techniques; SPSS and its use in conducting data analysis. Research report required.

Note: Students may wish to take both Soc 404 and 405. In such cases the second advanced methodology course may count toward the four-course requirement listed below (see item 11).

10. Complete two capstone courses from the following:
SOC 420 : Understanding Modern Societies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative-historical theory and research on the political, economic, social, and cultural processes in the formation, social organization, and future prospects of modern societies.

SOC 421 : Complex Organizations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Complex formal organization perspectives. Bureaucracy, management, structure, and change in private and public sectors. Formation, growth, and partitioning of organizational fields. Writing intensive.

SOC 422 : Social Stratification. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distributions of money, prestige, and power as they relate to life chances, lifestyle, other social institutions, and social justice.

SOC 424 : Political Sociology. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of power and decision-making, political institutions, grass root politics, stratification, and political activity, social movements and revolutions, science/religion and politics. Writing intensive.

SOC 425 : Markets and Society. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Economic sociology exploring social dynamics of market behavior from an interdisciplinary perspective; topics include social factors realted to value, price, and price volatility.

SOC 426 : Sociology of Work and Occupations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distinction between work and occupation, changes in the nature of work and labor force, impacts of work, mobility in work life, and occupational attainment.

SOC 429 : Theory of Social Change and Modernization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Social change in contemporary society from diverse theoretical points of view.

SOC 450 : The Family and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Changing patterns of family-related behaviors, functions, and forms. Demographic, economic, and ideological forces shaping the family.

SOC 460 : Issues in Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced sociological analysis of current issues relating to the family (e.g., theory, methodology, parenting, marriage, divorce, family crises, race, gender, etc.).

SOC 470 : Sociology of Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Law as an institution; influence of law on behavior; relationship between law and institutions; role of law in social change.

SOC 481 : Crime, Justice, and Corrections. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and extent of criminal behavior; current theory and research related to causes of crime and treatment of criminals.

SOC 490R : Special Topics in Sociology. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

11. Complete four additional courses from the following. Students are encouraged to enroll in courses that meet their academic and professional interests and needs. Courses taken to fulfill other major requirements may not be used to meet this requirement.
    a. Substantive courses:

SOC 318 : (Soc-SFL 333) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Examining developmental and social contexts of adolescents, emphasizing the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

SOC 322 : Class Inequality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of class, status, and power differences.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

SOC 325 : Introduction to the Sociology of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Origin, growth, and organizational development of religious groups; church activity, conversion, secularization, religious change.

SOC 326 : Sociology of Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social origins of goals and curricula; theories of change and control; the nature of achievement in education.

SOC 327 : Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

SOC 328 : Sociology of Sport. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the sociological aspects of sport and their relationship to politics, economics, stratification, education, and family. Focus on concepts, theory, and related research.

SOC 329 : Medical Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Social epidemiology, the sick role, sociocultural definitions of and responses to illness, and the organization of medical-health delivery systems.

SOC 330 : Cultural Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Recent theories and research in sociological approaches to meaning, including cultural systems and institutions, everyday life, symbolism, agency, power, texts, and globalization.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

SOC 345 : World Populations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Fertility, mortality, and migration patterns of world populations as they relate to current social, economic, political, and religious issues.

SOC 360 : Introduction to Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Definitions of "family"; surveying the family as a context for sex, marriage, work, social reproduction, and violence in Western societies.

SOC 365 : Sociology of Aging. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Demographic and social factors related to aging: agencies, serving older citizens, and role of community in solving problems of aged.
NOTE: Required for students in gerontology minor and/or certificate programs.

SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

SOC 370 : The Sociology of Urban Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Norms, social controls, and social processes in urban areas in both historical and contemporary perspectives.

SOC 380 : Deviant Behavior and Social Control. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and research related to deviance. Specific topics include psychosis, addiction, homosexuality, violence, and rape, among others.

SOC 383 : Juvenile Delinquency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lawlessness of children and adolescents: causation, treatment, prevention, and outlook.

SOC 390R : Special Topics in Contemporary Sociology. (.5-3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

b. Advanced methodological courses:
SOC 404 : Qualitative Research Methods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 300, 307, 310, 311.

DESCRIPTION: Purposes, methods, and limitations of qualitative research. Includes participant observation and hermeneutics skills.

SOC 405 : Multiple Regression Analysis and Social Science Computing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: soc 300; 306 or Stat 221; 307.
DESCRIPTION: Data analysis and computer use in sociology; least squares and logistic regression techniques; SPSS and its use in conducting data analysis. Research report required.

SOC 406 : Intermediate Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 306.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to structural equation models, analysis of variance and covariance, and factor analysis.

SOC 408 : Survey Research and Social Measurement. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 300.
DESCRIPTION: Survey research design, measurement, and techniques in the behavioral sciences; research and sampling designs and measurement techniques.

c. Capstone sociology courses:

SOC 420 : Understanding Modern Societies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative-historical theory and research on the political, economic, social, and cultural processes in the formation, social organization, and future prospects of modern societies.

SOC 421 : Complex Organizations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Complex formal organization perspectives. Bureaucracy, management, structure, and change in private and public sectors. Formation, growth, and partitioning of organizational fields. Writing intensive.

SOC 422 : Social Stratification. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distributions of money, prestige, and power as they relate to life chances, lifestyle, other social institutions, and social justice.

SOC 424 : Political Sociology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of power and decision-making, political institutions, grass root politics, stratification, and political activity, social movements and revolutions, science/religion and politics. Writing intensive.

SOC 425 : Markets and Society. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Economic sociology exploring social dynamics of market behavior from an interdisciplinary perspective; topics include social factors realted to value, price, and price volatility.

SOC 426 : Sociology of Work and Occupations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distinction between work and occupation, changes in the nature of work and labor force, impacts of work, mobility in work life, and occupational attainment.

SOC 429 : Theory of Social Change and Modernization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Social change in contemporary society from diverse theoretical points of view.

SOC 450 : The Family and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Changing patterns of family-related behaviors, functions, and forms. Demographic, economic, and ideological forces shaping the family.

SOC 460 : Issues in Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced sociological analysis of current issues relating to the family (e.g., theory, methodology, parenting, marriage, divorce, family crises, race, gender, etc.).

SOC 470 : Sociology of Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Law as an institution; influence of law on behavior; relationship between law and institutions; role of law in social change.

SOC 481 : Crime, Justice, and Corrections. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and extent of criminal behavior; current theory and research related to causes of crime and treatment of criminals.

SOC 490R : Special Topics in Sociology. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

d. Students are strongly encouraged to participate in a semester-long (3 credit hours) professional or research internship (Soc 399R) or a directed research project with a faculty member (Soc 497R). No more than 3 hours of Soc 399R and no more than 3 hours of Soc 497R may be used to meet this requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Sociology (Soc) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

ACC 406 : Financial Statement Auditing. (4:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to SOA.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to framework providing financial statement assurance; integrating accounting and business knowledge with concepts from other disciplines such as statistics and law; framework applied to major business cycles, providing specific knowledge in financial statement auditing.

ACC 440 : Corporate Financial Reporting. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, 210, Bus M 301.
DESCRIPTION: Accounting principles of corporate financial reporting. Judgments managers make preparing financial statement information. How complexities, alternatives, and impacts affect completed financial statements.
NOTE: For nonaccounting majors.

ACC 453 : Money, the Financial System, and the Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of industry analysis and microeconomic principles in the macroeconomic environment that influences individuals and financial intermediaries that transact in money and credit markets.

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the current Marriott School of Management School of Accountancy Web site at http://marriottschool.byu.edu/soa and the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to School of Accountancy Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Sociology (15 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one course from the following:
   SOC 111 : Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

   SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

2. Complete at least one course from the following social diversity and inequality courses:
   SOC 322 : Class Inequality. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of class, status, and power differences.

   SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

   SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

3. Complete an additional 9 credit hours of course work. Students may select among the electives listed in the major (see item 11 under major requirements).

   Note: Students interested in a sociology minor that emphasizes the research and analysis component of the major may select among the following courses as electives: Soc 300, 307, 404, or 405. Students are cautioned that Soc 404 and 405 have several prerequisites, which will require additional courses beyond the 15 hour minimum for a minor. Soc 307 is currently open only to majors; students interested in the sociology minor may add the course with the instructor's consent.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Sociology (Soc) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Sociology (Soc) Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

SOC 111 : Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

: Honors Introductory Sociology.

SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

: Honors Current Social Problems.

SOC 113 : Multicultural America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Diverse cultural heritages in the United States. Cultures studied scientifically will include African American, Hispanic, Asian American, and Native American.

200-Level Courses

SOC 222 : (Soc-WS) Introduction to Women's Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of scholarship about women's lives; new historical, sociological, psychological, and literary approaches that inform our understanding of women's experience.

300-Level Courses

SOC 300 : Methods of Research in Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Tools of social research; survey, experimentation, content analysis, secondary analysis, qualitative research, evaluation research, data processing and analysis, and report writing.

SOC 306 : Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introductory descriptive and inferential statistics; graphing, central tendency, variation, hypothesis testing and parameter estimation, measures of association, correlation, and regression.

SOC 307 : Data Analysis, Presentation, and Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112; 300; 306 or Stat 221; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Framing research questions, locating available data, using programs and statistical packages for univariate and bivariate analysis, presenting and summarizing findings.

SOC 310 : Foundations of Social Inquiry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112.
DESCRIPTION: Basic ideas and arguments forming sociological inquiry, including philosophical foundations, philosophy of social science, and development of classical theory.

SOC 311 : Contemporary Sociological Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112; 310.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas, critiques, and arguments that form contemporary sociological inquiry.

SOC 318 : (Soc-SFL 333) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Examining developmental and social contexts of adolescents, emphasizing the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

SOC 322 : Class Inequality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of class, status, and power differences.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

SOC 325 : Introduction to the Sociology of Religion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Origin, growth, and organizational development of religious groups; church activity, conversion, secularization, religious change.

SOC 326 : Sociology of Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social origins of goals and curricula; theories of change and control; the nature of achievement in education.

SOC 327 : Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

SOC 328 : Sociology of Sport. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the sociological aspects of sport and their relationship to politics, economics, stratification, education, and family. Focus on concepts, theory, and related research.

SOC 329 : Medical Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Social epidemiology, the sick role, sociocultural definitions of and responses to illness, and the organization of medical-health delivery systems.

SOC 330 : Cultural Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Recent theories and research in sociological approaches to meaning, including cultural systems and institutions, everyday life, symbolism, agency, power, texts, and globalization.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

SOC 340 : Sociology of International Development. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major theoretical paradigms of development with strategies and practical application in the international setting.

SOC 345 : World Populations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Fertility, mortality, and migration patterns of world populations as they relate to current social, economic, political, and religious issues.

SOC 350 : (Soc-Psych) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.

SOC 360 : Introduction to Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Definitions of "family"; surveying the family as a context for sex, marriage, work, social reproduction, and violence in Western societies.

SOC 365 : Sociology of Aging. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Demographic and social factors related to aging: agencies, serving older citizens, and role of community in solving problems of aged.
NOTE: Required for students in gerontology minor and/or certificate programs.

SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

SOC 370 : The Sociology of Urban Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Norms, social controls, and social processes in urban areas in both historical and contemporary perspectives.

SOC 380 : Deviant Behavior and Social Control. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and research related to deviance. Specific topics include psychosis, addiction, homosexuality, violence, and rape, among others.

SOC 383 : Juvenile Delinquency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lawlessness of children and adolescents: causation, treatment, prevention, and outlook.

SOC 390R : Special Topics in Contemporary Sociology. (.5-3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

SOC 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in either a research setting or some kind of field placement with an organization.

400-Level Courses

SOC 404 : Qualitative Research Methods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 300, 307, 310, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Purposes, methods, and limitations of qualitative research. Includes participant observation and hermeneutics skills.

SOC 405 : Multiple Regression Analysis and Social Science Computing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: soc 300; 306 or Stat 221; 307.
DESCRIPTION: Data analysis and computer use in sociology; least squares and logistic regression techniques; SPSS and its use in conducting data analysis. Research report required.

SOC 406 : Intermediate Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 306.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to structural equation models, analysis of variance and covariance, and factor analysis.

SOC 408 : Survey Research and Social Measurement. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 300.
DESCRIPTION: Survey research design, measurement, and techniques in the behavioral sciences; research and sampling designs and measurement techniques.

SOC 420 : Understanding Modern Societies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative-historical theory and research on the political, economic, social, and cultural processes in the formation, social organization, and future prospects of modern societies.

SOC 421 : Complex Organizations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Complex formal organization perspectives. Bureaucracy, management, structure, and change in private and public sectors. Formation, growth, and partitioning of organizational fields. Writing intensive.

SOC 422 : Social Stratification. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distributions of money, prestige, and power as they relate to life chances, lifestyle, other social institutions, and social justice.

SOC 424 : Political Sociology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of power and decision-making, political institutions, grass root politics, stratification, and political activity, social movements and revolutions, science/religion and politics. Writing intensive.

SOC 425 : Markets and Society. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Economic sociology exploring social dynamics of market behavior from an interdisciplinary perspective; topics include social factors realted to value, price, and price volatility.

SOC 426 : Sociology of Work and Occupations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Distinction between work and occupation, changes in the nature of work and labor force, impacts of work, mobility in work life, and occupational attainment.

SOC 429 : Theory of Social Change and Modernization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Social change in contemporary society from diverse theoretical points of view.

SOC 445 : Labor Markets in Developing Countries. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual, national, and global forces reshaping labor markets and employment opportunities in developing countries.

SOC 450 : The Family and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Changing patterns of family-related behaviors, functions, and forms. Demographic, economic, and ideological forces shaping the family.

SOC 460 : Issues in Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced sociological analysis of current issues relating to the family (e.g., theory, methodology, parenting, marriage, divorce, family crises, race, gender, etc.).

SOC 470 : Sociology of Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Law as an institution; influence of law on behavior; relationship between law and institutions; role of law in social change.

SOC 481 : Crime, Justice, and Corrections. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and extent of criminal behavior; current theory and research related to causes of crime and treatment of criminals.

SOC 490R : Special Topics in Sociology. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

SOC 495R : Directed Reading in Sociology. (1-6:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized reading program supervised by faculty member. Student selects reading topic and completes systematic in-depth reading of related literature.

SOC 497R : Directed Research in Sociology. (1-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

SOC 524 : Advanced Political Sociology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Social basis of political behavior. Modern theories and research concerning use of power and decision making.

SOC 525 : Sociology of Religion. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111, 325, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Influences of social factors in the development of various religious systems.

SOC 527 : Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: An advanced analysis of the LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

SOC 528 : Sociology of Rural Communities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 311, 370, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Review and critique of major theoretical and methodological approaches to the study of community, with a focus on rural communities.

SOC 550 : (Soc-MFHD) Contemporary Family Theories. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 451, Soc 310, 311; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to basic micro, macro, and processual approaches to the study of the family; social and political theory on the family; and philosophical issues and assumptions underlying family theory, research, and practice.

SOC 561 : The Family Institution. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: The family in different societies; problems created by various family systems.

SOC 565 : The Individual and Family in Later Years. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Developmental aspects of aging, focusing on the biophysical, cognitive, social, affective, and pathological dimensions in people aged 50 and over.

SOC 590R : Special Topics in Sociology. (.5-3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

SOC 595R : Directed Readings. (.5-3:0:6)
DESCRIPTION: Individualized reading program supervised by faculty member.
NOTE: Pass/Fail only.

SOC 598R : Pro-Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Current developments in sociology including research, proposals, professional meetings, teaching, and finding a job.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Sociology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Sociology Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Bahr, Howard M
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1962
MS, University of Texas, Austin, 1964
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1965

Bahr, Stephen J.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, Washington State University, 1972

Brown, Ralph B
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1986
MS, Utah State University, 1988
PhD, University of Missouri, Columbia, 1992

Call, Vaughn R A
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
MS, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Washington State University, 1977

Chadwick, Bruce A
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Washington University, 1964
MA, Washington University, 1965
PhD, Washington University, 1967

Cornwall, Marie
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976

PhD, University of Minnesota, 1985

Forste, Renata
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Chicago, 1992

Heaton, Tim Braley
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1979

Hoffmann, John Patrick
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, James Madison University, 1984
MS, American University, 1985
PhD, State University of New York, Albany, 1991
MPh, Emory University, 1994

Jacobson, Cardell K
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1969
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1971

Associate Professors

Knapp, Stan J.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Florida State University, 1996

Ward, Carol J
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, North Texas State University, 1973
MA, North Texas State University, 1976
PhD, University of Chicago, 1992

Assistant Professors

Burraston, Bert
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

PhD, University of Oregon, 2003

Dufur, Mikaela J
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1996
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 2000

Erickson, Lance D.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MS, Brigham Young University, 2001
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 2005

Goodsell, Todd Lewis
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 2004

King, Brayden
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Arizona, 2005

Morgan, Charlie V.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MS, Brigham Young University, 2001
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 2007

Phillips, Kristie J. R.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Sociology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2000
MS, Brigham Young University, 2002
PhD, Vanderbilt University, 2005

Spanish and Portuguese

Alvin F. Sherman, Jr., Chair
3190 JFSB, (801) 422-2837

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Spanish and Portuguese are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching and translation majors.

The Discipline

The Spanish and Portuguese romance languages and literatures dominate the Iberian Peninsula, major parts of Africa, and the southern portion of the new world from Mexico to the Magellan Straits. These languages, spoken by over 450 million people in twenty-one countries, provide a wide spectrum of cultural, linguistic, and literary variety. Spanish and Portuguese represent vibrant literature that stands at the forefront of twentieth-century excellence and innovation, a linguist's paradise of dialects, rapid change, and development.

Such breadth—plus some 35 million speakers within the borders of the United States itself—gives multiple opportunities for developing skill in the spoken language, as well as in listening, reading, writing, and translation. Studying the Iberian roots of this large and important part of the population and learning about the people's perception of life also brings greater understanding of their values and their struggle for identity. A Spanish or Portuguese major makes for a demanding, intriguing, and pleasurable experience.

Career Opportunities

The field of teaching has always provided good employment opportunities for Spanish majors. In addition, opportunities for both Spanish and Portuguese have been found in government service (translation, U.S. State Department, CIA, FBI, Border Patrol, Peace Corps, NSA, USIA), business, social work, airlines, banking, etc. Many majors go on to professional schools (law, medicine, dentistry, business, etc.), where a liberal arts background is advised. For employment in fields other than teaching, a strong minor or a second major in the employment area is strongly encouraged. Teaching majors are required to complete a teaching minor.

General Information

The Department of Spanish and Portuguese strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Portuguese
BA in Spanish
BA in Spanish Teaching
BA in Spanish Translation

Minors

Portuguese
Spanish
Spanish Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Portuguese
MA in Spanish
MA in Language Acquisition (Spanish and Portuguese)

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Spanish Resource Center

164 University Parkway Center, (801) 378-8107
E-mail: sp-rescenter@email.byu.edu

The Ministry of Education and Culture of Spain, in connection with the Department of Spanish and Portuguese and the Center for the Improvement of Teacher Education and Schooling (CITES), operates the Spanish Resource Center (Centro de Recursos). The purpose of the center is to provide an ample supply of books, computer programs, and didactic materials, both printed and audiovisual, related to the teaching of Spanish language and literature. Researchers, professors, students, educational institutions, coordinators, administrators, and in general all those who may be interested in the knowledge and promotion of Spanish are welcome. To increase the prestige of the Spanish language academically as well as socially, the Spanish Resource Center

- sponsors workshops, seminars, and work groups on topics related to teaching Spanish and researching linguistics and literature;
- organizes conferences, film series, recitals, and cultural activities in general that relate to the Spanish language and culture; and
- promotes and participates in all initiatives that are deemed appropriate and that favor acquisition and use of the Spanish language by students at different educational levels.

Foreign Language Student Residence

The Foreign Language Student Residence provides live-in opportunities for students in Spanish and Portuguese. A twenty-four-hour-a-day Spanish or Portuguese rule assures participants intensive use of the language, under the direction of native speakers. See the department secretary at 3190 JFSB for information.

Language Skills Development

A program to improve and monitor all language skills at each level of course work has been developed by the department, and a final oral proficiency examination is required of all graduating seniors. Writing skills in Spanish or Portuguese courses will advance from writing exercises and short messages in 100-level courses to original short themes in 200-level classes. Papers in the language at the 300-level and more extensive research and vocabulary and full control of structures at the 400-level will complete the program.

Minor, Double Major, or Approved Supporting Course Work Required for Spanish or Portuguese Majors

All Spanish and Portuguese majors are required to complete either a minor (from any department in the university), 15 hours of approved supporting course work, or a double major.

Nonteaching majors who do not wish to complete a formal minor may substitute at least 15 hours of courses from among the following related fields: a second modern foreign language (upper-division courses only), Latin, Greek, English (beyond the GE requirement), linguistics, classical civilization, Latin American history or geography, Spanish/Portuguese history or geography, humanities, archaeology of Spain/Portugal or Latin America, comparative literature, or other areas approved by the department chair.

Nonteaching and nontranslation majors also may meet their minor requirement by completing 15 additional hours consisting of elective Spanish/Portuguese courses or (strongly recommended) a combination of Spanish/Portuguese electives and interdisciplinary work. In all cases these courses must form a coherent program and *must be preapproved* by the department chair.

A double major is an acceptable alternative to a minor.

Foreign Residency

The department strongly recommends that all majors participate in an extended (at least two continuous months) and intensive language and culture experience in a Spanish- or Portuguese-speaking country or area.

A student should complete this requirement by:

1. Residency abroad (may include a Spanish or Portuguese LDS mission, attendance at a foreign university, an advanced exchange program, or similar intensive foreign residence).
2. Participating in BYU Study Abroad Programs in Spain, Portugal, or Latin America.
3. Participating in individual or group-arranged internship programs abroad as approved by the department.

Students unable to participate in one of these programs must spend at least one year (two semesters) in the Foreign Language Student Residence, pledging to use only Spanish or Portuguese within the residence. Prerequisite to this experience is Span 205 or Port 201 or its equivalent; any exceptions must be approved by the department. For further information contact the department secretary or the Foreign Language Student Residence Office, 3086 JFSB, (801) 422-3765.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

School of Accountancy Faculty

Professors

Albrecht, W. Steve

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MBA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1973
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1975

Cottrell, David M.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MHA, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, Ohio State University, 1992

Gardner, Robert L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MBA, University of Utah, 1975
BS, University of Utah, 1976
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1979

Glover, Steven M.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Brigham Young Universityâ€'Idaho, 1983
BA, University of Washington, 1987
PhD, University of Washington, 1994

Nemrow, Norman R.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1979

Prawitt, Douglas F.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Arizona, 1993

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Portuguese (48–69 hours minimum*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 15 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
3. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).

   Note: Latin American Studies or Spanish Studies minors: Port 321, 339, 345 or 355, and 441 or 451 meet requirements for both the Portuguese major and the area studies minor. Only one of these courses may be double-counted (applied to both the major and the minor). Students wishing to complete a Portuguese major and one of these area studies minors must take an additional 6–9 hours chosen from the approved electives for either major or minor. Consult the department and the advisement center for clarification of the choices available to you.

4. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   PORT 101 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
   NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

   PORT 102 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
   NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

   PORT 201 : Third-Semester Portuguese. (4:5:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
   DESCRIPTION: Second-year grammar, reading, writing, and conversation.
   NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

   PORT 211R : First-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or equivalent.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Port 201.

   And complete one course from the following:

   PORT 202 : Fourth-Semester Portuguese: Reading and Comprehension. (4:5.0:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Port 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Fourth-semester class introducing grammar and culture through study of literature.
   NOTE: Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement. Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

   PORT 315 : Intermediate Portuguese Grammar, Reading, and Culture. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction of culture, literature, and grammatical concerns through reading short stories, novels, and drama in Portuguese.
   NOTE: First class for returned Portuguese-speaking missionaries. Fulfills GE Foreign Language requirement. Will count for minor but not for major. Native speakers should take Port 321.

Note 1: Students with foreign residence experience should take Port 315.

Note 2: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

5. Complete the following:

PORT 321 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 322 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

PORT 441 : Survey of Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Portugal.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

6. Complete one course from the following:

PORT 345 : Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

7. Complete 12 hours from the following:

PORT 326 : Portuguese Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Underlying concepts of Portuguese speech production and applications to pronunciation.

PORT 329 : Survey of Luso-Brazilian Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Portuguese: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Portuguese language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

PORT 345 : Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

PORT 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Portuguese or Brazilian culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

PORT 439R : Luso-Brazilian Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

PORT 442 : Cameos. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441 or equivalent.

PORT 449R : Special Topics in Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Portuguese literature.

PORT 452 : Machado de Assis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 451 or equivalent.

PORT 453 : Twentieth-Century Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.

PORT 459R : Special Topics in Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Brazilian) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Brazilian literature.

PORT 461R : African Literature in Portuguese. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern authors from the five African nations whose official language is Portuguese: Angola, Cabo Verde, Guine Bissau, Mozambique, and the two-island republic Sao Tome and Pricipe. Authors include Jose Craveirinha, Mia Couto, Noemia de Sousa, Jose Tenreiro, Castro Soromenho, Luandino Vieira, Pepetala, and Baltasar Lopes, among others.

PORT 462R : Literature of the Lusophone World. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Authors from the eight nations whose official language is Portuguese, plus former colonies and present regions of important Portuguese influence. These include Luso-American and Azorean writers, as well as authors from East Timor (formerly Indonesia), Goa (India), and Macau (China).

PORT 480R : Directed Research in Portuguese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Port 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

PORT 490 : Senior Seminar in Portuguese. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Portuguese.

PORT 520 : Advanced Portuguese Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Applying contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Portuguese grammar.

PORT 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of evolution of Latin into modern romance languages.

PORT 522 : History of the Portuguese Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of Portuguese.

PORT 529R : Special Topics in Portuguese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321.
DESCRIPTION: Topics from semantics to dialectology to sociolinguistics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Portuguese (Port) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Portuguese (18–25 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

PORT 101 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 102 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 201 : Third-Semester Portuguese. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
DESCRIPTION: Second-year grammar, reading, writing, and conversation.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 211R : First-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Port 201.

And complete one course from the following:

PORT 202 : Fourth-Semester Portuguese: Reading and Comprehension. (4:5.0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-semester class introducing grammar and culture through study of literature.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement. Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 315 : Intermediate Portuguese Grammar, Reading, and Culture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of culture, literature, and grammatical concerns through reading short stories, novels, and drama in Portuguese.
NOTE: First class for returned Portuguese-speaking missionaries. Fulfills GE Foreign Language requirement. Will count for minor but not for major. Native speakers should take Port 321.

Note 1: Students with foreign residence experience should take Port 315.

Note 2: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

2. Complete the following:

PORT 321 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

3. Complete one course from the following:

PORT 345 : Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

The

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

4. Complete one course from the following:
PORT 441 : Survey of Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Portugal.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

5. Complete 6 additional upper-division hours from the courses outlined for the major. Port 315 credit may be applied to the Portuguese minor but is not required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Portuguese (Port) Courses

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Portuguese (Port)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

PORT 101 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 102 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

PORT 201 : Third-Semester Portuguese. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
DESCRIPTION: Second-year grammar, reading, writing, and conversation.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 202 : Fourth-Semester Portuguese: Reading and Comprehension. (4:5.0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-semester class introducing grammar and culture through study of literature.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement. Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 211R : First-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Port 201.

PORT 212 : Second-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Port 211 or equivalent.

300-Level Courses

PORT 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Port 211 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Tools course to help students improve oral proficiency
NOTE: Will not count for major or minor.

PORT 315 : Intermediate Portuguese Grammar, Reading, and Culture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of culture, literature, and grammatical concerns through reading short stories, novels, and drama in Portuguese.
NOTE: First class for returned Portuguese-speaking missionaries. Fulfills GE Foreign Language requirement. Will count for minor but not for major. Native speakers should take Port 321.

PORT 321 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 322 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 326 : Portuguese Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Underlying concepts of Portuguese speech production and applications to pronunciation.

PORT 329 : Survey of Luso-Brazilian Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Portuguese: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Portuguese language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

PORT 345 : Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

PORT 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Portuguese or Brazilian culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

PORT 399R : Academic Internship: Portuguese Language Field Experience. (.5-6:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

400-Level Courses

PORT 439R : Luso-Brazilian Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

PORT 441 : Survey of Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Portugal.

PORT 442 : Cameos. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441 or equivalent.

PORT 449R : Special Topics in Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Portuguese literature.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

PORT 452 : Machado de Assis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 451 or equivalent.

PORT 453 : Twentieth-Century Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.

PORT 459R : Special Topics in Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Brazilian) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Brazilian literature.

PORT 461R : African Literature in Portuguese. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern authors from the five African nations whose official language is Portuguese: Angola, Cabo Verde, Guine Bissau, Mozambique, and the two-island republic Sao Tome and Pricipe. Authors include Jose Craveirinha, Mia Couto, Noemia de Sousa, Jose Tenreiro, Castro Soromenho, Luandino Vieira, Pepetala, and Baltasar Lopes, among others.

PORT 462R : Literature of the Lusophone World. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Authors from the eight nations whose official language is Portuguese, plus former colonies and present regions of important Portuguese influence. These include Luso-American and Azorean writers, as well as authors from East Timor (formerly Indonesia), Goa (India), and Macau (China).

PORT 480R : Directed Research in Portuguese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Port 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

PORT 490 : Senior Seminar in Portuguese. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Portuguese.

PORT 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors.
NOTE: No major or minor credit.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

PORT 520 : Advanced Portuguese Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Applying contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Portuguese grammar.

PORT 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of evolution of Latin into modern romance languages.

PORT 522 : History of the Portuguese Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of Portuguese.

PORT 529R : Special Topics in Portuguese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321.
DESCRIPTION: Topics from semantics to dialectology to sociolinguistics.

PORT 599R : Academic Internship: Portuguese Internship. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 and instructor's consent.
NOTE: For supervised internship credit on BYU Study Abroad programs only.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Spanish and Portuguese Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Spanish (51–85 hours minimum*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Meet the foreign language residency requirement.
3. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).

   Note: Latin American Studies or Spanish Studies minors: Span 321, 339, 345 or 355, and 441 or 451 meet requirements for both the Spanish major and the area studies minor. Only one of these courses may be double-counted (applied to both the major and the minor). Students wishing to complete a Spanish major and one of these area studies minors must take an additional 6–9 hours chosen from the approved electives for either major or minor. Consult the department and the advisement center for clarification of the choices available to you.

4. Complete the following prerequisite courses (28 hours):

   SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
   NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

   SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

   SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
   DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

   SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

   SPAN 111R : Spanish Conversation 1. (2:2.5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Two years of high school Spanish, or Span 101/102, or equivalent.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Development of conversation skills in Spanish.

   SPAN 112R : Spanish Conversation 2. (2:2.5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Three years of high school Spanish, or Span 105, or equivalent.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 106.

DESCRIPTION: Continued development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

Note 1: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 321.

Note 2: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

5. Complete the following (18 hours):

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 329 : Survey of Hispanic Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Spanish: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Spanish language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

6. Complete one course from the following (3 hours):

SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

7. Complete 15 hours from the following:

Radebaugh, Lee H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MBA, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1972
DBA, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1973

Randall, Boyd C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1965
JD, University of Utah, 1967
MBA, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1972

Spilker, Brian C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1993

Stewart, Dave N.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of Florida, 1980

Stice, Earl K.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Cornell University, 1986
PhD, Cornell University, 1988

Stice, James D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Washington, 1988

Complete at least one linguistics course from the following:

SPAN 326 : Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish sound system; underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

SPAN 421 : Fourth-Year Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-year study of Spanish grammar and usage.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 425 : Contrastive Analysis of the Structures of Spanish and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive analysis of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Spanish and English.

SPAN 429R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 326 or 329.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies yearly; focuses on specific area of linguistics such as dialectology or sociolinguistics.

: Bilingualism.
: Dialectology.
: Language Planning.
: Semantics.
: Sociolinguistics.
: Syntax.

SPAN 520 : Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

SPAN 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of the evolution of Latin into modern Romance languages.

SPAN 522 : History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

SPAN 529R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 520, 522.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

Complete at least one literature course from the following:

SPAN 440 : Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mio Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

SPAN 443R : Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

SPAN 444 : *Don Quijote*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha*.

SPAN 446R : Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Perez Galdos and his contemporaries.

SPAN 448R : Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898,

Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

SPAN 449R : Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

Complete three additional courses (9 hours) from the linguistics or literature electives above or from the following (Span 345 and 355 will not double-count):

SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 430R : Special Topics in Hispanic Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and thematic approaches to Hispanic culture. Subject matter will vary.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 439R : Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: director's consent
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

SPAN 477 : Techniques of Spanish Instruction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322, 326, 339; 345 or 355.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques for teaching the four language skills and grammar, vocabulary, and culture; use of technology; assessing language achievement.
NOTE: For students not enrolled in Spanish teaching major or minor.

SPAN 480R : Directed Research in Spanish. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Span 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

SPAN 490 : Senior Seminar in Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Spanish.

8. Complete the following:
SPAN 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors.
NOTE: No major or minor credit.

Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of *advanced-low* or higher.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Spanish (Span) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Spanish Teaching (75–108 hours minimum*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
3. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–21 hours).
4. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 111R : Spanish Conversation 1. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Two years of high school Spanish, or Span 101/102, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 112R : Spanish Conversation 2. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Three years of high school Spanish, or Span 105, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 106.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

Note 1: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 321.

Note 2: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

5. Complete the following:

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 326 : Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish sound system; underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

SPAN 377 : Spanish Teaching Methods 1. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 326; 345 or 355; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for Spanish teaching majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: History of language teaching methods; standards-based unit and lesson planning; strategies for teaching speaking, listening, reading, writing, grammar, and vocabulary.

SPAN 378 : Spanish Teaching Methods 2. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 377.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for teaching culture; use of instructional media and technology; assessment of learner performance; foreign language program models; planning for continuing professional development.

SPAN 380 : Practicum in Teaching Spanish. (1:0:3)
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R:: Span 377: concurrent enrollment in Span 378: Spanish teaching major status.

DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in Spanish; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

Note 1: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrolling in Span 380.

Note 2: Span 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching.

6. Complete 6 hours from the following courses:
SPAN 329 : Survey of Hispanic Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Spanish: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Spanish language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 421 : Fourth-Year Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-year study of Spanish grammar and usage.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 425 : Contrastive Analysis of the Structures of Spanish and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive analysis of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Spanish and English.

SPAN 429R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 326 or 329.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies yearly; focuses on specific area of linguistics such as dialectology or sociolinguistics.

: Bilingualism.
: Dialectology.
: Language Planning.
: Semantics.
: Sociolinguistics.
: Syntax.

SPAN 430R : Special Topics in Hispanic Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and thematic approaches to Hispanic culture. Subject matter will vary.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and

Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 439R : Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: director's consent
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

SPAN 440 : Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mio Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

SPAN 443R : Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

SPAN 444 : *Don Quijote*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha*.

SPAN 446R : Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Perez Galdos and his contemporaries.

SPAN 448R : Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898, Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

SPAN 449R : Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

SPAN 480R : Directed Research in Spanish. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Span 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

SPAN 490 : Senior Seminar in Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Spanish.

SPAN 520 : Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

SPAN 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of the evolution of Latin into modern Romance languages.

SPAN 522 : History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

SPAN 529R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 520, 522.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

7. Complete the following:
SPAN 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors.
NOTE: No major or minor credit.

Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of *advanced-low* or higher.

8. Complete the Professional Education Component:
a. Complete the following:
CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

(3 hours required)
SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.

DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Spanish (Span) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Spanish Translation (51–85 hours minimum*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
3. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).
4. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 111R : Spanish Conversation 1. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Two years of high school Spanish, or Span 101/102, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 112R : Spanish Conversation 2. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Three years of high school Spanish, or Span 105, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 106.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of conversation skills in Spanish.

Stocks, Kevin D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Oklahoma State University, 1981

Swain, Monte R.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Michigan State University, 1991

Associate Professors

Barrick, John

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 1998

Black, Ervin L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Washington, 1995

Burton, F. Greg

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1984
MAcc, Utah State University, 1987
PhD, University of South Carolina, Columbia, 1994

Christensen, Theodore (Ted) E.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, San Jose State University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Georgia, 1995

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

Note 1: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 321.

Note 2: These prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

Note 3: Students wishing to major in Spanish translation and interpretation must apply for admission to the program and pass an entrance exam in Spanish and English. Contact the department secretary the first week of February each year to obtain the official date and place of exam.

Note 4: Latin American Studies or Spanish Studies minors: Span 321, 339, 345 or 355, and 441 or 451 meet requirements for both the Spanish translation major and the area studies minor. Only one of these courses may be double-counted (applied to both the major and the minor). Students wishing to complete a Spanish major and one of these area studies minors must take an additional 6-9 hours chosen from the approved electives for either major or minor. Consult the department and the advisement center for clarification of the choices available.

5. Complete the following:

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 425 : Contrastive Analysis of the Structures of Spanish and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive analysis of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Spanish and English.

or

SPAN 421 : Fourth-Year Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-year study of Spanish grammar and usage.

SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.

DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

Note: Span 321 and 322 must be completed with a grade of B or better.

6. Complete one course from the following:
   SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

   SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

7. Complete the following courses in sequence:
   SPAN 415A : Beginning Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: F 1st block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322, with a B grade or better.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation dealing specifically in English to Spanish.

   SPAN 415B : Beginning Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: F 2d block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 415A.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation, dealing specifically in Spanish to English.

   SPAN 416A : Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: W 1st block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 415B.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from English to Spanish. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

   SPAN 416B : Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: W 2d block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 416A.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from Spanish to English. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

   SPAN 417A : Advanced Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: F 1st block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 416R.
   DESCRIPTION: Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From English to Spanish.

   SPAN 417B : Advanced Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
   OFFERED: F 2d block
   PREREQUISITE: Span 417A.
   DESCRIPTION: Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From Spanish to English.

   SPAN 418 : Translation and Interpretation Project. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: 417A,B.
   DESCRIPTION: Individual translation and/or interpretation projects.

Note: Span 322, 425, and either Span 345 or 355 must be taken before Span 415A.

8. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   SPAN 326 : Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalents.
   DESCRIPTION: Spanish sound system; underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

   SPAN 329 : Survey of Hispanic Linguistics. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Spanish: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Spanish language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

   SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 421 : Fourth-Year Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-year study of Spanish grammar and usage.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 429R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 326 or 329.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies yearly; focuses on specific area of linguistics such as dialectology or sociolinguistics.

: Bilingualism.
: Dialectology.
: Language Planning.
: Semantics.
: Sociolinguistics.
: Syntax.

SPAN 430R : Special Topics in Hispanic Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and thematic approaches to Hispanic culture. Subject matter will vary.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 439R : Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: director's consent
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

SPAN 440 : Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mio Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

SPAN 443R : Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

SPAN 444 : *Don Quijote*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha*.

SPAN 446R : Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Perez Galdos and his contemporaries.

SPAN 448R : Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898, Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

SPAN 449R : Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

SPAN 477 : Techniques of Spanish Instruction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322, 326, 339; 345 or 355.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques for teaching the four language skills and grammar, vocabulary, and culture; use of technology; assessing language achievement.
NOTE: For students not enrolled in Spanish teaching major or minor.

SPAN 480R : Directed Research in Spanish. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Span 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

SPAN 490 : Senior Seminar in Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Spanish.

SPAN 520 : Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

SPAN 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of the evolution of Latin into modern Romance languages.

SPAN 522 : History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

SPAN 529R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 520, 522.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

9. Complete the following:
SPAN 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors.
NOTE: No major or minor credit.

Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of *advanced-low* or higher.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Spanish (Span) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Spanish (18–42 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
- NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
- DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
- DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
- NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
- DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

2. Complete the following:

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
- NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of

Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

3. Complete one course from the following:
SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

4. Complete one course from the following:
SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

5. Complete 3 hours from upper-division courses outlined for the major.

Show all Spanish (Span) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Spanish Teaching (21–37 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
- NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
- DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
- DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
- NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
- DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

2. Complete the following:

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
- NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of

Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 326 : Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish sound system; underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 377 : Spanish Teaching Methods 1. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 326; 345 or 355; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for Spanish teaching majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: History of language teaching methods; standards-based unit and lesson planning; strategies for teaching speaking, listening, reading, writing, grammar, and vocabulary.

SPAN 378 : Spanish Teaching Methods 2. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 377.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for teaching culture; use of instructional media and technology; assessment of learner performance; foreign language program models; planning for continuing professional development.

Note 2: Span 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching. Span 377 will be waived for students majoring in another language who have had the course in that language. Students who waive the class will need to take 3 additional elective hours from the 300-, 400-, or 500-level courses in Spanish.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

   SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
   DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
   DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

5. Complete the following:
   SPAN 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors.
   NOTE: No major or minor credit.

Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of *advanced-low* or higher.

Show all Spanish (Span) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Spanish (Span)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 111R : Spanish Conversation 1. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Two years of high school Spanish, or Span 101/102, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 112R : Spanish Conversation 2. (2:2.5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Three years of high school Spanish, or Span 105, or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 106.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

SPAN 211R : First-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 106 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of conversation skills in Spanish.

SPAN 212R : Second-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 211R or equivalent.

Dalebout, Richard S.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
JD, University of Utah, 1971

Hobson, L. Scott

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1983

Summers, Scott L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1995

Wilks, Jeff

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MS, Cornell University, 1999
PhD, Cornell University, 2000

Worsham, Ronald Gene

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, University of Florida, 1994

Zimbelman, Mark F.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Arizona, 1996

Assistant Professors

Budd, Cassy

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Utah State University, 2002

300-Level Courses

SPAN 311R : Spanish Oral Proficiency Preparation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Span 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Tools course to help students meet oral proficiency requirements for major and minor.
NOTE: Will not count for major or minor.

SPAN 312R : Spanish Oral Proficiency Preparation. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 311 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Tools to help students meet oral proficiency requirements for major and minor.
NOTE: Will not count for major or minor.

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 322 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: Some sections have readings and writing assignments focusing on the professions. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 326 : Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish sound system; underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

SPAN 329 : Survey of Hispanic Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to linguistics of Spanish: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Spanish language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 377 : Spanish Teaching Methods 1. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 326; 345 or 355; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for Spanish teaching majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: History of language teaching methods; standards-based unit and lesson planning; strategies for teaching speaking, listening, reading, writing, grammar, and vocabulary.

SPAN 378 : Spanish Teaching Methods 2. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Span 377.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for teaching culture; use of instructional media and technology; assessment of learner performance; foreign language program models; planning for continuing professional development.

SPAN 380 : Practicum in Teaching Spanish. (1:0:3)
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R;; Span 377; concurrent enrollment in Span 378; Spanish teaching major status.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in Spanish; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 399R : Academic Internship: Spanish Language Field Experience. (.5-6:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

400-Level Courses

SPAN 415A : Beginning Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)

OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322, with a B grade or better.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation dealing specifically in English to Spanish.

SPAN 415B : Beginning Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2d block
PREREQUISITE: Span 415A.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation, dealing specifically in Spanish to English.

SPAN 416A : Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)
OFFERED: W 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Span 415B.
DESCRIPTION: Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from English to Spanish. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

SPAN 416B : Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
OFFERED: W 2d block
PREREQUISITE: Span 416A.
DESCRIPTION: Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from Spanish to English. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

SPAN 417A : Advanced Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Span 416R.
DESCRIPTION: Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From English to Spanish.

SPAN 417B : Advanced Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2d block
PREREQUISITE: Span 417A.
DESCRIPTION: Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From Spanish to English.

SPAN 418 : Translation and Interpretation Project. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: 417A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Individual translation and/or interpretation projects.

SPAN 421 : Fourth-Year Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-year study of Spanish grammar and usage.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 425 : Contrastive Analysis of the Structures of Spanish and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive analysis of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Spanish and English.

SPAN 429R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 326 or 329.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies yearly; focuses on specific area of linguistics such as dialectology or sociolinguistics.

: Bilingualism.
: Dialectology.
: Language Planning.
: Semantics.
: Sociolinguistics.
: Syntax.

SPAN 430R : Special Topics in Hispanic Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and thematic approaches to Hispanic culture. Subject matter will vary.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 439R : Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: director's consent
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

SPAN 440 : Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mio Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 443R : Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

SPAN 444 : *Don Quijote.* (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha.*

SPAN 446R : Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Perez Galdos and his contemporaries.

SPAN 448R : Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898, Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

SPAN 449R : Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

SPAN 477 : Techniques of Spanish Instruction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321, 322, 326, 339; 345 or 355.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques for teaching the four language skills and grammar, vocabulary, and culture; use of technology; assessing language achievement.
NOTE: For students not enrolled in Spanish teaching major or minor.

SPAN 480R : Directed Research in Spanish. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Written proposal subject to department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required.
NOTE: Total Span 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

SPAN 490 : Senior Seminar in Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis.
NOTE: Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Spanish.

SPAN 491 : Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors.
NOTE: No major or minor credit.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

SPAN 520 : Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

SPAN 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of the evolution of Latin into modern Romance languages.

SPAN 522 : History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

SPAN 529R : Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 520, 522.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

SPAN 577 : Spanish Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: For public school teachers.
DESCRIPTION: Mastery of skills specific to foreign language instruction. Lectures, demonstrations, practical experience.

SPAN 599R : Academic Internship: Spanish Internship. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 and instructor's consent.
NOTE: For supervised internship credit on BYU Study Abroad programs only.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu,
Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 -
Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Spanish and Portuguese Department Home

Spanish and Portuguese Faculty

Professors

Alba, Orlando

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, CatÃ³lica Madre y Maestra, 1972
MA, University of Puerto Rico, 1978
PhD, Univ. Nacional de EducaciÃ³n a Distancia, Madrid, Spain, 1988

Cluff, Russell M

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1978

Larson, Jerry W

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1977

Lund, Christopher C

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
MA, University of Texas, Austin, 1970
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1974

Lyon, Thomas Edgar

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1963
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1967

Quackenbush, Louis Howard

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1970

Rosenberg, John R

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Cornell University, 1985

Sherman, Jr., Alvin Franklin

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Virginia, 1990

Williams, Frederick Granger

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1967
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1971

Williams, Geoffrey Lynn

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of London, 1973
BA, University of London, 1975
PhD, University of London, 1978

Associate Professors

Fails, Willis Clark

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1984

Garcia, Mara Lucy

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of Kentucky, Lexington, 1997

Hegstrom, Valerie

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MA, University of Kansas, 1988
PhD, University of Kansas, 1992

Laraway, David Phillip

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Cornell University, 1997
PhD, Cornell University, 1998

Meredith, Robert Alan

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1976

Pratt, Dale Joseph

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Cornell University, 1994

Smead, Robert N

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1988

Turley, Jeffrey Scott

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1992

Weatherford, Douglas J

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1997

Assistant Professors

Alvord, Scott M

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State University, 1998
MA, University of Minnesota, 2003
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2006

Bateman, Blair Earl

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2002

Fitzgibbon, Vanessa Clare

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2006

Hague, Daryl Robert

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
JD, University of Washington, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, State University of New York, Binghamton, 2002

Martinsen, Rob

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 2007

Preto-Bay, Ana Maria

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Universidade ClÃ¡ssica de Lisboa, Portugal, 1985
MA, University of Utah, 1987
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2002

Stallings, Gregory C

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 1999

Associate Teaching Professors

Hoskisson, Joaquina V

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974

Labrum, Marian Babirecki

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975
DML, Middlebury College, 1988

Assistant Teaching Professor

Knapp, Nieves Perez

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Spanish and Portuguese
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Oviedo, Spain, 1986
BA, University of Oviedo, Spain, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Oviedo, Spain, 2003

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Statistics

Del T. Scott, Chair
230 TMCB, (801) 422-4505

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Statistics are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Statisticians help determine the sampling and data collection methods, monitor the execution of the study and the processing of data, and advise on the strengths and limitations of the results. They must understand the nature of uncertainties and be able to draw conclusions in the context of particular statistical applications.

An actuary is a business professional who analyzes the financial consequences of risk. Actuaries use statistics, mathematics, and financial theory to study uncertain future events, especially those of concern to insurance and pension programs. They evaluate the likelihood of those events, design creative ways to reduce the likelihood and decrease the impact of adverse events that actually do occur. Their work requires a combination of strong analytical skills, business knowledge and understanding of human behavior to design and manage programs that control risk.

Career Opportunities

The curriculum and degrees offered through the Department of Statistics are designed to equip students with decision-making skills for careers as professional statisticians in industrial organizations, government agencies, insurance companies, pharmaceutical companies, universities, and research institutes. The technical tools statisticians acquire are useful in many areas, and for this reason a statistics degree is also excellent preparation for professional programs in business administration, medicine, law, and public administration.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Actuarial Science
BS in Statistics
Emphases:
Statistical Science
Biostatistics
Applied Statistics and Analytics
Quality Science

BS-MS in an Integrated Master's Program

Minors

Actuarial Science
Statistics

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Statistics

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Charles, Shannon

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Western Oregon State College, 1989
MBA, Oregon State University, 1995
PhD, Oklahoma State University, 2000

Heninger, William G.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MAcc, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Georgia, 1997

Johnson, Peter M.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Southern Utah University, 1991
MS, Southern Utah University, 1992
PhD, Arizona State University, 2003

Paik, Gyung H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: School of Accountancy
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Seoul National University, Korea, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MBA, University of Utah, 1995
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 2001

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   3 units of English.
   1 unit of physical science, either chemistry or physics.
   4 units of mathematics, consisting of 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and 0.5 unit of trigonometry. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 112, analytic geometry and calculus.
   Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, particular attention is paid to high school preparation in this subject.

   To decide which mathematics course should be taken first, write to the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB, and request a mathematics placement test.

2. Students are encouraged to complete 15 credit hours each semester. Taking fewer credits substantially increases the cost and the number of semesters to graduate.

3. An integrated BS/MS program is available. This program allows Statistics students in the Statistical Science and Biostatistics emphases to receive their bachelor's and master's degree in five years of schooling. It is available to students who have completed Stat 336 and GE requirements. Interested students must complete a department application by February 1 for admission Fall semester.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Actuarial Science (57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparation core courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one course from the following:

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   - NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   - DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

   STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
   - DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

   Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

4. Complete the following statistics core courses:

   STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

5. Complete the following:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

STAT 470 : Statistical Theory for Actuaries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory; discrete, continuous, mixture random variables; loss distributions; moment-generating functions; conditional probability, expectation; total probability; stochastic independence; transformations. Prepares for Exam P.

STAT 474 : Life Contingencies 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 470 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of interest, annuities, amortization, life tables, life annuities. Prepares for Exam FM.

STAT 475 : Life Contingencies 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 474.
DESCRIPTION: Contingent annuities, joint annuities, insurance, calculating premiums and reserves. Prepares for Exam M.

6. Complete 18 credit hours from the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ACC 210 : Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting.

NOTE: For Marriott School of Management students only.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

ECON 382 : Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

ECON 450 : Financial Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of financial economics, emphasizing capital markets, investment decisions, choice, capital asset pricing model, futures and options markets, efficient markets, and capital structures.

ECON 588 : Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of formulating, estimating, and analyzing economic models.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

STAT 431 : Experimental Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511.
DESCRIPTION: Basic designs, power and sample size, Latin squares, incomplete blocks, change-over designs, factorials, fractional factorials, confounding, split-plots, response surface designs.

STAT 434 : Advanced Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 334; 421 or 441 or 470 or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation in systematic, simple random, stratified, cluster, and PPS sampling and mixtures of these; ratio estimation, sample size determination and principles of sample allocation.

STAT 435 : Nonparametric Statistical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Permutation tests, rank-based methods, analysis of contingency tables, bootstrap methods, curve fitting.

STAT 442 : Statistical Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441.
DESCRIPTION: Sufficiency and completeness; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Cramer-Rao inequality; some asymptotic results; Bayesian methods.

STAT 462 : Quality Control and Industrial Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 336.
RECOMMENDED: Stat 337.
DESCRIPTION: Six sigma; tools with which to define, measure, analyze, improve, control. Advanced concepts in control charts, applying experimental design for process and product improvement.

STAT 466 : Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 361; 321 or 421 or 441.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

STAT 469 : Applied Time Series and Forecasting. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Data mining, univariate ARIMA time series theory and application, seasonal models, spatial correlation models, conditional heteroscedastic models in financial time series, case studies.

STAT 496R : Academic Internship: Statistics. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience or internships for undergraduates. Report is required.

STAT 497R : Introduction to Statistical Research. (.5-3:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Review of current literature and survey of present status of significant statistical research; collaborative work between student and faculty.

STAT 545 : Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or 470 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Conditional expectation and probabilities; Markov chains; solutions using time-reversible chains; modeling using hidden Markov chains; exponential waiting times; Poisson processes; Brownian motion with approximations.

STAT 566 : Exploratory Multivariate Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 512 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploratory data analysis; multivariate visualization; dynamic graphics; inference for mean vectors; multivariate regression; principal component analysis; cluster analysis; classification analysis; multi-dimensional scaling; correspondence analysis; bi-plots.

Recommended Courses

It is recommended that students take Acc 200, Bus M 300, Econ 380, 381, and either Stat 469, Econ 388, or Econ 588.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Statistics: Applied Statistics and Analytics Emphasis (52 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparation core courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one course from the following:

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   - NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   - DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

   STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
   - DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

   Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

4. Complete the following statistics core courses:

   STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

5. Complete the following:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

6. Complete one course from the following:

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

7. Complete 18 credit hours from statistics courses numbered 333 or higher (excluding 472, 510, 532).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Statistics: Biostatistics Emphasis (59–63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparation core courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one course from the following:

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   - NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   - DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

   STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
   - DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

   Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

4. Complete the following statistics core courses:

   STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)

Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)

Colonel Gordon J. Jacobs, Chair
380 ROTC, (801) 422-2671

Admission to Degree Program

Students must be accepted by the department into the program.

The Discipline

The Air Force Reserve Officer Training Corps (AFROTC) is an educational program designed to provide students the opportunity to become Air Force officers while completing requirements for an undergraduate or graduate degree. Four-year and three-year programs are available for both men and women.

Career Opportunities

Officer in the United States Air Force.

General Information

Textbooks, Uniforms, and Allowance. All textbooks, uniforms, and uniform accessories are furnished by the Air Force, in addition to the tax-free allowance of $450 to $500 per month furnished to those in the Professional Officer Course (POC) program.

Air Force ROTC Scholarship Program. Full tuition assistance is available to students in the three-year or four-year program based on merit. By law, scholarship recipients must be under age thirty-one as of December 31 of the calendar year during which commissioning is scheduled. The scholarship includes tuition, fees, textbook allowance, and $300 per month for freshmen, $350 per month for sophomores, $400 per month for juniors, and $500 per month for seniors. Contact the department for application procedures.

Foreign Language Express Scholarships. In order to meet critical Air Force officer accession goals, the Air Force is now offering Foreign Language Express Scholarships. The program is currently open to students who will graduate before August 2011 who are majoring in or have an emphasis in one of twenty-three critically needed languages. Please contact the department for more details.

Field Training. All cadets wishing to enter the Professional Office Corps (last two years) must attend a field training camp during the summer prior to their junior year. This training gives an increased understanding of the Air Force mission and operation. Students receive practical experience in leadership and management while residing on an Air Force base. At field training students receive career orientation, junior officer training, aircraft and aircrew indoctrination, survival skills, physical training, and weapons experience and learn about the function of an Air Force base.

Medical care, housing, food, and uniforms, as well as transportation to and from the training base, are provided. Approximately $500 in pay is received for four-week training and $625 for six-week training.

Extracurricular Activities. Each Air Force ROTC student will be able to participate in a variety of extracurricular activities, including the Arnold Air Society, the color guard, and the honor guard. Selected cadets may also participate in summer programs such as the career-field shadow program or airborne training (parachute jump school).

LDS Missions. Students who desire to serve a Church mission should do so between their freshman and sophomore years. This will facilitate entrance into the advanced course. Scholarship students may have their scholarship held while they fulfill a mission as long as they do so before entering the advanced program.

Fifth-Year Cadets. Four-year program students in Air Force ROTC who are in a five-year university program are allowed a year of completed status after their senior AFROTC courses. Out-of-phase students and those who will be student teaching should consult with the department chair.

Discipline. Disciplinary training in the cadet corps is formulated and administered by the student officers. Air Force ROTC students are civilians and are not subject to military law.

Veterans. A veteran seeking a commission through Air Force ROTC may have part or all of the freshman and sophomore program waived. Allowances are paid in addition to G.I. Bill benefits.

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

5. Complete the following:

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

STAT 441 : Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

STAT 442 : Statistical Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441.
DESCRIPTION: Sufficiency and completeness; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Cramer-Rao inequality; some asymptotic results; Bayesian methods.

6. Complete a minor offered by the College of Life Sciences, or equivalent departmentally approved course work (approximately 14-18 hours).

7. Complete 12 credit hours from the following:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

HLTH 345 : Principles of Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation and control of epidemics.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

STAT 431 : Experimental Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511.
DESCRIPTION: Basic designs, power and sample size, Latin squares, incomplete blocks, change-over designs, factorials, fractional factorials, confounding, split-plots, response surface designs.

STAT 434 : Advanced Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 334; 421 or 441 or 470 or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation in systematic, simple random, stratified, cluster, and PPS sampling and mixtures of these; ratio estimation, sample size determination and principles of sample allocation.

STAT 435 : Nonparametric Statistical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Permutation tests, rank-based methods, analysis of contingency tables, bootstrap methods, curve fitting.

STAT 466 : Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 361; 321 or 421 or 441.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

STAT 469 : Applied Time Series and Forecasting. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Data mining, univariate ARIMA time series theory and application, seasonal models, spatial correlation models, conditional heteroscedastic models in financial time series, case studies.

STAT 496R : Academic Internship: Statistics. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience or internships for undergraduates. Report is required.

STAT 497R : Introduction to Statistical Research. (.5-3:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Review of current literature and survey of present status of significant statistical research; collaborative work between student and faculty.

STAT 535 : Applied Linear Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of full-rank model, over-parameterized model, cell-means model, unequal subclass frequencies, and missing and fused cells. Estimability issues, diagnostics.

STAT 536 : Modern Regression Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 535, 624; or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Weighted least squares, measurement error models, robust regression, nonlinear regression, local regression, generalized additive models, tree-structured regression.

STAT 538 : Survival Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic concepts of survival analysis; hazard functions; types of censoring; Kaplan-Meier estimates; Logrank tests; proportional hazard models; examples drawn from clinical and epidemiological literature.

STAT 545 : Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or 470 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Conditional expectation and probabilities; Markov chains; solutions using time-reversible chains; modeling using hidden Markov chains; exponential waiting times; Poisson processes; Brownian motion with approximations.

STAT 566 : Exploratory Multivariate Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 512 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploratory data analysis; multivariate visualization; dynamic graphics; inference for mean vectors; multivariate regression; principal component analysis; cluster analysis; classification analysis; multi-dimensional scaling; correspondence analysis; bi-plots.

Recommended Courses

It is recommended that students take Stat 224, 431. Students planning graduate studies should also take Math 315, 316. (See Mathematics section for prerequisites.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Statistics: Quality Science Emphasis (59–66 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparation core courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one course from the following:

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   - NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   - DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

   STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
   - DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

   Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

4. Complete the following statistics core courses:

   STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

5. Complete the following:

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

STAT 431 : Experimental Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511.
DESCRIPTION: Basic designs, power and sample size, Latin squares, incomplete blocks, change-over designs, factorials, fractional factorials, confounding, split-plots, response surface designs.

STAT 462 : Quality Control and Industrial Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 336.
RECOMMENDED: Stat 337.
DESCRIPTION: Six sigma; tools with which to define, measure, analyze, improve, control. Advanced concepts in control charts, applying experimental design for process and product improvement.

STAT 466 : Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 361; 321 or 421 or 441.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

6. Complete two courses from the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

7. Complete one of the following minors or equivalent departmentally approved course work (approximately 14-21 hours):
   Food Science (16 hours)
   Political Science (21 hours)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Statistics: Statistical Science Emphasis (57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparation core courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one course from the following:

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   - NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

   STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: W
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
   - DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

   STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
   - DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

   Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

4. Complete the following statistics core courses:

   STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

5. Complete the following:

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

STAT 441 : Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

STAT 442 : Statistical Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441.
DESCRIPTION: Sufficiency and completeness; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Cramer-Rao inequality; some asymptotic results; Bayesian methods.

6. Complete 24 credit hours from the following, with at least 15 from the statistics list:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 316 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 315.
DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 480 : Mathematical Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, 343, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Construction, solution, and interpretation of discrete and continuous models applied to problems in the physical, natural, and social sciences.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

STAT 431 : Experimental Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511.
DESCRIPTION: Basic designs, power and sample size, Latin squares, incomplete blocks, change-over designs, factorials, fractional factorials, confounding, split-plots, response surface designs.

STAT 434 : Advanced Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 334; 421 or 441 or 470 or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation in systematic, simple random, stratified, cluster, and PPS sampling and mixtures of these; ratio estimation, sample size determination and principles of sample allocation.

STAT 435 : Nonparametric Statistical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Permutation tests, rank-based methods, analysis of contingency tables, bootstrap methods, curve fitting.

STAT 462 : Quality Control and Industrial Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 336.

RECOMMENDED: Stat 337.
DESCRIPTION: Six sigma; tools with which to define, measure, analyze, improve, control. Advanced concepts in control charts, applying experimental design for process and product improvement.

STAT 466 : Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 361; 321 or 421 or 441.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

STAT 469 : Applied Time Series and Forecasting. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Data mining, univariate ARIMA time series theory and application, seasonal models, spatial correlation models, conditional heteroscedastic models in financial time series, case studies.

STAT 496R : Academic Internship: Statistics. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience or internships for undergraduates. Report is required.

STAT 497R : Introduction to Statistical Research. (.5-3:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of current literature and survey of present status of significant statistical research; collaborative work between student and faculty.

STAT 535 : Applied Linear Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of full-rank model, over-parameterized model, cell-means model, unequal subclass frequencies, and missing and fused cells. Estimability issues, diagnostics.

STAT 536 : Modern Regression Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 535, 624; or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Weighted least squares, measurement error models, robust regression, nonlinear regression, local regression, generalized additive models, tree-structured regression.

STAT 538 : Survival Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic concepts of survival analysis; hazard functions; types of censoring; Kaplan-Meier estimates; Logrank tests; proportional hazard models; examples drawn from clinical and epidemiological literature.

STAT 545 : Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or 470 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Conditional expectation and probabilities; Markov chains; solutions using time-reversible chains; modeling using hidden Markov chains; exponential waiting times; Poisson processes; Brownian motion with approximations.

STAT 566 : Exploratory Multivariate Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 512 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploratory data analysis; multivariate visualization; dynamic graphics; inference for mean vectors; multivariate regression; principal component analysis; cluster analysis; classification analysis; multi-dimensional scaling; correspondence analysis; bi-plots.

Recommended Courses

It is recommended that students take Stat 224, 424, 431, 435, 469. Students planning graduate studies should also take Math 315, 316. (See Mathematics section for prerequisites.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Program Requirements

Four-Year Program

The more popular and preferred program is the traditional Four- Year Program. Interested freshmen register for aerospace studies in the fall semester, enrolling in aerospace studies courses in the same manner as for other college courses. There is *no military obligation* for the first two years of Air Force ROTC unless on an Air Force ROTC scholarship. During this time students learn more about the Air Force and the historical development of air power. After completing the first two years, known as the General Military Course (GMC), students may *compete* for entry into the last two years, the Professional Officer Course (POC). If accepted, students will attend a four-week summer field training encampment between their sophomore and junior years before entering the POC. Cadets in the POC study leadership, management, and national defense policy while receiving a nontaxable subsistence allowance of $450 for juniors and $500 for seniors each month.

Three-Year Program

Students entering the program as sophomores can "dual enroll" in both the Aeros 100 and 200 academics simultaneously. These students only enroll in the 200-series labs. If accepted, students will attend a four-week field training the next summer.

Qualifications

1. Be a United States citizen.
2. Be a full-time student.
3. Be eighteen years of age, or seventeen years of age with parent's or legal guardian's consent.
4. Be physically qualified.
5. Be of good moral character.
6. Be in good academic standing.
7. Successfully pass the Air Force Officer Qualifying Test.
8. Be interviewed and selected by a board of Air Force officers.
9. Complete all commissioning requirements as follows:
    a. Pilot or navigator candidate: Complete before age twenty-nine so as to enter undergraduate pilot/navigator training before age thirty.
    b. Scholarship recipient: Complete before age thirty-one in eligible year of commissioning.
    c. Nonscholarship recipient: Complete before age thirty-five.

Required Courses

1. General Military Courses: complete the following:
   Aeros 100, 101, 110, 111, 200, 201, 210, 211.
2. Professional Officer Courses: complete the following:
   Aeros 300, 301, 310, 311, 400R, 401R, 410, 411.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

| BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Actuarial Science (15 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. This minor is intended for mathematics majors. All other students should be aware of the prerequisites for this program:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
- DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

2. Complete the following courses preparing for SOA Exams:

STAT 470 : Statistical Theory for Actuaries. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
- DESCRIPTION: Probability theory; discrete, continuous, mixture random variables; loss distributions; moment-generating functions; conditional probability, expectation; total probability; stochastic independence; transformations. Prepares for Exam P.

STAT 474 : Life Contingencies 1. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Stat 470 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Theory of interest, annuities, amortization, life tables, life annuities. Prepares for Exam FM.

STAT 475 : Life Contingencies 2. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Stat 474.
- DESCRIPTION: Contingent annuities, joint annuities, insurance, calculating premiums and reserves. Prepares for Exam M.

3. Complete six credit hours from one of the following:

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.

DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

as partial completion of Applied Statistics VEE.

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

to complete Business VEE.

ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

to complete Economics VEE.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

SAS Certification.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Statistics (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one course from the following:

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
- NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

STAT 301 : Statistics and Probability for Secondary Educators. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
- DESCRIPTION: Statistics and probability, emphasizing secondary-specific curriculum. Principles of counting, probability distributions, density functions, graphical methods, descriptive and inferential statistics, computer package.

STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
- DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
- DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

Note: Students who have passed the AP statistics exam or an introductory statistics course should not take Stat 221.

2. Complete 15 additional credit hours from Stat 124, 224 and courses numbered 333 or higher (excluding Stat 470, 472, 474, 475, 510, 532).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Statistics (Stat) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Statistics (Stat)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

STAT 105 : Introduction to Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental ideas and applications of statistics.

STAT 124 : SAS Certification 1. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent with instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: SAS basic programming certification.

STAT 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

: Honors Principles of Statistics.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 291 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using active learning strategies, and evaluating student performance.

STAT 292 : Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 291.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences, using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

300-Level Courses

STAT 301 : Statistics and Probability for Secondary Educators. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Statistics and probability, emphasizing secondary-specific curriculum. Principles of counting, probability distributions, density functions, graphical methods, descriptive and inferential statistics, computer package.

STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

STAT 324 : SAS Certification 2. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block; W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced SAS programming certification.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

STAT 333 : Utah Colleges Exit Poll Administration. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 334 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Planning and executing KBYU / Utah Colleges Exit Poll.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

400-Level Courses

STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

STAT 431 : Experimental Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511.
DESCRIPTION: Basic designs, power and sample size, Latin squares, incomplete blocks, change-over designs, factorials, fractional factorials, confounding, split-plots, response surface designs.

STAT 433 : Utah Colleges Exit Poll Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Stat 434.
DESCRIPTION: Planning and executing KBYU / Utah Colleges Exit Poll.

STAT 434 : Advanced Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 334; 421 or 441 or 470 or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation in systematic, simple random, stratified, cluster, and PPS sampling and mixtures of these; ratio estimation, sample size determination and principles of sample allocation.

STAT 435 : Nonparametric Statistical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 511 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Permutation tests, rank-based methods, analysis of contingency tables, bootstrap methods, curve fitting.

STAT 441 : Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

STAT 442 : Statistical Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441.
DESCRIPTION: Sufficiency and completeness; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Cramer-Rao inequality; some asymptotic results; Bayesian methods.

STAT 462 : Quality Control and Industrial Statistics. (3:3:2)

OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 336.
RECOMMENDED: Stat 337.
DESCRIPTION: Six sigma; tools with which to define, measure, analyze, improve, control. Advanced concepts in control charts, applying experimental design for process and product improvement.

STAT 466 : Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332 or 361; 321 or 421 or 441.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

STAT 469 : Applied Time Series and Forecasting. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Data mining, univariate ARIMA time series theory and application, seasonal models, spatial correlation models, conditional heteroscedastic models in financial time series, case studies.

STAT 470 : Statistical Theory for Actuaries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Probability theory; discrete, continuous, mixture random variables; loss distributions; moment-generating functions; conditional probability, expectation; total probability; stochastic independence; transformations. Prepares for Exam P.

STAT 472 : Actuarial Problems. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 470 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applying mathematical statistics in actuarial science. Prepares for Exam P.

STAT 474 : Life Contingencies 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 470 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of interest, annuities, amortization, life tables, life annuities. Prepares for Exam FM.

STAT 475 : Life Contingencies 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 474.
DESCRIPTION: Contingent annuities, joint annuities, insurance, calculating premiums and reserves. Prepares for Exam M.

STAT 496R : Academic Internship: Statistics. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience or internships for undergraduates. Report is required.

STAT 497R : Introduction to Statistical Research. (.5-3:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of current literature and survey of present status of significant statistical research; collaborative work between student and faculty.

STAT 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: departmental consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

STAT 510 : Introduction to Statistics for Graduate Students. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory statistics course for graduate students outside Statistics Department. Topics include probability, estimation, hypothesis tests, simple linear regression, analysis of variance.

STAT 511 : Statistical Methods for Research 1. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 510 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic statistical methodologies and experimental design. Topics include analysis of variance, multiple regression, analysis of covariance, common experimental designs.

STAT 512 : Statistical Methods for Research 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 511.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced statistical methodologies. Topics include repeated measures models, basic multivariate techniques, logistic regression, log-linear models.

STAT 532 : Quality Improvement for Engineering. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in statistical theory, analysis of variance, simple and multiple regression, response surface design and analysis, multilevel experimental designs, blocking designs, confounding.

STAT 535 : Applied Linear Models. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of full-rank model, over-parameterized model, cell-means model, unequal subclass frequencies, and missing and fused cells. Estimability issues, diagnostics.

STAT 536 : Modern Regression Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 535, 624; or departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Weighted least squares, measurement error models, robust regression, nonlinear regression, local regression, generalized additive models, tree-structured regression.

STAT 537 : Generalized Linear Models. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 535, 642; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Generalized linear models framework, binary data, polytomous data, log-linear models.

STAT 538 : Survival Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic concepts of survival analysis; hazard functions; types of censoring; Kaplan-Meier estimates; Logrank tests; proportional hazard models; examples drawn from clinical and epidemiological literature.

STAT 545 : Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 441 or 470 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Conditional expectation and probabilities; Markov chains; solutions using time-reversible chains; modeling using hidden Markov chains; exponential waiting times; Poisson processes; Brownian motion with approximations.

STAT 566 : Exploratory Multivariate Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 337 or 512 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploratory data analysis; multivariate visualization; dynamic graphics; inference for mean vectors; multivariate regression; principal component analysis; cluster analysis; classification analysis; multi-dimensional scaling; correspondence analysis; bi-plots.

STAT 590 : Statistical Consulting. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to statistical consulting, oral presentations, presentation packages, written reports. Extensive applied experience in the Center for Collaborative Research and Statistical Consulting.

STAT 591R : Graduate Seminar in Statistics. (0:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W

STAT 595R : Special Topics in Statistics. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

: Biostatistical Methods.
: Expert Systems in Statistics.
: Quality Methods.
: Sampling Practicum.
: Statistical Computations.
: Theory of Risk.

STAT 599R : Academic Internship: Statistics. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience. Report required.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Statistics Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Statistics Faculty

Professors

Collings, Bruce Jay

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1980
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1981

Fellingham, Gilbert W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Occidental College, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, University of Washington, 1988
PhD, University of Washington, 1990

Grimshaw, Scott D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Southern Utah State College, 1983
MS, Texas A&M University, 1985
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1989

Lawson, John S

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Los Angeles Valley College, 1967
BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Rutgers College, 1976
PhD, Polytechnic Institute of New York, 1984

Schaalje, G Bruce

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1975
BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MS, University of Washington, 1981
PhD, North Carolina State University, 1988

Scott, Del T

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MS, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1977

Tolley, Harold Dennis

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1974

Associate Professors

Christensen, William F

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Iowa State University, 1999

Reese, C Shane

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1999

Whiting, David Glen

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1995

Assistant Professors

Blades, Natalie Jean

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AB, Wellesley College, 1997
MSE, Johns Hopkins University, 2002
PhD, Johns Hopkins University, 2003

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Minor in Aerospace Studies (14 hours)

Students desiring aerospace studies as a minor must complete the 14 hours of POC course work and the Air Force ROTC requirements, as well as qualify for a commission in the United States Air Force.

Show Aerospace Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Engler, David

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1997
MS, Brigham Young University, 2002
AM, Harvard University, 2006
PhD, Harvard University, 2007

Johnson, William Evan

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Dixie College, 2000
BS, Southern Utah University, 2002
MS, Brigham Young University, 2003
MA, Harvard University, 2006
PhD, Harvard University, 2007

Associate Teaching Professor

Nielsen, Perpetua Lynne

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Philippines, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984

Research Associate Professor

Eggett, Dennis Lee

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Statistics
RANK: Research Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, North Carolina State University, 1987

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Student Development

James MacArthur, Chair
2514 WSC (801) 422-4007

University Advisement Center
2500 WSC, (801) 422-3826

The Discipline

The Student Development Department provides course work designed to help students in the areas of intellectual/learning, career, and personal/social development.

The Career and Learning Information Center, 2590 WSC, contains detailed, current information about numerous occupations, college majors, educational programs, professional licensing requirements for various states, placement information about recent BYU graduates, and career skills information, such as job interviewing.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Student Development (StDev)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

STDEV 100 : Essential College Skills. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Developing essential college skills. Aims of BYU, values and goals, sound thinking skills. Learning styles and adjustment to college courses. College requirements and planning.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

STDEV 110 : Effective Study and Learning. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp Su
DESCRIPTION: Learning to learn: motivation, time management, reading, listening, notetaking, test preparation, and memorizing; cognitive and ethical development in a learning environment.

STDEV 115 : Life Planning and Decision Making. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individual development in life planning and decision making, emphasizing personal maturity, goal setting, and decision making abilities in areas of common concern to young adults.

STDEV 117 : Career Exploration. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Applying theories of individual, academic, and career development to the university student. Exploring university opportunities and college majors; graduation planning.

STDEV 120 : Individual Development. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Applying theories of young adult development in a self-assessment approach to achieving individual development in the life challenges facing college students.

STDEV 132 : Introduction to Tutoring. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing college-level tutoring skills; academic success and the tutoring cycle. Leads to level-one tutoring certification of the College Reading and Learning Association.

STDEV 133 : Advanced Tutoring. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: StDev 132.
DESCRIPTION: Developing advanced-level tutoring approaches and analytical thinking. Leads to level-two tutoring certification of the College Reading and Learning Association.

STDEV 139 : Introduction to Health Professions. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of health professions: medical, dental, and other specialties. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners and clinicians.

STDEV 158R : Leadership in a Learning Community. (.5-2:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Community development and learning principles.

: Learning and Citizenship.
: Learning in Communities.
: Learning in Community: Arts.
: Learning in Community: Biology.
: Learning in Community: Civilization.
: Learning in Community: Humanities.
: Learning in Community: Leadership.
: Learning in Community: Mentors.
: Learning in Community: Science.
: Learning in Community: Social Science.
: Learning in Community: Teaching.
: Learning in Community: University Core.

STDEV 198R : Law Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring legal professions. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners.

STDEV 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

: Academic Internship: Legal Internship.

200-Level Courses

STDEV 214R : Special Topics in Student Development. (.5-3:1:0)
OFFERED: On demand

STDEV 227 : Preview of Optometry. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of optometry with lectures by optometrists; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 229 : Preview of Dentistry. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of dentistry with lectures by dentists; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 239 : Preview of Medicine. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preview of medical practice with lectures by doctors; overview of required courses; application process; recommended extracurricular opportunities.

STDEV 258R : Prelaw Leadership. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Leadership skills and strategies for members of the PLSA Board. Successful planning, implementation, and execution of prelaw activities.

STDEV 260 : Constitutional Research. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The United States Constitution; research on original sources used to create the Constitution.

STDEV 270 : Advanced Reading Strategies for College Success. (1-2:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing improved speed and comprehension skills through selection and practice of college reading strategies.

300-Level Courses

STDEV 317R : Career Strategies. (.5-2:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preparing for career or graduate school/employment opportunities. Practical strategies to facilitate internship, job, or graduate school preparation: resumes, letters, interviewing, and Internet research.

: Graduate School Strategies.

STDEV 329 : Dental School Preparation Laboratory Experience. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Dental laboratory practices; tooth terminology, morphology, and anatomy. Procedures including oral pathology, diagnosis, and X-rays.

STDEV 358R : Student Leadership Development. (.5-3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, synthesis, and integration of personal leadership experienced in an academic context. Successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

STDEV 364 : Mediation Techniques and Practices. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Mediation techniques emphasizing practical application and observation of actual mediations.

STDEV 365 : Legal Education and Practice. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Successful legal education and practice. Preparation for those planning to attend law school.

STDEV 398R : Prelaw Review Journal Writing. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Editing and publication for Pre-law Review authors and editors.

STDEV 399R : Health Professions Internship. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Internships with health care providers.

: Dental Internship.
: Medical Internship.

400-Level Courses

STDEV 439 : Medical and Dental School Application. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for medical and dental school applications; entire application process, including school identification and submission.

STDEV 490 : Bachelor of General Studies Capstone. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: StDev 100; completion of all other BGS program requirements.

STDEV 496R : Advanced Legal Internship. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Legal internship coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Legal research; courtroom observation; client and attorney interaction; and reflection exercises.

Back to Student Development Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Student Development Faculty

Professors

Heaps, Richard A.

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, University of Utah, 1970

Nielsen, Stevan Lars

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, University of Washington, 1984

Ward, Robert

COLLEGE: Student Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1959
MS, Utah State University, 1961
PhD, Michigan State University, 1965

Williams, Marleen Sue

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brigham Young University, 1993

Associate Professors

Kaiser, David Allen

COLLEGE: Student Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, University of Florida, 1986
EdD, University of Florida, 1994

Morrell, Barbara

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1997

Assistant Professors

Nielsen, Dianne Lindley

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2001

Pedersen, Tyler R.

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, University of Florida, 1998
PhD, University of Florida, 2000

Professional

Lawson, Jane

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Professional
DEGREES: BA, Webster College, 1962
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1980

Clinical Professors

Bell, Douglas

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MBA, University of Utah, 1971
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1984
Ed Spec, Appalachian State University, 1992

Bennion, Lynne

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, Purdue University, 1983
PhD, Purdue University, 1986

Chapman, Ronald K

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Gleave, Robert L

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1981

Isakson, Richard

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1970
MEd, Bucknell University, 1971
PhD, Cornell University, 1975

MacArthur, James

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1976

Maughan, Michael

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1966
MS, Utah State University, 1968
EdD, Utah State University, 1970

Shively, Ann

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BMEd, Sam Houston State University, 1959
MEd, Texas A&M University, 1968
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1971

Smart, David

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1964
MA, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, University of Utah, 1969

Smith, Steven

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1988

Worthen, Vaughn Eugene

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Clinical Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1980
BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, University of Kansas, 1993

Associate Clinical Professors

Beecher, Mark

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brigham Young University, 1998

Buxton, Michael

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, University of Georgia, 1989
PhD, University of Georgia, 1993

Dougher, M Kirk

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1990
PhD, University of Nevada, Reno, 1999

Esplin, Patricia

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MS, University of Utah, 1976

Moody, Richard A.

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, Kansas State University, 1991
PsyD, Central Michigan University, 1996

Preece, Julie

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Rice, L. Maureen

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brigham Young University, 1997

Roberts, Norman

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Assistant Clinical Professor

Okiishi, John

COLLEGE: Student Life
DEPARTMENT: Counseling and Career Center
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2000

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Aerospace Studies (Aeros)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

AEROS 100 : Leadership Laboratory--Freshmen. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Basic fundamentals of military leadership--drill, courtesy, planning, and organizing at various levels of responsibility.

AEROS 101 : Leadership Laboratory--Freshmen. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Basic fundamentals of military leadership--drill, courtesy, planning, and organizing at various levels of responsibility.

AEROS 110 : The Air Force Today. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 100.
DESCRIPTION: Development, organization, and core values of the U.S. Air Force, emphasizing the foundations of officership.

AEROS 111 : Aerospace Defense, General Purpose, and Support Forces. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 101.
DESCRIPTION: U.S. Air Force Major Command structure and the origins of the Air Force.

200-Level Courses

AEROS 200 : Leadership Laboratory--Sophomores. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Increased emphasis on performance level.

AEROS 201 : Leadership Laboratory--Sophomores. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Increased emphasis on performance level.

AEROS 210 : The Developmental Growth of Air Power. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 200.
DESCRIPTION: Development of various concepts of air power employment, emphasizing factors that have prompted research and technological change through the early 1960's.

AEROS 211 : The Developmental Growth of Air Power. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 201.
DESCRIPTION: Development of various concepts of air power employment, emphasizing factors that have prompted research and technological change from Vietnam to the present.

300-Level Courses

AEROS 300 : Leadership Laboratory--Juniors. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Students perform as cadet officers. Emphasis on leadership development.

AEROS 301 : Leadership Laboratory--Juniors. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Students perform as cadet officers. Emphasis on leadership development.

AEROS 305R : Leadership Laboratory--Honor Guard. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Approval of instructor.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of military leadership and M-1 rifle drill; emphasizes need for response to vested authority, with opportunity to develop confidence, military bearing, and other interpersonal skills; students perform as cadet leaders.

AEROS 310 : Management and Leadership. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 300.
DESCRIPTION: Writing, speaking, and listening as communication skills; management concepts; responsibilities and ethics for an Air Force junior officer.

AEROS 311 : Management and Leadership. (3:3:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Teacher Education

M. Winston Egan, Chair
205 MCKB

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office
120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to programs in the Teacher Education Department is by department approval. Please see the School of Education Advisement Center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Early Childhood Education
BS in Elementary Education

Emphasis (optional):

Early Childhood Education

BS in Social Science (composite teaching major)

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Teacher Education

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Additional Endorsements/Licensures

Elementary Education with Teaching English Language Learners TESOL K–12 or Early Childhood Education with Teaching English Language Learners TESOL K–12.

See the Education Advisement and Certification Office for further information.

Elementary Music Education–Elementary Education Dual Licensure

See the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center (D-444 HFAC) for music programs and course listings and the Education Advisement and Certification Office for the education program.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Early Childhood Education

Admission to Degree Program

Students are accepted into the early childhood education (ECE) teacher preparation program by application only. The application review process includes but is not limited to the following:

1. Completion of the ECE exploratory experience. The instruction packet and logsheet is available online at http://education.byu.edu/ted/early_childhood.html.
2. Technology Skills Assessment (TSA).
3. Be fingerprinted. Check with Education Advisement and Certification Office (120 MCKB) for instructions.
4. If admitted, departmental approval is required for deferment from the four-semester professional sequence.

Admission to this program requires departmental approval. Please see the School of Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB, for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Fingerprint and Background Check

All candidates for teacher licensure are required by state statute to be fingerprinted and pass an FBI background check before participating in required field experiences. Fingerprints are taken in the Education Advisement Center (EAC) in 120 MCKB. Contact the EAC for the schedule. Allow from five to six weeks for fingerprints to be processed. FBI background clearance is valid for only three years. If clearance expires before graduation, candidates must repeat the fingerprinting and clearance process, including a new fee payment.

Failing to expunge a police record prior to the background check may result in a blocked registration while a panel reviews the charges. Candidates who cannot pass an FBI background check will be removed from the teacher education licensure program.

Additional Licensing Requirements

It is the student's responsibility to be sure that the Praxis test has been taken and that BYU has received the test scores, that their fingerprint background clearance is current prior to graduation and that state licensing fees have been paid. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements contact the Education Advisement and Certification Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and Utah licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

The Discipline

Early childhood education prepares teachers who, having gained their own liberal education, help preschool, kindergarten, and primary-grade children learn by improving the teaching children receive in the home, school, church, and community. Early childhood education helps students enhance their thinking abilities, build their confidence in exploring new ideas, and become self-motivated, independent learners.

In the program prospective teachers learn about the culture of young children, develop a solid foundation in basic principles of teaching and learning that originate in developmental theory and research, and become proficient in appropriately implementing those basic principles in practical settings.

Career Opportunities

A degree in early childhood education leads to licensure in kindergarten through grade three. See the advisement center for details.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Early Childhood Education (61–68 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Make formal application for admission to the program through the Teacher Education Department (201 MCKB).
2. Students who receive a grade lower than C– in any of the professional or support courses, or whose GPA drops below 2.85, will be discontinued from the early childhood education program.
3. Complete the following preprofessional courses prior to or concurrent with application for admission to the program:

   SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
   - NOTE: Independent Study also.

   SFL 221 : Foundations of Developmentally Appropriate Practices in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: SFL 210.
   - DESCRIPTION: Historical, philosophical, organizational, and curricular issues related to developmentally appropriate practices in programs for young children.
   - NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 221 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

   SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W
   - DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

   Note: It is highly recommended to take SFL 222 prior to admission.
4. Complete the ECE Exploratory Experience before applying for admission to the program.
5. Complete an application seminar (seminar schedule posted on the Education Advisement and Certification Office Web page and in 120 MCKB).
6. Complete the following:

   SFL 222 : Practicum in Developmentally Appropriate Practices. (2:0:12)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 210, 221; 240 or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Initial practicum with young children to increase understanding of socialization and learning processes, to create meaningful learning opportunities, and to implement developmentally appropriate practices.
   - NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 222 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

   SFL 351 : Socialization Across Childhood. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   - PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
   - DESCRIPTION: Processes and sequences of social development across childhood.

SFL 355 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical, social, intellectual, and emotional contexts of language acquisition and usage.

Note: SFL 222 must be taken before or concurrently with ECE 323.

7. Complete one course from the following:
SFL 331 : Infant Development in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Conception, prenatal development, pregnancy. Physical, cognitive, and social development of the first twenty-four months. Implications for guidance and care in the family.

SFL 352 : Cognitive Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of mental abilities; effects of maturation and learning on memory, perception, attention processes, intelligence, social cognition.

SFL 420 : Administering Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 221, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for planning and administering quality programs in settings for young children. Budgeting, staffing, accrediting, selecting equipment, etc.

8. Complete the following professional courses (prior acceptance to the program required):
CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

ECE 323 : Integrated Curriculum in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp (Su rarely)
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 221, 222; admittance to either ECE or El Ed licensing programs. Dual majors, please see advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing integrated learning experiences in dance, music, drama, and visual art for the very young, including importance of home, family, and environments on child's aesthetic growth.

ECE 353 : Emergent Literacy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 355 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, themes, and practices of literacy instruction for young children (P-3).

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

MUSIC 378 : Music for the Elementary Classroom Teacher. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Establishing a classroom environment for musical development; emphasis on appropriate songs, activities, resources, and teaching strategies.

9. Complete one course from the following:

DANCE 326 : Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

VAEDU 326 : Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

10. Complete the following professional sequence cohort courses:

ECE 324 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

ECE 325 : Early Childhood Practicum. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE program.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum experience in the primary grades. Field experience designed to give students opportunities to interact with primary children (grades 1-3) and apply skills and knowledge acquired in the ECE cohort classes.

ECE 327 : Assessment and Action Research in Early Childhood Programs. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE cohort.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and informal assessment strategies and data collection procedures for evaluating children's progress; programs to enhance learning, individualize instruction, and communicate with others.

ECE 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

ECE 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

ECE 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

ECE 365 : Teaching Social Studies for Cultural Understanding. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE cohort.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing meaningful integrated learning experiences in the social studies area, taking into account children's home experience and cultural values.

11. Complete 6 or 12 hours from one of the following:

Either

ECE 425 : Grades 1-3 Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in the primary grades.

(6 hours)

Or

ECE 496R : Academic Internship. (12:0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools.
NOTE: See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.

(12 hours)

12. Complete one course from the following:
ECE 423 : Preschool Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in the preschool.

ECE 424 : Kindergarten Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in kindergarten.

13. Complete the following concurrently with ECE 423 or 424 above:
ECE 426 : Capstone Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp (Su rarely)
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment with student teaching practicum.
DESCRIPTION: Gaining insight into significant issues in early childhood education, developing a sense of professional ethics, and becoming personally committed to ongoing professional development.

Recommended Courses

ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

HEPE 129 : Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

MTHED 305 : Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of number, measurement, and informal geometry in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 306 : Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 305; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of rational numbers and proportional reasoning, probability, and early algebraic reasoning in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Early Childhood Education (ECE) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Early Childhood Education (ECE)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

ECE 320 : Teaching the Creative Arts: Birth Through Kindergarten. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE major.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing integrated learning experiences in dance, music, drama, and visual art for the very young, including importance of home, family, and environments on child's aesthetic growth.

ECE 321 : Teaching the Creative Arts: Grades One Through Three. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE major.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing integrated learning experiences in dance, music, drama, and visual art in primary grades, focusing on natural creative expression and nurturing creative impulses in classroom.

ECE 323 : Integrated Curriculum in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp (Su rarely)
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 221, 222; admittance to either ECE or El Ed licensing programs. Dual majors, please see advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing integrated learning experiences in dance, music, drama, and visual art for the very young, including importance of home, family, and environments on child's aesthetic growth.

ECE 324 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

ECE 325 : Early Childhood Practicum. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE program.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum experience in the primary grades. Field experience designed to give students opportunities to interact with primary children (grades 1-3) and apply skills and knowledge acquired in the ECE cohort classes.

ECE 327 : Assessment and Action Research in Early Childhood Programs. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE cohort.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and informal assessment strategies and data collection procedures for evaluating children's progress; programs to enhance learning, individualize instruction, and communicate with others.

ECE 353 : Emergent Literacy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 355 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, themes, and practices of literacy instruction for young children (P-3).

ECE 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

ECE 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

ECE 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

ECE 365 : Teaching Social Studies for Cultural Understanding. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to ECE cohort.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing meaningful integrated learning experiences in the social studies area, taking into account children's home experience and cultural values.

400-Level Courses

ECE 423 : Preschool Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in the preschool.

ECE 424 : Kindergarten Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in kindergarten.

ECE 425 : Grades 1-3 Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in the primary grades.

ECE 426 : Capstone Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp (Su rarely)
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment with student teaching practicum.
DESCRIPTION: Gaining insight into significant issues in early childhood education, developing a sense of professional ethics, and becoming personally committed to ongoing professional development.

ECE 427 : Capstone Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, 1st and 2nd blocks
PREREQUISITE: El Ed majors with an ECE emphasis; concurrent enrollment in ECE student teaching practicum block.
DESCRIPTION: Gaining insight into significant issues in early childhood education, developing a sense of professional ethics, and becoming personally committed to ongoing professional development.

ECE 496R : Academic Internship. (12:0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools.
NOTE: See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.

Back to Early Childhood Education Home

Back to Teacher Education Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Elementary Education

Admission to Degree Program

Students are accepted into the elementary education teacher preparation program by application only. Students must attend an application meeting held by the Education Advisement and Certification Center prior to making application for admission.

The application review process includes but is not limited to the following:

1. Significant experience working with elementary-age children.
2. Technology Skills Assessment (TSA).
3. Being fingerprinted. See Education Advisement and Certification Office (120 MCKB) for instructions.
4. If admitted, departmental approval only for deferment from the four-semester professional sequence.

Fingerprint and Background Check

All candidates for teacher licensure are required by state statute to be fingerprinted and pass an FBI background check before participating in required field experiences. Fingerprints are taken in the Education Advisement Center (EAC) in 120 MCKB. Contact the EAC for the schedule. Allow from five to six weeks for fingerprints to be processed. FBI background clearance is valid for only three years. If clearance expires before graduation, candidates must repeat the fingerprinting and clearance process, including a new fee payment.

Failing to expunge a police record prior to the background check may result in a blocked registration while a panel reviews the charges. Candidates who cannot pass an FBI background check will be removed from the teacher education licensure program.

Additional Licensing Requirements

It is the student's responsibility to be sure that the Praxis test has been taken and that BYU has received the test scores, that their fingerprint background clearance is current prior to graduation and that state licensing fees have been paid. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements contact the Education Advisement and Certification Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and Utah licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

The Discipline

Elementary education prepares teachers who, having gained their own liberal education, help elementary school children learn by improving the teaching children receive in the home, school, church, and community. Elementary education helps students enhance their thinking abilities, build their confidence in exploring new ideas, and become self-motivated, independent learners.

In the program prospective teachers learn about the culture of the elementary school, develop a solid foundation in basic principles of teaching and learning that originate in educational theory and research, and become proficient in systematically applying those basic principles in practical settings.

Career Opportunities

A degree in elementary education leads to opportunities for teaching in elementary schools. By taking additional classes in early childhood education, secondary education, music, or teaching English to speakers of other languages (TESOL) students can extend their teaching credential to teach kindergarten, seventh and eighth grade, elementary music, or TESOL.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Elementary Education (68.5 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Make formal application for admission to the program through the Teacher Education Department (201 MCKB).
2. Students who receive a grade lower than C– in any of the professional or support courses, or whose GPA drops below 2.85, will be discontinued from the elementary education program.
3. Complete all GE courses, including the following, prior to beginning program:

   EXSC 169 : Elementary Skills and Activities. (.5:0:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Physical skills and activities specific to elementary-age children.
   - NOTE: Required for elementary education majors. Meets one Wellness physical education activity requirement.

   PHY S 110A : Physical Science A. (4:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
   - DESCRIPTION: Classical and modern physics and chemistry as they relate to current concepts of the physical world. Lab exercises illustrate many topics with concrete examples.
   - NOTE: With PhyS 110B satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

   PHY S 110B : Physical Science B. (2:2:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
   - DESCRIPTION: Concepts and methods used in geology to interpret rock record, protect and make use of earth materials, and better understand natural environment and how to live in it. Lab studies, field trips, home projects.
   - NOTE: With PhyS 110A satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

   SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   - DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
   - NOTE: Independent Study also.
4. Complete an application seminar (seminar schedule posted on Education Advisement and Certification Center Web page and in 120 MCKB).
5. Complete the following courses after admission to the program:

   CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

   DANCE 326 : Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - DESCRIPTION: Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 301.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of leadership, problem solving, decisions, discipline, and human relations. Emphasis on career planning as an Air Force junior officer.

AEROS 399R : Academic Internship: Leadership Intern Program. (4:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's consent.
RECOMMENDED: Aeros 201 or 301.
DESCRIPTION: Air Force ROTC field leadership training course. Provides advanced fundamentals of military leadership, planning, organizing, and team building at various levels of responsibility.
NOTE: Enrollment limited to Air Force ROTC cadets.

400-Level Courses

AEROS 400R : Leadership Laboratory--Seniors. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Senior cadets perform in leadership positions in planning and conducting all activities of the cadet corps.

AEROS 401R : Leadership Laboratory--Seniors. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: As listed for Aeros 100/101. Senior cadets perform in leadership positions in planning and conducting all activities of the cadet corps.

AEROS 410 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 400R.
DESCRIPTION: Civilian control of military, civil-military interaction, the forming of defense strategy. Military profession; Russia, Europe, and East Asia regional studies.

AEROS 411 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 401R.
DESCRIPTION: Africa, Middle East, and Latin American regional studies; military operation other than war; military justice system; officer professional development.

Back to Aerospace Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

EDLF 452 : Foundations of Education. (.5-2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the philosophical, sociological, and historical foundations of American education, with special reference to current issues in U.S. public schooling.

EL ED 302 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

EL ED 354 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 356.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in the primary grades.

EL ED 355 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 357.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in grades three to six.

EL ED 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 354.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

EL ED 357 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Intermediate Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 355.
DESCRIPTION: Issues and practices for teaching language arts in grades three to six, including content area reading and writing, literature, comprehending and responding, vocabulary development, and structural analysis applications.

EL ED 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 362.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

EL ED 362 : Practicum in Teaching Mathematics. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 361.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in El Ed 361 in an elementary school classroom.

EL ED 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

EL ED 365 : Teaching Social Studies in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing instructional methods and curriculum design to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

EL ED 372 : Instruction and Assessment. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Taken during second professional semester. Extended planning, integrated units, teaching strategies, management problems, and assessment and reporting of student progress.

EXSC 375 : Physical Education for Elementary School Teachers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 169.

HLTH 361 : School Health for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preparing for the role as a health educator, emphasizing skill-based teaching methods and acquisition of teaching resources.

IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

IP&T 301 : Educational Psychology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of educational psychology applied to teaching, including learning theory, instructional strategies, assessment of learning outcomes, and classroom inquiry.

MTHED 305 : Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of number, measurement, and informal geometry in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 306 : Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 305; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of rational numbers and proportional reasoning, probability, and early algebraic reasoning in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MUSIC 378 : Music for the Elementary Classroom Teacher. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Establishing a classroom environment for musical development; emphasis on appropriate songs, activities, resources, and teaching strategies.

TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

VAEDU 326 : Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

6. Complete 12 hours of one of the following (prior application required):
EL ED 400R : Elementary Student-Teaching Internship. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See EAC for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: Semester-long or two consecutive term, full-day student teaching internship in the public schools. Seminar attendance required.

EL ED 496R : Academic Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools in lieu of El Ed 400, student teaching.

Recommended Courses

The following courses are strongly recommended:

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

BIO 101 : Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 100.
NOTE: Required of all elementary education and early childhood education majors; enrollment limited to elementary education of early childhood education majors.

ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Elementary Education (El Ed) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Elementary Education: Early Childhood Education Emphasis (83.5–90.5 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Make formal application for admission to the program through the Teacher Education Department (201 MCKB).
2. Students who receive a grade lower than C– or whose GPA drops below 2.85 in any of the professional or support courses will be discontinued from the elementary education/early childhood program.
3. Complete the ECE exploratory experience before applying for admission to the program.
4. Complete all GE courses, including the following, prior to beginning program:

EXSC 169 : Elementary Skills and Activities. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical skills and activities specific to elementary-age children.
NOTE: Required for elementary education majors. Meets one Wellness physical education activity requirement.

PHY S 110A : Physical Science A. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Classical and modern physics and chemistry as they relate to current concepts of the physical world. Lab exercises illustrate many topics with concrete examples.
NOTE: With PhyS 110B satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

PHY S 110B : Physical Science B. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and methods used in geology to interpret rock record, protect and make use of earth materials, and better understand natural environment and how to live in it. Lab studies, field trips, home projects.
NOTE: With PhyS 110A satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 221 : Foundations of Developmentally Appropriate Practices in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL 210.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, philosophical, organizational, and curricular issues related to developmentally appropriate practices in programs for young children.
NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 221 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

SFL 222 : Practicum in Developmentally Appropriate Practices. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W, Su

PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 210, 221; 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Initial practicum with young children to increase understanding of socialization and learning processes, to create meaningful learning opportunities, and to implement developmentally appropriate practices.
NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 222 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

5. Complete an application seminar (seminar schedule posted on Education Advisement and Certification Center Web page and in 120 MCKB).

6. Complete the following courses:
ECE 323 : Integrated Curriculum in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp (Su rarely)
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 221, 222; admittance to either ECE or El Ed licensing programs. Dual majors, please see advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing integrated learning experiences in dance, music, drama, and visual art for the very young, including importance of home, family, and environments on child's aesthetic growth.

(prior admittance to program required)
SFL 355 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical, social, intellectual, and emotional contexts of language acquisition and usage.

7. Complete one course from the following:
SFL 331 : Infant Development in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Conception, prenatal development, pregnancy. Physical, cognitive, and social development of the first twenty-four months. Implications for guidance and care in the family.

SFL 351 : Socialization Across Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and sequences of social development across childhood.

SFL 352 : Cognitive Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of mental abilities; effects of maturation and learning on memory, perception, attention processes, intelligence, social cognition.

SFL 420 : Administering Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 221, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for planning and administering quality programs in settings for young children. Budgeting, staffing, accrediting, selecting equipment, etc.

Note: It is recommended that all early childhood education emphasis courses be taken prior to cohort 1 in the elementary education program.

8. Complete the following courses after admission to the program:
CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

DANCE 326 : Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

EDLF 452 : Foundations of Education. (.5-2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the philosophical, sociological, and historical foundations of American education, with special reference to current issues in U.S. public schooling.

EL ED 302 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

EL ED 354 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 356.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in the primary grades.

EL ED 355 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 357.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in grades three to six.

EL ED 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 354.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

EL ED 357 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Intermediate Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 355.
DESCRIPTION: Issues and practices for teaching language arts in grades three to six, including content area reading and writing, literature, comprehending and responding, vocabulary development, and structural analysis applications.

EL ED 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 362.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

EL ED 362 : Practicum in Teaching Mathematics. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 361.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in El Ed 361 in an elementary school classroom.

EL ED 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

EL ED 365 : Teaching Social Studies in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing instructional methods and curriculum design to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

EL ED 372 : Instruction and Assessment. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Taken during second professional semester. Extended planning, integrated units, teaching strategies, management problems, and assessment and reporting of student progress.

EXSC 375 : Physical Education for Elementary School Teachers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 169.

HLTH 361 : School Health for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preparing for the role as a health educator, emphasizing skill-based teaching methods and acquisition of teaching resources.

IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

IP&T 301 : Educational Psychology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of educational psychology applied to teaching, including learning theory, instructional strategies, assessment of learning outcomes, and classroom inquiry.

MTHED 305 : Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of number, measurement, and informal geometry in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MTHED 306 : Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MthEd 305; permission from Teacher Education Department.
DESCRIPTION: Concept-oriented exploration of rational numbers and proportional reasoning, probability, and early algebraic reasoning in relation to children's learning.
NOTE: Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

MUSIC 378 : Music for the Elementary Classroom Teacher. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Establishing a classroom environment for musical development; emphasis on appropriate songs, activities, resources, and teaching strategies.

TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

VAEDU 326 : Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

9. Complete one course from the following:
EL ED 400R : Elementary Student-Teaching Internship. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See EAC for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: Semester-long or two consecutive term, full-day student teaching internship in the public schools. Seminar attendance required.

(6 hours required)
EL ED 496R : Academic Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools in lieu of El Ed 400, student teaching.

(12 hours)

10. Complete one course from the following:

ECE 423 : Preschool Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
- DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in the preschool.

ECE 424 : Kindergarten Student Teaching/Internship. (6:0:6)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: All ECE core and professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.
- DESCRIPTION: Student teaching/interning experience in kindergarten.

11. Complete the following concurrently with ECE 423 or 424 above:

ECE 427 : Capstone Seminar. (.5:1:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, 1st and 2nd blocks
- PREREQUISITE: El Ed majors with an ECE emphasis; concurrent enrollment in ECE student teaching practicum block.
- DESCRIPTION: Gaining insight into significant issues in early childhood education, developing a sense of professional ethics, and becoming personally committed to ongoing professional development.

Recommended Courses

The following courses are strongly recommended. All can fill GE requirements:

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

BIO 101 : Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 100.
- NOTE: Required of all elementary education and early childhood education majors; enrollment limited to elementary education of early childhood education majors.

ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
- DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
- NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
- NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Elementary Education (El Ed) Courses

Show all Early Childhood Education (ECE) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Elementary Education (El Ed)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

EL ED 302 : Planning and Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

EL ED 340 : Children's Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Some sections require acceptance to program.
DESCRIPTION: Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

EL ED 351 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

EL ED 354 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 1. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 356.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in the primary grades.

EL ED 355 : Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development: Practicum 2. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 357.
DESCRIPTION: Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in grades three to six.

EL ED 356 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 354.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including developing literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

EL ED 357 : Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Intermediate Grades. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 355.
DESCRIPTION: Issues and practices for teaching language arts in grades three to six, including content area reading and writing, literature, comprehending and responding, vocabulary development, and structural analysis applications.

EL ED 361 : Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 362.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

EL ED 362 : Practicum in Teaching Mathematics. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; MthEd 305, 306; concurrent enrollment in El Ed 361.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in El Ed 361 in an elementary school classroom.

EL ED 363 : Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Developing knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

EL ED 364 : Practicum in Teaching Science. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: departmental approval; concurrent enrollment in ElEd 363.
DESCRIPTION: Field experience designed to give students opportunities to interact with elementary school students and apply skills and knowledge developed in ElEd 363.

EL ED 365 : Teaching Social Studies in the Elementary School. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing instructional methods and curriculum design to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

EL ED 366 : Social Studies Practicum. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ElEd 365.
DESCRIPTION: Practicing strategies in instruction and curriculum to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

EL ED 372 : Instruction and Assessment. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to elementary education program.
DESCRIPTION: Taken during second professional semester. Extended planning, integrated units, teaching strategies, management problems, and assessment and reporting of student progress.

400-Level Courses

EL ED 400R : Elementary Student-Teaching Internship. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See EAC for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: Semester-long or two consecutive term, full-day student teaching internship in the public schools. Seminar attendance required.

EL ED 493R : Independent Readings or Project. (.5-4:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: departmental approval.

EL ED 496R : Academic Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Three-semester professional sequence and prior application. See Education Advisement and Certification Office for application dates.
DESCRIPTION: A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools in lieu of El Ed 400, student teaching.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

EL ED 514R : Special Topics in Education. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: These courses do not count toward a graduate degree.

: Children's Literature.
: Classroom Management.
: Comprehensive Literacy.
: Environmental Education.
: Foundations of Reading.
: Increasing Teacher Effectiveness.
: Individualized Instruction Elementary.
: Language Development and Reading.
: Mathematics.
: Reading in Content Areas.
: Reading.
: Science.
: Social Studies.
: Writing in Elementary Education.
: Writing in Elementary Education.

EL ED 515R : Special Topics in Education. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: These courses do not count toward a graduate degree without prior approval.

: Analysis of Teaching and Learning.
: Classroom Management.
: Comprehension Instruction.
: Content-Area Literacy.
: Curriculum Innovation.
: Early Childhood Education.
: Effective Teaching.
: Evaluating Student Learning.
: Foundations of Literacy.
: Home-School Relations.
: K-6 Mathematics Content and Selected Topics (TBA).
: K-6 Mathematics Content and Selected Topics from Algebra and Geometry.
: K-6 Mathematics Content and Selected Topics from Rational Number.
: Literacy Assessment and Intervention.
: Literacy Development and Instruction.
: Literature for Young People.
: Math.
: Mathematical Pedagogy Focused on the Elementary Learner.
: Multicultural Education.
: New Perspectives on the Elementary Learner.
: Reading: Developing Comprehension Skills.
: Technology for Enriching Elementary Mathematics Instruction.
: The Role of Decoding in Learning to Read.
: Utah State Mathematics Core Curriculum.
: Writing Instruction.

Graduate Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

American Heritage (A Htg)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Course

100-Level Courses

A HTG 100 : American Heritage. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of American constitutional and economic principles, and patterns of historical development.

: Honors American Heritage

Back to College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Elementary Education Home

Back to Teacher Education Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12) (78 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

Students preparing to teach physical education and/or coach will have a variety of experiences that will enhance proficiency in the knowledge and skills requisite to working in the contemporary school setting. Majors learn to perform a variety of sport, fitness, and dance activities personally. After becoming proficient, students take courses and have practical experiences in teaching and coaching children, adolescents, and adults. The discipline is interesting and rewarding, and those in a teaching/coaching career help others pursue and practice healthy lifestyle habits.

Career Opportunities

Graduates seek teaching and physical education/coaching careers in elementary and secondary education settings. With an advanced degree, teaching and coaching positions at institutions of higher learning are available.

It is recommended that students desiring to be optimally employable in secondary schools complete an approved teaching minor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Prior to beginning course work in the major, students must apply for admittance into the PETE Program. The program requires that all students take most of the major courses together as a cohort group. See the PETE advisor during January of the sophomore year (106 SFH).
2. Complete the senior exit interview.
3. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following required prerequisite and general education courses:

HEPE 129 : Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su

DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

5. Complete the following:

EXSC 230 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including soccer, softball, tennis, walking, jogging, disc golf, and elementary activities.

EXSC 231 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including badminton, basketball, flag football, swimming, volleyball, and golf.

EXSC 233 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 3. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including cycling, hiking, snow sports, Pilates, aerobics, core training, and yoga.

EXSC 239 : Weight Training: Skills and Teaching Techniques. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 300 : Advocacy for Physical Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and sociological cornerstones of physical education.

EXSC 301 : K-12 Healthy and Active Lifestyle Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding the content and pedagogical knowledge required to manage a healthy and active lifestyle; how to impart this knowledge to public school students.

EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 352 : Legal and Administrative Aspects of Physical Education and Sport. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of physical education and intramural management including facilities, equipment, fiscal matters, personnel, public relations, and program administration. Legal considerations of physical education and sport programs, including constitutional rights, gender, liability, and risk management.

EXSC 360 : Curriculum and Assessment of Learning in Physical Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum development to meet national physical education standards. Assessment of psychomotor, cognitive, and affective learning, including elementary statiscal testing.

EXSC 361 : Introduction to Motor Learning. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DESCRIPTION: Motor and cognitive factors influencing acquisition of motor skills.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 369 : Exercise Physiology for Physical Educators. (3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

EXSC 430 : Principles of Coaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Developing a philosophy of coaching and officiating; understanding coaching responsibilities and techniques; preparing athletes; valuing professional relationships with others.

6. Complete one course from the following:

EXSC 330R : Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching golf, tennis, or wrestling.

EXSC 335 : Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching swimming.

EXSC 341 : Coaching Basketball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching basketball.

EXSC 342 : Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching track and field.

EXSC 344 : Coaching Football. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching football.

EXSC 345 : Coaching Volleyball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching volleyball.

EXSC 346 : Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching baseball and softball.

EXSC 347 : Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching soccer.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

EXSC 374 : Fundamental Skills and Teaching Methods for Elementary Physical Education. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and demonstrating fundamental skills; identifying immature and mature movement patterns; selecting developmentally appropriate activities; appropriate management techniques.

EXSC 377 : Secondary Practicum. (3:1:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Written and practical teaching assignments designed to help prospective teachers plan, conduct, and evaluate lessons and unit plans appropriate to adolescent students.

EXSC 380 : Use of Technology in Physical Education Teaching. (2:2:)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology: Web page design and software focusing on skill, fitness grading, digital video editing, and presentation
NOTE: Course meets secondary education technology requirements.

EXSC 461 : Adapted Physical Education for Teaching Majors. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Program, legal mandates, management techniques, and assessing and identifying special needs students.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.
(3 hours required)

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrolling in ExSc 377.

   b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (23.5 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Students can choose this minor to prepare to coach. Students who have met the university's teacher licensure requirements will also be qualified to teach physical education with this minor.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

EXSC 229 : Physical Education Pedagogy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years.
DESCRIPTION: Sport pedagogy for students *minoring* in physical education/coaching.

EXSC 234 : Team Sport Fundamentals. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy development in soccer and volleyball.
NOTE: For *minor*s in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 235 : Sport Fitness Techniques. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy in flexibility and weight training.
NOTE: For *minor*s in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 351 : Administration of Physical Education and Athletics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Management styles and techniques for physical education and athletic programs; policies concerning eligibility, contest management, safety, facilities, and legal concerns.
NOTE: For teaching and coaching minors.

EXSC 364 : Scientific Bases of Sport 1: Motor Learning. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Motor learning principles for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 366 : Scientific Bases of Sport 3: Exercise Physiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Physiology of activity for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 430 : Principles of Coaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Developing a philosophy of coaching and officiating; understanding coaching responsibilities and techniques; preparing athletes; valuing professional relationships with others.

EXSC 450 : Psychology of Sport. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

2. Complete a minimum of 1 hour from the following:
EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

3. Complete one course from the following:
EXSC 330R : Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching golf, tennis, or wrestling.

EXSC 335 : Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching swimming.

EXSC 341 : Coaching Basketball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching basketball.

EXSC 342 : Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching track and field.

EXSC 344 : Coaching Football. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching football.

EXSC 345 : Coaching Volleyball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching volleyball.

EXSC 346 : Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching baseball and softball.

EXSC 347 : Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching soccer.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Secondary Education

Fingerprint and Background Check

All candidates for teacher licensure are required by state statute to be fingerprinted and pass an FBI background check before participating in required field experiences. Fingerprints are taken in the Education Advisement Center (EAC) in 120 MCKB. Contact the EAC for the schedule. Allow from five to six weeks for fingerprints to be processed. FBI background clearance is valid for only three years. If clearance expires before graduation, candidates must repeat the fingerprinting and clearance process, including a new fee payment.

Failing to expunge a police record prior to the background check may result in a blocked registration while a panel reviews the charges. Candidates who cannot pass an FBI background check will be removed from the teacher education licensure program.

Additional Licensing Requirements

It is the student's responsibility to be sure that the Praxis test has been taken and that BYU has received the test scores, that their fingerprint background clearance is current prior to graduation and that state licensing fees have been paid. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements contact the Education Advisement and Certification Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and Utah licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

The Discipline

The Department of Teacher Education provides a program that licenses secondary teachers for the public schools. In addition to content courses in the field(s) in which they plan to teach, students complete professional education courses and practicum experiences that prepare them to teach in a secondary school setting.

Career Opportunities

Secondary education teacher.

General Information

Teaching Majors, Minors and Composites

Students wishing to certify as secondary teachers select one of the following options in addition to the professional education sequence. For specific requirements, see the department listing for the teaching major or minor.

Option 1a: Teaching Major

The following subjects *do not require* a teaching minor, although a teaching minor is recommended.

- Chemistry Education (80.5 hours)
- Dance Education (75–78 hours)
- English Teaching (74–91 hours)
- History Teaching (67–84 hours)
- Mathematics Education (74 hours)
- Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12) (78 hours)
- Physics Teaching (74.5–77.5 hours)
- Theatre Arts Education (76 hours)

Option 1b: Teaching Major and Approved Teaching Minor

The following subjects *require* an approved teaching minor.

- French Teaching (70–93 hours)
- German Teaching (76–100 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (75–108 hours)

Approved Teaching Minors for Options 1a and 1b Teaching Majors:

- Art Education (21 hours)
- Chemistry Education (15–18 hours)
- Chinese Teaching (26–42 hours) (see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (23.5 hours)
- Computer Science Teaching (17–18 hours)
- Driver Safety Education (16 hours) (see Department of Health Science)
- English Teaching (27 hours)
- French Teaching (23–38 hours)
- Geography Teaching (18 hours)
- Geology Teaching (16 hours)
- German Teaching (17–36 hours)
- Health Education (23 hours)

- History Teaching (21 hours)
- Japanese Teaching (25–41 hours) (see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Latin Teaching (23–31 hours) (see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- Mathematics Education (33 hours)
- Physics Teaching (26 hours)
- Political Science Teaching (21 hours)
- Psychology Teaching (21 hours)
- Russian Teaching (17–32 hours) (see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
- Spanish Teaching (21–37 hours)
- Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL) K–12 (19 hours)(see Linguistics and English Language Department)
- Theatre Arts Education (33 hours)

Option 2: Restricted Teaching Major and Approved Teaching Minor

The following subjects *require* an approved teaching minor from a frequently taught academic area.

- Latin Teaching (78–91 hours) (see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- School Health Education (75–80 hours)

Approved Teaching Minors for Option 2 Teaching Majors

- Art Education (21 hours)
- Chemistry Education (15–18 hours)
- Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (23.5 hours)
- Computer Science Teaching (17–18 hours)
- Driver Safety Education (16 hours) (see Department of Health Science)
- English Teaching (27 hours)
- French Teaching (23–38 hours)
- Geography Teaching (18 hours)
- German Teaching (17–36 hours)
- History Teaching (21 hours)
- Mathematics Education (33 hours)
- Physics Teaching (26 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (21–37 hours)
- Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL) K–12 (19 hours)(see Linguistics and English Language Department)
- Theatre Arts Education (33 hours)

Option 3: Composite Teaching Major

A teaching composite enables a student to complete a broader range of content area courses. However, a composite requires at least 46 hours in the teaching major, usually exceeding the 120 hours required for graduation. Teaching composite majors are available in the following subject areas:

- Art Education (K–12) (85 hours)
- Biological Science Education (82 hours) (see Department of Biology)
- Earth and Space Science Education (83–86 hours)(see Department of Geological Sciences)
- Family and Consumer Science Education (87–88 hours) (see School of Family Life)
- Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis (87 hours)
- Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis (92 hours)
- Teaching Physical Science (77.5–78.5 hours)
- Teaching Social Science (76 hours) (see Department of Teacher Education)
- Technology and Engineering Education (73–74 hours) (see School of Technology)

Teaching Majors

The following is a list of teaching majors and minors offered jointly with the Department of Teacher Education and other academic departments throughout the university. For specific major course requirements, see the department offering the teaching major or minor. For licensure requirements, refer to the above information.

Teaching Majors and Composite Teaching Majors

(Hours listed include courses taken to fill both major and licensure requirements.)

- Art Education (K–12) (85 hours)
- Biological Science Education (82 hours) (see Department of Biology)
- Chemistry Education (80.5 hours)
- Dance Education (75–78 hours)
- Earth and Space Science Education (83–86 hours)(see Department of Geological Sciences)
- English Teaching (74–91 hours)
- Family and Consumer Science Education (87–88 hours) (see School of Family Life)
- French Teaching (70–93 hours)
- German Teaching (76–100 hours)
- History Teaching (67–87 hours)
- Latin Teaching (78–91 hours) (see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- Mathematics Education (74 hours)
- Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis (87 hours)
- Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis (92 hours)
- Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12) (78 hours)
- Physics Teaching (74.5–77.5 hours)
- School Health Education (75–80 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (75–108 hours)
- Special Education: Mild/Moderate Disabilities Emphasis (55–56 hours)
- Special Education: Severe Disabilities Emphasis (55–56 hours)
- Teaching Physical Science (77.5–78.5 hours)
- Teaching Social Science (76 hours) (see Department of Teacher Education)

- Technology and Engineering Education (73–74 hours) (see School of Technology)
- Theatre Arts Education (76 hours)

Teaching Minors

- Art Education (21 hours)
- Chemistry Education (15–18 hours)
- Chinese Teaching (26–42 hours) (see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (23.5 hours)
- Computer Science Teaching (17–18 hours)
- Driver Safety Education (16 hours) (see Department of Health Science)
- English Teaching (27 hours)
- French Teaching (23–38 hours)
- Geography Teaching (18 hours)
- Geology Teaching (16 hours)
- German Teaching (17–36 hours)
- Health Education (23 hours)
- History Teaching (21 hours)
- Japanese Teaching (25–41 hours) (see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Latin Teaching (23–31 hours) (see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- Mathematics Education (33 hours)
- Physics Teaching (26 hours)
- Political Science Teaching (21 hours)
- Psychology Teaching (21 hours)
- Russian Teaching (17–32 hours) (see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
- Spanish Teaching (21–37 hours)
- Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL) K–12 (19 hours)(see Linguistics and English Language Department)
- Theatre Arts Education (33 hours)

Professional Education Requirements

All teacher candidates in secondary education complete an approved sequence of required professional education courses. Please see the appropriate department listing for each teaching major.

Fingerprint and Background Check

All candidates for teacher licensure are required by state statute to be fingerprinted and pass an FBI background check before participating in required field experiences. Fingerprints are taken in the Education Advisement Center (EAC) in 120 MCKB. Contact the EAC for the schedule. Allow from five to six weeks for fingerprints to be processed. FBI background clearance is valid for only three years. If clearance expires before graduation, candidates must repeat the fingerprinting and clearance process, including a new fee payment.

Failing to expunge a police record prior to the background check may result in a blocked registration while a panel reviews the charges. Candidates who cannot pass an FBI background check will be removed from the teacher education licensure program.

Additional Licensing Requirements

It is the student's responsibility to be sure that the Praxis test has been taken and that BYU has received the test scores, that their fingerprint background clearance is current prior to graduation and that state licensing fees have been paid. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements contact the Education Advisement and Certification Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and Utah licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

Student Teaching Prerequisites

1. *Teaching Major.* Complete all teaching major requirements. Exceptions require a written appeal submitted to Field Services (120 MCKB).
2. *Teaching Within a Minor.* Students requesting to student teach in the area of a teaching minor must (1) complete all minor course work before student teaching and (2) obtain written permission from the Teacher Education Department and the teaching minor department.
3. *Professional Education Courses.* Complete CPSE 402, Sc Ed 276R, 350, 353, 378, 379, IP&T 286, and the appropriate 377R or 477 methods course with a C or higher.
4. *Application.* Apply for student teaching at the Education Advisement and Certification Center. Packets are available online at http://education.byu.edu/fieldservices/

Licensing Procedures

Students are responsible for keeping the Education Advisement and Certification Center informed of their progress toward licensure. If any changes are to be made in the licensing program outlined in this catalog, the student must prepare and circulate the necessary memoranda to obtain approval from both the academic major department and secondary education.

To avoid undue delay licensing, students are urged to arrange for a personal review of their Education Advisement and Certification Center file well in advance of registering for their final semester, because completion of graduation requirements does not necessarily mean that all licensing requirements have been met.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

American Studies Program

American Studies Office
4095 JFSB

Jill Rudy, Coordinator
4157 JFSB, (801) 422-2869

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Program

The American Studies degree program is open enrollment.

The Discipline

The American Studies major examines the sweep of American experience, society, culture, and civilization from a variety of viewpoints—literature, history, gender, humanities, regions, politics, ethnic groups, geography, art, economics, religion, and folklore—based in core courses designed to examine the American experience from a variety of standpoints. Majors are encouraged to develop particular skills in writing; literary criticism; historical research; and social, political, and economic analysis. The program provides not only rich interdisciplinary experience but also exposure to a variety of excellent scholars and teachers.

Career Opportunities

On graduation, American Studies students are usually qualified to enter graduate and professional schools (for law, MBA, MPA, PhD), government or community service, or advanced graduate studies in the liberal arts, including American studies, American civilization, American culture, American history, and American literature.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Teaching Social Science (76 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring a formal application and departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following with at least a B grade before applying to the program:
   GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

2. Complete 6 hours (with at least a B grade in each course) from the following before applying to the program. All courses are required.
   HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

   HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

   Note: Program applications are due January 15 for fall semester and September 15 for winter semester. For additional requirements see the Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB, or go online at http://education.byu.edu/ted/secondary_forms.html.

3. Complete the following:
   HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

   (must be completed before Sc Ed 476R/496R).

4. Complete one course from 300-level or above history courses.

5. Complete the following:
   GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.

DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

6. Complete one course from the following:

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

7. Complete the following:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

and

Either any 200-level or above economics course
Or one of the following courses:

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

MANEC 300** : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 376** : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

PL SC 344 : Comparative Political Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of political economy from a comparative perspective. Classic theorists (Smith, Marx, Schumpeter, etc.); classic questions (industrialization, national economic policy, property, globalization, law, and economics).

PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

**Go to 480 TNRB to receive permission to register for these courses.

8. Complete the following:
PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

9. Complete the following:
Either
PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

Or any 300-level or higher political science course.

10. Complete the following:
PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

11. Complete one course from the following:
PSYCH 321 : Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 341 : Personality. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 350 : (Psych-Soc) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 361 : Principles of Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of learning; representative experiments.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PSYCH 365 : Motivation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Determinants of motivation, relationship of motives to emotion, cognition, personality, and action. Implications for understanding self and others.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

12. Complete one course from the following:
SOC 111 : Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

ANTHR 110 : Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.

13. Make application during sophomore year to the Teacher Education Department (201 MCKB) one semester prior to beginning the education courses. Because of space limitations not everyone who applies will be accepted.

14. Maintain a GPA of 2.85. A grade lower than C- will not be accepted in any of the major courses.

15. Complete the Professional Education Component:
a. Complete the following:
CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the

development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

(4 hours)

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 377R : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprint and FBI clearance; major-specific program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.

: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Secondary Education (Sc Ed) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Secondary Education (Sc Ed)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

300-Level Courses

SC ED 326 : Foundations of Teaching. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Knowledge base of teaching, including social, legal, familial, governmental, technological, and empirical impacts upon the teacher's personal and professional life.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 375 : Theory and Methods of Secondary Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Disciplines of education; analysis of educational practice and relationship between theories and research on education and the practice of teaching.

SC ED 377R : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprint and FBI clearance; major-specific program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

SC ED 380 : Content-Area Literacy. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377 or equivalent course.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory and related practices in literacy assessment and instruction for content-area classrooms.

400-Level Courses

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 490R : Senior Seminar. (.5-2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

SC ED 493R : Readings. (.5-2:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

SC ED 514R : Special Topics in Secondary Education. (.5-3:3:3)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: For recertification only. Does not count toward preservice secondary licensure or graduate degrees.

: Computers in Education.
: Content Area Literacy.
: Curriculum and Instruction.
: Foreign Language Education.
: Health and Physical Education.
: Language Arts Education.
: Literacy in Education.
: Mathematics and Computer Science Education.
: Science Education.
: Social Science Education.

SC ED 515R : Special Topics in Education. (.5-3:ARR:1)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: For recertification only. Must have prior approval of department to count toward graduate degrees.

: Classroom Management.
: Comprehension Instruction.
: Content Area Literacy.
: Effective Teaching.
: Foundations of Literacy.
: Literacy Assessment and Intervention.
: Literacy Development and Instruction.
: Literature for Young People.
: Science Education.
: Secondary Curriculum.
: Secondary Instruction.
: Teaching and Learning.
: Writing Instruction.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Secondary Education Home

Back to Teacher Education Department Home

BYU Undergraduate Catalog 2008-2009

Teacher Education Faculty

Professors

Bullough, Robert V

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1971
MEd, University of Utah, 1973
PhD, Ohio State University, 1976

Earle, Rodney S

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Indiana University, 1981

Egan, Merritt Winston

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
MAT, Oakland University, 1972
PhD, University of Florida, 1974

Eldredge, J Lloyd

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1958
MS, University of Utah, 1962
EdD, University of Utah, 1970

Hansen, J Merrell

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1964
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1971

Jacobs, James S

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1968
MAT, Stanford University, 1970
EdD, University of Georgia, 1978

Center
| LDS

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA in American Studies

Minor in Western American Studies

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Monroe, Eula Ewing

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Western Kentucky University, 1960
MA, Western Kentucky University, 1964
EdD, George Peabody College for Teachers of Vanderbilt University, 1980

Tolman, Marvin N

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1964
MS, University of Utah, 1969
EdD, Utah State University, 1975

Tunnell, Michael O.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1973
MEd, Utah State University, 1978
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1986

Tuttle, Marie

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1995

Wentworth, Nancy

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1971
MA, University of Utah, 1972
PhD, University of Utah, 1993

Associate Professors

Bahr, Damon L

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MEd, Utah State University, 1982
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1988

Birrell, James Richard

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MEd, University of Utah, 1984
EdD, University of Nevada, 1993

Cantrell, Pamela

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MEd, Southern Utah University, 1998
PhD, University of Wyoming, 2000

Draper, Roni Jo

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Nevada, Reno, 1991
MS, University of Nevada, Reno, 1995
PhD, University of Nevada, Reno, 2000

Erickson, Lynnette B.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Arizona State University, 1996

Graham, Charles Ray

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1977

Morrison, Timothy G

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, University of Illinois, 1986

Pinnegar, Stefinee E

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, University of Arizona, 1989

Wilcox, Bradley Ray

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of Wyoming, 1994

Young, Janet R

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Oklahoma, 1996

Assistant Professors

Bingham, Gary

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1996
MS, Utah State University, 1998
PhD, Purdue University, 2002

Feinauer, Erika

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: EdD, Harvard Graduate School of Education, 2006

Hall, Kendra Maria

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, Columbia University, 2002
PhD, Columbia University, 2002

Korth, Byran B

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Auburn University, 2000

Livingston, Nancy

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1964
MS, University of Utah, 1970
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1975

Ridlon, Candice L.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Broward Community College, 1972
BS, Florida State University, 1980
MEd, Valdosta State University, 1996
PhD, Florida State University, 1999

Smith, Leigh K

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1975
BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Utah, 2002

Assistant Teaching Professor

Losser, Janet L

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1989
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Georgia, 2004

Instructor

Juarez, Brenda Gayle

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MEd, University of Utah, 1997
PhD, University of Utah, 2005

Assistant Lecturer

Tuft, Elaine

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Teacher Education
RANK: Assistant Lecturer
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1984
MA, Utah State University, 1991
PhD, Michigan State University, 2005

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Technology

Val Hawks, Director
265 CTB, (801) 422-6300

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, (801) 422-4325

Admission to Degree Program

Each degree program in the School of Technology has specific enrollment requirements. Please see each program's admission requirements for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Construction Management
BS in Facility and Property Management
BFA in Industrial Design
BS in Information Technology
BS in Manufacturing Engineering Technology
BS in Technology and Engineering Education

Minors

Information Technology
Manufacturing

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Technology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Animation Degree Program

The BFA in animation is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of the Department of Theatre and Media Arts, the Department of Visual Arts, and the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology's School of Technology. Please see the Visual Arts section of this catalog for degree requirements, or go to the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for more information about entrance requirements to this program.

General Information

Financial Support Opportunities

In addition to general university scholarships and student employment, the School of Technology offers scholarships, an academic internship program with industry, and a variety of departmental part-time jobs such as research assistant, new-product developer, lab assistant, paper grader, electronics technician, maintenance assistant, computer operator, etc.

Academic Internships

Industrial experience in the major before graduation is strongly encouraged. Qualified students may enroll in an academic internship, which must be approved before the actual experience. A formal report and employer evaluation are required.

Transfer Credit

When transferring into the school, students should meet with Beverly Harmon, School of Technology advisor, before registering for classes to evaluate their technical courses and to get help in planning their schedule for completing their remaining course work.

Extracurricular Activities

Students are encouraged to join student chapters of national professional organizations affiliated with their major area of study. Student interaction, leadership, and career awareness are important to engineering and technology studies. All majors are encouraged to not only become members and actively participate in these chapters but also to support field trips, guest speakers, banquets, and program activities.

Professional Program Acceptance

Students must be accepted into the professional program before they may take upper-division courses in construction management, facility and property management, and industrial design. Construction management and industrial design have additional restrictions that apply to major courses. (See the construction management and the industrial design sections of this catalog that follow.) A professional program application (available from the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center, 264 CB) must be completed and submitted to the advisement center.

Academic Standards and Continuance

On gaining acceptance into the professional program, students must maintain a minimum university cumulative grade point average of 2.0. A professional program course may not be retaken more than once.

Student Advising

We strongly encourage students to visit with the School of Technology advisor (250 SNLB) at least every year, and preferably every semester, to ensure that they are making appropriate progress in the program and taking courses in the appropriate sequence.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Construction Management

Kevin Miller, Chair
230 SNLB, (801) 422-2021

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the construction management (CM) preprofessional program is open to all BYU students. Students may then apply for the professional program. An application to the professional program must be submitted upon completion of required prerequisite courses (Phscs 105, Engl 150 or equivalent, Math 112, and CM 105). Along with the application, the candidate should send a resumé and a letter indicating why he or she would like to major in construction management, including in it a paragraph explaining the candidate's intentions for fulfilling the required 300 hours of construction-related work. Applicants will be evaluated based on GPA, work experience, and leadership.

Program application deadlines are August 1, December 1, and April 1. Upon acceptance into the professional level, students are required to attend one spring or summer term, and enroll in CM courses. Students admitted to the construction management professional program during the April admittance cycle must attend BYU during the summer term following admittance and complete CM 210, 211, and 217 during that summer term. Students unable to do this will need to reapply to the professional program.

The Discipline

Construction management is the business of managing projects. It is a rapidly growing field that requires technical expertise and the ability to work with people, and there is increasing demand in the industry for capable graduates. Construction management offers an exciting career that requires abilities in business management, architecture, engineering, and construction technology.

Learning Outcomes

- Lead the construction process from inception to closeout.
- Construct sustainable projects that require fewer resources to build and operate during the lifecycle of the project.
- Build projects more efficiently while maintaining a safe work environment.
- Communicate with and understand the concerns of designers, owners, trade contractors, and building officials.
- The ability to use cutting-edge construction tools to effectively build and manage construction projects.
- Maintain high moral and ethical standards.
- Desire and pursue lifelong learning and service.
- Support worthwhile causes for the benefit of mankind.

Career Opportunities

The program has had nearly 100 percent placement within the construction industry. Graduates find employment in a variety of construction-industry-related positions. Typical position titles are superintendent, estimator, scheduler, field engineer, general contractor, safety engineer, project manager, procurement manager, project engineer, cost controller, project controller, site analyst, etc.

Alumni find they are qualified for employment in all types of construction. It is a broad-based program that provides the training and experience needed for several occupational opportunities.

This major is also excellent preparation for students desiring graduate study in architecture, business management, or construction law.

General Information

High School Preparation

Recommended high school courses include drafting, algebra, trigonometry, calculus, physics, and construction, along with the other courses necessary for admittance to BYU.

Prearchitecture Program

Brigham Young University does not have an architecture program, but construction management provides an excellent preparatory program for a master's degree in architecture. Consult with the School of Technology advisor concerning a prearchitecture program.

Special Notice

Students receiving C– or lower grades in required courses will be placed on department probationary status.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Construction Management (99 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or the School of Technology advisor for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following preprofessional courses:
   CM 105 : Construction Documents. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: How and why specific types of contract documents and specifications are compiled for a project; reading and interpreting complex construction documents.
   NOTE: Fee.

   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   or equivalent
   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   NOTE: Honors also.

   PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
   DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

2. Be accepted into the professional program. Students admitted to the construction management professional program during the April admittance cycle must attend BYU during the summer term following admittance and complete CM 210, 211, and 217 during that summer term. Students unable to do this will need to reapply to the professional program.

3. Students must complete 300 hours of preapproved construction-related work after acceptance into the professional program and submit a report during the CM 491R class.

4. Complete the following professional courses:
   CM 155 : Architectural Drafting. (3:2:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Developing architectural plans; floor, foundation, plot, elevations, sections, and details. Introduction to architectural CAD
   NOTE: Fee.

   CM 210 : Light Structural Systems. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Light structural construction using wood and metal framing systems.
   NOTE: Fee.

CM 211 : Finishing Methods in Construction. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Managing the interior and exterior finish work in construction. Quality-control procedures and inspection.

CM 217 : Concrete and Masonry Construction. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Quality concrete and masonry, including admixtures, concrete forming reinforcement, curing, and testing. Brick and block masonry construction. Quality-control.

CM 241 : Electrical Systems in Construction. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Electrical circuits in the construction industry.

CM 311 : Quantity Takeoffs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210, 211, 217.
DESCRIPTION: Compiling, organizing, and analyzing all the items that influence and contribute to total cost of residential and commercial construction projects. Maximizing estimating effectiveness and efficiency through computer integration.

CM 320 : Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210.
DESCRIPTION: Basic plumbing and HVAC principles, materials; installation and application methods. Systems sizing and design, heat loss/gain calculations, and payback analysis. Managing the plumbing and HVAC trades.

CM 335 : Construction Equipment and Soils Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 330.
DESCRIPTION: Basic soil mechanics and subsurface construction theory and practice for foundations of building and engineered facilities. Underpinning, piling, dry and wet excavating, dewatering, cofferdams, caissons, and spread and strip foundations. Lecture, field trips.

CM 345 : Construction Safety Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Safety requirements and responsibilities in construction; cost and impact of accidents; accident investigation; safety inspection; hazards analysis; substance abuse; record keeping.

CM 385 : Construction Contracts and Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Contractual obligations defined, including agency, contract interpretation, performance and liability issues, breach and termination, judicial remedy, and arbitration as applied to the construction industry. Overview of municipal zoning ordinances and codes.

CM 411 : Advanced Estimating and Bidding. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311.
DESCRIPTION: Commercial estimating topics include competitive bidding strategies, bid analysis, paper and electronic plans, site work, and computerized estimating systems.

CM 412 : Construction Scheduling and Cost Control. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, scheduling, and monitoring construction projects, including development of critical path networks (CPM and PERT), Gannt bar charts, construction cost control, and reporting practices.

CM 415 : Construction Project Management and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 412.
DESCRIPTION: Managing and controlling construction projects. Planning, startup procedures, inspections, progress measurements, field reports, change order and submittal processing, equipment management, and project closeout.

CM 426 : Real Estate Principles and Development. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: BusM 300 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of real estate investments, emphasizing mortgage instruments and development of property from raw land to residential and commercial properties.

CM 445 : Construction Company Operations and Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 300; CM 415 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, controlling, and directing operations of construction companies; financial management, budgeting, cash-flow analysis, purchasing and cost control, and business planning.

5. Complete seven registrations of the following (one enrollment each semester except when enrolled in CM 491R):
CM 291R : Undergraduate Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
NOTE: Required each semester for undergraduate majors who are not enrolled in 491R. School lecture series attendance required.

6. Complete one registration of the following during the next to last semester before graduation:
CM 491R : Senior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing best employment opportunities and strategy; interviewing, sales negotiations, resume and letter writing, and salary negotiations. Report on 300 hours of construction-related work experience.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

7. Complete the following supporting courses:
ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

CE EN 103 : Engineering Mechanics--Statics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119 or concurrent enrollment (if 119, then Math 111 must have already been taken).
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

CE EN 113 : Engineering Measurements. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111, CEEn 112.
DESCRIPTION: Measurement of horizontal and vertical distances and angles to locate engineering projects including profiles, plane and topographical mapping, site layout, and earthwork.

CE EN 302 : Structures and Strength of Materials Fundamentals. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105, CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Structural mechanics and strength of materials for soils, woods, concrete, and steel applied to practical construction situations.
NOTE: For nonmajors only.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

GEOL 330 : Geology for Engineers. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Geological processes and materials bearing on engineering practices. Field trips.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in American Studies (45 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students can complete the Advanced Writing requirement by taking Engl 311, 312, 314, 315, or 316 according to individual academic direction. Those interested in graduate work are urged to take the Hist 200, 490 option.

2. Majors should begin course work in the major by taking AmSt 303 fall semester of the sophomore or (at latest) junior year.

3. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

   HUM 261 : Introduction to American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

   HUM 262 : Introduction to American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

   PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

4. Complete the following:

   AM ST 303 : Studies in the American Experience. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Social and intellectual life in American culture from the colonial period to the present.

5. Complete ten courses (30 hours) from the following:

   AM ST 200 : The American West as a Region. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Geography, natural history, history, and cultures of the American West.

   AM ST 360 : Film in American Culture. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Selected readings, lectures, and analysis of specific motion pictures as social documents, reflecting different facets of the American experience.

   AM ST 390R : Topics in American Studies. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Multidisciplinary study of a carefully defined problem in American culture. Topics vary.

   (twice only)
   AM ST 395 : Theories and Methods in American Studies. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: AmSt 303.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings/discussion seminar introducing students to theories, definition, and practice of American Studies.

   ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

   ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through

organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

PHIL 213 : Introduction to Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and justification of moral standards, beliefs, and decisions.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

8. Complete one course from the following:
ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

M COM 320 : Communication in Organizational Settings. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: GE First-Year Writing requirement. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
DESCRIPTION: Developing written and oral communications for professional organizations, including composing and designing employment communications. Incorporates oral presentations.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

9. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Construction Management (CM) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Construction Management (CM)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CM 105 : Construction Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How and why specific types of contract documents and specifications are compiled for a project; reading and interpreting complex construction documents.
NOTE: Fee.

CM 155 : Architectural Drafting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing architectural plans; floor, foundation, plot, elevations, sections, and details. Introduction to architectural CAD
NOTE: Fee.

CM 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

CM 210 : Light Structural Systems. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Light structural construction using wood and metal framing systems.
NOTE: Fee.

CM 211 : Finishing Methods in Construction. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Managing the interior and exterior finish work in construction. Quality-control procedures and inspection.

CM 217 : Concrete and Masonry Construction. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Quality concrete and masonry, including admixtures, concrete forming reinforcement, curing, and testing. Brick and block masonry construction. Quality-control.

CM 241 : Electrical Systems in Construction. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Electrical circuits in the construction industry.

CM 291R : Undergraduate Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
NOTE: Required each semester for undergraduate majors who are not enrolled in 491R. School lecture series attendance required.

300-Level Courses

CM 311 : Quantity Takeoffs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210, 211, 217.
DESCRIPTION: Compiling, organizing, and analyzing all the items that influence and contribute to total cost of residential and commercial construction projects. Maximizing estimating effectiveness and efficiency through computer integration.

CM 320 : Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210.
DESCRIPTION: Basic plumbing and HVAC principles, materials; installation and application methods. Systems sizing and design, heat loss/gain calculations, and payback analysis. Managing the plumbing and HVAC trades.

CM 335 : Construction Equipment and Soils Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 330.
DESCRIPTION: Basic soil mechanics and subsurface construction theory and practice for foundations of building and engineered facilities. Underpinning, piling, dry and wet excavating, dewatering, cofferdams, caissons, and spread and strip foundations. Lecture, field trips.

CM 345 : Construction Safety Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

CM 385 : Construction Contracts and Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Contractual obligations defined, including agency, contract interpretation, performance and liability issues, breach and termination, judicial remedy, and arbitration as applied to the construction industry. Overview of municipal zoning ordinances and codes.

400-Level Courses

CM 411 : Advanced Estimating and Bidding. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311.
DESCRIPTION: Commercial estimating topics include competitive bidding strategies, bid analysis, paper and electronic plans, site work, and computerized estimating systems.

CM 412 : Construction Scheduling and Cost Control. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, scheduling, and monitoring construction projects, including development of critical path networks (CPM and PERT), Gannt bar charts, construction cost control, and reporting practices.

CM 415 : Construction Project Management and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 412.
DESCRIPTION: Managing and controlling construction projects. Planning, startup procedures, inspections, progress measurements, field reports, change order and submittal processing, equipment management, and project closeout.

CM 426 : Real Estate Principles and Development. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 300 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of real estate investments, emphasizing mortgage instruments and development of property from raw land to residential and commercial properties.

CM 445 : Construction Company Operations and Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 300; CM 415 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, controlling, and directing operations of construction companies; financial management, budgeting, cash-flow analysis, purchasing and cost control, and business planning.

CM 491R : Senior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing best employment opportunities and strategy; interviewing, sales negotiations, resume and letter writing, and salary negotiations. Report on 300 hours of construction-related work experience.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CM 494R : Special Problems in Construction Management. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CM 510 : Integrating Construction Software. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CM 411 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating information generated through state-of-the-art hardware and software using scheduling, cost control, estimating, spreadsheets, databases, and word processing to improve the construction process.

Back to Construction Management Home

Back to School of Technology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Facility and Property Management

Jeffery L. Campbell, Chair
230 SNLB, (801) 422-2021

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the facility and property management preprofessional program is open to all BYU students, who may then apply for the professional program. After completing required prerequisite courses, candidates should send an application to the professional program, along with a letter indicating what skills they have that would make them a successful facility manager; a description of the candidate's leadership experience; and a resumé. Applicants will be evaluated based on GPA, skills, leadership, and work experience.

Program application deadlines are April 1, August 1, and December 1.

The Discipline

This program prepares students to be part of the administrative/supervisory team in the increasingly complex world of facilities and property management. The facilities manager combines management practices with the most current technical knowledge in nine competency areas: real estate, operations and maintenance, human and environmental factors, project planning and management, finance, quality assessment and innovation, facility administration, communication, and technology.

Career Opportunities

The program has nearly 100 percent job placement within the field of facilities management. Employment can be found with colleges and universities, hospitals and health care centers, sports and entertainment arenas, and general business facilities.

Responsibilities encompass supervision of planning, renovation, and maintenance of buildings and grounds. Attention is given to employee health and safety, security, disaster planning, and environmental concerns. The program is broad based and prepares managers for all types of facilities, with salaries among the upper-level of university graduates.

Further educational opportunities include advanced degrees in facilities management, business administration, public administration, or other related fields.

Learning Outcomes

- Develop facility leadership
- Understand human and environmental factors
- Planning and project management
- Understand finance in the facility and property management environment
- Operations and maintenance
- Principle and practices of real estate
- Enhance communication skills
- Integrative and problem solving skills

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Facility and Property Management (87 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or the School of Technology advisor for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following preprofessional courses:
   ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

   FPM 110 : Fundamentals of Facility and Property Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of the profession of facility and property managaement, including space regulations, finance, project management, and other current practices.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

2. Be accepted into the professional program.

3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   FPM 199R : Technical Internship. (2:0:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program or coordinator's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Cooperative education and related technical on-the-job work experience.

4. Complete six registrations of the following:
   FPM 291R : Special Topics in Facility and Property Management. (.5:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Topics presented by professionals relating to the facility and property management discipline.

5. Complete the following:
   BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
   NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

CM 105 : Construction Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How and why specific types of contract documents and specifications are compiled for a project; reading and interpreting complex construction documents.
NOTE: Fee.

CM 155 : Architectural Drafting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing architectural plans; floor, foundation, plot, elevations, sections, and details. Introduction to architectural CAD
NOTE: Fee.

CM 210 : Light Structural Systems. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Light structural construction using wood and metal framing systems.
NOTE: Fee.

CM 211 : Finishing Methods in Construction. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Managing the interior and exterior finish work in construction. Quality-control procedures and inspection.

CM 241 : Electrical Systems in Construction. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Electrical circuits in the construction industry.

CM 311 : Quantity Takeoffs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210, 211, 217.
DESCRIPTION: Compiling, organizing, and analyzing all the items that influence and contribute to total cost of residential and commercial construction projects. Maximizing estimating effectiveness and efficiency through computer integration.

CM 320 : Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 210.
DESCRIPTION: Basic plumbing and HVAC principles, materials; installation and application methods. Systems sizing and design, heat loss/gain calculations, and payback analysis. Managing the plumbing and HVAC trades.

CM 385 : Construction Contracts and Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Contractual obligations defined, including agency, contract interpretation, performance and liability issues, breach and termination, judicial remedy, and arbitration as applied to the construction industry. Overview of municipal zoning ordinances and codes.

CM 412 : Construction Scheduling and Cost Control. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, scheduling, and monitoring construction projects, including development of critical path networks (CPM and PERT), Gannt bar charts, construction cost control, and reporting practices.

CM 415 : Construction Project Management and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 412.
DESCRIPTION: Managing and controlling construction projects. Planning, startup procedures, inspections, progress measurements, field reports, change order and submittal processing, equipment management, and project closeout.

CM 426 : Real Estate Principles and Development. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 300 and instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Principles of real estate investments, emphasizing mortgage instruments and development of property from raw land to residential and commercial properties.

FPM 310 : Human and Environmental Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 100.
DESCRIPTION: Regulatory occupancy codes, safety and security planning. U.S. Green Building Council LEED for Existing Buildings accreditation preparation.

FPM 340 : Operations and Maintenance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; CM 241, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Acquisition, operation, maintenance, and disposal of building systems, structures, permanent interiors, furniture, and equipment; grounds and other exterior elements.

FPM 360 : Facility and Property Management Technologies. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110.
DESCRIPTION: Current trends and practices of computer-aided facility management (CAFM), computerized maintenance management systems (CMMS), and integrated computer-aided design (CADD) applications and databases.

FPM 399R : Capstone Internship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Cooperative education and related facility and property management on-the-job work experience. Project report required for IFMA Facility Management Professional (FMP) designation.

FPM 420 : Commercial Real Estate Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; CM 426.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of commercial real estate investment, understanding market influences, contracts and property portfolio management.

FPM 430 : Capital Planning and Asset Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding useful life of building and infrastructure systems and creating a process to manage their life cycles; emphasis on justifying and funding capital projects.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

ORG B 327 : Human Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

6. Complete one course from the following:
BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F

DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

7. Complete 5 credit hours form the following:

CM 345 : Construction Safety Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Safety requirements and responsibilities in construction; cost and impact of accidents; accident investigation; safety inspection; hazards analysis; substance abuse; record keeping.

CM 411 : Advanced Estimating and Bidding. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CM 311.
DESCRIPTION: Commercial estimating topics include competitive bidding strategies, bid analysis, paper and electronic plans, site work, and computerized estimating systems.

P MGT 321 : Financial Issues in Public and Not-for-Profit Management. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fund accounting, budgeting processes, and sources of revenue such as taxes, municipal bonds, user fees, donations, grants, dues, and ticket sales.

RMYL 371 : Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

RMYL 483 : Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

8. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Facility and Property Management (FPM) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Facility and Property Management (FPM)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

FPM 110 : Fundamentals of Facility and Property Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the profession of facility and property managaement, including space regulations, finance, project management, and other current practices.

FPM 199R : Technical Internship. (2:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program or coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Cooperative education and related technical on-the-job work experience.

200-Level Courses

FPM 291R : Special Topics in Facility and Property Management. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics presented by professionals relating to the facility and property management discipline.

300-Level Courses

FPM 310 : Human and Environmental Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 100.
DESCRIPTION: Regulatory occupancy codes, safety and security planning. U.S. Green Building Council LEED for Existing Buildings accreditation preparation.

FPM 340 : Operations and Maintenance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; CM 241, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Acquisition, operation, maintenance, and disposal of building systems, structures, permanent interiors, furniture, and equipment; grounds and other exterior elements.

FPM 360 : Facility and Property Management Technologies. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110.
DESCRIPTION: Current trends and practices of computer-aided facility management (CAFM), computerized maintenance management systems (CMMS), and integrated computer-aided design (CADD) applications and databases.

FPM 399R : Capstone Internship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Cooperative education and related facility and property management on-the-job work experience. Project report required for IFMA Facility Management Professional (FMP) designation.

400-Level Courses

FPM 420 : Commercial Real Estate Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110; CM 426.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of commercial real estate investment, understanding market influences, contracts and property portfolio management.

FPM 430 : Capital Planning and Asset Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; FPM 110, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding useful life of building and infrastructure systems and creating a process to manage their life cycles; emphasis on justifying and funding capital projects.

FPM 494R : Special Topics in Facilty and Property Management. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the facilities and property management professional program; instructor's consent.

Back to Facility and Property Management Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to School of Technology Department Home

"Gilded Age."

ECON 274 : American Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

ENGL 392 : American Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: American folk art and literature and the historical and cultural circumstances from which they developed.

ENGL 395R : Studies in Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

HIST 395 : Technology in America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Benefits and liabilities of technological complexity.

HUM 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular period or movement. Problems of periodization. Topics vary.

: 12th Century Renaissance.
: 14th Century.
: 17th Century.
: 18th Century.
: Character in 17th Century.
: Classical Period.
: Fin De Siecle.
: Impressionism.
: Later 19th Century.
: Medieval Period.
: Modernism.
: Postmodernism.
: Reformation and Counter Reformation.
: Renaissance.
: Romanticism.
: Victorian Art and Culture.
: Women in 19th Century.
: Women in the 18th Century.

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Industrial Design

Richard E. Fry, Chair
265 CTB, (801) 422-6300

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the freshman level in the industrial design program is obtained through an application process. Special enrollment limitations for degree programs will be applied. Please see the School of Technology advisor (250 SNLB) for specific details.

After one year of skill development and introductory studies, students apply for the BFA (bachelor of fine arts) candidacy.

The Discipline

Industrial design is a blend of art and technology. It focuses on making industrially produced objects that are appropriate aesthetically and useful to specific people/markets. Industrial design requires skills in two- and three-dimensional aesthetics, drawing, and visual communications, as well as an understanding of how things are manufactured and work, and are positioned in the marketplace.

Career Opportunities

Industrial designers specialize in areas as diverse as automobiles, toys, sports and medical equipment, consumer products for the home and business, exhibits, furniture, electronics, and computer design.

Learning Outcomes

- Apply and critique the application of aesthetic principles
- Understand creativity techniques and the aptitudes necessary to be successful in industrial design.
- Understand the basics of technology
- Investigate and synthesize the requirements of multiple stakeholders and reconcile those needs to provide exciting, manufacturable solutions
- Communicate concepts and requirements to other designers and their colleagues who work with them; to clients and employers; and to prospective clients and employers
- Apply basic business practices as they relate to industrial design
- Discuss the basics of design history and identify contemporary issues in industrial design

The Industrial Design Program

The industrial design program serves three main purposes: (1) it teaches the aesthetic and creative skills necessary to be successful in the discipline, (2) it provides opportunities to practice industrial design principles, and (3) it teaches about the relationship of design to business and culture. The program is enhanced by a strong tradition of working with outside industry sponsors for projects on which to practice core skills.

Responding to the popularity of computer modeling and visualization, the industrial design program also participates in the interdisciplinary animation degree with the Visual Arts and the Theatre and Media Arts departments. For more information about this degree and its requirements, please see the Visual Arts section of this catalog.

General Information

Application Procedures for Freshmen

Students are accepted into the preprofessional program twice a year: in April for spring/summer enrollment and in August for fall/winter. Enrollment is limited and based on several qualifications:

1. Admission to the university.
2. Completion of the program application form.
3. Submission of the portfolio.
4. Completion of the creative exercise.
5. Passing the portfolio review.

Appropriate forms are contained in an application packet available from the School of Technology office (250 SNLB).

Application packets must be obtained and returned before April 1 for spring enrollment or August 1 for fall. Individuals will be notified whether or not they have been accepted by April 15 for spring/summer or August 20 for fall/winter.

Note: Individuals receiving notice of acceptance will be permitted to register for the foundation 100-level core courses for the term or semester immediately following their acceptance. Failure to do so will require reapplication to the industrial design program for the year the student actually plans to attend.

Industrial Design Core

Required of all industrial design majors, the core enables students to acquire a basic and broad understanding of design principles before engaging in the specific content of the discipline. It is a predisciplinary preparation that embraces basic aesthetic awareness, systems for visual communication, and form generation principles.

Professional Degree Program Enrollment

Permission to enroll for sophomore- through senior-level BFA degree program courses is granted to students upon satisfactory development of skills and creative abilities, demonstrated in a review of a portfolio consisting of work completed during the preceding year. Faculty assess student GPA combined with a portfolio of work submitted by students wishing to advance. Students invited to continue are permitted to enroll in specified courses at the next academic level. Students may apply to the professional program multiple times, but may only take freshman foundation courses once.

Transfer Students

Transfer students applying for admission to the preprofessional- or professional-level BFA program must follow the same requirements as students currently enrolled in BYU.

Degree Program Advisors

Advisors are appointed to counsel students in the major. Advisors will advise students about program objectives, course content and sequence, career goals, and other matters pertaining to their major field of study.

Department Probationary Status

Students can be placed on probationary status for the following:

1. Inadequate academic performance. This can be defined by, but not limited to, receiving a D or E grade in major courses.
2. Unprofessional attitude and lack of commitment.
3. BYU Honor Code violations.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Industrial Design (73 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or the School of Technology advisor (230 SNLB) for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Meet application criteria for admission into program.
2. Complete all 100-level foundation courses before admission into sophomore-level courses.
3. Complete a portfolio at the conclusion of each year for advancement to the next year's curriculum.
4. Complete the following core requirements:

INDES 130A : Visual Design Language/Computers for Industrial Design. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Visual organization; principles and elements of design. Digital image manipulation/creation for industrial design. Raster- and vector-based programs.

INDES 130B : Visual Design Language/Computers for Industrial Design. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Su
DESCRIPTION: Visual organization; principles and elements of design. Digital image manipulation/creation for industrial design. Raster- and vector-based programs.

INDES 131A : Creativity and Design Thinking. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Flexible, visual, and creative thinking; applying these modes to industrial design.

INDES 131B : Creativity and Design Thinking. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Flexible, visual, and creative thinking; applying these modes to industrial design.

INDES 132A : Form and Surface Development. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring origin and nature of geometric and organic form. Learning to control specific surface characteristics such as highlight and finish.

INDES 132B : Form and Surface Development. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Exploring origin and nature of geometric and organic form. Learning to control specific surface characteristics such as highlight and finish.

INDES 133A : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

INDES 133B : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

5. Complete the following:

INDES 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Computer software programs relative to design disciplines.

INDES 214R : Model Making and Prototyping. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and fundamentals of model making and prototype construction. Creative use of multiple materials and processes. Plastic, composites, foam core, wood, metal, and found objects.

INDES 230 : Industrial Design Studio 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Industrial design research, analysis, and problem-solving methods.

INDES 231 : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Product presentation methods emphasizing perspective, value, scale, accuracy, and color.

INDES 232 : Industrial Design Studio 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 230, 231.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 230, emphasizing human factors and ergonomics, restrictions and possibilities of materials and manufacturing, and coherent presentation of problems, processes and ideas.

INDES 233 : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 231.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 231.

INDES 310 : Advanced Computer Applications. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific program applications of computers to design disciplines.

INDES 340 : Graphics Studies for Industrial Design 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to graphic skills such as corporate identity, packaging design, logo design, and web/interface design elements.

INDES 488 : Professional Practices of the Designer. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: junior or senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the design profession.

TEE 229 : Material Properties and Processes. (3:2:4)
DESCRIPTION: Solving real-world problems through layout, measurement, material properties, forming, molding, cutting, fastening, joining, finishing, and fabricating with wood, metal, plastic, and concrete.
NOTE: Fee.

6. Complete a minimum of one hour from the following:

INDES 399R : Professional Internship. (1-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: School's and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

7. Complete three courses from the following:

INDES 330 : Industrial Design Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Designer responsibilities, structured and unstructured procedures in problem solving, client relationships, functional relationships, and mechanisms and materials.

INDES 332 : Industrial Design Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 330 with renewed emphasis on human factors and ergonomics, plus market and user requirements and developing written briefs.

INDES 430 : Industrial Design Studio 5. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 332, 333.
DESCRIPTION: Systems design problems from initial research and analysis to final presentation of working drawings and models, with concern for ergonomics, anthropometries, marketing, user and buyer, production, function, and structure.

INDES 432 : Industrial Design Studio 6. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330, 332, 430.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced design projects.

8. Complete one additional course from the following:
INDES 330 : Industrial Design Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Designer responsibilities, structured and unstructured procedures in problem solving, client relationships, functional relationships, and mechanisms and materials.

INDES 332 : Industrial Design Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 330 with renewed emphasis on human factors and ergonomics, plus market and user requirements and developing written briefs.

INDES 430 : Industrial Design Studio 5. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 332, 333.
DESCRIPTION: Systems design problems from initial research and analysis to final presentation of working drawings and models, with concern for ergonomics, anthropometries, marketing, user and buyer, production, function, and structure.

INDES 432 : Industrial Design Studio 6. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330, 332, 430.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced design projects.

INDES 435R : Furniture Design. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TTE 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, materials, processes, structures, production methods, and prototype construction.

INDES 475R : Transportation Design. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploration in the aesthetics, human factors, marketing requirements, and presentation aspects unique to transportation design, emphasizing working with outside project sponsors.

Note: Courses taken for item 7 cannot be used for item 8.

9. Complete 6 hours from the following:
INDES 497R : BFA Final Project. (3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project with minimum guidance, showing high degree of competence within chosen major.

Note: Me En 475, 476 can be substituted for this requirement.

10. Complete the following art history requirement:
INDES 339 : History of Products. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.

DESCRIPTION: Overview of artifacts and products; how they have influenced society from prehistory to present day.

11. Complete 9 hours of art history from the following:
    a. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

HUM 201 : Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

MFG 201 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Egyptian antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

    b. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

HUM 202 : Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

MFG 202 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

    c. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

12. Complete 5 hours from the following:

INDES 331R : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 3. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the BFA program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Sketching and rendering techniques focused on surface materials and finishes.

INDES 341 : Graphics Studies for Industrial Design 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

INDES 435R : Furniture Design. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TTE 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, materials, processes, structures, production methods, and prototype construction.

INDES 475R : Transportation Design. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploration in the aesthetics, human factors, marketing requirements, and presentation aspects unique to transportation design, emphasizing working with outside project sponsors.

INDES 494R : Special Problems in Design. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in area of special interest.

MFG 220 : Material Removal. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods and procedures to shape materials using basic machine tools; cutting theory, tool selection, metrology methods, and machine operation. Introduction to computer numerical control.

MFG 230 : Computer-Aided Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 220, Math 111, Me En 172,
DESCRIPTION: Manual and computer-assisted programming of computer numerical controlled (CNC) equipment. Developing CNC programs to manufacture parts for high production.

MFG 355 : Plastics Materials and Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding plastic materials, properties, and uses. Survey of plastic-manufacturing processes. Designing plastic products and manufacturing systems.

MFG 479 : (Mfg-BusM) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: BusM 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

TMA 452R : Puppetry. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and experience constructing and operating puppets for use in performance, recreational, and educational settings.

TEE 200 : Studio Methods in Prototyping. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and practices of prototype construction.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 353R : Computer Art. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the computer as a tool for visual self-expression.

Note: Courses taken for item 7 and item 8 cannot be used for item 12.

13. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Industrial Design (InDes) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Industrial Design (InDes)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

INDES 130A : Visual Design Language/Computers for Industrial Design. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Visual organization; principles and elements of design. Digital image manipulation/creation for industrial design. Raster- and vector-based programs.

INDES 130B : Visual Design Language/Computers for Industrial Design. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Su
DESCRIPTION: Visual organization; principles and elements of design. Digital image manipulation/creation for industrial design. Raster- and vector-based programs.

INDES 131A : Creativity and Design Thinking. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Flexible, visual, and creative thinking; applying these modes to industrial design.

INDES 131B : Creativity and Design Thinking. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Flexible, visual, and creative thinking; applying these modes to industrial design.

INDES 132A : Form and Surface Development. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring origin and nature of geometric and organic form. Learning to control specific surface characteristics such as highlight and finish.

INDES 132B : Form and Surface Development. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Exploring origin and nature of geometric and organic form. Learning to control specific surface characteristics such as highlight and finish.

INDES 133A : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

INDES 133B : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

200-Level Courses

INDES 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Computer software programs relative to design disciplines.

INDES 214R : Model Making and Prototyping. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and fundamentals of model making and prototype construction. Creative use of multiple materials and processes. Plastic, composites, foam core, wood, metal, and found objects.

INDES 230 : Industrial Design Studio 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Industrial design research, analysis, and problem-solving methods.

INDES 231 : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Product presentation methods emphasizing perspective, value, scale, accuracy, and color.

INDES 232 : Industrial Design Studio 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 230, 231.

INDES 233 : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 2. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 231.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 231.

INDES 250 : Introduction to Three-Dimensional Computer Graphics. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: admittance to animation major.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of modeling, texturing, lighting, and rendering used in exploring principles and elements of three-dimensional design.

INDES 251 : Fundamentals of Two-Dimensional Graphics. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to animation major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to design language by exploring elements of photography, drawing, and two-dimensional computer graphics, including color theory and conceptual elements of composition.

INDES 252 : Introduction to Three-Dimensional Animation. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques of three-dimensional animation, including timing and pacing, character setup, and dynamics.

INDES 255R : Computer Graphics for Non-Animation Majors. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Techniques used in modeling, texturing, lighting, and rendering, including color theory, composition, visual literacy, and principles of design.

INDES 257 : Scripting for Animation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250 or 255R.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to scripting languages which may include PERL, Python, and MEL.

300-Level Courses

INDES 310 : Advanced Computer Applications. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific program applications of computers to design disciplines.

INDES 330 : Industrial Design Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Designer responsibilities, structured and unstructured procedures in problem solving, client relationships, functional relationships, and mechanisms and materials.

INDES 331R : Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 3. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the BFA program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Sketching and rendering techniques focused on surface materials and finishes.

INDES 332 : Industrial Design Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 330 with renewed emphasis on human factors and ergonomics, plus market and user requirements and developing written briefs.

INDES 339 : History of Products. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Industrial design core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of artifacts and products; how they have influenced society from prehistory to present day.

INDES 340 : Graphics Studies for Industrial Design 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to graphic skills such as corporate identity, packaging design, logo design, and web/interface design elements.

INDES 341 : Graphics Studies for Industrial Design 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

INDES 350 : Computer Graphics Studio 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced character design, setup, and animation.

INDES 352 : Computer Graphics Studio 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 350.
DESCRIPTION: Designing interdisciplinary group projects: workflow, team dynamics, and processes of production pipelines.

INDES 399R : Professional Internship. (1-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: School's and faculty advisor's consent.

400-Level Courses

INDES 410R : Computer Applications Studio. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: InDes 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual major project using high-end hardware and software.

INDES 430 : Industrial Design Studio 5. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 332, 333.
DESCRIPTION: Systems design problems from initial research and analysis to final presentation of working drawings and models, with concern for ergonomics, anthropometries, marketing, user and buyer, production, function, and structure.

INDES 432 : Industrial Design Studio 6. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 330, 332, 430.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced design projects.

INDES 435R : Furniture Design. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TTE 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, materials, processes, structures, production methods, and prototype construction.

INDES 450 : Computer Graphics Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 352.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 352. In-depth experiences making computer animatiions and visual effects.

INDES 452 : Computer Graphics Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 450.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced animation/design projects.

INDES 455R : Shader Programming. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Advanced rendering and shading techniques for attaining desired visual effects. Using shading languages for realizing both photorealistic and non-photorealistic imaging.

INDES 475R : Transportation Design. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploration in the aesthetics, human factors, marketing requirements, and presentation aspects unique to transportation design, emphasizing working with outside project sponsors.

INDES 488 : Professional Practices of the Designer. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: junior or senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the design profession.

INDES 494R : Special Problems in Design. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in area of special interest.

INDES 497R : BFA Final Project. (3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project with minimum guidance, showing high degree of competence within chosen major.

INDES 499R : Directed Studies. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)

Back to Industrial Design Home

Back to School of Technology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

HUM 430R : Genres and Forms in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of genres and forms. Topics include epic, tragedy, narrative, historiography, film, relationship of text and music. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Film as Art.
: Historiography.
: Narrative.
: Text and Music.
: Tragedy.

HUM 440R : Themes in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of themes. Topics include Eden, Arthur, Don Juan, Faust, Ulysses, Troy. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Theme.
: Classical Tradition.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Don Quixote and the Arts.
: Eden Theme.
: Faust Theme.
: Gothic and Gothicism.
: Matter of Troy.
: Ulysses Theme.

HUM 460R : Critical Theory and Methodology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical criticism; problems in critical theory. Topics include aesthetics, interrelations of the arts, models of cultural history, cultural theory, and aspects of contemporary theory. Topics vary.

: Aesthetic Theory.
: Art Interrelations.
: Classical Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Cultural Theory.
: Gender Theory in Humanities.
: Mimesis.
: Models of Cultural History.
: Narratology.
: Native Multiculturism.
: Practical Criticism.
: Rhetoric and Truth.
: Rhetorical Theory.
: Theory of Film.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Information Technology

Joseph J. Ekstrom, Chair
265 CTB, (801) 422-6300

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the information technology program is open to all BYU students.

Learning Outcomes

- An understanding of computer system components with depth and experience in their integration.
- Creative and analytical thinking skills that provide a basis for technological problem solving.
- The ability to integrate systems for the purpose of facilitating communications with each other.
- The ability to lead and to communicate effectively, both orally and in writing.
- The skills and attitudes of life-long learning.
- The ability to apply knowledge, manage projects, and work effectively in diverse teams.
- An understanding of the application of new and developing technologies with sensitivity for global, societal, organizational, and personal usage issues, compliant with the moral standards of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

The Discipline

Information technology (IT), the technical discipline that solves problems using computing resources, will be taught through a combination of strong theoretical course work and practical application to ensure that all three aspects of the technological educational triumvirate (knowing, thinking, doing) are included. IT professionals from this discipline are competent to design computing systems with due consideration of the performance and compatibility aspects of hardware, software, and digital communication and networking. They can visualize, structure, and implement complex technical solutions.

Professionals in this discipline are also proficient in understanding user needs and communicating technical issues to the organizations and people affected by the computer system. They are "anxiously engaged" in lifelong learning to understand and wisely use new technologies as they become available. Broadly educated at the university level, these professionals have acquired balance in their lives and depth of understanding in technology and its relevance in the broader world context. Because of the influence and leadership roles we expect graduates to have, our students will be encouraged to develop high moral and ethical standards as well as being conversant with and compliant with professional performance standards.

Career Opportunities

Career opportunities are plentiful and rewarding in both large and small companies in technical fields. Graduates will find careers in computer networking, testing, embedded intelligence, digital communications, computer system development, and integration.

General Information

Technical Electives

Six upper-division credit hours of information technology technical courses are required. Selected from courses in the major, these electives must be approved by an advisor prior to taking them.

Students are also strongly advised to strengthen their degree by using additional credit hours to fulfill a minor or gain greater depth in a focused area of the discipline. Some suggested areas are electronic systems, computer science, industrial design, manufacturing, or business leadership. Students are required to indicate their area of study when they apply to the professional program.

High School Background

Recommended high school courses include computer programming, electronics, mathematics, and science courses.

Transfer Students

This degree is designed to have some similarity to computer science and electrical and computer engineering courses in the first few semesters. Students can transfer from these programs in two-year colleges or from other four-year programs.

Special Notice

Students receiving C- or lower grades in required courses will be placed on department probationary status.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Information Technology (76.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must have a minimum of 124 total hours to graduate with this major.

2. Complete the following supporting courses:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
- DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
- DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
- NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.

DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

3. Complete the following:

IT 101 : Cornerstone: Information Technology. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Planning and preparing for a successful career in information technology. Developing skills with computers, problem solving, studying, and time management. Comparing information technology to computer science, computer engineering, and master of information systems.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 104A : Digital Electronics Foundations (Part A). (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: AC and DC electronics, digital fundamentals, and circuits. Ohm's law and power, impedances and frequency effects; AC wave forms; numbering systems; boolean systems, combinational and sequential logic; spectral analysis.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 104B : Digital Electronics Foundations (Part B). (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: AC and DC electronics, digital fundamentals, and circuits. Ohm's law and power, impedances and frequency effects; AC wave forms; numbering systems; boolean systems, combinational and sequential logic; spectral analysis.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 210A : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 210B : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 251A : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 104B.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

IT 251B : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: IT 251A.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

IT 327 : Digital Communications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: IT 104A,B, Math 112, Phscs 123; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Communication systems, wired and wireless. Bandwidth, modulation; Shannon's theorem, telecommunications. Network physical and data link layers (ISO/OSI model). Optics/Coax/Twisted pair; RS-232/Ethernet; Signals/Protocols/Packets; digital communication theory fundamentals.

IT 344 : Operating Systems. (3:2:3)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CS 235, IT 210, 251B; or instructor's consent; admission to IT professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying and using computer operating systems. Configuration, file systems, security, administration, network interfacing, multitasking, multiuser, device driver installation. Analyzing operating system performance.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 347 : Computer Networks. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236 or concurrent enrollment; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Computer networks. Local and wide-area networking for enterprises and service providers. Workgroups/routers/hubs/switches; network server administration; Internet protocols and routing; security and privacy.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 350 : Database Principles and Applications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Database theory and architecture; data modeling; designing application databases. Query languages, data security, database applications on the Web..

IT 355 : Human-Computer Interface. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: IT 210.
DESCRIPTION: Interface design emphasizing human factors, performance analysis, and cognitive processing. Team-based projects include task analysis, usability studies, environment, interaction, training, and documentation procedures.

IT 446 : Senior Project / Capstone 1. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: All required 300-level information technology courses; Engl 316.
DESCRIPTION: IT senior project proposal and feasibility studies. Project management, teamwork principles, intellectual property, supplier interactions, identifying and using professional technical literature, oral and written presentations.

IT 447 : Senior Projects/Capstone 2. (3:1:5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: IT 446.
DESCRIPTION: Senior project design and integration. Second class of two-course sequence. Implementing design. Project management, teamwork, and presentations. Fee.

IT 466 : Information Assurance and Security. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: IT 344, 347, 350, Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Computer security principles. Incident prevention and management. Information assurance dimensions of availability, integrity, authentication, confidentiality and non-repudiations to ensure transmission, storage, and processing of information.

4. Complete 2 hours of the following:
IT 391R : Junior/Senior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Required four times during junior/senior years while in professional program. College Lecture and School of Technology Lecture attendance required.

5. Complete 3 hours of the following:
ENG T 231 : Moral Leadership in a Technological World. (3:3:0)
Moral Leadership in a Technological World.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices to help leaders develop consistent private and public lives and address the global environment from an integrated moral, technical, and social perspective.

6. After consulting with an information technology advisor, complete 6 hours of upper-division information technology technical electives.

7. Complete the following:
IT 491R : Senior Seminar. (.5:1.0:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block
DESCRIPTION: Seminar topics for near-graduation seniors. Information technology work experience required.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-

8. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Information Technology (IT) Courses

Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Information Technology (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

IT 101 : Cornerstone: Information Technology. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Planning and preparing for a successful career in information technology. Developing skills with computers, problem solving, studying, and time management. Comparing information technology to computer science, computer engineering, and master of information systems.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 210A : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 210B : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 251B : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: IT 251A.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

2. Complete three courses from the following to complete the 16 hours required for the minor:

IT 251A : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 104B.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

IT 327 : Digital Communications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: IT 104A,B, Math 112, Phscs 123; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Communication systems, wired and wireless. Bandwidth, modulation; Shannon's theorem, telecommunications. Network physical and data link layers (ISO/OSI model). Optics/Coax/Twisted pair; RS-232/Ethernet; Signals/Protocols/Packets; digital communication theory fundamentals.

IT 344 : Operating Systems. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CS 235, IT 210, 251B; or instructor's consent; admission to IT professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying and using computer operating systems. Configuration, file systems, security, administration, network interfacing, multitasking, multiuser, device driver installation. Analyzing operating system performance.

NOTE: Fee.

IT 347 : Computer Networks. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236 or concurrent enrollment; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Computer networks. Local and wide-area networking for enterprises and service providers. Workgroups/routers/hubs/switches; network server administration; Internet protocols and routing; security and privacy.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 350 : Database Principles and Applications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Database theory and architecture; data modeling; designing application databases. Query languages, data security, database applications on the Web..

IT 355 : Human-Computer Interface. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: IT 210.
DESCRIPTION: Interface design emphasizing human factors, performance analysis, and cognitive processing. Team-based projects include task analysis, usability studies, environment, interaction, training, and documentation procedures.

IT 466 : Information Assurance and Security. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: IT 344, 347, 350, Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Computer security principles. Incident prevention and management. Information assurance dimensions of availability, integrity, authentication, confidentiality and non-repudiations to ensure transmission, storage, and processing of information.

Note: Some of the above courses also have prerequisites, which the student must either take or satisfy in another manner. The main prerequisite is experience using a programming language, preferably C, C++, or Java (see C S 142).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Information Technology (IT) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Information Technology (IT)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

IT 101 : Cornerstone: Information Technology. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Planning and preparing for a successful career in information technology. Developing skills with computers, problem solving, studying, and time management. Comparing information technology to computer science, computer engineering, and master of information systems.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 104A : Digital Electronics Foundations (Part A). (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: AC and DC electronics, digital fundamentals, and circuits. Ohm's law and power, impedances and frequency effects; AC wave forms; numbering systems; boolean systems, combinational and sequential logic; spectral analysis.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 104B : Digital Electronics Foundations (Part B). (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: AC and DC electronics, digital fundamentals, and circuits. Ohm's law and power, impedances and frequency effects; AC wave forms; numbering systems; boolean systems, combinational and sequential logic; spectral analysis.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 198R : Directed Studies in Information Technology. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course. Special topics in problem solving and technology careers.

IT 199R : Academic Internship: Information Technology. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

IT 210A : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 210B : Fundamentals of Web-Based Information Technology. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 101.
DESCRIPTION: Web technologies, including operating systems, networking, database concepts, and tools from a Web development and infrastructure management perspective. Web systems integration and development projects.

IT 251A : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: C S 142, IT 104B.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

IT 251B : Computer Architecture and Organization. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: IT 251A.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of computer hardware. Internal CPU organization and implementation. Principles of computer instruction set architecture. Peripheral interconnect and IO systems. Low-level programming. Low-level security issues.

300-Level Courses

IT 304 : Devices and Circuits in Information Technology. (3:2.0:3.0)
PREREQUISITE: IT 104A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Electronic building blocks for information technology systems. Includes p-n junctions, diodes and transistors, op-amps, oscillators and phase lock loops, and analog integrated circuits.
NOTE: Course enhances IT 327.

IT 327 : Digital Communications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: IT 104A,B, Math 112, Phscs 123; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Communication systems, wired and wireless. Bandwidth, modulation; Shannon's theorem, telecommunications. Network physical and data link layers (ISO/OSI model). Optics/Coax/Twisted pair; RS-232/Ethernet; Signals/Protocols/Packets; digital communication theory fundamentals.

IT 344 : Operating Systems. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CS 235, IT 210, 251B; or instructor's consent; admission to IT professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying and using computer operating systems. Configuration, file systems, security, administration, network interfacing, multitasking, multiuser, device driver installation. Analyzing operating system performance.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 347 : Computer Networks. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236 or concurrent enrollment; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Computer networks. Local and wide-area networking for enterprises and service providers. Workgroups/routers/hubs/switches; network server administration; Internet protocols and routing; security and privacy.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 350 : Database Principles and Applications. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236; IT 210; acceptance to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Database theory and architecture; data modeling; designing application databases. Query languages, data security, database applications on the Web..

IT 355 : Human-Computer Interface. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: IT 210.
DESCRIPTION: Interface design emphasizing human factors, performance analysis, and cognitive processing. Team-based projects include task analysis, usability studies, environment, interaction, training, and documentation procedures.

IT 391R : Junior/Senior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Required four times during junior/senior years while in professional program. College Lecture and School of Technology Lecture attendance required.

IT 399R : Academic Internship: Information Technology. (1-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Experience in industrial environment. Approved job function supervised by employer and electronics and information technology advisor. Formal technical report required.

400-Level Courses

IT 431 : Digital Signal Processing. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, CS 142, IT 241.
DESCRIPTION: Processing engineering data using digital computers. Encoding data for storage or transmission. Frequency-domain techniques for improving signal filtering. Cryptography and other important signals algorithms. Practical experience with DSP processors.

IT 441 : Embedded Computer Systems. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: IT 344.
DESCRIPTION: Real-time embedded systems development using microprocessors and microcontrollers. Multitasking, hardware/software interfacing, operating systems, and various CPU architectures.

IT 443 : Broadband Communications. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: IT 327.
DESCRIPTION: Physical-layer communications over broadband media. Optical and radio frequency propagation and devices. Fiber optics.
NOTE: Fee.

IT 444 : Instrumentation and Computers. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: IT 241, 344.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and applying sensors, transducers, and instrumentation. Computer interfacing. Software design for instrumentation. Applications in industrial automation and in embedded systems.

IT 446 : Senior Project / Capstone 1. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: All required 300-level information technology courses; Engl 316.
DESCRIPTION: IT senior project proposal and feasibility studies. Project management, teamwork principles, intellectual property, supplier interactions, identifying and using professional technical literature, oral and written presentations.

IT 447 : Senior Projects/Capstone 2. (3:1:5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: IT 446.
DESCRIPTION: Senior project design and integration. Second class of two-course sequence. Implementing design. Project management, teamwork, and presentations. Fee.

IT 461R : Current Topics in Information Technology. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth analysis of current growth areas in information technology. Detailed discussion and lab experience of a few topics from faculty working in the field.

IT 466 : Information Assurance and Security. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: IT 344, 347, 350, Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Computer security principles. Incident prevention and management. Information assurance dimensions of availability, integrity, authentication, confidentiality and non-repudiations to ensure transmission, storage, and processing of information.

IT 491R : Senior Seminar. (.5:1.0:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block
DESCRIPTION: Seminar topics for near-graduation seniors. Information technology work experience required.

IT 492R : Special Problems in Information Technology. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Informational technology senior standing, Engl 316, and an approved project proposal.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in research and design related to computer-aided process control.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

IT 515R : Special Topics in Information Technology. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

IT 529 : Advanced Networking. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: IT 344, 347; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing, selecting, configuring, monitoring, and managing of computer network equipment. SNMP-based monitoring and control in process of fault isolation and root cause analysis.

IT 531 : Encryption and Compression. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: CS 235, Math 112; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Encoding digital data for storage or network transmission using computers. Analyzing and applying algorithms for digital data encryption and compression. Current Web and multimedia standards. Lab emphasizing implementation.

IT 548 : Mechanatronics. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: IT 444 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Synergistic application of mechanical devices, electronic controls, and system principles in design of products and manufacturing processes. Advanced applications of electronic instrumentation, control, and automation in manufacturing systems.

IT 566 : Digital Forensics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: IT 466 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of digital forensics, legal issues, evidence, chain of custody, media analysis, incident response, corporate forensics, and network forensics.

Back to Information Technology Home

Back to School of Technology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

HUM 490R : Seminar in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of problems and major figures in the humanities. Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

PL SC 320 : American Politics Through Literature. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: American politics through the novel and other literary works. Developing political concepts and themes that come from significant political novels.

PL SC 321 : The Media in American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: News media's role in processes of American politics, including electoral process, legislative process, and public policy-making.

PL SC 322 : Early American Political Thought: 1620-1865. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Core principles and seminal texts of American politics from Colonial times through the Lincoln administration.

PL SC 323 : Modern American Political Thought: 1865-Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Core principles and seminal texts of American politics from Reconstruction to the present.

Note 1: Engl 358R and 395R, as well as the humanities courses, must be topics in an American subject.

Note 2: Course substitutions may be made only with written, prior permission of the American Studies coordinator unless they are on the approved list.

Note 3: Students may substitute 3 credit hours of Washington, D.C., seminar credit for one American Studies elective.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show American Studies Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Manufacturing Engineering Technology

Charles Harrell, Chair
265 CTB, (801) 422-6300

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the manufacturing engineering technology program is open to all BYU students.

Learning Outcomes

- Leadership — graduates will be able to develop a vision and lead a team or an organization to excellence in all of the areas listed below.
- Professionalism — graduates will have high ethical values, exhibit good work habits and continuously develop relevant new knowledge and skills.
- Creativity and problem solving — graduates will see manufacturing problems from multiple and new perspectives, generate alternative, innovative solutions and select and implement the best solution.
- Management — graduates will be able to plan, organize, staff, and control manufacturing projects.
- Materials — graduates will understand the physical and mechanical properties of engineering materials.
- Processes — graduates will understand manufacturing processes and their applications.
- Quality — graduates will be committed to quality and to continuously improving products and processes.
- Systems — graduates will understand the dynamics of manufacturing systems and supply chains and how to effectively configure the optimum system for efficient manufacture and delivery.
- Design — graduates will contribute effectively to the development of world-class products.
- Communication — graduates will be effective two-way communicators.
- Global awareness — graduates will be aware of the issues associated with off-shore manufacturing.
- Human and environmental factors — graduates will understand manufacturing's impact on society and the environment.

The Discipline

Manufacturing is an exciting and rewarding discipline that has significant impact on a society's standard of living and economic independence. At BYU the manufacturing program is specifically oriented toward creating leaders in the industry.

Students in manufacturing learn creative and analytical skills that will enable them to quickly diagnose and solve manufacturing problems with insight from both engineering and management perspectives. They also develop interpersonal and communication skills that will prepare them to work as part of an engineering team and effectively interact with vendors, management, and production personnel. In addition, they receive hands-on training in modern lab facilities and learn to use computers to design, analyze, implement, and control manufacturing operations.

Manufacturing professionals are knowledgeable and skilled in the management, methods, technologies, equipment, and tooling needed to produce affordable products of high quality. They are able to effectively coordinate the procurement, installation, and start-up of production equipment as well as improve the productivity of existing operations. They are also able to coordinate manufacturing and supply-chain operation in a global setting.

The manufacturing engineering technology program is accredited by the Technology Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, 111 Market Place, Suite 1050, Baltimore, MD 21202-4012, telephone (410) 347-7700. The program provides students with the option of obtaining a minor in business management. Students may take their electives in other areas of specialization as well. Graduates may further their technical and managerial skills by pursuing either a master of science in technology or a master of business administration.

Career Opportunities

Career opportunities in manufacturing are plentiful and rewarding. Leaders of industry often have manufacturing backgrounds. Typical entry-level job titles include manufacturing engineer, quality manager, process engineer, tool engineer, product engineer, quality engineer, production supervisor, and account manager (technical sales). New graduates are typically hired into technical positions but have the opportunity to move into management.

The job outlook for manufacturing graduates is bright and should continue to be strong into the future. When one considers that everything that does not exist as part of nature is the product of some form of manufacturing, it is easy to see that manufacturing is an integral part of our society and generates an ever-growing workforce. Progressive companies in industries worldwide are always on the lookout for qualified individuals who can provide leadership in improving the quality and productivity of their manufacturing operations.

General Information

The manufacturing program is designed to provide simple transfer from local feeder schools, including BYU—Idaho, Salt Lake Community College (SLCC), and Utah Valley State College (UVSC). Students transferring from these or other schools should meet with college and program advisors as soon as possible to evaluate transfer credits and plan their BYU curriculum.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Manufacturing Engineering Technology (74–77 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must have a minimum of 124 total hours to graduate with this major.

2. Complete the following manufacturing core courses:

MFG 130 : Modern Manufacturing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Methods and characteristics of successful manufacturing engineers and managers. Introduction to engineering and technology, design, and project management. Lab.

MFG 220 : Material Removal. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods and procedures to shape materials using basic machine tools; cutting theory, tool selection, metrology methods, and machine operation. Introduction to computer numerical control.

MFG 230 : Computer-Aided Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 220, Math 111, Me En 172,
DESCRIPTION: Manual and computer-assisted programming of computer numerical controlled (CNC) equipment. Developing CNC programs to manufacture parts for high production.

MFG 331 : Metals Processes. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250, CE En 203.
DESCRIPTION: Capabilities and applications of common metal-processing methods, including relationships between part design, material, and process parameters.

MFG 340 : Quality Systems in Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Mfg 230.
DESCRIPTION: Tools and principles of quality in manufacturing systems based on the Six Sigma process. Basic tools, variation, loss function, cost of quality, SPC, DOE, and FMEA. Comprehensive project required.

MFG 355 : Plastics Materials and Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding plastic materials, properties, and uses. Survey of plastic-manufacturing processes. Designing plastic products and manufacturing systems.

MFG 391 : Manufacturing Leadership. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures on personal and professional development emphasizing internship preparation. Field trips observing different types of manufacturing.

MFG 431 : Tool Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F; Sp alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Me En 172, Mfg 331.
DESCRIPTION: Designing special tooling for manufacturing processes using solids-modeling design systems.

MFG 434 : Introduction to Manufacturing Automation. (3:2:2)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105, CE En 103, Mfg 340.
DESCRIPTION: Sensors, actuators, robotics, part feeding and assembly, PLCs, pneumatic and hydraulic control, justifying automation.

MFG 479 : (Mfg-BusM) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: BusM 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

MFG 480 : Process Planning and Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 340.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing product specifications and production requirements for manufacturing. Equipment selection and justification; facility layout and material-handling system design; process-improvement techniques.

MFG 485 : Capstone: Production Management. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 340, 431, 480.
DESCRIPTION: Production operations: designing a production system, carrying our production functions, and procuring materials from suppliers. Principles of lean operations, project management, and industrial supervision.

MFG 491 : Professional Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing; Mfg 391.
DESCRIPTION: Lectures on professionalism, leadership, and career and life success.

3. Complete 3 hours of the following:
MFG 399R : Academic Internship: Manufacturing Practicum. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Second-semester junior standing, Mfg 391R, and faculty authorization.
DESCRIPTION: Working in teams to solve problems encountered in local industry. Project management and reporting under guidance of industry supervisor and department faculty.

4. Complete the following supporting courses:
CE EN 103 : Engineering Mechanics--Statics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119 or concurrent enrollment (if 119, then Math 111 must have already been taken).
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

CE EN 203 : Engineering Mechanics--Mechanics of Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts of elastic stress and strain relations; cylinders and spheres; torsion; beam theory, including bending stresses; deflections; and two-dimensional elastic theory.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENG T 231 : Moral Leadership in a Technological World. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices to help leaders develop consistent private and public lives and address the global environment from an integrated moral, technical, and social perspective.

IT 492R : Special Problems in Information Technology. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Informational technology senior standing, Engl 316, and an approved project proposal.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in research and design related to computer-aided process control.

(3 hours required)
ME EN 172 : Engineering Graphics--Principles and Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engineering and technology major status.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive applications of CAD-based national (ANSI) and international (ISO) graphics standards, including coordinate and geometric dimensioning and tolerancing practices, manufacturing, and product verification procedures.

ME EN 250 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and properties of solid materials and their behavior as applied to engineering.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

5. Complete one of the following options:

Either

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

Or

MATH 111 : Trigonometry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Circular functions, triangle relationships, identities, inverse trig functions, trigonometric equations, vectors, complex numbers, DeMoivre's theorem.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

6. Complete one of the following options:

Either

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

Or

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-

7. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MFG) Courses

Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Manufacturing (15 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

MFG 130 : Modern Manufacturing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Methods and characteristics of successful manufacturing engineers and managers. Introduction to engineering and technology, design, and project management. Lab.

MFG 340 : Quality Systems in Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Mfg 230.
DESCRIPTION: Tools and principles of quality in manufacturing systems based on the Six Sigma process. Basic tools, variation, loss function, cost of quality, SPC, DOE, and FMEA. Comprehensive project required.

MFG 480 : Process Planning and Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 340.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing product specifications and production requirements for manufacturing. Equipment selection and justification; facility layout and material-handling system design; process-improvement techniques.

2. Complete two courses from the following:

MFG 220 : Material Removal. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods and procedures to shape materials using basic machine tools; cutting theory, tool selection, metrology methods, and machine operation. Introduction to computer numerical control.

MFG 230 : Computer-Aided Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 220, Math 111, Me En 172,
DESCRIPTION: Manual and computer-assisted programming of computer numerical controlled (CNC) equipment. Developing CNC programs to manufacture parts for high production.

MFG 331 : Metals Processes. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250, CE En 203.
DESCRIPTION: Capabilities and applications of common metal-processing methods, including relationships between part design, material, and process parameters.

MFG 355 : Plastics Materials and Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding plastic materials, properties, and uses. Survey of plastic-manufacturing processes. Designing plastic products and manufacturing systems.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MFG) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Manufacturing Engineering Technology (Mfg)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

MFG 130 : Modern Manufacturing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Methods and characteristics of successful manufacturing engineers and managers. Introduction to engineering and technology, design, and project management. Lab.

200-Level Courses

MFG 201 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Egyptian antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 202 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

MFG 220 : Material Removal. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods and procedures to shape materials using basic machine tools; cutting theory, tool selection, metrology methods, and machine operation. Introduction to computer numerical control.

MFG 230 : Computer-Aided Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 220, Math 111, Me En 172,
DESCRIPTION: Manual and computer-assisted programming of computer numerical controlled (CNC) equipment. Developing CNC programs to manufacture parts for high production.

300-Level Courses

MFG 331 : Metals Processes. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250, CE En 203.
DESCRIPTION: Capabilities and applications of common metal-processing methods, including relationships between part design, material, and process parameters.

MFG 340 : Quality Systems in Manufacturing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 332, Mfg 230.
DESCRIPTION: Tools and principles of quality in manufacturing systems based on the Six Sigma process. Basic tools, variation, loss function, cost of quality, SPC, DOE, and FMEA. Comprehensive project required.

MFG 355 : Plastics Materials and Processing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 250 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding plastic materials, properties, and uses. Survey of plastic-manufacturing processes. Designing plastic products and manufacturing systems.

MFG 391 : Manufacturing Leadership. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures on personal and professional development emphasizing internship preparation. Field trips observing different types of manufacturing.

MFG 399R : Academic Internship: Manufacturing Practicum. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Second-semester junior standing, Mfg 391R, and faculty authorization.
DESCRIPTION: Working in teams to solve problems encountered in local industry. Project management and reporting under guidance of industry supervisor and department faculty.

400-Level Courses

MFG 431 : Tool Design. (3:2:3)

OFFERED: F; Sp alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Me En 172, Mfg 331.
DESCRIPTION: Designing special tooling for manufacturing processes using solids-modeling design systems.

MFG 434 : Introduction to Manufacturing Automation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105, CE En 103, Mfg 340.
DESCRIPTION: Sensors, actuators, robotics, part feeding and assembly, PLCs, pneumatic and hydraulic control, justifying automation.

MFG 479 : (Mfg-BusM) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: BusM 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

MFG 480 : Process Planning and Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 340.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing product specifications and production requirements for manufacturing. Equipment selection and justification; facility layout and material-handling system design; process-improvement techniques.

MFG 485 : Capstone: Production Management. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 340, 431, 480.
DESCRIPTION: Production operations: designing a production system, carrying our production functions, and procuring materials from suppliers. Principles of lean operations, project management, and industrial supervision.

MFG 490R : Special Problems in Manufacturing Engineering Technology. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

MFG 491 : Professional Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing; Mfg 391.
DESCRIPTION: Lectures on professionalism, leadership, and career and life success.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

MFG 531 : Advanced Computer-Aided Manufacturing Programming. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: previous introductory computer-aided manufacturing programming; senior or graduate status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: CAD/CAM programming techniques and requirements for manufacturing components on computer numerical-control machine tools, emphasizing CAM programming, postprocessors, and CAM software evaluation.
NOTE: Fee.

MFG 532 : Manufacturing Systems. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 480 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing lean manufacturing systems. Numerous examples and case studies from industry demonstrating principles of lean production, inventory management, and lean distribution. Project with a local company to gain confidence with these principles in an industrial setting.

MFG 533 : Manufacturing Information Systems. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 480 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying and integrating software and information technologies in planning, executing, and monitoring production operations.

MFG 555 : Composite Materials and Processes. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Graduate standing or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure, processing, properties, and uses of composite materials, including various manufacturing methods and the relationship between properties and fabrication.

MFG 572 : Design for Manufacturing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate standing or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to design evaluation techniques, including design for mechanical assembly, printed circuit board assembly, plastic injection molding, machining, and sheet metal fabrication.

MFG 574 : Advanced Tool Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced design of net-shape products utilizing CAD and CAE methods. Plastic injection mold design and construction. Rapid prototyping and injection molding project.

MFG 580 : Manufacturing Simulation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Mfg 480.
DESCRIPTION: Design and optimization of manufacturing systems using simulation. Simulation languages and modeling methodology.

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Manufacturing Engineering Technology Home

Back to School of Technology Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Technology and Engineering Education

Steven Shumway, Chair
230 SNLB, (801) 422-6496

Learning Outcomes

- Students will receive an opportunity to interact, be mentored, and have close relationship with faculty members as they learn together about secular and spiritual knowledge.
- Students will be able to become certified secondary education teachers in technology and engineering education for the State of Utah.
- Students will increase technical competency in a technology and/or engineering specialization of their choice.
- Students will develop creativity, design, entrepreneurial, innovative, problem solving, critical thinking, effective communication, and life-long learning skills.
- Students will be stretched to maximize their own individual learning through rigor, excellence, and high expectations of performance.

The Discipline

Students graduating from the technology and engineering education program at Brigham Young University are prepared to teach in secondary schools. Students in the program are required to take courses in visual communications, production technologies, and engineering design. Students will need to complete 18 hours of technical emphasis in one or two depth areas: graphic design and multimedia, engineering prep and electronics, construction systems, information technology, architecture and furniture design, manufacturing, computer science, and trade and technical. In addition, students are required to complete teacher education courses. Finally, students are provided with field-based experiences to teach at the middle and high school levels throughout the program, culminating with a semester-long supervised student teaching experience.

Career Opportunities

The dramatic pace of technological innovation makes this a vital major. The current need for teachers is far greater than the number of available graduates resulting in excellent job placement. Most graduates teach technology-related subjects at the middle and high school level. The degree also provides a strong foundation for numerous technical and teaching careers, including corporate or higher education.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Western American Studies (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   AM ST 200 : The American West as a Region. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Geography, natural history, history, and cultures of the American West.

2. Complete one course from three of the following four clusters:
   Natural Environment
   GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
   NOTE: Honors also.

   PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

   PWS 215 : Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of rangeland resources and management principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

   PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

   Human Heritage
   HIST 360 : American West to 1900. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: The American West as a place of great diversity. Topics include Native American societies, European colonization, explorations, the fur trade, overland migrations, Indian relations, mining, settlement, and the environment.

   HIST 361 : The American West Since 1900. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   DESCRIPTION: Pivotal developments in the twentieth-century West, including urbanization, Sun Belt migration, political protest, labor history, Native American history, immigration, water policy, tourism, military-industrial complex, Hollywood.

   Social Environment
   ANTHR 345 : American Culture. (3:2:ARR)
   OFFERED: F odd years.
   DESCRIPTION: Unity and diversity in U.S. life. Social/cultural change processes illustrated and analyzed. Anthropological study of complex cultures. Seminar-type course involves substantial reading, writing, discussion.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Technology and Engineering Education (73-74 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or the School of Technology advisor for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

INDES 133A : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

INDES 133B : Visualization Methods. (1.5:3:3)
OFFERED: W 2nd block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Observational skills, drawing as communication, rapid visualization techniques, orthographic projection, dimensioning, perspective construction, shadows and reflections, and form construction/indication.

TEE 125 : Technological Systems 1. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Use of, interaction with, and teaching about communication, information, biological, and environmental systems.

TEE 200 : Studio Methods in Prototyping. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and practices of prototype construction.
NOTE: Fee.

TEE 225 : Technological Systems 2. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Teaching electronic, construction, and transportation systems.

TEE 229 : Material Properties and Processes. (3:2:4)
DESCRIPTION: Solving real-world problems through layout, measurement, material properties, forming, molding, cutting, fastening, joining, finishing, and fabricating with wood, metal, plastic, and concrete.
NOTE: Fee.

TEE 255 : Visual Communication Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TEE 150 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching visual design principles through digital still, digital video, and interactive Web media.

TEE 330 : Creativity, Engineering, and Problem Solving. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TEE 125, 225, 229; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Designing solutions to technological problems using innovation, creativity, experimentation, problem solving, and engineering design. Manufacturing systems; teaching methods and prototype development.

TEE 340 : Principles of Technology and Engineering. (3:2.0:4.0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TEE 225.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching technology and engineering concepts in education. Developing problem-solving skills by tackling technological and engineering problems.

2. Complete 18 hours from one or more of the following areas:
   Graphic design and multimedia
   Engineering prep and electronics
   Construction systems
   Information technology
   Architecture and furniture design
   Manufacturing
   Computer science
   Trade and technical

   For specific courses, please visit www.et.byu.edu/tte or contact the School of Technology advisement center in 250 SNLB.

3. Complete four registrations of the following:
   TEE 291R : Undergraduate Seminar. (.5:1:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Student leadership training, including organization and operation of student technology education clubs. College Lecture attendance required. Separate program sections.
   NOTE: Required each semester for undergraduate majors not enrolled in TTE 391R or 491R.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

   MATH 111 : Trigonometry. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Circular functions, triangle relationships, identities, inverse trig functions, trigonometric equations, vectors, complex numbers, DeMoivre's theorem.

5. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:
      CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
      DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

      SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
      DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

      SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
      DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

      SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
      DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

      TEE 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (4:Arr:Arr)
      OFFERED: F
      DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers understand demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

TEE 377 : Teaching Methods in Technology Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in technology education; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TEE 378 : Practicum in Technology Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in technology education; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in TTE 377R.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
TEE 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

6. Complete department packet and exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Technology and Engineering Education (TEE) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Technology and Engineering Education (TEE)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

TEE 125 : Technological Systems 1. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Use of, interaction with, and teaching about communication, information, biological, and environmental systems.

TEE 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

TEE 200 : Studio Methods in Prototyping. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and practices of prototype construction.
NOTE: Fee.

TEE 225 : Technological Systems 2. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Teaching electronic, construction, and transportation systems.

TEE 229 : Material Properties and Processes. (3:2:4)
DESCRIPTION: Solving real-world problems through layout, measurement, material properties, forming, molding, cutting, fastening, joining, finishing, and fabricating with wood, metal, plastic, and concrete.
NOTE: Fee.

TEE 251 : Video Production and Nonlinear Editing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: TEE 125, 255; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching video in education to inspire, communicate, and develop creativity. Fundamentals include planning, storyboarding, camera techniques, composition, assembling, and editing video projects.

TEE 255 : Visual Communication Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TEE 150 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching visual design principles through digital still, digital video, and interactive Web media.

TEE 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (4:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers understand demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

TEE 291R : Undergraduate Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Student leadership training, including organization and operation of student technology education clubs. College Lecture attendance required. Separate program sections.
NOTE: Required each semester for undergraduate majors not enrolled in TTE 391R or 491R.

300-Level Courses

TEE 330 : Creativity, Engineering, and Problem Solving. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TEE 125, 225, 229; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Designing solutions to technological problems using innovation, creativity, experimentation, problem solving, and engineering design. Manufacturing systems; teaching methods and prototype development.

TEE 340 : Principles of Technology and Engineering. (3:2.0:4.0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TEE 225.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching technology and engineering concepts in education. Developing problem-solving skills by tackling technological and engineering problems.

TEE 350 : Multimedia Authoring and Publishing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Developing advanced media authoring skills for teaching interactive design. Solving real-world interactive design problems for the World Wide Web, CD-ROM, and DVD-ROM in an entrepreneurial environment.

TEE 377 : Teaching Methods in Technology Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in technology education; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TEE 378 : Practicum in Technology Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in technology education; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

400-Level Courses

TEE 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

TEE 490R : Independent Research and Development. (.5-3:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Program supervisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individually preparing technical content associated with selected technological emphases.
NOTE: Fee.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

TEE 593R : Workshop in Applied Technology Education. (.5-2:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Teaching and learning technological literacy skills. Reviewing and participating in current technological advances, with a focus on teaching practice and methods.
NOTE: Maximum of 2 credit hours applicable to MS program. Fee.

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Technology and Engineering Education Home

Back to School of Technology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

School of Technology Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Adams, R Brent
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BUS, University of Utah, 1982
MFA, University of Utah, 1992

Christensen, Kip
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Colorado State University, 1991

Christofferson, Jay P
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Colorado State University, 1996

Newitt, Jay S
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MIE, Brigham Young University, 1972
PhD, Colorado State University, 1980

Lunt, Barry Mark
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, Utah State University, 1993

Strong, A Brent
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, University of Utah, 1971

Terry, Ronald E.
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Oregon State University, 1971
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1976

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Associate Professors

Burr, Kevin Lester
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Brigham Young University, 1982
BS, University of Nevada, Las Vegas, 1988
MEd, University of Nevada, Las Vegas, 1990
EdD, Oklahoma State University, 1997

Campbell, Jeffery Lynn
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1977
BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MBA, University of Phoenix, 1990
PhD, University of Idaho, 1999

Carter, Perry W.
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of Massachusetts, 1988

Ekstrom, Joseph Jones
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1991

Fry, Richard Eldon
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MFA, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1994

Harrell, Charles
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, University of Utah, 1982
PhD, University of Denmark, 1988

Hawks, Val D
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor

DEGREES: AS, Snow College, 1976
BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Lehigh University, 1986
PhD, Gonzaga University, 2005

Helps, C Richard
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Witwatersrand, South Africa, 1978
MS, Witwatersrand, South Africa, 1986

Howell, Bryan Franklin
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Texas, Austin, 1987
MFA, University of Texas, Austin, 2003

Hutchings, D Mark
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MRECM, University of Denver, 1992
PhD, Texas A&M University, 2002

Kohkonen, Kent E
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976

Miles, Michael Paul
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Idaho, 1989
MS, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1991
PhD, Ecole des Mines de Paris, 1995

Miller, Kevin R
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, University of Phoenix, 1995
PhD, Arizona State University, 2001

Shumway, Steven LeRoy
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Utah State University, 1993
PhD, Utah State University, 1999

Skaggs, Paul Tharlie
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor

DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MFA, Rochester Institute of Technology, 2001

Teng, Chia-Chi
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, National Tsing Hua University, 1985
MS, University of Washington, 1993
PhD, University of Washington, 2007

Assistant Professors

Bailey, Michael Gordon
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, University of Southern California, 1987
PhD, Florida Institute of Technology, 2000

Capt, Brian Charles
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1993

Wright, Geoffrey A
COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: School of Technology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
MA, Chapman University, 2003
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2008

Teaching English Language Learners Program

Admission to TESOL K–12 Minor

Only students completing teaching programs may enroll in this minor.

The Discipline

Preparation to teach English to children and youth of other languages which involves multidisciplinary course work in a number of areas, including language acquisition; teaching methods and materials; educational programs; and family, school, and community partnerships.

The TESOL K–12 minor focuses on teaching students of limited English proficiency who are in the public schools of the United States.

Career Opportunities

The TESOL K–12 minor meets the requirements, as approved by the Utah State Board of Education, leading to the Utah State ESL endorsement. Earning this endorsement will enhance the career possibilities of teachers holding an elementary or secondary state teaching license.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Minor

TESOL K–12

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

ANTHR 346 : Anthropology of Mormonism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of Mormon society and culture using a range of anthropological perspectives.

ANTHR 350 : Archaeological Cultures of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural developments of North American Indians (Canada, U.S., and northern Mexico) before Columbus.

ECON 274 : American Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

SOC 327 : Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

Arts and Literature

ENGL 364 : Literature of the American West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Literature protraying the West and the frontier.

ENGL 368 : Literature of the Latter-day Saints. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Fiction, poetry, drama, folklore, personal essay, and other literature emerging from the LDS experience and expressing various perspectives on it.

ENGL 392 : American Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: American folk art and literature and the historical and cultural circumstances from which they developed.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

3. Complete additional elective courses to make a total of 18 hours. Electives may be chosen from the courses listed above that have not been used, from the additional courses listed below, or from topical courses on Western themes offered through academic departments or the Honors Program.

ANTHR 530 : Great Basin Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography, history of research, and prehistory of the Great Basin culture area. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ANTHR 535 : Southwest Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography and prehistory of American Southwest. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in TESOL K–12 (19 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

LING 230 : Language, Mind, and the World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Broad overview of language as the medium that makes thinking, understanding, communications, and teaching possible.

TELL 400 : Foundations in Education for English Language Learners. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and assessing legal, linguistic, cultural, community, and familial issues affecting access of Limited English Proficient (LEP) student populations to education.

TELL 410 : Second Language Acquisition. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and variables in native- and second-language development. How teachers can foster efficient acquisition of language, cognitive, and academic skills in second-language environments.

TELL 420 : Assessing Linguistically Diverse Students. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts in testing, use/interpretation of current instruments for language/academic assessment, appropriate placement of linguistically diverse students, and developing classroom language assessments.

TELL 430 : Developing K-12 Literacy in a Second Language. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional strategies, methodologies, and materials for developing reading and writing skills in a second language. Developing cognitive academic language proficiency and integrating multiple cultural perspectives.

TELL 440 : Content-Based Language Instruction. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
RECOMMENDED: TELL 410, 420; 430 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional methods, strategies, and materials for integrating curriculum content and language instruction. Teaching, creating, and adapting lesson materials in a multicultural context.

TELL 450 : Family, School, and Community Partnerships. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: for TESOL teaching minors: concurrent enrollment in TELL 400. There are no prerequisites for non-TESOL teaching students.
DESCRIPTION: Standards, principles, policies, and processes of partnering with parents, families, schools, and communities in fostering and sustaining the development of children and youth.

2. Complete four credit hours in an ESL situation and/or working with limited-English-proficiency (LEP) students while enrolled in TELL 477R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Teaching English Language Learners (TELL) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Teaching English Language Learners (TELL)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

400-Level Courses

TELL 400 : Foundations in Education for English Language Learners. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and assessing legal, linguistic, cultural, community, and familial issues affecting access of Limited English Proficient (LEP) student populations to education.

TELL 410 : Second Language Acquisition. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and variables in native- and second-language development. How teachers can foster efficient acquisition of language, cognitive, and academic skills in second-language environments.

TELL 420 : Assessing Linguistically Diverse Students. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts in testing, use/interpretation of current instruments for language/academic assessment, appropriate placement of linguistically diverse students, and developing classroom language assessments.

TELL 430 : Developing K-12 Literacy in a Second Language. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional strategies, methodologies, and materials for developing reading and writing skills in a second language. Developing cognitive academic language proficiency and integrating multiple cultural perspectives.

TELL 435 : Language Arts and Literacy Instruction - Spanish. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: TELL 400, 410, 420; 430 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and rationale for developing language and content knowledge in two or more languages. Background and skills necessary to teach language through math, science, and social studies in Spanish in the K-12 immersion and dual-immersion environments.

TELL 440 : Content-Based Language Instruction. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 230; TELL 400.
RECOMMENDED: TELL 410, 420; 430 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Instructional methods, strategies, and materials for integrating curriculum content and language instruction. Teaching, creating, and adapting lesson materials in a multicultural context.

TELL 445 : Content-Area Instruction in Spanish. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: TELL 430, 435; 440 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: TELL 410, 420.
DESCRIPTION: Background and skills necessary to teach language through math, science, and social studies in Spanish and in K-12 immersion and dual immersion environments.

TELL 450 : Family, School, and Community Partnerships. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: for TESOL teaching minors: concurrent enrollment in TELL 400. There are no prerequisites for non-TESOL teaching students.
DESCRIPTION: Standards, principles, policies, and processes of partnering with parents, families, schools, and communities in fostering and sustaining the development of children and youth.

TELL 477R : Practicum for Teaching English Language Learners. (.5-4:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: TELL 400, 410, 420, 430, 440, 450.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in teaching English to second-language learners.
NOTE: Can be taken concurrently with student teaching/internship in a diverse-language setting.

TELL 478R : Practicum in Bilingual Education - Spanish. (4:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: TELL 400, 410, 420, 430, 440, 435, 445, 450.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in bilingual education; teaching second-language learners.

Back to Teaching English Language Learners Program Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Theatre and Media Arts

Rodger Sorensen, Chair
D-581 HFAC, (801) 422-6645
E-mail: tmadepartment@byu.edu
Internet: http://tma.byu.edu/

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, (801) 422-3777

Admission to Degree Program

Several degree programs in the Department of Theatre and Media Arts have a departmental application process with enrollment limitations. Theatre arts studies major and minor programs have declaration procedures but are open enrollment. Please see the college advisement center for specific details (1-801-422-3777).

The Discipline

The study of theatre and media arts is truly a study of humankind and our attitudes toward ourselves as revealed in artistic expression. Since art is a mirror of human society, the specific disciplines of theatre and media arts cover our innermost attempts at comprehending our existence through all time.

The BYU theatre program is designed to educate students in a basic foundation of dramatic literature, theatre history, theory, performance skills as both actor and director, and techniques in all areas of theatre design technology and production.

The BYU media arts program is designed to educate students in a basic foundation of film history, theory, and criticism, along with the fundamental production competencies in film, television, animation, or interactive multimedia.

Mission Statement

TMA exists to fulfill both the mission of BYU "to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life" and The Aims of a BYU Education, which "should be (1) spiritually strengthening, (2) intellectually enlarging, and (3) character building, leading to (4) lifelong learning and service." We work toward these ends by promoting literacy, spirituality, and creativity and by exploring their interrelatedness in the arts of theatre and media.

- *Literacy* means for us the ability to "read"—that is, to apply the vocabulary and grammar, theoretical models, history, and analysis of theatre and media in order to (1) read multiple meanings and (2) appreciate, evaluate, and respond to them.
- *Spirituality* consists of discovering, exploring, and balancing the interrelationships among the individual, others, and Deity.
- *Creativity* means synthesizing in new ways and illuminating human understanding through performance and production.

We promote literacy, spirituality, and creativity in the arts of theatre and media by emphasizing such central elements as

- the truths of human experience,
- generosity of soul,
- a service orientation and focus on others,
- commitment to developing infinite potential, and
- awareness.

In promoting literacy, spirituality, and creativity in theatre and media arts, we balance the skills and demands of

- thinking—both creative and critical—
- collaborative mentored processes, and
- production.

—Adopted October 7, 2003

Career Opportunities

The theatre program provides training and experience in all areas of theatre, from performing to playwriting, from teaching to technical production.

The media arts program provides a foundation and basic experience in analyzing, conceptualizing, writing, directing, and collaboratively producing nonfiction, narrative, and interactive media. For skill development and specialization, students may select an area of study from the following: critical studies; film, documentary, or television and radio producing and directing; screenwriting; or interactive multimedia.

For an area of interest study list, contact the advisement center or the department office.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence

- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Media Arts Studies
BA in Theatre Arts Education
BA in Theatre Arts Studies
BFA in Acting

Minors

Media Arts Studies
Theatre Arts Education
Theatre Arts Studies

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Theatre and Media Arts
MFA in Production Design

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Animation-Additional Degree Program Offered

The BFA in animation is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of the Department of Theatre and Media Arts, the Department of Visual Arts, and the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology's School of Technology. Please see the Visual Arts section of this catalog for degree requirements, or go to the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for more information about entrance requirements to this program.

General Information

1. All theatre majors—BFA acting and music dance theatre (MDT), theatre education, and theatre arts studies—should declare themselves as theatre majors at the college advisement center in order to receive a major card that will enable students to attend theatre season performances.
2. The theatre arts studies major is an open enrollment program. See program description for details on declaring this major.
3. For all limited enrollment programs—animation, BFA acting, MDT, media arts, and theatre education—students are required to fulfill particular premajor requirements. See individual program description for details. Application must be made for entrance into the chosen degree program.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Media Arts Studies (49-51 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

The media arts studies program produces students with a strong liberal arts foundation that can be used effectively in a variety of film-related careers or graduate studies. Graduates are generalists with skills and proficiencies that can be used in multiple venues including emerging media environments. Students master knowledge of film culture, history, and theory; develop general and specialized skills sets; and utilize processes that integrate professional practices, generate creative applications to new situations, and support collaboration in multiple settings. Core curriculum of critical studies develops analytical skills and creates a foundation for application and experimentation; a wide range of electives allows additional emphasis in critical studies, narrative or documentary production, or other specialized areas.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following pre-media arts courses with a B grade or better:
   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 112 : Collaboration, Research, and Visualization. (2:4:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Overview and practical applications of principles of collaboration, research, and visualization as essential elements of appreciation and production of media arts projects.

2. Be admitted to the program by application. (See the department office, D-581 HFAC.)

3. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 105 : Using Basic Media Tools. (1:1:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status or pre-animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 185.
   DESCRIPTION: Introductory course to familiarize students with basics in camera, lighting, and sound fundamentals.

   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 185 : Basic Media Production. (3:4:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status or animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to basics of film and video production. Includes lecture and practical lab experiences with audio and video.

4. Complete the following media arts core courses:
   TMA 291 : Media Arts History 1. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1895 to 1945.

   TMA 292 : Media Arts History 2. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1946 to present.

TMA 293 : History of Documentary and Nonficton Film. (3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to and contextualization of documentary film from its inception to present.

TMA 391 : Introduction to Media Arts Theory. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and analyzing contemporary film and media theories, with application to specific media texts.

5. Complete one of the following advanced critical studies courses:
TMA 458 : Media Literacy Education. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102, 114.
RECOMMENDED: TMA 291, 292.
DESCRIPTION: Media literacy principles and basic film production in the context of educating students and teachers in local K-12 public schools.

TMA 477R : Issues in Media Arts. (3:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; TMA 291, 292.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of key media arts issues, within context of gospel principles.

TMA 492R : Media Arts Genres. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of a single major traditional media genre (i.e., western, musical, sitcom, or melodrama) with consideration of contextual, subtextual, and textual issues.

TMA 494 : Transcendence: Religion and Film. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, stylistic, and thematic survey of approaches to religious and spiritual subject matter in film.

TMA 497 : Media as a Mirror of Our Times. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary approach to media texts as aesthetic and historical documents expressing a people, place, and time.

TMA 498R : Special Topics in Media Arts. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Consideration of compelling issues in media arts practice, theory, history, and criticism.

6. Complete 22–24 hours (14 must be upper-division) from faculty advisor-approved courses in an area of study. These areas of study must be approved in writing by the student's faculty advisor before enrollment occurs. Please contact the department for possible study areas. Up to eight hours of practica can be used to fill this requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Theatre Arts Education (76 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The theatre arts education degree program is designed to prepare students to become creative teachers who can meet the educational needs of secondary school theatre students. The skills the program emphasizes include, but are not limited to, interpersonal communication, social, life, acting, directing, writing, historical/analytical, and design/production skills. In addition to developing highly skilled educators, the program is designed to develop strong directing and production skills in each prospective high school teacher.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.

2. Complete the following pre-theatre courses with a B grade or better:
   TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   or
   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

   Note: TMA 102 is strongly recommended to enhance media literacy.

3. Be admitted to the licensure program by application during Sc Ed 276R (see the department office, D-581 HFAC.)

4. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

   TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

5. Complete the following theatre core courses:
   TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic

literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 260R : Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 301 : Contemporary Performance Practices. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluate great works of 20th century dramatic literature. Critically analyze the connection between theatre and historical society. Synthesize critical study with hands-on application of a variety of modes of 20th century performance.

TMA 360R : Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

6. Complete the following major courses:

TMA 121 : Voice and Diction. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: MDT or theatre education major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills involved in producing an effective voice; International Phonetic Alphabet. Lab required.

TMA 127 : Beginning Stage Combat. (1:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status, or Sc Ed 276R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic hand-to-hand stage combat instruction. Introduction to tumbling and falls.

TMA 266 : Set Construction 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 160.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

TMA 267 : Makeup 1. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

TMA 336 : Directing Principles and Practices. (3:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies majors: TMA 114, 236, and instructor's consent. Media arts studies majors: TMA 105, 114, 185, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and processes of taking a scene from script to production.

TMA 361 : Stage Management 1. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 123, 160, 236; or instructor's consent. Theatre education majors must also have completed Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and objectives of stage management. Assistant stage managers for departmental productions will be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 368 : Scenic Art. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies or theatre education major status.
DESCRIPTION: Basic approaches to painting and finishing scenic elements. Priming, lay-in, texturing, and effects. Possible work painting on departmental productions.

DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

HIST 363 : The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American southwest, and Florida, 1521-1821; Mexican period to 1848.

HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

HIST 382 : Mormonism in the American Experience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social, economic, political, intellectual, and religious environment in which Mormonism flourished; contributions of Mormon men and women to American culture and history.

HIST 385 : Latinos in the United States. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: The place of Latin Americans within the context of U.S. history. The growth and development of the largest Latino communities from pre-colonial times to present day and how Latinos may influence future policies within the U.S.

HIST 386 : Nineteenth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of various Indian tribes, their cultures, and their relationships with European nations and the United States, including military campaigns.

HIST 387 : Twentieth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural factors that affect twentieth-century native Americans in both urban and reservation settings, including current challenges facing Indian communities.

PL SC 317 : Public Opinion and Voting Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between attitudes, opinion, and voting behavior in American politics and institutions.

PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

REL C 342 : Latter-day Saint History, 1845 to 1900. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the martyrdom of Joseph Smith through the administration of Lorenzo Snow.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 343 : Latter-day Saint History, 1901 to the Present. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Church history and doctrine from the administration of Joseph F. Smith to the present.
NOTE: Honors also.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business

TMA 377A : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377B : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377C : Teaching Methods and Instruction: Theatre in Education Practices. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R, 377A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Practicing contemporary theatre-in-education (TIE) methods to be employed in practical secondary education settings.

TMA 436 : Theatre Directing Practicum. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 336 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directing projects for class critique and public presentation.

TMA 457 : Media in the Contemporary Classroom. (3:4:4)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R in major area.
DESCRIPTION: Developing educational methods and techniques for using media in the specialized media classroom; study of educational models and theories related to historical and emerging media technologies.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before registration for TMA 377 A,B.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

(3 hours)
SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.

DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Theatre Arts Studies (50 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The theatre arts studies major is an open enrollment program that provides a strong liberal arts foundation that can be used effectively in a variety of performance-related careers or graduate studies. The major provides practical training, critical thinking skills, and the development of professional ethics across the various performance disciplines. Students may focus studies in areas of interest — critical studies and dramaturgy, design and technology, directing and stage management, playwriting, or theatre for young audiences — but graduates are generalists with skills and proficiencies that can be used in multiple production venues and media environments.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

2. Complete and submit declaration form for the theatre arts studies major to the department office (D-581 HFAC).

3. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

   TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

4. Complete the following theatre core courses:
   TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

   TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and

performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 260R : Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 301 : Contemporary Performance Practices. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluate great works of 20th century dramatic literature. Critically analyze the connection between theatre and historical society. Synthesize critical study with hands-on application of a variety of modes of 20th century performance.

TMA 360R : Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

5. Complete 20 hours (12 must be upper-division) in consultation with the faculty mentor. These individually tailored programs will allow the student maximum flexibility while guaranteeing quality control.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Acting (79.5–80.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

The acting degree program was developed for students who are committed to acting as a career. It is focused to better prepare them to compete professionally and/or for admission to advanced acting conservatory programs or graduate work.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Successfully pass a preliminary audition and a final acceptance audition. These auditions are held at the end of each fall and winter semester.

2. Complete the following theatre courses with a B grade or better:

   TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

3. Complete the following foundation courses:

   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 128 : Acting Fundamentals: BFA Track. (3:6:1)
   PREREQUISITE: pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent.
   RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab.

   TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

4. Complete the following core courses:

   TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

   TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 260R : Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 360R : Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

5. Complete the following major courses:

Acting:

TMA 124 : Acting. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114, 123. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: Acting BFA majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 127, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating acting skills; building a character through exercises and scene work.

TMA 223 : Acting Improvisation. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting, BFA acting, or MDT major status; TMA 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 222, 224, Dance 140R.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery of emotion, thought process, and impulse through improvisation.

TMA 224 : Acting for Film and TV. (3:6:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting, BFA acting, or MDT major status; TMA 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: Acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 222, 223, Dance 140R.
DESCRIPTION: On-camera techniques for features, sitcoms, industrials, and commercials. Lab required.

TMA 229 : Musical Scene Study. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 124, Music 161, Dance 140. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of two genres of musical theatre; text analysis, research, written assignments.

TMA 324 : Acting Classics. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 122, 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: For acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Acting skills helpful in classical literature, emphasizing Shakespearean scansion and text analysis.

TMA 424 : Advanced Acting. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Scene studies in extended realism. Absurdism, American classics, Shaw, Chekhov, etc.

TMA 427 : Auditions. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 225, 229, 324, 424. BFA MDT majors: TMA 229, 324 (or 424), Dance 240. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 425.
DESCRIPTION: Auditions, cold reading, resumes, and the business end of acting, music, and dance for the professional performer.

Voice:

MUSIC 161 : Voice Technique. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance by audition to the School of Music.
DESCRIPTION: Class instruction in voice technique.

TMA 122 : Voice Production. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exercises to aid in freeing tensions, habits/patterns, and finding natural state of the voice. Lab required.

TMA 222 : Phonetics. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Correct use of Standard American Stage Dialect with International Phonetic Alphabet. Identification of speech/articulation problems.

TMA 322 : Classical Voice. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 122, 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only
DESCRIPTION: Speech techniques (word stress, inflection, pitch, pace, etc.) applied in the classical play.

TMA 422 : Dialects. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 124, 222. BFA MDT majors or other majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Major stage dialects.

Movement:

DANCE 140 : Modern Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

or

DANCE 240R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills and basic theories.

TMA 125 : Yoga and Alexander Technique. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of relaxation, breath, focus, and posture to enhance actor's body and voice as a whole integrated tool in performance.

TMA 127 : Beginning Stage Combat. (1:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status, or Sc Ed 276R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic hand-to-hand stage combat instruction. Introduction to tumbling and falls.

TMA 225 : Neutral Mask. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting, MDT, theatre education, or theatre arts studies major status; TMA 114, 123, 125. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Use of masks in teaching specificity of movement, communication, and emotion.

TMA 325 : Stage Combat. (2:4:2)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 127, 225.
DESCRIPTION: Skills of safe hand-to-hand combat, including use of rapier, dagger, and broadsword, for stage and screen.

Support skills:

TMA 267 : Makeup 1. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

Performance:

TMA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

or

TMA 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

(1 hour minimum)

TMA 410 : Acting Capstone. (2-4:Arr.:Arr.)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status. By audition only.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in a final acting project on the BYU main-stage season.

(3 hours minimum)

6. Complete the following:
TMA 421 : The Business: Marketing Yourself as a Performer. (1:1.5:0)

PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the entertainment industry, including telephone interviews with entertainment industry personnel. Required research project.

TMA 491 : Ethics, Aesthetics, and Theology. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing and considering interrelationships of ethical, aesthetic, and theological dimensions of creating and performing media arts and theatre texts.

7. Complete 12 hours from the following or other approved courses:

MUSIC 259 : Psychology of Performance. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Psychological skills for performers. Topics include audition preparation, conquering stage fright, preventing overuse injury, attention control, creativity. Skills applicable to any performance situation.

TMA 220R : Workshop 1: Acting. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experience in production: acting.

TMA 241 : Screenwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291 or 292 or concurrent enrollment; Animation majors: TMA 294.
DESCRIPTION: Basic narrative and nonfiction (documentary, educational, industrial, multimedia) screenwriting principles through reading, viewing, testing, and completing writing assignments.

TMA 251 : Playwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Basic playwriting principles through reading, completing writing assignments, testing, and writing the first draft of a one-act play.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

TMA 315R : Workshop 2: Special Projects. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate projects in theatre or media arts.

TMA 329 : Theatre and Film Acting Conservatory. (3:6:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status. TMA 122, 224. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Extensive work on a theatre or film project through semester, culminating in performance of play or preview of film/video.

TMA 336 : Directing Principles and Practices. (3:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies majors: TMA 114, 236, and instructor's consent. Media arts studies majors: TMA 105, 114, 185, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and processes of taking a scene from script to production.

TMA 341 : Screenwriting 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 114, 241. By application only
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate conceptualization, screenwriting, and development for narrative or nonnarrative projects.

TMA 351 : Playwriting 2. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing the first draft of a full-length play.

TMA 367 : Makeup 2. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 114, 267.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced techniques in makeup and introduction to prosthetics. Supervision on departmental productions required. Assistant designers will be selected from this course.

TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories,

emphasizing performance.

TMA 420R : Performance Workshop 2. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced experience in production: acting.

TMA 425 : Character Mask. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 223, 225. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Use of the body as a primary tool for character and script interpretation.

TMA 429 : Performance: Recital. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 222, 229, 324, 424. BFA MDT majors: TMA 229, 324 (or 424). By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Thirty- to forty-five minute performance of cuttings from varied genres.

TMA 436 : Theatre Directing Practicum. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 336 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directing projects for class critique and public presentation.

TMA 443R : Writer/Director/Actor Workshop. (3:6:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Collaborative workshop developing new stage and screenplays through exercises, discussion, and writing. Scripts selected competitively; public readings at end of course.

TMA 469 : Theatre Management. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies foundation courses or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic philosophies of box office, front-of-house, and theatre marketing.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Media Arts Studies (23 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following with a B grade or better:
   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 112 : Collaboration, Research, and Visualization. (2:4:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Overview and practical applications of principles of collaboration, research, and visualization as essential elements of appreciation and production of media arts projects.

2. Be admitted to the minor program by application (see the department office, D-581 HFAC.)

3. Upon acceptance into the minor program, complete the following:
   TMA 105 : Using Basic Media Tools. (1:1:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status or pre-animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 185.
   DESCRIPTION: Introductory course to familiarize students with basics in camera, lighting, and sound fundamentals.

   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 185 : Basic Media Production. (3:4:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status or animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to basics of film and video production. Includes lecture and practical lab experiences with audio and video.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   TMA 291 : Media Arts History 1. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1895 to 1945.

   TMA 292 : Media Arts History 2. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1946 to present.

   TMA 293 : History of Documentary and Nonficton Film. (3:ARR:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status; TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to and contextualization of documentary film from its inception to present.

5. Complete three hours from the following advanced critical studies courses:
   TMA 457 : Media in the Contemporary Classroom. (3:4:4)

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show American Studies Courses

PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R in major area.
DESCRIPTION: Developing educational methods and techniques for using media in the specialized media classroom; study of educational models and theories related to historical and emerging media technologies.

TMA 477R : Issues in Media Arts. (3:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; TMA 291, 292.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of key media arts issues, within context of gospel principles.

TMA 492R : Media Arts Genres. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of a single major traditional media genre (i.e., western, musical, sitcom, or melodrama) with consideration of contextual, subtextual, and textual issues.

TMA 494 : Transcendence: Religion and Film. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, stylistic, and thematic survey of approaches to religious and spiritual subject matter in film.

TMA 497 : Media as a Mirror of Our Times. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary approach to media texts as aesthetic and historical documents expressing a people, place, and time.

TMA 498R : Special Topics in Media Arts. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Consideration of compelling issues in media arts practice, theory, history, and criticism.

6. Complete five hours of electives from the following:

TMA 274 : Nonfiction Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 185; 293 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of documentary and experimental filmmaking. Lecture, discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.

TMA 277R : Television Studio Production. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 174 or 273R.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques for creating live and taped studio production of news, music, and drama. Lab required.

TMA 293 : History of Documentary and Nonficton Film. (3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to and contextualization of documentary film from its inception to present.

TMA 295 : History of the Moving Image. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102.
DESCRIPTION: Origins and development of the moving image in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries as revealed in television-as-art/entertainment and/or multimedia focusing on social contexts.

TMA 370R : Practicum: Interactive Multimedia. (2:2:6)
DESCRIPTION: Skills in and practice with current IMM tools.

TMA 384R : Practicum: Special Topics in Media Arts. (.5-6:ARR:1)
PREREQUISITE: Major status or instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of special media skills.

TMA 387 : Production Management: Advanced. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; media arts foundation courses; TMA 187.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of techniques for managing large arts projects, involving individual and team projects.

TMA 391 : Introduction to Media Arts Theory. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and analyzing contemporary film and media theories, with application to specific media texts.

TMA 392 : Children's Media. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and theoretical survey of media for and about children and the literature that informs it; discussions and strategies relating to production, reception, pedagogy, and parenting.

TMA 492R : Media Arts Genres. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of a single major traditional media genre (i.e., western, musical, sitcom, or melodrama) with consideration of contextual, subtextual, and textual issues.

TMA 494 : Transcendence: Religion and Film. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, stylistic, and thematic survey of approaches to religious and spiritual subject matter in film.

TMA 497 : Media as a Mirror of Our Times. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary approach to media texts as aesthetic and historical documents expressing a people, place, and time.

TMA 498R : Special Topics in Media Arts. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Consideration of compelling issues in media arts practice, theory, history, and criticism.

(these 400-level courses may not be used if taken to fill item 5 above).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Theatre Arts Education (33 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following with a B grade or better:
   TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   or
   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

2. Apply for entrance approval from the theatre and media arts education committee.

3. Complete the following:
   TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

   TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

   TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

   TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

   TMA 267 : Makeup 1. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA foundation courses.
   DESCRIPTION: Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

   TMA 336 : Directing Principles and Practices. (3:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies majors: TMA 114, 236, and instructor's consent. Media arts studies majors: TMA 105, 114, 185, and instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Theories and processes of taking a scene from script to production.

TMA 377A : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377B : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377C : Teaching Methods and Instruction: Theatre in Education Practices. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R, 377A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Practicing contemporary theatre-in-education (TIE) methods to be employed in practical secondary education settings.

TMA 436 : Theatre Directing Practicum. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 336 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directing projects for class critique and public presentation.

4. Complete one course from the following:
TMA 266 : Set Construction 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 160.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

TMA 368 : Scenic Art. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies or theatre education major status.
DESCRIPTION: Basic approaches to painting and finishing scenic elements. Priming, lay-in, texturing, and effects. Possible work painting on departmental productions.

5. Complete one course from the following:
TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Theatre Arts Studies (19–20 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

2. Complete and submit declaration form for the theatre arts studies minor to the department office (D-444 HFAC).

3. Complete the following core courses:
   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

   TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

   TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

   TMA 251 : Playwriting 1. (3:4:0)
   PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic playwriting principles through reading, completing writing assignments, testing, and writing the first draft of a one-act play.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school

classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

5. Complete one course from the following:
   TMA 260R : Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

   TMA 360R : Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

6. Complete one course from the following:
   TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

   TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

Show all Theatre and Media Arts (TMA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Theatre and Media Arts (TMA)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

TMA 100 : Introduction to Visual Literacy. (3:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Overview of visual communication, with hands-on experience in multimedia design and tools, structured to increase awareness of visual functions and develop beginning proficiency with computer-assisted visual communications.

TMA 101 : Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1)
DESCRIPTION: Reading, viewing, analyzing, writing about, and interacting with contemporary plays and performances to explore both theatre fundamentals and ways theatre addresses questions and concerns of our time. Lab required.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

TMA 105 : Using Basic Media Tools. (1:1:1)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status or pre-animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 185.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course to familiarize students with basics in camera, lighting, and sound fundamentals.

TMA 110 : Media Arts Experience. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: premajors only.
DESCRIPTION: Practical introductory experience working in media environments (including film and broadcast facilities).

TMA 112 : Collaboration, Research, and Visualization. (2:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Overview and practical applications of principles of collaboration, research, and visualization as essential elements of appreciation and production of media arts projects.

TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

TMA 121 : Voice and Diction. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: MDT or theatre education major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills involved in producing an effective voice; International Phonetic Alphabet. Lab required.

TMA 122 : Voice Production. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exercises to aid in freeing tensions, habits/patterns, and finding natural state of the voice. Lab required.

TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

TMA 124 : Acting. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114, 123. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: Acting BFA majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 127, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating acting skills; building a character through exercises and scene work.

TMA 125 : Yoga and Alexander Technique. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of relaxation, breath, focus, and posture to enhance actor's body and voice as a whole integrated tool in performance.

TMA 127 : Beginning Stage Combat. (1:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status, or Sc Ed 276R, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic hand-to-hand stage combat instruction. Introduction to tumbling and falls.

TMA 128 : Acting Fundamentals: BFA Track. (3:6:1)
PREREQUISITE: pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

TMA 160 : Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

TMA 174 : Electronic News Gathering. (3:3:)
PREREQUISITE: Communications major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques for electronic news gathering for broadcast journalism applications.

TMA 185 : Basic Media Production. (3:4:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status or animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 105.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to basics of film and video production. Includes lecture and practical lab experiences with audio and video.

TMA 187 : Production Management: Beginning. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of media production; budgeting, scheduling, and management skills.

TMA 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status, TMA 114. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre and media arts.

200-Level Courses

TMA 201 : Dramatic Performance: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek antiquity through Renaissance, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 202 : Dramatic Performance: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Renaissance through present, primarily from perspective of dramatic literature and performance. Ways in which performance functions within particular socioeconomic, political, religious, and aesthetic perspectives.

TMA 212R : Forum. (.5:1:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre or media arts major status.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture and question-and-answer sessions with industry professionals and scholars.

TMA 215R : Workshop 1: Special Projects. (.5-6:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Special projects in theatre and media arts.

TMA 220R : Workshop 1: Acting. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experience in production: acting.

TMA 222 : Phonetics. (2:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Correct use of Standard American Stage Dialect with International Phonetic Alphabet. Identification of speech/articulation problems.

TMA 223 : Acting Improvisation. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting, BFA acting, or MDT major status; TMA 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 222, 224, Dance 140R.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery of emotion, thought process, and impulse through improvisation.

TMA 224 : Acting for Film and TV. (3:6:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Pre-BFA acting, BFA acting, or MDT major status; TMA 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: Acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 222, 223, Dance 140R.
DESCRIPTION: On-camera techniques for features, sitcoms, industrials, and commercials. Lab required.

TMA 225 : Neutral Mask. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting, MDT, theatre education, or theatre arts studies major status; TMA 114, 123, 125. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Use of masks in teaching specificity of movement, communication, and emotion.

TMA 229 : Musical Scene Study. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 124, Music 161, Dance 140. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of two genres of musical theatre; text analysis, research, written assignments.

TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

TMA 241 : Screenwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291 or 292 or concurrent enrollment; Animation majors: TMA 294.
DESCRIPTION: Basic narrative and nonfiction (documentary, educational, industrial, multimedia) screenwriting principles through reading, viewing, testing, and completing writing assignments.

TMA 251 : Playwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Basic playwriting principles through reading, completing writing assignments, testing, and writing the first draft of a one-act play.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

TMA 260R : Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 262 : Costume Design 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 114, 160; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Costume history, rendering, and theory. Assistant costume designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 263 : Scenic Design 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 114, 160; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic approaches to scenic design. Perspective drawing, rendering, models, and computer graphics. Assistant designers for departmental productions may be selected from students in this course.

TMA 264 : Lighting Design 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 160; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic approaches to lighting design. Plot, maintenance, and board operation. Assistant designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in course.

TMA 266 : Set Construction 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 160.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

TMA 267 : Makeup 1. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

TMA 273 : Digital Media Storytelling for Broadcast. (3:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 185 or communications major status.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of media production, information gathering, conceptualizing, and storytelling for broadcast production.

TMA 274 : Nonfiction Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 185; 293 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of documentary and experimental filmmaking. Lecture, discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.

TMA 277R : Television Studio Production. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 174 or 273R.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques for creating live and taped studio production of news, music, and drama. Lab required.

TMA 285 : Production: Intermediate. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 185; 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Survey and application of the basics of narrative and nonfiction, including 16-mm film. Lecture, discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.
NOTE: Fee.

TMA 291 : Media Arts History 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1895 to 1945.

TMA 292 : Media Arts History 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1946 to present.

TMA 293 : History of Documentary and Nonficton Film. (3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status; TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to and contextualization of documentary film from its inception to present.

TMA 294 : History of Animation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102.
DESCRIPTION: Origins and developments of animation internationally to the present, focusing on aesthetic, technical, political, and economic aspects of the medium.

TMA 295 : History of the Moving Image. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102.
DESCRIPTION: Origins and development of the moving image in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries as revealed in television-as-art/entertainment and/or multimedia focusing on social contexts.

TMA 299R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status, TMA 114. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

300-Level Courses

TMA 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: MDT major status; Music 290, Dance 243R, 244R, TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Dance 300, Music 300.
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, TMA 328.
DESCRIPTION: Theatre in the Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, and theatre.

TMA 301 : Contemporary Performance Practices. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluate great works of 20th century dramatic literature. Critically analyze the connection between theatre and historical society. Synthesize critical study with hands-on application of a variety of modes of 20th century performance.

TMA 315R : Workshop 2: Special Projects. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate projects in theatre or media arts.

TMA 319 : Advanced Narrative Production. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 241, 285. By application only.
RECOMMENDED: TMA 123.
DESCRIPTION: Preproduction and production of short projects, including digital and 16-mm sound film in narrative form. Discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.
NOTE: Fee.

TMA 322 : Classical Voice. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 122, 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only
DESCRIPTION: Speech techniques (word stress, inflection, pitch, pace, etc.) applied in the classical play.

TMA 324 : Acting Classics. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 122, 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: For acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Acting skills helpful in classical literature, emphasizing Shakespearean scansion and text analysis.

TMA 325 : Stage Combat. (2:4:2)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 127, 225.
DESCRIPTION: Skills of safe hand-to-hand combat, including use of rapier, dagger, and broadsword, for stage and screen.

TMA 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA MDT major status; TMA 229; Concurrent enrollment in Dance 328, Music 328.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

TMA 329 : Theatre and Film Acting Conservatory. (3:6:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status. TMA 122, 224. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Extensive work on a theatre or film project through semester, culminating in performance of play or preview of film/video.

TMA 330R : Assistant Directing. (2:0:9)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 336.
DESCRIPTION: Assisting directors for departmental productions.

TMA 331 : Directing Narrative Literature. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of adapting, directing, and performing nondramatic literature. Readers Theatre.

TMA 336 : Directing Principles and Practices. (3:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies majors: TMA 114, 236, and instructor's consent. Media arts studies majors: TMA 105, 114, 185, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and processes of taking a scene from script to production.

TMA 341 : Screenwriting 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 114, 241. By application only
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate conceptualization, screenwriting, and development for narrative or nonnarrative projects.

TMA 350R : Play Review. (1:1:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, analyzing, discussing, and writing reviews of new scripts for young audiences.

TMA 351 : Playwriting 2. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing the first draft of a full-length play.

TMA 352 : Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

TMA 360R : Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

TMA 361 : Stage Management 1. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 123, 160, 236; or instructor's consent. Theatre education majors must also have completed Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and objectives of stage management. Assistant stage managers for departmental productions will be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 362 : Costume Design 2. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 262.
DESCRIPTION: Art approaches to costume design. Assistants and production designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 363 : Scenic Design 2. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 263.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

American Studies (Am St)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

AM ST 200 : The American West as a Region. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Geography, natural history, history, and cultures of the American West.

300-Level Courses

AM ST 303 : Studies in the American Experience. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Social and intellectual life in American culture from the colonial period to the present.

AM ST 360 : Film in American Culture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings, lectures, and analysis of specific motion pictures as social documents, reflecting different facets of the American experience.

AM ST 390R : Topics in American Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Multidisciplinary study of a carefully defined problem in American culture. Topics vary.

AM ST 395 : Theories and Methods in American Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: AmSt 303.
DESCRIPTION: Readings/discussion seminar introducing students to theories, definition, and practice of American Studies.

Back to American Studies Program Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

TMA 364 : Lighting Design 2. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 264.
DESCRIPTION: Art approaches to renderings and plots. Advanced computer graphics. Assistants and designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 366 : Production Drafting. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Hand drafting principles as used in scenic and production design. Theoretical projects that include industry standards for drawing, building, and presenting.

TMA 367 : Makeup 2. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 114, 267.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced techniques in makeup and introduction to prosthetics. Supervision on departmental productions required. Assistant designers will be selected from this course.

TMA 368 : Scenic Art. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies or theatre education major status.
DESCRIPTION: Basic approaches to painting and finishing scenic elements. Priming, lay-in, texturing, and effects. Possible work painting on departmental productions.

TMA 369R : Design and Technology Projects. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience working as main season assistant designers; related topics.

TMA 370R : Practicum: Interactive Multimedia. (2:2:6)
DESCRIPTION: Skills in and practice with current IMM tools.

TMA 372R : Media Collaboration. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 114; by application only.
DESCRIPTION: Experience collaborating with senior capstone media arts experience.

TMA 377A : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377B : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in theatre; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

TMA 377C : Teaching Methods and Instruction: Theatre in Education Practices. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R, 377A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Practicing contemporary theatre-in-education (TIE) methods to be employed in practical secondary education settings.

TMA 378R : Producing and Directing Television Studio Production. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts or communications major status; TMA 277R.
DESCRIPTION: Directing techniques in creating electronic images and sound for live dissemination. Lab required.

TMA 380 : Introduction to Dramaturgy. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Research and apply hands-on theatrical skills in four critical studies areas; literary management, production dramaturgy, new play development, educational outreach.

TMA 384R : Practicum: Special Topics in Media Arts. (.5-6:ARR:1)
PREREQUISITE: Major status or instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of special media skills.

TMA 387 : Production Management: Advanced. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; media arts foundation courses; TMA 187.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of techniques for managing large arts projects, involving individual and team projects.

TMA 388R : Media Arts Crew. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 185. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Practical supervised experience in media arts production. Exposure to protocols, as well as organizational and technical aspects.

TMA 389R : Producing Symposium. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; TMA 114. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Developing organizational skills by workshop meetings with industry professionals, who share their producing experiences, styles, and strategies.

TMA 391 : Introduction to Media Arts Theory. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and analyzing contemporary film and media theories, with application to specific media texts.

TMA 392 : Children's Media. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and theoretical survey of media for and about children and the literature that informs it; discussions and strategies relating to production, reception, pedagogy, and parenting.

TMA 394 : Conceptualizing Nonnarrative Forms. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: media arts major status; TMA 274.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced readings and practical applications of various nonfiction forms.

TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

400-Level Courses

TMA 410 : Acting Capstone. (2-4:Arr.:Arr.)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status. By audition only.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in a final acting project on the BYU main-stage season.

TMA 415R : CAD for Theatre and Media Arts. (1:2.0:2.0)
DESCRIPTION: CAD training in scenic, lighting, and production design. Course alternates between drafting and 3D software.

TMA 419A : Advanced Narrative Direction A. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 319. By application only.
RECOMMENDED: TMA 123.
DESCRIPTION: Working with actors; visual exression; artistic identity. Creating an advanced portfolio. Discussion, lab, individual/group experience and critiques.

TMA 419B : Advanced Narrative Directing B. (1-3:arr.:arr.)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 419A. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Working with actors; visual expression; artistic identity. Creating an advanced portfolio. Discussion, lab, individual/group experience and critiques.

TMA 420R : Performance Workshop 2. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced experience in production: acting.

TMA 421 : The Business: Marketing Yourself as a Performer. (1:1.5:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 114; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the entertainment industry, including telephone interviews with entertainment industry personnel. Required research project.

TMA 422 : Dialects. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 124, 222. BFA MDT majors or other majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Major stage dialects.

TMA 424 : Advanced Acting. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 124, 222. BFA MDT majors: TMA 121, 124. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Scene studies in extended realism. Absurdism, American classics, Shaw, Chekhov, etc.

TMA 425 : Character Mask. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status; TMA 223, 225. By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Use of the body as a primary tool for character and script interpretation.

TMA 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:5)
PREREQUISITE: MDT major status; TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Music 426, Dance 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

TMA 427 : Auditions. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 225, 229, 324, 424. BFA MDT majors: TMA 229, 324 (or 424), Dance 240. By audition and instructor's consent only.
RECOMMENDED: BFA acting majors: concurrent enrollment in TMA 425.
DESCRIPTION: Auditions, cold reading, resumes, and the business end of acting, music, and dance for the professional performer.

TMA 429 : Performance: Recital. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting or MDT major status. BFA acting majors: TMA 222, 229, 324, 424. BFA MDT majors: TMA 229, 324 (or 424). By audition and instructor's consent only.
DESCRIPTION: Thirty- to forty-five minute performance of cuttings from varied genres.

TMA 436 : Theatre Directing Practicum. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 336 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directing projects for class critique and public presentation.

TMA 441R : Screenwriting 3. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 291 or 292; 341. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced narrative and/or nonfiction screenwriting principles. Emerging technology.

TMA 443R : Writer/Director/Actor Workshop. (3:6:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Collaborative workshop developing new stage and screenplays through exercises, discussion, and writing. Scripts selected competitively; public readings at end of course.

TMA 451R : Playwriting 3. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 351; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing or rewriting a play.

TMA 452R : Puppetry. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and experience constructing and operating puppets for use in performance, recreational, and educational settings.

TMA 455R : Theatre Tour. (3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: major status or instructor's consent. By audition.
DESCRIPTION: Theatre for young audiences; touring experience.

TMA 457 : Media in the Contemporary Classroom. (3:4:4)
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R in major area.
DESCRIPTION: Developing educational methods and techniques for using media in the specialized media classroom; study of educational models and theories related to historical and emerging media technologies.

TMA 458 : Media Literacy Education. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102, 114.
RECOMMENDED: TMA 291, 292.
DESCRIPTION: Media literacy principles and basic film production in the context of educating students and teachers in local K-12 public schools.

TMA 460 : Portfolio. (2:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 395 or 396 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone design and technology experience. Resumes, cover letters, job searches, and professional portfolio presentation. Analyzing interrelationships of ethical, aesthetic, and theological dimensions of creating performance.

TMA 461R : Stage Management 2. (.5-3:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361.
DESCRIPTION: Stage management of BYU productions. Stage managers for departmental productions are enrolled in this course.

TMA 462 : History of Costume. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 262 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

TMA 463 : Production Design. (2:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to design for film and television. Techniques, basic design elements, analysis, concept boards, budgets, and visits to film locations.

TMA 466R : Set Construction 2. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 266.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

TMA 467 : Makeup 3. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 367.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced techniques in makeup application, including advanced prosthetics and wig making. Designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 469 : Theatre Management. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts studies foundation courses or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic philosophies of box office, front-of-house, and theatre marketing.

TMA 473R : Writer/Director Workshop (Narrative). (3:6:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; TMA 419. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Collaborative directing, videotaping, editing, and revising scenes from advanced student scripts.

TMA 474R : Writer/Director Workshop (Nonfiction). (3:9:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Collaborative development, revision, and polishing of nonfiction or multimedia projects.

TMA 475R : Media Arts Capstone. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Final collaborative project for media students. May be narrative, nonfiction, multimedia, writing, or critical studies format.
NOTE: Fee.

TMA 477R : Issues in Media Arts. (3:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status; TMA 291, 292.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of key media arts issues, within context of gospel principles.

TMA 480R : Dramaturgy: Theory and Practice. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in critical studies and production. Analyzing and creating historical, theoretical, and/or critical theatre research.

TMA 485R : Production Dramaturgy. (1-3:2:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 480.
DESCRIPTION: Experience as lead dramaturg for main-stage productions; building casebooks and overseeing audience education efforts. Rehearsal and production meeting attendance required.

TMA 491 : Ethics, Aesthetics, and Theology. (1:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acting major status.

TMA 492R : Media Arts Genres. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of a single major traditional media genre (i.e., western, musical, sitcom, or melodrama) with consideration of contextual, subtextual, and textual issues.

TMA 494 : Transcendence: Religion and Film. (3:6:0)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, stylistic, and thematic survey of approaches to religious and spiritual subject matter in film.

TMA 495 : Shakespeare: Text and Performance. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive, multifaceted exploration of selected Shakespearean texts, examined through a wide range of analytical and experiential approaches.

TMA 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

TMA 497 : Media as a Mirror of Our Times. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary approach to media texts as aesthetic and historical documents expressing a people, place, and time.

TMA 498R : Special Topics in Media Arts. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major or minor status; TMA 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Consideration of compelling issues in media arts practice, theory, history, and criticism.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

TMA 515R : Workshop 3: Special Projects. (1-6:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced special projects in theatre or media arts.

TMA 516R : Theatre and Media Arts Instruction. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing teaching methods and techniques for instruction in theatre and media arts classroom.

TMA 536R : Directing Workshop. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 436 or equivalent. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced experience in production: directing.

TMA 550R : Theatre for Young Audiences. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and experience in creating formal drama for child and youth audiences.

TMA 551R : Playwriting 4. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 451 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing or rewriting a play.

TMA 552 : Improvisation. (3:3:2)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Informal or improvised dramatic techniques with children, adolescents, and/or adults.

TMA 557 : Storytelling. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and practice in the art of telling spellbinding stories.

TMA 561R : Stage Management Project. (1-6:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361, 461R; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on training for student stage managers through assigned realized productions, including supervision through full positions on stage and media productions. Department-arranged assignments.

TMA 562 : Costume Design 3. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 362, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conceptual approaches to costume design. Strong background in costuming required. Designers for departmental productions will be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 563 : Scenic Design 3. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 363, 463; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conceptual scenic design. Assumes strong background in scenography. Designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 564 : Lighting Design 3. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 364; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conceptual lighting projects. Assumes strong background in lighting. Designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 565R : Specialty Costumes. (2-6:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced skills in millinery, dyes, footwear, and allied project areas.

TMA 567R : Makeup Project. (1-6:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 267 and instructor's consent.

TMA 568 : Sound. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Theatre arts foundation courses.
DESCRIPTION: Basics in sound design and reinforcement. Work on departmental productions.

TMA 569R : Design for Production. (1-4:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 369 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience working with departmental designers; related topics.

TMA 580R : Introduction to Dramaturgy. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Graduate-level research and application of hands-on theatrical skills in four critical studies areas: literary management, production dramaturgy, new play development, educational outreach.

TMA 585R : Production Dramaturgy. (1-3:2:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 580.
DESCRIPTION: Experience as lead dramaturg for main-stage productions; building casebooks and overseeing audience education efforts. Rehearsal and production meeting attendance required.

TMA 599R : Academic Internship. (1-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Theatre and Media Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Theatre and Media Arts Faculty

Professors

Fielding, Eric

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
MFA, Goodman School of Drama, 1976

Scanlon, Rory Rahn

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MFA, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1984

Swenson, Janet L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MFA, University of Utah, 1992

Associate Professors

Duncan, Dean W

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, University of Southern California, 1991
PhD, Glasgow University, 1999

Farahnakian, Mary

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Tehran, Iran, 1971
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1977

Heiner, Barta Lee

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MFA, American Conservatory Theatre, 1977

Larsen, Darl

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, Northern Illinois University, 2000

Morgan, David E

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MFA, National Theatre Conservatory, 1990

Nelson, George D

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MFA, University of Washington, 1979

Parkin, Jeff

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Southern California, 1990
BFA, University of Southern California, 1990
MFA, University of Southern California, 1991

Russell, Thomas Blair

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988

Samuelsen, Eric Roy

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, Indiana University East, 1992

Sorensen, Rodger D

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of Texas, Dallas, 1999

Threlfall, Timothy Allan

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Idaho, 1983
MFA, University of Washington, 1987

Assistant Professors

Harrop-Purser, Laurie Cheri

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1981
BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MFA, The National Theater Conservatory, 1990

Jensen, Amy Petersen

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2004

Jones, Megan Sanborn

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Minnesota, Twin Cities, 2004

Swenson, Sharon L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1968
MA, University of Utah, 1974
PhD, University of Utah, 1993

Associate Teaching Professor

Loosli, Kelly T

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Theatre and Media Arts
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996

Instructors

Hollingshaus, Wade James

COLLEGE:	Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT:	Theatre and Media Arts
RANK:	Instructor
DEGREES:	BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
	MA, University of Washington, 2001
	PhD/ABD, University of Minnesota, 2008

Unguren, Benjamin G

COLLEGE:	Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT:	Theatre and Media Arts
RANK:	Instructor
DEGREES:	MA, New York University, 2006

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts

Linda Sullivan, Chair
E-509 HFAC, (801) 422-2064

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, (801) 422-3777

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the freshman level in the Department of Visual Arts is obtained by departmental application, which includes a drawing exercise and a portfolio review. This process is due in February prior to starting in the fall. (This does not apply to the art history major, which is open enrollment.) Please see General Information below for more details, or contact the college advisement center (1-801-422-3777).

The Discipline

The Department of Visual Arts serves five main purposes: (1) to prepare competent professionals in various fields of the plastic and graphic arts; (2) to prepare qualified designers to solve problems inherent in two- and three-dimensional applications; (3) to train historians who can critically appraise works of art; (4) to prepare art educators for teaching the visual arts at the elementary and secondary levels; and (5) to generally develop individuals' aesthetic sense by helping them experience art.

Career Opportunities

The art education degree certifies the student as an art specialist in public or private institutions, grades K–12. Other opportunities for the certified art specialist are in foreign school systems, recreation programs, art museum education programs, and galleries. Students qualify for positions in artist-in-the-schools programs and arts councils and as art consultants/coordinators. The degree also provides a foundation for graduate study leading to advanced degrees.

Most opportunities for careers related to art history exist in teaching at the junior college and university levels. The art history major traditionally prepares students for related graduate study, but it also provides excellent training for many art- and humanities-related careers and provides a solid foundation for entering several professional graduate programs.

The art history major is valuable for those going into any aspect of museum work, including art conservation/restoration, curatorial work, museum research, and museum youth education programs. It is also a useful and often key undergraduate major for careers in art law, architecture, historical restoration, art galleries, auction houses, and art resource/research library studies. Local, state, and federal agencies offer career possibilities related to arts and humanities councils. Combined with one of several other majors, an art history minor helps prepare the student for any number of careers.

Studio art majors are prepared to compete as freelance, self-employed artists, working through galleries, exhibitions, and museums to promote and sell their work. The MFA degree also prepares artists to teach on a college or a university level. Other career opportunities include printmaking, illustration, production crafts, teaching, gallery and museum work, computer art applications, and other related careers.

Design majors are fully prepared for careers in each of the respective disciplines—

- Graphic design: Advertising agencies, design studios, in-house design organizations, freelance in mediums such as books, posters, signage, billboards, commercials, corporate identity systems, and logos.
- Illustration: In-house or freelance illustration focusing on book jacket, editorial, corporate, or institutional work; advertising, children's books, and computer applications, among others.
- Photography: Portraiture; commercial illustration; advertising; fashion; architectural photography; photo-journalism; editorial, stock, industrial, fine art, educational, medical, and travel photography; photographic conservation, marketing and manufacturing, and finishing.
- Animation majors are prepared to work in various disciplines that include feature animation studios, visual and special effect studios, entertainment, computer games, and scientific data visualization.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Art Education (K-12)
BA in Art History and Curatorial Studies

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Anthropology

David P. Crandall, Chair
800 SWKT, (801) 422-3058

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All undergraduate degree programs in the Department of Anthropology are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Anthropology's central aims are to describe, interpret, and make meaningful human behavior in sociocultural systems. It also seeks to explain the similarities and differences in human behavior patterns among all peoples and cultures, both in the present and the past. Social and cultural anthropology study human society in the present, using participant-observation, interviewing, and other techniques to understand the full round of life in a single culture, a subculture, or a multicultural system. Archaeology provides methods for learning about the world's peoples who are no longer living; thus it is an important part of the anthropological family of special skills and interests.

Career Opportunities

Distinctive contributions are made by both anthropology and archaeology majors, and therefore jobs are available wherever social and cultural differences or social system complexity create difficulties. Social services, businesses, schools, development projects, medicine, and law all offer significant careers, and recent concern with environmental protection has opened up others. University teaching and research positions are limited in growth, but highly qualified students can find positions after obtaining the PhD degree from first-rank schools.

For archaeology majors, both legal and societal interest in understanding and preserving the past have resulted in increased job opportunities in state and national agencies required to observe recent preservation laws and in private corporations serving this end.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Anthropology: Archaeology Emphasis
BA in Anthropology: Sociocultural Emphasis
BA in Anthropology (Sociocultural Double Major)

Minors

African Studies
Anthropology

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Anthropology

BA in Visual Arts
Emphases:
Graphic Design
Illustration
Photography
Studio Arts
BFA in Animation
BFA in Graphic Design
BFA in Illustration
BFA in Photography
BFA in Studio Arts

Minors

Advertising Design
Art Education
Art History and Curatorial Studies
Theatre and Media Arts Design
Visual Arts

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Art Education
MA in Art History and Curatorial Studies
MFA in Studio Art

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Application Procedures for Freshmen

New students are accepted only once a year and may have their applications considered only twice. Enrollment is limited and based on several qualifications:

1. University and college admissions standards.
2. Completion of department application form.
3. Submission of slide portfolio.
4. Completion of creative exercise.

Appropriate forms are contained in an application packet available from the department office (E-509 HFAC) at the beginning of winter semester. Deadlines vary for specific programs, so please contact the department (422-8773 or 422-4266) for dates.

Note: Art history majors complete item 1 only.

Freshman Enrollment

Application packets must be returned before February 15.

Note: Individuals receiving notice of acceptance are expected to enroll for the foundation 100-level courses the first year they are accepted to the program; otherwise, they will automatically be dropped and will need to reapply. Anyone wishing for an exception to this policy will need the written approval of the department chair.

Sophomore-Through-Senior BFA Degree Program Enrollment

Permission to enroll for sophomore-through-senior-level BFA degree program courses is granted to students upon satisfactory development of skills and creative abilities demonstrated in a portfolio of drawings and designs completed during the preceding year. Faculty from each major will assess portfolios of work submitted by students wishing to advance in their respective fields of study. Students invited to continue are permitted to enroll in specified courses at the next academic level.

Note: Student portfolios will be reviewed once a year; the deadline is February 15.

Transfer Students

Transfer students in art disciplines must meet with the appropriate area coordinator. Transfer students in design disciplines are required to participate in a portfolio review; the deadline is February 15. Contact the area coordinator.

Note: Students not accepted into BFA degree programs may elect to enroll in one of the bachelor of arts programs in visual arts. Students may apply to the BFA program no more than twice.

Degree Program Coordinators/Advisors

Coordinators are appointed to counsel students in each of the eight majors/emphases. Coordinators will advise students about program objectives, course content and sequence, career goals, and other matters pertaining to their major field of study.

Department Probationary Status

Students can be placed on probationary status for the following:

1. Inadequate academic performance.
2. Unprofessional attitude and lack of commitment.
3. BYU Honor Code violations.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Basic Degree Requirements

1. Student must meet application criteria for admission into the program.
2. All 100-level foundation courses must be completed before admission into sophomore-level courses.
3. A portfolio is required in all programs except art history.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Art Education (K–12) (85 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Application deadlines: February 15 and September 30.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following first-year foundation courses:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

2. Complete six hours from the following second-year foundation courses:

VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.

DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

VASTU 215 : Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation painting.

VASTU 216 : Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation ceramics.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 217 : Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

3. Complete nine hours of 300- and 400-level courses.

4. Complete the following:
ARTHC 300 : Art Historical Methodology, Research, and Intensive Writing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Necessary skills to research and write in the field of art history.

5. Complete one course from the following:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

6. Complete the following art education licensure requirements during the same semester:
VAEDU 324 : Foundations in Art Education. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: concurrent enrollment in ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical, philosophical, and historical foundations of art education; children's aesthetic development.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

(3 hours)

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before registration for Sc Ed 276R.

7. Complete the following:

VAEDU 339 : Computer Application in Art Education. (1.5:1.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Basic program applications for developing instructional materials in art education.

VAEDU 377 : Art History and Visual Culture Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching art history and production.

VAEDU 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in VAEdu 377, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

VAEDU 439 : Aesthetics and Criticism Methods for Art Educators. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching aesthetics and criticism.

VAEDU 450 : Advanced Studio for Art Educators. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring visual culture and contemporary art problems. Creating artworks and methodologies for translating art-making experiences in the K-12 art program.

VAEDU 478 : Art Curriculum Development, Implementation, and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment; a C- grade or higher in VAEdu 377, 397, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Principles for developing balanced art curriculum; curriculum implementation; evaluation of student progress and art program effectiveness.

Note: VAEdu 377 and 439 must be taken in conjunction with 378.

8. Complete the following additional licensure requirements:

ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.

DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

9. Complete an interview with advisor.

10. Complete a teaching assistant experience.

11. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Education (VAEdu) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Art History and Curatorial Studies (55 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:
   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

   ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

   ARTHC 203 : Survey of Oriental Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of China, Korea, Japan, Southeast Asia, and India, considering social, religious, and environmental context of various cultures.

   ARTHC 300 : Art Historical Methodology, Research, and Intensive Writing. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Necessary skills to research and write in the field of art history.

   VASTU 200 : Studio Techniques for Art History. (3:2:4)
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to art techniques, materials, and practices directed toward art history majors.

2. Ancient art: Complete one course from the following:
   ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

   ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

3. Medieval art: Complete one course from the following:
   ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

   ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

4. Renaissance art: Complete one course from the following:
   ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

   ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

5. Baroque art: Complete one course from the following:
   ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

6. Nineteenth-century art: Complete one course from the following:
ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

7. Modern art: Complete one course from the following:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

8. Non-Western art: Complete one course from the following:
ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

9. Complete three hours from one of the following thesis courses:
ARTHC 498 : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 300; senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone project tying together major course work. An expansion and refinement of work started

earlier in other classes.

ARTHC 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)

10. Complete four courses from any of the following upper-division core courses not already taken:

ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400?1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 490R : Special Topics and Readings in Art History. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Topics of specific student interest, centered on strengths of visiting faculty, BYU Study Abroad Program, or other significant art history projects.

ARTHC 496R : Academic Internship: Museum Internship. (.5-8:0:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 300, 9 hours minimum upper-division art history courses, project approval.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

11. Complete one course from the following:

FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

ITAL 201 : Intermediate Italian 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 102 or two years of high school Italian or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

Note: German is strongly recommended for those wishing to pursue graduate work in art history.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

For more information see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. Each student wishing to major in anthropology should arrange through the college advisement center to counsel with an advisor and prepare a proposed sequence of study. Following this, the student should meet with the assigned faculty advisor for final approval of the program.
2. Undergraduate students are allowed some, but not excessive, specialization.
3. All degrees are in the field of anthropology.

Special Opportunities for Field Study

The department offers a number of unusual curriculum and field study opportunities. Students interested in Pacific Island studies are encouraged to spend a semester or two at BYU— Hawaii, where this area of study is well represented. Selected courses are regularly counted toward BYU's major. Consult with the department chair or your faculty advisor about equivalences.

Archaeology students complete their requirement in the field school typically held in conjunction with an ongoing, local (Utah) research project and occasionally in more exotic settings (Jordan).

Sociocultural faculty rotate leading ethnographic field schools abroad.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Visual Arts: Graphic Design Emphasis (47.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirement for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

   VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

   VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

   VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

   VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete a minimum of three hours from the following:

   VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

   VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

3. Complete the following:

   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

4. Complete six hours from the following history electives:
ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400?1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

5. Complete the following:

VAGD 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to graphic design.

VAGD 243 : Basic Typography. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring fundamentals and traditions for creating, setting, and designing with type. Solving visual problems with type.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

6. Complete 16 hours from the following emphasis electives:

VADES 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

VAGD 310 : Advanced Computer Application Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific graphic design computer program applications.

VAGD 341 : Packaging Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

VAGD 348 : Type as Image. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing unique and expressive letterforms, especially the modification of letters to create new abstract or pictorial images.

VAGD 410R : Computer Applications Studio for Graphic Designers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual graphic design project using high-end hardware and software.

VAGD 488 : Business Practices for Graphic Designers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the graphic design profession.

VAGD 498R : Directed Studies in Graphic Design. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in graphic design.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

Recommended history courses:

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.

DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

and one additional course from:

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Visual Arts: Illustration Emphasis (47.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirement for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

   VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

   VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

   VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

   VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete a minimum three hours from the following:

   VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

   VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
   OFFERED: W on block, Su
   PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

3. Complete the following:

   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

4. Complete six hours from the following history electives:
ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400?1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

5. Complete the following:

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAILL 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications to Illustration. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to illustration.

VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

VAILL 252 : Intermediate Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the classic figure from gesture to finished rendering, emphasizing structure, anatomy, form, and medium.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIll 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

VAILL 351 : Illustration 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA aacceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure using various media.

VAILL 352 : Illustration 3. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual illustration problems and market applications, using various media.

6. Complete six hours from the following emphasis electives:

VAANM 350R : Gesture Drawing for Animators. (3:6:)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing humans and animals in motion.

VAILL 310 : Advanced Computer Application Illustration. (2:4.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific computer illustration program applications.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIll 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

VAILL 357 : Sketchbook. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131; VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Using a sketchbook in visual thinking process: exploring ideas, recording visual experience, and developing fundamental drawing skills.

VAILL 358 : Character Design for Illustrators. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131, VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and projects dealing with the interpretation and stylization of human and animal characters applied to children's markets, caricature, animation, and humorous illustration.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Anthropology: Archaeology Emphasis (51.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

ANTHR 110 : Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.

ANTHR 150 : Anthropology Career Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of anthropology major and graduation requirements; preparing for senior thesis sequence; career opportunities; and graduate school application process.

ANTHR 205 : Foundations of Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas from Marx, Weber, Durkheim, and Steward studied for a secure foundation for understanding the antecedents of current theory.

ANTHR 206 : Contemporary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205.
DESCRIPTION: Important current theoretical frameworks in anthropology.

ANTHR 215 : Introduction to Archaeology: Method and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Field and analytic methods and their relevance to data acquisition; use of theory and the relation of theory to methods.

ANTHR 300 : Biological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Relationships between human biology, environment, social structure, and culture. Concepts and data on race, primates, evolution, population genetics, growth, and sociobiology.

ANTHR 309 : Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

2. Complete 3 hours from the following:

ANTHR 311 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Role of museums in society. Analyzing museum content, use, and sociology. On-site visits to area museums

VAILL 450R : Painting the Human Head. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 350 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Painting from a live model; unique aspects of portraiture and colors of the human face.

VAILL 488 : Professional Practices for Illustrators. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the illustration profession.

Recommended history courses:

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

and one additional course from:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Visual Arts: Photography Emphasis (47.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirement for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete a minimum three hours from the following:

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

3. Complete the following:

ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

4. Complete six hours from the following history electives:
ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400?1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

5. Complete the following:

VAPHO 170 : Introduction to Black and White Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program; VA 120.
DESCRIPTION: Basic camera and darkroom techniques emphasizing black and white film processing and printmaking.

VAPHO 210 : Introduction to Digital Imaging. (3:6:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 112, 115, VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Photography-based digital imaging, including film scanning, digital capture, color management, Photoshop instruction, fine art and commercial print output, and archiving.

VAPHO 272 : Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Color aesthetics, theory, and systems in traditional and digital capture and printmaking.

VAPHO 275 : Classical Portrait Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170, 210, 273.
DESCRIPTION: Studio and environmental portraiture as well as traditional approaches to portrait photography, including wedding/bridal. Lab required.

VAPHO 478 : Fine Art Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 272 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Fine art approaches to photography; conceptual, social, and aesthetic values; modern and postmodern values.

6. Complete six hours from the following emphasis electives:

VAPHO 273 : Advanced Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and darkroom techniques using the zone system for exposure and development control of large format negatives and prints.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 310 : Advanced Computer Application Photography. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific photography computer applications, including workflow, color management, and personal project work.

VAPHO 372 : Still Life Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and studio techniques to produce illustrations for advertising layout and other media.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 377R : Exploring Alternative Photography Processes. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Photography as an exploratory, sensitizing process.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 477R : Nature Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of professional nature and landscape photography.

7. Complete three hours from the following supporting courses:

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

COMMS 365 : Photojournalism. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; admission to news design and new media track; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Shooting, processing, selecting, and preparing photographs for use in publications.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

Or other courses in filmmaking, business, website production, HTML, etc. as approved by faculty.

Recommended history courses:

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

and one additional course from:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Visual Arts: Studio Arts Emphasis (47.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirement for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete a minimum three hours from the following:

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

3. Complete the following:

ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

4. Complete six hours from the following history electives:
ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400?1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

5. Complete the following:

VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

VASTU 215 : Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation painting.

VASTU 216 : Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation ceramics.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 217 : Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

6. Complete 12 hours of 300- or 400-level VAStu courses.

7. Complete three hours (6 enrollments) of the following:

VASTU 395R : Studio Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 111.
DESCRIPTION: Selected contemporary issues involving visiting artists, guest lecturers, video documentaries, discussions, and program information.

Recommended history courses:

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

and one additional course from:

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses
The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

ANTHR 314 : Museum Registration and Legal/Ethical Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311.
DESCRIPTION: Managing museum collections: cataloging, loans, ethics, legal issues, object handling, basic object conservation. Practical experience working with museum objects.

ANTHR 351 : Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

ANTHR 378 : Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500--500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 580 : Near East Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Current issues in Near Eastern archaeological research.
NOTE: Undergraduate BYU anthropology students may enroll for the following courses if they have completed 30 hours in their major.

ANTHR 590R : Special Topics. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in archaeology or museum studies.

3. Complete 3 hours from the following:

ANTHR 350 : Archaeological Cultures of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural developments of North American Indians (Canada, U.S., and northern Mexico) before Columbus.

ANTHR 355 : Mesoamerican Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Cultural-environment bases of ancient civilizations in Mexico and Central America. Olmec, Maya, Toltec, and Aztec cultures.

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 530 : Great Basin Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography, history of research, and prehistory of the Great Basin culture area. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ANTHR 535 : Southwest Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography and prehistory of American Southwest. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ANTHR 562 : Formative Mesoamerica. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues concerning beginnings and development of Mesoamerican civilizations. Mexican and Mayan antecedents of classic Mayan civilization and culture.

ANTHR 564 : Classic Mayan Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues concerning archaeological and cultural aspects of classic Mayan civilization and society.

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Animation (67–70 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BFA in animation is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of the Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the Department of Visual Arts and the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology's School of Technology.

Application deadline: April 15 after completing TMA 102 and VAAnm 160.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following premajor courses:
   TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
   DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

   VAANM 160 : Introduction to Animation. (1.5:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Pre-animation major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques for animation.

2. Obtain acceptance into the animation BFA program.

3. Pass portfolio review during the sophomore year.

4. Complete the following courses:
   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

   ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

5. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 114 : Reading and Constructing Narratives. (3:3:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Animation majors--admittance to the animation program; media arts studies majors/minors--TMA 102, 113, and admittance to media arts program; MDT--admittance to the MDT program; theatre arts studies majors/minors and BFA Acting--TMA 101; theatre education majors--Sc Ed 276R.
   DESCRIPTION: Analyzing basic narrative principles; conceptualizing and writing narratives for theatre and media.

   TMA 185 : Basic Media Production. (3:4:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Media arts major/minor status or animation major status; concurrent enrollment in TMA 105.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to basics of film and video production. Includes lecture and practical lab experiences with audio and video.

   TMA 294 : History of Animation. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: TMA 102.
   DESCRIPTION: Origins and developments of animation internationally to the present, focusing on aesthetic, technical, political, and economic aspects of the medium.

   VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)

OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

VAANM 260 : Storyboarding. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into animation program.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to visual storytelling.

Note: Prerequisites are waived for VA 131, 134.

6. Complete three courses from the following:

INDES 251 : Fundamentals of Two-Dimensional Graphics. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to animation major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to design language by exploring elements of photography, drawing, and two-dimensional computer graphics, including color theory and conceptual elements of composition.

INDES 252 : Introduction to Three-Dimensional Animation. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques of three-dimensional animation, including timing and pacing, character setup, and dynamics.

TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

TMA 241 : Screenwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291 or 292 or concurrent enrollment; Animation majors: TMA 294.
DESCRIPTION: Basic narrative and nonfiction (documentary, educational, industrial, multimedia) screenwriting principles through reading, viewing, testing, and completing writing assignments.

TMA 462 : History of Costume. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 262 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

VAANM 350R : Gesture Drawing for Animators. (3:6:)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing humans and animals in motion.

VAANM 360 : Visual Development and Character Design. (3:6.0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into animation program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying design principles for animation.

7. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

TMA 291 : Media Arts History 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1895 to 1945.

TMA 292 : Media Arts History 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1946 to present.

TMA 462 : History of Costume. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 262 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

8. Complete three hours of internship credit from one of the following:

INDES 399R : Professional Internship. (1-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: School's and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

TMA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; theatre or media arts foundation courses. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

VAANM 498R : Directed Studies in Animation. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in animation.

9. Complete 22 hours from the following or from other courses approved by faculty advisor:

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

INDES 251 : Fundamentals of Two-Dimensional Graphics. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to animation major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to design language by exploring elements of photography, drawing, and two-dimensional computer graphics, including color theory and conceptual elements of composition.

INDES 252 : Introduction to Three-Dimensional Animation. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250, 251.
DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques of three-dimensional animation, including timing and pacing, character setup, and dynamics.

INDES 350 : Computer Graphics Studio 1. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 250, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced character design, setup, and animation.

INDES 352 : Computer Graphics Studio 2. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 350.
DESCRIPTION: Designing interdisciplinary group projects: workflow, team dynamics, and processes of production pipelines.

INDES 450 : Computer Graphics Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 352.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 352. In-depth experiences making computer animatiions and visual effects.

INDES 452 : Computer Graphics Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 450.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced animation/design projects.

TMA 100 : Introduction to Visual Literacy. (3:2:2)
DESCRIPTION: Overview of visual communication, with hands-on experience in multimedia design and tools, structured to increase awareness of visual functions and develop beginning proficiency with computer-assisted visual communications.

TMA 123 : Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in TMA 122, 125.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

TMA 236 : Directing Fundamentals. (2:4:1)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent (except theatre education majors).
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

TMA 241 : Screenwriting 1. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 291 or 292 or concurrent enrollment; Animation majors: TMA 294.
DESCRIPTION: Basic narrative and nonfiction (documentary, educational, industrial, multimedia) screenwriting principles through reading, viewing, testing, and completing writing assignments.

TMA 262 : Costume Design 1. (2:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 101, 114, 160; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Costume history, rendering, and theory. Assistant costume designers for departmental productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

TMA 285 : Production: Intermediate. (3:3:3)
PREREQUISITE: major status; TMA 185; 291 or 292.
DESCRIPTION: Survey and application of the basics of narrative and nonfiction, including 16-mm film. Lecture, discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.
NOTE: Fee.

TMA 319 : Advanced Narrative Production. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 241, 285. By application only.

RECOMMENDED: TMA 123.
DESCRIPTION: Preproduction and production of short projects, including digital and 16-mm sound film in narrative form. Discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques.
NOTE: Fee.

TMA 384R : Practicum: Special Topics in Media Arts. (.5-6:ARR:1)
PREREQUISITE: Major status or instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of special media skills.

TMA 452R : Puppetry. (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and experience constructing and operating puppets for use in performance, recreational, and educational settings.

TMA 557 : Storytelling. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, techniques, and practice in the art of telling spellbinding stories.

VAANM 350R : Gesture Drawing for Animators. (3:6:)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing humans and animals in motion.

VAANM 360 : Visual Development and Character Design. (3:6.0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into animation program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying design principles for animation.

VAANM 361R : Animation Studio 1. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Foundations portfolio review.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced animation projects.

VAANM 362 : Advanced Animation. (3:6.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAAnm 160.
DESCRIPTION: Applying advanced animation principles, emphasizing character.

VAANM 461R : Animation Studio 2. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Individual advanced animation projects.

VAILL 351 : Illustration 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA aacceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure using various media.

VAPHO 170 : Introduction to Black and White Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program; VA 120.
DESCRIPTION: Basic camera and darkroom techniques emphasizing black and white film processing and printmaking.

VAPHO 272 : Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Color aesthetics, theory, and systems in traditional and digital capture and printmaking.

10. Complete six hours from one of the following BFA project courses:

INDES 497R : BFA Final Project. (3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project with minimum guidance, showing high degree of competence within chosen major.

TMA 475R : Media Arts Capstone. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Media arts major status. By application only.
DESCRIPTION: Final collaborative project for media students. May be narrative, nonfiction, multimedia, writing, or critical studies format.

NOTE: Fee.

VAANM 497R : BFA Animation Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual animation project with minimum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Animation (VAAnm) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Photography (VAPho) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Graphic Design (75.5–82.5 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core requirements:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

2. Complete the following:

VAGD 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.

DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to graphic design.

VAGD 243 : Basic Typography. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring fundamentals and traditions for creating, setting, and designing with type. Solving visual problems with type.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAGD 310 : Advanced Computer Application Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific graphic design computer program applications.

VAGD 340 : Corporate Identity Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 243 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Current philosophy in corporate identification and trademark design. Design trademarks, logotypes, and identity programs.

VAGD 341 : Packaging Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

VAGD 342 : Advertising Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Particular demands of the advertising world: marketing strategy, editorial and visual concepts, etc. Design ads, collateral materials, campaigns.

VAGD 343 : Publication Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Book and magazine publishing and their special editorial, design, and manufacturing requirements.

VAGD 344 : Poster Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Functions and characteristics of posters; past and current aesthetics.

VAGD 441 : Senior Graphic Design Studio 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Opportunity for senior class members to work as a group in solving design problems for real clients on major projects.

VAGD 442 : Senior Graphic Design Studio 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 441.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAGD 441.

VAGD 443 : Special Problems in Graphic Design 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced assignments in graphic design; individual portfolio development.

VAGD 444 : Special Problems in Graphic Design 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAGD 443.

VAGD 488 : Business Practices for Graphic Designers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the graphic design profession.

VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

3. Complete five hours of the following:

VAGD 497R : BFA Graphic Design Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in graphic design with minimum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

4. Complete the following history requirement:
VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

5. Complete one course from the following history requirements:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

6. Complete four of the following supporting courses:
BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

COMMS 230 : Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

VADES 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

VAGD 348 : Type as Image. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing unique and expressive letterforms, especially the modification of letters to create new abstract or pictorial images.

VAGD 410R : Computer Applications Studio for Graphic Designers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual graphic design project using high-end hardware and software.

VAGD 498R : Directed Studies in Graphic Design. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in graphic design.

ANTHR 565 : Mayan Ceramic Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Current approaches to classification and analysis of archaeological ceramics, particularly Maya Lowland pottery. Laboratory study of actual pottery collections from the Maya area.

ANTHR 566 : Mayan Ethnohistory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues of cultural change, colonization, and documentation of change processes in the Mayan region, from postclassic period and independence from Spain.

ANTHR 590R : Special Topics. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in archaeology or museum studies.

4. Complete 9 hours from the following:

ANTHR 402 : Quantitative Methods for Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods in archaeology and sociocultural anthropology, including methods of organizing, exploring, and presenting data, probability, and statistical inference.

ANTHR 412 : Museum Collections Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Instruction and practice in aspects of managing museum collections: writing catalogs, processing donations, preserving objects.

ANTHR 414 : Museum Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience in a museum working with exhibitions, public programs, or research.

ANTHR 430 : Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

ANTHR 431 : The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

ANTHR 434 : Medical Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years; W even years.
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Interactions between culture and health in comparative perspective, emphasizing social, historical, and ecological determinants.

ANTHR 436 : Symbolic Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social use and understanding of semiotics, signs, symbols, and other meaningful forms as critically constitutive of culture.

ANTHR 437 : Man, Women, and the Culture of Gender. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Gender roles across culture relative to health, ethnicity, economic development, kinship, war, etc.

ANTHR 441 : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

ANTHR 450 : Anthropology of Education. (3:3:0)

VAILL 351 : Illustration 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA aacceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure using various media.

VAILL 352 : Illustration 3. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual illustration problems and market applications, using various media.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Graphic Design (VAGD) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Illustration (72 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core requirements:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

2. Complete the following:

VAGD 243 : Basic Typography. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring fundamentals and traditions for creating, setting, and designing with type. Solving visual problems with type.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAILL 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications to Illustration. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to illustration.

VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

VAILL 252 : Intermediate Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the classic figure from gesture to finished rendering, emphasizing structure, anatomy, form, and medium.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIll 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

VAILL 351 : Illustration 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA aacceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure using various media.

VAILL 352 : Illustration 3. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual illustration problems and market applications, using various media.

VAILL 353 : Book Illustration. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Book cover illustration; narrative problems and applicable markets; related media and skills.

VAILL 354 : Editorial Illustration. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Magazine illustration; conceptual problems and related markets; applications and media.

VAILL 451 : Senior Illustration Studio 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352, and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Individual portfolio development.

VAILL 452 : Senior Illustration Studio 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 451.
DESCRIPTION: Flexible in nature, featuring various instructors with unique individual skills. Team taught. Advanced assignments in illustration; individual portfolio preparation.

VAILL 453 : Illustration 4. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352; BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced assignments in illustration. Various instructors with unique skills and market experience.

VAILL 454 : Illustration 5. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352; BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAIll 453. Advanced assignments in illustration and media.

VAILL 488 : Professional Practices for Illustrators. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the illustration profession.

3. Complete four hours of the following:
VAILL 497R : BFA Illustration Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in illustration with miminum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

4. Complete the following history requirement:
   VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

5. Complete one course from the following history requirements:
   ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

   ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

   ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

   ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

   ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

   ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

   ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

   ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

   ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

   ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

   ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

   SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

   SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

   VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

6. Complete four of the following supporting courses:

INDES 410R : Computer Applications Studio. (2:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: InDes 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual major project using high-end hardware and software.

VADES 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

VAILL 310 : Advanced Computer Application Illustration. (2:4.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific computer illustration program applications.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIll 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

VAILL 357 : Sketchbook. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131; VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Using a sketchbook in visual thinking process: exploring ideas, recording visual experience, and developing fundamental drawing skills.

VAILL 358 : Character Design for Illustrators. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131, VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and projects dealing with the interpretation and stylization of human and animal characters applied to children's markets, caricature, animation, and humorous illustration.

VAILL 450R : Painting the Human Head. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 350 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Painting from a live model; unique aspects of portraiture and colors of the human face.

VAILL 494R : Special Problems in Illustration. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in illustration of special interest.

VAILL 498R : Directed Studies in Illustration. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in illustration.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 328R : Figure Painting. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core and VAStu 215, 322, 327.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of figure painting.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

VASTU 333 : Aqueous Media. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 214.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring multiple aqueous media on paper: transparent water color, acrylic, gouache, casein, egg tempera.

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Graphic Design (VAGD) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Photography (65.5 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core requirements:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete the following:

VADES 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

(2 hours minimum)

VAPHO 170 : Introduction to Black and White Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program; VA 120.
DESCRIPTION: Basic camera and darkroom techniques emphasizing black and white film processing and printmaking.

VAPHO 210 : Introduction to Digital Imaging. (3:6:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 112, 115, VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Photography-based digital imaging, including film scanning, digital capture, color management, Photoshop instruction, fine art and commercial print output, and archiving.

VAPHO 272 : Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Color aesthetics, theory, and systems in traditional and digital capture and printmaking.

VAPHO 273 : Advanced Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.

DESCRIPTION: Camera and darkroom techniques using the zone system for exposure and development control of large format negatives and prints.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 275 : Classical Portrait Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170, 210, 273.
DESCRIPTION: Studio and environmental portraiture as well as traditional approaches to portrait photography, including wedding/bridal. Lab required.

VAPHO 310 : Advanced Computer Application Photography. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific photography computer applications, including workflow, color management, and personal project work.

VAPHO 372 : Still Life Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and studio techniques to produce illustrations for advertising layout and other media.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 376 : Editorial Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance to BFA photograhy level.
DESCRIPTION: Use of photography in magazines, newspapers, annual reports, etc. Creating and publishing picture stories.

VAPHO 377R : Exploring Alternative Photography Processes. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Photography as an exploratory, sensitizing process.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 475 : Advanced Location Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Lighting and photographing architecture, products, people, and concepts in environmental settings for the editorial, corporate, industrial, and advertising industry.

VAPHO 478 : Fine Art Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 272 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Fine art approaches to photography; conceptual, social, and aesthetic values; modern and postmodern values.

VAPHO 488 : Professional Practices for Photographers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the photographer's profession.

3. Complete five hours of the following:
VAPHO 497R : BFA Photography Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in photography showing a high degree of competence.

4. Complete the following history requirement:
VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

5. Complete one course from the following history requirements:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

6. Complete 10 hours from the following supporting courses:
BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

COMMS 230 : Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

COMMS 365 : Photojournalism. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; admission to news design and new media track; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Shooting, processing, selecting, and preparing photographs for use in publications.

COMMS 398R : Projects in Communications. (.5-4:Arr:0)
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing and sequence coordinator's consent. Project approval required before registration
DESCRIPTION: Projects in communication studies.

TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAPHO 410R : Computer Applications Studio for Photographers. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual photography project using high-end hardware and software.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

The Church of Jesus

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

VASTU 351 : Printmaking: Lithography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 219.
DESCRIPTION: Lithography printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Graphic Design (VAGD) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Photography (VAPho) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101, 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological theories of and qualitative research in child rearing, enculturation, cognition, informal education, schools, literacy, multicultural and multilingual education, and cultural transmission and acquisition.

ANTHR 490R : Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 511 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
DESCRIPTION: Museums in society. Cultural foundations of museum content and sociology of museum use. Analyzing museum studies literature with on-site visits to area museums.

ANTHR 512 : Heritage Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into graduate program in archaeology or certificate program in museum practices.
DESCRIPTION: Legal and ethical issues for practicing archaeologists. Preservation law, collections law, public archaeology, Native American issues, and careers in archaeology and museums.

5. Complete an additional 3 hours of electives from section 3 or 4 above.

6. Complete the following:
ANTHR 454R : Field School Preparation. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: major status.

7. Complete 6 hours of the following:
ANTHR 455R : Field School of Archaeology. (.5-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 454R; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in excavation at a BYU-sponsored dig.

8. Complete 2 hours of the following:
ANTHR 456R : Lab Skills for Anthropology. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 455R; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical and laboratory techniques as part of a BYU-sponsored archaeological project.

9. Complete the following:
ANTHR 499R : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 422, 495 (for sociocultural); 205, 206, 215, 454R, 455R, 456R (for archaeology).
DESCRIPTION: Supervised analysis and write-up of data generated during field project.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Anthropology Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BFA in Studio Arts (66.5 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following courses before applying to the BFA program:

Freshman Core courses:

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

Sophomore Foundations courses:

VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

VASTU 215 : Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation painting.

VASTU 216 : Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation ceramics.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 217 : Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

2. Be admitted to the BFA program.

3. Complete a combined minimum of 27 hours from the following 300-level courses and VAStu 480R.
   a. Complete at least nine hours from the following courses.
   Students may select courses from both 2-D and 3-D offerings:

VASTU 321 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing as a graphic form of self-expression, emphasizing personal statement in response to various experiences and concepts.

VASTU 322R : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual Arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing from the human figure, emphasizing structure and anatomy.

VASTU 327 : Painting. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 215.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts and techniques of oil painting.

VASTU 328R : Figure Painting. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core and VAStu 215, 322, 327.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of figure painting.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

VASTU 333 : Aqueous Media. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 214.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring multiple aqueous media on paper: transparent water color, acrylic, gouache, casein, egg tempera.

VASTU 350 : Printmaking: Intaglio. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 218.
DESCRIPTION: Intaglio printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 351 : Printmaking: Lithography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 219.
DESCRIPTION: Lithography printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 353R : Computer Art. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the computer as a tool for visual self-expression.

VASTU 356R : Figure Sculpture. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 217.
DESCRIPTION: Modeling the human figure in clay.

NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 358 : Sculpture. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 217.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional and nontraditional approaches to sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 359R : Ceramics. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 216, 217.
DESCRIPTION: Designing, throwing, hand forming, decorating, glazing, and firing techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 394R : Special Problems in Art. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

b. Complete a minimum of one hour of the following every semester in the BFA program (four hours minimum):
VASTU 480R : Advanced Studio. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 321 or 322R; 350R or 351R; 327R or 333R; 328R (if figure emphasis).
DESCRIPTION: Individual development of art issues in advanced studio environment. Writing a proposal accompanied by a readings list.

4. Complete six enrollments (three hours) of the following:
VASTU 395R : Studio Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 111.
DESCRIPTION: Selected contemporary issues involving visiting artists, guest lecturers, video documentaries, discussions, and program information.

5. Complete the following:
VASTU 440 : Business Practices for Artists. (1.5:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts major.
DESCRIPTION: Basic business practices associated with managing career in visual arts.

VASTU 497R : BFA Final Project. (1:0:0)

6. Complete the following art history and criticism requirements:
ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

And complete one course from the following:
ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses
The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Advertising Design (14 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This minor is intended for advertising majors seeking a background in design.

Program Requirements | View MAP

Complete the following:

VAGD 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to graphic design.

VAGD 243 : Basic Typography. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring fundamentals and traditions for creating, setting, and designing with type. Solving visual problems with type.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

VAGD 310 : Advanced Computer Application Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific graphic design computer program applications.

VAGD 342 : Advertising Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Particular demands of the advertising world: marketing strategy, editorial and visual concepts, etc. Design ads, collateral materials, campaigns.

VASTU 101 : Introduction to Art and Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Readings, aesthetic topics, basic drawing techniques and concepts.

Show all Visual Arts Graphic Design (VAGD) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Art Education (21 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

   VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
   DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

2. Complete one course from the following:
   VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
   PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

   VASTU 215 : Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
   PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundation painting.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   VASTU 216 : Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
   PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundation ceramics.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VASTU 217 : Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
   PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundation sculpture.
   NOTE: Fee.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

   ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

   ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

5. Complete the following:

VAEDU 324 : Foundations in Art Education. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: concurrent enrollment in ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical, philosophical, and historical foundations of art education; children's aesthetic development.

VAEDU 377 : Art History and Visual Culture Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching art history and production.

VAEDU 439 : Aesthetics and Criticism Methods for Art Educators. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching aesthetics and criticism.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Education (VAEdu) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Art History and Curatorial Studies (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:
   ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

   ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

2. Complete 12 elective hours in art history from 300-level or above courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Theatre and Media Arts Design (19 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

This minor is intended for theatre and media arts majors seeking a background in design.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

VASTU 101 : Introduction to Art and Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Readings, aesthetic topics, basic drawing techniques and concepts.

2. Complete 10 hours from the following:

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VADES 410R : Computer Applications Studio. (2:0:2)
PREREQUISITE: VADes 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual major project using high-end hardware and software.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIII 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating

to the draped figure.

VAPHO 170 : Introduction to Black and White Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program; VA 120.
DESCRIPTION: Basic camera and darkroom techniques emphasizing black and white film processing and printmaking.

VAPHO 272 : Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Color aesthetics, theory, and systems in traditional and digital capture and printmaking.

VAPHO 273 : Advanced Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and darkroom techniques using the zone system for exposure and development control of large format negatives and prints.
NOTE: Lab required.

VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Photography (VAPho) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Visual Arts (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:
   VASTU 101 : Introduction to Art and Drawing. (3:2:4)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Readings, aesthetic topics, basic drawing techniques and concepts.

2. Complete six hours from the following:
   VAANM 160 : Introduction to Animation. (1.5:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Pre-animation major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques for animation.

   VAGD 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
   OFFERED: F, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to graphic design.

   VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
   PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

   VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

   VASTU 204 : Sculpture 2. (1.5:1:3)
   PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
   DESCRIPTION: Extended work in basic sculpture processes and concepts.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VASTU 205 : Ceramics 2. (1.5:1:3)
   PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
   DESCRIPTION: Extended methods of creating original ceramic objects, including glaze mixing, kiln firing, and research techniques.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VASTU 206 : Printmaking 2. (1.5:1:3)
   PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
   DESCRIPTION: Extended work in etching.
   NOTE: Fee.

   VASTU 207 : Painting 2. (1.5:1:3)
   PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Anthropology: Sociocultural Emphasis (51.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

ANTHR 110 : Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.

ANTHR 150 : Anthropology Career Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of anthropology major and graduation requirements; preparing for senior thesis sequence; career opportunities; and graduate school application process.

ANTHR 205 : Foundations of Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas from Marx, Weber, Durkheim, and Steward studied for a secure foundation for understanding the antecedents of current theory.

ANTHR 206 : Contemporary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205.
DESCRIPTION: Important current theoretical frameworks in anthropology.

ANTHR 247 : Applied Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological principles and methods applied to business, education communication, development projects, and health sciences.

ANTHR 300 : Biological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Relationships between human biology, environment, social structure, and culture. Concepts and data on race, primates, evolution, population genetics, growth, and sociobiology.

ANTHR 309 : Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

2. Complete 6 hours from the following:

ANTHR 311 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Role of museums in society. Analyzing museum content, use, and sociology. On-site visits to area museums

DESCRIPTION: Introduction to oil painting.

VASTU 208 : Watercolor 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to aqueous media.

3. Complete the following:
ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

4. Complete 3 hours of art history from the following:
Any ArtHC 300-level course
SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

Show all Visual Arts Core (VA) Courses

Show all Visual Arts Studio (VAStu) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ARTHC 111 : Introduction to Art History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topical approach to art history and appreciation.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Introduction to Art History.

200-Level Courses

ARTHC 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

ARTHC 203 : Survey of Oriental Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of China, Korea, Japan, Southeast Asia, and India, considering social, religious, and environmental context of various cultures.

ARTHC 211 : Survey of Western Art 1. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Western world from primitive through medieval.
NOTE: Independent Study only.

ARTHC 212 : Survey of Western Art 2. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Western world from Renaissance to contemporary.
NOTE: Independent Study only.

300-Level Courses

ARTHC 300 : Art Historical Methodology, Research, and Intensive Writing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Necessary skills to research and write in the field of art history.

ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 316 : Art of the Medieval West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Art in western Europe from 400 AD to 1400.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 345 : American Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ARTHC 353 : American Art 1876-1950. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American painting and sculpture from 1876-1950.

ARTHC 355 : Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

ARTHC 360 : Introduction to Museum and Curatorial Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Duties of museum professionals while applying museum theory to the practical development of a museum exhibit.

ARTHC 363 : English Architecture, 1485--1900. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

ARTHC 365 : American Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

ARTHC 367 : Modern Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

ARTHC 371 : Chinese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 375 : Japanese Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202, 203.
DESCRIPTION: Japanese art and architecture from its neolithic origins through the dawn of the modern age. Literary, social, and religious contexts considered.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

ARTHC 380 : Northern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of Mexico from antiquity to present.

ARTHC 382 : Southern Mesoamerican Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of art and architecture of southern Mexico and central America from antiquity to present.

400-Level Courses

ARTHC 490R : Special Topics and Readings in Art History. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Topics of specific student interest, centered on strengths of visiting faculty, BYU Study Abroad Program, or other significant art history projects.

ARTHC 496R : Academic Internship: Museum Internship. (.5-8:0:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 300, 9 hours minimum upper-division art history courses, project approval.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

ARTHC 498 : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 300; senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone project tying together major course work. An expansion and refinement of work started earlier in other classes.

ARTHC 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ARTHC 500 : Art in Theory: Spectatorship. (3:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the philosophical relationship between viewer and object.

ARTHC 505 : Art in Theory: Language. (3:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the recent interest in language and semiotics.

ARTHC 510 : Art in Theory: Context. (3:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the space of display, the museum, and the work's social reception.

ARTHC 512R : Studies in Islamic Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in Islamic art.

ARTHC 514R : Studies in Chinese Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in Chinese art.

ARTHC 516R : Studies in Japanese Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in Japanese art.

ARTHC 520R : Studies In Ancient Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in Egyptian, Greek, and Roman art.

ARTHC 530R : Studies In Medieval Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, and Gothic art.

ARTHC 540R : Studies In Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in Northern and Southern Renaissance art.

ARTHC 550R : Studies in Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in northern and southern baroque art.

ARTHC 560R : Studies in Eighteenth- and Nineteenth-Century Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in eighteenth- and nineteenth-century art of Europe and America.

ARTHC 570R : Studies In Modern and Contemporary Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in modern and contemporary art of Europe and America.

ARTHC 580R : Studies In Architecture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in architecture of Europe and America.

ARTHC 590R : Studies In Curatorship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in curation and the museum.

ARTHC 595R : Foreign Language Readings for Art Historians. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Graduate student status.
DESCRIPTION: Special instruction in reading French or German scholarly texts.

: French Readings for Art Historians.
: German Readings for Art Historians.

ARTHC 599R : Academic Internship. (1-8:0:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC graduate student status.
DESCRIPTION: Professional museum experience with a curatorial mentor.

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Core (VA)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Required of all majors in the visual arts (except art history), the visual arts core is a predisciplinary preparation that embraces knowledge and skills from each discipline and underlying principles common to all disciplines. The core is designed to serve students more efficiently by facilitating their progress through the visual arts programs and allowing flexibility in choosing their individual program direction. The core enables students to acquire a basic and broad understanding of the visual arts before engaging in the specific discipline's content and modes of inquiry.

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

VA 111 : Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and philosophical preparation for visual arts majors. Lecture and guided discussion seminar. Nature and value of visual arts and visual culture.

VA 112 : Survey of Digital Technology. (1.5:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of digital technology as related to the visual arts.

VA 114 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods.

VA 115 : Two-Dimensional Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program.
DESCRIPTION: Formal and conceptual elements of design, color, and composition, using a variety of media.

VA 131 : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

VA 133 : Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 114, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.
NOTE: Fee.

VA 134 : Introduction to Photography. (1.5:1:2)
OFFERED: W on block, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 115.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to photography for visual arts majors, including camera operation and digital capture, photographic principles, lighting, and design with limited postproduction editing. No darkroom.

300-Level Courses

VA 346 : Practicum in Graphic Design. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: freshman core, VADes 220.
DESCRIPTION: Market applications, portfolio preparation, and other aspects of graphic design. Individual portfolio projects designed to develop graphic design skills.

VA 356 : Practicum in Illustration. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 111, 112, 114, 115, 131, 133, 136; sophomore courses.
DESCRIPTION: Market applications, portfolio preparation, advertising patterns, and other aspects of the illustration business. Individual portfolio projects designed to develop personal illustration skills.

VA 373 : Practicum in Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Freshman core, VAPho 170.

VA 380 : Museum Art Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 111 or 201; ArtHC 202 or Hum 201 or 202.
DESCRIPTION: The museum as a learning environment; current exhibitions; learning and teaching strategies for collaboration with museum and classroom educator.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Animation (VAAnm)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

VAANM 160 : Introduction to Animation. (1.5:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Pre-animation major status.
DESCRIPTION: Foundational principles and techniques for animation.

200-Level Courses

VAANM 260 : Storyboarding. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into animation program.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to visual storytelling.

300-Level Courses

VAANM 350R : Gesture Drawing for Animators. (3:6:)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing humans and animals in motion.

VAANM 360 : Visual Development and Character Design. (3:6.0:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into animation program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying design principles for animation.

VAANM 361R : Animation Studio 1. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Foundations portfolio review.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced animation projects.

VAANM 362 : Advanced Animation. (3:6.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAAnm 160.
DESCRIPTION: Applying advanced animation principles, emphasizing character.

400-Level Courses

VAANM 411R : Animation Field Study. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-location study of animation.

VAANM 461R : Animation Studio 2. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Individual advanced animation projects.

VAANM 494R : Special Problems in Animation. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in animation of special interest.

VAANM 497R : BFA Animation Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual animation project with minimum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

VAANM 498R : Directed Studies in Animation. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in animation.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Design (VADes)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

400-Level Courses

VADES 410R : Computer Applications Studio. (2:0:2)
PREREQUISITE: VADes 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual major project using high-end hardware and software.

VADES 411R : Field Study. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-location study of design.

VADES 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department and faculty advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

ANTHR 314 : Museum Registration and Legal/Ethical Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311.
DESCRIPTION: Managing museum collections: cataloging, loans, ethics, legal issues, object handling, basic object conservation. Practical experience working with museum objects.

ANTHR 317 : Native Peoples of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Indian groups at the time of the European arrival; social organization, beliefs, values, economy, and adaptation to environment.

ANTHR 320 : Anthropology of Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Europe's role in the anthropological imagination; ethnographies of contemporary European populations; themes: nationalism/postnationalism/transnationalism; postsocialism, postcolonialism, immigration; ethnic identity and cultural politics; the commodification of culture. Regional emphasis may vary.

ANTHR 326 : Central American Society. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

ANTHR 330 : Peoples of Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and social organization, family life, language, worldview, religion, ritual, artistic expression, ecological adaptation, and contemporary development issues among rural and urban sub-Saharan peoples.

ANTHR 335 : Peoples of India. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Society and culture on Indian subcontinent. Stratification, kinship, marriage, religion, politics, economics.

ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

ANTHR 343 : Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

ANTHR 345 : American Culture. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Unity and diversity in U.S. life. Social/cultural change processes illustrated and analyzed. Anthropological study of complex cultures. Seminar-type course involves substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ANTHR 346 : Anthropology of Mormonism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of Mormon society and culture using a range of anthropological perspectives.

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

3. Complete 6 hours from the following:
ANTHR 402 : Quantitative Methods for Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods in archaeology and sociocultural anthropology, including methods of organizing, exploring, and presenting data, probability, and statistical inference.

ANTHR 412 : Museum Collections Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Instruction and practice in aspects of managing museum collections: writing catalogs, processing

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Education (VAEdu)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

VAEDU 324 : Foundations in Art Education. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: concurrent enrollment in ScEd 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical, philosophical, and historical foundations of art education; children's aesthetic development.

VAEDU 326 : Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

VAEDU 339 : Computer Application in Art Education. (1.5:1.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Basic program applications for developing instructional materials in art education.

VAEDU 377 : Art History and Visual Culture Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching art history and production.

VAEDU 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in VAEdu 377, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

VAEDU 397 : Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

400-Level Courses

VAEDU 439 : Aesthetics and Criticism Methods for Art Educators. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching aesthetics and criticism.

VAEDU 450 : Advanced Studio for Art Educators. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring visual culture and contemporary art problems. Creating artworks and methodologies for translating art-making experiences in the K-12 art program.

VAEDU 478 : Art Curriculum Development, Implementation, and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: VAEdu 324, Sc Ed 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent enrollment; a C- grade or higher in VAEdu 377, 397, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Principles for developing balanced art curriculum; curriculum implementation; evaluation of student progress and art program effectiveness.

VAEDU 494R : Special Problems in Art Education. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

VAEDU 578R : Art Education Studio. (3:0:6)
PREREQUISITE: graduate student status.
DESCRIPTION: MA courses in ceramics, drawing, figure drawing, oil painting, aqueous painting, printmaking, crafts, sculpture, digital art, and conceptual art media.

: MA Aqueous Painting.
: MA Ceramics.
: MA Drawing.
: MA Figure Drawing.
: MA Oil Painting.

VAEDU 594R : Special Problems in Art Education. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics dealing with current education issues.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Graphic Design (VAGD)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

VAGD 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to graphic design.

VAGD 243 : Basic Typography. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring fundamentals and traditions for creating, setting, and designing with type. Solving visual problems with type.

VAGD 245 : Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Communication problems and solutions through visual interpretations of images, type, and symbols. Comprehensive study of printing, binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

300-Level Courses

VAGD 310 : Advanced Computer Application Graphic Design. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific graphic design computer program applications.

VAGD 340 : Corporate Identity Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 243 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Current philosophy in corporate identification and trademark design. Design trademarks, logotypes, and identity programs.

VAGD 341 : Packaging Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

VAGD 342 : Advertising Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Particular demands of the advertising world: marketing strategy, editorial and visual concepts, etc. Design ads, collateral materials, campaigns.

VAGD 343 : Publication Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Book and magazine publishing and their special editorial, design, and manufacturing requirements.

VAGD 344 : Poster Design. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Functions and characteristics of posters; past and current aesthetics.

VAGD 348 : Type as Image. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing unique and expressive letterforms, especially the modification of letters to create new abstract or pictorial images.

VAGD 349 : History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of visual communication.

400-Level Courses

VAGD 410R : Computer Applications Studio for Graphic Designers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual graphic design project using high-end hardware and software.

VAGD 411R : Graphic Design Field Study. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-location study of graphic design.

VAGD 441 : Senior Graphic Design Studio 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Opportunity for senior class members to work as a group in solving design problems for real clients on major projects.

VAGD 442 : Senior Graphic Design Studio 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAGD 441.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAGD 441.

VAGD 443 : Special Problems in Graphic Design 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced assignments in graphic design; individual portfolio development.

VAGD 444 : Special Problems in Graphic Design 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAGD 443.

VAGD 488 : Business Practices for Graphic Designers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the graphic design profession.

VAGD 494R : Special Problems in Graphic Design. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in graphic design of special interest.

VAGD 497R : BFA Graphic Design Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in graphic design with minimum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

VAGD 498R : Directed Studies in Graphic Design. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in graphic design.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Illustration (VAIll)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

VAILL 210 : Intermediate Computer Applications to Illustration. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer software programs specific to illustration.

VAILL 251 : Illustration 1. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

VAILL 252 : Intermediate Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: VA 131.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the classic figure from gesture to finished rendering, emphasizing structure, anatomy, form, and medium.

300-Level Courses

VAILL 310 : Advanced Computer Application Illustration. (2:4.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific computer illustration program applications.

VAILL 350R : Advanced Life Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 131, VAIll 252.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

VAILL 351 : Illustration 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA aacceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure using various media.

VAILL 352 : Illustration 3. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual illustration problems and market applications, using various media.

VAILL 353 : Book Illustration. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Book cover illustration; narrative problems and applicable markets; related media and skills.

VAILL 354 : Editorial Illustration. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Magazine illustration; conceptual problems and related markets; applications and media.

VAILL 355 : History of American Illustration 1 (1860-1930). (3:4:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of illustration in visual communication, emphasizing the birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration, 1860-1930.

VAILL 356 : History of American Illustration 2 (1930-Present). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of American illustration in visual communication, emphasizing from 1930 to the present.

VAILL 357 : Sketchbook. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131; VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Using a sketchbook in visual thinking process: exploring ideas, recording visual experience, and developing fundamental drawing skills.

VAILL 358 : Character Design for Illustrators. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VA 114, 115, 131, VAIll 250, 350R.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and projects dealing with the interpretation and stylization of human and animal characters applied to children's markets, caricature, animation, and humorous illustration.

400-Level Courses

VAILL 411R : Illustration Field Study. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-location study of illustration.

VAILL 450R : Painting the Human Head. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 350 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Painting from a live model; unique aspects of portraiture and colors of the human face.

VAILL 451 : Senior Illustration Studio 1. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352, and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Individual portfolio development.

VAILL 452 : Senior Illustration Studio 2. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 451.
DESCRIPTION: Flexible in nature, featuring various instructors with unique individual skills. Team taught. Advanced assignments in illustration; individual portfolio preparation.

VAILL 453 : Illustration 4. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352; BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced assignments in illustration. Various instructors with unique skills and market experience.

VAILL 454 : Illustration 5. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAIll 351, 352; BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of VAIll 453. Advanced assignments in illustration and media.

VAILL 488 : Professional Practices for Illustrators. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the illustration profession.

VAILL 494R : Special Problems in Illustration. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in illustration of special interest.

VAILL 497R : BFA Illustration Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in illustration with miminum guidance, showing a high degree of competence.

VAILL 498R : Directed Studies in Illustration. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit for work experience in illustration.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Photography (VAPho)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

VAPHO 170 : Introduction to Black and White Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into visual arts program; VA 120.
DESCRIPTION: Basic camera and darkroom techniques emphasizing black and white film processing and printmaking.

200-Level Courses

VAPHO 210 : Introduction to Digital Imaging. (3:6:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: VA 112, 115, VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Photography-based digital imaging, including film scanning, digital capture, color management, Photoshop instruction, fine art and commercial print output, and archiving.

VAPHO 272 : Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Color aesthetics, theory, and systems in traditional and digital capture and printmaking.

VAPHO 273 : Advanced Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and darkroom techniques using the zone system for exposure and development control of large format negatives and prints.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 275 : Classical Portrait Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 170, 210, 273.
DESCRIPTION: Studio and environmental portraiture as well as traditional approaches to portrait photography, including wedding/bridal. Lab required.

300-Level Courses

VAPHO 310 : Advanced Computer Application Photography. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 210.
DESCRIPTION: Specific photography computer applications, including workflow, color management, and personal project work.

VAPHO 372 : Still Life Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Camera and studio techniques to produce illustrations for advertising layout and other media.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 376 : Editorial Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance to BFA photograhy level.
DESCRIPTION: Use of photography in magazines, newspapers, annual reports, etc. Creating and publishing picture stories.

VAPHO 377R : Exploring Alternative Photography Processes. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Photography as an exploratory, sensitizing process.
NOTE: Lab required.

VAPHO 379 : History of Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of photographic aesthetics.

400-Level Courses

VAPHO 410R : Computer Applications Studio for Photographers. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual photography project using high-end hardware and software.

VAPHO 411R : Photographic Field Study. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

VAPHO 475 : Advanced Location Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Lighting and photographing architecture, products, people, and concepts in environmental settings for the editorial, corporate, industrial, and advertising industry.

VAPHO 477R : Nature Photography. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of professional nature and landscape photography.

VAPHO 478 : Fine Art Photography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: VAPho 272 and BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Fine art approaches to photography; conceptual, social, and aesthetic values; modern and postmodern values.

VAPHO 488 : Professional Practices for Photographers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: BFA acceptance.
DESCRIPTION: Business aspects of the photographer's profession.

VAPHO 494R : Special Problems in Photography. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual study in photography of special interest.

VAPHO 497R : BFA Photography Final Project. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced individual project in photography showing a high degree of competence.

VAPHO 498R : Directed Studies In Photography. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: BFA advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Credit fort work experience in photography.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Visual Arts Studio (VAStu)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

VASTU 101 : Introduction to Art and Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Readings, aesthetic topics, basic drawing techniques and concepts.

VASTU 109 : Introduction to Calligraphy. (2:1:3)
DESCRIPTION: Basic skills in hand lettering.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

200-Level Courses

VASTU 200 : Studio Techniques for Art History. (3:2:4)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to art techniques, materials, and practices directed toward art history majors.

VASTU 204 : Sculpture 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Extended work in basic sculpture processes and concepts.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 205 : Ceramics 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Extended methods of creating original ceramic objects, including glaze mixing, kiln firing, and research techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 206 : Printmaking 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Extended work in etching.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 207 : Painting 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to oil painting.

VASTU 208 : Watercolor 2. (1.5:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 101.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to aqueous media.

VASTU 209 : Calligraphy 2. (2:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 109.
DESCRIPTION: Spencerian alphabet and design. Problems in applying various handmade and transfer alphabets.

VASTU 214 : Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation in transparent aqueous media.

VASTU 215 : Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation painting.

VASTU 216 : Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation ceramics.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 217 : Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 218 : Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

The

VASTU 219 : Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation printmaking.
NOTE: Fee.

300-Level Courses

VASTU 321 : Drawing. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing as a graphic form of self-expression, emphasizing personal statement in response to various experiences and concepts.

VASTU 322R : Figure Drawing. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual Arts core.
DESCRIPTION: Drawing from the human figure, emphasizing structure and anatomy.

VASTU 327 : Painting. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 215.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts and techniques of oil painting.

VASTU 328R : Figure Painting. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: visual arts core and VAStu 215, 322, 327.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of figure painting.

VASTU 330R : Bookbinding. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

VASTU 333 : Aqueous Media. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 214.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring multiple aqueous media on paper: transparent water color, acrylic, gouache, casein, egg tempera.

VASTU 350 : Printmaking: Intaglio. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 218.
DESCRIPTION: Intaglio printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 351 : Printmaking: Lithography. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 219.
DESCRIPTION: Lithography printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 353R : Computer Art. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the computer as a tool for visual self-expression.

VASTU 355R : Stained Glass. (3:2:4)
DESCRIPTION: Methods and processes using leaded glass, copper, foil, and faceted glass.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 356R : Figure Sculpture. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 217.
DESCRIPTION: Modeling the human figure in clay.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 358 : Sculpture. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 217.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional and nontraditional approaches to sculpture.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 359R : Ceramics. (3:2:4)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts core and VAStu 216, 217.
DESCRIPTION: Designing, throwing, hand forming, decorating, glazing, and firing techniques.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 394R : Special Problems in Art. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

VASTU 395R : Studio Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: VA 111.
DESCRIPTION: Selected contemporary issues involving visiting artists, guest lecturers, video documentaries, discussions, and program information.

400-Level Courses

VASTU 440 : Business Practices for Artists. (1.5:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Visual arts major.
DESCRIPTION: Basic business practices associated with managing career in visual arts.

VASTU 456R : Sculpture Studio. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 356R or 358R and admission by portfolio.

donations, preserving objects.

ANTHR 414 : Museum Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience in a museum working with exhibitions, public programs, or research.

ANTHR 430 : Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

ANTHR 431 : The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

ANTHR 436 : Symbolic Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social use and understanding of semiotics, signs, symbols, and other meaningful forms as critically constitutive of culture.

ANTHR 439 : Psychological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: The relationship between culture and mind. Examines whether the concept of the person varies cross-culturally, how emotions may differ in different societies, the psychological implications of cultural approaches to childrearing.

ANTHR 443 : Quantitative Ethnographic Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Using quantitative tools to analyze qualitative data.

ANTHR 490R : Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

4. Complete 3 hours from the following:

ANTHR 434 : Medical Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years; W even years.
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Interactions between culture and health in comparative perspective, emphasizing social, historical, and ecological determinants.

ANTHR 437 : Man, Women, and the Culture of Gender. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Gender roles across culture relative to health, ethnicity, economic development, kinship, war, etc.

ANTHR 441 : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

ANTHR 450 : Anthropology of Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101, 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological theories of and qualitative research in child rearing, enculturation, cognition, informal education, schools, literacy, multicultural and multilingual education, and cultural transmission and acquisition.

ANTHR 511 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
DESCRIPTION: Museums in society. Cultural foundations of museum content and sociology of museum use. Analyzing museum studies literature with on-site visits to area museums.

VASTU 459R : Ceramic Studio. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 359R and admission by portfolio.
DESCRIPTION: Exploratory experience with advanced methods in ceramics. Research emphasis on clay bodies, glazes, and constructing and operating kilns.
NOTE: Fee.

VASTU 480R : Advanced Studio. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: VAStu 321 or 322R; 350R or 351R; 327R or 333R; 328R (if figure emphasis).
DESCRIPTION: Individual development of art issues in advanced studio environment. Writing a proposal accompanied by a readings list.

VASTU 496R : Academic Internship: Professional Internship. (.5-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: visual arts major.

VASTU 497R : BFA Final Project. (1:0:0)

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Visual Arts Department Home

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Visual Arts Faculty

Professors

Barrett, Robert T

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Utah, 1973
MA, University of Iowa, 1975
MFA, University of Iowa, 1976

Barsch, Wulf E.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Werkkunstschule, Hannover, Germany, 1968
MA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MFA, Brigham Young University, 1972

Beattie, Donna Kay

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Emporia State University, 1963
MA, University of Missouri, Kansas City, 1985
PhD, University of Kansas, 1989

Hull, Richard

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1987

Johnson, Mark J.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1983
MFA, Princeton University, 1984
PhD, Princeton University, 1986

Kimball, Wilford Wayne

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, College of Southern Utah, 1968
MFA, University of Arizona, 1970

Ostraff, Joseph Evan

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MFA, University of Washington, 1984

Peacock, Martha Moffitt

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1985
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1989

Sullivan, Linda Ann

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1977
BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MFA, University of Utah, 1993

Telford, John W.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: MFA, University of Utah, 1988

Associate Professors

Allen, Von D.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Edinboro State College, 1973
MS, Edinboro State College, 1976
MFA, Syracuse University, 1983

Andersen, Bethanne P.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MFA, Brigham Young University, 1979

Barton, Garold C.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MFA, Ohio State University, 1994

Brinkerhoff, Val W.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MFA, Utah State University, 1987

Christensen, Brian D.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MFA, Washington University, 1993

Draper, Bryon Kay

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young Universityâ€'Hawaii, 1990
MFA, Brigham Young University, 1995

Everett, Peter H.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MFA, Pratt Institute, 2000

Graham, Mark Allen

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Utah, 1978
MBA, New York University, 1986
PhD, Columbia University, 2001

Gray, Sharon R.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Radford College
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1992

Haltern, Hagen G.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Fachhochschule, Cologne, West Germany, 1972
MFA, Kunstakademie, DÃ¼sseldorf, Germany, 1976

Maughan, William L.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Art Center College of Design, 1973

Pulfer, Adrian H.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1988

Assistant Professors

Adams, Paul S.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MFA, Utah State University, 1996

Barson, Brent

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1997
MFA, Art Center College of Design, 2003

Gillett, Eric A.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MFA, University of Utah, 2003

Jensen, Heather Belnap

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Kansas, 2007

Woodward, Ryan J.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1995
BFA, Brigham Young University, 2003
MFA, The Academy of Art University, 2006

Instructors

Barney, Daniel Theron

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BFA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 2004

Magleby, Mark Allen

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Visual Arts
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1992

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Women's Research Institute

Bonnie Ballif-Spanvill, Director
1063 JFSB, (801) 422-4609

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Research and Scholarship

The Women's Research Institute seeks to promote the scholarly investigation of female perspectives and experiences in diverse cultural and historical contexts. It provides access to a worldwide network of scholarship through the ongoing collaborative research it directs and its sponsorship of academic conferences and visiting scholars. Research projects focusing on women's unique patterns of development and learning, their viewpoints and contributions, and their involvement in families, religions, and societies throughout the world are created and funded through the institute.

Women's Studies Discipline

The women's studies minor educates students in the findings, theories, and methodologies fundamental to the women's studies field, while fostering critical thinking and superior scholarship. Considering traditional academic discourse from the female perspective allows new insights into our historical and cultural traditions.

Career Opportunities

A women's studies minor enhances and broadens educational and employment opportunities in any discipline or field. The women's studies minor trains students to look at issues and questions from unique perspectives, develop research skills, learn current theory, and deal with gender issues in society. This training prepares students to be more successful in graduate and professional schools, business and industry, and government or community service.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Women's Studies (19 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

WS 222 : (WS-Soc) Introduction to Women's Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Survey of scholarship about women's lives; new historical, sociological, psychological, and literary approaches that inform our understanding of women's experience.

WS 392R : Women's Studies Colloquium. (.5:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Scholarly findings presented by researchers on topics relating to women's lives and experiences throughout history, across the world, and within ethnic, educational, and economic segments of society.

(two enrollments required)
WS 492 : Women's Studies Senior Research Seminar. (3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: WS 222.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of interdisciplinary studies of women; comparative analysis of methods used in research on women; group or individual senior research papers required.

2. Complete two courses from the following:

ENGL 396 : Studies in Women's Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Female-authored literary texts and literary theory concerning women.
NOTE: A core class for the women's studies minor.

HIST 384 : United States Women's History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey course of women's experience in American culture and society from the Puritans to the present.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

PSYCH 306 : Psychology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

SFL 371 : Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 160.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

SOC 367 : Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

3. Complete two elective courses from the following:

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

NDFS 424 : Nutrition Through the Life Cycle. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 300 or 305 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dietary recommendations for pregnancy and lactation; infant feeding; nutritional requirements, diet, and health concerns of preschoolers, school-age children, adolescents, and the elderly.

SFL 461 : The Family and the Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160.
DESCRIPTION: Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

or
SOC 460 : Issues in Family Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced sociological analysis of current issues relating to the family (e.g., theory, methodology, parenting, marriage, divorce, family crises, race, gender, etc.).

WS 390R : Women's Studies Special Topics. (2-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to women's studies, including anthropology of gender, Russian women's history, women in the scriptures, British colonial writers, etc.

: 19th Century German Novelists.
: Anthropology of Gender.
: British Colonial Writers.
: German Women's Literature.
: History of Russia's Women.
: Women in Scriptures.
: Women's Wellness.

WS 499R : Independent Research. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional activities or laboratory/field research in women's studies issues.

(1-3 hours required)

Show all Women's Studies (WS) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Women's Studies (WS)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

WS 222 : (WS-Soc) Introduction to Women's Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Survey of scholarship about women's lives; new historical, sociological, psychological, and literary approaches that inform our understanding of women's experience.

300-Level Courses

WS 390R : Women's Studies Special Topics. (2-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to women's studies, including anthropology of gender, Russian women's history, women in the scriptures, British colonial writers, etc.

: 19th Century German Novelists.
: Anthropology of Gender.
: British Colonial Writers.
: German Women's Literature.
: History of Russia's Women.
: Women in Scriptures.
: Women's Wellness.

WS 392R : Women's Studies Colloquium. (.5:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Scholarly findings presented by researchers on topics relating to women's lives and experiences throughout history, across the world, and within ethnic, educational, and economic segments of society.

400-Level Courses

WS 492 : Women's Studies Senior Research Seminar. (3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: WS 222.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of interdisciplinary studies of women; comparative analysis of methods used in research on women; group or individual senior research papers required.

WS 499R : Independent Research. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional activities or laboratory/field research in women's studies issues.

Back to Women's Research Institute Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

5. Complete an additional 3 hours of electives from section 3 or 4 above.

6. Complete the following:

ANTHR 442 : Ethnographic Skills. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Methods, rationale, limitations, and ethical issues of participant observation, interviewing, quantitative measurement, and other procedures of ethnographic fieldwork. Local field project.

ANTHR 495 : Ethnographic Field Project. (3-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 442.
DESCRIPTION: Conduct field work, maintain field notes, and write a paper incorporating both descriptive and analytic components.

ANTHR 499R : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 422, 495 (for sociocultural); 205, 206, 215, 454R, 455R, 456R (for archaeology).
DESCRIPTION: Supervised analysis and write-up of data generated during field project.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Anthropology Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Accreditation and Affiliations

Brigham Young University is fully accredited by the Northwest Commission on Colleges and Universities. In addition, many professional programs of the university are reviewed, evaluated, and accredited by national and state associations and boards.

The following organizations have given full accreditation to related programs at the university:

- Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET) for the four-year programs leading to bachelor of science degrees in chemical engineering, civil engineering, computer engineering, computer science, electrical engineering, mechanical engineering
- Accrediting Council for Education in Journalism and Mass Communications
- American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance
- American Association for Health Education
- American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy
- American Association of Museums
- American Bar Association
- American Council for Construction Education
- American Dietetic Association
- American Institute of Graphic Arts
- American Psychological Association
- American Research Center in Egypt
- American Society of Mammalogists
- American Society of Media Photographers
- American Speech, Language, Hearing Association
- American Veterinary Medical Association
- Associated Landscape Contractors Association
- Association for Childhood Education International
- Association for Educational Communications and Technology
- Association of Systematics Collections
- Association to Advance Collegiate Schools of Business
- Collegiate Commission on Nursing Education
- Commission on Accreditation for Marriage and Family Therapy Education of the American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy
- Commission on Accreditation of Allied Health Education Programs
- Commission on Collegiate Nursing Education
- Computer Science Accreditation Board/ABET
- Computing Accreditation Commission of ABET
- Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs
- Council for Exceptional Children
- Council of Baccalaureate and Higher Degree Programs of the National League for Nursing
- Council on Accreditation, National Recreation and Park Association
- Council on Education for Public Health
- Council on Social Work Education
- Council on Technology Teacher Education
- Educational Leadership Constituent Council
- Institute of Food Technologists
- International Facilities Management Association
- International Society for Technology Education
- International Technology Education Association
- Joint Review Committee on Educational Programs in Athletic Training
- National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences
- National Association for the Education of Young Children
- National Association of School Psychologists
- National Association of Schools of Art and Design
- National Association of Schools of Dance
- National Association of Schools of Music
- National Association of Schools of Public Affairs and Administration
- National Association of Schools of Theatre
- National Association of Sport and Physical Education
- National Association of State Directors of Teacher Education and Certification
- National Collegiate Athletic Association
- National Council for Accreditation of Teacher Education
- National Council for Social Studies
- National Council of Teachers of English
- National Council of Teachers of Mathematics
- National Environmental Health Association
- National League for Nursing Accrediting Commission
- National Science Teachers Association
- Northwest Association of Secondary and Higher Schools
- Northwest Commission on Colleges and Universities
- Professional Landcare Network for the four-year program leading to a BS in landscape management
- Public Relations Society of America
- Society for Public Health Education
- Teacher Education Accreditation Council
- Technology Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (TAC/ABET) for the four-year program leading to a bachelor of science degree in manufacturing engineering technology
- The Association to Advance Collegiate Schools of Business

- The National Recreation and Parks Association
- University Council of Educational Administration
- Utah Office of Museum Services
- Utah State Board of Nursing
- Utah State Office of Education

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

Brigham Young University (or full-time faculty) are affiliated with the following educational and professional associations:

Index:
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P R S T U V W

A

- Academia de la Investigacion Cientifica
- Academic Unit Review Committee
- Academy for Health Services Marketing
- Academy of Financial Services
- Academy of International Business
- Academy of Management
- Academy of Marketing Science
- Acoustical Society of America
- Actors Equity Association
- Administrative Management Society
- African American Pioneer Committee
- Alliance for Media Literate America
- Alpha Kappa Delta
- Alpha Tau Chapter of Kappa Omnicron Nu
- AMCAP Association
- American Academy of Management
- American Academy of Nurse Practitioners
- American Academy of Religion
- American Accounting Association
- American Advertising Federation
- American Agricultural Economics Association
- American Alliance for Theatre and Education
- American Anthropological Association
- American-Arab Affairs Council
- American Association for Advancement of Science
- American Association for Advances in Health Care Research
- American Association for Artificial Intelligence
- American Association for Counseling and Development
- American Association for Italian Studies
- American Association for Leisure and Recreation
- American Association for Public Opinion Research
- American Association for State and Local History
- American Association for the Advancement of Science
- American Association for the Advancement of Slavic Studies
- American Association of Adult and Continuing Education
- American Association of Aerosol Research
- American Association of Bovine Practitioners
- American Association of Cereal Chemists
- American Association of Colleges
- American Association of Colleges for Teacher Education
- American Association of Colleges of Nursing
- American Association of Collegiate Registrars and Admissions Officers
- American Association of Family and Consumer Sciences
- American Association of Health Education
- American Association of Higher Education
- American Association of Investments
- American Association of Museums
- American Association of Petroleum Geologists
- American Association of Physics Teachers
- American Association of Presidents of Independent Colleges and Universities
- American Association of Real Estate Appraisers
- American Association of School Administrators
- American Association of Small Ruminant Practitioners
- American Association of State and Local History
- American Association of Teachers of Arabic
- American Association of Teachers of French
- American Association of Teachers of German
- American Association of Teachers of Italian
- American Association of Teachers of Slavic and East European Languages
- American Association of Teachers of Spanish and Portuguese
- American Association of University Women
- American Astronomical Society
- American Bach Society
- American Biological Safety Association
- American Business Law Association
- American Chemical Society
- American Choral Directors Association
- American College Dance Festival Association
- American College of Health Administrators
- American College of Health Care Executives

- American College of Nutrition
- American College of Sports Medicine
- American College Personnel Association
- American Collegiate Retailing
- American Comparative Literature Association
- American Conference on Romanticism
- American Council for the Teaching of Foreign Languages
- American Council of Teachers of Russian
- American Council on Consumer Interests
- American Council on Education
- American Crystallographic Association
- American Dairy Science Association
- American Dietetic Association
- American DDR Studies Association
- American Economics Association
- American Federation of Musicians
- American Federation of Television and Radio Employees
- American Film Institute
- American Finance Association
- American Geophysical Union
- American Group Psychotherapy Association
- American Guild of Musical Artists
- American Guild of Organists
- American Historical Association
- American Hospital Association
- American Industrial Hygiene Association
- American Institute for Maghribi Studies
- American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics
- American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
- American Institute of Chemical Engineers
- American Institute of Design and Drafting
- American Institute of Hydrology
- American Institute of Organ Builders
- American Institute of Physics
- American Institute of Plant Engineers
- American Library Association
- American Liszt Society
- American Management Association
- American Marketing Association
- American Mathematical Society
- American Musical Instrument Society
- American Musicological Society
- American Newspaper Publishers Association
- American Nurses Association
- American Oil Chemists' Society
- American Oriental Society
- American Philological Association
- American Philosophical Association
- American Physical Society
- American Physiological Society
- American Political Science Association
- American Popular Culture Association
- American Production and Inventory Control Society
- American Psychological Association
- American Psychological Society
- American Public Health Association
- American Public Radio
- American Public Television Association
- American Real Estate and Urban Economics Association
- American Real Estate Society
- American Research Center in Egypt
- American Risk and Insurance Association
- American School Food Service Association
- American School Health Association
- American Schools of Construction
- American Schools of Oriental Research
- American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
- American Society for Bone and Mineral Research
- American Society for Clinical Nutrition
- American Society for Engineering Education
- American Society for Engineering Management
- American Society for Environmental History
- American Society for Horticultural Science
- American Society for Mass Spectrometry
- American Society for Microbiology
- American Society for Nutritional Sciences
- American Society for Public Administration
- American Society for Quality
- American Society for Testing and Materials
- American Society for Theatre Research
- American Society for Training and Development
- American Society of Agriculture Engineers
- American Society of Agronomy
- American Society of Animal Science

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 -
Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

- American Society of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
- American Society of Church History
- American Society of Civil Engineers
- American Society of Composers, Authors, and Publishers
- American Society of Eighteenth-Century Studies
- American Society of Genealogists
- American Society of International and Comparative Law
- American Society of Landscape Contractors
- American Society of Mammalogists
- American Society of Mechanical Engineers
- American Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition
- American Society of Plant Biology
- American Society of Public Accountants
- American Society of Training and Development
- American Sociological Association
- American Statistical Association
- American String Teachers Association
- American Taxation Association
- American Theological Library Association
- American Translators Association
- American Viola d'amore Society
- American Viola Society
- Archaeological Conservancy, The
- Associated Builders and Contractors
- Associated General Contractors of America
- Associated Neuroscience Departments and Programs
- Associated Schools of Construction
- Associated Writing Programs
- Association for Advances in Health Care Research
- Association for Asian Studies
- Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapy
- Association for Business Communication
- Association for Career and Technical Education [Family and Consumer Sciences Education]
- Association for Comparative Economic Studies
- Association for Comparative Studies
- Association for Computational Linguistics
- Association for Computers and the Humanities
- Association for Computers in Education
- Association for Computing Machinery
- Association for Consumer Research
- Association for Counselor Education and Supervision
- Association for Couples in Marriage Enrichment
- Association for Documentary Editing
- Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communications
- Association for Educational Communications and Technology
- Association for Financial Counseling and Planning Education
- Association for International Business Education and Research
- Association for Library and Information Science Education
- Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing
- Association for Manufacturing Excellence
- Association for Mormon Counselors and Psychotherapists
- Association for Mormon Letters
- Association for Practical and Professional Ethics
- Association for Public Policy Analysis and Management
- Association for Schools in Journalism and Mass Communications
- Association for Society of Newspaper Editors
- Association for Student Judicial Affairs
- Association for Supervision, Training, and Development
- Association for Systems Management
- Association for the Advancement of Computing in Education
- Association for Theatre in Higher Education
- Association of American Colleges
- Association of American Law Schools
- Association of American University Presses
- Association of Ancient Historians
- Association of Asian Studies
- Association of Baccalaureate Social Work Programs
- Association of Career and Technical Education
- Association of College and Research Libraries
- Association of College and University Museums and Galleries
- Association of College Unions—International
- Association of Continuing Higher Education
- Association of Departments of English
- Association of Departments of Foreign Languages
- Association of General Contractors
- Association of Graduate Students in Statistics
- Association of Higher Education Facilities Officers
- Association of Mathematics Teacher Educators
- Association of Mormon Counselors and Psychotherapists
- Association of Musical Theatre Educators
- Association of Neuroscience Departments and Programs
- Association of Performing Arts Presenters
- Association of Professional Genealogists
- Association of Psychology Postdoctoral and Internship Centers

- Association of Research Libraries
- Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development
- Association of Teacher Educators
- Association of Teachers of Chinese
- Association of Teachers of Japanese
- Association of Theatre for Children and Young People
- Association of the United States Army
- Association of University and College Counseling Center Directors
- Association of Western Universities
- Association of Women in Radio and Television
- Astronomical Society of the Pacific
- Audio Engineering Society
- Australia/New Zealand Communication Association

B

- Beta Alpha Psi
- Biblical Archaeology Society
- Bibliographic Center for Research, Rocky Mountain Region
- Biophysical Society
- Board for Certification of Genealogists
- Botanical Society of America
- Broadcast Education Association
- Broadcast Music Inc.

C

- California Bar Association
- Canadian Mathematical Society
- Canadian Psychological Association
- Cantonese Language Association
- Casualty Actuarial Society
- Center for Applied Linguistics
- Center for Arabic Study Abroad
- Center for Cold War Studies
- Center for International Business Education and Research
- Center for International Scholarly Exchange
- Center for Research Libraries
- Central Education Network
- Central Opera Service
- Changes in Liberal Education
- Chartered Financial Analyst Institute
- Classical Association of the Middle West and South
- Clay Minerals Society
- Cliometric Society
- Coalition for Networked Information
- Coalition of Western Women Historians
- Cognitive Development Society
- College and University Machine Records Conference
- College and University Personnel Association
- College Art Association
- College Athletic Business Managers Association
- College Band Directors National Association
- College Entrance Examination Board
- College Media Advisors
- College Music Society
- College of Alberta Psychologists
- College Reading Association
- College Reading and Learning Association
- College Sports Information Directors of America
- Committee on Categorizing Statistics Software
- Committee on Statistics Software National Academy
- Comp Drama Association
- Comparative and International Education Society
- Computer-Assisted Language Instruction Consortium
- Computing Research Association
- Confederation of International Organizers of Folkdance Festivals
- Conference on Christianity and Literature
- Conference on College Composition and Communication
- Congress on Research in Dance
- Consortium for the Advancement of Undergraduate Statistics Education
- Consortium of Church Libraries and Archives
- Consumer Research Association
- Co-op America
- Correctional Educational Association
- Costume Society of America
- Costume Society of Great Britain
- Council for Chemical Research
- Council for European Studies
- Council for Programs in Technical and Scientific Communication
- Council for the Advancement and Support of Education
- Council for Undergraduate Research
- Council for Writing Program Administrators
- Council of Editors of Learned Journals
- Council of Graduate Departments of Psychology

- Council of Graduate Schools in the United States
- Council on Legal Education Opportunities
- Council on Library and Information Resources
- Crop Science Society of America

D

- Daguerrean Society
- Dance and the Child International
- Dante Society of America
- Data Processing Management Association
- David Whitmer Historical Association
- Decision Sciences Institute
- Denver Geophysical Society
- Dramatist Guild

E

- Econometric Society
- Economic History Association
- Editorial Board of Marriage and Families
- EDP Auditors Association
- Education Law Association
- Educational Films Library Association
- Educational Society for Resource Management
- Educational Theatre Association
- Endocrine Society
- Environmental Historians Association
- Eta Kappa Nu
- Eta Sigma Gamma
- Eugene O'Neill Society of America
- European Accounting Association
- European Association of Exploration Geophysicists
- European Physical Society
- European Trade Association
- Evangelical Training Society
- Executive MBA Council

F

- Faculty Affiliate of Women's Research Institute
- Families and Work Institute
- Family and Consumer Sciences Education Association
- Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology
- Federation of Genealogical Societies
- Federation of Schools of Accountancy
- Financial Management Association
- First Families of Ohio
- Food Service Management Education Council
- Foundation for Ancient Research and Mormon Studies
- Friends of the Permian

G

- Gamma Sigma Delta
- Genealogical Forum of Oregon
- Genetics Society of America
- Geochemical Society
- Geological Society of America
- Geophysical Society of Houston
- German Studies Association
- Global Health Council
- Goal/QPC, Inc.
- Goethe Institute (U.S. and West Germany)
- Golden Key National Honor Society
- Graduate Management Admissions Council: Career Services Council
- Great Basin Anthropological Association
- Greater Western Library Alliance
- Guild of Carillonneurs in North America

H

- Health Care Financial Association
- Health Education Association of Utah

I

- Ibsen Society of America
- Icelandic Association of Utah
- Illustration Partnership of America
- Imperial Society of Dance
- Industrial Relations Research Association
- Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences
- Institute for Public Relations Research
- Institute of Business Designers
- Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers

- Institute of Food Technologists
- Institute of Industrial Engineers
- Institute of Internal Auditors
- Institute of International Education
- Institute of Management Accountants
- Institute of Management Science/Operations Research Society of America
- Institute of Management Sciences
- Institute of Mathematical Statistics
- Institute of Noise Control Engineering
- Interior Design Education Council
- Interior Design Educators Council
- International Arts Medicine Association
- International Association for Dance Medicine and Science
- International Association for Financial Planning
- International Association for Food Protection
- International Association for Korean Language Educators
- International Association for Mass Communication Research
- International Association for Statistical Education
- International Association for the Study of Popular Music
- International Association of Administrative Professionals
- International Association of Business Communications
- International Association of Business Disciplines
- International Association of Egyptologists
- International Association of Hydrogeologists
- International Association of Jazz Educators
- International Association of Learning Laboratories
- International Association of Scholarly Publishers
- International Association of Schools of Social Work
- International Association of Survey Statisticians
- International Association of Theatre for Children and Young People
- International Association of Theatrical and Screen Employees
- International Astronomical Union
- International Biometrics Society
- International City/County Management Association
- International Commission for the Accreditation of Professional Genealogists
- International Communication Association
- International Comparative Literature Association
- International Conference for Computers in the Humanities
- International Congress of Meat Science and Technology
- International Congress of University Adult Education
- International Council of Kinetography Laban/Labanotation
- International Council of Organizations for Folklore Festivals and Folk Art
- International Dance Council
- International Dark-Sky Association
- International Digital Media and Arts Association
- International Documentary Association
- International Double Reed Society
- International Drama in Education Association
- International Education for Peace Association
- International Environmetrics Society
- International Federation for Theatre Research
- International Horn Society
- International Humic Substances Society
- International Institute for Qualitative Methods
- International Institute of Forecasters
- International Meat Processors
- International Musicological Society
- International Neural Network Society
- International Organization of Scenographers, Architects, and Technicians of Theatre
- International Public Management Associations—Human Resources
- International Reading Association
- International Schools of Theatre
- International Society for Bayesian Analysis
- International Society for Developmental Psychobiology
- International Society for Indoor Air Quality and Climate
- International Society for Infant Studies
- International Society for Infectious Diseases
- International Society for Music in Medicine
- International Society for the Scholarship of Teaching and Learning
- International Society for the Study of Behavioral Development
- International Society of Coptic Studies
- International Society on General Relativity and Gravitation
- International Statistical Institute
- International Studies Association
- International Tap Association
- International Textiles and Apparel Association
- International Viola Society
- Isle of Man Family History Society

J

- John Whitmer Historical Association
- Joint National Committee for Languages

K

- Kappa Omicron Nu
- Kappa Tau Alpha
- Kennedy Center American College Theatre Festival

L

- Laban Institute of Movement Studies
- Latin American Studies Association
- Lewis and Clark Trail Heritage Foundation
- Linguistic Society of America
- Literary Managers and Dramaturgs of the Americas
- London Mathematical Society

M

- Marketing Science Institute
- Master Piano Technicians of America, Inc.
- Mathematical Association of America
- Mathematical Sciences Research Institute
- McBride Round Table
- Medical Group Management Association
- Medieval Academy of America
- Microscopy Society of America
- Mid-America Theatre Association
- Middle East Studies Association of North America
- Midwest Association of Colleges and Employers
- Mineralogical Society of America
- Missouri Mormon Frontier Foundation
- Modern Language Association
- Mormon Historic Sites Foundation
- Mormon History Association
- Mormon Missouri Trails Foundation
- Mormon Pacific Historical Society
- Mormon Social Science Association
- Mormon Trails Association
- Motus Humanus
- Mountain Pacific Association of Colleges and Employers
- Mountain Plains Adult Education Association
- Mountain Plains Library Association
- Mountain West Conference
- Mu Sigma Rho
- Music and Entertainment Industry Educators' Association
- Music Educators National Conference
- Music Library Association
- Music Teachers National Association
- Musical Theatre Educators Association

N

- National Academic Advising Association
- National Academy of Songwriters
- National Academy of Television Arts and Sciences
- National Alliance for Musical Theatre
- National Art Education Association
- National Association for Campus Activities
- National Association for Humanities Education
- National Association for Institutional Research
- National Association for Internships and Experiential Education
- National Association for Music Therapy
- National Association for Physical Education in Higher Education
- National Association for the Education of Young Children
- National Association of Advisors for the Health Professions
- National Association of Art Administrators
- National Association of Broadcasters
- National Association of Business Economists
- National Association of Certified Fraud Examiners
- National Association of Clinical Nurse Specialists
- National Association of College Wind and Percussion Instructors
- National Association of Colleges and Employers
- National Association of Collegiate Directors of America
- National Association of Elementary Principals
- National Association of Foreign Student Affairs
- National Association of Geology Teachers
- National Association of Home Builders
- National Association of Independent Colleges and Universities
- National Association of Purchasing Management
- National Association of Schools of Art and Design
- National Association of Schools of Music
- National Association of Secondary School Principals
- National Association of Social Workers
- National Association of Student Financial Aid Administrators
- National Association of Student Personnel Administrators
- National Association of Teachers
- National Association of Teachers of Singing
- National Association of Television Programming Executives

- National Athletic Trainers Association
- National Band Association
- National Business Educators Association
- National Center for Employee Ownership
- National Collegiate Athletic Association
- National Collegiate Honors Council
- National Collegiate Inventors and Innovators Alliance
- National Commission of Accrediting
- National Commission on Cooperative Education
- National Communication Association
- National Computer Graphics Association
- National Consortium of Entrepreneurship Centers
- National Council of University Research Administrators
- National Council on Family Relations
- National Dance Association
- National Dance Council of America
- National Dance Education Organization
- National Drama Conference
- National Drama UK (ND)
- National Education Association
- National Environmental Health Association
- National Family Council
- National Financial Association
- National Flute Association
- National Folk Organization of the United States of America
- National Genealogical Society
- National Intramural Recreational Sports Association
- National Key Society
- National League for Nursing
- National Network of Graduate Business School Women
- National Opera Association
- National Organization of Nurse Practitioner Faculties
- National Orientation Directors Association
- National Press Women
- National Public Radio
- National Reading Conference
- National Recreation and Parks Association
- National Satellite Systems Review Panel
- National School Boards Association
- National Stereoscopic Society
- National Theatre Conference
- National Undergraduate Business Symposium
- National University Continuing Education Association
- National Writing Centers Association
- Network of International Business and Economic Schools
- Network of Quality and Productivity Center
- New England Historic Genealogical Society
- New York Academy of Sciences
- New York Music Theatre Festival
- North American Association for the Study of Obesity
- North American Case Research Association
- North American Conference on British Studies
- North American Manx Association
- North American Patristic Society
- North American Society for Psychotherapy Research
- North American Society for Sport History
- North American Steel Band Association
- Northern Rocky Mountain Educational Research Association

O

- Office Systems Research Association
- Ohio Genelealogical Society
- Online Computer Library Center, Inc.
- Operations Management Association
- Operations Research Society of America
- Optical Society of America
- Order of the Coif
- Oregon-California Trails Association
- Organization of American Historians
- Organization of American Kodaly Educators
- Organizational Development Institute
- Osnabrueck County (Germany) Family History Society

P

- Pacific Islands News Association
- Pacific Mountain Network
- Palatines to America
- Paleontological Society
- Pander Society, (Hans Christian)
- Peace and Justice Studies Association
- Percussive Arts Society
- Phi Alpha Theta
- Phi Delta Kappa

- Phi Eta Sigma
- Phi Kappa Phi
- Phi Sigma Society
- Phi Tau Sigma
- Phi Theta Kappa Honor Society
- Physicians Assistant Education Association
- Phytopathology Society of America
- Pi Delta Phi
- Pi Kappa Lambda
- Pi Mu Epsilon
- Pi Sigma Alpha
- Piano Technicians Guild, Inc.
- Planetary Sciences of the American Astronomical Society
- Plant Propagators Society
- Playwrights Circle
- Popular Culture Association
- Potato Association of America
- Poultry Science Association
- Production and Operations Management Society
- Professional and Organizational Development Network in Higher Education
- Psi Chi
- Psychology of Mathematics Education
- Public Broadcasting Service
- Public Radio News Directors Association
- Public Radio Program Directors Association
- Public Relations Society of America
- Public Relations Student Society of America
- Public Telecommunications Financial Managers Association
- Puppeteers of America

R

- Radio Television News Directors Association
- Religions Research Association
- Renaissance Society of America
- Research Libraries Group
- Research Workers in Animal Disease
- Rhetoric Society of America
- Risk and Insurance Management Society
- Rocky Mountain Association of Geologists
- Rocky Mountain Collegiate Media Association
- Rocky Mountain Council for Latin American Studies
- Rocky Mountain Mathematics Consortium
- Rocky Mountain Medieval and Renaissance Association
- Rocky Mountain Mineral Law Foundation
- Rocky Mountain Modern Language Association
- Rocky Mountain Public Radio
- Rocky Mountain Theatre Association
- Royal Asiatic Society—Korean Branch
- Royal Statistical Society
- Rural Sociological Society

S

- Saskatchewan Psychological Association
- Scholarly Publishing and Academic Resources Coalition
- School Science and Mathematics Education
- Scientific Research Society, Sigma Xi
- Scottish Genealogy Society
- Screen Actors Guild
- Screen Writers Guild
- Sigma Alpha Iota
- Sigma Pi Sigma
- Sigma Theta Tau
- Sigma Xi
- Small Business Institute Directors Association
- Small Museums Administrators Council
- Social Science History Association
- Society for American Archaeology
- Society for American Music
- Society for Applied Learning Technologies
- Society for Applied Sociology
- Society for Applied Spectroscopy
- Society for College and University Planners
- Society for Computer Simulation
- Society for Consumer Psychology
- Society for Developmental Biology
- Society for Eighteenth-Century Music
- Society for Historians of American Foreign Relations
- Society for Historians of the Early American Republic
- Society for Human Resource Management
- Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics
- Society for International Development
- Society for International Nutrition Research
- Society for Manufacturing Engineers

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Anthropology (Sociocultural Double Major) (39.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The 33-hour sociocultural major is designed to accommodate the varying interests of students from a range of other disciplines, but it is only available to students completing an additional major in another field. Its purpose is to allow students with other majors to add the perspectives that anthropology is uniquely qualified to provide.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete all requirements of a primary major. Double counting courses between primary major and anthropology will not be allowed.

2. Complete the following:

ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

ANTHR 150 : Anthropology Career Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of anthropology major and graduation requirements; preparing for senior thesis sequence; career opportunities; and graduate school application process.

ANTHR 205 : Foundations of Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas from Marx, Weber, Durkheim, and Steward studied for a secure foundation for understanding the antecedents of current theory.

ANTHR 206 : Contemporary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205.
DESCRIPTION: Important current theoretical frameworks in anthropology.

ANTHR 309 : Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

ANTHR 442 : Ethnographic Skills. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Methods, rationale, limitations, and ethical issues of participant observation, interviewing, quantitative measurement, and other procedures of ethnographic fieldwork. Local field project.

ANTHR 495 : Ethnographic Field Project. (3-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 442.
DESCRIPTION: Conduct field work, maintain field notes, and write a paper incorporating both descriptive and analytic components.

ANTHR 499R : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)

- Society for Music Theory
- Society for Neuroscience
- Society for Research in Child Development
- Society for Scholarly Publishing
- Society for Technical Communication
- Society for the Advancement of Materials and Process Engineering
- Society for the Advancement of Scandinavian Studies
- Society for the History of Children and Youth
- Society for the Preservation of Natural History Collections
- Society for the Study of Egyptian Antiquities
- Society in Adolescent Research
- Society of Actuaries
- Society of American Fight Directors
- Society of American Military Engineers
- Society of Antiquaries of Scotland
- Society of Automotive Engineers
- Society of Biblical Literature
- Society of Broadcast Engineers
- Society of Core Analysts
- Society of Dance History Scholars
- Society of Economic Geologists
- Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists
- Society of Engineering and Mineral Exploration Geophysicists
- Society of Exploration Geophysicists
- Society of Illustrators—New York Institutional Member
- Society of Manufacturing Engineers
- Society of Motion Picture and TV Engineers
- Society of Newspaper Design
- Society of Nutrition Educators
- Society of Physics Students
- Society of Phytolith Research
- Society of Professional Audio Recording Studios
- Society of Professional Journalists
- Society of Research Administrators
- Society of Sedimentary Geology
- Society of Stage Directors and Choreographers
- Society of Vertebrate Paleontology
- Society of Women Engineers
- Soil and Water Conservation Society
- Soil Science Society of America
- Sonneck Society for American Music
- Sons of Utah Pioneers
- Southern Association of Women Historians
- Southern Historical Association
- Southwest Association of Colleges and Employers
- Southwest Conference on Language Teaching
- Southwest District American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance
- Southwest Education Council for Journalism and Mass Communication
- State of Utah/Department of Commerce Division of Occupational and Professional Licensing, Utah State Board of Nursing
- Strategic Management Society
- Suburban Newspapers Association
- Systematics Association

T

- Tau Alphi Pi
- Tau Beta Pi
- Teachers of English to Speakers of Other Languages
- Technology Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology
- The Association for Women's Rights in Development
- The National Council for Research on Women
- The National Women's Studies Association
- The Society of Behavioral Medicine
- Theatre for Young Audiences/USA
- Theta Alpha Phi
- Treasury Management Association

U

- United Scenic Artists
- United States Association for Small Business and Entrepreneurship Group
- United States Department of Agriculture
- United States Department of Health and Human Services
- United States Environmental Protection Agency
- United States Forest Service
- United States Institute of Theatre Technology
- University Film and Video Association
- UNIX and Advanced Computing Systems Professional and Technical Association
- USDA Agriculture Research Service
- USDA Natural Resource and Conservation Society
- Utah Academic Libraries Consortium
- Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters
- Utah Advertising Federation
- Utah Arts Council
- Utah Association for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance

- Utah Association of Certified Public Accountants
- Utah Association of Mathematics Teacher Educators
- Utah Association of Sciences, Arts, and Letters
- Utah Broadcasters Association
- Utah California Women
- Utah Department of Agriculture and Food
- Utah Department of Transportation
- Utah Dietetic Association
- Utah Environmental Health Association
- Utah Flute Association
- Utah Foreign Language Association
- Utah Future Homemakers of America
- Utah Genealogical Association
- Utah Geological Association
- Utah Historical Society
- Utah Humanities Council
- Utah Information Technology Association
- Utah Library Association
- Utah Museums Association
- Utah Music Teachers Association
- Utah Native Plant Society
- Utah Nursery and Landscape Association
- Utah Nurses Association
- Utah Nutrition Council
- Utah Office of Museum Services
- Utah Press Association
- Utah Professionals of Student Activities
- Utah Psychological Association
- Utah Public Health Association
- Utah Recreation and Park Association
- Utah Recreation Therapy Association
- Utah School Food Service Association
- Utah State Bar Association
- Utah State Historical Association
- Utah State Historical Society
- Utah State Office of Education
- Utah Theatre Association

V

- Vocational Industrial Clubs of America

W

- W.F. Albright Institute of Archaeological Research
- Weed Science Society of America
- Western Academy of Management
- Western Alliance of Arts Administrators
- Western Agricultural Economics Association
- Western American Literature Association
- Western Association of Colleges and Employers
- Western Association of Cooperative and Work Experience Educators
- Western Association of Graduate Schools
- Western Association of Prelaw Advisors
- Western Association of Schools and Colleges
- Western Association of Women Historians
- Western College Association
- Western College Physical Education Society
- Western Conference of the Association for Asian Studies
- Western Economics Association
- Western Finance Association
- Western Governmental Research Association
- Western Historical Society
- Western History Association
- Western Institute of Nursing
- Western Interstate Commission on Higher Education
- Western Marketing Educators Association
- Western Museums Association
- Western North American Biometrics Society
- Western Political Science Association
- Western Region Collegiate Honors Council
- Western Reserve Historical Society
- Western Risk and Insurance Association
- Western Society for Research in Nursing
- Western Soil Science Society of America
- Western Weed Science Society of America
- Westfield Center for Early Keyboard Studies
- Windward Islands Research and Education Foundation
- Women in Management
- World Association for Case Method Research and Application
- World Association for Public Opinion Research
- World Future Society
- World Poultry Science
- World Rabbit Science Association
- World Trade Association

- Writers Guild of America
- Writers Guild of America West

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

BYU Administration

Church Board of Education and BYU Board of Trustees

Thomas S. Monson, *Chairman*
Henry B. Eyring, *First Vice Chairman*
Dieter F. Uchtdorf, *Second Vice Chairman*

Russell M. Nelson
M. Russell Ballard
David A. Bednar
Earl C. Tingey
Julie B. Beck
Susan W. Tanner
Roger G. Christensen, *Secretary*

Office of the Commissioner of the Church Educational System

W. Rolfe Kerr	*Commissioner—Church Educational System*
Roger G. Christensen	*Assistant to the Commissioner*

University Administrative Officers

Cecil O. Samuelson	*President*
Gerrit W. Gong	*Assistant to the President—Planning and Assessment*
Michael R. Orme	*Assistant to the President—General Counsel*
David B. Thomas	*Associate General Counsel*
Carri P. Jenkins	*Assistant to the President—University Communications*
John S. Tanner	*Academic Vice President*
James R. Rasband	*Associate Academic Vice President—Faculty*
Brent W. Webb	*Associate Academic Vice President—Research and Graduate Studies*
Jeffrey D. Keith	*Associate Academic Vice President—Undergraduate Studies*
Sandra Rogers	*International Vice President*
Erlend D. Peterson	*Associate International Vice President*
J. Kelly Flanagan	*Vice President—Information Technology and Chief Information Officer*
Kelly C. McDonald	*Assistant Information Technology Vice President*
Brian K. Evans	*Administrative Vice President and Chief Financial Officer*
Ole M. Smith	*Assistant Administrative Vice President—Physical Facilities*
Forrest L. Flake	*Assistant Administrative Vice President—Human Resource Services*
David A. Hunt	*Assistant Administrative Vice President—Student Auxiliary Services*
Richard P. White	*University Treasurer*
Janet S. Scharman	*Student Life Vice President*
Ronald K. Chapman	*Associate Student Life Vice President*
Vernon Heperi	*Dean of Students*
K. Fred Skousen	*Advancement Vice President*
John C. Lewis	*Associate Advancement Vice President—Alumni and External Relations*

Deans of Academic Units

Education, David O. McKay School of	
Dean	K. Richard Young
Associate Dean	Barbara Culatta
Associate Dean	Marie Tuttle
Engineering and Technology, Ira A. Fulton College of	
Dean	Alan R. Parkinson
Associate Dean	John Harb

Deans and Directors of Academic Support Services

Continuing Education	
Dean	Richard C. Eddy
Associate Dean	Kenneth W. Anderson
Associate Dean	Wayne J. Lott
David M. Kennedy Center	Jeffrey F. Ringer
Institutional Assessment and Analysis	
Director	Danny R. Olsen
Instructional Applications Services Director	Monte F. Shelley
Instructional Technology Center Director	Paul Hardin
Libraries	
University Librarian	Randy J. Olsen
Associate University Librarian	H. Julene Butler
Assistant University Librarian	Therrin C. Dahlin
Assistant University Librarian	Scott H. Duvall
Assistant University Librarian	Robert G. Murdoch
Research and Creative Activities, Office of	Gary Reynolds
Student Academic and Advisement Services	
Executive Director	Norman B. Finlinson
Managing Director	Raylene Hadley
Admissions Services Director	R. Kirk Strong
Enrollment Management Director	Eric S. Myers
Financial Aid/Scholarship Director	Paul R. Conrad
High School and College Relations Director	R. Kirk Strong
Integrated Student Services Director	Stephen E. Hill
Planning and Assessment Director	M. Wayne Childs
Technology Applications Director	Rick Williams
University Registrar	Jeffrey N. Bunker
Student Life	
Dean of Students	Vernon L. Heperi
Associate Dean	Jonathan K. Kau
Associate Dean	Sarah Westerberg

Chairs, Directors, or Coordinators of Instructional Units

Accountancy	Kevin D. Stocks
Aerospace Studies	Col. Gordon J. Jacobs
Ancient Scripture	Dennis L. Largey
Anthropology	David P. Crandall
Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Robert A. Russell
Biology	Keith Crandall
Business Management	Michael J. Swenson
Chemical Engineering	Richard L. Rowley
Chemistry and Biochemistry	Paul B. Farnsworth
Church History and Doctrine	Arnold K. Garr
Civil and Environmental Engineering	Steven E. Benzley
Communication Disorders	David McPherson
Communications	Edward E. Adams
Computer Science	Tony Martinez
Counseling and Career Center	Ronald K. Chapman
Counseling Psychology and Special Education	Mary Anne Prater
Dance	Lee Wakefield

Chairs or Directors of Professional Institutes and Programs

George W. Romney Institute of Public Management	Gary C. Cornia
Master of Business Administration	Craig Merrill
Peery Institute of Financial Services	Kim Smith

Coordinators or Directors of Academic Areas

Bachelor of General Studies Director	Ellen R. Allred
Center for Language Studies	Ray T. Clifford
Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies Director	James R. Kearl
BYU—Salt Lake Center for Continuing Education Director	Lee J. Glines
CES Adult Programs Director	R. Neil Carlile
CES Youth Programs Director	Gregory M. Tanner
BYU Conference Center	Spencer E. Hansen
Conferences and Workshops Director	Steven W. Taggart
Evening Classes Director	Scott L. Howell
Independent Study Director	R. Dwight Laws

Advisement Center Personnel

Engineering and Technology	Pam Williamson
Family, Home, and Social Sciences	Lori L. Seely
Fine Arts and Communications	Brenda Butterfield
Health and Human Performance	Farris Child
Humanities	Mary Anne Rich
International and Area Studies	Noelani Sanchez
Life Sciences	Marla Allred
Marriott School of Management	Eldon Bott
McKay School of Education	Linda D. Parker
Nursing	Mark E. White
Physical and Mathematical Sciences	Shane Jorgenson
University	Karen Evans

Research Centers and Institutes

Advanced Combustion Engineering Research Center	Thomas H. Fletcher
Monte L. Bean Life Science Museum	
Director	Larry St. Clair
Associate Director	Jack Sites
Assistant Director	Marta Jean Adair
Cancer Research Center	Daniel L. Simmons
Center for Christian Values in Literature	Jesse S. Crisler
Associate Director	Daniel Muhlestein
Center for Economic Self-Reliance	Todd Manwaring
Center for Entrepreneurship	William Price
Center for the Improvement of Teacher Education and Schooling	Steven Baugh
Center for Service and Learning	
Director	Casey Peterson
Center for Statistical Research	Dennis L. Eggett
Center for Teaching and Learning	Russell T. Osguthorpe
Communications Research Center	Mark Callister
Comprehensive Clinic	Judith Norman

Other Areas of Service

Academic Support	Norman L. Roberts
Benefits	R. Berrey Parker
Bookstore	Roger L. Reynolds
Counseling and Career Center	Ronald K. Chapman
Dining Services	Dean A. Wright
Employee Relations	R. Scott Elkins
Employment Services	Don J. Brown
Faculty Center	David A. Whetten
Honor Code Office	Steven Baker
ID Center	Nancy Carson
Intercollegiate Athletics	Thomas A. Holmoe
International Services	Enoc Flores
Multicultural Student Services	Lisa Muranaka
Payroll Manager	
Planning and Architecture	Warren Jones
Publications and Graphics	Norman A. Darais
Residence Life	Julie L. Franklin
Services for Students with Disabilities	Mark Beecher
Student Activities	Anne Rumsey
Student Health Services	Rulon J. Barlow
University Police	Larry A. Stott
Women's Services and Resources	LaNae Valentine

Chairs and Professorships

Some faculty members hold appointments at the university that are partially or fully supported through the generosity of private donors. These professorships recognize and support important scholarly contributions by the recipients in the various disciplines of the university. Chairs and professorships for faculty members within disciplines are noted in the departmental listing of faculty.

Maeser Professorships and Alcuin Fellows

Brigham Young University also encourages strong commitment by its faculty to undergraduate teaching, particularly in the university's general education program. The Karl G. Maeser Professorships, named for the spiritual architect of Brigham Young Academy and established in 1987, acknowledge truly outstanding efforts in the development and teaching of general education and honors courses balanced with serious and committed scholarship.

Alcuin Fellowships, established in 1986 and named for the founder of the court schools during the Carolingian renaissance of Charlemagne, acknowledge outstanding and innovative efforts in working with students within the university's general education and honors curriculum.

Karl G. Maeser Professors

College of Engineering and Technology

A. Brent Strong, *Technology*

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Cardell K. Jacobson, *Sociology*

College of Humanities

Ilona Klein, *French and Italian*
Bruce W. Young, *English*

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences

J. Ward Moody, *Physics and Astronomy*

Alcuin Fellows

College of Life Sciences

Roy W. Silcox, *Physiology and Developmental Biology*

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology

Ronald E. Terry, *Chemical Engineering*

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Larry J. Nelson, *Family Life*
Jenny H. Pulsipher, *History*

College of Fine Arts and Communications

Jaren S. Hinckley, *Music*
Steven P. Johnson, *Music*
Darl Larsen, *Theatre and Media Arts*

College of Health and Human Performance

Susanne J. Davis, *Dance*

College of Humanities

Trenton L. Hickman, *English*
Jesse D. Hurlbut, *French and Italian*
Alan F. Keele, *Germanic and Slavic Languages*
Brett C. McInelly, *English*
J. Scott Miller, *Asian and Near Eastern Languages*
Kerry D. Soper, *Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature*

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences

Juliana Boerio-Goates, *Chemistry and Biochemistry*

Religious Education

Victor L. Ludlow, *Ancient Scripture*

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Statement of Nondiscrimination

Admission to Brigham Young University is nondiscriminatory. The university admits persons regardless of race, color, national origin, religion, age, gender, veteran status, or disability who meet university and department academic requirements and agree to abide by the university's standards of conduct and behavior.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Reservation of Right to Change Courses

The university makes every reasonable effort to provide accurate information in the contents of this catalog but reserves the right to make changes at any time without prior notice. The university reserves the right to change or discontinue graduation requirements, department majors, individual courses, instructors, and all other aspects of university operations. In the event the university determines to make changes in curriculum, it will post these changes as soon as practical within this online catalog. It is recommended that students regularly check this catalog for possible changes.

If colleges or majors are discontinued, or if substantial changes in requirements for degrees are made, the university will endeavor to allow students disadvantaged by the change to continue under existing programs and requirements. As a general rule, these types of substantial changes will only be made effective each fall semester.

The university may place a hold on a student's registration privileges if the student neglects academic work or makes unsatisfactory progress toward graduation.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 422, 495 (for sociocultural); 205, 206, 215, 454R, 455R, 456R (for archaeology).
DESCRIPTION: Supervised analysis and write-up of data generated during field project.

3. Complete 6 hours from the following:

ANTHR 317 : Native Peoples of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Indian groups at the time of the European arrival; social organization, beliefs, values, economy, and adaptation to environment.

ANTHR 320 : Anthropology of Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Europe's role in the anthropological imagination; ethnographies of contemporary European populations; themes: nationalism/postnationalism/transnationalism; postsocialism, postcolonialism, immigration; ethnic identity and cultural politics; the commodification of culture. Regional emphasis may vary.

ANTHR 326 : Central American Society. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

ANTHR 330 : Peoples of Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and social organization, family life, language, worldview, religion, ritual, artistic expression, ecological adaptation, and contemporary development issues among rural and urban sub-Saharan peoples.

ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

ANTHR 343 : Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

ANTHR 345 : American Culture. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Unity and diversity in U.S. life. Social/cultural change processes illustrated and analyzed. Anthropological study of complex cultures. Seminar-type course involves substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ANTHR 346 : Anthropology of Mormonism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of Mormon society and culture using a range of anthropological perspectives.

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 439 : Psychological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: The relationship between culture and mind. Examines whether the concept of the person varies cross-culturally, how emotions may differ in different societies, the psychological implications of cultural approaches to childrearing.

ANTHR 443 : Quantitative Ethnographic Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Using quantitative tools to analyze qualitative data.

4. Complete 6 hours from the following:

ANTHR 402 : Quantitative Methods for Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods in archaeology and sociocultural anthropology, including methods of organizing, exploring, and presenting data, probability, and statistical inference.

ANTHR 430 : Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

DESCRIPTION: Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

ANTHR 431 : The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

ANTHR 434 : Medical Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years; W even years.
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Interactions between culture and health in comparative perspective, emphasizing social, historical, and ecological determinants.

ANTHR 436 : Symbolic Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social use and understanding of semiotics, signs, symbols, and other meaningful forms as critically constitutive of culture.

ANTHR 437 : Man, Women, and the Culture of Gender. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Gender roles across culture relative to health, ethnicity, economic development, kinship, war, etc.

ANTHR 441 : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

ANTHR 450 : Anthropology of Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101, 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological theories of and qualitative research in child rearing, enculturation, cognition, informal education, schools, literacy, multicultural and multilingual education, and cultural transmission and acquisition.

ANTHR 490R : Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 511 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
DESCRIPTION: Museums in society. Cultural foundations of museum content and sociology of museum use. Analyzing museum studies literature with on-site visits to area museums.

5. Complete an additional 3 hours from sections 3 or 4 above.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Anthropology Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in African Studies (18–21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The African Studies minor is designed to complement several majors. The minor features language competence, with options in several languages used in Africa, as well as courses in history and social sciences. Several options are available, and students interested in this minor are encouraged to consult with one of the coordinators of the program to find the best options to apply to their major.

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following tracks:

Language Track

a. French

FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

b. Swahili

FLANG 101R : First-Year Language Study: Swahili. (4:5:1)
First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary building, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, and writing.
FLANG 102R : First-Year Language Study: Swahili. (4:5:1)
First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
PREREQUISITE: FLang 101R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, writing, and culture.
FLANG 201R : Second-Year Language Study: Swahili. (4:5:1)
Second-Year Language Study: Swahili.
PREREQUISITE: FLang 102R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills.

c. Afrikaans

AFRIK 101 : First-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

AFRIK 102 : First-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

AFRIK 201 : Second-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Afrik 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

d. A combination of French, Swahili, Afrikaans, upper-division Portuguese, or other language component as approved by the program coordinator. (The coordinator is Professor Chantal Thompson.)

Fieldwork Track

a. Complete 3 hours from the following:

IAS 360R : International Field Study Preparation. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cross-cultural field research and survival with a regional emphasis and application.
NOTE: For students preparing for International Field Studies and Internships or Study Abroad programs.

b. Complete 4 hours from the following:

IAS 397R : Topics in International and Area Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study relating to current world problems.

c. Complete the following:

IAS 361 : Post-Fieldwork Analysis and Writing. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: IAS 360R.
DESCRIPTION: Writing course designed to help students write a quality research paper

2. Complete three courses from the following social science component (a maximum of two courses per discipline; some of these courses may be offered only once every other year):

ANTHR 330 : Peoples of Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and social organization, family life, language, worldview, religion, ritual, artistic expression, ecological adaptation, and contemporary development issues among rural and urban sub-Saharan peoples.

EDLF 362 : Introduction to Comparative and International Development Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods, major concepts, and current trends in comparative and international development education; role of education in promoting national development.

ENGL 358R : African American Literature. (3:3:0)
African American Literature.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

IAS 397R : Topics in International and Area Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study relating to current world problems.

PL SC 352 : African Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes of change and development of nation states; African regionalism and relations with other nations; contemporary political issues.

Other courses may or may not be applicable, depending on the amount of African content therein. Approval of the program coordinator, therefore, is required. Courses that may contain significant African content at times include the following:

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 430 : Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

ANTHR 431 : The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

ANTHR 490R : Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

GEOG 493R : Special Problems. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geography major or departmental approval.

HIST 390R : Special Topics in History. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Presented by visiting or regular faculty. Varied topics include oral history, demographics, psychohistory, Christianity in history, etc.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Anthropology Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Minor in Anthropology (16 hours)

Program Requirements

Complete 16 hours of department courses, with no more than two courses in addition to Anthr 108R from lower-division course offerings.

Show all Anthropology Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Anthropology (Anthr)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ANTHR 101 : Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Social/Cultural Anthropology.

ANTHR 103 : Archaeology Field Trip. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block.
DESCRIPTION: Archaeology field trip to Four Corners.
NOTE: Meet weekly prior to trip. Students responsible for food and camping costs. Limited enrollment

ANTHR 108R : Anthropological Films. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Examination of other cultures through ethnographic or archaeological film.
NOTE: Can be taken separately or concurrently with Anthr 101 or 110.

ANTHR 110 : Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.

: Honors Introduction to Archaeology.

ANTHR 150 : Anthropology Career Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of anthropology major and graduation requirements; preparing for senior thesis sequence; career opportunities; and graduate school application process.

200-Level Courses

ANTHR 205 : Foundations of Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101.
DESCRIPTION: Ideas from Marx, Weber, Durkheim, and Steward studied for a secure foundation for understanding the antecedents of current theory.

ANTHR 206 : Contemporary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205.
DESCRIPTION: Important current theoretical frameworks in anthropology.

ANTHR 207 : Experiments In Ancient Technology. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F odd yr.
DESCRIPTION: Processes by which tools and other objects were produced anciently; experimental reproduction and use of ancient tools.

ANTHR 215 : Introduction to Archaeology: Method and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Field and analytic methods and their relevance to data acquisition; use of theory and the relation of theory to methods.

ANTHR 247 : Applied Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological principles and methods applied to business, education communication, development projects, and health sciences.

300-Level Courses

ANTHR 300 : Biological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Relationships between human biology, environment, social structure, and culture. Concepts and data on race, primates, evolution, population genetics, growth, and sociobiology.

ANTHR 301 : Human Osteology. (2:1:2)

DESCRIPTION: Identification and treatment of skeletal material found in archaeological excavations.

ANTHR 309 : Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

ANTHR 311 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Role of museums in society. Analyzing museum content, use, and sociology. On-site visits to area museums

ANTHR 312 : Intercultural Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W Independent Study only.
DESCRIPTION: Communication processes as affected by proxemic, kinesic, linguistic, social, institutional, worldview, and value differences and other aspects of culture. Seminar/workshop: theory, research methods, applications.

ANTHR 314 : Museum Registration and Legal/Ethical Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311.
DESCRIPTION: Managing museum collections: cataloging, loans, ethics, legal issues, object handling, basic object conservation. Practical experience working with museum objects.

ANTHR 317 : Native Peoples of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Indian groups at the time of the European arrival; social organization, beliefs, values, economy, and adaptation to environment.

ANTHR 320 : Anthropology of Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Europe's role in the anthropological imagination; ethnographies of contemporary European populations; themes: nationalism/postnationalism/transnationalism; postsocialism, postcolonialism, immigration; ethnic identity and cultural politics; the commodification of culture. Regional emphasis may vary.

ANTHR 326 : Central American Society. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

ANTHR 330 : Peoples of Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and social organization, family life, language, worldview, religion, ritual, artistic expression, ecological adaptation, and contemporary development issues among rural and urban sub-Saharan peoples.

ANTHR 335 : Peoples of India. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Society and culture on Indian subcontinent. Stratification, kinship, marriage, religion, politics, economics.

ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

ANTHR 343 : Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

ANTHR 345 : American Culture. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Unity and diversity in U.S. life. Social/cultural change processes illustrated and analyzed. Anthropological study of complex cultures. Seminar-type course involves substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ANTHR 346 : Anthropology of Mormonism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Intensive analysis of Mormon society and culture using a range of anthropological perspectives.

ANTHR 348 : Contemporary Japan. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Using movies and popular media to examine the social structures and family life dynamics of contemporary Japan.

ANTHR 350 : Archaeological Cultures of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural developments of North American Indians (Canada, U.S., and northern Mexico) before Columbus.

ANTHR 351 : Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

ANTHR 355 : Mesoamerican Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Cultural-environment bases of ancient civilizations in Mexico and Central America. Olmec, Maya, Toltec, and Aztec cultures.

ANTHR 378 : Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500--500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ANTHR 385 : Ancient Peoples and Cultures of Europe: The Origins of European Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

ANTHR 390R : Special Topics In Regional Anthropology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to a particular area or people.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

400-Level Courses

ANTHR 402 : Quantitative Methods for Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods in archaeology and sociocultural anthropology, including methods of organizing, exploring, and presenting data, probability, and statistical inference.

ANTHR 412 : Museum Collections Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Instruction and practice in aspects of managing museum collections: writing catalogs, processing donations, preserving objects.

ANTHR 414 : Museum Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 311, 314.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience in a museum working with exhibitions, public programs, or research.

ANTHR 430 : Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

ANTHR 431 : The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

ANTHR 434 : Medical Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years; W even years.
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Interactions between culture and health in comparative perspective, emphasizing social, historical, and ecological determinants.

ANTHR 436 : Symbolic Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social use and understanding of semiotics, signs, symbols, and other meaningful forms as critically constitutive of culture.

ANTHR 437 : Man, Women, and the Culture of Gender. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 247.
DESCRIPTION: Gender roles across culture relative to health, ethnicity, economic development, kinship, war, etc.

ANTHR 439 : Psychological Anthropology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: The relationship between culture and mind. Examines whether the concept of the person varies cross-culturally, how emotions may differ in different societies, the psychological implications of cultural approaches to childrearing.

ANTHR 441 : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

ANTHR 442 : Ethnographic Skills. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Methods, rationale, limitations, and ethical issues of participant observation, interviewing, quantitative measurement, and other procedures of ethnographic fieldwork. Local field project.

ANTHR 443 : Quantitative Ethnographic Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Using quantitative tools to analyze qualitative data.

ANTHR 450 : Anthropology of Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 101, 205, 206.
DESCRIPTION: Anthropological theories of and qualitative research in child rearing, enculturation, cognition, informal education, schools, literacy, multicultural and multilingual education, and cultural transmission and acquisition.

ANTHR 454R : Field School Preparation. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: major status.

ANTHR 455R : Field School of Archaeology. (.5-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 454R; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Training and experience in excavation at a BYU-sponsored dig.

ANTHR 456R : Lab Skills for Anthropology. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 455R; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Analytical and laboratory techniques as part of a BYU-sponsored archaeological project.

ANTHR 490R : Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems.
NOTE: Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

ANTHR 495 : Ethnographic Field Project. (3-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 442.
DESCRIPTION: Conduct field work, maintain field notes, and write a paper incorporating both descriptive and analytic components.

ANTHR 496R : Academic Internship: Research. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Supervising instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Field or library research.

ANTHR 497 : Directed Readings. (3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: major status; supervising instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading 2,500 pages on a stated topic.

ANTHR 499R : Senior Thesis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 205, 206, 422, 495 (for sociocultural); 205, 206, 215, 454R, 455R, 456R (for archaeology).
DESCRIPTION: Supervised analysis and write-up of data generated during field project.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ANTHR 500 : History of Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the graduate program.
DESCRIPTION: Historical approach to development of archaeological knowledge, method, and theory, emphasizing North America and individual contributions.

ANTHR 501 : Current Archaeological Method and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the graduate program.
RECOMMENDED: Anthr 500.
DESCRIPTION: Major developments in archaeological method and theory, emphasizing current perspectives.

ANTHR 502 : Quantitative Methods for Anthropology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
DESCRIPTION: Methods of organizing, exploring, and presenting data, probability, and statistical inference.

ANTHR 511 : Museums and Cultures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years
DESCRIPTION: Museums in society. Cultural foundations of museum content and sociology of museum use. Analyzing museum studies literature with on-site visits to area museums.

ANTHR 512 : Heritage Resource Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into graduate program in archaeology or certificate program in museum practices.
DESCRIPTION: Legal and ethical issues for practicing archaeologists. Preservation law, collections law, public archaeology, Native American issues, and careers in archaeology and museums.

ANTHR 522 : Museum Practices and Technologies. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F odd years
DESCRIPTION: Core museum disciplines: collections management, curation, education, exhibition, and conservation. Supporting technologies: database, digital photography, Web design, etc. Career paths.

ANTHR 524 : Museology: Curation and Writing. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F even years
PREREQUISITE: Admission to certificate in museum practices program.
DESCRIPTION: Professional practices supporting the educational, research, and reporting functions of museums, emphasizing museum writing leading to publication, cataloguing, policy writing, exhibition conceptualization, etc.

ANTHR 525 : Museum Registration and Collections Management. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Managing anthropological collections: object-handling, object-tracking, accessioning, deaccessioning, collections databases, loans, valuating collections, conservation environments, ethics, and NAGPRA and other laws relating to museums.

ANTHR 526 : Museum Exhibitions and Programming. (3:1:8)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Admission to certificate in museum practices program; Anthr 524.
DESCRIPTION: Instruction and practica in all aspects of exhibition development. Current thought and literature in museum education with practica for application.

ANTHR 530 : Great Basin Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years

ANTHR 535 : Southwest Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography and prehistory of American Southwest. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ANTHR 562 : Formative Mesoamerica. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues concerning beginnings and development of Mesoamerican civilizations. Mexican and Mayan antecedents of classic Mayan civilization and culture.

ANTHR 564 : Classic Mayan Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues concerning archaeological and cultural aspects of classic Mayan civilization and society.

ANTHR 565 : Mayan Ceramic Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Current approaches to classification and analysis of archaeological ceramics, particularly Maya Lowland pottery. Laboratory study of actual pottery collections from the Maya area.

ANTHR 566 : Mayan Ethnohistory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and issues of cultural change, colonization, and documentation of change processes in the Mayan region, from postclassic period and independence from Spain.

ANTHR 580 : Near East Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Current issues in Near Eastern archaeological research.
NOTE: Undergraduate BYU anthropology students may enroll for the following courses if they have completed 30 hours in their major.

ANTHR 590R : Special Topics. (3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in archaeology or museum studies.

ANTHR 596 : Museum Projects. (3:0:8)
OFFERED: Sp odd years
PREREQUISITE: Admission to certificate in museum practices program; Anthr 524, 526.
DESCRIPTION: One or more supervised museum projects, such as producing an exhibition, developing educational materials, conducting inventory, or accessioning collections.

ANTHR 599R : Academic Internship: Federal Agency on Museum/Collections Repository. (1-6:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Prior approval; completion of all course work for certificate in museum practices (may be taken concurrently with Anthr 596).
DESCRIPTION: Earning credit while employed in federal agency archaeology (BLM, U.S. Forest Service, etc.); or 320 hours in collections-holding institution (sixteen weeks half-time; eight weeks full-time).

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Anthropology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Anthropology Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Clark, John Edward
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, University of Michigan, 1994

Forsyth, Donald W
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1979

Hawkins, John P
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
AM, University of Chicago, 1972
PhD, University of Chicago, 1978

Janetski, Joel C
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, University of Utah, 1977
PhD, University of Utah, 1983

Nuckolls, Charles W.
COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Chicago, 1987

Associate Professors

Crandall, David P

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
M Phil, Oxford University, England, 1989
D Phil, Oxford University, England, 1993

Johnson, David J

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1972
MA, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, University of Utah, 1986

Assistant Professors

Allison, James

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Arizona State University, 2000

Finlayson, Cynthia S.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, George Washington University, 1974
MA, George Washington University, Washington, D.C., 1984
PhD, University of Iowa, 1998

Hartley, Julie R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Anthropology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Utah State University, 1994
PhD, Columbia University, 2002

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Asian and Near Eastern Languages

Robert A. Russell, Chair
3064C JFSB, (801) 422-6405

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages are open enrollment. Some special limitations apply for teaching minors.

The Discipline

The many countries of Asia and the Near East are among the oldest civilizations in the world. The study of the languages and cultures of these nations gives students access to some of the richest and most varied traditions of thought, belief, and behavior to be found in the world. A large percentage of the vast, essentially non-Christian segment of the world's population resides in these two zones: Asia—with its diverse heritage of belief in Hinduism, Buddhism, Taoism, Confucianism, and other systems of thought—continues to retain its "exotic" image for most Westerners, even though many nations in the region are at the forefront of contemporary politics and economics. The Near East, birthplace of Christianity, Judaism, and Islam, remains a little-understood, often stereotyped area of considerable economic, strategic, and religious importance today.

The languages of these regions are themselves generally difficult, with complex writing systems that require diligent study. But exposure to these languages and the cultures they express will enable students to look at the world from new perspectives and deepen their understanding of peoples whose history and practices are widely divergent from their own.

Courses in the department equip students with verbal and written facility in the languages of their chosen area, whereas linguistics courses offer an understanding of how the languages are structured and acquired. A study of the literature reveals old and sophisticated traditions no less important than that of English or any other major language.

Majors are available in Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. Students can obtain a minor in Arabic and Hebrew. Each major discipline is briefly described below.

Chinese (Cantonese and Mandarin)

The study of Chinese accesses the literature, thought, culture, and society of the world's largest population with the longest cultural continuum; moreover, since the civilizations of Japan, Korea, and Vietnam are founded on traditional Chinese Confucianism, a major in Chinese opens up much of the wider world of modern Asia. You will communicate in spoken and written Mandarin, gain skills in analyzing and appreciating both traditional and modern literature, acquire effective research strategies, and learn to write clearly and persuasively. All the personal enrichment and interpersonal understanding that results from a liberal arts education in the humanities is offered through the study of Chinese.

Japanese

The study of Japanese at the university level will provide students with advanced language skills and a greater understanding of Japan and its people. Although Japan's growing influence is widely recognized, the rich cultural heritage of Japan in literature, thought, painting, music, and the other arts is not as well known. The study of Japanese language and literature will introduce students to many of the major aspects of that heritage while providing the kind of training in language and cultural skills that will prepare students to undertake careers in a wide variety of fields.

Korean

Korean is a difficult language, and at BYU we emphasize reading and writing the language as well as speaking and listening. Basic course work emphasizes linguistic skill and the language's literary value and tradition.

Note: Instruction is also regularly available in Hebrew and Arabic.

Career Opportunities

Students who major or minor in the languages and cultures of Asia and the Near East will find that, as will any other humanities-centered course of study, they have been well provided with tools to communicate both in the target language and in English and have broadened and deepened their knowledge of the region of their choice. Career options are many and varied for

such students, but those who do not plan to continue on in the academic study of the language are strongly urged to consider a second major or a strong minor in a practical field that can be combined with their language skills. In the competitive world of today, language ability alone no longer provides the competitive advantage it once offered on the job market. Students are urged to consult the College of Humanities Advisement Center, Career Placement Services, and their academic advisors for the best ways to make use of their language as they begin to seek employment.

Chinese

Chinese majors have all of the advantages of the liberal arts graduate (who claims effective communication and interpersonal skills) with the added edge of knowing the language and culture behind a leading world economy. Therefore, graduates enter the work force in a wide variety of occupations, such as journalism, insurance, business, travel, investment, and government service. They not only are marketable as trained linguists, translators, and cultural advisors, but are vigorously recruited as personnel managers and business representatives by companies with overseas interests. Graduates are also highly competitive in applying to professional schools for medicine, dentistry, law, and business.

Japanese

In recent years, graduates from the Japanese major at BYU have gone on to law, engineering, computer, or MBA programs, while others have continued on to medical school. A few have pursued graduate work in a variety of academic fields at some of the most prestigious universities in the country. Others have gone directly to work in government service, in the military, and in American or Japanese business firms where their language ability and cultural background are in high demand.

Korean

Most of the jobs available for students with a Korean major are in government (NSA, CIA, FBI), etc., but Korean majors also have all the advantages of a liberal arts degree. Many of our graduates go on to professional schools, law, business, or medicine. Korean is an excellent complement, either as a major or minor, to studies in prelaw, political science, accounting, English, international relations, and many other majors available on campus. Korean is an important language in the world of diplomacy and defense, as well as the world of international business. (Korea is the eighth largest trading partner of the U.S.) Our graduates have been hired by the U.S. government and by U.S., international, and Korean businesses. They work in technical areas as well, involving everything from computers to broadcasting to medicine.

General Information

The Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA in Chinese
BA in Japanese
BA in Korean

Minor in Arabic
Minor in Chinese
Minor in Chinese Teaching
Minor in Hebrew
Minor in Japanese
Minor in Japanese Teaching
Minor in Korean

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Language Acquisition and Teaching (Arabic, Chinese, Japanese, or Korean)

For more information see the BYU 2007–2008 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Language Credit by Examination

Credit by examination is available for many lower-division courses of the above-listed languages. Enrollment in an advanced class is prerequisite to taking the examination.

The following languages are not taught on a regular basis but may be offered if sufficient demand exists. Credit by examination is available for some of the Near Eastern languages listed below.

Akkadian
Aramaic
Egyptian
Persian (Farsi)
Syriac
Turkish
Ugaritic

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Arabic (18–35 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

ARAB 101 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic skills of spoken and written Arabic.
NOTE: Suggested first class for students learning Arabic.

ARAB 102 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 101.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester Arabic. Basic language skills, both spoken and written.

ARAB 201 : Second-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Significantly expanding proficiency in Modern Standard Arabic and increasing conversational repertoire.

ARAB 202 : Intermediate Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 201 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Arab 201.

2. Complete the following (normally as part of a BYU Semester Abroad program):

ARAB 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate spoken Arabic.

ARAB 300 : Advanced Modern Standard Arabic. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced work in reading, writing, listening, speaking.

ARAB 302 : Newspaper Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 300.
DESCRIPTION: Extensive reading of Arabic newspapers and magazines, with appropriate vocabulary building.

ARAB 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202, 211R, or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversation skills.

And one additional Arabic language course.

3. Complete the following:

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Arabic Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Arabic (Arab)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ARAB 100 : Introduction to Arabic. (1:1.5:0)
DESCRIPTION: Beginning Arabic
NOTE: Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

ARAB 101 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic skills of spoken and written Arabic.
NOTE: Suggested first class for students learning Arabic.

ARAB 102 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 101.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester Arabic. Basic language skills, both spoken and written.

200-Level Courses

ARAB 201 : Second-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Significantly expanding proficiency in Modern Standard Arabic and increasing conversational repertoire.

ARAB 202 : Intermediate Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 201 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Arab 201.

ARAB 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate spoken Arabic.

ARAB 221R : Standard Arabic Tutorial. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on dem.
DESCRIPTION: Readings, listening and writing activities, and discussion in Arabic designed to maintain vocabulary and fluency while waiting for study abroad.

ARAB 222R : Spoken Arabic Tutorial. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Conversation with a native speaker; movies, plays, and other written sources of colloquial Arabic.

ARAB 223R : Arabic Grammar Review. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Tutorial review of first- and second-year Arabic grammar, with readings and other activities that illustrate the principles discussed.

300-Level Courses

ARAB 300 : Advanced Modern Standard Arabic. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced work in reading, writing, listening, speaking.

ARAB 302 : Newspaper Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 300.
DESCRIPTION: Extensive reading of Arabic newspapers and magazines, with appropriate vocabulary building.

ARAB 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202, 211R, or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversation skills.

ARAB 331 : Spoken Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.

ARAB 361 : Introduction to Modern Arabic Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussion of representative sample of modern Arabic short stories, novels, plays, and poetry. All readings in English.

ARAB 362 : Introduction to Medieval Arabic Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussion of representative sample of medieval Arabic literature. All readings in English.

ARAB 377 : Arabic Language Teaching Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Language acquisition theories and instructional practices specific to Arabic language classrooms at various levels. Lectures, demonstrations, microteaching.

400-Level Courses

ARAB 421R : Fourth-Year Arabic Writing Tutorial. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, On demand
DESCRIPTION: Essay and letter writing in Arabic.

ARAB 422R : Advanced Spoken Arabic. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Movies, plays, and other texts in spoken Arabic.

ARAB 423R : Current Events in Arabic. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand
DESCRIPTION: Current events from online oral and written news sources, including high-level discussions of causes and context with written analyses and oral presentations.

ARAB 424R : Modern Arabic Literature. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Arabic literature.

ARAB 425R : Classical Arabic Texts. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Quran, Hadith, Sira, Adab.

ARAB 426R : Advanced Arabic Grammar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, On demand.
DESCRIPTION: The morphology and syntax of modern Arabic, including advanced vocabulary study.

ARAB 490R : Independent Readings. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Independent readings of Arabic materials.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ARAB 531R : Advanced Topics in Arabic. (.5-3:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in Arabic language and literature.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2007–2008 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Chinese (41–53 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

CHIN 101 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

CHIN 102 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chin 101.

CHIN 201 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

2. Complete the following:

CHIN 202 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

CHIN 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

CHIN 322 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

CHIN 495 : Senior Seminar for Majors. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced knowledge of Chinese.
DESCRIPTION: Research methods in Chinese language sources. Paper required.

3. Complete one course from the following:

CHIN 343 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 344 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

4. Complete one course from the following:

CHIN 325 : Structure of Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Sound, syntax, meaning, and word structure of Mandarin Chinese and its implications to problems of learning Chinese.

CHIN 326 : Introduction to Chinese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Dialectology, phonology, syntax, semantics, discourse, morphology, and sociolinguistics.

5. Complete three courses from the following:

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 442 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

6. Complete six additional hours required from upper-division Chinese. It is mandatory that students consult with their advisor to determine supporting courses appropriate to professional goals.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chinese—Mandarin (Chin) Courses

Show all Chinese—Cantonese (Cant) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Chinese (22–39 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):
   CHIN 101 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

   CHIN 102 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chin 101.

   CHIN 201 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

   CHIN 202 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

2. Complete the following:
   CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
   DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

   CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
   DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

   CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
   DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

   CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
   DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   CHIN 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

CHIN 322 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

5. Complete one course from the following:
CHIN 343 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 344 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

6. Complete one additional class above 301.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chinese—Mandarin (Chin) Courses

Show all Chinese—Cantonese (Cant) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Chinese Teaching (26–42 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

CHIN 101 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

CHIN 102 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chin 101.

CHIN 201 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

CHIN 202 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

2. Complete the following:

CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

CHIN 326 : Introduction to Chinese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Dialectology, phonology, syntax, semantics, discourse, morphology, and sociolinguistics.

CHIN 377 : Chinese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching Chinese as a foreign language. Conducted in Chinese and English.

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

3. Complete one course from the following:

CHIN 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

CHIN 322 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

4. Complete one course from the following:
CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

5. Complete one course from the following:
HIST 339R : Topics in Modern Near Eastern History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Closer examination of the history of appropriate delimited topic than possible in general survey course. Topics may include modern Islamic movements, modern Egypt, or modern North Africa.

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chinese—Mandarin (Chin) Courses

Show all Chinese—Cantonese (Cant) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Chinese—Mandarin (Chin)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CHIN 101 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

CHIN 102 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chin 101.

CHIN 112 : Beginning Chinese Reading. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Equivalent of one year spoken Mandarin skills.
DESCRIPTION: Chinese writing system, reading, and basic composition using Chinese characters.

200-Level Courses

CHIN 200R : Chinese Calligraphy. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Training in the art of writing Chinese characters with a brush.

CHIN 201 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

CHIN 202 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

CHIN 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on fluency and vocabulary building.

300-Level Courses

CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

CHIN 311R : Advanced Conversation. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on sophisication of speech.

CHIN 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

CHIN 322 : Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 302.

CHIN 325 : Structure of Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Sound, syntax, meaning, and word structure of Mandarin Chinese and its implications to problems of learning Chinese.

CHIN 326 : Introduction to Chinese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Dialectology, phonology, syntax, semantics, discourse, morphology, and sociolinguistics.

CHIN 327 : Chinese Translation and Interpretation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Translation techniques, with practice in oral and written translation either from Chinese to English or from English to Chinese.

CHIN 343 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 344 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 345R : Chinese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Chinese culture.

CHIN 346 : Introduction to Chinese Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to native Chinese philosophies of Confucianism and Taoism. Readings in translation of *Lun-yu, Meng-tsu, Lao-tzu,* and *Chuang-tzu.* Themes include self, society, and cosmos.

CHIN 347 : Business Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to terminology and format of business communication in Chinese, emphasizing both reading and writing of various forms of business communication.

CHIN 377 : Chinese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching Chinese as a foreign language. Conducted in Chinese and English.

CHIN 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

400-Level Courses

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 442 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 445R : Chinese Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chin 343, 441.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Chinese poetry. Topics vary from classical and modern poetry. Various themes and genres introduced, emphasizing shi poetry. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 490R : Individual Study in Chinese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Project approval by instructor.
DESCRIPTION: Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

CHIN 495 : Senior Seminar for Majors. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

CHIN 495R : Senior Seminar for Majors. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced knowledge of Chinese.
DESCRIPTION: Research methods in Chinese language sources. Paper required.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CHIN 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Coordinator's and department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Chinese—Cantonese (Cant)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CANT 101 : First-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

CANT 102 : First-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

CANT 201 : Second-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Cant 102 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Grammatical patterns and vocabulary of spoken and written Cantonese.

CANT 202 : Second-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Cant 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate to advanced skills in reading, writing, listening, and speaking.

CANT 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Cant 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Hebrew (18–28 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following prerequisite options (or equivalents):

Modern Hebrew track:

a. Complete the following:

HEB 101 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

HEB 102 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

b. Complete one course from the following:

HEB 132 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

Ancient Hebrew track:

a. Complete one course from the following:

HEB 131 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

HEB 133 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 301.

b. Complete one course from the following:

HEB 132 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

c. Complete the following:

HEB 102 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp

DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

Note: Students should complete Heb 131/133 and Heb 132/134 *before* Heb 102.

2. Complete the following:
   HEB 201 : Second-Year Modern Hebrew. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 102 or equivalent.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   HEB 313 : Readings in the Old Testament. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in the Old Testament in Hebrew.
   NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

   HEB 331 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 1. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 132, 201, or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and vocabulary building through reading historical and prophetic books.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   HEB 421 : Readings in the Hebrew Translation of the New Testament. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in the New Testament in Hebrew translation.
   NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Hebrew 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

   HEB 431 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 2. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in the poetic and wisdom literature.

5. Complete one course from the following:
   HEB 202 : Intermediate Readings. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 201 or equivalent.

   HEB 312 : Hebrew Media. (4:4:4)
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 101, 102.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes reading, aural comprehension, and speaking Hebrew. Includes newspaper reading, listening to local news on radio and television, and in-class discussion of current events.
   NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter programs only.

6. Complete four hours from the following:
   ANES 363 : Hebrew Bible Studies. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W odd years.
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
   DESCRIPTION: Current analytical methods used in academic study and interpretation of the Hebrew Bible.

   HEB 311R : Intermediate Conversation. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 201.

   HEB 411R : Advanced Conversation. (4:4:4)
   PREREQUISITE: Heb 311R or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes conversation in everyday situations. Students role play various situations in class and then apply their learning in Jerusalem.
   NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411 (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

   HEB 432R : Ancient Hebrew Texts. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.

HEB 441 : Postbiblical Hebrew: Mishnah. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the grammar of Mishnaic Hebrew. Readings from various tractates of the Mishnah.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Hebrew Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Hebrew (Heb)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HEB 100 : Introduction to Hebrew. (1:1.5:0)
DESCRIPTION: Beginning Hebrew.
NOTE: Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

HEB 101 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

HEB 102 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

HEB 131 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

HEB 132 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

HEB 133 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 301.

HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

200-Level Courses

HEB 201 : Second-Year Modern Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Heb 102 or equivalent.

HEB 202 : Intermediate Readings. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 201 or equivalent.

300-Level Courses

HEB 311R : Intermediate Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 201.

HEB 312 : Hebrew Media. (4:4:4)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 101, 102.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes reading, aural comprehension, and speaking Hebrew. Includes newspaper reading, listening to local news on radio and television, and in-class discussion of current events.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter programs only.

HEB 313 : Readings in the Old Testament. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the Old Testament in Hebrew.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

HEB 321 : Intermediate Conversation and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alt yr.

HEB 331 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Heb 132, 201, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and vocabulary building through reading historical and prophetic books.

400-Level Courses

HEB 411R : Advanced Conversation. (4:4:4)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 311R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes conversation in everyday situations. Students role play various situations in class and then apply their learning in Jerusalem.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411 (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

HEB 421 : Readings in the Hebrew Translation of the New Testament. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the New Testament in Hebrew translation.
NOTE: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Hebrew 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter program only.

HEB 431 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the poetic and wisdom literature.

HEB 432R : Ancient Hebrew Texts. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.

HEB 441 : Postbiblical Hebrew: Mishnah. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the grammar of Mishnaic Hebrew. Readings from various tractates of the Mishnah.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Japanese (41–57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students will be required to sit a comprehensive language exam covering grammar and Joyo Kanji.
2. A required reading list must be completed, evidenced by successful completion of Japan 495, normally during the last semester before graduation.
3. Counsel with advisor to determine supporting courses appropriate to your professional goals.
4. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

JAPAN 101 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading.

JAPAN 102 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Japan 101, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading. Includes introduction to Chinese characters.

JAPAN 201 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

JAPAN 202* : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

5. Complete the following:

JAPAN 300* : Japanese Reading and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

JAPAN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be repeated for Study Abroad in Japan.

JAPAN 321 : Reading Modern Documentary Styles. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing reading comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

JAPAN 322 : Reading Modern Short Fiction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

JAPAN 411 : Advanced Japanese Pragmatics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 311, 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced skills in speaking and writing.

JAPAN 441 : Introduction to Classical Japanese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern texts, emphasizing grammar and syntax, and showing differences from and influences on the modern idiom.

JAPAN 443 : Advanced Documentary Style. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussion of modern expository texts; developing advanced listening skills using authentic materials.

JAPAN 444 : Reading Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fictional texts from major twentieth-century authors. Texts primarily in Japanese.

JAPAN 495 : Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course for the Japanese major.
NOTE: Required of all majors. To be taken the last semester prior to graduation.

6. Complete one course from the following:

JAPAN 325 : Japanese Morphology, Syntax, and Semantics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: General overview of grammar and its practical application in composition.

JAPAN 326 : Contrastive Analysis of Japanese and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive overview of Japanese and English phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

7. Complete one course from the following:

JAPAN 350* : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

JAPAN 351* : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

JAPAN 352* : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

8. Complete six hours from the following:

JAPAN 325 : Japanese Morphology, Syntax, and Semantics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: General overview of grammar and its practical application in composition.

JAPAN 326 : Contrastive Analysis of Japanese and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive overview of Japanese and English phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

JAPAN 345 : Traditional Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

JAPAN 350 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

JAPAN 351 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

JAPAN 352 : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

JAPAN 377 : Japanese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching of Japanese as a foreign language. Conducted in Japanese and English.

Optionally, one of the following may be substituted for Japan 345:

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

PL SC 354 : Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 386 : Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

JAPAN 390 : Japanese for Special Purposes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings, video materials, discussions, and projects in content areas related specifically to business, science, and technology.

Recommended Courses

It is recommended that students complete Engl 311 or similar courses before enrolling in advanced literature courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Japanese Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Japanese (16–32 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

JAPAN 101 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading.

JAPAN 102 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Japan 101, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading. Includes introduction to Chinese characters.

JAPAN 201 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

JAPAN 202 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

2. Complete the following:

JAPAN 300 : Japanese Reading and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

JAPAN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be repeated for Study Abroad in Japan.

JAPAN 321 : Reading Modern Documentary Styles. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing reading comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

JAPAN 322 : Reading Modern Short Fiction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Japanese Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Japanese Teaching (25–41 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

JAPAN 101 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading.

JAPAN 102 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Japan 101, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading. Includes introduction to Chinese characters.

JAPAN 201 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

JAPAN 202 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

2. Complete the following:

JAPAN 300 : Japanese Reading and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

JAPAN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be repeated for Study Abroad in Japan.

JAPAN 321 : Reading Modern Documentary Styles. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing reading comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

JAPAN 322 : Reading Modern Short Fiction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

JAPAN 377 : Japanese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching of Japanese as a foreign language. Conducted in Japanese and English.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   JAPAN 325 : Japanese Morphology, Syntax, and Semantics. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
   DESCRIPTION: General overview of grammar and its practical application in composition.

   JAPAN 326 : Contrastive Analysis of Japanese and English. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
   DESCRIPTION: Contrastive overview of Japanese and English phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   JAPAN 345 : Traditional Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W; Sp on demand.
   DESCRIPTION: General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

   JAPAN 350 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

   JAPAN 351 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

   JAPAN 352 : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Japanese Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Japanese (Japan)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

JAPAN 101 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading.

JAPAN 102 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Japan 101, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading. Includes introduction to Chinese characters.

200-Level Courses

JAPAN 201 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

JAPAN 202 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
NOTE: For Japan Study Abroad or Foreign Language Student Residence students only.

300-Level Courses

JAPAN 300 : Japanese Reading and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

JAPAN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be repeated for Study Abroad in Japan.

JAPAN 321 : Reading Modern Documentary Styles. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing reading comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

JAPAN 322 : Reading Modern Short Fiction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

JAPAN 325 : Japanese Morphology, Syntax, and Semantics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: General overview of grammar and its practical application in composition.

JAPAN 326 : Contrastive Analysis of Japanese and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive overview of Japanese and English phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

JAPAN 345 : Traditional Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

JAPAN 350 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

JAPAN 351 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

JAPAN 352 : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

JAPAN 377 : Japanese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching of Japanese as a foreign language. Conducted in Japanese and English.

JAPAN 390 : Japanese for Special Purposes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings, video materials, discussions, and projects in content areas related specifically to business, science, and technology.

JAPAN 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 301.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

400-Level Courses

JAPAN 411 : Advanced Japanese Pragmatics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 311, 321, 322.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced skills in speaking and writing.

JAPAN 441 : Introduction to Classical Japanese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern texts, emphasizing grammar and syntax, and showing differences from and influences on the modern idiom.

JAPAN 443 : Advanced Documentary Style. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussion of modern expository texts; developing advanced listening skills using authentic materials.

JAPAN 444 : Reading Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fictional texts from major twentieth-century authors. Texts primarily in Japanese.

JAPAN 490R : Individual Study in Japanese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of advisor and instructor.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

JAPAN 495 : Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Department approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course for the Japanese major.
NOTE: Required of all majors. To be taken the last semester prior to graduation.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

JAPAN 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

Graduate Advanced Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Korean (37–53 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

KOREA 101 : First-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Han'gul, the phonetic system, basic grammar and vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 102 : First-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 101. Phonetic system, basic grammar, vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 201 : Second-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in discourse and basic reading and writing skills; culture.

KOREA 202 : Second-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 201. Conversation, basic reading and writing skills, culture. Introduction to Chinese characters.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

2. Complete the following:

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

KOREA 301 : Third-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Korea 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, pronunciation, hanja, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

KOREA 302 : Third-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 301. Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, hanja, composition, pronunciation, and culture.

KOREA 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Korean. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mixed script (with hanja) and other readings from modern documentary and literary texts, emphasizing comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

KOREA 325 : Structure of Korean. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.

DESCRIPTION: Applying phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics to the problems of learning Korean.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

KOREA 401 : Fourth-Year Korean 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced language preparation in reading, discourse, writing, and hanja.

KOREA 402 : Fourth-Year Korean 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 401.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 401. Advanced reading, discourse, writing, and hanja.

KOREA 443 : Korean Literature after 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Literary texts from major post-1900 authors, in Korean, emphasizing reading, translating, and criticism.

KOREA 495 : Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Individual research, with seminar paper the primary objective.
NOTE: Required for Korean majors.

3. Complete six hours from the following:

KOREA 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

KOREA 344R : Korean Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

KOREA 345 : Korean Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Korean culture. All readings in English.

KOREA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and language experience.

KOREA 441 : Classical Korean (Hanmun). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 321 or Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern, documentary Sino-Korean texts, including genealogy records and the Chosŏn Dynasty Annals.

KOREA 490R : Individual Study in Korean. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual assignments appropriate to needs of advanced students.

Recommended

Prospective majors are urged to have a concurrent major or minor in another discipline.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801) 422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Korean Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Korean (16–33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalents):

KOREA 101 : First-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Han'gul, the phonetic system, basic grammar and vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 102 : First-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 101. Phonetic system, basic grammar, vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 201 : Second-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in discourse and basic reading and writing skills; culture.

KOREA 202 : Second-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 201. Conversation, basic reading and writing skills, culture. Introduction to Chinese characters.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

2. Complete the following:

KOREA 301 : Third-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Korea 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, pronunciation, hanja, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

KOREA 302 : Third-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 301. Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, hanja, composition, pronunciation, and culture.

KOREA 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Korean. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mixed script (with hanja) and other readings from modern documentary and literary texts, emphasizing comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

3. Complete one course from the following:

BUS M 596R : Business Korean. (3:3:0)

Business Korean.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: For experienced speakers of the language being taught. Emphasizes business concepts; practice and case study including conversation, reading,and presenting, while enriching business vocabulary.
KOREA 311R or higher.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Korean Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Korean (Korea)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

KOREA 101 : First-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Han'gul, the phonetic system, basic grammar and vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 102 : First-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 101. Phonetic system, basic grammar, vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

200-Level Courses

KOREA 201 : Second-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in discourse and basic reading and writing skills; culture.

KOREA 202 : Second-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 201. Conversation, basic reading and writing skills, culture. Introduction to Chinese characters.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

KOREA 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Korea 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

KOREA 301 : Third-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Korea 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, pronunciation, hanja, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

KOREA 302 : Third-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 301. Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, hanja, composition, pronunciation, and culture.

KOREA 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

KOREA 321 : Selected Readings of Modern Korean. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mixed script (with hanja) and other readings from modern documentary and literary texts, emphasizing comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

KOREA 325 : Structure of Korean. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Applying phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics to the problems of learning Korean.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

KOREA 344R : Korean Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

KOREA 345 : Korean Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Korean culture. All readings in English.

KOREA 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job cultural and language experience.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

400-Level Courses

KOREA 401 : Fourth-Year Korean 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced language preparation in reading, discourse, writing, and hanja.

KOREA 402 : Fourth-Year Korean 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 401.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 401. Advanced reading, discourse, writing, and hanja.

KOREA 441 : Classical Korean (Hanmun). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 321 or Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern, documentary Sino-Korean texts, including genealogy records and the Chosŏn Dynasty Annals.

KOREA 443 : Korean Literature after 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Literary texts from major post-1900 authors, in Korean, emphasizing reading, translating, and criticism.

KOREA 490R : Individual Study in Korean. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual assignments appropriate to needs of advanced students.

KOREA 495 : Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Individual research, with seminar paper the primary objective.
NOTE: Required for Korean majors.

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Near Eastern Languages (Ne Lg)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

NE LG 321R : Studies in Modern Near Eastern Languages. (4:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Grammar, reading, writing, and conversational skills.

NE LG 340 : Ancient Near Eastern Mythology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in mythological literature of Egypt, Canaan, Mesopotamia, Anatolia, and ancient Iran. All readings in English.

NE LG 345 : Texts and Ancient Temples. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Major ancient Near Eastern texts dealing with the temple; analysis of primary elements of ancient temple type as a place of worship.

400-Level Courses

NE LG 495 : Senior Seminar in Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Near Eastern Studies major; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course for Near Eastern Studies majors. Includes major research paper demonstrating ability to integrate cross-disciplinary information and methodology.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

NE LG 511R : Studies in Ancient Near Eastern Languages. (.5-4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and reading skills.

: Akkadian.
: Aramaic.
: Coptic.
: Egyptian.
: Syriac.
: Ugaritic.

NE LG 521R : Special Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Historical and comparative studies of ancient Near Eastern literature.

: Near Eastern Mythology.
: Texts and Temples.

Back to Asian and Near Eastern Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Asian and Near Eastern Languages Faculty

Professors

Belnap, Robert Kirk

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1991

Honey, David Brian

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of California, Berkeley, 1980
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1984
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1988

Miller, J. Scott

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Princeton University, 1986
PhD, Princeton University, 1988

Parkinson, Dilworth B.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1976
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1982

Parry, Donald W

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Utah, 1992

Peterson, Daniel C

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1990

Ricks, Stephen David

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1982

Watabe, Masakazu

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, University of Southern California, 1978

Associate Professors

Bourgerie, Dana Scott

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1982
MA, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1987
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1990

Christensen, Matthew B

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1990
PhD, Ohio State University, Columbus, 1994

Peterson, Mark Arlen

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Harvard University, 1973
PhD, Harvard University, 1987

Russell, Robert A.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1968
PhD, Harvard University, 1977

Toronto, James A.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1980
MA, Harvard University, 1984
PhD, Harvard University, 1992

Warnick, J Paul

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Ohio State University, 1996

Assistant Professors

Damron, Julie Ann

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MAT, School of International Training, 1993
PhD, Purdue University, 2000

Riep, Steven L.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of California, Berkeley, 1987
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1991
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2001

Stoneman, Jack Chris

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
MA, Columbia University, 2001
PhD, Columbia University, 2006

Research Associate Professor

Gee, John L

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages
RANK: Research Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1991
PhD, Yale University, 1998

Instructor

Richards, Monica Hilary

COLLEGE: Humanities

DEPARTMENT: Asian and Near Eastern Languages

RANK: Instructor

DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Biology

Keith A. Crandall, Chair
401 WIDB, (801) 422-2582

Life Sciences Student Services
379 WIDB, (801) 422-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degrees within this department are open enrollment programs.

The Discipline

Programs in the Department of Biology focus on training students in the organismal and broader perspectives of the biological sciences. Fields include systematics of taxonomic groups, ecology, and evolution, which often rely on the application of molecular biology and genetics.

Career Opportunities

Biology entails rigorous, broad training and synthetic reasoning, which prepare students for careers in a wide variety of professional fields ranging from technical work in research laboratories to field technicians for environmental research companies or government agencies. Majors may develop their interest in such diverse areas as environmental biology, evolutionary biology, aquatic biology, molecular biology, plant biology, or taxonomy. Students satisfy the requirements for graduate studies in the biological sciences or professional schools.

The bioinformatics major is for students with interests in both the computer and the biological sciences. The degree merges these interests in the areas of bioinformatics and computational biology, giving students the skills for graduate or professional (medical, dental, law) schools or immediate employment opportunities after completing the undergraduate program, especially with biotechnology companies.

The biological science education program provides a solid foundation in courses that meet the National Science Teachers Associatior certification requirements for secondary education biology teaching. The program also prepares students for continuing their education in graduate school.

Preveterinary medicine students interested in veterinary medicine are encouraged to incorporate required preveterinary curriculum into an academic program of their choosing. See the description of the biology major for additional information.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

- BS in Bioinformatics
- BS in Biological Science Education
- BS in Biology

BS in Conservation Biology

The

Students should see Life Sciences Student Services (379 WIDB) for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

This department offers MS and PhD degrees. See the graduate school Web site: http://www.byu.edu/gradstudies.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Bioinformatics (63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Objectives

Bioinformatics is an interdisciplinary program offering substantial training in both the biological sciences and the physical and mathematical sciences, with an emphasis on computer programming coupled with genetics and molecular biology. Students are expected to acquire programming, databasing, and operating system skills coupled with a foundation in mathematics and statistics. In addition, students will receive broad training in the basic concepts of biology and chemistry. Students attracted to this program have dual interests in math/computer science and biology, and find it an exceptional option for their broad interests.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

BIO 265 : (Bio-MMBio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

BIO 365 : Computational Biology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265, C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Computational analysis of DNA data; introduction to bioinformatics databasing using Perl and SQL; configuration of UNIX workstations for bioinformatics analyses.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

BIO 465 : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete the following:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete one introductory statistics course:

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

4. Complete one advanced statistics course not previously taken:

STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

5. With approval of a faculty advisor, complete 6 hours from upper-division electives in computer science, chemistry, mathematics, statistics, or biology.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Biology (Bio) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Biological Science Education (82 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Objectives

The biological science education program involves formal training in the field of biology as well as preparation of students as professional educators. The discipline portion of the program is designed to give broad training in the life sciences. Students take classes in plant and animal diversity, molecular biology, genetics, ecology, evolution, and bioethics. This training provides students with significant background and expertise in the biological sciences. In addition to the discipline-level training, the program also requires courses in the physical sciences including chemistry, biochemistry, and physics. The physical science course work is comprehensive enough to place students two or three courses away from receiving additional teaching endorsements in physical science, earth systems, or integrated science. The educational component involves training in laboratory methods, laboratory safety, classroom management, pedagogy, and student teaching.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following biology core courses:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
- DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
- DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

Note: Bio 420, 421 must be taken at BYU.

2. Complete the following:

BIO 235 : Field Botany. (3:3:6)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, characteristics, and uses of common trees and shrubs.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

BIO 470 : History and Philosophy of Biology. (3:1.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biology core courses through Bio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Development of fundamental generalizations of biology; nature of science; applications to major philosophical issues of current science.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion,

sound.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

3. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

BIO 276R : Exploration of Teaching in Biological Sciences. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Minimum GPA of 2.85 in Chem 105, PDBio 120, Bio 220A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

BIO 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction in Biology. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; concurrent enrollment in Bio 378, 379, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in biological sciences; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

BIO 378 : Practicum in Biology Teaching. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 377, 379, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in biology; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

BIO 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 377, 378, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 380 : Content-Area Literacy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377 or equivalent course.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory and related practices in literacy assessment and instruction for content-area classrooms.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Bio 377. Bio 377, 378, and 379 should be taken concurrently in the semester prior to taking Sc Ed 476R.

b. Complete 12 hours from the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

Recommended Courses

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 443 : Ichthyology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

BIO 445 : Herpetology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

BIO 446 : (Bio - PWS) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 447 : Mammalogy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian diversity, evolution, distribution, and natural history. Two three-day field trips required.

GEOL 103 : Life of the Past. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on historical geology for nonscience majors; fossils. Field trips.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field

trips and lab studies.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 283 : Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 282 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory techniques in determining soil physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Biology (Bio) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Biology (65–68 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The biology degree provides students with current, practical knowledge of plants and animals, emphasizing whole organism biology in both ecological and evolutionary contexts. Broad, synthetic training, from molecular to community levels of organization, equips students to address critical issues and contemporary biological problems associated with the long-term preservation of earth's biodiversity. Elective flexibility allows students to emphasize the botanical or zoological fields, or create a combined program of study. Undergraduate research opportunities may include internships, museum collections curation, bioinventory and data-basing activities, applied molecular genetics, and field and laboratory research in ecology, conservation biology, or evolutionary biology.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
- DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
- DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
- DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.

DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

2. Complete one course from the following:
BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 470 : History and Philosophy of Biology. (3:1.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biology core courses through Bio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Development of fundamental generalizations of biology; nature of science; applications to major philosophical issues of current science.

3. Complete the following:
CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

4. Complete one of the following options:
a. Complete the following:
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

And complete one course from the following:
STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

b. Complete the following:
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

c. Complete the following:
MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

5. Complete a total of 14 hours of electives, a minimum of six hours from the organismal biology list and a minimum of six hours from the biological processes list.
   a. Organismal biology: complete a minimum of six hours from the following:

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

BIO 442 : Advanced Invertebrate Zoology. (5:6:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Functional morphology, cladistics, ecology, behavior, and interrelationships of invertebrates.

BIO 443 : Ichthyology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

BIO 445 : Herpetology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

BIO 446 : (Bio - PWS) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 447 : Mammalogy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian diversity, evolution, distribution, and natural history. Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 510 : Advanced Plant Taxonomy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of taxonomic literature and research methods. One three-day field trip required.

BIO 511 : Lichenology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Classification, morphology, and ecology on lichens. Field trip required.

BIO 512 : Angiosperm Phylogeny. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Description, classification, phylogeny, and geographic distribution of flowering plant families.

BIO 541 : Aquatic Entomology. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, classification, biology, and functional ecology of aquatic insects. Field trips required.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

b. Biological processes: complete a minimum of six hours from the following:

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

BIO 452 : Marine Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of marine ecology of planktonic, sublittoral, rocky shore, sandy shore, and mudflat communities. Extensive field trips.

BIO 453 : Development of Marine Animals. (3:0:6)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Culturing, studying, and reporting on the development of eggs, embryos, and larvae of marine animals.

BIO 465 : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

BIO 470 : History and Philosophy of Biology. (3:1.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biology core courses through Bio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Development of fundamental generalizations of biology; nature of science; applications to major philosophical issues of current science.

BIO 525 : Animal Disease, Biosecurity, and Zoonoses. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 380 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Animal disease emphasizing prevention, organ systems affected, biosecurity, and zoonotic potential.

BIO 550 : Physiological and Chemical Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Ecophysiological response of plants to their environment.

BIO 556 : Limnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Lakes, reservoirs; their biota and physical/chemical properties.

BIO 557 : Stream and Wetland Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stream and wetland ecology; their biota and their physical/chemical properties.

BIO 558 : Aquatic Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 556 or 557 or concurrent registration.
DESCRIPTION: Field experience in aquatic ecology, including shoreline processes, fluvial mechanics, and quantitative and qualitative assessment of lotic and lentic systems. Overnight field trips required.

BIO 560 : Population Genetics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 420 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of population genetics applied to natural populations; drift, selection, and nonrandom mating; inferring population subdivision, migration, and gene flow.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

MMBIO 461 : Advanced Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481, MMBio 151.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of prokaryotic physiology, including cell structure and function, gene regulation, and biochemical processes; focusing on the unique aspects of prokaryotic biology.

MMBIO 462 : Microbial Ecology. (3:2:3)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 151, PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Natural history of a microbe; its distribution and abundance. Critical influence of scale and perspective in determining underlying mechanisms.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

Note: Students cannot count both Bio 370 and 470 in this requirement.

Note: As an option, up to four hours of the 14 hours total from (1) mentoring credit (see below) and (2) preapproved upper-division electives from Chem, LfSci, MMBio, NDFS, PDBio, or PWS can be used for elective credit. Written approval by an assigned advisor must be filed with the department prior to enrollment in the course. If students take this option, these hours will be evenly divided between the organismal biology and the biological processes elective requirements.

Approved mentoring credit:

BIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Supervisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Independent student research under faculty supervision.

: Aquatic Biology.
: Bioinformatics.
: Ecology.
: Electron Microscopy.
: Entomology.
: Evolution.
: Fungal Biology.
: Marine Biology.
: Medicinal Botany.
: Mega Carnivore Conservation.
: Plant Biochemistry.
: Plant Biology.
: Plant ID Team.
: Systematics.
: Veterinary Science.
: Wildlands.
: Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation.
: Wildlife.

BIO 559R : Advanced Topics in Ecology and Evolution. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Current topics in ecology, evolution, and systematics.

: Advanced Ecology.
: Advanced Systematics.
: Biogeography.
: Biological Science Education.
: Evolutionary Biology.
: Physiological Ecology.
: Tropical Biology.

LFSCI 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Approved experiential learning.

: Mentored Internship.

LFSCI 490R : Special Problems. (1-6:0.0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Life Sciences Student Services consent.

LFSCI 499R : Senior Honors Thesis. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topic to be cleared with Honors Program Office and Life Sciences Student Services.

6. Complete an exit interview.

Recommended Courses for Career Options

Botany

Students seeking career and graduate school opportunities in botanical fields should build their electives on a foundation of basic plant biology courses. Coupled with the broad integrative biology core, the following courses provide students with the greatest diversity of options for postgraduate work or training in plant biology:

Bio 430, 510, 511, 512.

PWS 282, 283, 355, 440, 515.

Students completing Bio 430 and PWS 330 and 355 often find summer employment opportunities with government land agencies.

Preveterinary Medicine

Beverly L. Roeder, Advisor
386 WIDB (801) 422-6873

Students interested in applying to veterinary medicine schools should take the following courses as part of the biology major:

BIO 270 : Animal Restraint. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Restraint and first aid techniques for pet, laboratory, domestic, and wild animals.

BIO 291R : Veterinary Medicine Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Preview into veterinary medicine as a profession. Application procedure and preparation for veterinary school.

BIO 392R : Preveterinary Preceptorship. (1-2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Supervised on-the-job exposure to veterinary medicine under a clinical setting, supplemented with academic assignments.

(2 hours required)
BIO 525 : Animal Disease, Biosecurity, and Zoonoses. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 380 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Animal disease emphasizing prevention, organ systems affected, biosecurity, and zoonotic potential.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

(1 hour required)

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: EngI 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

(or higher)

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

NDFS 330 : Comparative Animal Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Comparative digestion, absorption, and utilization of nutrients and nutritional applications of domestic, pet, and wildlife species.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Biology (Bio) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Conservation Biology (64–67 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The conservation biology major is designed to provide students with a broad scientific background in preparation for a career in conservation fields. Graduates will be equipped to deal with the issues and problems of sustainable resource usage, conservation of endangered biota, long-term preservation of biodiversity, development and preservation of natural resources, and management and conservation of ecosystems. This major is recommended for those seeking graduate programs in a variety of areas of biology, especially conservation biology. The major also prepares students well for obtaining positions in Non-Government Organizations (NGOs) focusing on conservation biology. The major does NOT provide certification as a wildlife biologist (see Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation).

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

BIO 220A : Biological Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 347 : Religion and the Environment. (3:3:3)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology or instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: The role religion has played historically in defining how humans relate to nature and its creatures. How religion frames environmental values and ethics today, emphasizing LDS viewpoints.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
- DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
- DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

2. Complete one of the following chemistry options:

Either

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

Or

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two

recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

Note: Students considering graduate or professional school should choose the second option.

3. Complete one course from the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

Note: Students considering graduate school should choose Math 112.

4. Complete at least 6 hours from the following tools courses:

BIO 555 : Evolutionary and Ecological Modeling. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in bioinformatics program or graduate status; Stat 511, 512, or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using models in ecology. Practical experience in analytical, simulation, and agent-based models.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PWS 551 : Quantitative Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350 or equivalent; Stat 221 or 511 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative methods for ecological sampling and data analysis.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

5. Complete at least 6 hours from the following management and policy elective courses:

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

HIST 290 : Nature and History: The Earth's Environmental Past. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Human historical interactions with animals, plants, and landscapes. Global histories of climate, population, whaling, fossil fuels, the car, animal rights, suburban sprawl, eco-theology, environmentalism, ecotourism, etc.

PL SC 535 : Natural Resources Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes and politics of public policies related to natural resources. Problems of analysis and evaluation.

PL SC 536 : Environmental Regulation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Regulatory programs aimed at air and water pollution, hazardous waste, toxic chemicals, and other environmental problems. Alternative regulatory mechanisms and approaches.

PWS 411 : Watershed Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and management of the hydrologic cycle of forests and rangelands. Field trips required.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.

NOTE: Field trips required.

6. Complete at least 6 hours from the following biology electives:

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 353 : Field Biology. (4:2:7)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Field investigations into the natural history of living organisms. Extended field trips required.

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

BIO 442 : Advanced Invertebrate Zoology. (5:6:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Functional morphology, cladistics, ecology, behavior, and interrelationships of invertebrates.

BIO 443 : Ichthyology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

BIO 445 : Herpetology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

BIO 446 : (Bio - PWS) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 447 : Mammalogy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian diversity, evolution, distribution, and natural history. Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 452 : Marine Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of marine ecology of planktonic, sublittoral, rocky shore, sandy shore, and mudflat communities. Extensive field trips.

BIO 453 : Development of Marine Animals. (3:0:6)
OFFERED: Sp

PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Culturing, studying, and reporting on the development of eggs, embryos, and larvae of marine animals.

BIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Supervisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Independent student research under faculty supervision.

: Aquatic Biology.
: Bioinformatics.
: Ecology.
: Electron Microscopy.
: Entomology.
: Evolution.
: Fungal Biology.
: Marine Biology.
: Medicinal Botany.
: Mega Carnivore Conservation.
: Plant Biochemistry.
: Plant Biology.
: Plant ID Team.
: Systematics.
: Veterinary Science.
: Wildlands.
: Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation.
: Wildlife.

Or
LFSCI 494R : Mentored Research. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Mentor's consent.

(3 hours maximum)

BIO 510 : Advanced Plant Taxonomy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of taxonomic literature and research methods. One three-day field trip required.

BIO 511 : Lichenology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Classification, morphology, and ecology on lichens. Field trip required.

BIO 512 : Angiosperm Phylogeny. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Description, classification, phylogeny, and geographic distribution of flowering plant families.

BIO 541 : Aquatic Entomology. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, classification, biology, and functional ecology of aquatic insects. Field trips required.

BIO 556 : Limnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Lakes, reservoirs; their biota and physical/chemical properties.

BIO 557 : Stream and Wetland Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stream and wetland ecology; their biota and their physical/chemical properties.

BIO 558 : Aquatic Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 556 or 557 or concurrent registration.
DESCRIPTION: Field experience in aquatic ecology, including shoreline processes, fluvial mechanics, and quantitative and qualitative assessment of lotic and lentic systems. Overnight field trips required.

BIO 559R : Advanced Topics in Ecology and Evolution. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Current topics in ecology, evolution, and systematics.

: Advanced Ecology.
: Advanced Systematics.
: Biogeography.
: Biological Science Education.
: Evolutionary Biology.
: Physiological Ecology.
: Tropical Biology.

BIO 560 : Population Genetics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 420 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of population genetics applied to natural populations; drift, selection, and nonrandom mating; inferring population subdivision, migration, and gene flow.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

PWS 282 : Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PWS 283.
DESCRIPTION: Physical, chemical and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth in natural, agricultural, and urban environments.

PWS 440 : Plant Physiology. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry
RECOMMENDED: Chem 285; or 351, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

7. Complete an exit interview.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Biology (Bio) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Biology (Bio)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

: Honors Principles of Biology.

BIO 101 : Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 100.
NOTE: Required of all elementary education and early childhood education majors; enrollment limited to elementary education of early childhood education majors.

200-Level Courses

BIO 220A : Biologlcal Diversity: Animals. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in invertebrates and vertebrates. Laboratory included.

BIO 220B : Biological Diversity: Plants. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of morphological, physiological, reproductive, and ecological differences in fungi, algae, and principal groups of land plants. Laboratory included.

BIO 235 : Field Botany. (3:3:6)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, characteristics, and uses of common trees and shrubs.

BIO 265 : (Bio-MMBio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

BIO 270 : Animal Restraint. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Restraint and first aid techniques for pet, laboratory, domestic, and wild animals.

BIO 275 : (Bio - PWS) Genetics and Reproduction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Independent Study only.
PREREQUISITE: Any general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of inheritance.

BIO 276R : Exploration of Teaching in Biological Sciences. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Minimum GPA of 2.85 in Chem 105, PDBio 120, Bio 220A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

BIO 291R : Veterinary Medicine Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Preview into veterinary medicine as a profession. Application procedure and preparation for veterinary school.

300-Level Courses

BIO 347 : Religion and the Environment. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology or instructor's consent.

BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 352 : Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

BIO 353 : Field Biology. (4:2:7)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Field investigations into the natural history of living organisms. Extended field trips required.

BIO 365 : Computational Biology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265, C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Computational analysis of DNA data; introduction to bioinformatics databasing using Perl and SQL; configuration of UNIX workstations for bioinformatics analyses.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction in Biology. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; concurrent enrollment in Bio 378, 379, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in biological sciences; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

BIO 378 : Practicum in Biology Teaching. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 377, 379, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in biology; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

BIO 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Bio 377, 378, Sc Ed 380.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

BIO 380 : Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of animal organ systems; structural and physiological responses to demands of and changes in environment; evolutionary constraints on anatomy and physiology.

BIO 392R : Preveterinary Preceptorship. (1-2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Supervised on-the-job exposure to veterinary medicine under a clinical setting, supplemented with academic assignments.

BIO 398R : Biology Teaching Seminar. (1-2:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Students in an academic team assist instructor in design and/or implementation of a class.

400-Level Courses

BIO 420 : Evolutionary Biology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240, PSW 340.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of evolution as the conceptual cornerstone of biology.

BIO 421 : Evolutionary Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240; Bio 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology and evidence used in evolutionary biology: comparative anatomy, DNA and protein techniques, radiometric and non-radiometric dating, fossil data, etc.

BIO 430 : Plant Classification. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220B or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: General principles of taxonomy and classification, emphasizing family identification and use of keys to the temperate flora.

BIO 441 : Entomology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: External morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny of insects. Insect collection required.

BIO 442 : Advanced Invertebrate Zoology. (5:6:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Functional morphology, cladistics, ecology, behavior, and interrelationships of invertebrates.

BIO 443 : Ichthyology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

BIO 445 : Herpetology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

BIO 446 : (Bio - PWS) Ornithology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Avian systematics evolution, distribution, and natural history.
NOTE: Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 447 : Mammalogy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian diversity, evolution, distribution, and natural history. Two three-day field trips required.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

BIO 452 : Marine Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of marine ecology of planktonic, sublittoral, rocky shore, sandy shore, and mudflat communities. Extensive field trips.

BIO 453 : Development of Marine Animals. (3:0:6)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 352 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Culturing, studying, and reporting on the development of eggs, embryos, and larvae of marine animals.

BIO 465 : Bioinformatics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265
DESCRIPTION: 3-D protein structural comparisons, hidden Markov models for database comparisons, homology detection, multiple sequence analyses, and protein family comparisons. Exercises in computer programming in genomics.

BIO 470 : History and Philosophy of Biology. (3:1.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biology core courses through Bio 420.
DESCRIPTION: Development of fundamental generalizations of biology; nature of science; applications to major philosophical issues of current science.

BIO 485R : Case Studies in Animal Biology. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

BIO 494R : Mentored Research. (1-6:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Supervisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Independent student research under faculty supervision.

: Aquatic Biology.
: Bioinformatics.
: Ecology.
: Electron Microscopy.
: Entomology.
: Evolution.
: Fungal Biology.
: Marine Biology.
: Medicinal Botany.
: Mega Carnivore Conservation.
: Plant Biochemistry.
: Plant Biology.
: Plant ID Team.
: Systematics.
: Veterinary Science.
: Wildlands.
: Wildlife and Wildlands Conservation.
: Wildlife.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

BIO 503 : Research Orientation. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to graduate school and research techniques.

BIO 510 : Advanced Plant Taxonomy. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Review of taxonomic literature and research methods. One three-day field trip required.

BIO 511 : Lichenology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Classification, morphology, and ecology on lichens. Field trip required.

BIO 512 : Anglosperm Phylogeny. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Bio 430 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Description, classification, phylogeny, and geographic distribution of flowering plant families.

BIO 525 : Animal Disease, Biosecurity, and Zoonoses. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bio 380 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Animal disease emphasizing prevention, organ systems affected, biosecurity, and zoonotic potential.

BIO 541 : Aquatic Entomology. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, classification, biology, and functional ecology of aquatic insects. Field trips required.

BIO 550 : Physiological and Chemical Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Ecophysiological response of plants to their environment.

BIO 555 : Evolutionary and Ecological Modeling. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Senior status in bioinformatics program or graduate status; Stat 511, 512, or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Using models in ecology. Practical experience in analytical, simulation, and agent-based models.

BIO 556 : Limnology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Lakes, reservoirs; their biota and physical/chemical properties.

BIO 557 : Stream and Wetland Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 350, Chem 106; or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stream and wetland ecology; their biota and their physical/chemical properties.

BIO 558 : Aquatic Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 556 or 557 or concurrent registration.
DESCRIPTION: Field experience in aquatic ecology, including shoreline processes, fluvial mechanics, and quantitative and qualitative assessment of lotic and lentic systems. Overnight field trips required.

BIO 559R : Advanced Topics in Ecology and Evolution. (1-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Current topics in ecology, evolution, and systematics.

: Advanced Ecology.
: Advanced Systematics.
: Biogeography.
: Biological Science Education.
: Evolutionary Biology.
: Physiological Ecology.
: Tropical Biology.

BIO 560 : Population Genetics. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Bio 420 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of population genetics applied to natural populations; drift, selection, and nonrandom mating; inferring population subdivision, migration, and gene flow.

BIO 580 : Scanning Electron Microscopy. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical scanning electron microscopy of biological, physical science, and engineering samples, emphasizing practical applications.

BIO 581 : Transmission Electron Microscopy. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

BIO 590R : Advanced Science In-Service. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: Su
DESCRIPTION: In-service course for science teachers. Topics vary.

: Botany Science In-Service.
: Ecology Science In-Service.
: Evolution Science In-Service.
: Genetics Science In-Service.
: Meterology Science In-Service.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Biology Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Biology Faculty

Professors

Cates, Rex G

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1965
MS, Utah State University, 1968
PhD, University of Washington, 1972

Crandall, Keith Alan

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Kalamazoo College, 1987
AM, Washington University, 1993
PhD, Washington University, 1993

Gardner, John S

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Oregon State University, 1968
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1978

Heckmann, Richard A

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1954
MS, Utah State University, 1958
PhD, Montana State University, 1970

Jeffery, Duane E

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1962
MS, Utah State University, 1963
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1966
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1972

Nelson, Charles Riley

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1980
MS, Utah State University, 1984
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1986

Roeder, Beverly L

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Wittenberg University, 1978
DVM, Ohio State University, 1982
MS, Kansas State University, 1986
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1990

Rogers, Duke S.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Texas A&M University, 1976
MS, Texas A&M University, 1979
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1986

Shiozawa, Dennis Kenji

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1972
MS, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1978

Sites, Jr., Jack W.

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Austin Peay State University, 1973
MS, Austin Peay State University, 1975
PhD, Texas A & M University, 1980

St Clair, Larry Lee

COLLEGE: Life sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of Colorado, 1984

Whiting, Michael F

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Cornell University, 1994

Associate Professors

Belk, Mark C

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1983
BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Georgia, 1992

Braithwaite, Lee F

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1959
MS, Brigham Young University, 1962
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1973

Johnson, Leigh A

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, Washington State University, 1996

Rader, Russell Ben

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Colorado State University, 1987

Assistant Professors

Adair, Marta Jean

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990

Hanegan, Nikki

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Houston, Central 1978
MS, University of Texas, Austin, 1999
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 2001

Hatch, Kent Allen

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1995
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1996

Johnson, Jerald B

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Vermont, 2000

Peck, Steven L

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1988
PhD, North Carolina State University, 1997

Professional

Furniss, H Blaine

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975

Research Associate Professor

Wilcox, Edward R

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Research Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of California, Davis, 1982

Associate Lecturer

Perez-Losada, Marcos

COLLEGE: Life Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Biology
RANK: Associate Lecturer
DEGREES: PhD, University of Vigo, Spain, 1998

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Business Management

Michael J. Swenson, Chair
660-A TNRB, (801) 422-3088

Accessibility of Business Management Courses

1. Bus M 200-level courses are open to all students.
2. Bus M 300, 313R, 340, 371R, 372, 380, 382, 384, 430, and 456 are open to all students. All other Bus M 300-level courses are closed except to students who have been formally accepted into the Marriott School, the School of Accountancy, or the Department of Information Systems or who have written approval from the undergraduate management director.
3. Non-Marriott School students may take 400-level courses for which they have proper prerequisites and the undergraduate management director's written permission.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Business Management (Bus M)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

BUS M 199R : Academic Internship. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department associate director and cooperative education coordinator; declared Marriott School major.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience for nonbusiness students either in service or business-related work.

200-Level Courses

BUS M 200 : Personal Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practical course in money management and utilizing savings.

BUS M 205R : Planning for Financial Security at Retirement. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of good financial management necessary for successful retirement.

300-Level Courses

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 301 : Financial Management. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

BUS M 320 : Career Orientation and Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
DESCRIPTION: Student orientation and preparation for careers in management.
NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 321 : Mentor Program. (.5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into Marriott School.
DESCRIPTION: Discussions with outside mentor about career opportunities.
NOTE: Must be taken first semester in Marriott School.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 341 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

BUS M 361 : Supply Chain, Services, and Operations Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into the Marriott School upper-division major.
DESCRIPTION: Control and coordination of materials and services from point of origin to final point of consumption to meet customer needs efficiently.

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

BUS M 373R : Entrepreneur Field Studies. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of department core courses.

BUS M 380 : Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

BUS M 382 : Financial Services Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by executives on financial services topics.

BUS M 384 : E-Business Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by e-business leaders on subjects significant to e-business-type opportunities.

BUS M 389R : Current Topics in Leadership. (1:15:0)
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by leading experts (top executives, faculty, etc.) on current leadership topics dealing with business, organizations, communities, and families.

BUS M 390 : Ethics for Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Management Core.
DESCRIPTION: Analyzing ethical dilemmas and understanding ethical theories as they apply to decision making in management.

400-Level Courses

BUS M 401 : Advanced Financial Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, mergers and acquisitions, and current financial problems.

BUS M 402 : Managerial Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Accounting junior core; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of financial management issues including capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, and long-term financial planning.

BUS M 405 : Management of Financial Institutions. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management problems of commercial banks and nonbank financial institutions, emphasizing balance sheet management, regulation, and the process of intermediation.

BUS M 406 : Insurance and Financial Services Academy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status, BusM 301.
DESCRIPTION: The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with personal risk. Introduction to property/casualty as well as life and health insurance issues and products.

BUS M 407 : Risk Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management of risk exposures in a business setting. The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with risk. Coverage includes both traditional insurable risks and financial risks.

BUS M 410 : Investments. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Security markets, security analysis, and portfolio management.

BUS M 411 : Advanced Investments. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301, 410; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Current investment literature, efficient markets, modern portfolio theory, capital assets pricing, options pricing theory.

BUS M 412 : Investments Academy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial principles to practical investment problems; insights into the investment banking profession.

BUS M 413 : Real Estate Finance and Investment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Terminology, concepts, principles, and analytical techniques related to financing of and investment in real estate.

BUS M 414 : Real Estate Development. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status, BusM 301.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial and real estate principles to practical property investments; insights into the real estate profession.

BUS M 415R : Portfolio Management. (1.5:1.5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 401, 410, Acc 440, ManEc 453; by application only.
DESCRIPTION: Team management of actual investment portfolio for a full school year. Responsibility for economic forecasts, security selection, and portfolio strategy.

BUS M 418 : Financial Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying financial principles to household decision making, stressing integration between areas. Income tax and estate planning, retirement, investments, portfolio management, and risk management.

BUS M 419 : Advanced Real Estate Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 413; finance junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Real estate financial investment and valuation analysis incorporating contemporary case studies; advanced analytical techniques, including simulation analysis and advanced valuation and portfolio analysis.

BUS M 430 : Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

BUS M 431 : International Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341, 430; major status.
DESCRIPTION: International market entry strategies, export marketing, joint ventures, and other market entry modes. Regional/National markets; cultural, political, legal environments. Negotiations, trade financing, marketing mix.

BUS M 432 : International Corporate Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 430; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Financial aspects of multinational corporations operating within an international environment; direct foreign investment, foreign exchange regulations, capital markets, etc.

BUS M 440 : Database Marketing: Mining and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues in managing and developing online marketing databases for segmenting markets and developing marketing tactics. In-depth development of data mining techniques and advanced statistical analysis

BUS M 441 : High-Tech Marketing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies in managing high-tech products and services, including the role of promotion, target selection, pricing, product development, and connecting to customers.

BUS M 442 : Marketing Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and methodology for conducting marketing research. Emphasis on solving problems faced by the marketing manager. Consulting research project required.

BUS M 444 : Consumer Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Mental and emotional processes and physical actions that people engage in when selecting, purchasing, using, and discarding products and services to satisfy consumer needs and desires.

BUS M 448 : Competitive Intelligence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the intelligence process including information collection, intelligence analysis, dissemination, ethics and establishing the process from a managerial perspective.

BUS M 450 : Global Business Negotiations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Developing an effective negotiation framework for cross-national/cultural negotiation techniques relative to business and other life situations.

BUS M 454 : Professional Selling and Sales Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of professional selling and sales management including personal selling skills; strategic role of personal selling; organizing, directing, controlling, and evaluating the sales force.

BUS M 455 : Promotion Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341; major status.

BUS M 456 : Retailing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 341 (340 for nonmajors).
DESCRIPTION: Selection, location, and management of retail stores and systems, emphasizing profitability and integration of accounting, finance, and economic concepts and tools.

BUS M 457 : Internet Marketing of Products and Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integrates product, research, sales, and promotional strategy and concepts into an overall marketing plan for developing an Internet business. Term project developing an Internet business required.

BUS M 458R : Seminar in Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 340 or 341.
DESCRIPTION: Selected marketing issues, quantitative techniques and forecasting, advertising management, and industrial management.

BUS M 459 : Marketing Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 442; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of finance, marketing, and case studies in economic concepts and techniques in marketing decision making and planning.

BUS M 461 : Operations Analysis and Problem Solving. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: BusM 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and tools necessary for analyzing and solving problems associated with operations, services, and supply chain management.

BUS M 462 : Services Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: introductory operations management course or instructor's consent; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and characteristics of service industries and service aspects of supply chains: sources of strategic advantage; process analysis and tools; quality.

BUS M 463 : Quality Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of quality management, strategic issues, philosophies, and tools used to implement and control quality.

BUS M 464 : Integrated Product Development. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies, processes, tools, and methods in product and process development, emphasizing initial stages of market and competitive assessment to concept development.

BUS M 465 : Global Supply Chain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The emerging rules of a global marketplace and their influence on key supply chain activities and processes.

BUS M 466 : Purchasing and Supply Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361.
DESCRIPTION: Focuses on upstream supply chain activities of supplier selection, management, and development. Negotiation, costing, product development, and commodity analysis.

BUS M 468 : Supply Chain Logistics. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 361; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of materials management (inbound transportation), physical distribution (outbound transportation), inventory, warehousing, facility location, customer service, packaging, and materials handling.

BUS M 469 : Integrated Supply Chain Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative and creative problem solving in designing and managing cohesive value-added conversion/transformation systems.

BUS M 472 : Entrepreneurial Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Marketing strategies for start-up companies. Topics include marketing to investors, internal marketing, and how to market products/services without a marketing budget.

BUS M 475 : Financing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301, 341, 361, Org B 321; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and skills of entrepreneurship, emphasizing how new and emerging companies are financed. Applying functional tools to case situations.

BUS M 479 : (Bus M-Mfg) Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: For management majors: Bus M 301, 341, 361; major status. For engineering and technology majors: management minor status; senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

BUS M 480 : Strategy 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

BUS M 481 : Strategy 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced strategy topics such as growth and diversification strategy, pricing strategy, game theory and competitor analysis, strategy as real options, and strategic flexibility and commitment.

BUS M 482 : Strategy Implementation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Math 110, Econ 110, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Integrative course on strategy formulation and implementation, including a field study. Topics include organizational alignment (structure and processes that fit the stragety), change management, and strategic leadership.

BUS M 483R : Topics in Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into the management program.
DESCRIPTION: Topics and instructors vary.

BUS M 488 : Agribusiness Management 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200, Econ 110; Bus M 300 or 340 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understanding competitive forces and the development of sustainable competitive advantage for firms in the food, fiber, and horticulture industries.

BUS M 489 : Agribusiness Management 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 (or equivalent), Econ 110 (or equivalent), Bus M 340.
DESCRIPTION: Developing and implementing marketing plans and programs for companies participating in the value chain of agribusiness industries.

BUS M 490R : Topics in Business Management. (.5-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Current business-related topics varying by semester and section.

: Real Estate Investment Analysis.

BUS M 493 : Entrepreneurial Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Bus M 479.
DESCRIPTION: Directed practical experience in launching a business. Combination of strong academic base along with hands-on business development.

BUS M 495R : E-Business Projects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Consulting/Field studies projects in e-business.

BUS M 496R : Academic Internship. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience for business majors either in service or business-related work. Opportunity to link learning with practical field applications.

: Investment Banking Internship.

BUS M 498 : Strategic Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Bus M 301; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

BUS M 538 : Managing Entrepreneurial Firms and Family Businesses. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Issues and problems facing managers of entrepreneurial enterprises and leaders of family-owned businesses. Includes start-up, growth, and exit strategies. Consulting project required.

BUS M 571 : Entrepreneurial Perspective. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Developing awareness of and ability to apply existing knowledge about entrepreneurship to make better decisons when starting, growing, and harvesting business ventures.

BUS M 596R : Business Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: For experienced speakers of the language being taught. Emphasizes business concepts; practice and case study including conversation, reading,and presenting, while enriching business vocabulary.

: Business Arabic.
: Business Chinese.
: Business English.
: Business French.
: Business German.
: Business Italian.
: Business Japanese.
: Business Korean.
: Business Portuguese.

: Business Russian.
: Business Spanish.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to Marriott School of Management Home

Back to Business Managment Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Managerial Economics (ManEc)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

MANEC 300 : Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

MANEC 301 : Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

MANEC 358 : International Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

MANEC 376 : Government and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

MANEC 387 : Economics of Strategy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Economic tools influencing the success of strategy (creation and appropriation of value) emphasizing application of economic theory to management of practice.

400-Level Courses

MANEC 453 : Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: BusM 301 or accounting junior core.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

Back to Marriott School of Management Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Business Management Faculty

Professors

Bryson, Phillip J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1964
PhD, Ohio State University, 1967

Fawcett, Stanley E.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Arizona State University, 1990

Foster, Jr., S. Thomas

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MBA, University of Missouri, 1989
PhD, University of Missouri, Columbia, 1993

Heaton, Hal B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Stanford University, 1981
PhD, Stanford University, 1983

Hill, Ned C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1969
MS, Cornell University, 1971
PhD, Cornell University, 1976

McQueen, Grant R.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Washington, 1989

Merrill, Craig B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, University of Pennsylvania, 1992
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1994

Money, R. Bruce

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
MBA, Harvard Business School, 1988
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 1995

Nadauld, Stephen D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
MBA, Harvard University, 1969
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1977

Pinegar, J. Michael

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MBA, University of Utah, 1979
PhD, University of Utah, 1982

Rhoads, Gary K.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Idaho State University, 1978
MBA, Idaho State University, 1982
PhD, Texas Tech University, 1988

Sampson, Scott E.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MBA, University of Virginia, 1991
PhD, University of Virginia, 1993

Smith, Scott M.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MBA, Michigan State University, 1973
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1979

Stone, Bernell K.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Duke University, 1964
MS, University of Wisconsin, 1966
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1968

Swenson, Michael J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MBA, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, University of Oregon, 1989

Thorley, Steven

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of Washington, 1991

Whitlark, David B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1978
MBA, Cornell University, 1985
PhD, University of Virginia, 1989

Wilson, Brent D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1969
MBA, Northwestern University, 1971
DBA, Harvard University, 1979

Associate Professors

Brau, James C.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, United States Military Academy, West Point, 1991
PhD, Florida State University, 1999

Crawford, Robert G.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1971
PhD, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1975

Hatch, Nile W.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1995

Holmes, Andrew L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Texas A&M University, 1986
MS, Texas A&M University, 1988
PhD, University of Houston, 1992

Mitton, Todd

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2000

Nelson, Ray D.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1979
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1981

Sawaya, William J.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Wyoming, 1967
MS, Arizona State University, 1969
PhD, Arizona State University, 1971

Slade, Barrett A.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Georgia, 1997

Vorkink, Keith P.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, University of Rochester, 1996
PhD, University of Rochester, 1999

Assistant Professors

Allred, Chad

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Purdue University, 2002

Billeter, Darron

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Northwestern University, 1998
MS, Carnegie Mellon University, 2004
PhD, Carnegie Mellon University, 2004

Bone, Sterling A.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 2000
MBA, Utah State University, 2001
PhD, Oklahoma State University, 2006

Boyer, Brian H.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Michigan, 2004

Christensen, Glenn L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 2002

Couch, Robert B.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
MS, Carnegie Mellon University, 2000
PhD, Carnegie Mellon University, 2004

DeRosia, Eric

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Michigan Business School, 2003

Huff, Steven

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1998
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2002
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2008

Larson, Jeff

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2002
MS, Wharton School of Business, 2005
PhD, Wharton School of Business, 2006

Wallin, Cynthia

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Arizona State University, 2006

Associate Teaching Professors

Daniels, Lee A

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Sophia University, 1991

Dishman, Paul L.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Trinity University, 1977
MBA, North Texas State University, 1987
PhD, University of North Texas, 1992

Gibson, Stephen W.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966

Lindorf, Ron S.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1991

Richards, John Eric

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985

Sudweeks, Bryan Lorin

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, George Washington University, 1987

Williams, Gary P.

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MBA, Arizona State University, 1974

Instructors

Furr, Nathan

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
MA, Brigham Young University, 2000
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2004

Webb, Scott

COLLEGE: Marriott School of Management
DEPARTMENT: Business Management
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: ABD, Michigan State University, 2008

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Chemical Engineering

Richard L. Rowley, Chair
350 CB, (801) 422-2590

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, (801) 422-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The chemical engineering degree program is open to all students.

The Discipline

Chemical engineering is the application of chemistry, biology, physics, mathematics, computer skills, and economics to designing, developing, and implementing chemical processes that convert raw materials into more useful, valuable products. Engineering skills are required for design, testing, scale-up, operation, control, and optimization. Applications range in size from the molecular level to large chemical production facilities with objectives ranging from economic performance to protection of the environment and the safety of workers and consumers. Chemical engineers are engaged in developing and producting a diverse range of products from raw materials to commodity and specialty chemicals. These products include high-performance materials needed for aerospace, automotive, biomedical, electronic, environmental, and military applications. Chemical engineers work in a variety of industries, including chemical manufacturing, energy, biotechnology, electronics, food, clothing, paper, health care, and business services.

Educational Objectives

The Chemical Engineering Department's educational objectives are to:

1. Prepare students who continue to exhibit and commit to lives of faith in Jesus Christ and service to family, church, and community.
2. Prepare students, through a broad university education, who continue to: develop and demonstrate reasoning skills and effective communication abilities, deepen their understanding of contemporary and global issues, pursue lifelong learning, and expand their involvement toward the improvement of society.
3. Prepare students to develop and implement solutions for a lifetime of open-ended, technical, and other problems by equipping them with a strong foundation in engineering, science, and mathematics and excellent training in chemical engineering theory and practice.
4. Prepare students who exemplify professional ethics, exhibit an appreciation for diversity, work with and contribute to the development of others, and engage in responsible engineering practice.

These objectives are intended to help develop the following attributes in students graduating from the program:

1. A knowledge of the requirements of the chemical engineering major, familiarity with professional opportunities, and a knowledge of contemporary issues.
2. An ability to apply knowledge of fundamental principles of mathematics and science.
3. An ability to apply knowledge of chemical engineering fundamentals.
4. Practical experience with chemical process equipment, chemical handling, chemical analysis, and process instrumentation, including the ability to design and conduct experiments, as well as to analyze and interpret data.
5. An ability to use modern engineering tools necessary for engineering practice.
6. An ability to define and solve engineering problems, including the utilization of creative and innovative skills.
7. An understanding of the impact of engineering solutions in a global, economic, environmental, and societal context. A dedication to safe, environmentally and societally responsible engineering.
8. An ability to communicate ideas effectively in both oral and written form.
9. An ability to work effectively with others from diverse backgrounds to accomplish common goals.
10. An ability to apply chemical engineering fundamentals to design process units and systems of process units including multiple operations, within realistic constraints such as economic, environmental, social, political, ethical, health and safety, manufacturability, and sustainability.
11. An appreciation for and a commitment to ethical, professional, and personal responsibilities.
12. An appreciation for and a commitment to the continuing pursuit of excellence and the full realization of human potential in self and others.

Career Opportunities

The combination of knowledge about process engineering, math, and chemistry obtained in the chemical engineering curriculum is a versatile preparation that opens a wide variety of opportunities to graduates. This versatility is one reason why chemical engineers have traditionally been among the highest paid professionals in the engineering and science disciplines.

Chemical engineers make a significant difference in the quality of life. Some develop clean, new energy sources to power society. Some develop and produce fertilizers and other agricultural chemicals to feed mankind. Virtually all pharmaceuticals are produced by chemical engineers to enhance the life of millions. Others study and produce biomedical devices and artificial organs. Still others are involved in development and production of new materials for use in new high-tech products.

Chemical engineers produce chemicals ranging in use from cleaning products to medicines and from man-made fibers for clothing and textiles to plastics for construction and consumer goods. Another large employer of chemical engineers is the semiconductor industry. In work that involves significant knowledge of chemistry and related processes, chemical engineers assist in the design and manufacture of semiconductor chips and circuit boards. The petroleum industry also employs chemical engineers, requiring their expertise for the discovery, production, and refining of petro-chemicals, including fuels, chemicals, and oils.

Many chemical engineers are employed in environmentally related positions, working on ways to improve air and water quality, to reduce acid rain and smog, and to recycle and reduce waste. Additionally, chemical engineers are employed by universities as teachers and researchers and by government agencies to provide answers for energy, environmental, and defense concerns. Chemical engineers also train to work in the medical, business, and legal professions.

Though chemical engineering career opportunities are diverse, job functions can be categorized more easily. Chemical engineers are usually involved in research, design, development, production, technical sales, or management.

In research, they develop new ideas, new products, and new ways to produce existing products more economically and with less environmental impact.

In design, they create the processes that convert raw materials into finished products with emphasis on efficiency, safety, consumer needs, and environmental protection.

The development engineer improves existing processes and technology to better meet changing needs.

Production engineering involves supervision, quality control, and testing of production processes and operations.

Management and technical sales involve decision making with regard to consumer needs and technical capabilities.

Chemical engineers are creative problem solvers. Their careers are rewarding not only from an intellectual and financial view, but also from a personal perspective. Affecting the lives of millions, their solutions provide a better lifestyle for mankind.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS in Chemical Engineering

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Chemical Engineering
PhD in Chemical Engineering

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Chemical Engineering Department offers a professional program leading to the bachelor of science degree. The first two years of this program are considered to be preprofessional with course work emphasis on math, chemistry, and chemical engineering fundamentals. The remaining two years are considered to constitute the professional program.

Any student who is admitted to the university may choose this program as a possible major. All students are urged to declare their

intention to major in the department upon first entry to the university or as soon thereafter as possible by contacting the college advisement center (264 CB). Students electing to major in this program must successfully complete the minimum preprofessional program requirements and submit an application for the department's professional program.

Transfer Students. Provisions have been made so that a qualified student transferring from a junior college or from another university, college, or department, who has completed the equivalent of the first two years of the academic program, can complete the BS degree requirements in another two years. Contact the department at the earliest date possible so that any variations can be accommodated with minimum loss of time.

Integrated Master's Program. At the end of the sophomore year or during the junior year, qualified students desiring a master's degree in chemical engineering may elect to enter the integrated master's program. The purpose of this program is to afford greater flexibility in scheduling course work than is normally available through the traditional BS degree followed by MS degree program. In this program students may work toward both the bachelor's and master's degrees simultaneously, either receiving the BS degree before or at the same time as the MS degree. At the end of the sophomore year students must have a cumulative GPA of 3.5 or more. All credit to be counted toward the master's degree must carry a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or better.

Before completing the final 30 hours of undergraduate course work, students should submit a formal application for admission to the Office of Graduate Studies. Additional details may be obtained from the college advisement center.

Professional Registration. The Chemical Engineering Department encourages graduates to become registered professional engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. Some states require this status for consulting and practice in the private sector. Successful completion of the basic chemical engineering program outline prepares graduates to pass the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination. Students who wish to become registered as professional engineers are also advised to talk to their advisor about developing their own professional engineering option, which may include additional FE preparation courses.

Professional Program Admission Policy. Admission to the professional program is available to all students in good academic standing with the university who have (a) passed the prerequisite courses for the first-semester professional courses, namely Ch En 273 and Math 302, and (b) submitted to the department an Application for the Chemical Engineering Professional Program.

The Application for the Chemical Engineering Professional Program requires the student to meet with their department advisor for direction and counseling with regard to performance in the preprofessional program courses and successful completion of the professional program.

Academic Standards and Continuance Policy. The student's academic standing with the university must be "Good" or "Previous" to enroll in professional program courses. Anyone who accumulates chemical engineering grades below C– in excess of 6 hours may not take further chemical engineering courses until he or she has reduced the unacceptable credits to 6 hours or less. A student may not graduate with more than 3 hours below C– in chemical engineering courses.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Chemical Engineering (101.5–103.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students are strongly encouraged to consult with the department about their course scheduling.

2. Complete the following preprofessional courses:

CH EN 170 : Introduction to Chemical Engineering. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 (or 105) or equivalent or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical processes and analyses with spreadsheets and graphics. Applying chemical engineering to current problems.

CH EN 263 : Computational Tools for Chemical Engineers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 170 or concurrent enrollment; Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Use of spreadsheets, advanced equation-solving packages, and structured languages to solve engineering problems. Introduction to chemical process principles.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 273 : Chemical Process Principles. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 170 or equivalent or concurrent enrollment; ChEn 263 or equivalent; Chem 106 or 112; concurrent enrollment in Phscs 121, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Material and energy balances.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 291 : Preprofessional Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Presentations by faculty, advisors, and industrial representatives.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

And complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

Or

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

3. Complete the following professional courses:

CH EN 311 : Chemical Engineering and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 273; admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Responsibility of chemical engineers when interacting with society relative to safety; environment, and ethics.

CH EN 373 : Chemical Engineering Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 273, 311; Chem 461.
DESCRIPTION: First and second laws of thermodynamics as applied to behavior of real fluids; physical and chemical equilibrium.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 374 : Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 212, Ch En 273; concurrent enrollment in Ch En 311; admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Basic mass, momentum, and energy relations of fluid flow; design of fluid-handling systems and equipment.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 376 : Heat and Mass Transfer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 311, 374.
DESCRIPTION: Heat and mass transfer, including conduction, convection, radiation, diffusion; steady and unsteady state systems; transport analogies; design applications.

CH EN 378 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of solid materials and their properties and behavior in engineering applications of metals, polymers, ceramics, and glasses.

CH EN 391 : Career Skills. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Professional, communication, and lifelong learning skills. Field trip to chemical process facility.

CH EN 436 : Process Control and Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 303, ChEn 376, 478.
DESCRIPTION: Process systems, associated control systems, and instrumentation. Use of Laplace transforms and complex variables.

CH EN 451 : Chemical Engineering Plant Design and Process Synthesis. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 391, 436, 476, 478.
DESCRIPTION: Design of chemical engineering machinery; plants and/or processes requiring application of unit operations; chemical process principles; economic analysis. Synthesis and optimization of chemical processes.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 475 : Unit Operations Laboratory 1. (2:1:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 374, 376, 391; Engl 316; Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

CH EN 476 : Separations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 373, 376.
DESCRIPTION: Stage operations, distillation, extraction, and absorption; design applications.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 477 : Unit Operations Laboratory 2. (2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 476, 478.
RECOMMENDED: Ch En 391, 476, 478; Engl 316; Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

CH EN 478 : Chemical Reaction Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 311, Chem 461.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles and equations of chemical kinetics and reactor design.

4. Complete the following supporting courses:
BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

5. Complete technical electives (12 hours minimum) satisfying the following requirements:
   a. Complete 2 hours of chemistry laboratory:

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

   b. Complete 10 hours of advanced (300-level or above) engineering course work from any of the following departments: Chemical Engineering, Civil and Environmental Engineering, Electrical and Computer Engineering, Mechanical Engineering, or the School of Technology. No more than 3 hours of Ch En 498R may be applied to the program.

6. Pass a basic compentency exam (L3 Exam) administered by the Chemical Engineering Department (see the department for details.)

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chemical Engineering Courses

Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Chemical Engineering (Ch En)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CH EN 170 : Introduction to Chemical Engineering. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 (or 105) or equivalent or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical processes and analyses with spreadsheets and graphics. Applying chemical engineering to current problems.

CH EN 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

CH EN 263 : Computational Tools for Chemical Engineers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 170 or concurrent enrollment; Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Use of spreadsheets, advanced equation-solving packages, and structured languages to solve engineering problems. Introduction to chemical process principles.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 273 : Chemical Process Principles. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 170 or equivalent or concurrent enrollment; ChEn 263 or equivalent; Chem 106 or 112; concurrent enrollment in Phscs 121, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Material and energy balances.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 291 : Preprofessional Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Presentations by faculty, advisors, and industrial representatives.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

300-Level Courses

CH EN 310 : Energy and the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 273 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Energy sources, demands, and processes; costs and environmental studies; case studies of various fossil fuel and alternate energy sources; introduction to combustion and flames.

CH EN 311 : Chemical Engineering and Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 273; admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Responsibility of chemical engineers when interacting with society relative to safety; environment, and ethics.

CH EN 373 : Chemical Engineering Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 273, 311; Chem 461.
DESCRIPTION: First and second laws of thermodynamics as applied to behavior of real fluids; physical and chemical equilibrium.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 374 : Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 212, Ch En 273; concurrent enrollment in Ch En 311; admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Basic mass, momentum, and energy relations of fluid flow; design of fluid-handling systems and equipment.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 376 : Heat and Mass Transfer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 311, 374.
DESCRIPTION: Heat and mass transfer, including conduction, convection, radiation, diffusion; steady and unsteady state systems; transport analogies; design applications.

CH EN 378 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of solid materials and their properties and behavior in engineering applications of metals, polymers, ceramics, and glasses.

CH EN 381 : Introduction to Semiconductor Processing. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or equivalent; Math 303 or equivalent; Ch En 273 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Unit operations related to silicon-based semiconductor processing, including substrate preparation, photolithography, doping, etching, and thin film formation. Lab included.

CH EN 391 : Career Skills. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to professional program.
DESCRIPTION: Professional, communication, and lifelong learning skills. Field trip to chemical process facility.

400-Level Courses

CH EN 400 : Creative Skills in Chemical Engineering. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Applications in creativity and technical knowledge from prior course work to solution of relevant, open-ended problems.

CH EN 411 : Air Pollution Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 273 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and effects of air pollution; standards, criteria, and legislation; dispersion, meterorology, and atmospheric chemistry. Includes design project and use of impact statements.

CH EN 412 : Introductory Nuclear Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand
PREREQUISITE: Math 303, Chem 106 or 112.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and application of nuclear reactor design.

CH EN 436 : Process Control and Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 303, ChEn 376, 478.
DESCRIPTION: Process systems, associated control systems, and instrumentation. Use of Laplace transforms and complex variables.

CH EN 451 : Chemical Engineering Plant Design and Process Synthesis. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 391, 436, 476, 478.
DESCRIPTION: Design of chemical engineering machinery; plants and/or processes requiring application of unit operations; chemical process principles; economic analysis. Synthesis and optimization of chemical processes.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 475 : Unit Operations Laboratory 1. (2:1:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 374, 376, 391; Engl 316; Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

CH EN 476 : Separations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 373, 376.
DESCRIPTION: Stage operations, distillation, extraction, and absorption; design applications.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 477 : Unit Operations Laboratory 2. (2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 476, 478.
RECOMMENDED: Ch En 391, 476, 478; Engl 316; Stat 332.
DESCRIPTION: Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

CH EN 478 : Chemical Reaction Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 311, Chem 461.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles and equations of chemical kinetics and reactor design.

CH EN 493R : Special Topics--Undergraduate. (.5-3:3:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom study based on student and faculty interest.

CH EN 498R : Undergraduate Research. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: faculty committee approval.
DESCRIPTION: Final report required; 2 hours maximum allowed for degree credit.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CH EN 518 : Biomedical Engineering Principles. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 374, 376, 478; or equivalents.

CH EN 528 : Industrial Catalytic Processes. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp alt. yr. on dem.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or 111; 351; Ch En 378, 478; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of catalytic chemistry and materials; applications to important industrial catalytic processes. Includes catalyst materials and preparation, catalyst characterization, fixed-bed reactor design, and catalyst deactivation.

CH EN 531 : Thermodynamics of Multicomponent Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 373 or Chem 461 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts and applications in first and second laws, equilibrium and stability, phase equilibrium, and homogeneous and heterogeneous chemical equilibrium.

CH EN 533 : Transport Phenomena. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 476 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 347.
DESCRIPTION: Transport mechanisms and coefficients and fundamental field equations for momentum, heat, and mass transport, with application to system design.

CH EN 535 : Kinetics and Catalysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 478 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of chemical kinetics, including heterogeneous catalysis and reactor design.

CH EN 541 : Computer Design Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alt. yr.
PREREQUISITE: Math 311, ChEn 376; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Computer-aided design and numerical methods of chemical engineering processes.

CH EN 578 : Polymer Science and Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years, Sp odd years
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 373, 374 378, 478; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Foundation science and theory of polymer chemistry and physics and their implications in engineering applications. Topics include polymerization chemistry, structure-property relationships, polymer physics, and transport properties.

CH EN 593R : Special Topics - Intermediate. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics for advanced undergraduate students and for graduate students.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Chemical Engineering Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Chemical Engineering Faculty

Professors

Bartholomew, Calvin H

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Stanford University, 1970
PhD, Stanford University, 1972

Baxter, Larry Lin

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1989

Beckstead, Merrill W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1961
PhD, University of Utah, 1965

Fletcher, Thomas Harvey

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Harb, John N

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, University of Illinois, Chicago, 1985
PhD, Uiversity of Illinois, Urbana, 1988

Lewis, Randy

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1995

Oscarson, John L

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Uiversity of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1972
PhD, Uiversity of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1979

Pitt, William G

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, Uiversity of Wisconsin, Madison, 1987

Rowley, Richard L.

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Michigan State University, 1978

Solen, Kenneth A

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of California, Berkeley, 1968
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1974

Wilding, Wade Vincent

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, Rice University, 1985

Associate Professor

Hecker, William C

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1982

Assistant Professors

Knotts, Thomas Allen

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2001
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2006

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Chemical Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2002

Chemistry and Biochemistry

Paul B. Farnsworth, Chair
C-104 BNSN, (801) 422-6502

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Chemistry is the study of matter, the changes undergone by matter, and the laws that govern the changes. Chemists study atoms as well as the structures and reactions of molecules. They also work to develop simplifying models (theories) that permit the correlation and explanation of observations about matter. Chemical principles are fundamental to the understanding of subjects ranging from the molecular basis of biology to the structure of rocks and minerals. Chemistry is an essential foundation in engineering disciplines, especially in chemical engineering, electronics, energy and environmental science, geology, pharmacy and medicine, and in virtually all manufacturing areas.

Chemistry is an active science that is vital to human existence. Energy needs, environmental concerns, and requirements for new materials all involve major contributions from chemists. Examples of the diverse areas of interest to chemists include regulation of protein synthesis, signal transduction at the cellular level and proteomics (biochemistry), design and synthesis of medicinal compounds (organic chemistry), design and synthesis of new molecular structures and materials (inorganic chemistry), spectroscopic study of energy transfer and molecular structures (physical chemistry), and analysis of medicinal compounds, biological materials, and contaminants or trace elements found in the environment (analytical chemistry).

Chemistry involves more than test tubes and beakers. It includes working with a variety of equipment and instruments such as mass spectrometers, calorimeters, chromatographs, ultracentrifuges, lasers, X-ray diffractometers, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometers.

Career Opportunities

Graduates in chemistry obtain positions in virtually every industry, and those who have imagination and intellectual curiosity are in particular demand. Chemistry is also an excellent preprofessional course of study for those interested in medicine, dentistry, law, and business. The chemistry curriculum is both rigorous and intellectually rewarding.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Chemistry
BS in Biochemistry
BS in Chemistry
BS in Chemistry Education

Minors

The

Chemistry
Chemistry Education

Students should see the department office for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Chemistry
MS in Biochemistry
PhD in Chemistry
PhD in Biochemistry

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Required High School Preparation

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   - 3 units of English.
   - 2 units of physical science, chemistry, and physics.
   - 4 units of mathematics, consisting of 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and 0.5 unit of trigonometry. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 112, analytic geometry and calculus.

   Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, particular attention is paid to high school preparation in this subject.

   To decide which mathematics course should be taken first, contact the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB, and request a mathematics placement test.
2. All students, especially freshmen and those transferring, should contact the department between March and August each year for advisement about efficient course scheduling and opportunities for student employment.

Scholarships

Kenneth W. Brighton, H. Tracy Hall, Ida Tanner Hamblin, and other scholarships are available to qualified chemistry majors.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Chemistry (57.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This degree provides an excellent preparation for those individuals in preprofessional programs (e.g., medicine, dentistry, master of business administration, or law), and it also provides career alternatives in chemistry.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 351M : Organic Chemistry - Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: For majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 352M : Organic Chemistry--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351M or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351M.

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).

DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

CHEM 391 : Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

CHEM 495 : Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Completion of undergraduate portfolio.
NOTE: Required of all seniors in all chemistry and biochemistry degree programs the last semester in residence.

4. Complete one course from the following:
CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 501 : Safe Chemical Practices. (.5:.5:0)
OFFERED: W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: University and department safety policies. Chemical hazards, fire safety, and biosafety, including laws.

5. Complete the following:
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series;

parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

6. After consulting with an advisor, complete 4 hours from the following:
CHEM 455 : Synthesis and Qualitative Organic Analysis. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 354; 201 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course emphasizing isolation, purification, and characterization of major and minor products from selected syntheses.
NOTE: For chemistry and other science majors.

CHEM 481M : Biochemistry 1--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry and biochemistry majors only.

CHEM 496R : Academic Internship: Chemistry and Biochemistry. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Research experience in an industrial, academic, or government laboratory in collaboration with a BYU faculty colleague/supervisor.

CHEM 497R : Undergraduate Special Problems. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience.

CHEM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
Honors Thesis.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
CHEM 514 : Inorganic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth treatment of theoretical concepts in inorganic chemistry and solid state, organmetallic, and bioinorganic chemistry.

CHEM 518 : Advanced Inorganic Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment; Chem 514.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis, characterization, and properties of materials; coordination and organometallic compounds.

CHEM 521 : Instrumental Analysis Lecture. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern instrumental methods and basic principles of instrumentation.

CHEM 523 : Instrumental Analysis Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 521; Chem 201 or 501 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 521. Laboratory experience with modern analytical instrumentation.

CHEM 552 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; 461 or 468; 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Physical aspects of organic chemistry; mechanisms, reaction intermediates, bonding, stereochemical and stereoelectronic effects, molecular orbital theory, Lewis acidity and basicity.

CHEM 553 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Synthetic aspects of organic chemistry; oxidations, reductions, concerted reactions, stereoselectivity, synthetic equivalents, protecting groups. Examples of natural product total synthesis.

CHEM 561 : Chemical Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of the principles of chemical thermodynamics, including laws, pure materials, mixtures, equilibria, and elementary statistical mechanics.

CHEM 563 : Reaction Kinetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical aspects of chemical kinetics in the gas phase and in solution. Rates and mechanisms in solution, rapid reactions, and other topics.

CHEM 565 : Introduction to Quantum Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical and mathematical aspects of quantum theory, emphasizing application of the Schrodinger wave equation to chemical systems.

CHEM 567 : Statistical Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 565.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to classical and quantum statistical mechanics, including Boltzmann, Fermi-Dirac, and Bose-Einstein statistics. Applications of statistical thermodynamics to gases, liquids, and solids.

CHEM 569 : Fundamentals of Spectroscopy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular spectroscopy and application of group theoretical concepts. Types of experiments and interpretation of data.

CHEM 594R : General Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists.
NOTE: Required one semester in residence of all senior BS majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 596R : Special Topics in Chemistry. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

: Atmospheric Chemistry.

Recommended Courses

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

Note: Supporting courses suggested by most medical and dental schools are found by visiting the Preprofessional Advisement office. The more rigorous chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses required for the chemistry majors will satisfy the minimum requirements listed there. Elective courses in biochemistry and in biological science are especially pertinent to these preprofessional programs.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Biochemistry (75.0 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Students preparing for health-related fields (medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine) or those who desire an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in biochemistry, biology, or the health sciences receive excellent preparation from this degree program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 351M : Organic Chemistry - Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: For majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 352M : Organic Chemistry--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351M or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351M.

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

CHEM 391 : Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 468 : Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462; 481 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, equilibria, transport properties, kinetics, spectroscopic applications, computational methods, structural biochemistry.

CHEM 481M : Biochemistry 1--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry and biochemistry majors only.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 495 : Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Completion of undergraduate portfolio.
NOTE: Required of all seniors in all chemistry and biochemistry degree programs the last semester in residence.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

CHEM 594R : General Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists.
NOTE: Required one semester in residence of all senior BS majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

4. Complete the following:

BIO 100** : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

5. After consulting with an advisor, complete four hours from the following:

CHEM 455 : Synthesis and Qualitative Organic Analysis. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 354; 201 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course emphasizing isolation, purification, and characterization of major and minor products from selected syntheses.
NOTE: For chemistry and other science majors.

CHEM 489 : Structural Biochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular structures of proteins, RNA and DNA as determinants of biological function. Topics include thermodynamics of folding and binding, structural determination, spectroscopy, modeling, protein recognition.

CHEM 496R : Academic Internship: Chemistry and Biochemistry. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Research experience in an industrial, academic, or government laboratory in collaboration with a BYU faculty colleague/supervisor.

CHEM 497R : Undergraduate Special Problems. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience.

CHEM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
Honors Thesis.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.

CHEM 514 : Inorganic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth treatment of theoretical concepts in inorganic chemistry and solid state, organmetallic, and bioinorganic chemistry.

CHEM 518 : Advanced Inorganic Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment; Chem 514.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis, characterization, and properties of materials; coordination and organometallic compounds.

CHEM 521 : Instrumental Analysis Lecture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern instrumental methods and basic principles of instrumentation.

CHEM 523 : Instrumental Analysis Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 521; Chem 201 or 501 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 521. Laboratory experience with modern analytical instrumentation.

CHEM 552 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; 461 or 468; 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Physical aspects of organic chemistry; mechanisms, reaction intermediates, bonding, stereochemical and stereoelectronic effects, molecular orbital theory, Lewis acidity and basicity.

CHEM 553 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Synthetic aspects of organic chemistry; oxidations, reductions, concerted reactions, stereoselectivity, synthetic equivalents, protecting groups. Examples of natural product total synthesis.

CHEM 561 : Chemical Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of the principles of chemical thermodynamics, including laws, pure materials, mixtures, equilibria, and elementary statistical mechanics.

CHEM 563 : Reaction Kinetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical aspects of chemical kinetics in the gas phase and in solution. Rates and mechanisms in solution, rapid reactions, and other topics.

CHEM 565 : Introduction to Quantum Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical and mathematical aspects of quantum theory, emphasizing application of the Schrodinger wave equation to chemical systems.

CHEM 567 : Statistical Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 565.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to classical and quantum statistical mechanics, including Boltzmann, Fermi-Dirac, and Bose-Einstein statistics. Applications of statistical thermodynamics to gases, liquids, and solids.

CHEM 569 : Fundamentals of Spectroscopy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular spectroscopy and application of group theoretical concepts. Types of experiments and interpretation of data.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 583 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biological methods used in biochemistry, including immunotechniques, bioinformatics, and selected recombinant DNA techniques.
NOTE: Second of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 596R : Special Topics in Chemistry. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

: Atmospheric Chemistry.

Note: With prior approval, many 400- and 500-level courses in biology, integrative biology, microbiology and molecular biology, and physiology and developmental biology will fill this requirement.

Recommended Courses

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

Note: Supporting courses suggested by most medical and dental schools are found by visiting the Preprofessional Advisement office. The more rigorous chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses required for the chemistry majors will satisfy the minimum requirements listed there. Elective courses in biochemistry and in biological science are especially pertinent to these preprofessional programs.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

**See a department advisor for alternatives.

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Chemistry (75.0 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is the preferred degree for chemistry majors (approved by the American Chemical Society) and those who desire an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in chemistry. It also provides excellent preparation for those individuals in preprofessional programs (e.g., medicine, dentistry, business, law).

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 351M : Organic Chemistry - Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: For majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 352M : Organic Chemistry--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Chem 351M or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351M.

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

CHEM 391 : Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

CHEM 455 : Synthesis and Qualitative Organic Analysis. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 354; 201 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course emphasizing isolation, purification, and characterization of major and minor products from selected syntheses.
NOTE: For chemistry and other science majors.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

CHEM 481M : Biochemistry 1--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry and biochemistry majors only.

CHEM 495 : Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Completion of undergraduate portfolio.
NOTE: Required of all seniors in all chemistry and biochemistry degree programs the last semester in residence.

CHEM 514 : Inorganic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462, 468; or equivalents.

DESCRIPTION: In-depth treatment of theoretical concepts in inorganic chemistry and solid state, organmetallic, and bioinorganic chemistry.

CHEM 518 : Advanced Inorganic Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment; Chem 514.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis, characterization, and properties of materials; coordination and organometallic compounds.

CHEM 521 : Instrumental Analysis Lecture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern instrumental methods and basic principles of instrumentation.

CHEM 523 : Instrumental Analysis Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 521; Chem 201 or 501 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 521. Laboratory experience with modern analytical instrumentation.

CHEM 594R : General Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists.
NOTE: Required one semester in residence of all senior BS majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

4. Complete the following:

BIO 100** : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

5. After consulting with an advisor, complete three hours from the following:

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 496R : Academic Internship: Chemistry and Biochemistry. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Research experience in an industrial, academic, or government laboratory in collaboration with a BYU faculty colleague/supervisor.

CHEM 497R : Undergraduate Special Problems. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience.

CHEM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
Honors Thesis.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.

CHEM 552 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; 461 or 468; 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Physical aspects of organic chemistry; mechanisms, reaction intermediates, bonding, stereochemical and stereoelectronic effects, molecular orbital theory, Lewis acidity and basicity.

CHEM 553 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Synthetic aspects of organic chemistry; oxidations, reductions, concerted reactions, stereoselectivity, synthetic equivalents, protecting groups. Examples of natural product total synthesis.

CHEM 561 : Chemical Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of the principles of chemical thermodynamics, including laws, pure materials, mixtures, equilibria, and elementary statistical mechanics.

CHEM 563 : Reaction Kinetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical aspects of chemical kinetics in the gas phase and in solution. Rates and mechanisms in solution, rapid reactions, and other topics.

CHEM 565 : Introduction to Quantum Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical and mathematical aspects of quantum theory, emphasizing application of the Schrodinger wave equation to chemical systems.

CHEM 567 : Statistical Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 565.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to classical and quantum statistical mechanics, including Boltzmann, Fermi-Dirac, and Bose-Einstein statistics. Applications of statistical thermodynamics to gases, liquids, and solids.

CHEM 569 : Fundamentals of Spectroscopy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular spectroscopy and application of group theoretical concepts. Types of experiments and interpretation of data.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to current biochemical research procedures including spectrophotometry, chromatography, electrophoresis, and immunological techniques. Protein over-expression; isolation and characterization methods. Enzyme kinetics and protein-ligand interactions. Introduction to bioinformatics.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

CHEM 596R : Special Topics in Chemistry. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

: Atmospheric Chemistry.

Note: With approval, certain other 300-level and above courses in the allied fields of physics, statistics, engineering, and biology may be taken to satisfy this requirement.

Recommended Courses

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

Note: Elective courses, beyond the requirements above, should be selected in consultation with an advisor. The following should be given consideration: advanced chemistry, foreign languages (especially French, German, Japanese, and Russian), biological sciences, computer science, engineering, mathematics, physics, statistics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

**See a department advisor for alternatives.

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Chemistry Education (80.5 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This degree provides preparation for professional high school teaching. High school chemistry teachers will find opportunities available and will know the satisfaction of guiding good students into essential and rewarding careers. Students should work closely with both the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry and the David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No more than three hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Contact the Education Advisement and Certification Office for entrance requirements into the licensure program.
4. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.
5. Complete the following:

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 351M : Organic Chemistry - Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes,

reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: For majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 352M : Organic Chemistry--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351M or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351M.

CHEM 391 : Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 495 : Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Completion of undergraduate portfolio.
NOTE: Required of all seniors in all chemistry and biochemistry degree programs the last semester in residence.

6. Complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

7. Complete three hours from the following:

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

CHEM 497R : Undergraduate Special Problems. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience.

8. Complete 10 hours from the following:

BIO 100 : Principles of Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introductory course for general education students.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 481M : Biochemistry 1--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry and biochemistry majors only.

GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
NOTE: Honors also.

Or
GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

PHSCS 140 : Electronics Lab. (1:1:2)

OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

PHSCS 145 : Experimental Methods in Physics. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 140.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical measurement and analysis, optics, sensors, actuators, and computer-based data acquisition.

PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

PHY S 276 : Exploration of Teaching. (4:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

PHY S 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 276; fingerprint and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

PHY S 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Phy S 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before entry into Phy S 377.

   b. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science. (12:ARR:ARR)

Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.
SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Physical Sciences. (12:ARR:ARR)
Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Chemistry (20 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
- DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
- DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

And complete one of the following:

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
- OFFERED: F, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
- NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
- OFFERED: F, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

Or

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

2. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

And complete one of the following:

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

(for two hours)

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

Or

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report

preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

Note: When all of the chemistry credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in chemistry must be taken at BYU with a grade of C or better—or the student may request to take a standardized national exam covering advanced material required for the minor. Chemistry programs at some schools have been evaluated, and their credit is acceptable for the minor. No more than one course with a grade in the D range will be allowed.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Chemistry Education (15–18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The chemistry education minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
- DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
- DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

Or

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
- NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

2. Complete the following:

CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

3. Complete one course from the following:

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: Math 302.
DESCRIPTION: Thermodynamics and equilibria, states of matter, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 462.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

Note: When all of the chemistry credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in chemistry must be taken at BYU with a grade of C or better—or the student may request to take a standardized national exam covering advanced material required for the minor. Chemistry programs at some schools have been evaluated, and their credit is acceptable for the minor. No more than one course with a grade in the D range will be allowed.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Chemistry and Biochemistry Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Chemistry and Biochemistry (Chem)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CHEM 100 : Elementary College Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Structure of matter and the chemical consequences of that structure.
NOTE: For nonscience and nonmedical majors.

CHEM 101 : Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases.
NOTE: Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

CHEM 103 : Introductory Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory laboratory techniques required for simple classical experiments in chemistry.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

: Honors Principles of Chemistry.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 113 : Introductory General Chemistry Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 112 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of chemical measurements. Concepts introduced in general chemistry lecture courses reinforced.

CHEM 152 : Introductory Organic Chemistry. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or adequate high school preparation in chemistry.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of structure and reactivity, properties and reactions of compound classes, syntheses.

The

200-Level Courses

CHEM 201 : Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113 or 223 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Safe handling of chemicals and safe practices in chemistry laboratories.

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 227 : Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 113.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

300-Level Courses

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 351M : Organic Chemistry - Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: For majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 352M : Organic Chemistry--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351M or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351M.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 354 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Majors. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses.

CHEM 355 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory 2 - Nonmajors. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352, 353; or concurrent enrollments.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation, purification, characterization, identification, and syntheses of organic compounds.

CHEM 391 : Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227, 352.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

400-Level Courses

CHEM 455 : Synthesis and Qualitative Organic Analysis. (3:1:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 354; 201 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course emphasizing isolation, purification, and characterization of major and minor products from selected syntheses.
NOTE: For chemistry and other science majors.

CHEM 461 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263 or equivalent; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.

CHEM 462 : Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227 or ChEn 263; Phscs 123 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics.
NOTE: May be taken before or after Chem 461.

CHEM 464 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; 461 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: thermodynamics and equilibria, phase transitions, kinetic-molecular theory, kinetics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 465.

CHEM 465 : Physical Chemistry Laboratory 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 227; Chem 462 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments related to physical chemistry: quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy, computational methods, statistical mechanics; computer manipulation of data, report preparation.
NOTE: May be taken before, after, or concurrent with Chem 464.

CHEM 468 : Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462; 481 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, equilibria, transport properties, kinetics, spectroscopic applications, computational methods, structural biochemistry.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

CHEM 481M : Biochemistry 1--Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry and biochemistry majors only.

CHEM 482 : Biochemistry 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360; Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems, signal transduction.

CHEM 489 : Structural Biochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular structures of proteins, RNA and DNA as determinants of biological function. Topics include thermodynamics of folding and binding, structural determination, spectroscopy, modeling, protein recognition.

CHEM 495 : Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Completion of undergraduate portfolio.
NOTE: Required of all seniors in all chemistry and biochemistry degree programs the last semester in residence.

CHEM 496R : Academic Internship: Chemistry and Biochemistry. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Research experience in an industrial, academic, or government laboratory in collaboration with a BYU faculty colleague/supervisor.

CHEM 497R : Undergraduate Special Problems. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate research experience.

CHEM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent and Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment or special safety training.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CHEM 501 : Safe Chemical Practices. (.5:.5:0)
OFFERED: W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: University and department safety policies. Chemical hazards, fire safety, and biosafety, including laws.

CHEM 514 : Inorganic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462, 468; or equivalents.

CHEM 518 : Advanced Inorganic Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 201 or concurrent enrollment; Chem 514.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis, characterization, and properties of materials; coordination and organometallic compounds.

CHEM 521 : Instrumental Analysis Lecture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern instrumental methods and basic principles of instrumentation.

CHEM 523 : Instrumental Analysis Laboratory. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 521; Chem 201 or 501 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 521. Laboratory experience with modern analytical instrumentation.

CHEM 552 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; 461 or 468; 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Physical aspects of organic chemistry; mechanisms, reaction intermediates, bonding, stereochemical and stereoelectronic effects, molecular orbital theory, Lewis acidity and basicity.

CHEM 553 : Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351, 352; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Synthetic aspects of organic chemistry; oxidations, reductions, concerted reactions, stereoselectivity, synthetic equivalents, protecting groups. Examples of natural product total synthesis.

CHEM 555 : Organic Spectroscopic Identification. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352, 354; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of spectrometric methods of identifying organic compounds, including infrared, ultraviolet nuclear magnetic resonance, and mass spectrometries.

CHEM 561 : Chemical Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of the principles of chemical thermodynamics, including laws, pure materials, mixtures, equilibria, and elementary statistical mechanics.

CHEM 563 : Reaction Kinetics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical aspects of chemical kinetics in the gas phase and in solution. Rates and mechanisms in solution, rapid reactions, and other topics.

CHEM 565 : Introduction to Quantum Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462, 468; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physical and mathematical aspects of quantum theory, emphasizing application of the Schrodinger wave equation to chemical systems.

CHEM 567 : Statistical Mechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 461, 462; or equivalents.
RECOMMENDED: Chem 565.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to classical and quantum statistical mechanics, including Boltzmann, Fermi-Dirac, and Bose-Einstein statistics. Applications of statistical thermodynamics to gases, liquids, and solids.

CHEM 569 : Fundamentals of Spectroscopy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular spectroscopy and application of group theoretical concepts. Types of experiments and interpretation of data.

CHEM 581 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Physical methods used in biochemical research, including centrifugation, structural determinations, and use of radioactivity and spectroscopy.
NOTE: First of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 583 : Advanced Biochemical Methodology 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular biological methods used in biochemistry, including immunotechniques, bioinformatics, and selected recombinant DNA techniques.
NOTE: Second of two required courses for biochemistry graduate students.

CHEM 584 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Proteins. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 481 or equivalent.

CHEM 586 : Biochemistry Laboratory/Nucleic Acids. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 482 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA as well as isolation, synthesis, translation, and identification of RNA.

CHEM 594R : General Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists.
NOTE: Required one semester in residence of all senior BS majors in chemistry and biochemistry.

CHEM 596R : Special Topics in Chemistry. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

: Atmospheric Chemistry.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Chemistry and Biochemistry Department Home

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Chemistry and Biochemistry Faculty

Professors

Andrus, Merritt Brooks

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Utah, 1991

Boerio-Goates, Juliana

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Seton Hill College, 1975
MS, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1977
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1979

Burton, Gregory F

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Medical College of Virginia, 1989

Dearden, David V

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, California Institute of Technology, 1989

Farnsworth, Paul B
< tr>

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1981

Fleming, Steven A.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1978
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1983

Goates, Steven R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1977
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1981

Graves, Steven William

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhM, Yale University, 1972
PhD, Yale University, 1978

Lamb, John D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1978

Lee, Milton L

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1971
PhD, Indiana University, 1975

Savage, Paul Bennett

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1993

Simmons, Daniel L.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986

Willardson, Barry Matthew

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Purdue University, 1990

Wood, Steven Glen

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Woodfield, Brian F

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1995

Associate Professors

Harrison, Roger G

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1986
PhD, University of Utah, 1993

Linford, Matthew R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Stanford University, 1996
PhD, Stanford University, 1996

Peterson, Matt Anders

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1987
BS, Utah State University, 1987
PhD, University of Arizona, 1992

Shirts, Randall Brent

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
AM, Harvard University, 1978
PhD, Harvard University, 1979

Woolley, Adam T

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1997

Assistant Professors

Asplund, Matthew Chas

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1998

Austin, Daniel E

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, California Institute of Technology, 2003

Belnap, David Michael

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Purdue University, 1995

Buskirk, Allen Rowdon

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Harvard University, 2004

Castle, Steven L.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, The Scripps Research Institute, 2000

Ham, Young Wan

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: MSc, Hanyang University, 1996
PhD, Purdue University, 2002

Hansen, Jaron C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1997
PhD, Purdue University, 2002

Herron, Steven R.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, University of California, Riverside, 1995
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 2001

Patterson, James E

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2004

Sevy, Eric T

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Columbia University, 1995
PhM, Columbia University, 1998
PhD, Columbia University, 1999

Vollmer-Snarr, Heidi Rebecca

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Oxford, 2001

Watt, Richard K.

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1998

Associate Teaching Professors

Brown, Philip Ross

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1986

Hinshaw, Barbara C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Westminister College, 1966
MS, University of Utah, 1969

Assistant Teaching Professors

Macedone, Jeffrey

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2004

Nielson, Jennifer Burrows

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences

DEPARTMENT: Chemistry and Biochemistry

RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor

DEGREES: PhD, University of California, San Diego, 1997

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Civil and Environmental Engineering

Steven E. Benzley, Chair
368 CB, (801) 422-2811

Rollin H. Hotchkiss, Associate Chair
368 CB, (801) 422-2811

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, (801) 422-4325
www.et.byu.edu/ce/

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering is open enrollment.

The Discipline

The BYU Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering prepares students for professional involvement in structural, water resources, environmental, geotechnical (soils), and transportation engineering.

Structural engineers analyze and design buildings, bridges, and other structures. The engineer applies principles of physics, mathematics, and engineering to develop efficient yet safe designs. Sophisticated computer models are used in these analyses. Materials used by structural engineers include steel, aluminum, concrete, masonry, wood, and composites.

Water resource and environmental engineers design pipeline systems, water treatment plants, dams, flood control structures, waste disposal sites, and environmental restoration projects. Computer modeling and analyses are used in design and to forecast storm runoff, flooding, and movement of contaminants in surface and subsurface waters. Environmental engineers evaluate and reduce pollutants from natural, human, agricultural, and industrial sources to preserve the beauty and quality of air, land, and water.

Geotechnical engineers design structures composed of or located within earth materials, including foundations for buildings and bridges, retaining walls, earth dams, highway embankments, tunnels, and liners for landfills. Field and laboratory tests on soil and rock, along with empirical and computer models, are used to assure safety and economy in design.

Traffic and transportation engineers apply scientific principles to the planning, design, construction, operation, and management of transportation systems, including highways, airports, and mass transit facilities. Transportation engineers are responsible for the safe, rapid, comfortable, convenient, economical, and environmentally compatible movement of people and goods. Computer models and simulations are frequently used by traffic engineers for geometric design and for planning, operating, and managing transportation networks, including intermodal systems.

Department Mission Statement

The mission of the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering is to produce graduates who possess technical competence in their chosen specialty area of civil engineering, integrity, and a commitment to the principles of the gospel of Jesus Christ, that will prepare them to serve and contribute as innovators, professional engineers, and leaders in the global community.

Program Educational Objectives

The undergraduate program in civil engineering has the following educational objectives:

1. Develop innovative engineers who competently apply recognized technical methods to meet human needs for water, shelter, and transportation.
2. Develop leaders with global awareness who hold paramount the safety, health, and welfare of the public while sustaining and protecting the environment.
3. Develop citizens with moral character and commitment to the gospel of Jesus Christ who provide life-long service to the public, church, and professional community.

Expected Learning Outcomes

These objectives are intended to develop the following outcomes in students graduating from the civil engineering program:

1. Understand fundamental principles of mathematics and science.
2. Understand fundamental engineering science.
3. Understand geotechnical engineering.
4. Understand structural engineering.
5. Understand trasportation engineering.
6. Understand water resources and environmental engineering.
7. Be able to design civil engineering systems and solve constrained problems with innovation.
8. Be able to use modern engineering tools, conduct experiments, and analyze uncertain data.
9. Be able to communicate ideas effectively, work in teams, and lead others.
10. Be familiar with professional practice, business management, and public administration.
11. Be aware of cultural, societal, contemporary, historical, global, and sustainability issues.
12. Be committed to life-long learning and service as licensed engineers of integrity and faith.

Career Opportunities

Civil engineers are employed in industry, private consulting, and government. Industries employing many civil and environmental engineers include construction, transportation, aerospace, petroleum, and mining. Many civil engineers enter private consulting practices, and many eventually establish their own firms. The yellow-page directories for major cities generally list many civil, structural, environmental, geotechnical, and transportation engineering firms.

Civil engineers are also employed by national, state, and local governments. Most cities and counties have engineering departments staffed largely by civil engineers. Departments of transportation, environmental protection agencies, the Army Corps of Engineers, and the Bureau of Reclamation hire many civil engineers.

Civil engineering may be used as a preprofessional program for careers in architecture, law, and business.

Because civil engineeers design structures that affect public health and safety, licensure as a Professional Engineer is required for most positions. A necessary prerequisite for licensure is graduation from an accredited engineering program. The civil engineering program is fully accredited by the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology (ABET).

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS in Civil Engineering

Students should see the department for help or information concerning the undergraduate program.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Civil Engineering
PhD in Civil Engineering

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Students are strongly encouraged to consult with the department regarding their course scheduling.

Qualified students from junior colleges with adequate preengineering programs can normally complete the BS degree in two additional years. Students who transfer into the department from other universities or from other departments at BYU will be placed in the civil engineering program according to an evaluation of completed work. Prospective transfer students should contact the department as soon as possible so that any variations can be accommodated with a minimum loss of time.

A maximum of 9 credit hours with D grades are allowed in the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering classes. Clearance for graduation will be denied until D credits are reduced to 9 hours or less.

Integrated Master's Program

Although abundant professional employment is available with a bachelor's degree, professional opportunities are markedly improved

by completing a master's degree.

During the junior year of the civil engineering curriculum, those who desire to obtain a master's degree in civil engineering (MS) may enter the integrated master's program. In this program students may work toward both the bachelor's and master's degrees concurrently.

Applicants to the integrated program must have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher. All credit to be counted toward the master's degree must carry a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or better. When students are within 30 credit hours of completing the graduate degree, they must also apply for and be admitted to graduate school.

Professional Engineer Registration

The Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering encourages graduates to become registered Professional Engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. This status is vital to engineering practice in the public sector and to much consulting work. The civil engineering program prepares graduates to successfully complete the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination, an important step in becoming registered. Students who wish to strengthen their preparation for the FE exam should select the required engineering courses with this need in mind.

Awards

The department has the following privately endowed awards: the Russell J Berrett Scholarship, the Joseph Layne Black Scholarship, the W Don and Kaye Budge ASCE Scholarship, the Caleb Tanner Water Resources Scholarship, The Jerry Christiansen Scholarship, the Nancy and Doug Ferrell Scholarship, the D Allan Firmage Scholarship, the Dean K Fuhriman Scholarship, the King and Dianne Husein Professorship, the Ramesh Khona Scholarship, the Marvin E Larson Scholarship, the Billy and Marian Nichols Scholarship, the H Burke Peterson Scholarship, the Ralph and Betty Rollins Scholarship, the John and Bobbie Tanner Scholarship, the Lee and Connie Wimmer Scholarship, and the T Leslie Youd Family Fellowship. In addition, the department has the following private annual awards: the ES^2 Scholarship, the Keller and Associates Scholarship, the Wayne Y Lee Scholarship, the Washington Group International Scholarship, and the Wright Engineers Scholarship.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Civil Engineering (92–93 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following courses:

CE EN 100A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 100B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 103 : Engineering Mechanics--Statics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119 or concurrent enrollment (if 119, then Math 111 must have already been taken).
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

CE EN 112 : Engineering Drafting with CAD Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Structural and component drafting, emphasizing computer-automated (CAD) systems. Concepts include applied and descriptive geometry, multiview representation, sectional views, dimensional practices, and axonometric sketching.

CE EN 113 : Engineering Measurements. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111, CEEn 112.
DESCRIPTION: Measurement of horizontal and vertical distances and angles to locate engineering projects including profiles, plane and topographical mapping, site layout, and earthwork.

CE EN 200A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 100A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 200B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 100A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 203 : Engineering Mechanics--Mechanics of Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts of elastic stress and strain relations; cylinders and spheres; torsion; beam theory, including bending stresses; deflections; and two-dimensional elastic theory.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CE EN 204 : Engineering Mechanic--Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103 or Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of dynamics applied to particles, systems of particles, rigid bodies, vibration systems, and nonrigid particles systems.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CE EN 270 : Computational Methods. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical methods and computational techniques for solving civil engineering problems.

CE EN 300A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 200A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 300B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 200A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 305A : Civil Engineering Materials: Metals, Woods, and Composites. (1.5:2:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular basis and mechanical behavior of civil engineering structural materials; failure mechanisms; laboratory testing.

CE EN 305B : Civil Engineering Materials: Concrete, Masonry, and Asphalt. (1.5:2:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Basic constituents and mechanical behavior of civil engineering aggregate-based materials; failure mechanisms; laboratory testing.

CE EN 321 : Structural Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203, 270.
DESCRIPTION: Deflection analysis by the method of virtual work. Analysis of statically indeterminate structures by the flexibility method, the stiffness method, and moment distribution. Computer analysis of structures.

CE EN 332 : Hydraulics and Fluid Flow Theory. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su even yr.; F, Sp odd yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 204, 270, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fluid properties, fluid statics and dynamics, viscous flow, boundary layers, concepts of pipe and open-channel flow.

CE EN 341 : Elementary Soil Mechanics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203 or instructor's consent; CE En 270; CE En 332, Geol 330, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Determination of stresses in soils, soil strength, consolidation, and settlement. Applications in fluid flow, lateral earth pressure, bearing pressure, and slope stability.

CE EN 351 : Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years; F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental concerns, problems, and evaluation methodology; pollution control and engineering management approaches.

CE EN 361 : Introduction to Transportation Engineering. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 112, 113, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Transportation system characteristics, traffic engineering, traffic operations, transportation planning, highway geometric design, pavement design, highway safety, public transport.

CE EN 400A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 300A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 400B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 300A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 424 : Reinforced Concrete Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and design of reinforced concrete, including columns, beams, slabs, and footings; elastic and ultimate-strength methods of analysis.

CE EN 470 : Civil Engineering Practice and Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Engineering economic analysis, professional practice issues, and experience in completion of a civil engineering design project by applying appropriate engineering standards and multiple realistic constraints.

Note: Students must be enrolled in a seminar course each semester, from the time the major is declared until graduation. Begin with CE En 100A,B and continue in order with 200A,B, 300A,B, 400A,B.

2. Complete one course from the following:
CE EN 431 : Hydrology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W; Sp even yr.; Su odd yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Waters of the earth, their occurrence, circulation, and distribution. Relationships among precipitation, evaporation, infiltration, transpiration, groundwater, and stream runoff.

CE EN 433 : Hydraulic Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd yr.; Su even yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Application of fluid mechanics principles to analysis and design of hydraulic structures and systems.

3. Complete one of the following options:
Either
MATH 302 : Mathematics for Engineering 1. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 and passing grade on required preparatory exam taken during first week of class. (Practice exams available on class Website).
DESCRIPTION: Multivariable calculus, linear algebra, and numerical methods.

MATH 303 : Mathematics for Engineering 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302; or Math 214 and 343.
DESCRIPTION: ODEs, Laplace transforms, Fourier series, PDEs, numerical methods.

Or
MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.

DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

4. Complete one course from the following:

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
- NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

MATH 410 : Introduction to Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343.
- DESCRIPTION: Root finding, interpolation, curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, multiple integrals, direct solvers for linear systems, least squares, rational approximations, Fourier and other orthogonal methods.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
- DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
- NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

PHSCS 222 : Modern Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 123, 220.
- DESCRIPTION: Quantum physics, atoms, molecules, condensed matter, nuclei, elementary particles, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

5. Complete the following supporting courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
- DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
- NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

GEOL 330 : Geology for Engineers. (3:2:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- DESCRIPTION: Geological processes and materials bearing on engineering practices. Field trips.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.

NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 123 : Principles of Physics 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Waves, thermal physics, optics, special relativity, and introduction to modern physics. Weekly lab.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

6. Complete 9 hours of technical electives from the following:

CE EN 414 : Engineering Applications of GIS. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to GIS concepts. Data acquisition and database formulation including use of GPS. GIS uses in civil engineering.

CE EN 421 : Structural Steel Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Compression and tension of steel members, beams, and beam-columns. Elastic and inelastic lateral-torsional buckling. Structural fasteners. Emphasizes LFRD.

CE EN 429 : Timber Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Timber species, composition, and grades; design of beams, straight and tapered glue-lam girders, columns, connections, trusses, shear walls, and structural systems.

CE EN 431 : Hydrology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W; Sp even yr.; Su odd yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Waters of the earth, their occurrence, circulation, and distribution. Relationships among precipitation, evaporation, infiltration, transpiration, groundwater, and stream runoff.

CE EN 433 : Hydraulic Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Sp odd yr.; Su even yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Application of fluid mechanics principles to analysis and design of hydraulic structures and systems.

CE EN 461 : Geometric Design of Highways. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 361.
DESCRIPTION: Designing visual aspects of highways: highway classification, design controls and criteria, design elements, vertical and horizontal alignment, cross section, intersections, interchanges, capacity analysis.

CE EN 500 : (CE En-Me En) Design and Materials Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 372 or CE En 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Applied and residual stress; materials selection; static, impact, and fatigue strength; fatigue damage; surface treatments; elastic deflection and stability--all as applied to mechanical design.

CE EN 501 : (CEEn-MeEn) Stress Analysis and Design of Mechanical Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Stress analysis and deflection of structures; general bending and torsion with computer applications to mechanical and aerospace structure design.

CE EN 503 : (CE En-Me En) Plasticity and Fracture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203; Me En 250; Math 303; senior standing or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Tensor algebra; stress and deformation tensors; relationships between dislocation slip, yielding, plastic constitutive behavior, and microstructure development; cracks and linear elastic fracture mechanics.

CE EN 504 : (CE En-Me En) Computer Structural Analysis and Optimization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Linear algebra; CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Matrix analysis of rods, shafts, beams, trusses, frames, and grids using the generalized stiffness method. Optimization methods for these structures. Organizing computer programs for structural analysis and structural optimization.

CE EN 505 : Portland Cement Concrete Mixture Design and Analysis. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Properties and testing of freshly mixed and hardened concrete and constituent materials; concrete mixture design and analysis; concrete construction practices; laboratory experimentation.

CE EN 506 : (CE En-Me En) Continuum Mechanics and Finite Elements. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Equilibrium, constitutive, and compatibility equations; closed-form solutions from elasticity; finite element theory, programming, and usage; membrane, axisymmetric, and solid elements. Application to heat transfer, fluid mechanics, and seepage.

CE EN 508 : (CE En-Me En) Structural Vibrations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamic analysis of single degree-of-freedom, discrete multi-degree-of-freedom, and continuous systems. Applications include aerospace, civil structures, and mechanical components.

CE EN 523 : (CE En-Me En) Aircraft Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321; or Me En 250, 372; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Requirements, objectives, loads, materials, and tools for design of airframe structures; static behavior of thin-wall structures; durability and damage tolerance; certification and testing. Airframe component team design project.

CE EN 524 : Reinforced Concrete Buildings. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design for earthquake resistance; torsion effects, slendor columns, and two-way slabs.

CE EN 525 : Bridge Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 422, 424; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design of composite, continuous beam, and girder bridges, including piers, abutments, floor systems, and bearings; field trips to observe bridge construction and fabrication.

CE EN 526 : Prestressed Concrete. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Strength, behavior, and design of prestressed reinforced concrete members and structures, emphasizing pretensioned, precast construction.

CE EN 528 : Masonry Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp even years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analysis, design, and construction of masonry structures. Compressive, tensile, flexural, and shear behavior of masonry structural components.

CE EN 531 : Principles of Hydrologic Modeling (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 431 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Advanced hydrologic and hydraulic principles with an emphasis on modeling for the purpose of planning and designing draining, flood control, and other water resource facilities.

CE EN 535 : Hydraulic Design of Channels and Control Structures. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 433 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design of water conveyance channels and control structures, including siphons, chutes, weirs, flumes, dams, spillways, and outlet works.

CE EN 540 : Geo-Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Geotechnical aspects of environmental engineering. Topics include municipal and hazardous solid waste landfill design and characterization and remediation techniques for contaminated soil and groundwater.

CE EN 542 : Foundation Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp even years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Soil investigation, bearing capacity and settlement, design of spread footings, combined footings, mat foundations, pile foundations, and drilled shafts.

CE EN 543 : Earth- and Rock-Fill Structures. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design and construction of earth- and rock-fill dams, including selecting dam sites and materials, and applying seepage and pore pressure studies, shearing strength data, stability analysis, and construction controls.

CE EN 545 : Geotechnical Analysis of Earthquake Phenomena. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321, 341; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Earthquake magnitude and intensity; design ground motions, elementary dynamics of structures; response spectra; building code provisions; liquefaction and ground failure.

CE EN 547 : Seepage and Groundwater Modeling. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 341, 431; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques for modeling groundwater flow on a regional and local basis. Seepage analysis of levees, excavations, and earth dams.

CE EN 551 : Water Treatment Facilities Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation, selection, and design of water treatment facilities.

CE EN 555 : Environmental Chemistry. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical theory and calculation supporting analysis of major organic and inorganic constituents in environmental engineering, focusing on theoretical understanding of the chemical processes.

CE EN 562 : Traffic Engineering: Characteristics and Operations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Traffic flow theory, traffic operations, characteristics of drivers and vehicles, parking facilities, at-grade intersections, channelization, traffic control devices, signals.

CE EN 563 : Pavement Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 305, 361; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design, construction, evaluation, maintenance, and rehabilitation of flexible and rigid pavements; influence of traffic and environmental factors; mechanistic analysis of pavement structures using computer software.

CE EN 565 : Urban Transportation Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 361 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Urban transportation planning and decision making, intermodal transportation, land-use transportation interrelationships, transportation demand modeling, site impact analysis, sustainable transportation; livable cities.

CE EN 570 : (CE En-Me En) Computer-Aided Engineering Software Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on dem.
PREREQUISITE: Me En 373 or C programming.
DESCRIPTION: Programming methods for the development of engineering software. Data structures, architecture, libraries, and graphical user interfaces, with applications to CAD systems.

CE EN 572 : (CE En-Me En) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Proficiency in C programming.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical theory of free-form curves and surfaces and solid geometric modeling. Bezier and B-spline curve and surface theory, parametric and implicit forms, intersection algorithms, topics in computer algebra, and free-form deformation. Several programming projects.

CE EN 575 : (CE En-Me En) Optimization Techniques in Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302 and FORTRAN, C, or similar computer language.
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer optimization techniques to constrained engineering design. Theory and use of state-of-the-art computer routines. Robust design methods.
NOTE: Fee.

CE EN 580 : Hazardous Waste Management and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 351 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Hazardous waste statutes and regulations; introduction to hazardous waste treatment, storage, disposal, and monitoring techniques.

CE EN 594R : Selected Problems in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1-3:ARR:ARR)

Note: 3 of the 9 hours may come from:

CH EN 273 : Chemical Process Principles. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ChEn 170 or equivalent or concurrent enrollment; ChEn 263 or equivalent; Chem 106 or 112; concurrent enrollment in Phscs 121, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Material and energy balances.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CH EN 378 : Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles of solid materials and their properties and behavior in engineering applications of metals, polymers, ceramics, and glasses.

EC EN 301 : Elements of Electrical Engineering. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Linear electric circuits, computer organization, and logic circuits for nonmajors.
NOTE: Fee.

ME EN 321 : Thermodynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of thermal energy and work; principle of state, conservation of mass, conservation of energy, increase of entropy principle; application to thermal and mechanical processes.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Civil and Environmental Engineering Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Civil and Environmental Engineering (CE En)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CE EN 100A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 100B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 103 : Engineering Mechanics--Statics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119 or concurrent enrollment (if 119, then Math 111 must have already been taken).
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

CE EN 112 : Engineering Drafting with CAD Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Structural and component drafting, emphasizing computer-automated (CAD) systems. Concepts include applied and descriptive geometry, multiview representation, sectional views, dimensional practices, and axonometric sketching.

CE EN 113 : Engineering Measurements. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 111, CEEn 112.
DESCRIPTION: Measurement of horizontal and vertical distances and angles to locate engineering projects including profiles, plane and topographical mapping, site layout, and earthwork.

CE EN 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

CE EN 200A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 100A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 200B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 100A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 203 : Engineering Mechanics--Mechanics of Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental concepts of elastic stress and strain relations; cylinders and spheres; torsion; beam theory, including bending stresses; deflections; and two-dimensional elastic theory.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CE EN 204 : Engineering Mechanic--Dynamics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 103 or Phscs 121.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts of dynamics applied to particles, systems of particles, rigid bodies, vibration systems, and nonrigid particles systems.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

CE EN 270 : Computational Methods. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Numerical methods and computational techniques for solving civil engineering problems.

300-Level Courses

CE EN 300A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 200A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 300B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 200A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 302 : Structures and Strength of Materials Fundamentals. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105, CEEn 103.
DESCRIPTION: Structural mechanics and strength of materials for soils, woods, concrete, and steel applied to practical construction situations.
NOTE: For nonmajors only.

CE EN 305A : Civil Engineering Materials: Metals, Woods, and Composites. (1.5:2:3)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular basis and mechanical behavior of civil engineering structural materials; failure mechanisms; laboratory testing.

CE EN 305B : Civil Engineering Materials: Concrete, Masonry, and Asphalt. (1.5:2:3)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Basic constituents and mechanical behavior of civil engineering aggregate-based materials; failure mechanisms; laboratory testing.

CE EN 321 : Structural Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 203, 270.
DESCRIPTION: Deflection analysis by the method of virtual work. Analysis of statically indeterminate structures by the flexibility method, the stiffness method, and moment distribution. Computer analysis of structures.

CE EN 332 : Hydraulics and Fluid Flow Theory. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su even yr.; F, Sp odd yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 204, 270, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Fluid properties, fluid statics and dynamics, viscous flow, boundary layers, concepts of pipe and open-channel flow.

CE EN 341 : Elementary Soil Mechanics. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203 or instructor's consent; CE En 270; CE En 332, Geol 330, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Determination of stresses in soils, soil strength, consolidation, and settlement. Applications in fluid flow, lateral earth pressure, bearing pressure, and slope stability.

CE EN 351 : Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years; F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental concerns, problems, and evaluation methodology; pollution control and engineering management approaches.

CE EN 361 : Introduction to Transportation Engineering. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 112, 113, 270, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Transportation system characteristics, traffic engineering, traffic operations, transportation planning, highway geometric design, pavement design, highway safety, public transport.

400-Level Courses

CE EN 400A : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 300A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 400B : Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 300A, B.
DESCRIPTION: Technical and professional activities in civil engineering.
NOTE: College Lecture attendance required.

CE EN 414 : Engineering Applications of GIS. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to GIS concepts. Data acquisition and database formulation including use of GPS. GIS uses in civil engineering.

CE EN 421 : Structural Steel Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321; or equivalents.

CE EN 424 : Reinforced Concrete Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and design of reinforced concrete, including columns, beams, slabs, and footings; elastic and ultimate-strength methods of analysis.

CE EN 429 : Timber Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Timber species, composition, and grades; design of beams, straight and tapered glue-lam girders, columns, connections, trusses, shear walls, and structural systems.

CE EN 431 : Hydrology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W; Sp even yr.; Su odd yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Waters of the earth, their occurrence, circulation, and distribution. Relationships among precipitation, evaporation, infiltration, transpiration, groundwater, and stream runoff.

CE EN 433 : Hydraulic Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Sp odd yr.; Su even yr.
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 332, 351.
DESCRIPTION: Application of fluid mechanics principles to analysis and design of hydraulic structures and systems.

CE EN 461 : Geometric Design of Highways. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 361.
DESCRIPTION: Designing visual aspects of highways: highway classification, design controls and criteria, design elements, vertical and horizontal alignment, cross section, intersections, interchanges, capacity analysis.

CE EN 470 : Civil Engineering Practice and Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CE En senior standing.
DESCRIPTION: Engineering economic analysis, professional practice issues, and experience in completion of a civil engineering design project by applying appropriate engineering standards and multiple realistic constraints.

CE EN 493R : Civil and Environmental Engineering Practicum. (1-18:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

CE EN 498R : Directed Studies in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1-18:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CE EN 500 : (CE En-Me En) Design and Materials Applications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Me En 372 or CE En 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Applied and residual stress; materials selection; static, impact, and fatigue strength; fatigue damage; surface treatments; elastic deflection and stability--all as applied to mechanical design.

CE EN 501 : (CEEn-MeEn) Stress Analysis and Design of Mechanical Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stress analysis and deflection of structures; general bending and torsion with computer applications to mechanical and aerospace structure design.

CE EN 503 : (CE En-Me En) Plasticity and Fracture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 203; Me En 250; Math 303; senior standing or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Tensor algebra; stress and deformation tensors; relationships between dislocation slip, yielding, plastic constitutive behavior, and microstructure development; cracks and linear elastic fracture mechanics.

CE EN 504 : (CE En-Me En) Computer Structural Analysis and Optimization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Linear algebra; CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Matrix analysis of rods, shafts, beams, trusses, frames, and grids using the generalized stiffness method. Optimization methods for these structures. Organizing computer programs for structural analysis and structural optimization.

CE EN 505 : Portland Cement Concrete Mixture Design and Analysis. (3:2:3)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Properties and testing of freshly mixed and hardened concrete and constituent materials; concrete mixture design and analysis; concrete construction practices; laboratory experimentation.

CE EN 506 : (CE En-Me En) Continuum Mechanics and Finite Elements. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Equilibrium, constitutive, and compatibility equations; closed-form solutions from elasticity; finite element theory, programming, and usage; membrane, axisymmetric, and solid elements. Application to heat transfer, fluid mechanics, and seepage.

CE EN 508 : (CE En-Me En) Structural Vibrations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamic analysis of single degree-of-freedom, discrete multi-degree-of-freedom, and continuous systems. Applications include aerospace, civil structures, and mechanical components.

CE EN 521 : Seismic-Resistant Steel Buildings. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 421 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Background and development of UBC seismic provisions, analysis and design of multistory steel frames, in-depth treatment of shear and moment connections, design of horizontal and vertical diaphragms.

CE EN 523 : (CE En-Me En) Aircraft Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 305, 321; or Me En 250, 372; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Requirements, objectives, loads, materials, and tools for design of airframe structures; static behavior of thin-wall structures; durability and damage tolerance; certification and testing. Airframe component team design project.

CE EN 524 : Reinforced Concrete Buildings. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design for earthquake resistance; torsion effects, slendor columns, and two-way slabs.

CE EN 525 : Bridge Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 422, 424; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design of composite, continuous beam, and girder bridges, including piers, abutments, floor systems, and bearings; field trips to observe bridge construction and fabrication.

CE EN 526 : Prestressed Concrete. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Strength, behavior, and design of prestressed reinforced concrete members and structures, emphasizing pretensioned, precast construction.

CE EN 528 : Masonry Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp even years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 424 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to analysis, design, and construction of masonry structures. Compressive, tensile, flexural, and shear behavior of masonry structural components.

CE EN 531 : Principles of Hydrologic Modeling (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 431 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced hydrologic and hydraulic principles with an emphasis on modeling for the purpose of planning and designing draining, flood control, and other water resource facilities.

CE EN 535 : Hydraulic Design of Channels and Control Structures. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CE En 433 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design of water conveyance channels and control structures, including siphons, chutes, weirs, flumes, dams, spillways, and outlet works.

CE EN 540 : Geo-Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Geotechnical aspects of environmental engineering. Topics include municipal and hazardous solid waste landfill design and characterization and remediation techniques for contaminated soil and groundwater.

CE EN 542 : Foundation Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp even years.
PREREQUISITE: CE En 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Soil investigation, bearing capacity and settlement, design of spread footings, combined footings, mat foundations, pile foundations, and drilled shafts.

CE EN 543 : Earth- and Rock-Fill Structures. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 341 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design and construction of earth- and rock-fill dams, including selecting dam sites and materials, and applying seepage and pore pressure studies, shearing strength data, stability analysis, and construction controls.

CE EN 545 : Geotechnical Analysis of Earthquake Phenomena. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CE En 321, 341; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Earthquake magnitude and intensity; design ground motions, elementary dynamics of structures; response spectra; building code provisions; liquefaction and ground failure.

CE EN 547 : Seepage and Groundwater Modeling. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 341, 431; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques for modeling groundwater flow on a regional and local basis. Seepage analysis of levees, excavations, and earth dams.

CE EN 551 : Water Treatment Facilities Design. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation, selection, and design of water treatment facilities.

CE EN 555 : Environmental Chemistry. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical theory and calculation supporting analysis of major organic and inorganic constituents in environmental engineering, focusing on theoretical understanding of the chemical processes.

CE EN 562 : Traffic Engineering: Characteristics and Operations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CE En 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Traffic flow theory, traffic operations, characteristics of drivers and vehicles, parking facilities, at-grade intersections, channelization, traffic control devices, signals.

CE EN 563 : Pavement Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 305, 361; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design, construction, evaluation, maintenance, and rehabilitation of flexible and rigid pavements; influence of traffic and environmental factors; mechanistic analysis of pavement structures using computer software.

CE EN 565 : Urban Transportation Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 361 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Urban transportation planning and decision making, intermodal transportation, land-use transportation interrelationships, transportation demand modeling, site impact analysis, sustainable transportation; livable cities.

CE EN 570 : (CE En-Me En) Computer-Aided Engineering Software Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on dem.
PREREQUISITE: Me En 373 or C programming.
DESCRIPTION: Programming methods for the development of engineering software. Data structures, architecture, libraries, and graphical user interfaces, with applications to CAD systems.

CE EN 572 : (CE En-Me En) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Proficiency in C programming.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical theory of free-form curves and surfaces and solid geometric modeling. Bezier and B-spline curve and surface theory, parametric and implicit forms, intersection algorithms, topics in computer algebra, and free-form deformation. Several programming projects.

CE EN 575 : (CE En-Me En) Optimization Techniques in Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 302 and FORTRAN, C, or similar computer language.
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer optimization techniques to constrained engineering design. Theory and use of state-of-the-art computer routines. Robust design methods.
NOTE: Fee.

CE EN 580 : Hazardous Waste Management and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: CEEn 351 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Hazardous waste statutes and regulations; introduction to hazardous waste treatment, storage, disposal, and monitoring techniques.

CE EN 594R : Selected Problems in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1-3:ARR:ARR)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Civil and Environmental Engineering Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

BYU Undergraduate Catalog 2008-2009

Civil and Environmental Engineering Faculty

Professors

Balling, Richard Jack

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1978
BS, University of Utah, 1978
MS, University of California, Berkeley, 1979
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1982

Benzley, Steven Edward

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1966
MS, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, University of California, Davis, 1971

Christiansen, Henry Nelson

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1957
MS, Stanford University, 1958
PhD, Stanford University, 1962

Hotchkiss, Rollin H

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, Utah State University, 1979
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1989

Jensen, David W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1981
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1986

Jones, Norman L

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, University of Texas, Austin, 1988
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1990

Miller, A Woodruff

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BES, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Stanford University, 1970
ENG, Stanford University, 1972
PhD, Stanford University, 1975

Rollins, Kyle

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1987

Saito, Mitsuru

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, University of Virginia, 1983
PhD, Purdue University, West Lafayette, 1988

Associate Professors

Borup, Michael Brett

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Humboldt State University, 1980
MS, Utah State University, 1983
PhD, Clemson University, 1985

Fonseca, Fernando S

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1997

Nelson, Everett James

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Williams, Gustavious Paul

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Northwestern University, 1994

Assistant Professors

Gerber, Travis M.

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2003

Guthrie, William Spencer

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1998
MS, Texas A&M University, 1999
PhD, Texas A&M University, 2002

Richards, Paul William

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2000
MS, University of California, San Diego, 2003
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 2004

Schultz, Grant George

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Civil and Environmental Engineering
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Texas A&M University, 2003

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Communication Disorders

David L. McPherson, Chair
136 TLRB, (801) 422-4318

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office
120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Communication Disorders is open enrollment.

The Discipline

Audiology is a relatively new discipline that relies on technology to deal with its primary concern, the measurement of hearing and hearing loss. Audiology includes studying the nervous system to learn how we sense, perceive, and derive information from the sense organs. Audiology students also learn about the development of speech and language, the anatomy and physiology of the ear, a variety of electronic test instruments that reveal the function of the intricate processes involved in hearing, and disorders and diseases of hearing. Physicians use audiological findings to diagnose and treat hearing problems. This information is also used in counseling the hearing impaired and for prescribing hearing aids. Teachers use the knowledge to understand and help children with hearing impairments.

The discipline of speech-language pathology emerged to help people who have lost or have never had the ability to speak normally. It serves persons with speech and language disorders such as stuttering, articulation problems, aphasia, voice problems, language delay, and similar disabilities. Students learn about speech and language development, the anatomy and physiology of the speech mechanism, the neurology of perception and production of speech and language, impairments that cause speech and language disorders, and communication disorders remediation. Professionals work in public schools, hospitals, private or community clinics, or private practice.

Career Opportunities

This is a preprofessional program leading to a master's degree that is required for entrance into the profession.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS in Communication Disorders

Minor in Communication Disorders

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Communication Disorders

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Communication Disorders (51 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

Complete the following:

ASL 101 : Conversation ASL, Part 1. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basic ASL skills, both receptive and expressive. Basic conversation skill, emphasizing vocabulary building and pragmatics. Introduction to deafness and ASL.
NOTE: Intended for students with little or no experience in ASL. Available only through Evening Classes.

COMD 133 : Introduction to Speech-Language Pathology and Audiology. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of communication disorders, assessment strategies, and treatments.

COMD 230 : Language Science. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, syntax, and semantic roles in language of children and adults; uses both manual and computer-assisted methods.

COMD 320 : Speech Anatomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Basic anatomy and physiology of speech mechanisms.

COMD 330 : Language Development. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of how children learn language, including its relationship to cognitive, neural, and social development; language development in bilingual, minority, and handicapped persons.

COMD 331 : Phonology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Transcription and analysis of normal and disordered sound production.

COMD 334 : Basic Hearing Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Hearing anatomy, physiology, and science.

COMD 350 : Language Disorders. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 330.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and characteristics of language impairment; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment of language disorders.

COMD 351 : Disorders of Articulation and Phonology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 331.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and characteristics of phonological disorders; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment.

COMD 421 : Speech Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 320, Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory investigation of scientific bases of normal and disordered speech perception and production; for audiologists and speech language pathologists.

COMD 438 : Hearing Tests and Measures. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 334.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of auditory assessment.

COMD 442 : Pediatric Audiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F,W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 438.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of hearing assessment and aural habilitation in children from birth to eight years.

COMD 450 : Professional Practices in Schools, Hospitals, and Clinics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ComD 351; 350 and 438 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of issues related to clinical practice in public schools and other settings.

MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

(or equivalent)

PHSCS 167 : Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Communication Disorders Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Communication Disorders (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   COMD 133 : Introduction to Speech-Language Pathology and Audiology. (2:2:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Overview of communication disorders, assessment strategies, and treatments.

2. Complete an additional 14 hours of ComD courses.

Show all Communication Disorders Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Communication Disorders (ComD)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

COMD 133 : Introduction to Speech-Language Pathology and Audiology. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of communication disorders, assessment strategies, and treatments.

200-Level Courses

COMD 230 : Language Science. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Morphology, syntax, and semantic roles in language of children and adults; uses both manual and computer-assisted methods.

300-Level Courses

COMD 320 : Speech Anatomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Basic anatomy and physiology of speech mechanisms.

COMD 330 : Language Development. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Overview of how children learn language, including its relationship to cognitive, neural, and social development; language development in bilingual, minority, and handicapped persons.

COMD 331 : Phonology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Transcription and analysis of normal and disordered sound production.

COMD 334 : Basic Hearing Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Hearing anatomy, physiology, and science.

COMD 350 : Language Disorders. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 330.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and characteristics of language impairment; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment of language disorders.

COMD 351 : Disorders of Articulation and Phonology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 331.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and characteristics of phonological disorders; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment.

400-Level Courses

COMD 421 : Speech Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 320, Phscs 167.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory investigation of scientific bases of normal and disordered speech perception and production; for audiologists and speech language pathologists.

COMD 438 : Hearing Tests and Measures. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 334.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of auditory assessment.

COMD 442 : Pediatric Audiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F,W
PREREQUISITE: ComD 438.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of hearing assessment and aural habilitation in children from birth to eight years.

COMD 450 : Professional Practices in Schools, Hospitals, and Clinics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

COMD 493R : Readings. (.5-2:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

COMD 495R : ASLP Field Experience. (1-2:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: ComD faculty sponsorship.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised experience in a clinical or educational service-delivery setting under the direction of a faculty member.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

COMD 544 : Psychoacoustics. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in human psychoacoustics and hearing science.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Communication Disorders Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Communication Disorders Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Brinton, Bonnie
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Communication Disorders
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1975
MA, San Jose State University, 1977
PhD, University of Utah, 1981

Culatta, Barbara
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Communication Disorders
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: MA, University of Pittsburgh, 1970
PhD, University of Pittsburgh, 1975

Fujiki, Martin
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Communication Disorders
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Idaho, 1972
MS, University of Utah, 1974
PhD, University of Utah, 1980

Harris, Richard Wood
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Communication Disorders
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, North Dakota State University, 1973
MS, University of Wisconsin, 1974
PhD, Purdue University, 1978

McPherson, David Leonard
COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Communication Disorders
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MS, George Washington University, 1969
Ph.D., University of Washington, 1972

Associate Professors

Channell, Ron W
- **COLLEGE:** David O. McKay School of Education
- **DEPARTMENT:** Communication Disorders
- **RANK:** Associate Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
  MS, Brigham Young University, 1979
  PhD, University of Utah, 1983

Dromey, Christopher
- **COLLEGE:** David O. McKay School of Education
- **DEPARTMENT:** Communication Disorders
- **RANK:** Associate Professor
- **DEGREES:** BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
  MA, State University of New York at Buffalo, 1990
  PhD, University of Colorado at Boulder, 1995

Assistant Professor

Nissen, Shawn L.
- **COLLEGE:** David O. McKay School of Education
- **DEPARTMENT:** Communication Disorders
- **RANK:** Assistant Professor
- **DEGREES:** BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
  MA, Ohio State University, 1998
  PhD, Ohio State University, 2003

Associate Clinical Professor

Robinson, Lee Ann
- **COLLEGE:** David O. McKay School of Education
- **DEPARTMENT:** Communication Disorders
- **RANK:** Associate Clinical Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
  MS, Brigham Young University, 1994

Assistant Clinical Professor

Blair, Nancy
- **COLLEGE:** David O. McKay School of Education
- **DEPARTMENT:** Communication Disorders
- **RANK:** Assistant Clinical Professor
- **DEGREES:** BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
  MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
  AuD, University of Florida, 2005

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Communications

Ed Adams, Chair
360 BRMB, (801) 422-2997

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, (801) 422-3777

The Discipline

The BYU Department of Communications prepares students for careers in fields related to mass communication, such as advertising, broadcast journalism, communications studies, print journalism, and public relations. Grounded in a strong liberal arts foundation, this program provides a balance between scholarship and professional skills. This goal is accomplished by requiring core courses and electives that enhance critical thinking about the discipline, while providing courses in emphasis areas that afford additional skills for each profession. See emphasis descriptions for additional information about their discipline and career opportunities.

Educational Outcomes

The department of communications exists to help students become professional and scholarly communicators whose messages contribute to a better society by benefiting the organizations for which they work and the audiences they reach.

1. Students will be able to communicate effectively with their audiences. In particular, students will be able to:
    a. Prepare mass communication messages in the appropriate style.
    b. Apply appropriate technology to the creation and dissemination of messages.
    c. Plan communication that serves audience needs.
    d. Use appropriate research methods to answer relevant questions.

2. Students will act professionally in their practice. In particular, students will be able to:
    a. Practice communication within legal boundaries.
    b. Exhibit standards of professional behavior.
    c. Demonstrate sensitivity to the ethical issues of their practice.
    d. Be literate in the language of the media industries.

3. Students will be scholars of the mass communication process. In particular, students will be able to:
    a. Apply relevant theory to communication practice.
    b. Understand the factors that shape(d) their profession.
    c. Value freedom of speech in the marketplace of ideas.
    d. Think critically about the relationship between mass media and society.

4. Students will be able to apply Gospel-centered values as they contribute to society. In particular, students will be able to:
    a. Demonstrate respect for diversity and agency in a global society.
    b. Exercise moral reasoning when faced with ethical dilemmas.
    c. Show a commitment to making a positive difference within their sphere of influence.
    d. Critically evaluate media-related issues in light of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Communications have a departmental application process with specific enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for details, telephone 1-877-890-5414, or online at http://comms.byu.edu/.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0

- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA in Communications

Emphases:
- Advertising
- Broadcast Journalism
- Communications Studies
- Print Journalism
- Public Relations

Minor in Communications

Students should see their college advisement center for information concerning admittance to the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Mass Communications

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Working under faculty direction, students in the department edit and publish the *Daily Universe* as a laboratory newspaper for the campus, produce daily television broadcasts on local cable, produce @NewsNet.byu.edu for the Internet, plan advertising and public relations campaigns, solve media sales and management problems, and use "new media" in diverse situations.

The Department of Communications sponsors the International Media Studies Program, which seeks to broaden students' awareness of worldwide communications issues and practices. Not only do students have opportunity to study the media systems of other nations through classes and on-site experiences, but media practitioners of other nations are also brought to campus as lecturers and visiting experts.

The department encourages early admission. Students who enroll in Comms 101, 211, and an introductory course and complete the English requirement can apply to the major as early as the second semester of their freshman year.

Departmental Requirements

1. Each student must be formally accepted into a degree program. Contact the college advisement center for admission requirements or online at http://comms.byu.edu.
2. All students must take a campus writing course before applying for admission to the major. The following writing courses fulfill this requirement and satisfy the GE First-Year Writing requirement: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
3. Complete 80 hours outside the department, of which at least 65 hours must be in the liberal arts and sciences. Please see the advisement center for a list of liberal arts and sciences courses.
4. Except for communication studies students, every student is required to complete an internship. Although the department operates an internship office (280 BRMB) that serves as a clearinghouse for internship information, the responsibility for securing an internship rests with the student. However, students may not embark on any required internship without prior approval from a faculty advisor, completing prerequisite courses with a C– or better, processing appropriate documents with the Internship Office, and being enrolled in Comms 496R.
5. Communications students must learn the design software used in several of the communications upper-level courses prior to attending the course.

   The following software will be used in these courses:

   Adobe Publishing — Comms 330, 331, 421, 428.
   Web Publishing — Comms 485, 487.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Communications: Advertising Emphasis (46–58 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

Communications majors who choose the advertising communications emphasis will participate in a program that will give a strong grounding in the liberal arts and sciences, provide a firm grasp of communications theory and principles, and teach practical workplace skills.

In advertising communications courses students will learn how to use research in studying diverse audiences, to analyze communications problems, and to evaluate communications programs. They will write problem-solving strategies and create advertising and promotion messages to specific target audiences. Creative track students will learn how to concept consumer advertising ads in print and broadcast and will develop a quality portfolio required for entry-level careers in the creative field. Management students will learn how to evaluate and select the most effective media for reaching those target audiences and will gain an understanding of how broadcast, print, and other media are used in the advertising process.

Studies will culminate in the student's participation, as a team member, in creating and presenting a comprehensive and competitive integrated communications campaign that includes research, advertising, and sales promotion.

Career Opportunities

This field provides career opportunities in advertising, media management, and advertising media sales as well as in its creative, research, media planning, and management functions.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:
   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   - NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   - RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   - DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   - NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

   Note: Students must receive a B grade or better to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

2. Complete the following:
   COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
   - DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
   - NOTE: Independent Study also.

COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 230 : Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better in each course to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

3. Apply to the major.

4. Complete the following:
COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

COMMS 317 : Advertising Research Methods. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative research methods used in marketing and advertising; the research process; planning, designing, and conducting studies; analyzing results using appropriate methodologies.

5. Complete one course from each of the following three clusters (nine hours total). Courses must be taken in order (from cluster 1, then 2, then 3):
a. Cluster 1: Media, Family, and Society
COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

b. Cluster 2: Principles and Philosophy
COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

c. Cluster 3: Global Communications and Diversity

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

6. Complete one of the following tracks:
   a. Management Track:
      1. Complete the following:

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

COMMS 332 : Marketing Media Planning and Strategy. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Media planning, theory, and practice in context of the marketing mix. Application of computer-based models as aids to media decisions. Writing of marketing- based media plans. Case study approach to both print and broadcast media.

COMMS 432 : Account Planning Management (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Comms 317.
DESCRIPTION: Development and execution of a comprehensive strategic advertising research program, including data collecting, interpretation, field investigating, audience analysis, and strategy development.

COMMS 489 : Strategic Advertising Campaigns. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300, 317, 332, 432; Comms 433 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Researching, planning, budgeting, creating, and writing national advertising campaigns; writing and producing a complete advertising plan, accompanied by a formal client presentation.

2. Complete one course from the following:
COMMS 330 : Creating Advertising Concepts - Portfolio 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Adobe Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Basic consumer advertising; copywriting, design, and layout developed from creative strategies. Solving creative problems.

COMMS 345 : Media Sales and Promotion. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of media sales process. Theory and application of persuasion relating to media sales.

b. Creative Track:
1. Complete the following:
COMMS 331 : Creating Advertising Concepts - Portfolio 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 330; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Adobe Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced consumer advertising: copywriting, design, and layout.

COMMS 433 : Advanced Advertising Concepting - Portfolio 3. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 331; concurrent enrollment in Comms 489.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course in creating consumer advertising concepts, copywriting, design, and layout. Emphasizes finished portfolios.

COMMS 489 : Strategic Advertising Campaigns. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300, 317, 332, 432; Comms 433 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Researching, planning, budgeting, creating, and writing national advertising campaigns; writing and producing a complete advertising plan, accompanied by a formal client presentation.

2. Complete one course from the following:
COMMS 330 : Creating Advertising Concepts - Portfolio 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Adobe Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Basic consumer advertising; copywriting, design, and layout developed from creative strategies. Solving creative problems.

COMMS 345 : Media Sales and Promotion. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of media sales process. Theory and application of persuasion relating to media sales.

3. Complete a minor in advertising design (15 hours).

Note: Twelve students will be admitted to the creative track each year based on a screening and portfolio work. Portfolios must be submitted to the department's main office by the twelfth week of winter semester. Late portfolios will not be considered. It will take from four to five semesters to complete the design minor. Students interested in this track should qualify and apply early.

7. After consulting with an advisor, complete an internship in conjunction with 4 hours of the following:
COMMS 496R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; prerequisites satisfied; clearance by the Communications Department.
DESCRIPTION: Professional field experience.

Note: A C– grade or better in the following prerequisite courses must be achieved before the internship experience:

Management track: Comms 317; 330 or 345; 332.
Creative track: Comms 317; 330 or 345; 331.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Communications Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Communications: Broadcast Journalism Emphasis (43 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

The study of journalism entails the mastery of working with people to present news and features in a way that reflects events accurately and fully. Students will acquire skills in analytical thinking, lucid writing, and effective interviewing to be able to present a clear and forceful picture of their subject in words, sounds, and images. To have a broad background, students are encouraged to earn more than 60 percent of their credits in other departments, thereby developing a wide understanding of the world and the processes that make society work. In addition, students will become familiar with methods of writing that effectively reach mass audiences—that portray events and people in satisfying ways. Since a wide range of knowledge is essential within the field, students will study libel law, the process of communication, and such areas as the interaction between the mass media and society today.

Career Opportunities

The exciting field of journalism traditionally has offered the allure of working in a profession that has its finger on the changing pulse of society. Whether serving as reporters, anchors, or producers for television, radio, cable, or online outlets, broadcast journalists find themselves rubbing shoulders with important people and recording important events.

A career in journalism implies not only skill with words, pictures, and sounds, but the ability to make sound judgments and to ferret out facts. In addition to the obvious careers as reporters, anchors, and producers, students often find their journalism skills in demand in a variety of other areas.

Many find the challenge of recording the drama of real life both satisfying and enlightening. Recent changes in technologies and business models continue to change the way broadcast news is produced and distributed. These changes call for greater skill in writing to be able to visualize the world in an interesting way. Overall, one of journalism's great satisfactions has been the sense that one can make a difference in the world and bring about changes for the better.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:

ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
- NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors University Writing.
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
- DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

2. Complete the following:

COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 275 : Introduction to Broadcasting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles and theories of broadcasting and the practical application of visual and aural storytelling; videography and field production; non-linear editing for radio, television, and new media.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better in each course to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

3. Apply to the major.

4. Complete the following:

COMMS 239 : Principles of Journalism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of journalism; critical evaluation of journalists' and news organizations' role and value in societies they serve.

COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

COMMS 308 : Research Methods for Journalism. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Qualitative and quantitative information-gathering strategies and techniques: interviewing, use of surveys and public records; online information gathering and data base analysis.

COMMS 325 : Broadcast Reporting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or concurrent enrollment; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of broadcast and online news reporting. Includes recording and videotaping reports of government, courts, and other institutions.

COMMS 385 : Television News Producing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 325.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of producing and presenting information for television. Role of television news in society, nature of audiences, production techniques, and TV news management. Lab includes producing daily cable newscast.

COMMS 486 : Advanced Broadcast Reporting. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 308, 385.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone for broadcast journalism students. In-depth broadcast news coverage of major public issues and trends. Formats may include daily news reports, series, and documentaries.

5. After consulting with an advisor, complete an internship in conjunction with 4 hours of the following:

COMMS 496R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; prerequisites satisfied; clearance by the Communications Department.
DESCRIPTION: Professional field experience.

Note: A C– grade or better in the following prerequisite courses must be achieved before the internship experience: Comms 308, 325.

6. Complete one course (nine hours total) from each of the following three clusters. Courses must be taken in order (cluster 1, then 2, then 3):
   a. Cluster 1: Media, Family, and Society

COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

   b. Cluster 2: Principles and Philosophy

COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

   c. Cluster 3: Global Communications and Diversity

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Communications Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Communications: Communications Studies Emphasis (43 hours*

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

This program is designed for the student who wants a broad, general undergraduate background in communications and does not necessarily want to specialize in advertising, broadcasting, print journalism, or public relations. This may be the student who plans to pursue advanced academic degrees rather than work in industry. The focus of the program is highly theoretical and conceptual.

Career Opportunities

This major does not lead to specific careers but is appropriate for those planning to pursue graduate or law degrees.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:

ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
- NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors University Writing.
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
- DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

2. Complete the following core courses:

COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
- DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
- NOTE: Independent Study also.

COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
- NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 238 : Introduction to Communications Studies. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of mass communication theory and research; historical and philosophical development of communication theory.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better in each course to be eligible to apply for admission.

3. Apply to the major

4. Complete the following:
   COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

5. Complete one course from the following:
   COMMS 319 : Research in Communication. (3:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Major status.
   DESCRIPTION: Procedures and design considerations for studying media messages, audiences, and effects. Emphasizes survey and focus group approaches to data collection and analysis.

   SOC 300 : Methods of Research in Sociology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Tools of social research; survey, experimentation, content analysis, secondary analysis, qualitative research, evaluation research, data processing and analysis, and report writing.

6. Complete the following:
   COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
   PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
   DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

   COMMS 483 : Advanced Communications Studies (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Comms 319; 411 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Contemporary developments in communication theory, research, and practice.

7. Complete 1 hour from the following practicum course:
   COMMS 497R : Research Practicum. (1:0:Arr.)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Major status; instructor's consent; approval of tasks or projects.
   DESCRIPTION: Conducting research in a mentored environment with a faculty-sponsored research project.

8. Complete 18 hours (six courses) from the following departmental electives. Students must complete at least one course from each cluster. The remainder may be selected from within one cluster (specialized approach) or from any of the other clusters (general approach):
   a. Cluster 1: Media, Family, and Society:
      COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
      PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
      DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

      COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
      PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
      DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

      COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
      PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.

DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

b. Cluster 2: Principles and Philosophy:

COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

c. Cluster 3: Global Communication and Diversity:

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Communications Courses The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center

| BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Communications: Print Journalism Emphasis (43 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

Journalism is a mass media process that provides factual and relevant information for democratic decision making, community building, and public deliberation. Students will acquire skills in effective interviewing, analytical thinking, and lucid writing and storytelling. To develop a wide understanding of the world and the processes that make society work, students are encouraged to earn more than 60 percent of their credits in other departments. Students will become familiar with methods of writing that target mass audiences and help citizens work through community problems and issues. With contemporary journalists working for newspapers, magazines, and new media, students will be offered courses in media law and ethics, journalistic research methods, feature writing, in-depth reporting, publication design, new media, media processes, and public opinion. Print journalism students may choose either a traditional news-editorial track or qualify for a news design and new media track.

Career Opportunities

In the exciting field of journalism, traditionally there has been the allure of working in a profession that has its finger on the changing pulse of society. Whether serving as reporters on television, radio, cable, online, daily newspapers, the community press, or in the magazine field, journalists find themselves rubbing shoulders with important people and recording important events.

A career in journalism implies not only skill with words, but the ability to make sound judgments and to ferret out facts. In addition to the obvious careers as reporters and editors, students often find their journalism skills in demand in a variety of other areas.

Many find the challenge of recording the drama of real life both satisfying and enlightening. Because of television, journalism has changed in recent years, but even though there has been a decline in the number of daily newspapers, an explosion of special interest magazines and online publishing has opened up jobs for writers and editors. These changes call for greater skill in writing to be able to visualize the world in an interesting way. Overall, one of journalism's great satisfactions has been the sense that one can make a difference in the world and bring about changes for the better.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:

ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
- NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors University Writing.
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
- DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
- NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

2. Complete the following core courses:

COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 239 : Principles of Journalism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of journalism; critical evaluation of journalists' and news organizations' role and value in societies they serve.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better in each course to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

3. Apply to the major.

4. Complete the following:

COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

COMMS 308 : Research Methods for Journalism. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Qualitative and quantitative information-gathering strategies and techniques: interviewing, use of surveys and public records; online information gathering and data base analysis.

COMMS 321 : News Reporting. (3:2:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or concurrent enrollment; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Research and reporting skills. Database retrieval and interviewing. Beat reporting for newspapers, radio, and online media. Lab required.

5. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete one of the following tracks:

a. News-Editorial Track:

COMMS 377 : Feature Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of nonfiction magazine markets and effective writing methods; criticism of students' articles.

COMMS 420 : Advanced Print Reporting. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Comms 308, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Print news coverage of government, courts, education, and other institutions. Investigative reporting on major public issues and trends.

COMMS 484 : News Editing and News Judgment. (3:2:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Management and editing of news flow, ranging from editorial conceptualization and news judgment to copy editing, headline writing, and basic page design.

b. News Design and New Media Track:

COMMS 365 : Photojournalism. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; admission to news design and new media track; or instructor's consent.

DESCRIPTION: Shooting, processing, selecting, and preparing photographs for use in publications.

COMMS 428 : Publication Graphics and Production. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 308, 321; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Layout and graphics for publications. Contemporary practices in production.

COMMS 487 : Multimedia Journalism. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Comms 438; software proficiency in Flash, Dreamweaver, Image Ready demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Editing, design, and delivery of multimedia and interactive news content. Theories of new media use and practical application of those theories to create professional-level content.

Note: Twelve students will be admitted to the news design and new media track each year based on an application.

6. After consulting with an advisor, complete an internship in conjunction with 4 hours of the following:
COMMS 496R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; prerequisites satisfied; clearance by the Communications Department.
DESCRIPTION: Professional field experience.

Note: A C– grade or better in the following prerequisite courses must be achieved before the internship experience:

News editorial track: Comms 308, 321, 420.
News design track: Comms 308, 365, 428.

7. Complete one course from each of the following three clusters (nine hours total). Courses must be taken in order (from cluster 1, then 2, then 3):
a. Cluster 1: Media, Family, and Society:

COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

b. Cluster 2: Principles and Philosophy:

COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.

DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

c. Cluster 3: Global Communication and Diversity:
COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Communications Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Communications: Public Relations Emphasis (49 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

Public relations manages communication to build mutually beneficial relationships between the organization and its vital publics. The public relations program at BYU emphasizes research and measurement; strategic planning; professionally designed, written, and targeted tactics; and ethical practice. We prepare students with critical skills in thinking, writing, research, program planning and management, creative problem solving, and relationship building with publics typical to the public relations challenges of diverse organizations. Those publics include but are not limited to media, consumers, employees, government and other regulatory bodies, and communities. In keeping with the aims of a BYU education, our students and graduates should engage in lifelong learning and professional practice that exemplifies the values of grace, truth, and equity.

Career Opportunities

Virtually all segments of the public and private sectors throughout the world draw employees from public relations graduates. Graduates may work as technical experts or in management tracks. They may specialize in employee relations, community relations, public affairs, media relations, or several other tracks within the professional arena.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:
   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.
   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

   Note: Students must receive a B grade or better to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or

Honrs 150.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 235 : Introduction to Public Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy and practice of public relations in business, government, education, and other institutions. Study of publics, media, methods, press relations, and publicity.

Note: Students must receive a B grade or better from each course to be eligible to apply for admission to the program.

3. Apply to the major.

4. Complete the following:
COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

COMMS 318 : Public Relations Research and Measurement. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Research methods and analysis critical to developing strategic public relations and measuring its effectiveness, emphasizing focus group and survey approaches with qualitative and quantitative statistical analysis.

5. Complete one course from each of the following three clusters (nine hours total). Courses must be taken in order (from cluster 1, then 2, then 3):
a. Cluster 1: Media, Family, and Society:
COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

b. Cluster 2: Principles and Philosophy:
COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting

organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

c. Cluster 3: Global Communication and Diversity:

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

6. Complete the following:

COMMS 321 : News Reporting. (3:2:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or concurrent enrollment; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Research and reporting skills. Database retrieval and interviewing. Beat reporting for newspapers, radio, and online media. Lab required.

COMMS 336 : Strategic Planning and Problem Solving. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Cases selected from wide range of actual public relations problems confronting business, government, education, and other institutions. Focus on strategic planning matrix.

COMMS 421 : Public Relations Writing and Production. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321, 336; computer proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, Flash, and Dreamweaver demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of Office of Information Technology course.
DESCRIPTION: Professional public relations writing and editing in a variety of formats as used in public relations applications.

COMMS 485 : Strategic Public Relations Campaigns. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 318, 336, 421; software proficiency in Flash, Dreamweaver, and Image Ready as demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of Office of Information Technology course.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course applying communication principles to internal and external publics; fact finding, planning, and evaluating social interrelationships; major campaigns for selected clients.

7. After consulting with an advisor, complete an internship in conjunction with 4 hours of the following:
   COMMS 496R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr:Arr)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Major status; prerequisites satisfied; clearance by the Communications Department.
   DESCRIPTION: Professional field experience.

   Note: A C– grade or better in the following prerequisite courses must be achieved before the internship experience: Comms 321, 336, 421.

8. Complete the following:
   ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
   NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Communications Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Communications (15 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

COMMS 230 : Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

COMMS 235 : Introduction to Public Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy and practice of public relations in business, government, education, and other institutions. Study of publics, media, methods, press relations, and publicity.

COMMS 239 : Principles of Journalism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of journalism; critical evaluation of journalists' and news organizations' role and value in societies they serve.

2. Complete 3 additional hours from the following:

COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.

DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class in the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

Show all Communications Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Communications (Comms)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

COMMS 101 : Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Historical and modern roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

200-Level Courses

COMMS 211 : News Writing. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status; a B grade or better in one of the following: Engl 150, Phil 150, or Honrs 150.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of identifying news and writing it for newspaper, radio, television, and Internet audiences.
NOTE: Lab required.

COMMS 230 : Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

COMMS 235 : Introduction to Public Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy and practice of public relations in business, government, education, and other institutions. Study of publics, media, methods, press relations, and publicity.

COMMS 238 : Introduction to Communications Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Pre-communications status.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of mass communication theory and research; historical and philosophical development of communication theory.

COMMS 239 : Principles of Journalism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of journalism; critical evaluation of journalists' and news organizations' role and value in societies they serve.

COMMS 275 : Introduction to Broadcasting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles and theories of broadcasting and the practical application of visual and aural storytelling; videography and field production; non-linear editing for radio, television, and new media.

300-Level Courses

COMMS 300 : Media Ethics, Law and Responsibility. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to First Amendment history and press freedom, law, and theory; media regulation and policy; relationship between law and ethics; key ethical issues in professional communications.

COMMS 301 : Mass Media History and Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and philosophical development of today's media. Includes theories of media change, social responsibility, economic factors, and influential pioneers.

COMMS 302 : Popular Culture and Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Impact of new and traditional media on popular culture. Includes media criticism and cultural theories on the artifacts and drivers of cultural values.

COMMS 308 : Research Methods for Journalism. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Qualitative and quantitative information-gathering strategies and techniques: interviewing, use of surveys and public records; online information gathering and data base analysis.

COMMS 317 : Advertising Research Methods. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.

COMMS 318 : Public Relations Research and Measurement. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Research methods and analysis critical to developing strategic public relations and measuring its effectiveness, emphasizing focus group and survey approaches with qualitative and quantitative statistical analysis.

COMMS 319 : Research in Communication. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures and design considerations for studying media messages, audiences, and effects. Emphasizes survey and focus group approaches to data collection and analysis.

COMMS 321 : News Reporting. (3:2:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or concurrent enrollment; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Research and reporting skills. Database retrieval and interviewing. Beat reporting for newspapers, radio, and online media. Lab required.

COMMS 325 : Broadcast Reporting. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or concurrent enrollment; major status.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and techniques of broadcast and online news reporting. Includes recording and videotaping reports of government, courts, and other institutions.

COMMS 326 : Performance for Broadcast. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of presenting news and information for radio, television, and new media.

COMMS 327R : Special Topics in Broadcasting. (3:2:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Includes radio arts, specialty reporting, documentary production, and sports broadcasting.

COMMS 329 : Opinion Writing. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Function of editorials, columns, commentaries, and reviews in the mass media.
NOTE: Open enrollment.

COMMS 330 : Creating Advertising Concepts - Portfolio 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Adobe Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Basic consumer advertising; copywriting, design, and layout developed from creative strategies. Solving creative problems.

COMMS 331 : Creating Advertising Concepts - Portfolio 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 330; software proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, and Adobe Illustrator demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced consumer advertising: copywriting, design, and layout.

COMMS 332 : Marketing Media Planning and Strategy. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Media planning, theory, and practice in context of the marketing mix. Application of computer-based models as aids to media decisions. Writing of marketing- based media plans. Case study approach to both print and broadcast media.

COMMS 336 : Strategic Planning and Problem Solving. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Cases selected from wide range of actual public relations problems confronting business, government, education, and other institutions. Focus on strategic planning matrix.

COMMS 345 : Media Sales and Promotion. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: major status.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of media sales process. Theory and application of persuasion relating to media sales.

COMMS 351 : Media and Their Audiences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding media content and channels empowering and improving media consumption and interpretation. Includes new technology, social media, consumer behavior, media criticism, and media literacy.

COMMS 360 : Communication Management Principles and Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Management principles and theory, emphasizing responsible management benefiting organizations and their stakeholders. Includes crisis communication, media or agency management, and programming.

COMMS 365 : Photojournalism. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; admission to news design and new media track; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Shooting, processing, selecting, and preparing photographs for use in publications.

COMMS 370R : Special Topics in Communications. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)

OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Subject matter may vary. Specific topics emphasizing general issues related to all mass communication.

COMMS 377 : Feature Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of nonfiction magazine markets and effective writing methods; criticism of students' articles.

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

COMMS 385 : Televislon News Producing. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 325.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of producing and presenting information for television. Role of television news in society, nature of audiences, production techniques, and TV news management. Lab includes producing daily cable newscast.

COMMS 390R : Student Media Labs. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate introductory course (Comms 211, 230, 235, or 275); lab advisor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Student-run media labs such as the Advanced Advertising Lab, Bradley Agency, Daily News, and Daily Universe.
NOTE: Cannot be combined with paid position in the same lab.

COMMS 395R : International Media Studies Abroad. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: Alternate terms
DESCRIPTION: Study Abroad course emphasizing media and culture of region selected.

COMMS 396R : Communications Practicum. (1:0:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent and approval of task or projects.
DESCRIPTION: Practice and projects in communication.

COMMS 398R : Projects in Communications. (.5-4:Arr:0)
PREREQUISITE: Junior standing and sequence coordinator's consent. Project approval required before registration
DESCRIPTION: Projects in communication studies.

400-Level Courses

COMMS 402 : Media Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Criticism of electronic media systems and their products and effects; critic's role and qualifications.

COMMS 406 : Media and the First Amendment. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status; Comms 300.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced understanding of media law, policy, and regulation of free speech and press. Includes Freedom of Information, rights of press, government control, and legal precedents regarding the First Amendment.

COMMS 411 : Mass Communications Processes and Effects. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Mass communication as a social process, incorporating literature from journalism, social psychology, sociology, political science, and history. Factors in message construction, dissemination, and audience reception.

COMMS 416 : Media Advocacy and Social Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Communication principles, theories, and approaches applied to effect social change. Includes public policy, grass roots advocacy, social marketing, and social movements.

COMMS 420 : Advanced Print Reporting. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Comms 308, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Print news coverage of government, courts, education, and other institutions. Investigative reporting on major public issues and trends.

COMMS 421 : Public Relations Writing and Production. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321, 336; computer proficiency in InDesign, Adobe Photoshop, Flash, and Dreamweaver demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of Office of Information Technology course.
DESCRIPTION: Professional public relations writing and editing in a variety of formats as used in public relations applications.

COMMS 428 : Publication Graphics and Production. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms.

COMMS 432 : Account Planning Management (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Comms 317.
DESCRIPTION: Development and execution of a comprehensive strategic advertising research program, including data collecting, interpretation, field investigating, audience analysis, and strategy development.

COMMS 433 : Advanced Advertising Concepting - Portfolio 3. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 331; concurrent enrollment in Comms 489.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course in creating consumer advertising concepts, copywriting, design, and layout. Emphasizes finished portfolios.

COMMS 480 : Media Ethics and Moral Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced application of moral reasoning and understanding of ethical issues in mass communication. Includes current cases and issues, professional practices, and philosophical foundations of ethics.

COMMS 481 : Gender, Race, and Class In the Media. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Applying critical theory to the interaction between media and underrepresented groups in society. Includes stereotypes and portrayals, access to media, participation, and media ownership.

COMMS 482 : Media and World Religions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of media, world religions, and beliefs. Includes media coverage and portrayal of religion, religions' use of media, conflict between the two, and communicating across religious cultures.

COMMS 483 : Advanced Communications Studies (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Comms 319; 411 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary developments in communication theory, research, and practice.

COMMS 484 : News Editing and News Judgment. (3:2:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Comms 321; 420 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Management and editing of news flow, ranging from editorial conceptualization and news judgment to copy editing, headline writing, and basic page design.

COMMS 485 : Strategic Public Relations Campaigns. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 318, 336, 421; software proficiency in Flash, Dreamweaver, and Image Ready as demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of Office of Information Technology course.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course applying communication principles to internal and external publics; fact finding, planning, and evaluating social interrelationships; major campaigns for selected clients.

COMMS 486 : Advanced Broadcast Reporting. (3:2:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, alternate terms
PREREQUISITE: Comms 308, 385.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone for broadcast journalism students. In-depth broadcast news coverage of major public issues and trends. Formats may include daily news reports, series, and documentaries.

COMMS 487 : Multimedia Journalism. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Comms 438; software proficiency in Flash, Dreamweaver, Image Ready demonstrated by portfolio review or completion of OIT course; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Editing, design, and delivery of multimedia and interactive news content. Theories of new media use and practical application of those theories to create professional-level content.

COMMS 489 : Strategic Advertising Campaigns. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Comms 300, 317, 332, 432; Comms 433 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Researching, planning, budgeting, creating, and writing national advertising campaigns; writing and producing a complete advertising plan, accompanied by a formal client presentation.

COMMS 495R : Research and Readings in Communication Practice. (.5-4:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: senior standing and instructor's approval of projects.
DESCRIPTION: Independent research projects and readings for communications majors.
NOTE: Projects must be approved in advance of registration.

COMMS 496R : Academic Internshlp. (1-9:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; prerequisites satisfied; clearance by the Communications Department.
DESCRIPTION: Professional field experience.

COMMS 497R : Research Practicum. (1:0:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; instructor's consent; approval of tasks or projects.
DESCRIPTION: Conducting research in a mentored environment with a faculty-sponsored research project.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Communications Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Communications Faculty

Professors

Adams, Edward Eugene

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AAS, Ricks College, 1982
BS, University of Phoenix, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, Ohio University, Athens, 1993

Hughes, John R.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Professor

Thomsen, Steven Riley

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Ball State University, 1984
PhD, University of Georgia, 1994

Wilson, Laurie J

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, American University, 1988

Associate Professors

Baker, Sherry Pack

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1984
MS, University of Utah, 1988
PhD, University of Utah, 1994

Callister, Mark Alden

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Arizona, 1997

Gale, Larrie Eldon E.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, San Diego State University, 1967
MA, San Diego State University, 1970
PhD, University of Utah, 1973

Mouritsen, Russell

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MEd, University of Utah, 1972
PhD, University of Utah, 1980

Palmer, Allen W.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, University of Utah, 1996

Plowman, Kenneth Dean

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Maryland, 1995

Robinson, Thomas Eugene

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Northern Arizona University, 1988
MA, University of Nevada, Las Vegas, 1992
PhD, University of Southern Mississippi, 1996

Stoker, Kevin Lamonte

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, University of Alababa, 1993
PhD, University of Alabama, 1998

Wakefield, Robert I.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Professor
EGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990

Assistant Professors

Carter, Edward L.

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Northwestern University, 1999
JD, Brigham Young University J. Reuben Clark Law School, 2003
LLM, University of Edinburgh School of Law, 2009

Cressman, Dale L

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Utah, 2003

Cutri, Christopher

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: MFA, Art Center College of Design, 1997

Randle, Quint Bryce

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, Pepperdine University, 1995
PhD, Michigan State University, 2001

Rawlins, Bradley Lane

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Washington State University, 1987
MA, University of Alababa, 1992
PhD, University of Alabama, 1995

Worsham, Anne Golden

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 2003
PhD, University of Utah, 2007

Associate Teaching Professors

Kelly, Lincoln Kevin

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Art Center Collage of Design, 1977

McKinlay, Douglas R

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
MA, Brigham Young University, 1969

Walton, Susan

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1986

Assistant Teaching Professors

Campbell, Joel Jay

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: MA, Ohio State University, 2000

Walz, J Robert

COLLEGE: Fine Arts and Communications
DEPARTMENT: Communications
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Computer Science

Tony R. Martinez, Chair
3361 TMCB, (801) 422-3027

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Computer Science are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Computer science touches virtually every area of human endeavor. Software is responsible for everything from the control of kitchen appliances to sophisticated climate models used in predicting future environmental change. Students in computer science learn to approach complex problems in business, science, and entertainment using their strong background in mathematics, algorithms, and data structures.

The degree programs in the Computer Science Department prepare students to be confident software developers and technical problem solvers. The curriculum also trains students for research into new avenues where computers will have a significant impact.

The BS curriculum is accredited by the Computing Accreditation Commission of ABET.

Career Opportunities

Graduates pursue exciting opportunities in graphics, artifical intelligence, software engineering, database design, scientific programming, systems administration, and research at universities and national laboratories.

Students completing the animation emphasis will be prepared for technical positions at animation and game programming studios. Students will learn both the technical and artistic side of creating and implementing digital animations and games.

The bioinformatic emphasis is designed for students who are interested in building software to assist in analyzing biological systems. Students will graduate with a significant background in biology coupled with the software development and analysis skills necessary to implement large bioinformatics applications.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BS in Computer Science
  - Emphasis (optional):
    - Animation
    - Bioinformatics

Minors
- Computer Science
- Computer Science Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Computer Science
PHD in Computer Science

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Personnel in the College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center will advise regarding core courses and suggested general education. Questions regarding curriculum and career decisions should be directed to the undergraduate advisor in the Computer Science Department.

Note: All hours of credit applied toward a major in computer science must be of C– or better. Students may choose to graduate under later requirements by updating their date of entry into the major at the college advisement center.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Computer Science (72–76 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

C S 312 : Algorithm Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of algorithms including searching, sorting, graphs, and trees.

C S 330 : Concepts of Programming Languages. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts characterizing high-level computer programming languages, process and data abstration, encapsulation, inheritance, functional programming, logic programming, scanners, and parsers.

C S 340 : Software Design and Testing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of software design, design patterns, design representation, refactoring. Principles of software quality assurance and testing. Development and testing tools.

C S 345 : Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

C S 360 : Internet Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 345.
DESCRIPTION: Internet application programming, including sockets, threads, CGI, database, e-commerce, Web services.

C S 404 : Ethics and Computers in Society. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240; junior-senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Societal impact of computer technology, the computer scientist's place in society, ethical issues. Reading, discussion, and writing seminar.

3. Complete the following supporting courses:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.

NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

(or, for those who are wishing for a more advanced experience and are prepared, complete Stat 321, 331, 332, or 441; for details see an advisor).

4. Complete four courses from the following:
   Any 400-level computer science courses (except C S 404 and 405).
   EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
   DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

   EC EN 425 : Real-Time Operating Systems. (4:3:3)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: EC En 324.
   DESCRIPTION: Hardware/software interface, real-time kernel internals, implementation of high-level language constructs, issues in real-time application software development.

Note: If C S 401R is chosen, it must be taken for three hours.

5. Complete one course from the following:
   Any course not used in item 4 above.
   Any 500-level computer science course.

Note: If either C S 501R or 598R is chosen, it must be taken for three hours.

6. Complete one course from the following:
   Any course not used in item 4 above.

   CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
   NOTE: Tutorial included.

   C S 405 : Creating and Managing a Software Business. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: C S 240, Engl 316.
   DESCRIPTION: Entrepreneurship, idea/opportunity generation, strategic planning, legal organization, product development, marketing/sales, customer support, fund raising, and effective management.

   EC EN 224 : Fundamentals of Digital Systems. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: CS-ECEn 124.
   DESCRIPTION: Digital logic: theory, design, and implementation of combinational and sequential logic. Laboratory experience in construction of digital logic circuits.

   GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
   DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

   MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

   MATH 315 : Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 190, 343.
   DESCRIPTION: Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

   MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 350 : Combinatorics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 343, 371.
DESCRIPTION: Permutations, combinations, recurrence relations, applications.

MATH 355 : Graph Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

MATH 371 : Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 190, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

MATH 410 : Introduction to Numerical Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Root finding, interpolation, curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, multiple integrals, direct solvers for linear systems, least squares, rational approximations, Fourier and other orthogonal methods.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

STAT 321 : Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

(if not taken to satisfy item 3)
STAT 331 : Introduction to Bayesian Statistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: The scientific method; conditional probability; Bayesian methods; models for proportions; densities for proportions; models for means; densities for means; regression analysis.

(if not taken to satisfy item 3)
STAT 332 : Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

(if not taken to satisfy item 3)
STAT 421 : Introduction to Probability and Statistical Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Math 113 or equivalent; Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Probability; random variables; probability models; methods of estimation; sampling distribution and the Central Limit Theorem; Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing.

STAT 441 : Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

(if not taken to satisfy item 3).

Note: If not taken to satisfy general education requirements, Chem 111, Geol 111, Phscs 123, or Phscs 220 may fulfill this elective requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Computer Science Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Computer Science: Animation Emphasis (79–80 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

C S 312 : Algorithm Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of algorithms including searching, sorting, graphs, and trees.

C S 340 : Software Design and Testing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of software design, design patterns, design representation, refactoring. Principles of software quality assurance and testing. Development and testing tools.

C S 345 : Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

C S 404 : Ethics and Computers in Society. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240; junior-senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Societal impact of computer technology, the computer scientist's place in society, ethical issues. Reading, discussion, and writing seminar.

C S 455 : Computer Graphics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Interactive computer graphics systems programming and architecture.

3. Complete the following supporting courses:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

INDES 251 : Fundamentals of Two-Dimensional Graphics. (2:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance to animation major or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to design language by exploring elements of photography, drawing, and two-dimensional computer graphics, including color theory and conceptual elements of composition.

INDES 255R : Computer Graphics for Non-Animation Majors. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Techniques used in modeling, texturing, lighting, and rendering, including color theory, composition, visual literacy, and principles of design.

INDES 455R : Shader Programming. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Advanced rendering and shading techniques for attaining desired visual effects. Using shading languages for realizing both photorealistic and non-photorealistic imaging.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

(or, for those who are wishing for a more advanced experience and are prepared, complete Stat 321, 331, 332, or 441; for details see an advisor).

TMA 102 : Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
DESCRIPTION: Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

TMA 294 : History of Animation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: TMA 102.
DESCRIPTION: Origins and developments of animation internationally to the present, focusing on aesthetic, technical, political, and economic aspects of the medium.

VASTU 101 : Introduction to Art and Drawing. (3:2:4)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Readings, aesthetic topics, basic drawing techniques and concepts.

4. Complete two courses from the following:

C S 360 : Internet Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 345.
DESCRIPTION: Internet application programming, including sockets, threads, CGI, database, e-commerce, Web services.

EC EN 425 : Real-Time Operating Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 324.
DESCRIPTION: Hardware/software interface, real-time kernel internals, implementation of high-level language constructs, issues in real-time application software development.

Any of the 400-level computer science courses (except C S 404, 405, and 455).

Note: If C S 401R is chosen, it must be taken for three hours.

5. Complete one course from the following:

Any course not used in item 4 above.

Any of the 500-level computer science courses.

INDES 450 : Computer Graphics Studio 3. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: InDes 352.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of InDes 352. In-depth experiences making computer animatiions and visual effects.

INDES 452 : Computer Graphics Studio 4. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: InDes 450.
DESCRIPTION: Portfolio development based on advanced animation/design projects.

Note: If either C S 501R or 598R is chosen, it must be taken for three hours each.

6. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 111 : Introduction to Art History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topical approach to art history and appreciation.
NOTE: Honors also.

ARTHC 202 : World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth

century.

MFG 201 : History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Egyptian antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

SFL 102 : Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Computer Science Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Computer Science: Bioinformatics Emphasis (84 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

C S 312 : Algorithm Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of algorithms including searching, sorting, graphs, and trees.

C S 340 : Software Design and Testing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of software design, design patterns, design representation, refactoring. Principles of software quality assurance and testing. Development and testing tools.

C S 345 : Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

C S 360 : Internet Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 345.
DESCRIPTION: Internet application programming, including sockets, threads, CGI, database, e-commerce, Web services.

C S 404 : Ethics and Computers in Society. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240; junior-senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Societal impact of computer technology, the computer scientist's place in society, ethical issues. Reading, discussion, and writing seminar.

C S 418 : Bioinformatics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312.
DESCRIPTION: Computational methods for analyzing biological systems. Dynamic programming, Markov models, Neural Networks, and Bayesian analysis are used to predict secondary structure, tertiary structure, and active sites for drug docking given molecular DNA sequence data.

3. Complete the following supporting courses:

BIO 265 : (Bio-MMBio-PWS) Genomics. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Bioinformatics major status or PDBio 120.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to genomics and genome projects (human, plant, bacterial, yeast, parasites). Introduction to genes and genomes; computational and statistical approaches for analyzing genomic data, including genome sequencing and annotation, gene expression and the transcriptome, proteomics and functional genomics, and genetic variation and SNPs.

BIO 365 : Computational Biology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 265, C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Computational analysis of DNA data; introduction to bioinformatics databasing using Perl and SQL; configuration of UNIX workstations for bioinformatics analyses.

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

(or, for those who are wishing for a more advanced experience and are prepared, complete Stat 321, 331, 332, or 441; for details see an advisor).

4. Complete three elective courses from any of the 400-level computer science courses (except 404 and 418).

Note: If C S 401R is chosen, it must be taken for 3 hours.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Computer Science Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Computer Science (15 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

2. Complete the following:

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

3. Complete two additional computer science courses from the following:

C S 100 : Fundamentals of Computing and Information. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Computing, information structures, programming principles, Internet, World Wide Web, text, spreadsheets, data representations for images, sound and video.
NOTE: For nonmajors.

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

Recommendations

1. Although not required, C S 100 is strongly recommended.
2. Students wishing to emphasize programming skills should include C S 240.
3. Students wishing to emphasize computer architecture should include C S 124.
4. Students wishing to emphasize mathematical rigor, should include C S 252.
5. Students wishing to take particular upper-division courses may be allowed to substitute 300- or 400-level computer science courses (except C S 404 and C S 405) for one or both of the two additional computer science courses. This option requires proper preparation and prior approval of course instructors and the undergraduate coordinator.

Show all Computer Science Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Computer Science Teaching (17–18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The computer science teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

2. Complete one additional computer science course with the approval of the Computer Science Department undergraduate coordinator.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Computer Science Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Computer Science (C S)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

C S 100 : Fundamentals of Computing and Information. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Computing, information structures, programming principles, Internet, World Wide Web, text, spreadsheets, data representations for images, sound and video.
NOTE: For nonmajors.

C S 124 : (C S-EC En) Introduction to Computer Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming. Logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, and algorithm analysis.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Internships or cooperative education experiences with organizations outside BYU.

200-Level Courses

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

C S 252 : Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Finite state automata, regular languages, lexical analysis; push-down automata, context-free languages, parsing; Turing machines and unrestricted grammars; computability complexity, NP-completeness.

300-Level Courses

C S 301R : Topics in Computer Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate-level topics as announced.

C S 312 : Algorithm Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, 252.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of algorithms including searching, sorting, graphs, and trees.

C S 330 : Concepts of Programming Languages. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.

C S 340 : Software Design and Testing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of software design, design patterns, design representation, refactoring. Principles of software quality assurance and testing. Development and testing tools.

C S 345 : Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

C S 360 : Internet Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 236, 345.
DESCRIPTION: Internet application programming, including sockets, threads, CGI, database, e-commerce, Web services.

400-Level Courses

C S 401R : Topics in Computer Science. (1-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Undergraduate level subjects as announced before each semester.

C S 404 : Ethics and Computers in Society. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240; junior-senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Societal impact of computer technology, the computer scientist's place in society, ethical issues. Reading, discussion, and writing seminar.

C S 405 : Creating and Managing a Software Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, Engl 316.
DESCRIPTION: Entrepreneurship, idea/opportunity generation, strategic planning, legal organization, product development, marketing/sales, customer support, fund raising, and effective management.

C S 412 : Modeling and Optimization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Modeling, learning, and decision/control identified and placed in perspective. Linear optimization, game theory, operations research, network flows, and Markov processes.

C S 418 : Bioinformatics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312.
DESCRIPTION: Computational methods for analyzing biological systems. Dynamic programming, Markov models, Neural Networks, and Bayesian analysis are used to predict secondary structure, tertiary structure, and active sites for drug docking given molecular DNA sequence data.

C S 428 : Software Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 340.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, design, implementation, and testing of significant software systems.

C S 431 : Algorithmic Languages and Compilers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Formal description of algorithmic languages and techniques used in their compilation: semantics, ambiguities, procedures, replication, iteration, recursion.

C S 450 : Introduction to Digital Signal and Image Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: One- and two-dimensional signal-processing fundamentals, including sampling, noise, transforms, filtering, enhancement, and compression. Hands-on experimentation with speech, music, still images, and full-motion video.

C S 452 : Database Modeling Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Database models: relational, deductive, object-oriented. Integrity constraints, query languages, database design.

C S 455 : Computer Graphics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Interactive computer graphics systems programming and architecture.

C S 456 : Introduction to User Interface Software. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 340.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to software architectures and techniques for graphical user interfaces. Input devices, windowing systems, event-driven programming, interactive geometry.

C S 460 : Computer Communications and Networking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

C S 462 : Large-Scale Distributed System Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and implementing client-server enterprise applications. Web servers, application servers, database connectivity, remote procedure calls, transactions, messaging, directory, naming services, threads, security, data formats.

C S 465 : Computer Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 360.
RECOMMENDED: C S 404.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer security fundamentals: confidentiality, integrity, authentication, and access control. Secret key and public key cryptography, network security protocols, viruses, and fire walls.

C S 470 : Introduction to Artificial Intelligence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to core areas of artifical intelligence; intelligent agents, problem solving and search, knowledge-based systems and inference, planning, uncertainty, learning, and perception.

C S 476 : Introduction to Data Mining. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 312.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the basics of data mining. CRISP-DM, pre-processing techniques, association rules, linear/logistic regression, clustering, text and web mining, privacy and ethical issues.

C S 478 : Introduction to Neural Networks and Machine Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Neural network and machine learning models include Perceptrons, back-propagation, decision trees, genetic algorithms, and other mechanisms allowing computers to learn without being programmed.

C S 486 : Verification and Validation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing formal verification algorithms and using them in protocol and circuit design; proving both incorrectness and correctness.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

C S 501R : Advanced Topics in Computer Science. (1-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced undergraduate- and graduate-level subjects as announced before each semester.

C S 557 : Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: C S 240, Math 343; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Free-form curves and surfaces; mathematical theory and algorithms. Bezier and B-spline curves and surfaces, subdivision surfaces, T-splines, free-form deformation, and intersection algorithms. Several programming projects.

C S 579 : Natural Language Processing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Machine translation, human-computer dialog, question answering, parsing, and generating from an artificial intelligence and machine-learning perspective.

C S 598R : Special Projects. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Computer Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Computer Science Faculty

Professors

Barrett, William A

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1974
PhD, University of Utah, 1978

Burton, Robert Preece

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1969
PhD, University of Utah, 1973

Egbert, Parris

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1986
MS, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1990
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1992

Embley, David W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1970
MS, University of Utah, 1972
PhD, University of Illinois, 1976

Martinez, Tony Ramon

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of California, Los Angeles, 1982
MS, University of California, Los Angeles, 1983
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1986

Olsen, Dan Reed

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1981

Sederberg, Thomas W

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Purdue University, Lafayette, 1983

Woodfield, Scott N

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Purdue University, Lafayette, 1980

Associate Professors

Clement, Mark Joel

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Oregon State University, 1994

Giraud-Carrier, Christophe Gerard

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Brigham Young University, 1993
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Goodrich, Michael A

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1996

Knutson, Charles Douglas

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Oregon State University, 1998

Morse, Bryan Stuart

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1995

Ng, Yiu-Kai Dennis

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Kansas State University, 1991

Seamons, Kent Eldon

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1996

Snell, Quinn O

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1992
MS, Utah State University, 1993
PhD, Iowa State University, 1997

Windley, Phillip J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Idaho, 1982
MS, University of California, Davis, 1990
PhD, University of California, Davis, 1992

Zappala, Daniel Mark Alexander

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Stanford University, 1990
PhD, University of Southern California, 1997

Assistant Professors

Jones, Michael D

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Utah, 2001

Mercer, Eric G

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1996
MS, University of Utah, 1999
PhD, University of Utah, 2002

Ringger, Eric Karl

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, University of Rochester, 1994
PhD, University of Rochester, 2000

Seppi, Kevin Darrell

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Santa Clara University, 1987
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1990

Ventura, Dan Aaron

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1998

Warnick, Sean C

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Arizona State University, 1993
MS, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1995
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2003

Associate Teaching Professor

Barker, Joseph Cory

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Assistant Teaching Professors

Rodham, Kenneth J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1995

Roper, Paul Ross

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Computer Science
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1976
MS, Brigham Young University, 1979

Counseling Psychology and Special Education

Mary Anne Prater, Chair
340 MCKB, (801) 422-3857

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement and Certification Office
120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426

Admission to Degree Program

Students must apply to the Counseling Psychology and Special Education Department for admission to the special education undergraduate degree and post-baccalaureate licensing programs. Applications may be obtained from the department Web site at http://education.byu.edu/cpse. See additional information below.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
BS in Special Education
Emphases:
Mild/Moderate Disabilities
Severe Disabilities

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Special Education
EdS in School Psychology
PhD in Counseling Psychology

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Post-Baccalaureate Special Education Licensing

Individuals who have already completed a bachelor's degree who apply and are admitted to the special education licensing program may be licensed in special education upon completion of the required licensing course work. No degree designation is given for this option.

Admission to BS Programs

Among other factors, the application review process involves consideration of the following:

1. Significant experience working with individuals who have disabilities (see Special Education Exploratory Experience Log and Summary Report in application packet on Web site).
2. A fingerprinting and FBI background check. See Education Advisement and Certification Office (120 MCKB) for

instructions.
3. Successful completion of technology skills assessment.

Additional Licensing Requirements

It is the student's responsibility to be sure that the Praxis test has been taken and that BYU has received the test scores, that the student's fingerprint background clearance is current prior to graduation, and that state licensing fees have been paid. Students will also be responsible for any additional requirements imposed by the state prior to their graduation. To confirm the status of these requirements contact the Education Advisement and Certification Center, 120 MCKB, (801) 422-3426. Graduation and Utah licensure cannot be processed until these requirements have been completed.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Special Education: Mild/Moderate Disabilities Emphasis (55 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the Education Advisement and Certification Office for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following with at least a B- grade prior to beginning the program:
   CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   CPSE 410 : Applied Behavior Analysis in Education. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: admission to special education program.
   DESCRIPTION: Strategies for educating individuals with or at-risk for disabilities. prevention, early intervention, and treatment strategies.

   CPSE 420 : Assessment and Evaluation of Students with Exceptional Needs. (3:2:1)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program.
   DESCRIPTION: Determining present levels of performance, classifying students for special education services, and writing goals and objectives for IEP development.

   CPSE 430 : Teaching Reading/Language Arts to Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Research-based methods for teaching language arts to students with disabilities.

   CPSE 470 : Legal Issues Influencing Collaboration in Special Education. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: Su
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Laws and issues influencing special education and educator's roles in collaborating with families and professionals.

   CPSE 480 : Educational and Multicultural Issues in Special Education. (3:ARR:ARR)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Special education issues: multicultural, historical, and legal foundations.

   IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   CPSE 440 : Curriculum and Instruction for Secondary Students with Disabilities. (1-3:ARR:ARR)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 446R or 447R.
DESCRIPTION: Selection and adaptation of curriculum accommodations, transition planning, and post-secondary preparation.

4. Complete the following emphasis courses:

CPSE 425 : Foundations in Language Arts Instruction for Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations in analyzing and delivering research-based language arts instruction to students with disabilities, including second language learners with disabilities.

CPSE 442 : Social and Behavioral Strategies for Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, procedures, and strategies for classroom behavior management, social competence, and individual and school wide intervention plans.

CPSE 446R : Practicum in Secondary Education: Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 440 (secondary).
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in teaching students with mild-moderate disabilities in secondary settings.

CPSE 452 : Effective Teaching Strategies for Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: IEP-based lesson planning and teacher-directed and student-mediated instructional strategies.

CPSE 462 : Teaching Math to Students with Disabilities. (3:3:)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Research-based methods for teaching mathematics to students with disabilities.

CPSE 490 : Capstone Seminar: Students With Disabilities. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all special education courses and concurrent enrollment with student teaching/internship.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of knowledge and skills in special education; development of professional ethics and commitment to professional development.

5. Complete 8 hours of the following:

CPSE 466R : Practicum: Teaching Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education licensure program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in the effective teaching cycle for students with mild/moderate disabilities.

6. Complete 12 hours of the following student teaching or internship experience:

CPSE 486R : Student Teaching: Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in special education.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating exerience teaching students with mild/moderate disabilities in school settings.
NOTE: Fee.

CPSE 496R : Academic Internship: Special Education. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Departmental approval of application; placement one semester in advance of registration.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the licensure program teaching students with disabilities in a school setting full-time for one academic year.

Show all Counseling Psychology and Special Education Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Special Education: Severe Disabilities Emphasis (55 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the Education Advisement and Certification Office for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following with at least a B– grade prior to beginning the program:
   CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

2. Complete the following core courses:
   CPSE 410 : Applied Behavior Analysis in Education. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: admission to special education program.
   DESCRIPTION: Strategies for educating individuals with or at-risk for disabilities. prevention, early intervention, and treatment strategies.

   CPSE 420 : Assessment and Evaluation of Students with Exceptional Needs. (3:2:1)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program.
   DESCRIPTION: Determining present levels of performance, classifying students for special education services, and writing goals and objectives for IEP development.

   CPSE 430 : Teaching Reading/Language Arts to Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Research-based methods for teaching language arts to students with disabilities.

   CPSE 470 : Legal Issues Influencing Collaboration in Special Education. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: Su
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Laws and issues influencing special education and educator's roles in collaborating with families and professionals.

   CPSE 480 : Educational and Multicultural Issues in Special Education. (3:ARR:ARR)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Special education issues: multicultural, historical, and legal foundations.

   IP&T 287 : Instructional Technology for Early Childhood, Elementary, and Special Education. (2:2:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles, along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for early childhood, elementary, and special education settings.

3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   CPSE 440 : Curriculum and Instruction for Secondary Students with Disabilities. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE

446R or 447R.
DESCRIPTION: Selection and adaptation of curriculum accommodations, transition planning, and post-secondary preparation.

4. Complete the following emphasis courses:

CPSE 443 : Social and Behavioral Strategies for Students with Severe Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, procedures, and strategies for creating positive educational environments, including functional assessment, behavior intervention plans, and development of social competence.

CPSE 447R : Practicum in Secondary Education: Severe Disabilities. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 440 (secondary).
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in teaching students with severe disabilities in secondary settings.

CPSE 453 : Curriculum and Instruction: Severe Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for designing and implementing educational programs, curricula, and teaching methods for students with severe disabilities.

CPSE 463 : Assistive Technology for Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and applications in using assistive technology to improve the education and communication skills of students with disabilities.

CPSE 490 : Capstone Seminar: Students With Disabilities. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all special education courses and concurrent enrollment with student teaching/internship.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of knowledge and skills in special education; development of professional ethics and commitment to professional development.

EXSC 461 : Adapted Physical Education for Teaching Majors. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Program, legal mandates, management techniques, and assessing and identifying special needs students.

5. Complete 8 hours of the following:

CPSE 467R : Practicum: Teaching Students with Severe Disabilities. (1-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education licensure program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in the effective teaching cycle for students with severe disabilities.

6. Complete 12 hours of the following student teaching or internship experience:

CPSE 487R : Student Teaching: Students with Severe Disabilities. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in special education.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience teaching students with severe disabilities in school settings.

CPSE 496R : Academic Internship: Special Education. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Departmental approval of application; placement one semester in advance of registration.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the licensure program teaching students with disabilities in a school setting full-time for one academic year.

Show all Counseling Psychology and Special Education Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

Counseling Psychology and Special Education (CPSE)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

400-Level Courses

CPSE 400 : Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive educational environments. Lab.

CPSE 401R : Practicum in Educational Partnerships. (1:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to elementary, secondary, or special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Collaborating with parents, professionals, and others to meet needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive or special education environments.

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

CPSE 410 : Applied Behavior Analysis in Education. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: admission to special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for educating individuals with or at-risk for disabilities. prevention, early intervention, and treatment strategies.

CPSE 420 : Assessment and Evaluation of Students with Exceptional Needs. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Determining present levels of performance, classifying students for special education services, and writing goals and objectives for IEP development.

CPSE 425 : Foundations in Language Arts Instruction for Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Foundations in analyzing and delivering research-based language arts instruction to students with disabilities, including second language learners with disabilities.

CPSE 430 : Teaching Reading/Language Arts to Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Research-based methods for teaching language arts to students with disabilities.

CPSE 440 : Curriculum and Instruction for Secondary Students with Disabilities. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 446R or 447R.
DESCRIPTION: Selection and adaptation of curriculum accommodations, transition planning, and post-secondary preparation.

CPSE 442 : Social and Behavioral Strategies for Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, procedures, and strategies for classroom behavior management, social competence, and individual and school wide intervention plans.

CPSE 443 : Social and Behavioral Strategies for Students with Severe Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, procedures, and strategies for creating positive educational environments, including functional assessment, behavior intervention plans, and development of social competence.

CPSE 446R : Practicum in Secondary Education: Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 440 (secondary).
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in teaching students with mild-moderate disabilities in secondary settings.

CPSE 447R : Practicum in Secondary Education: Severe Disabilities. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent; concurrent enrollment in CPSE 440 (secondary).

CPSE 452 : Effective Teaching Strategies for Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400, 410.
DESCRIPTION: IEP-based lesson planning and teacher-directed and student-mediated instructional strategies.

CPSE 453 : Curriculum and Instruction: Severe Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for designing and implementing educational programs, curricula, and teaching methods for students with severe disabilities.

CPSE 462 : Teaching Math to Students with Disabilities. (3:3:)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Research-based methods for teaching mathematics to students with disabilities.

CPSE 463 : Assistive Technology for Students with Disabilities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and applications in using assistive technology to improve the education and communication skills of students with disabilities.

CPSE 466R : Practicum: Teaching Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education licensure program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in the effective teaching cycle for students with mild/moderate disabilities.

CPSE 467R : Practicum: Teaching Students with Severe Disabilities. (1-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education licensure program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in the effective teaching cycle for students with severe disabilities.

CPSE 470 : Legal Issues Influencing Collaboration in Special Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Admission to special education program; CPSE 400 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Laws and issues influencing special education and educator's roles in collaborating with families and professionals.

CPSE 480 : Educational and Multicultural Issues in Special Education. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Special education issues: multicultural, historical, and legal foundations.

CPSE 486R : Student Teaching: Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in special education.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating exerience teaching students with mild/moderate disabilities in school settings.
NOTE: Fee.

CPSE 487R : Student Teaching: Students with Severe Disabilities. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in special education.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience teaching students with severe disabilities in school settings.

CPSE 490 : Capstone Seminar: Students With Disabilities. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all special education courses and concurrent enrollment with student teaching/internship.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesis of knowledge and skills in special education; development of professional ethics and commitment to professional development.

CPSE 493R : Readings. (.5-2:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

CPSE 496R : Academic Internship: Special Education. (1-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Departmental approval of application; placement one semester in advance of registration.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the licensure program teaching students with disabilities in a school setting full-time for one academic year.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

CPSE 503 : Education of Individuals with Disabilities. (3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in student teaching or internship.
DESCRIPTION: Developing, implementing, and evaluating programs for individuals with disabilities.

CPSE 514R : Current Topics in Counseling. (.5-3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
NOTE: No graduate credit is given for CPSE 514R.

: Assessing Learning and Behavior.
: Classroom Behavior Management.
: Current Topics in Special Education.
: Curriculum for Exceptional Children.
: Effective Teaching.
: Evaluating Student Learning.
: Exceptional Children in the Regular Classroom.

: Gifted and Talented.
: Learning Disabled.
: Microcomputers in Schools.
: Motivation.
: Program Evaluation.
: Self-Concept.
: Teaching Exceptional Children.

CPSE 515R : Current Topics in Counseling. (.5-3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
NOTE: CPSE 515R credit may count toward a graduate degree if prior approval is obtained.

: Classroom Behavior Management.
: Current Topics in Educational Psychology.
: Current Topics in Special Education.
: Effective Teaching.
: Gifted and Talented.
: Iss Comm Sci Dsrd
: Learning Disabled.
: Motivation.
: Program Evaluation.
: Self-Concept.

CPSE 518 : Introduction to Gifted/Talented Education. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Various approaches to educating the gifted and talented.

CPSE 533R : Practicum in Assessment: Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Assessing, diagnosing, and evaluating individuals with disabilities.

CPSE 545 : Gifted: Creativity and Thinking Strategies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Nature of creativity and approaches to nurturing it.

CPSE 560 : Leadership in Student Services. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On dem.
DESCRIPTION: Applying leadership and administrative theory and methods to student services in school and related educational settings. Helping skills for counselors, school psychologists, principals, teachers, and others interested in the 'learning and emotional climate of the school.
NOTE: Independent Study only; no graduate degree credit given for Independent Study.

CPSE 580R : Directed Observation in the Schools. (.5-3:0:8)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

CPSE 586R : Student Teaching: Students with Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (4-12:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in the special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the program: teaching students with mild/moderate disabilities in school settings.

CPSE 587R : Student Teaching: Students with Severe Disabilities. (4-12:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in the special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the program: teaching students with severe disabilities in school settings.

CPSE 599R : Academic Internship: Special Education. (12:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Successful completion of all core courses and practica in the special education program.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating experience in the licensure program teaching students with disabilities in a school setting full-time for one academic school year.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Counseling Psychology and Special Education Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Counseling Psychology and Special Education Faculty

Professors

Kramer, Gary L.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1971
PhD, Oregon State University, 1977

Prater, Mary Anne

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BMu, University of Utah, 1975
MS, University of Utah, 1982
PhD, Utah State University, 1987

Richards, P Scott

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1988

Young, K Richard

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Utah, 1973

Associate Professors

Ashbaker, Betty Y.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1972
MS, Utah State University, 1974
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1982

Dyches, Tina Taylor

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Utah State University, 1990
EdD, Illinois State University, 1995

Fischer, Lane

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Yound University, 1982
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1991

Gibb, Gordon

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Eastern Montana College, 1976
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of Utah, 1994

Heath, Melissa Ann

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, Texas A&M, 1996

Jackson, Aaron Paul

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of Missouri-Columbia, 1993

Wilder, Lynn K.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Ball State University, 1975
MA, Ball State University, 1978
EdD, Ball State University, 1999

Young, Ellie L

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1987
SPC, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, University of South Florida, 2001

Assistant Professors

Lyon, Rachel Elizabeth Crook

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MA, University of Maryland, College Park, 2000
PhD, University of Maryland, College Park, 2002

Marchant, Michelle

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1991
MS, Utah State University, 1996
PhD, Utah State University, 2000

Smith, Timothy B.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Utah State University, 1993
MA, Rhodes University, South Africa, 1995
MA, Utah State University, 1996
PhD, Utah State University, 1997

Assistant Clinical Professors

Abraham, Heidi L.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2000
MS, Brigham Young University, 2004

Smith, Barbara M

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: MEd, Brigham Young University, 1982

Steed, Katie Edna

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 2000
MS, Brigham Young University, 2004

Instructor

Solomon, Carol J

COLLEGE:	David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT:	Counseling Psychology and Special Education
RANK:	Instructor
DEGREES:	BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
	MEd, Western Oregon State College, 1992

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Dance

Lee Wakefield, Chair
294 RB, (801) 422-5087

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
203 RB, (801) 422-3638

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Dance carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Dance is an art form expressed and communicated through human movement. Throughout history, and in every culture, people have danced. Dance incorporates the physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual aspects of each individual in creating a unique nonverbal expression of thoughts and feelings. As both process and product, dance has the power to refine neuromuscular skill, broaden understanding, increase creative potential, and expand aesthetic sensitivity. At Brigham Young University, dance celebrates the best in humankind and strives to enrich the lives of all who experience it.

The BYU Department of Dance has been accredited by the National Association of Schools of Dance (NASD) since 1989.

Career Opportunities

The majority of career opportunities in the dance field are teaching and performance related. Teaching opportunities are available in colleges and universities (for those with graduate degrees), public schools, private studios, health and fitness spas, special and adult education programs, day care centers, and recreation programs. Performing opportunities are available by audition with professional and regional companies and in theatrical, television, and film production.

Less common, but equally rewarding dance-related careers are also available in the areas of choreography and dance administration, therapy, criticism, history, research, notation, and reconstruction.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BA in Dance
- BA in Dance Education (secondary teacher licensure)

Minors
- Ballroom Dance
- Modern Dance
- World Dance

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

General Information

The Department of Dance is made up of four divisions: Ballet, Ballroom Dance, World Dance, Modern Dance. These divisions work

cooperatively to provide opportunities for all students at the university to develop their potential in dance.

Besides the wide variety of courses that apply toward the general education Wellness requirement, there are professional courses that develop leadership, performance, and choreographic ability in all types of dance. Performing opportunities are provided in on-campus concerts and off-campus performances with groups that tour throughout the world.

Requirements

1. Majors are counseled to maintain healthy lifestyle practices.
2. Dance technique courses (including Dance 243R and 244R) require a grade of at least B– for advancement to next level.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Dance (64 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see item 1 below for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must pass a dance audition for acceptance into the major. Please see the Dance Department for further details.

2. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

3. Complete the following:
   DANCE 230 : Conditioning and Injury Prevention for Dance. (2:3:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing conditioning programs specific to dance. Recognizing and resolving dance injuries. Practical application.

   DANCE 244R : Studio Workship in Modern Dance Improvisation and Composition. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation and composition in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 261 : Orientation to Dance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to dance as a discipline and at Brigham Young University.

   DANCE 264 : Music for Dancers. (2:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Basic music notation, simple and complex rhythmic patterns, and polyrhythms; analysis of selected international music styles; brief historical survey.

   DANCE 342 : Kinesiology and Related Sciences for Dancers. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W; Sp odd years
   PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Dance 230.
   DESCRIPTION: Study and analysis of the neuromusculoskeletal system in practical application to dance for more efficient use of the body and reduction of injuries.

   DANCE 355 : Dance Production, Introduction. (2:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of technical aspects of dance production.

   DANCE 459 : Seminar in Dance. (1:1:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Seminar exposing students to a variety of dance related topics. Instruction by multiple dance professionals in their areas of expertise.

   DANCE 460 : Dance History to 1850. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, Su odd years

DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in tribal cultures and ancient through Romantic historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 461 : Dance History from 1850. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in modern and postmodern historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 469 : Senior Seminar in Dance. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 462 for all dance education majors and for composite dance and modern dance emphasis majors who choose to do a choreographic project.

Note: Dance 469 is a capstone course.

4. Complete one course out of *each* of the following sets of courses:

Either

DANCE 343 : Principles of Somatics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243 and 244, or 291R; 342.
DESCRIPTION: Experiential approach to movement training including body patterning. Integration and personal expression of body and movement choices.

Or

DANCE 351 : Laban Movement Analysis. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, 291R.
DESCRIPTION: Tools to make sense of, and derive meaning from movement. Constituent movement components that facilitate accuracy in teaching, performance, and choreography.

Either

DANCE 361 : Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231, 235, 243, 244, 291R, TMA 229.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

Or

DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate. (2:0:4)
Dance Composition, Intermediate.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

Either

DANCE 359R : Special Topics and Issues. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, 261.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar with rotating topics and issues selected from: dance and health, dance and identity, dance and technology, and dance philosophy and aesthetics.

: Dance Philosophy and Aesthetics.
: Dance and Health Issues.
: Dance and Identity.

Or

DANCE 477 : Dance--A Reflection of Culture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 376.
DESCRIPTION: Study of dance as an expression of culture.

5. Complete the following dance technique courses:

DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

DANCE 243R : Studio Workshop in Modern Dance Technique and Theory. (2.5:0:7.5)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 244R the first time taken.
DESCRIPTION: Technique and theory in a workshop setting.

DANCE 290 : Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

DANCE 291R : Ballet Technique 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 290 or equivalent.

Note: Qualified students may substitute higher-level technique courses for required lower-level technique courses with permission from the Dance Department.

6. Complete nine hours from parts a and b below.

Note 1: At least five hours must be completed in 300-level or above courses. R courses may count only once to complete this requirement, with the exception of modern dance and ballet courses (Dance 340R, 391R, 440R, 490R).

Note 2: Dance 173, 273R, 373R offer different ethnic dance styles taught on a rotation basis. Please see the department for a rotation schedule.

a. Complete at least one course from each of the following categories:
   1. Foot articulation:
      DANCE 135 : Tap Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

      DANCE 171 : Clog Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      DESCRIPTION: Beginning steps and technique, emphasizing slide/drag.

      DANCE 173R : Ethnic Dance--Irish. (.5:0:2)
      Ethnic Dance--Irish.
      DANCE 235 : Tap Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Dance 135 or equivalent.

      DANCE 271 : Clog Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Dance 171 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

      DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish. (1:0:3)
      Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
      or
      DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish. (1:0:3)
      Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
      DANCE 335 : Tap Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Dance 235 or equivalent.

      DANCE 371 : Clog Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Dance 271 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

      DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish. (1:0:3)
      Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
      or
      DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish. (1:0:3)
      Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.

   2. Partnering:
      DANCE 172 : Country Western and Square Dance. (.5:0:2)
      OFFERED: F, W
      DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills in western styles of country, round, and square dance.

College | Missionary Training Center Please report any problems to

DANCE 184 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 185 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian. (1:0:3)
Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
DANCE 280 : Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 180 or equivalent.

DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian. (1:0:3)
Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
DANCE 380R : Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 280 or equivalent.

DANCE 382R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 284 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

DANCE 383R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 285 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

DANCE 384R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 385R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 383R or equivalent ; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 483R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

DANCE 485R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 495R : Pas de Deux. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Ballet partnering techniques.

3. Ethnic dance:
DANCE 173R : Ethnic Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Ethnic dances selected from the Irish, Polynesian, or Spanish cultures.

: Ethnic Dance - Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance--Irish.
: Ethnic Dance--Polynesian.

DANCE 270 : World Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 173R or previous dance experience.
DESCRIPTION: Accelerated ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian, Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Polynesian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Ukrainian.

DANCE 370 : World Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 270.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth dance technique of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 273R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian. Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Ukrainian.

Note: One course may fulfill two of the required foot articulation, partnering, and ethnic dance categories, possibly reducing the number of enrollments for this requirement from three to two: Dance 173R, 273R, 373R (Irish) and Dance 273R (Spanish) will satisfy both articulation and ethnic categories; Dance 273R, 373R (Hungarian) will satisfy both partnering and ethnic categories.

b. Complete the remaining 6–8 hours from the following technique courses:

DANCE 135 : Tap Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 171 : Clog Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Beginning steps and technique, emphasizing slide/drag.

DANCE 172 : Country Western and Square Dance. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills in western styles of country, round, and square dance.

DANCE 173R : Ethnic Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Ethnic dances selected from the Irish, Polynesian, or Spanish cultures.

: Ethnic Dance - Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance--Irish.
: Ethnic Dance--Polynesian.

DANCE 184 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 185 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 231 : Jazz Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 131 or equivalent; 240R or 290.

DANCE 235 : Tap Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 135 or equivalent.

DANCE 270 : World Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 271 : Clog Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 171 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 173R or previous dance experience.
DESCRIPTION: Accelerated ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian, Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Polynesian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Ukrainian.

DANCE 280 : Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 180 or equivalent.

DANCE 281 : Country Western Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 172, 181, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate-level instruction in popular country western dances.

DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 292 : Character Dance. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Male and female techniques of traditional national folk forms stylized with classical ballet discipline.

DANCE 293R : Ballet Pointe, Beginning. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 291R.

DANCE 331 : Jazz Dance Technique 2. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231 or equivalent; 241R, 242, or 291R.

DANCE 335 : Tap Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 235 or equivalent.

DANCE 340R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.

DANCE 370 : World Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 270.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth dance technique of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 371 : Clog Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 271 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 273R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian. Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Ukrainian.

DANCE 380R : Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 280 or equivalent.

DANCE 382R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 284 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

DANCE 383R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 285 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

DANCE 384R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 385R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 383R or equivalent ; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 390R : Ballet Technique 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 391R : Ballet Technique 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 393R : Ballet Pointe, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R.

DANCE 440R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or equivalent; instructor's consent.

DANCE 483R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

DANCE 485R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 490R : Ballet Technique 5. (3:0:9.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ballet technique, including advanced pointe work for women and advanced technique for men.

DANCE 494R : Ballet Variations. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 391R and 393R or equivalents.

DANCE 495R : Pas de Deux. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Ballet partnering techniques.

DANCE 500R : Workshop in Dance. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Experience with Workshop in Dance: ballet or ballroom.

: Workshop in Ballet.
: Workshop in Ballroom.

DANCE 540R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 5. (2:0:5)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique, with movement combinations emphasizing dance as a performance art.

7. Complete two hours from the following teaching methods courses:

DANCE 336 : Methods of Teaching Aerobic Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 342 or ExSc 362; Dance 343 or ExSc 363.
RECOMMENDED: NDFS 100.

DANCE 365 : Creative Dance for Elementary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, or approved Kinnect membership.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 367 : Methods of Teaching Children's Creative Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R.

DANCE 376 : Methods of Teaching World Dance. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Dance 170 or equivalent.

DANCE 386 : Methods of Teaching Social Dance. (2:1:2)

OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Dance 180 or eqivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy training in social dance at the bronze and silver skill levels.

DANCE 396 : Methods of Teaching Ballet. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 390R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching classical ballet from preballet through advanced; includes analysis of Bournonville, Cecchetti, Vaganova, RAD, Kneeland, and SAB methods.

DANCE 486 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Standard. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Standard Ballroom Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 487 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Latin. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Latin Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

8. Complete four hours from the following performance company options:

DANCE 229R : Dance Performance 1. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Production director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

DANCE 332R : Cougarette Collegiate Performing Team. (2:0:14)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 348R : Kinnect. (1-2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Educational outreach dance company specifically focusing on developing teaching, creative, and performance skills.

DANCE 368R : DancEnsemble - Modern Dance Performance and Choreography. (1-2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in modern dance choreography and performance.

DANCE 378R : Folk Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in folk dance.

DANCE 388R : Ballroom Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in ballroom dance.

DANCE 429R : Dance Performance 2. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

DANCE 468R : The Dancers' Company - Modern Dance Performance. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performing modern dance repertory and new works on and off campus.

DANCE 478R : Folk Dance Performance Company. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques with International/American Folk Dance Company.

DANCE 488R : Ballroom Dance Performance Company. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience with BYU Ballroom Dance Company.

DANCE 489R : Preparation for Ballroom Dance Competitions. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of ballroom competitive routines, emphasizing visual and musical aspects.

DANCE 498R : Ballet Performance Company. (2:0:10)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition and concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R or 490R; 494R or 495R.
DESCRIPTION: Performance technique and experience with BYU Theatre Ballet.

: Ballet Showcase Company.
: Theatre Ballet.

9. Complete 10 hours from the following elective courses:

DANCE 336 : Methods of Teaching Aerobic Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 342 or ExSc 362; Dance 343 or ExSc 363.
RECOMMENDED: NDFS 100.

DANCE 359R : Special Topics and Issues. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, 261.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar with rotating topics and issues selected from: dance and health, dance and identity, dance and technology, and dance philosophy and aesthetics.

: Dance Philosophy and Aesthetics.
: Dance and Health Issues.
: Dance and Identity.

DANCE 361 : Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231, 235, 243, 244, 291R, TMA 229.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballet.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballroom.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: World Dance.

DANCE 363 : Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

DANCE 365 : Creative Dance for Elementary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, or approved Kinnect membership.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 367 : Methods of Teaching Children's Creative Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R.

DANCE 376 : Methods of Teaching World Dance. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Dance 170 or equivalent.

DANCE 386 : Methods of Teaching Social Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Dance 180 or eqivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy training in social dance at the bronze and silver skill levels.

DANCE 396 : Methods of Teaching Ballet. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 390R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching classical ballet from preballet through advanced; includes analysis of Bournonville, Cecchetti, Vaganova, RAD, Kneeland, and SAB methods.

DANCE 399R : Academic Internship: Dance. (.5-4:0:50)

DANCE 462 : Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362.
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

DANCE 464 : Dance Accompaniment. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F, Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 264.

DANCE 477 : Dance--A Reflection of Culture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 376.
DESCRIPTION: Study of dance as an expression of culture.

DANCE 486 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Standard. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Standard Ballroom Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 487 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Latin. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Latin Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 562R : Modern Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of substantive modern dance compositional works based on intent, form, and content relationships.

DANCE 563R : Modern Dance Improvisation, Advanced. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 363 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing advanced skills of immediate movement response to enhance nonverbal communication.

P MGT 321 : Financial Issues in Public and Not-for-Profit Management. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to fund accounting, budgeting processes, and sources of revenue such as taxes, municipal bonds, user fees, donations, grants, dues, and ticket sales.

Up to 2.5 hours of any technique course 300-level or above in addition to previous technique requirements.

Note: R courses may count only once to complete this requirement, with the exception of modern dance and ballet courses 340R, 391R, 440R, 490R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All

Show all Dance Courses

Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Dance Education (75–78 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see item 1 below for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must pass a dance audition for acceptance into the major. Please see the Dance Department for further details.
2. At least 21 hours from items 5 to 7 below must be completed at BYU.
3. A teaching minor is recommended.
4. Complete the following prerequisite course:
   PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.
5. Complete the following:
   DANCE 230 : Conditioning and Injury Prevention for Dance. (2:3:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing conditioning programs specific to dance. Recognizing and resolving dance injuries. Practical application.

   DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

   DANCE 243R : Studio Workshop in Modern Dance Technique and Theory. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 244R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Technique and theory in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 261 : Orientation to Dance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to dance as a discipline and at Brigham Young University.

   DANCE 264 : Music for Dancers. (2:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Basic music notation, simple and complex rhythmic patterns, and polyrhythms; analysis of selected international music styles; brief historical survey.

   DANCE 290 : Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp

   DANCE 342 : Kinesiology and Related Sciences for Dancers. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W; Sp odd years
   PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Dance 230.
   DESCRIPTION: Study and analysis of the neuromusculoskeletal system in practical application to dance for more efficient use of the body and reduction of injuries.

   DANCE 343 : Principles of Somatics. (2:2:1)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243 and 244, or 291R; 342.
DESCRIPTION: Experiential approach to movement training including body patterning. Integration and personal expression of body and movement choices.

DANCE 355 : Dance Production, Introduction. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of technical aspects of dance production.

DANCE 460 : Dance History to 1850. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Su odd years
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in tribal cultures and ancient through Romantic historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 461 : Dance History from 1850. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in modern and postmodern historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 464 : Dance Accompaniment. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F, Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 264.

6. Complete two enrollments of the following:

DANCE 340R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.

DANCE 440R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or equivalent; instructor's consent.

DANCE 500R : Workshop in Dance. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Experience with Workshop in Dance: ballet or ballroom.

: Workshop in Ballet.
: Workshop in Ballroom.

(must be a Chinese classical dance section)

7. Complete 2.5 hours from the following:

DANCE 231 : Jazz Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 131 or equivalent; 240R or 290.

DANCE 235 : Tap Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 135 or equivalent.

DANCE 270 : World Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 271 : Clog Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 171 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 173R or previous dance experience.
DESCRIPTION: Accelerated ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian, Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Chinese.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Polynesian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Ukrainian.

DANCE 280 : Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 180 or equivalent.

DANCE 281 : Country Western Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 172, 181, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate-level instruction in popular country western dances.

DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 291R : Ballet Technique 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 290 or equivalent.

DANCE 292 : Character Dance. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Male and female techniques of traditional national folk forms stylized with classical ballet discipline.

DANCE 293R : Ballet Pointe, Beginning. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 291R.

DANCE 331 : Jazz Dance Technique 2. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231 or equivalent; 241R, 242, or 291R.

DANCE 335 : Tap Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 235 or equivalent.

DANCE 370 : World Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 270.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth dance technique of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 371 : Clog Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 271 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 273R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian. Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Ukrainian.

DANCE 380R : Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 280 or equivalent.

DANCE 382R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 284 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

DANCE 383R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 285 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

DANCE 384R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 385R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 383R or equivalent ; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 390R : Ballet Technique 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 391R : Ballet Technique 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 393R : Ballet Pointe, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R.

DANCE 440R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or equivalent; instructor's consent.

DANCE 483R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

DANCE 485R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 490R : Ballet Technique 5. (3:0:9.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ballet technique, including advanced pointe work for women and advanced technique for men.

DANCE 494R : Ballet Variations. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 391R and 393R or equivalents.

DANCE 495R : Pas de Deux. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Ballet partnering techniques.

8. Complete the following composition and improvisation courses in the sequence listed:
   a. Complete the following:
      DANCE 244R : Studio Workship in Modern Dance Improvisation and Composition. (1:0:3)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.
DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation and composition in a workshop setting.

DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance. (2:0:4)
Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.
DANCE 363 : Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

b. Complete one course from the following:
DANCE 361 : Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231, 235, 243, 244, 291R, TMA 229.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

DANCE 462 : Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362.
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

c. Complete the following:
DANCE 469 : Senior Seminar in Dance. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 462 for all dance education majors and for composite dance and modern dance emphasis majors who choose to do a choreographic project.

9. Complete one of the following performance courses:
DANCE 348R : Kinnect. (1-2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Educational outreach dance company specifically focusing on developing teaching, creative, and performance skills.

DANCE 368R : DancEnsemble - Modern Dance Performance and Choreography. (1-2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in modern dance choreography and performance.

DANCE 468R : The Dancers' Company - Modern Dance Performance. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performing modern dance repertory and new works on and off campus.

10. Complete the Professional Education Component:
a. Complete the following:
CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

DANCE 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3:4:8)
OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241, 261; Dance 243, 244 or concurrent enrollment; major approval.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based, initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

DANCE 346 : Methods of Teaching Dance to Social Groups in Secondary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Dance 170, 180.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching methodologies in social and world dance, specifically to prepare students in secondary dance education to teach these forms in the public schools.
NOTE: For dance education majors only.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 466 : Dance Teaching Practicum. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance major status.
DESCRIPTION: Pre-student teaching course giving students practical teaching and classroom management experience in a mentored environment. Discussion lab integrating theory and experience.

(prerequisite: Dance 243R, 244R, 261)
IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

Note 1: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before entry into Dance 466.

Note 2: Sc Ed 350 must be taken prior to or concurrently with Dance 466.

b. Complete 12 hours from the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance. (12:ARR:ARR)
Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Dance Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Ballroom Dance (15 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see below for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements

1. Before being accepted into the minor, a student must complete the following with a grade of B– or better:
   DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

   DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

2. At least 10 hours must be completed at BYU.

3. Complete the following core courses:
   DANCE 260 : Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art form, studied through lecture, reading, research, multimedia presentations, and practical movement experiences.
   NOTE: No previous dance experience required.

   DANCE 280 : Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 180 or equivalent.

   DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

   DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   DANCE 386 : Methods of Teaching Social Dance. (2:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   RECOMMENDED: Dance 180 or eqivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy training in social dance at the bronze and silver skill levels.

   DANCE 486 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Standard. (2:0:4)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R.
   DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Standard Ballroom Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 487 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Latin. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Latin Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

5. Complete five hours from the following:

DANCE 380R : Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 280 or equivalent.

DANCE 382R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 284 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

DANCE 383R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 285 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

DANCE 384R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 385R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 383R or equivalent ; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 483R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

DANCE 485R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

Note: No more than two hours may be completed from each of the listed R technique courses.

6. Complete two hours from the following:

DANCE 388R : Ballroom Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in ballroom dance.

DANCE 488R : Ballroom Dance Performance Company. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience with BYU Ballroom Dance Company.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Dance Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Modern Dance (18.5–20 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see below for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements

1. Before being accepted into the minor, a student must:
   a. Complete the following with a grade of B– or better:
      DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
      OFFERED: F, W, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

   b. Pass a dance audition for acceptance into the minor. Please see the Dance Department for further details.

2. At least 10.5 hours must be completed at BYU.

3. Complete the following core courses:
   DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

   DANCE 260 : Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art form, studied through lecture, reading, research, multimedia presentations, and practical movement experiences.
   NOTE: No previous dance experience required.

   DANCE 264 : Music for Dancers. (2:1:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   DESCRIPTION: Basic music notation, simple and complex rhythmic patterns, and polyrhythms; analysis of selected international music styles; brief historical survey.

   DANCE 290 : Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp

4. Complete the following:
   DANCE 243R : Studio Workshop in Modern Dance Technique and Theory. (2.5:0:7.5)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 244R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Technique and theory in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 244R : Studio Workship in Modern Dance Improvisation and Composition. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.
   DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation and composition in a workshop setting.

   DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance. (2:0:4)
   Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance.
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

DANCE 363 : Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

5. Complete two hours from the following:

DANCE 365 : Creative Dance for Elementary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, or approved Kinnect membership.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 367 : Methods of Teaching Children's Creative Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R.

6. Complete one course from the following:

DANCE 340R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.

DANCE 348R : Kinnect. (1-2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Educational outreach dance company specifically focusing on developing teaching, creative, and performance skills.

DANCE 365 : Creative Dance for Elementary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, or approved Kinnect membership.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 367 : Methods of Teaching Children's Creative Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R.

DANCE 368R : DancEnsemble - Modern Dance Performance and Choreography. (1-2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in modern dance choreography and performance.

DANCE 462 : Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362.
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

DANCE 468R : The Dancers' Company - Modern Dance Performance. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performing modern dance repertory and new works on and off campus.

Note: R-suffix courses may not be taken more than once for minor credit.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Show all Dance Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in World Dance (15.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see below for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Program Requirements

1. Before being accepted into the minor, a student must:
   a. Complete the following with a grade of B or better:
      DANCE 270 : World Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

   b. Pass a dance audition for acceptance into the minor. Please see the Dance Department for further details.

2. At least eight hours must be completed at BYU.

3. Complete the following core courses:
   DANCE 260 : Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art form, studied through lecture, reading, research, multimedia presentations, and practical movement experiences.
   NOTE: No previous dance experience required.

   DANCE 270 : World Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

   DANCE 271 : Clog Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 171 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

   DANCE 370 : World Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 270.
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth dance technique of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

4. Complete the following:
   DANCE 172 : Country Western and Square Dance. (.5:0:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills in western styles of country, round, and square dance.

   DANCE 376 : Methods of Teaching World Dance. (2:2:3)
   OFFERED: F
   RECOMMENDED: Dance 170 or equivalent.

   DANCE 477 : Dance--A Reflection of Culture. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   PREREQUISITE: Dance 376.
   DESCRIPTION: Study of dance as an expression of culture.

5. Complete two courses from the following:

DANCE 131 : Jazz Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 140 : Modern Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 180 : Social Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional and popular ballroom dance; also social skills.

DANCE 190 : Ballet, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of ballet technique for those with little or no previous training.

6. Complete two hours from the following:

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 173R or previous dance experience.
DESCRIPTION: Accelerated ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian, Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Polynesian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Ukrainian.

Note: No more than one hour may be taken in any one ethnic style.

7. Complete one hour from the following:

DANCE 371 : Clog Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 271 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 273R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian. Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Ukrainian.

DANCE 378R : Folk Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in folk dance.

Note: Dance 373R and 378R may not be taken more than once for credit toward the minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Dance Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Dance (Dance)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

DANCE 130 : Aerobic Dance. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Dance and other rigorous activities performed to music to attain cardiovascular fitness.

DANCE 131 : Jazz Dance, Beginnlng. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 135 : Tap Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 140 : Modern Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DANCE 164 : Movement for Musicians. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Developing strength, flexibility, responsiveness, centering, breath, and freedom of movement through both fine and gross motor activities.

DANCE 170 : World Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Dances from selected cultures at the beginning skill level.

DANCE 171 : Clog Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Beginning steps and technique, emphasizing slide/drag.

DANCE 172 : Country Western and Square Dance. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills in western styles of country, round, and square dance.

DANCE 173R : Ethnic Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Ethnic dances selected from the Irish, Polynesian, or Spanish cultures.

: Ethnic Dance - Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance--Irish.
: Ethnic Dance---Polynesian.

DANCE 180 : Social Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Traditional and popular ballroom dance; also social skills.

DANCE 181 : Country Western Social Dance, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Beginning popular country western dance.

DANCE 184 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 185 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Bronze level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 190 : Ballet, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of ballet technique for those with little or no previous training.

200-Level Courses

DANCE 229R : Dance Performance 1. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Production director's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

DANCE 230 : Conditioning and Injury Prevention for Dance. (2:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Developing conditioning programs specific to dance. Recognizing and resolving dance injuries. Practical application.

DANCE 231 : Jazz Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 131 or equivalent; 240R or 290.

DANCE 235 : Tap Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 135 or equivalent.

DANCE 240R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental dance skills and basic theories.

DANCE 241R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Experience in modern dance equivalent to Dance 240R; instructor's consent.

DANCE 243R : Studio Workshop in Modern Dance Technique and Theory. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 244R the first time taken.
DESCRIPTION: Technique and theory in a workshop setting.

DANCE 244R : Studio Workship in Modern Dance Improvisation and Composition. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.
DESCRIPTION: Beginning improvisation and composition in a workshop setting.

DANCE 260 : Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art form, studied through lecture, reading, research, multimedia presentations, and practical movement experiences.
NOTE: No previous dance experience required.

: Honors Introduction to Dance.

DANCE 261 : Orientation to Dance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to dance as a discipline and at Brigham Young University.

DANCE 264 : Music for Dancers. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Basic music notation, simple and complex rhythmic patterns, and polyrhythms; analysis of selected international music styles; brief historical survey.

DANCE 270 : World Dance Technlque 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 170 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 271 : Clog Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 171 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

DANCE 273R : Ethnic Dance Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 173R or previous dance experience.
DESCRIPTION: Accelerated ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian, Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Polynesian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 1: Ukrainian.

DANCE 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3:4:8)
OFFERED: F 1st block
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241, 261; Dance 243, 244 or concurrent enrollment; major approval.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based, initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

DANCE 280 : Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 180 or equivalent.

DANCE 281 : Country Western Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 172, 181, or equivalent.

DANCE 284 : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 184 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 285 : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 1. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 185 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 290 : Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

DANCE 291R : Ballet Technique 2. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 290 or equivalent.

DANCE 292 : Character Dance. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W odd years
DESCRIPTION: Male and female techniques of traditional national folk forms stylized with classical ballet discipline.

DANCE 293R : Ballet Pointe, Beginning. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 291R.

300-Level Courses

DANCE 300 : History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Music 290, Dance 243R, 244R, TMA 114; concurrent enrollment in Music 300 and TMA 300.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Music 328, Dance 328, and TMA 328.
DESCRIPTION: Dance in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, theatre.

DANCE 326 : Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

DANCE 328 : Junior Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: music dance theatre BFA major status; TMA 114, 229; concurrent enrollment in Music 328, TMA 328.
RECOMMENDED: concurrent enrollment in Music 300, Dance 300, TMA 300.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

DANCE 331 : Jazz Dance Technique 2. (1.5:0:4.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231 or equivalent; 241R, 242, or 291R.

DANCE 332R : Cougarette Collegiate Performing Team. (2:0:14)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 335 : Tap Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 235 or equivalent.

DANCE 336 : Methods of Teaching Aerobic Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 342 or ExSc 362; Dance 343 or ExSc 363.
RECOMMENDED: NDFS 100.

DANCE 340R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 241R or equivalent; instructor's consent; concurrent enrollment in Dance 243R the first time taken.

DANCE 342 : Kinesiology and Related Sciences for Dancers. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp odd years
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Dance 230.
DESCRIPTION: Study and analysis of the neuromusculoskeletal system in practical application to dance for more efficient use of the body and reduction of injuries.

DANCE 343 : Principles of Somatics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243 and 244, or 291R; 342.
DESCRIPTION: Experiential approach to movement training including body patterning. Integration and personal expression of body and movement choices.

DANCE 346 : Methods of Teaching Dance to Social Groups in Secondary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Dance 170, 180.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching methodologies in social and world dance, specifically to prepare students in secondary dance education to teach these forms in the public schools.

DANCE 348R : Kinnect. (1-2:1:6)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Educational outreach dance company specifically focusing on developing teaching, creative, and performance skills.

DANCE 351 : Laban Movement Analysis. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, 291R.
DESCRIPTION: Tools to make sense of, and derive meaning from movement. Constituent movement components that facilitate accuracy in teaching, performance, and choreography.

DANCE 355 : Dance Production, Introduction. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of technical aspects of dance production.

DANCE 359R : Special Topics and Issues. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, 261.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar with rotating topics and issues selected from: dance and health, dance and identity, dance and technology, and dance philosophy and aesthetics.

: Dance Philosophy and Aesthetics.
: Dance and Health Issues.
: Dance and Identity.

DANCE 361 : Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:6)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 231, 235, 243, 244, 291R, TMA 229.
DESCRIPTION: Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

DANCE 362 : Dance Composition, Intermediate. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballet.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Ballroom.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: Modern Dance.
: Dance Composition, Intermediate: World Dance.

DANCE 363 : Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 244R.

DANCE 365 : Creative Dance for Elementary Education. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R, or approved Kinnect membership.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

DANCE 366 : Methods of Teaching Modern Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp, odd years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R (or equivalents); Dance 261.
DESCRIPTION: Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

DANCE 367 : Methods of Teaching Children's Creative Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 243R, 244R.

DANCE 368R : DancEnsemble - Modern Dance Performance and Choreography. (1-2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Experiences in modern dance choreography and performance.

DANCE 370 : World Dance Technlque 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 270.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth dance technique of selected traditional, folk, and national dance styles.

DANCE 371 : Clog Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 271 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

DANCE 373R : Ethnic Dance Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 273R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ethnic dance techniques selected from the Chinese, Hungarian, Irish, Polynesian. Spanish, or Ukrainian cultures.

: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Chinese.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Hungarian.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Irish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Spanish.
: Ethnic Dance Technique 2: Ukrainian.

DANCE 376 : Methods of Teaching World Dance. (2:2:3)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Dance 170 or equivalent.

DANCE 378R : Folk Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in folk dance.

DANCE 380R : Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 280 or equivalent.

DANCE 382R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 284 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

DANCE 383R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 2. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Dance 285 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

DANCE 384R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

DANCE 385R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 3. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 383R or equivalent ; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 386 : Methods of Teaching Social Dance. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Dance 180 or eqivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pedagogy training in social dance at the bronze and silver skill levels.

DANCE 388R : Ballroom Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience in ballroom dance.

DANCE 390R : Ballet Technique 3. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 391R : Ballet Technique 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.

DANCE 393R : Ballet Pointe, Intermediate. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R.

DANCE 396 : Methods of Teaching Ballet. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Dance 390R or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching classical ballet from preballet through advanced; includes analysis of Bournonville, Cecchetti, Vaganova, RAD, Kneeland, and SAB methods.

DANCE 399R : Academic Internship: Dance. (.5-4:0:50)

400-Level Courses

DANCE 426 : Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:6)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: TMA 361; concurrent enrollment in Music 426, and TMA 426.
DESCRIPTION: Participation in an MDT performance group culminating in a showcase for agents and directors in New York City during April.

DANCE 429R : Dance Performance 2. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 382R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

DANCE 440R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or equivalent; instructor's consent.

DANCE 459 : Seminar in Dance. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W

DANCE 460 : Dance History to 1850. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Su odd years
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in tribal cultures and ancient through Romantic historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 461 : Dance History from 1850. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dance in modern and postmodern historical periods, emphasizing dance of Western civilization.

DANCE 462 : Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362.
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

DANCE 464 : Dance Accompaniment. (1:1:1)
OFFERED: F, Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 264.

DANCE 466 : Dance Teaching Practicum. (2:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance major status.
DESCRIPTION: Pre-student teaching course giving students practical teaching and classroom management experience in a mentored environment. Discussion lab integrating theory and experience.

DANCE 468R : The Dancers' Company - Modern Dance Performance. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performing modern dance repertory and new works on and off campus.

DANCE 469 : Senior Seminar in Dance. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 462 for all dance education majors and for composite dance and modern dance emphasis majors who choose to do a choreographic project.

DANCE 477 : Dance--A Reflection of Culture. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 376.
DESCRIPTION: Study of dance as an expression of culture.

DANCE 478R : Folk Dance Performance Company. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques with International/American Folk Dance Company.

DANCE 483R : Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

DANCE 485R : Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Technique 4. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R or equivalent; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

DANCE 486 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Standard. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 384R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Standard Ballroom Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 487 : Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Latin. (2:0:4)
OFFERED: W odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Dance 385R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and notation of International Latin Dance and preparation for professional teaching certification examinations.

DANCE 488R : Ballroom Dance Performance Company. (2:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Performance techniques and experience with BYU Ballroom Dance Company.

DANCE 489R : Preparation for Ballroom Dance Competitions. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Creation and presentation of ballroom competitive routines, emphasizing visual and musical aspects.

DANCE 490R : Ballet Technique 5. (3:0:9.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced ballet technique, including advanced pointe work for women and advanced technique for men.

DANCE 494R : Ballet Variations. (1:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Dance 391R and 393R or equivalents.

DANCE 495R : Pas de Deux. (1:0:ARR)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Audition.
DESCRIPTION: Ballet partnering techniques.

DANCE 498R : Ballet Performance Company. (2:0:10)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Audition and concurrent enrollment in Dance 391R or 490R; 494R or 495R.
DESCRIPTION: Performance technique and experience with BYU Theatre Ballet.

: Ballet Showcase Company.
: Theatre Ballet.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

DANCE 500R : Workshop in Dance. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Experience with Workshop in Dance: ballet or ballroom.

: Workshop in Ballet.
: Workshop in Ballroom.

DANCE 540R : Modern Dance Technique and Theory 5. (2:0:5)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 340R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced technique, with movement combinations emphasizing dance as a performance art.

DANCE 562R : Modern Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of substantive modern dance compositional works based on intent, form, and content relationships.

DANCE 563R : Modern Dance Improvisation, Advanced. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: Su
PREREQUISITE: Dance 363 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing advanced skills of immediate movement response to enhance nonverbal communication.

Back to Dance Department Home

web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Dance Faculty

Show All
Hide All

Professors

Black, Catherine H
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BPE, University of Alberta, Canada, CANADA, 1968
MFA, University of Utah, 1972

Davis, Susanne Johnson
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Brigham Young University, 1971

Debenham, H. Patrick
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University , 1973
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1976

Gibb, Sara Lee
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1959
MS, Brigham Young University, 1970

Associate Professors

Allen, Sandra Lynne Birch
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, University of Utah, 1964
MFA, University of Utah, 1967

Berrett, Marilyn
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984

Dijkwel, Jan J
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance

DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Amsterdam College of the Arts (Netherlands), 1988
MA, MCP Hahnemann (Drexel) University, 1998

Holman, Curt W
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MA, Brigham Young University, 1996

Huang, Jiamin
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Beijing Dance Academy, China, 1984
MA, Brigham Young University, 1998

Musil, Pamela S
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Brigham Young University, 1985

Phillips, Rebecca W
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MFA, University of Utah, 1990

Prohosky, Caroline
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1980

West, Colleen N.
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1985

Assistant Professor

Robison, Shani Michelle
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MA, Brigham Young University, 1999

Associate Clinical Professors

Nuttall, Ronald Brent
COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Dance
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints |BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

MS, Brigham Young University, 1985

Economics

Michael R Ransom, Chair
130 FOB, (801) 422-3463

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Economics are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Economics examines how societies choose to allocate scarce resources among competing uses. A broad range of contemporary policy issues are studied in fields such as natural resource and environmental economics; economic development and growth; international trade and finance; economic history; the organization of industries; the development and efficiency of law; business cycles; labor markets; and public and private finance.

Career Opportunities

Professional economists work in three basic areas: business, government, and academics. Undergraduates generally pursue training beyond their BS/BA in economics if they wish to become professional economists.

Those in business forecast and analyze various aspects of the economy or of particular markets and most often work for brokerage firms, business or economic consulting firms, investment banks, insurance companies, or large manufacturing firms.

Those in government accumulate, interpret, and analyze national and international data in support of policy development and work for agencies such as the U.S. State Department, Treasury Department, Bureau of Labor Statistics, and Office of the Trade Representative; for state planning bodies and regulatory commissions; or for international bodies like the World Bank or IMF.

Academic economists teach and conduct research at colleges and universities. Entry into these positions requires training at least as far as the master's level; for the most part, the professional degree is the PhD.

Undergraduates who are not interested in postundergraduate study in economics generally pursue one of three options: graduate training in a profession (e.g., the MBA, MPA, JD, or MD); employment with a business consulting, economic consulting, brokerage, or other specialized service provider that relies to a substantial degree on economic analysis; or employment with a government agency or entity that relies on economic analysis and data. In the latter two areas, those with BAs typically gather and analyze data and provide research support under the direction of professional staff economists. A BA/BS in economics is also very good preparation for those interested in foreign service careers or work with organizations in economic development, international finance, or actuarial licensing. Many undergraduates pursue business careers, including those of finance, marketing, sales, and production.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Economics
BS in Economics

Minors
Economics

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Economics (40–57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Minimum residence requirement is 21 hours in the major.
2. Major courses: complete the following with a grade of C– or better:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ECON 378 : Statistics for Economists. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to matrix algebra and statistics in preparation for regression analysis. Other topics include: probability, random variables, density and distribution functions, estimation, hypothesis testing.

(or equivalent)
ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

ECON 382 : Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

Note: Equivalence to Econ 378 includes Stat 321 and Math 343.

3. Supporting courses: complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

(Math 119 with a B+ or better may be substituted)

Note 1: A *university* calculus course such as Math 112 or 113 is strongly recommended. Deferred students are encouraged to take a refresher math course such as Eng T 295R before or concurrent with Econ 378, 380, or 381.

Note 2: For students contemplating graduate work in economics, the 500-level economics courses plus Math 113, 214, and 343 are strongly recommended.

4. Complete GE Foreign Language or 7 hours of mathematics in addition to Math 112.

5. Complete 15 hours from the following (at least 12 hours must be from courses 410-588):

ECON 210 : Introduction to Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles and policies applied to producing and allocating agricultural products.

ECON 213R : Topics in Economic Analysis. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.

ECON 215 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of economic doctrines from preclassical through contemporary economics. Contributions of individual writers and schools of thought.

ECON 230 : Economic Development and Growth. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

ECON 253 : Money and Banking. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles applied to monetary analysis and policy and the banking structure.

ECON 257 : International Trade and Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of the mechanisms, problems, institutions, and policies of trade among countries. Financial and monetary arrangements that facilitate trade.

ECON 274 : American Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

ECON 275 : Public Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economics of decision making in the public sector; cost-benefit analysis and efficiency-equity issues of taxation and expenditure policies.

ECON 410 : Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Application of supply and demand concepts to price determination and analysis in agricultural markets.

ECON 413R : Topics in Economic Theory. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 381, and/or 382, depending on topic.

ECON 415 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.

ECON 420 : Economics of Antitrust Law and Regulation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 382.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of reasons for--and effects of--antitrust laws and regulation in selected areas, including utilities, telecommunications, transportation, energy, health, safety, and the environment.

ECON 421 : Law and Economics. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Common law allocative mechanisms (contract, tort, and property law) as alternatives to collective intervention when markets fail; consideration of economic logic of law.

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PlSc 328.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

ECON 450 : Financial Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of financial economics, emphasizing capital markets, investment decisions, choice, capital asset pricing model, futures and options markets, efficient markets, and capital structures.

ECON 453 : Monetary Theory and Policy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Macroeconomic aspects of money demand, money supply, the monetary transmission mechanism, central bank policy, and other current issues.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

ECON 463 : Economics of the Labor Market. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 465 : Health Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models of health-care markets, including the supply and demand for health and health care, insurance, market imperfections, public-sector involvement, and regulation.

ECON 468 : Urban Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models relating to spatial location of economic activities and development of cities. Application of economic theory to problems and policies associated with housing, urban transportation, congestion, local government finance, and other urban problems.

ECON 474 : Topics in Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 475 : Public Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.

ECON 476 : Industrial Organization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382.

ECON 478 : Game Theory and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Application of game theory to study strategic interaction between individuals and organizations. Applications include imperfect competition, insurance markets, and bargaining.

ECON 482 : Welfare Economics. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: General equilibrium theorems and considerations that must guide applied economic work and provide quantitative information on the effects of alternative policy measures.

ECON 486 : Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Further development of optimization and comparative statics. Differential equations and dynamic analysis.

ECON 580 : Advanced Price Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Modern theories of consumers, producers, and competitive equilibria.

ECON 581 : Advanced Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of determining national income, employment, inflation, and interest rates. Issues of economic fluctuations, economic growth, and monetary and fiscal policy.

ECON 582 : Topics in Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 580.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced topics such as risk and uncertainty, game theory, and capital theory.

ECON 586 : Advanced Mathematics for Economists. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, Math 214; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced mathematical methods that have proved useful in economic modeling.

ECON 588 : Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of formulating, estimating, and analyzing economic models.

Note 1: The 200-level field courses are intended as interim courses as a student moves from Econ 110 into the 300-level core courses. Once the student has completed Econ 380, he or she is strongly encouraged to take the 400-level rather than the 200-level field courses.

Note 2: Students should not take both a 200-level and a 400-level course with the same last two digits (e.g., Econ 275 and 475), although they are encouraged to take the 300- and 500-level theory classes (e.g., Econ 380 and 580).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Economics Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Economics (37 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Minimum residence requirements is 21 hours in the major.
2. Major courses: complete the following with a grade of C– or better:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ECON 378 : Statistics for Economists. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to matrix algebra and statistics in preparation for regression analysis. Other topics include: probability, random variables, density and distribution functions, estimation, hypothesis testing.

(or equivalent)
ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

ECON 382 : Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

Note: Equivalence to Econ 378 includes Stat 321 and Math 343.

3. Supporting courses: complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

(Math 119 with a B+ or better may be substituted)

Note 1: A *university* calculus course such as Math 112 or 113 is strongly recommended. Deferred students are encouraged to take a refresher math course such as Eng T 295R before or concurrent with Econ 378, 380, or 381.

Note 2: For students contemplating graduate work in economics, the 500-level economics courses plus Math 113, 214, and 343 are strongly recommended.

4. Complete 15 hours from the following (at least 12 hours must be from courses 410-588):

ECON 210 : Introduction to Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles and policies applied to producing and allocating agricultural products.

ECON 213R : Topics in Economic Analysis. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.

ECON 215 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of economic doctrines from preclassical through contemporary economics. Contributions of individual writers and schools of thought.

ECON 230 : Economic Development and Growth. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

ECON 253 : Money and Banking. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles applied to monetary analysis and policy and the banking structure.

ECON 257 : International Trade and Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of the mechanisms, problems, institutions, and policies of trade among countries. Financial and monetary arrangements that facilitate trade.

ECON 274 : American Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

ECON 275 : Public Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economics of decision making in the public sector; cost-benefit analysis and efficiency-equity issues of taxation and expenditure policies.

ECON 410 : Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Application of supply and demand concepts to price determination and analysis in agricultural markets.

ECON 413R : Topics in Economic Theory. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 381, and/or 382, depending on topic.

ECON 415 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.

ECON 420 : Economics of Antitrust Law and Regulation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 382.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of reasons for--and effects of--antitrust laws and regulation in selected areas, including utilities, telecommunications, transportation, energy, health, safety, and the environment.

ECON 421 : Law and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Common law allocative mechanisms (contract, tort, and property law) as alternatives to collective

intervention when markets fail; consideration of economic logic of law.

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PlSc 328.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

ECON 450 : Financial Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of financial economics, emphasizing capital markets, investment decisions, choice, capital asset pricing model, futures and options markets, efficient markets, and capital structures.

ECON 453 : Monetary Theory and Policy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Macroeconomic aspects of money demand, money supply, the monetary transmission mechanism, central bank policy, and other current issues.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

ECON 463 : Economics of the Labor Market. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 465 : Health Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models of health-care markets, including the supply and demand for health and health care, insurance, market imperfections, public-sector involvement, and regulation.

ECON 468 : Urban Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models relating to spatial location of economic activities and development of cities. Application of economic theory to problems and policies associated with housing, urban transportation, congestion, local government finance, and other urban problems.

ECON 474 : Topics in Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 475 : Public Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.

ECON 476 : Industrial Organization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382.

ECON 478 : Game Theory and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Application of game theory to study strategic interaction between individuals and organizations. Applications include imperfect competition, insurance markets, and bargaining.

ECON 482 : Welfare Economics. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.

DESCRIPTION: General equilibrium theorems and considerations that must guide applied economic work and provide quantitative information on the effects of alternative policy measures.

ECON 486 : Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Further development of optimization and comparative statics. Differential equations and dynamic analysis.

ECON 580 : Advanced Price Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Modern theories of consumers, producers, and competitive equilibria.

ECON 581 : Advanced Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of determining national income, employment, inflation, and interest rates. Issues of economic fluctuations, economic growth, and monetary and fiscal policy.

ECON 582 : Topics in Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 580.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced topics such as risk and uncertainty, game theory, and capital theory.

ECON 586 : Advanced Mathematics for Economists. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, Math 214; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced mathematical methods that have proved useful in economic modeling.

ECON 588 : Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of formulating, estimating, and analyzing economic models.

Note 1: The 200-level field courses are intended as interim courses as a student moves from Econ 110 into the 300-level core courses. Once the student has completed Econ 380, he or she is strongly encouraged to take the 400-level rather than the 200-level field courses.

Note 2: Students should not take both a 200-level and a 400-level course with the same last two digits (e.g., Econ 275 and 475), although they are encouraged to take the 300- and 500-level theory classes (e.g., Econ 380 and 580).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Economics Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Economics (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

2. Complete 9 additional hours in economics courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Economics Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Economics (Econ)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

: Honors Economic Principles and Problems.

ECON 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Faculty advisor's and department chair's prior written consent
NOTE: Not counted toward required major or minor hours.

200-Level Courses

ECON 210 : Introduction to Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles and policies applied to producing and allocating agricultural products.

ECON 213R : Topics in Economic Analysis. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.

ECON 215 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of economic doctrines from preclassical through contemporary economics. Contributions of individual writers and schools of thought.

ECON 230 : Economic Development and Growth. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

ECON 253 : Money and Banking. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic principles applied to monetary analysis and policy and the banking structure.

ECON 257 : International Trade and Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of the mechanisms, problems, institutions, and policies of trade among countries. Financial and monetary arrangements that facilitate trade.

ECON 265 : Introduction to Health Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Applying economic principles to markets for health and health care.

ECON 274 : American Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

ECON 275 : Public Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economics of decision making in the public sector; cost-benefit analysis and efficiency-equity issues of taxation and expenditure policies.

ECON 280 : Introduction to Economic Analysis and Reasoning. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Maximizing self-interest model of behavior and the environment, and constraints within which business and household decisions are made.
NOTE: Not for majors or major credit.

300-Level Courses

ECON 378 : Statistics for Economists. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to matrix algebra and statistics in preparation for regression analysis. Other topics include: probability, random variables, density and distribution functions, estimation, hypothesis testing.

ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

ECON 382 : Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

400-Level Courses

ECON 410 : Agricultural Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Application of supply and demand concepts to price determination and analysis in agricultural markets.

ECON 413R : Topics in Economic Theory. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 381, and/or 382, depending on topic.

ECON 415 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.

ECON 420 : Economics of Antitrust Law and Regulation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 382.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of reasons for--and effects of--antitrust laws and regulation in selected areas, including utilities, telecommunications, transportation, energy, health, safety, and the environment.

ECON 421 : Law and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Common law allocative mechanisms (contract, tort, and property law) as alternatives to collective intervention when markets fail; consideration of economic logic of law.

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PISc 328.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

ECON 450 : Financial Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of financial economics, emphasizing capital markets, investment decisions, choice, capital asset pricing model, futures and options markets, efficient markets, and capital structures.

ECON 453 : Monetary Theory and Policy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Macroeconomic aspects of money demand, money supply, the monetary transmission mechanism, central bank policy, and other current issues.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.

ECON 463 : Economics of the Labor Market. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 465 : Health Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models of health-care markets, including the supply and demand for health and health care, insurance, market imperfections, public-sector involvement, and regulation.

ECON 468 : Urban Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic models relating to spatial location of economic activities and development of cities. Application of economic theory to problems and policies associated with housing, urban transportation, congestion, local government finance, and other urban problems.

ECON 474 : Topics in Economic History. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.

ECON 475 : Public Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 382, 388.

ECON 476 : Industrial Organization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382.

ECON 478 : Game Theory and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Application of game theory to study strategic interaction between individuals and organizations. Applications include imperfect competition, insurance markets, and bargaining.

ECON 482 : Welfare Economics. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: General equilibrium theorems and considerations that must guide applied economic work and provide quantitative information on the effects of alternative policy measures.

ECON 486 : Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Further development of optimization and comparative statics. Differential equations and dynamic analysis.

ECON 490 : Senior Paper. (1:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

ECON 498R : Readings in Economics. (.5-2:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
NOTE: P/F grade only; maximum of 2 credit hours; 3 hours of reading per week required for each credit hour taken. Not counted toward required major hours.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ECON 580 : Advanced Price Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380, 382; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Modern theories of consumers, producers, and competitive equilibria.

ECON 581 : Advanced Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory of determining national income, employment, inflation, and interest rates. Issues of economic fluctuations, economic growth, and monetary and fiscal policy.

ECON 582 : Topics in Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 580.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced topics such as risk and uncertainty, game theory, and capital theory.

ECON 586 : Advanced Mathematics for Economists. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, Math 214; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced mathematical methods that have proved useful in economic modeling.

ECON 588 : Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F or W
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 382, 388; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of formulating, estimating, and analyzing economic models.

ECON 599R : Academic Internship: Supervised Management and Training. (.5-6:0:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Course work pertinent to proposed experience.

Back to Economics Department Home

Economics Faculty

Professors

Butler, Richard John

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1972
PhD, University of Chicago, 1979

Jensen, Farrell E

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1964
MS, Kansas State University, 1966
PhD, Kansas State University, 1972

Kearl, J R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1971
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1975
PD, Harvard University, 1978

Lambson, Val Eugene

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, University of Rochester, 1982
PhD, University of Rochester, 1983

McDonald, James B.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1964
MS, Utah State University, 1966
PhD, Purdue University, 1970

Pope, Clayne L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, University of Chicago, 1968
PhD, University of Chicago, 1972

Pope, Rulon Dean

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1976

Pope, Clive Arden

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Iowa State University, 1981
PhD, Iowa State University, 1981

Ransom, Michael R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Princeton University, 1980
PhD, Princeton University, 1983

Spencer, David Eugene

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Texas A&M University, 1973
PhD, Texas A&M University, 1974

Associate Professors

Bradford, Scott C

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MPA, Princeton University, 1991
PhD, Harvard University, 1998

Cardon, James Harold

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Princeton University, 1995
PhD, Princeton University, 1996

Eide, Eric Raymond

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1988
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1993

Lefgren, Lars John

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Chicago, 2001

Phillips, Kerk Layne

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MA, University of Rochester, 1990
PhD, University of Rochester, 1991

Showalter, Mark H.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1991

Assistant Professors

Condie, Scott

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 2002
PhD, Cornell University, 2007

Garner, Phillip David

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Brown University, 2002

McIntyre, Frank L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Stanford University, 2004

Platt, Brennan

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Arizona State University, 2001
MA, University of Minnesota, 2005
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2006

Price, Joseph

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Cornell University, 2007

Sims, David

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Economics
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2004

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Educational Leadership and Foundations

A. LeGrand Richards, Chair
306M MCKB, (801) 422-4291
E-mail: buddy_richards@byu.edu
Internet: http://education.byu.edu/edlf
Fax: (801) 422-0196

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MEd in Educational Leadership
PhD in Educational Leadership

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Educational Leadership and Foundations (EdLF)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

EDLF 362 : Introduction to Comparative and International Development Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods, major concepts, and current trends in comparative and international development education; role of education in promoting national development.

EDLF 363 : Education, Poverty, and Community Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Examines the nexus between education, poverty, and socioeconomic development challenges facing developing countries through the perspective of economics, religion, and the state.

EDLF 390R : Special Topics in Education. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand
DESCRIPTION: Various topics dealing with educational issues.

EDLF 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience and training under the guidance of a mentor.

400-Level Courses

EDLF 452 : Foundations of Education. (.5-2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the philosophical, sociological, and historical foundations of American education, with special reference to current issues in U.S. public schooling.

EDLF 494R : Independent Readings. (1-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in education.

EDLF 495R : Independent Research. (1-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Departmental consent.
DESCRIPTION: Student research mentored by faculty member.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

EDLF 515R : Special Topics in Education. (.5-3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
NOTE: Credit earned in 515R is not counted toward graduate degrees.

: Curriculum Innovation.
: Effective Teaching.
: Higher Education Topics.
: Home-School Relationships.
: School Leadership.
: Topics in Community Educating.
: Topics in Educational Leadership.
: Topics in Elementary Leadership.

EDLF 530 : School and Community Programs in Education. (2:2:0)
DESCRIPTION: Examination of programs in school and community for enhancement of teaching and learning.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Educational Leadership and Foundations Department Home

Educational Leadership and Foundations Faculty

Professors

Geo-JaJa, MacLeans A.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BSc, Morehead State University, 1976
MSc, Indiana State University, 1980
PhD, University of Utah, 1986

Hite, Steven Jeffrey

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
EdD, Harvard University, 1985

Holsinger, Donald Bruce

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, University of Wisconsin, 1967
MS, University of Wisconsin, 1969
PhD, Stanford University, 1972

Randall, E. Vance

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young Univesity, 1975
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Cornell University, 1989

Associate Professors

Baugh, Steven Clare

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1970
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1978

Ferrin, Scott Ellis

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
JD, J. Reuben Clark Law School, BYU, 1984
MEd, Harvard Graduate School of Education, 1989
EdD, Harvard Graduate School of Education, 1996

Hilton, Sterling Clint

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, John Hopkins University, 1996

Hite, Julie Melville

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MOB, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Utah, 1999

Matthews, L Joseph

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Wyoming, 1972
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1978
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1987

Mayes, Clifford Thomas

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Arizona, 1977
MA, University of Oregon, 1979
MA, University of Arizona, 1981
Psy D, Southern California University for Professional Studies, 1992
PhD, University of Utah, 1997

Richards, A Legrand

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MEd, Harvard University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1982

Williams, Ellen J

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AA, Snow College, 1964
BA, Utah State University, 1966
MEd, Utah State University, 1972
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1991

Assistant Professors

Jackson, Karen M.

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Kansas, 1992
MSEd, Universitiy of Kansas, 1995
PhD, Indiana University, 2007

Willardson, John D

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MBus, University of Utah, 1979
EdD, University of Southern California, 1987

Instructor

Hallam, Pamela

COLLEGE: David O. McKay School of Education
DEPARTMENT: Educational Leadership and Foundations
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
EdD, University of Utah, 2006

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Electrical and Computer Engineering

Michael Jensen, Chair
459 CB, (801) 422-4012

Janalyn Mergist, Undergraduate Major Advisor
459 CB (801) 422-4012

Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, (801) 422-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Electrical and computer engineers study phenomena, devices, and systems for information processing, communication, and systems control. These studies, grounded primarily in physics and mathematics, have enabled engineers to develop the innovative new technologies for information acquisition, processing, storage, and communication that have made possible our contemporary Age of Information.

Examples of systems developed by electrical and computer engineers include radio, television, radar, satellite communication systems, cellular telephones, laptop computers, fiber-optic communications devices, global and local computer networks, robotic systems, control systems, fax machines, medical image processing, computer modems, lasers, pagers, computer vision, programmable calculators, VLSI chips, computer-aided design tools, and medical instruments.

Although it is the goal of engineering to produce useful objects, electrical and computer engineers typically play a limited role in construction, assembly, or mass production. Instead, they focus on design, analysis, and the development of the underlying theory and knowledge applied in the design process.

Many engineers are involved in designing and developing products, but other electrical and computer engineers may choose to work in product marketing, project management, system calibration and maintenance, product testing, or other areas related to electronic systems.

Computer programming skills and the ability to use advanced design and simulation software packages are vital in electrical as well as computer engineering. As part of their training, electrical engineers become familiar with a variety of programming languages and software environments. This experience is closely coupled to real-world applications.

Career Opportunities

Electrical and computer engineers are among the most actively recruited students graduating from a four-year program. Baccalaureate engineers typically start their careers as members of project teams with one or more of the following responsibilities: designing digital, analog, or opto-electronic circuits; creating or testing application-specific software; testing components or systems; or providing technical support for sales. Later on, many engineers find themselves pursuing managerial careers, starting their own companies, or even managing entrepreneurial funds. Top graduates are also well received by medical schools, law schools, and professional and management programs.

The BS curriculum for both the electrical engineering and computer engineering degrees is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET).

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
BS in Computer Engineering
BS in Electrical Engineering

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Electrical and Computer Engineering
PhD in Electrical and Computer Engineering

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Students are strongly encouraged to seek advisement early in their studies to ensure effective course scheduling. Contact the college advisement center (264 CB) or the department (459 CB). Students should enroll in EC En 191 in their first year of study at BYU.

In both undergraduate degree programs offered in the department, students are required to pass prerequisite courses in the major with a grade of C– or better before taking follow-on courses.

Professional Registration. The Electrical and Computer Engineering Department provides the option for graduates to become registered professional engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. This status is vital to engineering practice in the public sector and to much consulting work. The basic electrical and computer engineering program outlined in this department prepares graduates to successfully complete the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination. Students who wish to become registered as professional engineers are advised to discuss this matter with an advisor from the department soon after admission to the professional program.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Computer Engineering (92–93 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Learning Outcomes

1. **Fundamentals:** An ability to apply knowledge of mathematics (differential, integral, and multivariate calculus; linear algebra; complex variables; differential equations; discrete math; and probability), science (Newtonian mechanics; electricity and magnetism; and introductory chemistry), computer fundamentals (programming languages; computer organization; and software/hardware interfaces), and engineering science (signals and systems, electromagnetics, and electronic devices).
2. **Experiments and data analysis:** An ability to design and conduct experiments, as well as to analyze and interpret data.
3. **System design:** An ability to design a system component or process to meet desired needs within realistic constraints such as economic, environmental, social, political, ethical, health and safety, manufacturability, and sustainability.
4. **Teamwork:** An ability to function on multi-disciplinary teams.
5. **Leadership:** An understanding of principles of leadership and project management.
6. **Engineering problems:** An ability to identify, formulate, and solve engineering problems.
7. **Ethics:** An understanding of professional and ethical responsibility.
8. **Communication skills:** An ability to communicate effectively.
9. **Broad education:** The broad education necessary to understand the impact of engineering solutions in a global, economic, environmental, and societal context.
10. **Lifelong learning:** A recognition of the need for, and an ability to engage in life-long learning.
11. **Contemporary issues:** A knowledge of contemporary issues.
12. **Techniques, skills, and tools:** An ability to use the techniques, skills, and modern engineering tools necessary for engineering practice.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

   PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

2. Complete the following:

   EC EN 124 : (EC En-C S) Introduction to Computing Systems. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming: logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, algorithm analysis.

EC EN 191 : New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of electrical and computer engineering with group and individual design projects.

EC EN 212 : Circuit Analysis and Laboratory. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 and Math 113 with an average grade of B or better, or clearance from department advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of electric circuits; sinusoidal-steady state, resonance, Bode plots, and balanced three-phase circuits. Includes labs.
NOTE: Fee.

EC EN 224 : Fundamentals of Digital Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CS-ECEn 124.
DESCRIPTION: Digital logic: theory, design, and implementation of combinational and sequential logic. Laboratory experience in construction of digital logic circuits.

EC EN 313 : Electronic Circuit Design 1. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis and design of linear and nonlinear electronic circuit building blocks.

EC EN 320 : Digital System Design. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212, 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced digital design, including hardware description languages, electrical properties of digital circuits, synchronous and asynchronous circuits, computer arithmetic, and interfacing to external circuitry.

EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

EC EN 370 : (EC En - Math 331) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

EC EN 391 : Junior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Seminars and colloquia on current topics in electrical and computer engineering, as well as ethics, contemporary issues, and life-long learning.
NOTE: Attendance and some writing are required.

EC EN 490 : Team Design Project. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Selected 400-level electrical and computer engineering courses, depending on the specific project.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating design experience based on skills learned in advanced technical courses. Students work in teams to plan, design, test, and demonstrate a major project.

3. Complete at least 19 hours from the following advanced technical program and technical electives:

a. Complete at least two of the following courses:

EC EN 425 : Real-Time Operating Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 324.
DESCRIPTION: Hardware/software interface, real-time kernel internals, implementation of high-level language constructs, issues in real-time application software development.

EC EN 427 : Embedded Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 320, 324.
DESCRIPTION: Interfacing digital hardware components to an embedded system processor. Developing the hardware-software interface. Developing application software. Using C and assembly language in device-driver design, monitor-debugger, and real-time kernel. Lab.

EC EN 451 : Introduction to Digital VLSI Circuits. (4:3:5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Design of very large-scale integrated circuits for digital systems. CAD tools used extensively to simulate the design and create and verify mask circuits.

b. Complete one of the following options:

Either

EC EN 362 : Transmission Line Fundamentals for High-Speed Digital Systems. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334; computer engineering major status.
DESCRIPTION: Transmission lines for high-speed digital systems.
NOTE: Lab included.

Or

EC EN 360 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields. (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, ECEn 212.
DESCRIPTION: Properties and application of transmission lines. Introduction to electric and magnetic field theory and development of Maxwell's equations.

EC EN 361 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 360 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and measurement techniques in static and time-varying fields. Transmission line design and measurements. Microwave generation, propagation, detection, and hardware components.

c. Complete remaining course hours selected from the following:

1. Additional courses listed in item 3a above or other 400-level electrical and computer engineering courses.

2. Any of the following:

C S 345 : Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 240.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

C S 428 : Software Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 340.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, design, implementation, and testing of significant software systems.

C S 431 : Algorithmic Languages and Compilers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Formal description of algorithmic languages and techniques used in their compilation: semantics, ambiguities, procedures, replication, iteration, recursion.

C S 452 : Database Modeling Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Database models: relational, deductive, object-oriented. Integrity constraints, query languages, database design.

C S 455 : Computer Graphics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Interactive computer graphics systems programming and architecture.

C S 456 : Introduction to User Interface Software. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 340.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to software architectures and techniques for graphical user interfaces. Input devices, windowing systems, event-driven programming, interactive geometry.

C S 460 : Computer Communications and Networking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to data communications and computer networking. Communications fundamentals, computer networks, software, architecture, telecommunications, regulation, standards.

C S 462 : Large-Scale Distributed System Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 340, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and implementing client-server enterprise applications. Web servers, application servers, database connectivity, remote procedure calls, transactions, messaging, directory, naming services, threads, security, data formats.

C S 465 : Computer Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 360.
RECOMMENDED: C S 404.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to computer security fundamentals: confidentiality, integrity, authentication, and access control. Secret key and public key cryptography, network security protocols, viruses, and fire walls.

C S 470 : Introduction to Artificial Intelligence. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to core areas of artifical intelligence; intelligent agents, problem solving and search, knowledge-based systems and inference, planning, uncertainty, learning, and perception.

C S 478 : Introduction to Neural Networks and Machine Learning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Neural network and machine learning models include Perceptrons, back-propagation, decision trees, genetic algorithms, and other mechanisms allowing computers to learn without being programmed.

C S 486 : Verification and Validation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: C S 312, Math 343, Stat 321.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing formal verification algorithms and using them in protocol and circuit design; proving both incorrectness and correctness.

3. 500-level computer science courses.

4. Complete the following supporting courses:
CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

Or
CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

C S 236 : Discrete Structures. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to grammars and parsing; predicate and propositional logic; proof techniques; sets, functions, relations, relational data model; graphs and graph algorithms.

C S 240 : Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 236.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

ENGL 312 : Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

Or

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

Note: Contact the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department for current information about added and/or deleted courses, as well as information about when courses are offered.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Electrical and Computer Engineering Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Electrical Engineering (91–92 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Learning Outcomes

1. **Fundamentals:** An ability to apply knowledge of mathematics (differential, integral, and multivariate calculus; linear algebra; complex variables; differential equations; discrete math; and probability), science (Newtonian mechanics; electricity and magnetism; and introductory chemistry), computer fundamentals (programming languages; computer organization; and software/hardware interfaces), and engineering science (signals and systems, electromagnetics, and electronic devices).
2. **Experiments and data analysis:** An ability to design and conduct experiments, as well as to analyze and interpret data.
3. **System design:** An ability to design a system component or process to meet desired needs within realistic constraints such as economic, environmental, social, political, ethical, health and safety, manufacturability, and sustainability.
4. **Teamwork:** An ability to function on multi-disciplinary teams.
5. **Leadership:** An understanding of principles of leadership and project management.
6. **Engineering problems:** An ability to identify, formulate, and solve engineering problems.
7. **Ethics:** An understanding of professional and ethical responsibility.
8. **Communication skills:** An ability to communicate effectively.
9. **Broad education:** The broad education necessary to understand the impact of engineering solutions in a global, economic, environmental, and societal context.
10. **Lifelong learning:** A recognition of the need for, and an ability to engage in life-long learning.
11. **Contemporary issues:** A knowledge of contemporary issues.
12. **Techniques, skills, and tools:** An ability to use the techniques, skills, and modern engineering tools necessary for engineering practice.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:

   MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   - PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
   - NOTE: Honors also.

   PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
   - DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

   PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   - PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
   - DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

2. Complete the following:

   EC EN 124 : (EC En-C S) Introduction to Computing Systems. (3:3:2)
   - OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming: logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, algorithm analysis.

EC EN 191 : New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of electrical and computer engineering with group and individual design projects.

EC EN 212 : Circuit Analysis and Laboratory. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 and Math 113 with an average grade of B or better, or clearance from department advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of electric circuits; sinusoidal-steady state, resonance, Bode plots, and balanced three-phase circuits. Includes labs.
NOTE: Fee.

EC EN 224 : Fundamentals of Digital Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CS-ECEn 124.
DESCRIPTION: Digital logic: theory, design, and implementation of combinational and sequential logic. Laboratory experience in construction of digital logic circuits.

EC EN 313 : Electronic Circuit Design 1. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis and design of linear and nonlinear electronic circuit building blocks.

EC EN 360 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields. (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, ECEn 212.
DESCRIPTION: Properties and application of transmission lines. Introduction to electric and magnetic field theory and development of Maxwell's equations.

EC EN 361 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 360 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and measurement techniques in static and time-varying fields. Transmission line design and measurements. Microwave generation, propagation, detection, and hardware components.

EC EN 370 : (EC En - Math 331) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

EC EN 391 : Junior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Seminars and colloquia on current topics in electrical and computer engineering, as well as ethics, contemporary issues, and life-long learning.
NOTE: Attendance and some writing are required.

EC EN 490 : Team Design Project. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Selected 400-level electrical and computer engineering courses, depending on the specific project.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating design experience based on skills learned in advanced technical courses. Students work in teams to plan, design, test, and demonstrate a major project.

3. Complete at least 19 hours from the following advanced technical program and technical electives:

a. Complete four courses from the following:

CH EN 381 : Introduction to Semiconductor Processing. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or equivalent; Math 303 or equivalent; Ch En 273 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Unit operations related to silicon-based semiconductor processing, including substrate preparation, photolithography, doping, etching, and thin film formation. Lab included.

EC EN 320 : Digital System Design. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212, 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced digital design, including hardware description languages, electrical properties of digital circuits, synchronous and asynchronous circuits, computer arithmetic, and interfacing to external circuitry.

EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

EC EN 425 : Real-Time Operating Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 324.
DESCRIPTION: Hardware/software interface, real-time kernel internals, implementation of high-level language constructs, issues in real-time application software development.

EC EN 427 : Embedded Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 320, 324.
DESCRIPTION: Interfacing digital hardware components to an embedded system processor. Developing the hardware-software interface. Developing application software. Using C and assembly language in device-driver design, monitor-debugger, and real-time kernel. Lab.

EC EN 443 : Communication and Power Circuits. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 313, 317.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to amplitude modulation, frequency modulation, and phase modulation circuits. Modulators, mixers, detectors, and the phase-locked loop. Power amplifier stage and orcillator design.

EC EN 445 : Introduction to Mixed-Signal VLSI. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313.
DESCRIPTION: VLSI circuit design emphasizing mixed-signal circuits such as D/A and A/D converters, phase-locked loops, S/H circuits. Associated laboratory provides layout-design experience.

EC EN 450 : Introduction to Semiconductor Devices. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, Phscs 281.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of electronic and optical solid state devices; includes semiconductor materials, bipolar and FET device physics and modeling, optical properties of semiconductors, and lasers.

EC EN 451 : Introduction to Digital VLSI Circuits. (4:3:5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Design of very large-scale integrated circuits for digital systems. CAD tools used extensively to simulate the design and create and verify mask circuits.

EC EN 464 : Wireless Communication Circuits. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis, design, and fabrication of RF/microwave passive circuit structures, amplifiers, oscillators, and mixers. System concepts, including stability, gain, and noise figure.

EC EN 466 : Introduction to Optical Engineering. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462.

DESCRIPTION: Introduces principles and practices of optical engineering including optical communications system and components.

EC EN 483 : (EC En-Me En 431) Design of Control Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 380 or Me En 335.
DESCRIPTION: Classical frequency response and time domain design of control systems. State-variable control and computer simulation of control systems.

EC EN 485 : Introduction to Digital Communication Theory. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 370, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis and design of digital communications systems in AWGN: signal space concepts, modulation, matched filter and correlation detection, synchronization, performance. Computer-based design exercises.

EC EN 487 : Introduction to Discrete-Time Signal Processing. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 370, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Digital signal processing, fast Fourier transforms, digital filter design, spectrum analysis. Applications in speech processing, SONAR, communications, etc.

b. Complete remaining course hours selected from the following:
1. Additional courses listed in item 3a above, or other 400-level electrical and computer engineering courses.
2. 500-level electrical and computer engineering courses.
3. Other engineering, mathematics, physics, or computer science courses as specified or approved by the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department.

4. Complete the following supporting courses:
CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

Or
CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

C S 235 : Data Structures and Algorithms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: C S 142.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental data structures and algorithms of computer science; basic algorithm analysis; recursion; sorting and searching; lists, stacks, queues, trees, hashing; object-oriented data abstraction.

ENGL 312 : Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.

NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

Or

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 214 : Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113; 343 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

MATH 334 : Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 113, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations.

MATH 343 : Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or 119.
DESCRIPTION: Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

PHSCS 281 : Principles of Solid State Physics. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 122.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to physics of solids, including laboratory experience.
NOTE: For students in science, computer science, technology, and engineering.

Note: Contact the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department for current information about added and/or deleted courses, as well as information about when courses are offered.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Electrical and Computer Engineering Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Electrical and Computer Engineering (EC En)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

EC EN 124 : (EC En-C S) Introduction to Computing Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: C S 142 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How a computer works, from hardware to high-level programming: logic circuits, computer instructions, assembly language, binary arithmetic, C programming, program translation, data structures, algorithm analysis.

EC EN 191 : New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of electrical and computer engineering with group and individual design projects.

EC EN 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

EC EN 212 : Circuit Analysis and Laboratory. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220 and Math 113 with an average grade of B or better, or clearance from department advisor.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of electric circuits; sinusoidal-steady state, resonance, Bode plots, and balanced three-phase circuits. Includes labs.
NOTE: Fee.

EC EN 224 : Fundamentals of Digital Systems. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: CS-ECEn 124.
DESCRIPTION: Digital logic: theory, design, and implementation of combinational and sequential logic. Laboratory experience in construction of digital logic circuits.

300-Level Courses

EC EN 301 : Elements of Electrical Engineering. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 220; Math 303 or 334.
DESCRIPTION: Linear electric circuits, computer organization, and logic circuits for nonmajors.
NOTE: Fee.

EC EN 313 : Electronic Circuit Design 1. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis and design of linear and nonlinear electronic circuit building blocks.

EC EN 320 : Digital System Design. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212, 224.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced digital design, including hardware description languages, electrical properties of digital circuits, synchronous and asynchronous circuits, computer arithmetic, and interfacing to external circuitry.

EC EN 324 : Computer Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: EC En 224, C S 235.
DESCRIPTION: Machine-level representations of programs and data, processor architecture, program performance optimizaton, memory hierarchies, virtual memory, linking, exceptions.

EC EN 360 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields. (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 214, 334, ECEn 212.
DESCRIPTION: Properties and application of transmission lines. Introduction to electric and magnetic field theory and development of Maxwell's equations.

EC EN 361 : Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 360 or concurrent enrollment.

EC EN 362 : Transmission Line Fundamentals for High-Speed Digital Systems. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334; computer engineering major status.
DESCRIPTION: Transmission lines for high-speed digital systems.
NOTE: Lab included.

EC EN 370 : (EC En - Math 331) Probability Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 343.
DESCRIPTION: Axiomatic probability theory, conditional probability, discrete / continuous random variables, expectation, conditional expectation, moments, functions of random variables, multivariate distributions, laws of large numbers, central limit theorem.

EC EN 380 : Signals and Systems. (5:4:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 212, Math 334.
DESCRIPTION: Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

EC EN 391 : Junior Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 212.
DESCRIPTION: Seminars and colloquia on current topics in electrical and computer engineering, as well as ethics, contemporary issues, and life-long learning.
NOTE: Attendance and some writing are required.

400-Level Courses

EC EN 425 : Real-Time Operating Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 324.
DESCRIPTION: Hardware/software interface, real-time kernel internals, implementation of high-level language constructs, issues in real-time application software development.

EC EN 427 : Embedded Systems. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 320, 324.
DESCRIPTION: Interfacing digital hardware components to an embedded system processor. Developing the hardware-software interface. Developing application software. Using C and assembly language in device-driver design, monitor-debugger, and real-time kernel. Lab.

EC EN 443 : Communication and Power Circuits. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: EC En 313, 317.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to amplitude modulation, frequency modulation, and phase modulation circuits. Modulators, mixers, detectors, and the phase-locked loop. Power amplifier stage and orcillator design.

EC EN 445 : Introduction to Mixed-Signal VLSI. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313.
DESCRIPTION: VLSI circuit design emphasizing mixed-signal circuits such as D/A and A/D converters, phase-locked loops, S/H circuits. Associated laboratory provides layout-design experience.

EC EN 450 : Introduction to Semiconductor Devices. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, Phscs 281.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of electronic and optical solid state devices; includes semiconductor materials, bipolar and FET device physics and modeling, optical properties of semiconductors, and lasers.

EC EN 451 : Introduction to Digital VLSI Circuits. (4:3:5)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, 320.
DESCRIPTION: Design of very large-scale integrated circuits for digital systems. CAD tools used extensively to simulate the design and create and verify mask circuits.

EC EN 452 : Experiments in Integrated Circuit Development. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 450 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Measurements of key silicon properties and fabrication of integrated circuits.

EC EN 455 : VLSI Testing. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 451 or 445.
DESCRIPTION: Testing of ICs designed previous semester in ECEn 451 or ECEn 445. Topics in VLSI-testable circuit designs.

EC EN 462 : Electromagnatic Radiation and Propagation. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 1st block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 360.
DESCRIPTION: Electromagnetic and optical theory including guided wave theory, modes, propagation in materials, radiation analysis, antenna analysis, and aperture diffraction.

EC EN 464 : Wireless Communication Circuits. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462 or instructor's consent.

EC EN 466 : Introduction to Optical Engineering. (2:3:1)
OFFERED: F 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 462.
DESCRIPTION: Introduces principles and practices of optical engineering including optical communications system and components.

EC EN 483 : (EC En-Me En 431) Design of Control Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: EC En 380 or Me En 335.
DESCRIPTION: Classical frequency response and time domain design of control systems. State-variable control and computer simulation of control systems.

EC EN 485 : Introduction to Digital Communication Theory. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 370, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis and design of digital communications systems in AWGN: signal space concepts, modulation, matched filter and correlation detection, synchronization, performance. Computer-based design exercises.

EC EN 487 : Introduction to Discrete-Time Signal Processing. (4:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 370, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Digital signal processing, fast Fourier transforms, digital filter design, spectrum analysis. Applications in speech processing, SONAR, communications, etc.

EC EN 490 : Team Design Project. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Selected 400-level electrical and computer engineering courses, depending on the specific project.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating design experience based on skills learned in advanced technical courses. Students work in teams to plan, design, test, and demonstrate a major project.

EC EN 493R : Special Topics in Electrical and Computer Engineering. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Recent developments in electrical and computer engineering.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

EC EN 522R : Special Topics in Computer Systems. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent

EC EN 541 : Active and Passive Filter Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 313, 380; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design methods for electronic filters based on passive components, active components, and integrated circuit components.

EC EN 542R : Special Topics in Electronics. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.

EC EN 543 : CMOS Amplifier Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 443 or 445 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Factors affecting performance of MOS devices in analog applications. Design of MOS amplifiers, buffers, and comparators.

EC EN 548 : Analog CMOS Circuit Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 443 or 445 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design of CMOS comparators, wideband amplifiers, bandgap references; multipliers, PTAT generators, charge-transfer amplifiers, chopper-stabilized amplifiers, and advanced D/A and A/D CMOS architectures.

EC EN 549 : VLSI Communication Circuit Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 443 or 445 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Frequency synthesizers; low-jitter, voltage-controlled oscillators; high Q circuits; clock regeneration; phase-locked loops; frequency discriminators; and radio-on-a-chip concepts.

EC EN 550 : (EC En-Me En) Microelectromechanical Systems (MEMS). (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 450 or Me En 372 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, fabrication, and applications of MEMS. Mechanical properties governing their design and reliability and the processing technologies used to fabricate them.

EC EN 555 : Optoelectronic Devices. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ECEn 450 or equivalent or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Design, operation, and fabrication of modern optoelectronic devices, including photodiodes, photovoltaics, LEDs, and lasers.

EC EN 560 : Electromagnetic Wave Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of modern electromagnetic wave theory: anisotropic media, dyadic green functions, Nuygen's principle, contour integration methods, asymptotic integration. Applications in radiation and scattering.

EC EN 562 : Optical Communication Components and Systems. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462, 466; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fiber-optic communication system components and their operating and performance characteristics.

EC EN 563 : Applied Computational Electromagnetics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory and practice in numerically solving Maxwell's equations for antenna and circuit design and radar-scattering prediction.

EC EN 564 : Radar and Communication Systems. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: EC En 462, 485; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Design and performance of radar and communication systems: radar equation ambiguity functions, modulation, signal detection, link budgets, spread spectrum, system design, and performance trade-offs.

EC EN 568 : Microwave Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on space-borne remote sensing of the earth's atmosphere, land, and oceans. Primary methods and applications for both active (radar) and passive (radiometry).

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Electrical and Computer Engineering Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Electrical and Computer Engineering Faculty

Professors

Christiansen, Richard W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Rutgers University, New Brunswck, 1961
MS, University of New Mexico, 1966
PhD, University of Utah, 1976

Comer, Donald Thomas

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, San Jose State University, 1959
MS, University of California, Berkeley, 1961

Comer, David John

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, San Jose State University, 1961
MS, University of California, Berkeley, 1962
PhD, Washington State University, 1966

Comer, Donald Thomas

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Santa Clara, 1968

Hutchings, Brad L

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1984
MS, University of Utah, 1987
PhD, University of Utah, 1992

Jensen, Michael Allen

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1994

Long, David G.

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Southern California, 1989

Nelson, Brent Edwin

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1981
MS, University of Utah, 1983
PhD, University of Utah, 1984

Rice, Michael

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Louisiana Tech University, 1987
PhD, Georgia Institute of Technology, 1991

Selfridge, Richard H

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, California State University, Sacramento, 1978
MS, University of California, Davis, 1980
PhD, University of California, Davis, 1984

Stirling, Wynn Clair

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1969
MS, University of Utah, 1971
PhD, Stanford University, 1983

Associate Professors

Archibald, James K

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, University of Washington, 1983
PhD, University of Washington, 1987

Beard, Randal W

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1991
MS, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1993
MS, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1994
PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1995

Hawkins, Aaron R

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, California Institute of Technology, 1994
MS, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1996
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1998

Jeffs, Brian Dean

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, University of Southern California, 1989

Lee, Dah Jye

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, National Taiwan University of Science and Technology, 1984
MS, Texas Tech University, 1987
PhD, Texas Tech University, 1990
MBA, Shenandoah University, 1999

Wilde, Doran Kenneth

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Oregon State University, 1994
PhD, Oregon State University, 1995

Wirthlin, Michael Joseph

COLLEGE: Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT: Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1997

Assistant Professors

Penry, David Aaron

COLLEGE:	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT:	Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK:	Assistant Professor
DEGREES:	MS, Case Western Reserve University, 1992
	BSE, Case Western Reserve University, 1992
	MBA, Ohio State University, 1994
	MA, Princeton University, 2002
	PhD, Princeton University, 2006

Schultz, Stephen Marshall

COLLEGE:	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT:	Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK:	Assistant Professor
DEGREES:	BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
	MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
	PhD, Georgia Institute of Technology, 1999

Taylor, Clark N.

COLLEGE:	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT:	Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK:	Assistant Professor
DEGREES:	PhD, University of California, San Diego, 2004

Warnick, Karl F

COLLEGE:	Ira A. Fulton College of Engineering and Technology
DEPARTMENT:	Electrical and Computer Engineering
RANK:	Assistant Professor
DEGREES:	BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
	PhD, Brigham Young University, 1997

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Engineering and Technology Education

Alan R. Parkinson, Dean
270 CB, (801) 422-4327

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Engineering and Technology Education (Eng T)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

ENG T 200 : Global Technology Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between the global society and technology. Global policy issues dealing with supply and demand of key commodities, economics, environment, population, and food and water resources.

ENG T 231 : Moral Leadership in a Technological World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices to help leaders develop consistent private and public lives and address the global environment from an integrated moral, technical, and social perspective.

ENG T 295R : Engineering Math Refresher. (0:3:0)
OFFERED: F on block, W on block
DESCRIPTION: Review of basic techniques of algebra, trigonometry, differential calculus, integral calculus, and series and sequences in preparation for engineering mathematics, ordinary differential equations, and multivariable calculus.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ENG T 502 : Advanced Applied Engineering Math 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math-Eng T 302, 303; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Topics in modern engineering mathematics, including applications of differential and integral equations and vector spaces.

ENG T 503 : Advanced Applied Engineering Math 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Eng T 502 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics in modern engineering mathematics, including applications of partial differential and integral equations and numerical analysis.

ENG T 595R : Special Topics in Engineering and Technology. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Special topics in engineering and technology that relate to current research areas or issues related to industry.

Back to Engineering and Technology Education Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

English

Edward Smith Cutler, Chair
4198A JFSB, (801) 422-4938

Brett C. McInelly, Coordinator, English Composition
4110C JFSB, (801) 422-3565

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of English are open enrollment. However, special enrollment limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

The English major provides a detailed knowledge of the English language and of literature written in English. English majors approach language and literature as a source of knowledge and aesthetic pleasure, a mode of encountering and evaluating diverse minds and attitudes, a vehicle for art and action, a means of historical understanding, and a source of spiritual insight. English majors use writing as their primary means (1) of knowing, understanding, and evaluating their experience and their reading and (2) of sharing their insight with others. In keeping with the long-standing ideals of a liberal arts education, the English Department aims to cultivate in its students those foundational skills in writing, awareness, and judgment upon which lives of wisdom, service, and an ever-increasing love for learning might be built.

Career Opportunities

With a firm grounding in the liberal arts, English majors are prepared for any career that requires perceptive reading, orderly and clear thinking, intellectual maturity, and effective writing. Many career opportunities for English majors exist in teaching, professional writing and editing, law, business, communications, or government service. English majors can certify to teach secondary-school English, or they can prepare for graduate study in English and college teaching. When combined with prerequisite courses in other departments, the English major provides excellent preparation for graduate work in law, business, library science, medicine, humanities, or religion. By selecting areas of concentration, some English majors prepare for careers in technical and professional communication, editing, creative writing, and related fields. By supplementing their English major with computer classes, some find work in information technology. The skills and knowledge acquired by an English major also provide good preparation for government service, especially when combined with the study of foreign languages, economics, political science, and history.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in English
BA in English Teaching

Minors

English
English Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in English

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Department of English strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in English (48–65 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must complete the GE Foreign Language option even if the Advanced Mathematics option has already been completed.
2. At least 21 hours of English major course work must be completed in residence at BYU.
3. Engl 195 is recommended.
4. Because upper-division English courses require substantial writing, it is strongly recommended that students complete their Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement as they begin their first upper-division courses, preferably in the second semester of their sophomore year.
5. No more than three hours of any one R course may apply toward the hours required for the major.
6. Complete the following core courses:
   a. Freshman college-level writing; choose one course, or the equivalent, from the following:

ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
Honors University Writing.
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

Note: Waivers based on the AP or other test scores do not apply to this requirement.

   b. Fundamentals of language and literature: complete one of the following:

ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

ENGL 252 : Introduction to Literary Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent, a 5 on the English AP exam, Engl 251, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected primary texts representing three different critical approaches; practice in reading and writing applied criticism; library research paper.

Note: Students must complete Engl 251 or 252 before taking any 300-level courses.

   c. British and American literary history:

ENGL 291 : British Literary History 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.

PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in early English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 292 : British Literary History 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in later English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

Note: Students must complete the literary history course in a period before taking any 300-level courses in that period.

7. Complete the following:
ENGL 382 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres.
NOTE: For English majors and minors.

8. Complete one course from two of the following three areas:
a. Early British Literature
ENGL 300R** : English Literature in a Cultural Setting. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
NOTE: For Study Abroad students only.

ENGL 341 : English Drama: Beginnings to 1800, Excluding Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Selected plays from medieval, Tudor, Stuart, Restoration, and 18th-century drama.

ENGL 371 : English Literature to 1500: The Medieval Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Principal works, mainly in translation, from Old and Middle English literature.

ENGL 372 : English Literature from 1500 to 1603: The Early Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Tudor period.

ENGL 373 : English Literature from 1660 to 1780. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Poetry, prose, and drama of the late seventeenth and eighteenth century, including major figures such as Dryden, Swift, Pope, Fielding, Johnson, and popular female writers.

ENGL 381 : Chaucer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive study of Chaucer's literature and language from medieval and modern perspectives.

ENGL 383 : Milton. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of poetry and selected prose, including detailed study of *Paradise Lost, Paradise Regained, and Samson Agonistes.*

ENGL 384R** : Major Authors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: American Authors.
: Early British Authors.
: Later British Authors.

ENGL 385 : English Literature 1603-1660: The Late Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Stuart period.

Note: Students must complete Engl 291 before taking courses in this area.

b. Later British Literature:

ENGL 300R** : English Literature in a Cultural Setting. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
NOTE: For Study Abroad students only.

ENGL 333 : The English Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Novels selected according to time period or theme from the past three centuries.

ENGL 343** : Modern English and American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

: Modern American Drama.
: Modern British Drama.

ENGL 374 : English Literature from 1780 to 1832: The Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Blake, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 375 : English Literature from 1832 to 1890: The Victorian Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Carlyle, Tennyson, the Brownings, Arnold, Dickens, Eliot, the Rossettis, Hopkins, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 376 : English Literature from 1890 to 1950: The Modern Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of modernism from the aesthetic movement to the end of World War II, including the writings of Hardy, Shaw, Yeats, Conrad, Lawrence, Woolf, Joyce, Eliot, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 380 : English Literature from 1950 to the Present: The Contemporary Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Important literature and literary trends since 1950.

ENGL 384R** : Major Authors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: American Authors.
: Early British Authors.
: Later British Authors.

Note: Students must complete Engl 292 before taking courses in this area.

c. American Literature

ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

ENGL 343** : Modern English and American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

: Modern American Drama.
: Modern British Drama.

ENGL 360R : American Literature in a Cultural Setting. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to Semester in Nauvoo Program--Joseph Smith Academy.
DESCRIPTION: American literature emphasizing writers and works related to the period and region of the early decades of LDS Church history.
NOTE: Offered at Nauvoo Center only.

ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

ENGL 365 : American Literature from the Mid--Twentieth Century to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Selected writers and literary trends, including postmodernism, from the mid--twentieth century to the present

ENGL 384R** : Major Authors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: American Authors.
: Early British Authors.
: Later British Authors.

Note: Students must complete Engl 293 before taking courses in this area.

****Note:** Three hours of Engl 300R may count toward either early or later British literature. Three hours of Engl 384R may count toward one of these three areas according to the period of the major author studied. Engl 343 may count toward either later British or American literature, according to the course content.

9. Rhetoric, Professional Communication, and Theory: complete one course from the following:

ENGL 415R : Introduction to Professional Communication. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: A GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication course.
DESCRIPTION: Developing proficiency in professional communication through rhetorical analysis, project management, and producing professional documents. Emphasis may vary with instructors.

ENGL 418 : Visual Rhetoric and Document Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: A GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication course.
DESCRIPTION: Using a rhetorical perspective to design, produce, and analyze visual documents and arguments in various media.

ENGL 426 : History of Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical traditions of rhetorical theory and practice, emphasizing Greek and Roman traditions.

ENGL 427 : Rhetorical Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Theories of rhetoric and their use in interpreting and evaluating rhetorical acts and artifacts,

including literature, with an emphasis on contemporary rhetorical theory.

ENGL 428R : Studies in Rhetoric and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ENGL 451 : Literary Theory and Criticism 1: The Critical Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey from Plato to the early twentieth century.

ENGL 452 : Literary Theory and Criticism 2: Contemporary Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to issues in twentieth-century literary criticism.

10. Diverse Traditions and Methods: complete one course from the following:

ELANG 468 : Varieties of English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes such as English-based pidgins and creoles.

ENGL 337R : Advanced Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in fiction, drama, poetry, or creative nonfiction.

: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Creative Non-Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Drama.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Poetry.

ENGL 345 : Literature and Film. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on film as an interpretation of texts. Includes International Cinema.

ENGL 350 : The Bible as Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Literary artistry, human values, and cultural significance of the Bible.

ENGL 355 : (Engl-ClCv) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

ENGL 356 : Myth, Legend, and Folktales. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Major mythic and legendary works that provide background for the literary tradition.

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

ENGL 364 : Literature of the American West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

DESCRIPTION: Literature protraying the West and the frontier.

ENGL 368 : Literature of the Latter-day Saints. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Fiction, poetry, drama, folklore, personal essay, and other literature emerging from the LDS experience and expressing various perspectives on it.

ENGL 391 : Introduction to Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Major types of folklore (e.g., myth, legend, folktale, folksong, custom, and belief); practical experience in collecting folklore.

ENGL 392 : American Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: American folk art and literature and the historical and cultural circumstances from which they developed.

ENGL 396 : Studies in Women's Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Female-authored literary texts and literary theory concerning women.
NOTE: A core class for the women's studies minor.

11. Complete the following:
ENGL 495 : The Senior Course. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires research and writing.

Note: Students should take this course their senior year, after taking Advanced Written and Oral Communication.

12. Complete 12 elective hours from any 300- or 400-level English courses, **except**:
a. Any English course used to fulfill the GE Advanced Written and Oral Communications requirement.
b. English education courses (Engl 329, 377, 378, 379, 423, 479).

The following may also be counted toward the elective hours:

a. Three hours from the following:
ENGL 218R : Creative Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual sections dealing with poetry, personal essays, drama, fiction, or science fiction, or combinations of these.

b. Three hours from the following Honrs courses:
HONRS 203R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
HONRS 303R : Literature. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Literature.
c. One course from the following ELang courses:
ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

ELANG 324 : History of the English Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Basic changes from Old English to modern English, including modern American dialects.

ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

ELANG 350 : Basic Editing Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Editing theory and practice, emphasizing copy editing and basic line editing.

ELANG 410R : Genre and Substantive Editing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring a different genre of publishing each semester, instruction in substantive editing.

ELANG 430R : Editing for Publication. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ELang 350, 410R; Chum 230.
DESCRIPTION: Refining copy editing and substantive editing skills through hands-on work with actual publications; one-on-one feedback and mentoring.

Note 1: Some English majors choose to minor in editing, which is offered by the Department of Linguistics and English Language.

Note 2: Some English majors choose to focus on special areas of concentration within the major itself, such as:

Creative Writing

Engl 218R, 317R, 318R, 319R, 320R, 419R, 518R.

Professional Writing

Engl 316, 399R, 415R, 418.

Folklore, Ethnic, and Regional Literature

Engl 356, 358R, 364, 368, 391, 392, 393R.

Rhetoric and Academic Writing

Engl 399R, 426, 427, 428R.

Preparation for Graduate Studies in English

Engl 451 or 452.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all English Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in English Teaching (74–91 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see item 1 below for information regarding admission to this program.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. This is a closed major requiring application to the program. Application forms are available in the Humanities Advisement Center (1175 JFSB) and the English Education Office (4168 JFSB). Students cannot apply until they have completed at least 9 hours of English major core courses.
2. Students must complete the GE Foreign Language option* even if the Advanced Mathematics option has already been completed.
3. At least 24 hours of English major course work must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Engl 195 is recommended.
5. Upper-division English courses require substantial writing. Students should plan to complete their Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement as they begin their first upper-division courses, usually at the beginning of the junior year.
6. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.
7. Sc Ed 276R is prerequisite to Engl 329, 377, 378, and 423 (377 and 378 may be taken concurrently). Engl 377 and 378 are prerequisite to Sc Ed 476R.
8. Complete the following core courses:
   a. Because English is a writing-intensive major, students are *required* to take a first-year freshman college-level writing course. Choose one course, or the equivalent, from the following:

      ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
      DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
      NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

      HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
      Honors University Writing.
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.

      PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
      RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
      DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
      NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

      Note: Waivers based on the AP or other test scores do not apply to this requirement. One of the courses must be taken.

   b. Fundamentals of language and literature: complete one of the following:

      ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

ENGL 252 : Introduction to Literary Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent, a 5 on the English AP exam, Engl 251, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected primary texts representing three different critical approaches; practice in reading and writing applied criticism; library research paper.

Note: Students must complete Engl 251 or 252 before taking any 300-level courses.

c. British and American literary history: complete the following:

ENGL 291 : British Literary History 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in early English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 292 : British Literary History 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in later English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

Note: Students must complete the literary history courses in a period before taking any 300-level courses in that period.

9. Complete two courses from the following:

ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

ENGL 365 : American Literature from the Mid--Twentieth Century to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Selected writers and literary trends, including postmodernism, from the mid--twentieth century to the present

10. Complete one course from the following:

ENGL 345 : Literature and Film. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on film as an interpretation of texts. Includes International Cinema.

ENGL 356 : Myth, Legend, and Folktales. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Major mythic and legendary works that provide background for the literary tradition.

(356 is recommended)

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

ENGL 359 : The Short Story. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Critical study of American, English, and European short stories, emphasizing those of the twentieth century.

ENGL 366 : Studies in Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

11. Complete three elective hours from the following list (**Note:** TMA 457 is strongly recommended):
    a. TMA 457 : Media in the Contemporary Classroom. (3:4:4)
    PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R in major area.
    DESCRIPTION: Developing educational methods and techniques for using media in the specialized media classroom; study of educational models and theories related to historical and emerging media technologies.

    b. any 300- or 400-level English course.

    c. ENGL 218R : Creative Writing. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
    PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
    DESCRIPTION: Individual sections dealing with poetry, personal essays, drama, fiction, or science fiction, or combinations of these.

    d. One course from the following ELang courses:
    ELANG 322 : Modern American Usage. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Su
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
    DESCRIPTION: Current conventions and effective use of American English.

    ELANG 324 : History of the English Language. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
    DESCRIPTION: Basic changes from Old English to modern English, including modern American dialects.

    ELANG 325 : The Grammar of English. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 223 or Ling 330.
    DESCRIPTION: Study of English grammar in various applications.

    ELANG 350 : Basic Editing Skills. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
    DESCRIPTION: Editing theory and practice, emphasizing copy editing and basic line editing.

    ELANG 410R : Genre and Substantive Editing. (3:3:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 322, 325.
    DESCRIPTION: Exploring a different genre of publishing each semester, instruction in substantive editing.

    ELANG 430R : Editing for Publication. (1-3:ARR:0)
    OFFERED: F, W, Sp
    PREREQUISITE: ELang 350, 410R; Chum 230.
    DESCRIPTION: Refining copy editing and substantive editing skills through hands-on work with actual publications; one-on-one feedback and mentoring.

12. Complete the following:

ENGL 329 : Teaching Grammar and Usage in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 223, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Language issues, particularly grammar, usage, and pedagogy, for students preparing to teach English at the secondary level.

ENGL 377 : Teaching English in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Engl 379.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching English and language arts to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required before student teaching.

ENGL 378 : Teaching Literature and Reading in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: English teaching major or minor status; Sc Ed 276R; Engl 251 or 252; Engl 292, 293, 420.
RECOMMENDED: Completion of all English major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching literature, reading, and related literacy skills in secondary English classes.
NOTE: Take immediately before student teaching or interning.

ENGL 379 : Practicum in Secondary English Teaching. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; concurrent enrollment in Engl 377.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in Engl 377 in a school classroom.

ENGL 382 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres.
NOTE: For English majors and minors.

ENGL 420 : Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers.

ENGL 423 : Teaching Composition in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching writing to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required for all English teaching majors and minors.

ENGL 479 : Secondary Student Teaching Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 377, 378.
DESCRIPTION: Issues experienced during secondary student teaching practicum.

ENGL 495 : The Senior Course. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires research and writing.

13. Complete the Professional Education Component:
    a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the

development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before registration for Sc Ed 276R.

b. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all English Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in English (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least nine hours must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Complete one of the following prerequisite courses:
   ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

   ENGL 252 : Introduction to Literary Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent, a 5 on the English AP exam, Engl 251, or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Selected primary texts representing three different critical approaches; practice in reading and writing applied criticism; library research paper.
3. Complete 15 elective hours of English courses from 218R and higher. At least nine hours must be 300-level or higher.

Show all English Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in English Teaching (27 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least 12 minor hours must be completed in residence at BYU.

2. Complete one of the following prerequisite courses:

ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

ENGL 252 : Introduction to Literary Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent, a 5 on the English AP exam, Engl 251, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected primary texts representing three different critical approaches; practice in reading and writing applied criticism; library research paper.

3. Complete the following:

ENGL 232 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Careful reading and discussion of six to eight major plays.
NOTE: Does not fulfill English major requirements.

ENGL 292 : British Literary History 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in later English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 329 : Teaching Grammar and Usage in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 223, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Language issues, particularly grammar, usage, and pedagogy, for students preparing to teach English at the secondary level.

ENGL 377 : Teaching English in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Engl 379.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching English and language arts to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required before student teaching.

ENGL 378 : Teaching Literature and Reading in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: English teaching major or minor status; Sc Ed 276R; Engl 251 or 252; Engl 292, 293, 420.
RECOMMENDED: Completion of all English major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching literature, reading, and related literacy skills in secondary

English classes.
NOTE: Take immediately before student teaching or interning.

ENGL 420 : Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers.

ENGL 423 : Teaching Composition in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching writing to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required for all English teaching majors and minors.

Show all English Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

English (Engl)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ENGL 115 : College Writing and Reading. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand. Independent Study only.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of expository writing and critical reading with an emphasis on library-based research.
NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

: Honors Writing and Rhetoric.

ENGL 195 : Introduction to the English Major. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the English major for the beginning student: curriculum, faculty, career options.
NOTE: Grading based chiefly on attendance.

200-Level Courses

ENGL 201 : Masterpieces of World Literature 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from antiquity through the early Italian Renaissance, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

: Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 1.

ENGL 202 : Masterpieces of World Literature 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 201.
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

: Honors Masterpieces of World Literature 2.

ENGL 218R : Creative Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual sections dealing with poetry, personal essays, drama, fiction, or science fiction, or combinations of these.

ENGL 220 : Composing Personal History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Composing personal history through writing, mementos, oral history, chronologies, letters, documents, journals, and other mediums.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ENGL 230 : Introduction to Literature: Fiction, Drama, Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to various literary themes, forms, and authors.
NOTE: Does not fulfill English major requirements.

ENGL 232 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Careful reading and discussion of six to eight major plays.
NOTE: Does not fulfill English major requirements.

ENGL 235 : Masterpieces of American Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings from Puritan times to the present.

ENGL 236 : Masterpieces of English Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Selected readings from medieval times to the present.

ENGL 251 : Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

ENGL 252 : Introduction to Literary Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent, a 5 on the English AP exam, Engl 251, or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected primary texts representing three different critical approaches; practice in reading and writing applied criticism; library research paper.

ENGL 268 : Literature of the Latter-Day Saints. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Fiction, poetry, drama, folklore, essay, etc., emerging from and reflecting upon the LDS experience from Joseph Smith to the present.

ENGL 291 : British Literary History 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in early English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 292 : British Literary History 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in later English literature as illustrated through representative texts.

ENGL 293 : American Literary History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Development of ideas, movements, genres, and styles in American literature as illustrated through representative texts.

300-Level Courses

ENGL 300R : English Literature in a Cultural Setting. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
NOTE: For Study Abroad students only.

ENGL 305 : Critical Reading. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Multidisciplinary approaches to literacy. Strategies and contexts for critical reading and thinking.

ENGL 306 : Travel Writing. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of writing about travel experience.
NOTE: For Study Abroad or Travel Study students only.

ENGL 311 : Writing About the Arts and Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing for both academic and mass audiences about the functions, meanings, values, and qualities of art and the humanities. Library research paper.
NOTE: Honors also. Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

: Honors Writing About the Arts and Humanities.

ENGL 312 : Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

: Honors Persuasive Writing.

ENGL 313 : Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 314 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing about the functions, meanings, qualities, and contexts of literature for specialist and nonspecialist audiences using selected critical theories. Research paper.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in literary studies. Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

ENGL 315 : Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence, proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

: Honors Writing in the Social Sciences.

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.

: Honors Technical Communication.

ENGL 317R : Writing Creative Nonfiction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Creations of style and technique in prose nonfiction; discipline and practice of the writer.

ENGL 318R : Writing Fiction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Creation of style and technique in prose fiction; discipline and practice of the writer.

ENGL 319R : Writing Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Creation of style and technique in poetry; discipline and practice of the poet.

ENGL 320R : Writing for Children and Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 218R.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of writing prose and verse for youth readership. Specific attention to requirements of picture books, middle-grade novels, and young adult stories.

ENGL 321R : English Department Reading Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Weekly readings of poetry, essays, and fiction by distinguished creative writers.

ENGL 329 : Teaching Grammar and Usage in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 223, Sc Ed 276R.
DESCRIPTION: Language issues, particularly grammar, usage, and pedagogy, for students preparing to teach English at the secondary level.

ENGL 333 : The English Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Novels selected according to time period or theme from the past three centuries.

ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

ENGL 337R : Advanced Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in fiction, drama, poetry, or creative nonfiction.

: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Creative Non-Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Drama.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Poetry.

ENGL 341 : English Drama: Beginnings to 1800, Excluding Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Selected plays from medieval, Tudor, Stuart, Restoration, and 18th-century drama.

ENGL 343 : Modern English and American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

: Modern American Drama.
: Modern British Drama.

ENGL 345 : Literature and Film. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on film as an interpretation of texts. Includes International Cinema.

ENGL 350 : The Bible as Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Literary artistry, human values, and cultural significance of the Bible.

ENGL 355 : (Engl-ClCv) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

ENGL 356 : Myth, Legend, and Folktales. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Major mythic and legendary works that provide background for the literary tradition.

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

ENGL 359 : The Short Story. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Critical study of American, English, and European short stories, emphasizing those of the twentieth century.

ENGL 360R : American Literature in a Cultural Setting. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Admission to Semester in Nauvoo Program--Joseph Smith Academy.
DESCRIPTION: American literature emphasizing writers and works related to the period and region of the early decades of LDS Church history.
NOTE: Offered at Nauvoo Center only.

ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

ENGL 364 : Literature of the American West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Literature protraying the West and the frontier.

ENGL 365 : American Literature from the Mid--Twentieth Century to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Selected writers and literary trends, including postmodernism, from the mid--twentieth century to the present

ENGL 366 : Studies in Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ENGL 368 : Literature of the Latter-day Saints. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Fiction, poetry, drama, folklore, personal essay, and other literature emerging from the LDS experience and expressing various perspectives on it.

ENGL 371 : English Literature to 1500: The Medieval Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Principal works, mainly in translation, from Old and Middle English literature.

ENGL 372 : English Literature from 1500 to 1603: The Early Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Tudor period.

ENGL 373 : English Literature from 1660 to 1780. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Poetry, prose, and drama of the late seventeenth and eighteenth century, including major figures such as Dryden, Swift, Pope, Fielding, Johnson, and popular female writers.

ENGL 374 : English Literature from 1780 to 1832: The Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Blake, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 375 : English Literature from 1832 to 1890: The Victorian Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Carlyle, Tennyson, the Brownings, Arnold, Dickens, Eliot, the Rossettis, Hopkins, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 376 : English Literature from 1890 to 1950: The Modern Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.

ENGL 377 : Teaching English in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Engl 379.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching English and language arts to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required before student teaching.

ENGL 378 : Teaching Literature and Reading in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: English teaching major or minor status; Sc Ed 276R; Engl 251 or 252; Engl 292, 293, 420.
RECOMMENDED: Completion of all English major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching literature, reading, and related literacy skills in secondary English classes.
NOTE: Take immediately before student teaching or interning.

ENGL 379 : Practicum in Secondary English Teaching. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; concurrent enrollment in Engl 377.
DESCRIPTION: Applying content and methods learned in Engl 377 in a school classroom.

ENGL 380 : English Literature from 1950 to the Present: The Contemporary Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Important literature and literary trends since 1950.

ENGL 381 : Chaucer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive study of Chaucer's literature and language from medieval and modern perspectives.

ENGL 382 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres.
NOTE: For English majors and minors.

ENGL 383 : Milton. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of poetry and selected prose, including detailed study of *Paradise Lost, Paradise Regained, and Samson Agonistes.*

ENGL 384R : Major Authors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: American Authors.
: Early British Authors.
: Later British Authors.

ENGL 385 : English Literature 1603-1660: The Late Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Stuart period.

ENGL 391 : Introduction to Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Major types of folklore (e.g., myth, legend, folktale, folksong, custom, and belief); practical experience in collecting folklore.

ENGL 392 : American Folklore. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: American folk art and literature and the historical and cultural circumstances from which they developed.

ENGL 393R : Studies in Folklore. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 391.
DESCRIPTION: Focused themes and topics in folklore. Topics may include regional or transnational folklore, folklore genres, folk groups, ethnographic research, cross-disciplinary issues, and history of folklore studies.

ENGL 395R : Studies in Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

ENGL 396 : Studies in Women's Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Female-authored literary texts and literary theory concerning women.
NOTE: A core class for the women's studies minor.

ENGL 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of cooperative education coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job training.

400-Level Courses

ENGL 415R : Introduction to Professional Communication. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: A GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication course.
DESCRIPTION: Developing proficiency in professional communication through rhetorical analysis, project management, and producing professional documents. Emphasis may vary with instructors.

ENGL 418 : Visual Rhetoric and Document Design. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: A GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication course.
DESCRIPTION: Using a rhetorical perspective to design, produce, and analyze visual documents and arguments in various media.

ENGL 419R : Creative Writing Projects. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 318R, 319R, or 320R.
DESCRIPTION: Individual major creative writing projects: novel, novella, play, poetry collection, short stories, or essays.

ENGL 420 : Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers.

ENGL 423 : Teaching Composition in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of teaching writing to secondary school students.
NOTE: Required for all English teaching majors and minors.

ENGL 426 : History of Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical traditions of rhetorical theory and practice, emphasizing Greek and Roman traditions.

ENGL 427 : Rhetorical Theory and Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Theories of rhetoric and their use in interpreting and evaluating rhetorical acts and artifacts, including literature, with an emphasis on contemporary rhetorical theory.

ENGL 428R : Studies in Rhetoric and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ENGL 451 : Literary Theory and Criticism 1: The Critical Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey from Plato to the early twentieth century.

ENGL 452 : Literary Theory and Criticism 2: Contemporary Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to issues in twentieth-century literary criticism.

ENGL 479 : Secondary Student Teaching Seminar. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 377, 378.
DESCRIPTION: Issues experienced during secondary student teaching practicum.

ENGL 480R : Directed Research in English. (1-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Directed research for ORCA grant recipients, research assistants, and other undergraduate students pursuing research projects.

ENGL 490R : Individual Readings in English. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Language and/or literature beyond what is offered in the curriculum.
NOTE: May not be substituted for another catalog course.

ENGL 495 : The Senior Course. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Senior status; English major status.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires research and writing.

ENGL 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
NOTE: Does not count toward English major electives.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ENGL 515R : Advanced Scholarly Writing. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Workshop for potential graduate students, graduate students, and professionals in all disciplines in preparing the thesis, dissertation, book chapter, and article.

ENGL 516 : Advanced Technical Writing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

ENGL 517R : Creative Nonfiction Workshop. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 317R or 318R; Engl 419R; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing creative nonfiction. Individual consideration of manuscripts.

ENGL 518R : Fiction Workshop. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 318R or 319R; Engl 419R; or instructor's consent
DESCRIPTION: Writing fiction. Individual consideration of manuscripts.

ENGL 519R : Poetry Workshop. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 319R, 419R; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing poetry. Individual consideration of manuscripts.

ENGL 520R : Studies in Theme and Form. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary: literature and film, myth and archetype, science fiction, etc.

ENGL 521R : Workshop in Writing for Children and Adolescents. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 320R, 419R; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing for young readers. Individual consideration of manuscripts.

ENGL 590R : Directed Readings. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Graduate advisory committee approval.
DESCRIPTION: Individual readings beyond what is offered in the curriculum.
NOTE: Primarily available for English graduate students in Study Abroad programs.

ENGL 599R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job training.

: Internship in Professional Community.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to English Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

English Faculty

Professors

Clark, Gregory

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, Brigham Young University, 1977
PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1985

Crisler, Jesse S

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Trinity University, 1969
PhD, University of South Carolina, Columbia, 1973

Cronin, Gloria Linda

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Canterbury University, New Zealand, 1968
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1980

Crowe, Christopher E

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MEd, Arizona State University, 1980
EdD, Arizona State University, 1986

Fox, Charles Jay

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, Purdue University, 1971

Hansen, Kristine

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1987

Harris, Claudia W

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Minnesota, Duluth, 1970
MEd, Georgia State University, 1975
MEd, Georgia State University, 1978
PhD, Emory University, 1990

Larsen, Lance Eric

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Houston, 1993

Paxman, David B

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, University of Chicago, 1972
PhD, University of Chicago, 1982

Tanner, John S.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1980

Thayer, Douglas H

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1955
MA, Stanford University, 1959
MFA, University of Iowa, 1962

Walker, Steven C

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, Harvard University, 1973

Associate Professors

Baker, Roger G.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1970
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1977

Bennion, John Serge

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1977
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Houston, 1989

Boswell, Grant Maurice

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, University of Southern California, 1982
PhD, University of Southern California, 1986

Cutchins, Dennis Ray

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Florida State University, 1997

Cutler, Edward Smith

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of California, San Diego, 1997

Dean, Deborah Marquiss

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MEd, City University, Bellevue, 1994
EdD, Seattle Pacific University, 1999

Duerden, Richard Y

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Chicago, 1989

Eliason, Eric Alden

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, University of Texas, Austin, 1994
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1998

Hatch, Gary L.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Arizona State University, 1992

Hickman, Trenton L

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, State University of New York, Stony Brook, 2000

Howe, Susan

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, University of Utah, 1978
PhD, University of Denver, 1989

Johstoneaux, Raphael

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1962
MA, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, Vanderbilt University, 1980

Jorgensen, Bruce W.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, Cornell University, 1969
PhD, Cornell University, 1978

Lawrence, Alma Keith

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, University of Southern California, 1987

Lundquist, M. Suzanne Evertsen

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
DA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1985

Mason, Nicholas

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, State University of New York, Stony Brook, 1999

McInelly, Brett Chan

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1992
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Cincinnati, 2000

Nelson, Joyce

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1956
MS, Florida State University, 1971

Perry, Dennis R

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986

Petersen, Zina Nibley

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, Catholic University of America, 1990
PhD, Catholic University of America, 1997

Rudy, Jill Terry

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1997

Siegfried, Brandie R

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brandeis University, 1993
PhD, Brandeis University, 1993

Snyder, Phillip A

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Brigham Young University, 1980
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1988

Sorensen, Peter J

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, Washington State University, 1988

Talbot, John

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1990
MA, Boston University, 1993
PhD, Boston University, 2001

Thursby, Jacqueline Schuster

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Idaho State University, 1985
MS, Utah State University, 1991
PhD, Bowling Green State University, 1994

Tourney, Leonard Don

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1963
MA, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1966
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1972

Wahlquist, Elizabeth

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1955
MA, Middlebury College, 1962
ML, Middlebury College, 1971

Young, Bruce Wilson

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, Columbia University, 1976
AM, Harvard University, 1978
PhD, Harvard University, 1983

Zimmerman, Beverly L B

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1994

Assistant Professors

Burton, Gideon Omer

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, University of Southern California, 1991
PhD, University of Southern California, 1994
MPW, University of Southern California, 1995

Christiansen, Nancy Lee

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1994

Christianson, Frank Quinn

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brown University, 2005

Hatch, David A.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Florida State University, 1996
PhD, Florida State University, 2004

Jackson, Matthew

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Snow College, 1988
BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Brigham Young University, 1993

Jackson, Brian David

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 2001
MA, Brigham Young University, 2003

Jackson, Matthew

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Utah, 2006

Jackson, Brian David

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Arizona, 2007

Johnson, Kimberly

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1992
MA, Johns Hopkins University, 1995
MFA, University of Iowa, 1997
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2003

Johnson, Keith L

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Boston University, 2007

Madden, Patrick

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Ohio University, 2004

Matthews, Kristin L.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1997
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2004

Muhlestein, Daniel K

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Rice University, 1992

Paul, Danette

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989

Thorne-Murphy, Leslee

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brandeis University, 2001

Tuttle, Stephen B

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Utah, 2006

Wickman, Matthew Farr

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, New York University, 1994
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2000

Wilcox, Miranda

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1999
MMS, University of Notre Dame, 2002
PhD, University of Notre Dame, 2006

Associate Teaching Professors

Bird, C Penny

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1993

Shakespeare, William Ott

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1996

Instructor

Grierson, Sirpa

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: English
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BEd, University of British Columbia, Canada, 1974
MLIS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, University of Southern Mississippi, 1996

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Exercise Sciences

Larry Hall, Chair
106 SFH, (801) 422-7303

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
203 RB, (801) 422-3638

Admission to Degree Program

Some of the degree programs in the Department of Exercise Sciences carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Athletic Training
BS in Exercise and Wellness
BS in Exercise Science
BS in Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12)

Minors

Coaching and Teaching Physical Education

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS in Exercise Sciences
PhD in Exercise Sciences/Wellness

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Athletic Training (71 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The study of athletic training appeals to those who would like to work in a field that combines an athletic setting with health and medical care. A student in athletic training will learn to apply knowledge of human anatomy, exercise physiology, conditioning, nutrition, and therapy in the prevention, diagnosis, immediate care, and rehabilitation of athletic injuries.

Students must graduate from an accredited athletic training program and pass the Board of Certification (BOC) examination to certify as an athletic trainer.

Career Opportunities

Career possibilities include working with athletic teams at all levels of competition or in a sports medicine clinical setting or other allied health facilities or in a corporate/industrial setting. BOC certification is required, and an advanced degree is recommended.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete a minimum of 45 major hours in residence at BYU.
2. Complete application into the athletic training program during semester of enrollment in ExSc 320. See the program director or ExSc 320 instructor for an application packet.
   a. Have a physical examination and provide an immunization record to verify technical standards.
   b. Submit one letter of recommendation.
   c. Interview with the athletic training staff.
   d. Complete 30 hours of clinical observation or experience in a college or high school athletic training setting and complete observation objectives.
3. Complete the senior exit interview.
4. Maintain CPR/AED certification.
5. Meet the technical standards associated with the athletic training education program.
6. Complete the following:

EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 362 : Kinesiology and Biomechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Math 110 or higher.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121.

EXSC 400 : Functional Anatomy and Kinesiology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced examination of structure and function of skeletal, articular, muscular, and peripheral nervous systems with clinical applications; cadaver lab included.

EXSC 414 : Advanced Athletic-Training Lab. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced athletic-training skills, including taping, bracing and splinting, custom-fitted equipment, massage and stretching techniques, and emergency splinting and transport.

EXSC 415 : Therapeutic Modalities. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic-training program.
DESCRIPTION: Hydrotherapy, massage, traction, radiant energy, heat, cold, and electrotherapy.

EXSC 416 : Injury Evaluation: Lower Extremities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of injury evaluation; evaluation techniques specific to lower-extremity injuries.

EXSC 417 : Injury Evaluation: Upper Extremities and Trunk. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 416.
DESCRIPTION: Injury evaluation techniques specific to the upper extremities and trunk.

EXSC 418 : Rehabilitation of Orthopedic Injuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 415.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles, techniques, and progression of orthopedic/musculoskeletal rehabilitation.

EXSC 419 : Medical Issues in Athletic Training. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 417 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Discussion of current medical issues in athletic training, with guest lectures by medical specialists.

EXSC 423 : Administration of Athletic Training Programs. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 415.
DESCRIPTION: Management and administration of athletic training facilities and staff members.

EXSC 460 : Orthopaedic Impairments and Therapeutic Exercise. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362; PDBio 220 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of body mechanics and therapeutic exercise, coupled with kinesiological principles for detection and correction of basic neuromusculoskeletal anomalies.

EXSC 463 : Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 464 : Exercise Physiology Lab. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.

EXSC 468 : Problems in Exercise Prescription. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463.
DESCRIPTION: Applying scientific principles to problems in conditioning.

EXSC 501 : Sports Medicine Pathology and Pharmacology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 320, PDBio 305; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sports medicine pathologies and related pharmacology for a variety of sports medicine/allied health care professions.

NOTE: Meets required educational CAATE competencies.

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

STDEV 139 : Introduction to Health Professions. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of health professions: medical, dental, and other specialties. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners and clinicians.

7. Complete the following (to be taken last semester prior to graduation):
EXSC 498 : Capstone Experience in Athletic Training. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing in athletic training education program.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesizing and integrating student classroom and clinical experiences in preparation for BOC examination resulting in certification of allied health professionals.
NOTE: Course should be taken last semester prior to graduation.

8. Complete the following:
EXSC 394 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 1. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Orientation to athletic training program and clinical expectations. Modules include emergency care, taping skills, and basic modalities.

EXSC 395 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 2. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 394.

DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include taping skills, assessment, and modalities.

EXSC 494 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 3. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 395.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include injury assessment and management, rehabilitation skills, and knowledge of general medical conditions.

EXSC 495 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 4. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 494.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include injury assessment and management, rehabilitation skills, nutrition, and dermatology.

Note: These courses must be completed over a two-calendar-year period. The athletic training clinical education courses listed above require field experience hours as part of the athletic training curriculum.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Exercise and Wellness (60.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Exercise and Wellness is a departure from the typical U.S. medical model in that the focus is on helping individuals achieve optimal health and fitness, rather than on discovering and treating disease. Recent research findings, along with rising health-care costs, have spurred an interest in keeping people healthy to improve their quality of life and also to avoid unnecessary medical expenses.

Depending on electives completed, there are several excellent career and graduate school options to pursue. Earning a master's degree in exercise science, for example, can give the added knowledge and experience needed to direct a private, commercial, corporate, or clinical health/fitness program. Other graduate school opportunities include a master's in public health (MPH), business administration (MBA), recreational therapy (MS), or food science and nutrition (MS), to name a few.

Career Opportunities

Personal fitness professionals find employment primarily in commercial or community fitness centers but may also work in hospital wellness programs or corporate health-promotion programs. Job responsibilities typically involve teaching clients how to achieve optimal wellness through effective exercise, wholesome nutrition, and successful stress-management strategies.

Exercise and wellness professionals may function at a staff or management level. Staff personnel often conduct one-on-one counseling sessions on a variety of health-related subjects as well as perform fitness testing and exercise prescription. They also may conduct workshops, conferences, or seminars on exercise, nutrition, stress management, weight control, and many other topics.

Program directors typically possess a master's degree with several years of experience working in a health promotion/wellness environment. As a program director, additional responsibilities typically include: financial budgeting, marketing, program administration and evaluation, and personnel hiring and training.

Students pursuing a degree in exercise and wellness are usually more successful in their profession if they gain expertise in the following areas: counseling, public speaking, behavior change, business, first aid, gerontology, and/or aerobic dance teaching. It is also strongly recommended that students obtain a health/fitness certification through a reputable certifying organization.

In 2005, survey data indicate that personal trainers earn $43,000 annually in the U.S. Throughout the U.S. the top five states have a salary range from $38,000 to $55,000. Health promotion program directors' salaries range from $43,000 to $63,000 annually, with more earning potential for individuals with graduate degrees and/or experience.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the senior exit interview.
2. Complete the following prerequisites to the exercise and wellness core:

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

TMA 150 : Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

3. Complete the following required core:
EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 387 : Lifestyle and Chronic Disease Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Current scientific evidence demonstrating how lifestyle affects disease processes. Healthy lifestyle concepts specifically needed by wellness professionals, health educators, and health promotion practitioners; influence of unhealthy lifestyle as basis for chronic diseases, i.e. cardiovascular disease, cancer, and diabetes.

EXSC 410 : Stress Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in learning to understand and manage stress.

EXSC 463 : Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 464 : Exercise Physiology Lab. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.

EXSC 480 : Obesity and Weight Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Review of the scientific literature surrounding obesity and weight management, primarily the causes and consequences of this growing epidemic.

4. Complete four hours from the following:
EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

5. Complete 25 hours from the following:

a. Complete a minimum of 18 hours from the following:

EXSC 285 : Personal Training Strategies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Designing and implementing individual and group fitness and wellness programs based upon the latest scientific concepts, utilizing safe and effective techniques, to develop flexibility, strength, and cardiovascular endurance.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 400 : Functional Anatomy and Kinesiology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced examination of structure and function of skeletal, articular, muscular, and peripheral nervous systems with clinical applications; cadaver lab included.

EXSC 455 : Worksite Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 363, 387.
DESCRIPTION: Managing, designing, marketing, implementing, assessing, and administering health promotion programs in a worksite setting.

EXSC 468 : Problems in Exercise Prescription. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463.
DESCRIPTION: Applying scientific principles to problems in conditioning.

EXSC 485 : Exercise and Wellness Certification Preparation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Review of exercise and wellness certification competencies and curriculum with preparation for professional certification.

HLTH 345 : Principles of Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation and control of epidemics.

HLTH 438 : Social Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 437.
DESCRIPTION: Social marketing, including formative research, audience analysis, segmentation, marketing mix, strategies, pretesting; application to health promotion and public health.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

b. Complete up to seven hours from the following:

ACC 200 : Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BUS M 300 : Financial Management. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Acc 200 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

BUS M 371R : Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

: Marriott School Lecture Series.
: Women Entrepreneurs.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

DANCE 336 : Methods of Teaching Aerobic Dance. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dance 342 or ExSc 362; Dance 343 or ExSc 363.
RECOMMENDED: NDFS 100.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 383 : Mind/Body Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on the effect of emotions and attitudes on health: how negative emotions increase disease susceptibility and positive emotions encourage immune strength, health, and healing.

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

ORG B 320 : Organizational Effectiveness. (3:Arr:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and concepts for creating effective organizations, e.g., individual, group, and organizational processes and human resource functions, including selection, compensation, and performance management.
NOTE: Taught online.

STDEV 139 : Introduction to Health Professions. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of health professions: medical, dental, and other specialties. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners and clinicians.

Note: Other elective courses may be taken with approval from the exercise and wellness major program director.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Exercise Science (58.5 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The exercise science program is designed to prepare students for entry into graduate school in one of the disciplines related to exercise science or one of the healthcare professional schools.

Students majoring in exercise science explore how the body functions during physical activity and exercise. Principles and concepts taught in human anatomy and physiology, exercise physiology, biomechanics, motor learning, chemistry, physics, and nutrition are mastered to help understand how the body responds to acute bouts of exercise and how it adapts to chronic physical activity and exercise. The impact that physical activity and exercise have on one's capacity to do work, physical performance, as well as its impact on health and disease makes study of this discipline rewarding.

Students considering medicine as a profession may want to select this major. While providing the requisite courses for medical school acceptance, it also conveys a healthy-lifestyle, preventive-medicine health care perspective.

Career Opportunities

The exercise science degree provides excellent preparation for students interested in graduate work in exercise physiology (MS, PhD) or those desiring to pursue training in medicine, physical therapy, cardiac rehabilitation, podiatry, chiropractic, and other health care professions. Graduates with this major may also find opportunities in community, corporate, or hospital wellness centers and health promotion programs.

The major is designed to prepare students to enter graduate programs in several health-related professions; specifically exercise science master's and doctoral programs. Those who complete graduate work in exercise science are most likely to be employed as a professor/researcher in a university setting. In addition to graduate studies in exercise science, students are also prepared to attend medical school, dental school, osteopathy school, physician assistant programs, and chiropractic school.

Salary varies tremendously with the terminal degree sought, the choice of career specialty, and geographic location of employment or practice. Earnings for those with certain medical and dental specialties are potentially lucrative.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete senior exit interview.
2. Complete the following:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

3. Complete one of the following options:

Either

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

Or

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

4. Complete the following major courses:

EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 362 : Kinesiology and Biomechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Math 110 or higher.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121.

EXSC 400 : Functional Anatomy and Kinesiology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced examination of structure and function of skeletal, articular, muscular, and peripheral nervous systems with clinical applications; cadaver lab included.

EXSC 460 : Orthopaedic Impairments and Therapeutic Exercise. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362; PDBio 220 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of body mechanics and therapeutic exercise, coupled with kinesiological principles for detection and correction of basic neuromusculoskeletal anomalies.

EXSC 463 : Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 464 : Exercise Physiology Lab. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.

5. Complete 14 hours from the following:

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

CHEM 481 : Biochemistry 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352; Biol 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis.
NOTE: For chemistry majors and students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 455 : Worksite Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 363, 387.
DESCRIPTION: Managing, designing, marketing, implementing, assessing, and administering health promotion programs in a worksite setting.

EXSC 468 : Problems in Exercise Prescription. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463.
DESCRIPTION: Applying scientific principles to problems in conditioning.

EXSC 470 : Functional Neuroanatomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, ExSc 400.
DESCRIPTION: Function, assessment, and rehabilitation of sensory and motor systems.

EXSC 497R : Undergraduate Research and Study. (.5-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individual research and study in any area of physical education.

HLTH 310 : Chronic Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, epidemiology of major chronic diseases, health costs to society, at-risk populations, population-based prevention, and related best-practice interventions.

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.

DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

MMBIO 241 : Molecular and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Molecular and cellular biology techniques laboratory.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

NDFS 305 : Nutritional Implications of Disease. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200; PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Nutritional assessment and medical nutrition therapy across disease states.
NOTE: For nutritional science majors.

NDFS 310 : Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100, PDBio 305.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific basis for the role of nutrition in human performance. Critical evaluation of popular practices; making optimal food choices for physical activity.

PDBIO 320 : Dissection Techniques in Human Anatomy. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques of human cadaver dissection.

PDBIO 325 : Tissue Biology (with lab). (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Biol 120.
DESCRIPTION: Human anatomy and histology; function of cells in tissue; early stages of embryology.

PDBIO 360 : Cell Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of cell structure and function with reference to analytical methods used by cell biologists. Practice in designing, executing, and interpreting relative experiments.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PDBIO 484 : Human Embryology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Biol 360 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: PDBio 225.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental milestones of prenatal life: etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing

molecular and cellular changes and their functional consequences.

PDBIO 561 : Physiology of Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 352 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of physiological and pharmacological mechanisms and principles of human therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiology.

PDBIO 565 : Endocrinology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Mammalian hormones.

PSYCH 111 : General Psychology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

PSYCH 220 : Human Development: Life Span. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of psychological, biological, and social influences on behavior and psychological development through the life span.

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

SOC 111 : Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

STDEV 139 : Introduction to Health Professions. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of health professions: medical, dental, and other specialties. Primary focus on guest lectures from various practitioners and clinicians.

STDEV 399R : Health Professions Internship. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
Health Professions Internship.
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Internships with health care providers.

Note: Watch prerequisites for the elective courses.

Note to Premed Stuadents: Professional schools and graduate programs may require additional courses not required for this major. Contact the programs to which you may apply to determine specific courses that meet their entrance requirements. Students considering professional or graduate degrees should take at least two semesters of mathematical courses. The following required or elective courses are strongly recommended for students considering professional or graduate degrees in the exercise sciences: MMBio 241; PDBio 360, 362, 363; Chem 351, 352, 353, 481; Math 119; Stat 221. For more information contact the Preprofessional Advisement Center, 3326 WSC, (801) 422-2318. Contact potential schools of choice for a complete list of entrance requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

BS in Physical Education Teaching/Coaching (K–12) (78 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this program.

The Discipline

Students preparing to teach physical education and/or coach will have a variety of experiences that will enhance proficiency in the knowledge and skills requisite to working in the contemporary school setting. Majors learn to perform a variety of sport, fitness, outdoor adventure, and dance activities personally. After becoming proficient, students take courses and have practical experiences in teaching and coaching children, adolescents, and adults. The discipline is interesting and rewarding, and those in a teaching/coaching career help others pursue and practice healthy lifestyle habits.

Career Opportunities

Graduates seek teaching and physical education/coaching careers in elementary and secondary education settings. With an advanced degree, teaching and coaching positions at institutions of higher learning are available.

It is recommended that students desiring to be optimally employable in secondary schools complete an approved teaching minor.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Prior to beginning course work in the major, students must apply for admittance into the PETE Program. The program requires that all students take most of the major courses together as a cohort group. See the PETE advisor during January of the sophomore year (106 SFH).
2. Complete the senior exit interview.
3. A teaching minor is not required for licensure. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following required prerequisite and general education courses:

HEPE 129 : Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

5. Complete the following:

EXSC 230 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including soccer, softball, tennis, walking, jogging, disc golf, and elementary activities.

EXSC 231 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including badminton, basketball, flag football, swimming, volleyball, and golf.

EXSC 233 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 3. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including cycling, hiking, snow sports, Pilates, aerobics, core training, and yoga.

EXSC 239 : Weight Training: Skills and Teaching Techniques. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 300 : Advocacy for Physical Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and sociological cornerstones of physical education.

EXSC 301 : K-12 Healthy and Active Lifestyle Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding the content and pedagogical knowledge required to manage a healthy and active lifestyle; how to impart this knowledge to public school students.

EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 352 : Legal and Administrative Aspects of Physical Education and Sport. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of physical education and intramural management including facilities, equipment, fiscal matters, personnel, public relations, and program administration. Legal considerations of physical education and sport programs, including constitutional rights, gender, liability, and risk management.

EXSC 360 : Curriculum and Assessment of Learning in Physlcal Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum development to meet national physical education standards. Assessment of psychomotor, cognitive, and affective learning, including elementary statiscal testing.

EXSC 361 : Introduction to Motor Learning. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Motor and cognitive factors influencing acquisition of motor skills.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 369 : Exercise Physiology for Physical Educators. (3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

EXSC 430 : Principles of Coaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Developing a philosophy of coaching and officiating; understanding coaching responsibilities and techniques; preparing athletes; valuing professional relationships with others.

6. Complete one course from the following:
EXSC 330R : Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching golf, tennis, or wrestling.

EXSC 335 : Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching swimming.

EXSC 341 : Coaching Basketball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching basketball.

EXSC 342 : Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching track and field.

EXSC 344 : Coaching Football. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching football.

EXSC 345 : Coaching Volleyball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching volleyball.

EXSC 346 : Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching baseball and softball.

EXSC 347 : Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching soccer.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component:
a. Complete the following:
EXSC 374 : Fundamental Skills and Teaching Methods for Elementary Physical Education. (3:2:2)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and demonstrating fundamental skills; identifying immature and mature movement patterns; selecting developmentally appropriate activities; appropriate management techniques.

EXSC 377 : Secondary Practicum. (3:1:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Written and practical teaching assignments designed to help prospective teachers plan, conduct, and evaluate lessons and unit plans appropriate to adolescent students.

EXSC 380 : Use of Technology in Physical Education Teaching. (2:2:)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology: Web page design and software focusing on skill, fitness grading, digital video editing, and presentation
NOTE: Course meets secondary education technology requirements.

EXSC 461 : Adapted Physical Education for Teaching Majors. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Program, legal mandates, management techniques, and assessing and identifying special needs students.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.
(3 hours required)
SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrolling in ExSc 377.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.
SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

8. Complete the PRAXIS II exam.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (23.5 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Students can choose this minor to prepare to coach. Students who have met the university's teacher licensure requirements will also be qualified to teach physical education with this minor.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

EXSC 229 : Physical Education Pedagogy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years.
DESCRIPTION: Sport pedagogy for students *minoring* in physical education/coaching.

EXSC 234 : Team Sport Fundamentals. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy development in soccer and volleyball.
NOTE: For *minor*s in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 235 : Sport Fitness Techniques. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy in flexibility and weight training.
NOTE: For *minor*s in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 351 : Administration of Physical Education and Athletics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Management styles and techniques for physical education and athletic programs; policies concerning eligibility, contest management, safety, facilities, and legal concerns.
NOTE: For teaching and coaching minors.

EXSC 364 : Scientific Bases of Sport 1: Motor Learning. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Motor learning principles for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 366 : Scientific Bases of Sport 3: Exercise Physiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Physiology of activity for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 430 : Principles of Coaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Developing a philosophy of coaching and officiating; understanding coaching responsibilities and techniques; preparing athletes; valuing professional relationships with others.

EXSC 450 : Psychology of Sport. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

2. Complete a minimum of 1 hour from the following:
EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

3. Complete one course from the following:
EXSC 330R : Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching golf, tennis, or wrestling.

EXSC 335 : Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching swimming.

EXSC 341 : Coaching Basketball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching basketball.

EXSC 342 : Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching track and field.

EXSC 344 : Coaching Football. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching football.

EXSC 345 : Coaching Volleyball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching volleyball.

EXSC 346 : Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching baseball and softball.

EXSC 347 : Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching soccer.

Show all Exercise Sciences Courses

Health/Physical Education (HEPE)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HEPE 105 : Healthy Living (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp odd years; Su even years
DESCRIPTION: Scientific evidence supporting the importance of a healthy lifestyle. Students will engage in healhy nutritional and exercise practices.

HEPE 129 : Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

Back to Exercise Sciences Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Exercise Sciences (ExSc)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

EXSC 100R : Intercollegiate Athletics. (.5:2:10.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

: Intercollegiate Athletics - Men.
: Intercollegiate Athletics - Women.

EXSC 101R : Activities for Fitness and Weight Control. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W

EXSC 102R : Adapted Physical Education. (.5:0:2)
PREREQUISITE: Medical referral.

EXSC 106 : Badminton, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 111 : Basketball, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

EXSC 112 : Basketball, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 111 or equivalent.

EXSC 116 : Bowling, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 117 : Bowling, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 120 : Cycling. (.5:0:2)
DESCRIPTION: Basic knowledge and skills in cycling and bike maintenance.

EXSC 121 : Diving, Springboard. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 125 : Flexibility. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 130 : Weight Management. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Improving fitness levels and body composition by participating in regular physical activity and monitoring and reducing dietary intake.

EXSC 131 : Golf, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 132 : Golf, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 131 or equivalent.

EXSC 136 : Gymnastics, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

EXSC 137 : Gymnastics, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 136 or equivalent.

EXSC 139 : Jogging. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 141 : Martial Arts. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 143R : Physical Training--ROTC. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: For ROTC students only.

EXSC 146 : Racquetball, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 147 : Racquetball, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 150 : Ice Skating. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Developing figure and ice hockey skills.
NOTE: Taught off campus. Fee.

EXSC 151 : Ice Hockey. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Beginning ice skating or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic power skates, puck and stick handles, and game strategies.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 152 : Intermediate Ice Skating. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 150 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing intermediate ice skating skills.
NOTE: Taught off campus. Fee.

EXSC 153 : Intermediate Ice Hockey. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExEc 151 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing intermediate ice hockey skills.
NOTE: Taught off campus. Fee.

EXSC 155 : Self-Defense. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental principles, skills, and techniques.

EXSC 156 : Soccer, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 157 : Soccer, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 156 or equivalent.

EXSC 161 : Skiing, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
NOTE: Sections formed on basis of ability. Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment, lift fees. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

EXSC 162 : Skiing, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
NOTE: Sections formed on basis of ability. Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment, lift fees. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

EXSC 164 : Skiing, Cross-Country. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: W
NOTE: Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

EXSC 169 : Elementary Skills and Activities. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical skills and activities specific to elementary-age children.
NOTE: Required for elementary education majors. Meets one Wellness physical education activity requirement.

EXSC 170 : Swimming for Nonswimmers. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 171 : Swimming, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 172 : Swimming, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 171 or equivalent.

EXSC 174R : Swimming for Students with Disabilities. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
NOTE: Can be taken repeatedly to fulfill the university physical education activity requirement for any student with special needs.

EXSC 175 : Beginning Scuba Diving. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Developing scuba diving skills.
NOTE: Taught off campus. Fee.

EXSC 176 : Advanced Scuba Diving. (.5:0:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 175 or Open Water Diver Certification.

EXSC 177 : Rescue Scuba. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 176 or Advanced Open Water Diver Certification.
DESCRIPTION: CPR, first aid, and diving rescue procedures and concepts. Rescue certification upon successful completion.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 179 : Water Aerobics. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Exercise workout in water emphasizing flexibility, strength, and endurance.
NOTE: For nonswimmers and swimmers.

EXSC 181 : Tennis, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 182 : Tennis, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 181 or equivalent.

EXSC 183 : Tennis, Advanced. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 182 or equivalent.

EXSC 186 : Volleyball, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 187 : Volleyball, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 186 or equivalent.

EXSC 188 : Volleyball, Advanced. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 187 or equivalent.

EXSC 191 : Weight Training, Beginning. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

EXSC 192 : Weight Training, Intermediate. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 191 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and technique of maximal strength development, emphasizing "power" and "Olympic" lifts.

EXSC 199R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:0)

: Team Manager Internship.

200-Level Courses

EXSC 201R : Extramural Sports. (.5::2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

: Extramural Alpine Skiing.
: Extramural Fencing.
: Extramural Lacrosse.
: Extramural Racquetball.
: Extramural Rugby.
: Extramural Soccer--Men.
: Extramural Soccer.
: Extramural Water Polo.

EXSC 203 : Performance Psychology. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Relaxation and imagery for athletes and performing artists.

EXSC 206 : Officiating Team Sports. (1:.5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years.
DESCRIPTION: Techniques, rules, and problems related to officiating, with particular attention to relationship between coach and official.

EXSC 229 : Physical Education Pedagogy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years.
DESCRIPTION: Sport pedagogy for students *minoring* in physical education/coaching.

EXSC 230 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including soccer, softball, tennis, walking, jogging, disc golf, and elementary activities.

EXSC 231 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.

EXSC 233 : K-12 Physical Activities Content and Skills 3. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Skills, content, and pedagogical knowledge in lifetime activities, including cycling, hiking, snow sports, Pilates, aerobics, core training, and yoga.

EXSC 234 : Team Sport Fundamentals. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy development in soccer and volleyball.
NOTE: For *minors* in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 235 : Sport Fitness Techniques. (1:0:4)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 229.
DESCRIPTION: Skill and pedagogy in flexibility and weight training.
NOTE: For *minors* in physical education/coaching only.

EXSC 239 : Weight Training: Skills and Teaching Techniques. (.5:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 277 : Techniques of Lifeguarding. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Swim competency test (given first day of class).
DESCRIPTION: First-aid and lifeguard skills training, including instruction in CPR, and American Red Cross certification for lifeguard training.

EXSC 278 : Water Safety Instructor Training. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ARC Swimmer--level competency.
DESCRIPTION: Leads to American Red Cross WSI certification. Swimming teaching methods that include teaching swimming to special needs students.

EXSC 285 : Personal Training Strategies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Designing and implementing individual and group fitness and wellness programs based upon the latest scientific concepts, utilizing safe and effective techniques, to develop flexibility, strength, and cardiovascular endurance.

300-Level Courses

EXSC 300 : Advocacy for Physical Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Historical and sociological cornerstones of physical education.

EXSC 301 : K-12 Healthy and Active Lifestyle Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Admittance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding the content and pedagogical knowledge required to manage a healthy and active lifestyle; how to impart this knowledge to public school students.

EXSC 302 : Philosophical and Ethical Issues in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical and ethical issues common to exercise science majors. Concept of mind, body, spirit.

EXSC 320 : Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220; concurrent enrollment in ExSc 321.
DESCRIPTION: Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

EXSC 321 : Basic Athletic Training Lab. (.5:0:.5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in ExSc 320.
NOTE: Fee.

EXSC 330R : Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching golf, tennis, or wrestling.

EXSC 335 : Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching swimming.

EXSC 341 : Coaching Basketball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching basketball.

EXSC 342 : Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.

EXSC 344 : Coaching Football. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching football.

EXSC 345 : Coaching Volleyball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching volleyball.

EXSC 346 : Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching baseball and softball.

EXSC 347 : Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching soccer.

EXSC 349 : Body, Mind, Spirit. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Sacredness of the body and its meaningfulness to the whole being. Comparative approach utilizing ideas from the restored gospel and Western and Eastern philosophy (nature of being).
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Body, Mind, Spirit.

EXSC 351 : Administration of Physical Education and Athletics. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Management styles and techniques for physical education and athletic programs; policies concerning eligibility, contest management, safety, facilities, and legal concerns.
NOTE: For teaching and coaching minors.

EXSC 352 : Legal and Administrative Aspects of Physical Education and Sport. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of physical education and intramural management including facilities, equipment, fiscal matters, personnel, public relations, and program administration. Legal considerations of physical education and sport programs, including constitutional rights, gender, liability, and risk management.

EXSC 360 : Curriculum and Assessment of Learning in Physical Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Curriculum development to meet national physical education standards. Assessment of psychomotor, cognitive, and affective learning, including elementary statiscal testing.

EXSC 361 : Introduction to Motor Learning. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Motor and cognitive factors influencing acquisition of motor skills.

EXSC 362 : Kinesiology and Biomechanics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, Math 110 or higher.
RECOMMENDED: Phscs 105 or 121.

EXSC 364 : Scientific Bases of Sport 1: Motor Learning. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Motor learning principles for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 365 : Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 366 : Scientific Bases of Sport 3: Exercise Physiology. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Physiology of activity for physical education/coaching minor.

EXSC 369 : Exercise Physiology for Physical Educators. (3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 374 : Fundamental Skills and Teaching Methods for Elementary Physical Education. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Identifying and demonstrating fundamental skills; identifying immature and mature movement patterns; selecting developmentally appropriate activities; appropriate management techniques.

EXSC 375 : Physical Education for Elementary School Teachers. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 169.

EXSC 376 : Practical Experience in Teaching Elementary School Physical Education. (2:0:4)
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 375.

EXSC 377 : Secondary Practicum. (3:1:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Written and practical teaching assignments designed to help prospective teachers plan, conduct, and evaluate lessons and unit plans appropriate to adolescent students.

EXSC 380 : Use of Technology in Physical Education Teaching. (2:2:)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Applying computer technology: Web page design and software focusing on skill, fitness grading, digital video editing, and presentation
NOTE: Course meets secondary education technology requirements.

EXSC 387 : Lifestyle and Chronic Disease Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Current scientific evidence demonstrating how lifestyle affects disease processes. Healthy lifestyle concepts specifically needed by wellness professionals, health educators, and health promotion practitioners; influence of unhealthy lifestyle as basis for chronic diseases, i.e. cardiovascular disease, cancer, and diabetes.

EXSC 394 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 1. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Orientation to athletic training program and clinical expectations. Modules include emergency care, taping skills, and basic modalities.

EXSC 395 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 2. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 394.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include taping skills, assessment, and modalities.

EXSC 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Advisor's consent; ExSc 301 for health promotion majors.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

: Athletic Training Practicum.
: Coaching Practicum.
: Exercise Physiology Practicum.
: Exercise Science Internship.
: Fitness and Wellness Internship
: Practicum Handicap.

400-Level Courses

EXSC 400 : Functional Anatomy and Kinesiology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced examination of structure and function of skeletal, articular, muscular, and peripheral nervous systems with clinical applications; cadaver lab included.

EXSC 410 : Stress Management. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in learning to understand and manage stress.

EXSC 414 : Advanced Athletic-Training Lab. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced athletic-training skills, including taping, bracing and splinting, custom-fitted equipment, massage and stretching techniques, and emergency splinting and transport.

EXSC 415 : Therapeutic Modalities. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic-training program.
DESCRIPTION: Hydrotherapy, massage, traction, radiant energy, heat, cold, and electrotherapy.

EXSC 416 : Injury Evaluation: Lower Extremities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Admission to athletic training program.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of injury evaluation; evaluation techniques specific to lower-extremity injuries.

EXSC 417 : Injury Evaluation: Upper Extremities and Trunk. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 416.
DESCRIPTION: Injury evaluation techniques specific to the upper extremities and trunk.

EXSC 418 : Rehabilitation of Orthopedic Injuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 415.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles, techniques, and progression of orthopedic/musculoskeletal rehabilitation.

EXSC 419 : Medical Issues in Athletic Training. (1:1:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 417 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Discussion of current medical issues in athletic training, with guest lectures by medical specialists.

EXSC 423 : Administration of Athletic Training Programs. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 415.
DESCRIPTION: Management and administration of athletic training facilities and staff members.

EXSC 430 : Principles of Coaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Developing a philosophy of coaching and officiating; understanding coaching responsibilities and techniques; preparing athletes; valuing professional relationships with others.

EXSC 450 : Psychology of Sport. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W

EXSC 455 : Worksite Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 363, 387.
DESCRIPTION: Managing, designing, marketing, implementing, assessing, and administering health promotion programs in a worksite setting.

EXSC 460 : Orthopaedic Impairments and Therapeutic Exercise. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 362; PDBio 220 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of body mechanics and therapeutic exercise, coupled with kinesiological principles for detection and correction of basic neuromusculoskeletal anomalies.

EXSC 461 : Adapted Physical Education for Teaching Majors. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into PETE program.
DESCRIPTION: Program, legal mandates, management techniques, and assessing and identifying special needs students.

EXSC 463 : Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305.

EXSC 464 : Exercise Physiology Lab. (.5:0:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.

EXSC 468 : Problems in Exercise Prescription. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp even years; Su odd years.
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463.
DESCRIPTION: Applying scientific principles to problems in conditioning.

EXSC 470 : Functional Neuroanatomy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 220, ExSc 400.
DESCRIPTION: Function, assessment, and rehabilitation of sensory and motor systems.

EXSC 476 : Elementary Student Teaching in Physical Education. (3:1:5)
PREREQUISITE: Completion of courses in public school teaching major and instructor's consent.

EXSC 480 : Obesity and Weight Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 463 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Review of the scientific literature surrounding obesity and weight management, primarily the causes and consequences of this growing epidemic.

EXSC 485 : Exercise and Wellness Certification Preparation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Review of exercise and wellness certification competencies and curriculum with preparation for professional certification.

EXSC 494 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 3. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 395.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include injury assessment and management, rehabilitation skills, and knowledge of general medical conditions.

EXSC 495 : Athletic Training Clinical Education 4. (2:1:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 494.
DESCRIPTION: Classroom and field experience. Modules include injury assessment and management, rehabilitation skills, nutrition, and dermatology.

EXSC 496R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (.5-8:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 320 and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Academic and practical application of skills for athletic trainers.

: Athletic Training.

EXSC 497R : Undergraduate Research and Study. (.5-4:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Individual research and study in any area of physical education.

EXSC 498 : Capstone Experience in Athletic Training. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing in athletic training education program.
DESCRIPTION: Synthesizing and integrating student classroom and clinical experiences in preparation for BOC examination resulting in certification of allied health professionals.
NOTE: Course should be taken last semester prior to graduation.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

EXSC 501 : Sports Medicine Pathology and Pharmacology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 320, PDBio 305; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Sports medicine pathologies and related pharmacology for a variety of sports medicine/allied health care professions.
NOTE: Meets required educational CAATE competencies.

EXSC 560 : Orthopaedic Pathomechanics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: ExSc 460 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced analysis of neuromusculoskeletal deformities and/or injury. Therapeutic exercise and the use of orthoses.

EXSC 582 : Physical Education for Special Populations. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Baccalaureate degree in physical education.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical aspects of teaching individuals with disabilities.

EXSC 585 : Pedagogical Techniques in Exercise Sciences. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate student with teaching assistantship in exercise sciences.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching methodologies for instruction in fitness and sports courses.

EXSC 586R : Workshop in Fitness and Sport. (1-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Undergraduate major in physical education or equivalent.

EXSC 599R : Academic Internship: Practicum. (1-9:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Field experience for exercise science students; 50 hours of service in approved organization required per credit hour.

: Coaching Practicum.
: Curriculum Instruction Practicum.
: Elementary Physical Education Practicum.
: Exercise Science Practicum
: Health Promotion Practices.
: Physical Therapy Practicum.
: Rehabilitation Practicum.
: Sport Leadership Practicum.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Exercise Sciences Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Exercise Sciences Faculty

Professors

Allsen, Philip Edmond

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Ricks College, 1955
MS, Brigham Young University, 1960
EdD, University of Utah, 1965

Draper, David

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
EdD, Northern Illinois University, 1988

Knight, Kenneth Lloyd

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Dixie College, 1967
BS, Weber State College, 1969
BS, Weber State College, 1973
PhD, University of Missouri, Columbia, 1977

Lockhart, Barbara D

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Michigan State University, 1964
MA, Michigan State University, 1967
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1971

Mack, Gary Wayne

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of California, Davis, 1977
MA, University of California, Davis, 1981
PhD, John A. Burns School of Medicine, 1984

Myrer, Joseph William

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BPE, University of Calgary, Canada, 1974
MA, University of Windsor, Canada, 1977
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Tucker, Larry A

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Brigham Young University, 1979
PhD, Southern Illinois University, 1981

Associate Professors

Feland, Jeffrey Brent

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Texas Women's University, 1995
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1999

George, James David

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, Brigham Young University, 1986
PhD, Arizona State University, 1995

Graser, Susan Vincent

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Arizona State University, 2001

Hunter, Iain

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, Oregon State University, 2001

Parcell, Allen C.

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Iowa State University, 1995
PhD, Ball State University, 1998

Pennington, Todd R

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, University of Utah, 1995
PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst. and State University, 1998

Vehrs, Pat Roy

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Northern Illinois University, 1984
MS, Northern Illinois University, 1986
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1991

Wilkinson, Carol

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BEd, Durham University, England, 1976
MS, Brigham Young University, 1981
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1983

Zanandrea, Maria Luiza Betioli

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1992

Assistant Professors

Hager, Ronald Lee

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Arizona State University, 1997

Hopkins, Jon Tyson

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Indiana State University, 1997
PhD, Indiana State University, 2000

Johnson, Aaron Wayne

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Brigham Young University, 2007

Prusak, Keven A.

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MEd, Utah State University, 1990
PhD, Arizona State University, 2000

Seeley, Matthew Kirk

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 2000
MS, Utah State University, 2002
PhD, University of Kentucky, 2006

Teaching Professor

Olson, Mel J

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1973
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1980

Associate Teaching Professors

Chamberlain, Diane

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, California State University, Los Angeles, 1966
MS, Brigham Young University, 1969
EdD, University of Utah, 1984

Noel, Robert

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1964
MS, Brigham Young University, 1986

Assistant Teaching Professor

Diede, Mike Todd

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Indiana State University, 1996
PhD, University of Arizona, 2005

Associate Clinical Professors

Merrill, R Gaye

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MS, Indiana University, Bloomington, 1979

Morris, A Kevin

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MS, Brigham Young University, 2003

Assistant Clinical Professors

Billings, Carolyn

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Brigham Young University, 1995

Empey, William Blain

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Clinical Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MS, Columbia University, 1993

Athletic Professionals

Poole, R Craig

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1964
MS, Utah State University, 1967
EdD, University of Utah, 1970

Powers, Timothy J

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, University of Montana, 1968
MA, San Jose State University, 1973

Shane, Patrick E

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1970
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1985

Associate Athletic Professionals

Brockbank, Bruce R

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990

Crump, Stan

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988

Lamb, Barry E

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, University of Oregon, 1978
MS, Arizona State University, 1988

Nyhus, Susan Billek

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Utah, 1992

Robison, Mark

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1986

Rose, David Jack

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: AS, Dixie College, 1980
BA, University of Houston, 1983

Russell, Jon Keith

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Associate Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973

Assistant Athletic Professionals

Bills, Allison N

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1998

Eyestone, Edward Dale

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: MS, Brigham Young University, 1990

Law, Vance A

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983

Legas, Richard Clark

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Embry Riddle Aeronautical University, 1987

Manning, Craig L

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996

Mertz, Shauna S

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993

Mitchell, Brian K

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995

Penfield, Janie

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BA, Colorado State University, 1998
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2003

Pullins, Gary D

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: AA, Arizona Western College, 1966
BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975

Reynolds, Robert Lance

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980

Rockwood, Jennifer

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1989

Santiago, Brian

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1999
MBA, Brigham Young University, 2001

Skabelund, Shari Clark

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981

Watkins, Christopher N

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Exercise Sciences
RANK: Assistant Athletic Professional
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1998

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Family Life

Richard B. Miller, Director
2086-B JFSB, (801) 422-2069

Shirley Klein, Associate Director for Curriculum
2060B JFSB, (801) 422-3914

Randal Day, Director of Family Studies Center
1041D JFSB, (801) 422-6415

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

The School of Family Life is committed to enhancing th quality of life of individuals and families within the homes and communities worldwide. Accordingly, the mission of the school is to:

- Provide instruction that fosters commitment to the principles in *The Family: A Proclamation to the World.*
- Conduct research that contributes to the understanding and enhancement of human development, temporal well-being in the home, and marriage and family relationships.
- Help students develop the attitudes, beliefs, behaviors, and skills that characterize persons of positive influence—in their own marriage and families, in their professions, in church and public service, and in other personal relationships.

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the School of Family Life are open enrollment.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BS in Family and Consumer Sciences Education
- BS in Family Life
  - Emphases:
    - Home and Family Living
    - Human Development
    - Marriage and Family Studies

Minors
- Family Life
- Gerontology

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

- MS in Marriage, Family, and Human Development
- MS in Marriage and Family Therapy
- PhD in Marriage, Family, and Human Development
- PhD in Marriage and Family Therapy

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Family and Consumer Sciences Education (74 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Academic preparation in this interdisciplinary education program includes study in the areas of early childhood development, marriage and family relationships, parenting education, housing and interiors, clothing and textiles, and nutrition and wellness.

With the development of a knowledge base in these critical areas, graduates will be prepared to provide valuable content to secondary education students as they confront life's challenges. These students can become a resource to their own families empowering them to become healthy community contributors.

This program interfaces with the McKay School of Education and includes professional education courses.

Careers

The family and consumer sciences education program prepares students to be licensed by the State of Utah for teaching in the secondary schools. This teaching license can be transferred to other states upon meeting individual state requirements. Students may also find employment in business and Cooperative Extension.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 15 hours of major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
2. Complete the following interpersonal relationships courses:

   SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

   SFL 105 : Home and Family Living. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Creating home as a sacred center for individual, marital, and family development; how temporal activities in the home have spiritual importance.

3. Complete the following human development courses:

   SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
   NOTE: Independent Study also.

   SFL 221 : Foundations of Developmentally Appropriate Practices in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: SFL 210.
   DESCRIPTION: Historical, philosophical, organizational, and curricular issues related to developmentally appropriate practices in programs for young children.
   NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 221 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

   SFL 222 : Practicum in Developmentally Appropriate Practices. (2:0:12)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su

PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 210, 221; 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Initial practicum with young children to increase understanding of socialization and learning processes, to create meaningful learning opportunities, and to implement developmentally appropriate practices.
NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 222 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

4. Complete the following financial literacy course:
SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

5. Complete the following textiles and apparel courses:
SFL 180 : Clothing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive approach to consumer economics of clothing selection and care for individuals across the family life cycle and across cultures. Adapting clothing to meet diverse individual (physical and psychological) needs in the market-oriented economy.

SFL 185R : Beginning Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basics of using a sewing machine for making apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

(or equivalent)
SFL 282 : Textiles. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes, and finishes. Care and performance of textile fabrics for clothing and household use.

SFL 287 : Intermediate Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 185R or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing and executing various construction methods, including construction of several full-scale garments.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required. Fee.

6. Complete the following living environments courses:
SFL 102 : Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

SFL 202 : Design in the Home. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: HFL 102.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate application of elements and principles of design in the home.

7. Complete the following foods and nutrition courses:
NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

SFL 110 : Food Preparation in the Home. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

DESCRIPTION: Principles of cooking and skill development in food preparation techniques. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 340 : Family Meal Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and managing time, energy, finance, and nutrition in planning, preparing, and serving family meals; ethnic and cultural diversity in etiquette and meal planning. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

8. Complete at least one course from one of the following focus areas (SFL 290 or Stat 221 may be a prerequisite for some):
   a. Clothing:

SFL 380 : History of Apparel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding the stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

SFL 387 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Patternmaking. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 387 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Flat pattern design, basic drafting, and basic draping for women's apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 487 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 287 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional fitting of apparel and advanced garment construction.
NOTE: Fee.

   b. Family Dynamics:

SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

SFL 223 : Preparation for Marriage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Factors related to quality relationships, mate selection, and the transition into marriage.

SFL 335 : Family Adaptation and Resiliency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding family resiliency and building family strengths in normative transitions (birth, death, job) and nonnormative transitions (divorce, disability, remarriage, poverty, violence). Developing familial, social, religious, and instrumental resources to adapt positively to these transitions.

SFL 371 : Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 160.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

SFL 480 : Moral Foundations of Family Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: How the moral domain is central to human experience; implications for family life of theories and practices that acknowledge agency and the ethical.

   c. Human Development:

HLTH 436 : Sexuality Education in the Curriculum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Preparing prospective teachers to teach sexuality education related to health curricula. Maturation, family health issues, parenthood, interpersonal skills, and related pedagogy issues.

SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

SFL 334 : Adult Development and Aging in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

d. Financial Literacy:
SFL 360 : Advanced Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260.
DESCRIPTION: Time value of money principles applied to family finance.

SFL 361 : Money in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Money attitudes and financial behaviors in the family - distinguishing between living high and living well. Mentored learning course.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

e. Living Environments:
SFL 230 : Housing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social-psychological, economic, and political aspects of housing families; making selections that will enhance the quality of housing, increase productivity, and protect the health, safety, and well-being of the family across the life cycle.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

f. Foods and Nutrition:
NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

SFL 215 : Advanced Food Preparation. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, readings, and intense practicum in food preparation, food preservation and storage, presentation, consumerism, equipment usage, and social/familial aspects of food. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
a. Complete the following:
CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp

DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SFL 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction in Family and Consumer Sciences Education. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 378.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before registration in SFL 377.

b. Complete 12 hours from the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.

The Church of Jesus Christ

: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

10. Complete the Praxis II test.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Family Life: Home and Family Living Emphasis (47–48 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Home and family living fosters study of the home as a sacred center for everyday family life and as the basis for a vital community. Theory, research, and practice are used to: (1) illuminate the value of everyday home life; (2) foster wellness and provident living in meeting practical human needs such as feeding, housing, clothing, and financing the family; (3) value the potential that practical human needs present for the moral and temporal development of family members; (4) promote religious and community involvement that maintains and strengthens home and family as the fundamental unit of society; and (5) prepare individuals as professional and everyday home and family educators.

Careers

This program prepares students for successful home and family living, but also enables them to develop an area of interest that leads to a home-based business or other professional endeavor.

Contact the advisement center (151 SWKT) or faculty in home and family living for more information.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 15 hours of major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
2. Students who do not plan to pursue a graduate program beyond the bachelor's degree should take other courses that will enhance their employment opportunities. Consult a faculty advisor or your academic advisor for suggested minors, majors, and skills. Students are encouraged to take student development courses related to career planning in their junior or senior year.
3. Complete the following family life core courses:

SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 290 : Critical Inquiry and Research Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, or instructor's consent; Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophies of critical inquiry. Principles of designing, conducting, and reporting social science investigations.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

4. Complete the following home and family living core courses:

SFL 105 : Home and Family Living. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Creating home as a sacred center for individual, marital, and family development; how temporal activities in the home have spiritual importance.

SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

5. Complete 11-12 hours from the following lower-division electives:

SFL 102 : Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

SFL 110 : Food Preparation in the Home. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles of cooking and skill development in food preparation techniques. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 180 : Clothing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive approach to consumer economics of clothing selection and care for individuals across the family life cycle and across cultures. Adapting clothing to meet diverse individual (physical and psychological) needs in the market-oriented economy.

SFL 185R : Beginning Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basics of using a sewing machine for making apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 202 : Design in the Home. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: HFL 102.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate application of elements and principles of design in the home.

SFL 215 : Advanced Food Preparation. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, readings, and intense practicum in food preparation, food preservation and storage, presentation, consumerism, equipment usage, and social/familial aspects of food. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 223 : Preparation for Marriage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Factors related to quality relationships, mate selection, and the transition into marriage.

SFL 224 : Marriage Enhancement. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Designed primarily for those who are married or engaged. Couples are encouraged to enroll together.

SFL 230 : Housing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social-psychological, economic, and political aspects of housing families; making selections that will enhance the quality of housing, increase productivity, and protect the health, safety, and well-being of the family across the life cycle.

SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

SFL 282 : Textiles. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes, and finishes. Care and performance of textile fabrics for clothing and household use.

SFL 287 : Intermediate Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 185R or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing and executing various construction methods, including construction of several full-scale garments.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required. Fee.

6. Complete 6 hours from the following upper-division electives:

SFL 319 : The Family in Fiction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, theories, and insights about family life as illustrated in various works of great literature.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

SFL 340 : Family Meal Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and managing time, energy, finance, and nutrition in planning, preparing, and serving family meals; ethnic and cultural diversity in etiquette and meal planning. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 345 : Religion in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How families of various faiths live their religion in their homes, with emphasis on practical, day-to-day home and family life rather than on abstract theology.

SFL 360 : Advanced Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260.
DESCRIPTION: Time value of money principles applied to family finance.

SFL 361 : Money in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Money attitudes and financial behaviors in the family - distinguishing between living high and living well. Mentored learning course.

SFL 370 : Families in Communities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: How families successfully interact with their external contexts (school, church, workplace, legal system, health care, media, etc.) in patterns of mutual influence.

SFL 371 : Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 160.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

SFL 380 : History of Apparel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding the stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

SFL 387 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Patternmaking. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, Su

PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 387 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Flat pattern design, basic drafting, and basic draping for women's apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 395R : Special Topics in Family Life. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in home and family living, human development, marriage and family studies, or marriage and family therapy.

SFL 461 : The Family and the Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160.
DESCRIPTION: Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

SFL 487 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 287 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional fitting of apparel and advanced garment construction.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 488R : Women's Home-Based Entrepreneurs. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of home-based businesses through interaction with practicing professionals.

SFL 489 : The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

SFL 492R : Supervised Instructional Experience. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional experiences under supervision of faculty member.

7. Complete 6 hours from the following additional electives:
Any SFL courses not used above.

BUS M 200 : Personal Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practical course in money management and utilizing savings.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

HLTH 436 : Sexuality Education in the Curriculum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Preparing prospective teachers to teach sexuality education related to health curricula. Maturation, family health issues, parenthood, interpersonal skills, and related pedagogy issues.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

PWS 103 : Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

PWS 112 : Floral Design. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History and principles of floral design; identification, care, and handling of cut flowers; techniques of arranging flowers and other plant materials for home and professional use.
NOTE: Fee.

RMYL 301 : Family Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the role of family recreation in building successful families.

8. Complete three hours of capstone experience from the following:

SFL 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

SFL 403R : Research/Creative Works Practicum. (.5-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Research/Creative works experience in a project directed by a faculty member.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

Possible Specializations

Though some students may desire a generalist approach, others may want to consider a specialization to further personal development or be positioned in a home industry or other professional endeavor. Some possibilities (using courses listed above) include:

Foods

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 200 : Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical structures of nutrients, their food sources, requirements, digestion, absorption, transport, metabolism, functions, storage and excretion; metabolic consequences of nutrient deficiencies, interactions, imbalances, and toxicities.

NDFS 250 : Essentials of Food Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Organic chemistry or concurrent enrollment; and concurrent enrollment in NDFS 251.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of food science, including chemical, physical and microbiological principles related to food processing, storage, and utilization. Current issues in food science.

NDFS 251 : Essentials of Food Science Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in NDFS 250.
DESCRIPTION: Laboratory experience in the chemistry of changes occurring during food processing, storage, and utilization.

SFL 110 : Food Preparation in the Home. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles of cooking and skill development in food preparation techniques. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 215 : Advanced Food Preparation. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, readings, and intense practicum in food preparation, food preservation and storage, presentation, consumerism, equipment usage, and social/familial aspects of food. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 340 : Family Meal Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and managing time, energy, finance, and nutrition in planning, preparing, and serving family meals; ethnic and cultural diversity in etiquette and meal planning. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

Clothing Design and Construction

SFL 180 : Clothing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive approach to consumer economics of clothing selection and care for individuals across the family life cycle and across cultures. Adapting clothing to meet diverse individual (physical and psychological) needs in the market-oriented economy.

SFL 185R : Beginning Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basics of using a sewing machine for making apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 282 : Textiles. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes, and finishes. Care and performance of textile fabrics for clothing and household use.

SFL 287 : Intermediate Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 185R or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing and executing various construction methods, including construction of several full-scale garments.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required. Fee.

SFL 380 : History of Apparel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Costume, clothing, and textiles as mediums for understanding the stages and states of individuals, families, and societies; apparel diversity and cultural identity.

SFL 387 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Patternmaking. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 387 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Flat pattern design, basic drafting, and basic draping for women's apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 487 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 287 or equivalent sewing skills.

DESCRIPTION: Three-dimensional fitting of apparel and advanced garment construction.
NOTE: Fee.

Housing/Interiors

SFL 102 : Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

SFL 202 : Design In the Home. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: HFL 102.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate application of elements and principles of design in the home.

SFL 230 : Housing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social-psychological, economic, and political aspects of housing families; making selections that will enhance the quality of housing, increase productivity, and protect the health, safety, and well-being of the family across the life cycle.

SFL 282 : Textiles. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes, and finishes. Care and performance of textile fabrics for clothing and household use.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

Family Finance

BUS M 200 : Personal Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practical course in money management and utilizing savings.

BUS M 372 : Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.
NOTE: For non-Marriott School of Management students.

SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

SFL 360 : Advanced Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260.
DESCRIPTION: Time value of money principles applied to family finance.

SFL 361 : Money in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Money attitudes and financial behaviors in the family - distinguishing between living high and living well. Mentored learning course.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

Community Involvement

RMYL 301 : Family Recreation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the role of family recreation in building successful families.

SFL 345 : Religion in the Home. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How families of various faiths live their religion in their homes, with emphasis on practical, day-to-day home and family life rather than on abstract theology.

SFL 370 : Families in Communities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: How families successfully interact with their external contexts (school, church, workplace, legal system, health care, media, etc.) in patterns of mutual influence.

SFL 461 : The Family and the Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160.
DESCRIPTION: Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

SFL 489 : The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

SOC 112 : Current Social Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Family Life: Human Development Emphasis (45 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The human development emphasis centers on theories, research, and practices related to optimal human development within the context of family life. Human development scholarship provides a life-span perspective for understanding human development within the family by helping students learn how children, youth, and adults develop, change, and face challenges throughout the life course (infancy, childhood, adolescence, and adulthood). Our teaching strategy reflects a strong commitment to better critical thinking and problem solving skills as students become involved in mentored learning research, internships, and outreach experiences.

Careers

The program in human development is a broad, liberal arts training designed to assist students as they seek professional activity (as volunteers or for pay) in settings where knowledge of human development and behavior is valued. An emphasis in human development prepares graduates to make significant contributions locally (e.g., one's own family, church, and local community) and professionally (e.g., working in the community services profession, volunteer or paid professionals for worldwide human service-based organizations).

Some graduates with a human development emphasis are employed in community action centers, childcare centers, residential treatment centers, programs for the elderly, juvenile correction programs, and youth programs. Still other students prepare for volunteer-based community intervention (e.g., Habitat for Humanity, Red Cross, and The Muscular Dystrophy Association).

Additionally, a human development emphasis is an excellent undergraduate preparation for those pursuing graduate school in human development research. Others seek professional certification by obtaining advanced degrees in school counseling, special education, clinical gerontology, and clinical psychology.

For students who are interested in teaching opportunities in public schools, a major in early childhood education teacher certification is available through the Teacher Education Department in the McKay School of Education. This certification qualifies individuals to teach kindergarten through third grade in public and private schools. The human development emphasis provides foundation courses for those preparing to enter early childhood education teacher certification programs (see Teacher Education Department for a list of these courses).

In addition, an early childhood focus within the human development emphasis prepares students for vocations that do not require teacher certifications (e.g., Head Start).

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of upper-division major course work must be taken in residency at BYU. (This requirement includes taking at least 12 hours minimum of the human development core in residency at BYU.)

2. Students who do not plan to pursue a graduate program beyond the bachelor's degree should take other courses that will enhance their employment opportunities. Consult a faculty advisor or your academic advisor for suggested minors, majors, and skills. Students are encouraged to take student development courses related to career planning in their junior or senior year.

3. Complete the following family life core courses:

   SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

   SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions,

communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 290 : Critical Inquiry and Research Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, or instructor's consent; Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophies of critical inquiry. Principles of designing, conducting, and reporting social science investigations.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

4. Complete 18 hours from the following human development core courses:

SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

SFL 331 : Infant Development in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Conception, prenatal development, pregnancy. Physical, cognitive, and social development of the first twenty-four months. Implications for guidance and care in the family.

SFL 333 : (SFL-Soc 318) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Examining the developmental and social contexts of adolescents with emphasis on the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

SFL 334 : Adult Development and Aging in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

SFL 351 : Socialization Across Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and sequences of social development across childhood.

SFL 352 : Cognitive Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of mental abilities; effects of maturation and learning on memory, perception, attention processes, intelligence, social cognition.

SFL 355 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical, social, intellectual, and emotional contexts of language acquisition and usage.

SFL 449 : Biological Foundations of Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Biological, genetic, and neurological foundations of human development and their interactions with family socialization processes.

SFL 453 : Moral Development. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and applications of moral development, including moral reasoning, moral emotions, contextual factors, and socialization influences that influence moral decisions and moral behavior.

Note: Courses taken beyond the 18 required hours may count toward the following 9 hour upper-division elective requirement.

5. Complete 9 hours of upper-division electives from the following:

SFL 325 : Forming Marital Relationships. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of literature regarding dating, spouse selection, and transition to marriage processes leading to successful marriage. Preparation for research and teaching in the field.

SFL 335 : Family Adaptation and Resiliency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding family resiliency and building family strengths in normative transitions (birth, death, job) and nonnormative transitions (divorce, disability, remarriage, poverty, violence). Developing familial, social, religious, and instrumental resources to adapt positively to these transitions.

SFL 354 : Cross-Cultural Family and Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of familial, social, and other factors in development.

SFL 360 : Advanced Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260.
DESCRIPTION: Time value of money principles applied to family finance.

SFL 361 : Money in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Money attitudes and financial behaviors in the family - distinguishing between living high and living well. Mentored learning course.

SFL 370 : Families in Communities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: How families successfully interact with their external contexts (school, church, workplace, legal system, health care, media, etc.) in patterns of mutual influence.

SFL 371 : Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 160.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

SFL 395R : Special Topics in Family Life. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in home and family living, human development, marriage and family studies, or marriage and family therapy.

SFL 420 : Administering Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 221, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for planning and administering quality programs in settings for young children. Budgeting, staffing, accrediting, selecting equipment, etc.

SFL 451 : Theories in Family Perspective. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of major theoretical perspectives and of philosophical issues. Readings include representative papers applying theoretical and philosophic tenets.

SFL 461 : The Family and the Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160.
DESCRIPTION: Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

SFL 465 : Survey of Marriage and Family Enrichment/Therapy Approaches. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and techniques. Professional family enrichment and therapy applied to couples and families.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

SFL 480 : Moral Foundations of Family Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: How the moral domain is central to human experience; implications for family life of theories and practices that acknowledge agency and the ethical.

SFL 489 : The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

SFL 492R : Supervised Instructional Experience. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional experiences under supervision of faculty member.

SFL 498 : Family Life Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing competencies in basic principles of family life education: curriculum design, development, implementation, and evaluation.

6. Complete three hours of a capstone experience from the following:

SFL 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

SFL 403R : Research/Creative Works Practicum. (.5-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Research/Creative works experience in a project directed by a faculty member.

SFL 490 : Advanced Issues in Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation of research on physical, mental, emotional, and social development.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Family Life: Marriage and Family Studies Emphasis (39 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Marriage and family studies designates a curriculum for those who wish to become skilled in a discipline of inquiry (theory, research, and practice) regarding both the interior quality of life in families and the central place of family in the fabric of communities and cultures. The emphasis requires grounding in the tools of social science (theory, research methods, statistics) and in the commitments, values, and beliefs associated with family interaction across cultures.

In addition to the School of Family Life core which gives a basic foundation in family sciences, the marriage and family studies emphasis requires advanced work in the theories, contexts, and processes used to understand the dynamics of marriage and family interaction.

Our rationale is to produce graduates who are apprentice social scientists and practitioners. Our goals are that they a) understand how to conduct and evaluate research efforts—reported both in journals and in the press, b) use interpretive frameworks to offer coherent renditions of the meaning of human experience, c) be immersed in various contexts of marriage and family interaction to draw meaningful conclusions about where quality relationships come from, and d) know how to apply family science knowledge to real-life issues that emerge in practice. This curriculum offers a foundational breadth and depth to understanding the conduct and value of human social science. It also offers the student a specific focus, an identity and expertise, and freedom to explore, with electives, additional content from the School of Family Life, or from other academic programs across campus.

Careers

Students should consult with the advisement center regarding their professional plans to determine what additional elective hours not required in the emphasis might best serve their needs. The marriage and family studies faculty will offer orientation sessions annually and individual consultation as students demand, to define how students can use their undergraduate experience to realize their goals.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of upper-division major course work must be taken in residency at BYU.
2. Students who do not plan to pursue a graduate program beyond the bachelor's degree should take other courses that will enhance their employment opportunities. Consult a faculty advisor or your academic advisor for suggested minors, majors, and skills. Students are encouraged to take student development courses related to career planning in their junior or senior year.
3. Complete the following family life core courses:

SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 290 : Critical Inquiry and Research Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, or instructor's consent; Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophies of critical inquiry. Principles of designing, conducting, and reporting social science investigations.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

4. Complete the following marriage and family studies core courses:

SFL 325 : Forming Marital Relationships. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of literature regarding dating, spouse selection, and transition to marriage processes leading to successful marriage. Preparation for research and teaching in the field.

SFL 335 : Family Adaptation and Resiliency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding family resiliency and building family strengths in normative transitions (birth, death, job) and nonnormative transitions (divorce, disability, remarriage, poverty, violence). Developing familial, social, religious, and instrumental resources to adapt positively to these transitions.

SFL 451 : Theories in Family Perspective. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of major theoretical perspectives and of philosophical issues. Readings include representative papers applying theoretical and philosophic tenets.

SFL 460 : Advanced Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
RECOMMENDED: SFL 290, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating theory, research, and application of ideas introduced in SFL 160, focusing on key theoretical points, how research is conducted and applied, communication patterns, ritualization, conflict, distance regulation, crises, stress, and building family strengths.

5. Complete 9 hours of upper-division electives from the following:

SFL 334 : Adult Development and Aging in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

SFL 354 : Cross-Cultural Family and Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of familial, social, and other factors in development.

SFL 465 : Survey of Marriage and Family Enrichment/Therapy Approaches. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and techniques. Professional family enrichment and therapy applied to couples and families.

SFL 480 : Moral Foundations of Family Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: How the moral domain is central to human experience; implications for family life of theories and practices that acknowledge agency and the ethical.

SFL 489 : The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

SFL 498 : Family Life Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing competencies in basic principles of family life education: curriculum design, development, implementation, and evaluation.

6. Complete three hours of a capstone experience from the following:
SFL 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

Note: Students who take a full-time semester internship may earn up to 6 additional credit hours for SFL 399R. These hours will count toward graduation, but not in the emphasis.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Family Life (17–18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. This minor is intended for non-School of Family Life majors only.
2. Complete at least nine hours in residence at BYU and from the School of Family Life.
3. Complete the following:

SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

4. Complete two additional courses from the School of Family Life.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor (or Certificate) in Gerontology (15 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Course list must receive approval from the director:
   Dr. Vaughn Call
   Room: 2027 JFSB
   Telephone: (801) 422-4453
   Fax: (801) 422-0225
   E-mail: vaughn_call@byu.edu

   or contact the gerontology secretary, 1041 JFSB, 422-1410, gerontology_info@byu.edu

2. Complete 3 hours from one of the following:

   HLTH 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Hlth 451, 457, 482, 485.
   DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

   RMYL 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Project. (.5-12:ARR:ARR)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Full-time professional internship.

   SFL 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr.:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
   NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

3. Complete 6 hours from the following:

   HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

   RMYL 307 : Accessible Recreation. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Making the recreation/leisure experience accessible to all people. Applications and implications of ADA in recreation/leisure settings.

   SFL 334 : Adult Development and Aging in the Family. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

   SOC 365 : Sociology of Aging. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Demographic and social factors related to aging: agencies, serving older citizens, and role of community in solving problems of aged.
   NOTE: Required for students in gerontology minor and/or certificate programs.

4. Complete 6 hours from the following:

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 451, 457, 482, 485.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

PDBIO 205 : Human Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Body systems and influence of heredity.
NOTE: For nonbiology majors.

PDBIO 220 : Human Anatomy (with lab). (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Structure and function of the human body. Lab included.

PSYCH 322 : Developmental Psychology: Adulthood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Stability and change in psychological, physiological, and interpersonal processes through early, middle, and late adulthood.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) Subject Test.

PSYCH 342 : Abnormal Psychology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Psych 301, 302, 303, 304; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork required.
NOTE: Contains content featured in the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

RMYL 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Project. (.5-12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Full-time professional internship.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

SOC W 331 : Social Welfare Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc W 200.
DESCRIPTION: Social legislation processes; analysis of social policy and the knowledge available to social workers for involvement in social planning and policy change.

SOC W 496R : Academic Internship: Senior Field Experience in Social Work. (1-10:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Major status; Soc W 360, 361, PDBio 205; concurrent enrollment in Soc W 462.
DESCRIPTION: Practical experience in social service agencies; relationship between theoretical concepts and practice.

SOC W 581 : Social Services for the Aging. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Process and impact of social service delivery systems on the aged.
NOTE: Utah state certificate available.

And other electives approved by the academic advisor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all School of Family Life (SFL) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

School of Family Life (SFL)

Undergraduate Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

100-Level Courses

SFL 100 : Strengthening Marriage and Family: Proclamation Principles and Scholarship. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Understanding, applying, and sharing principles of successful marriage and family life from the LDS proclamation on the family, using sacred and scholarly perspectives.

SFL 102 : Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

SFL 105 : Home and Family Living. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Creating home as a sacred center for individual, marital, and family development; how temporal activities in the home have spiritual importance.

SFL 110 : Food Preparation in the Home. (2:1:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Principles of cooking and skill development in food preparation techniques. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 160 : Introduction to Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Ways of strengthening family life by understanding such family processes as generations, emotions, communication, and rituals.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

: Honors: Introduction to Family Processes.

SFL 180 : Clothing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Comprehensive approach to consumer economics of clothing selection and care for individuals across the family life cycle and across cultures. Adapting clothing to meet diverse individual (physical and psychological) needs in the market-oriented economy.

SFL 185R : Beginning Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Basics of using a sewing machine for making apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

200-Level Courses

SFL 202 : Design in the Home. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: HFL 102.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate application of elements and principles of design in the home.

SFL 210 : Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SFL 215 : Advanced Food Preparation. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110.
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, readings, and intense practicum in food preparation, food preservation and storage, presentation, consumerism, equipment usage, and social/familial aspects of food. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 221 : Foundations of Developmentally Appropriate Practices in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL 210.
DESCRIPTION: Historical, philosophical, organizational, and curricular issues related to developmentally appropriate practices in programs for young children.
NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 221 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

SFL 222 : Practicum in Developmentally Appropriate Practices. (2:0:12)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 210, 221; 240 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Initial practicum with young children to increase understanding of socialization and learning processes, to create meaningful learning opportunities, and to implement developmentally appropriate practices.
NOTE: Due to enrollment constraints, SFL (MFHD) 222 may not be retaken to improve a grade unless approved by the Child and Family Studies Laboratory Steering Committee.

SFL 223 : Preparation for Marriage. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Factors related to quality relationships, mate selection, and the transition into marriage.

SFL 224 : Marriage Enhancement. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Designed primarily for those who are married or engaged. Couples are encouraged to enroll together.

SFL 230 : Housing the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Social-psychological, economic, and political aspects of housing families; making selections that will enhance the quality of housing, increase productivity, and protect the health, safety, and well-being of the family across the life cycle.

SFL 240 : Parenting and Child Guidance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

SFL 260 : Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to time value of money, budgeting, saving, credit, taxes, housing, insurance, and investing emphasizing practical application in the home.

SFL 282 : Textiles. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes, and finishes. Care and performance of textile fabrics for clothing and household use.

SFL 287 : Intermediate Clothing Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 185R or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing and executing various construction methods, including construction of several full-scale garments.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required. Fee.

SFL 290 : Critical Inquiry and Research Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, or instructor's consent; Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophies of critical inquiry. Principles of designing, conducting, and reporting social science investigations.

300-Level Courses

SFL 319 : The Family in Fiction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts, theories, and insights about family life as illustrated in various works of great literature.

SFL 324 : Teaching Children a Second Language. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for teaching children a second language in the home and in the classroom. Practice teaching in lab school.

SFL 325 : Forming Marital Relationships. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Critical analysis of literature regarding dating, spouse selection, and transition to marriage processes leading to successful marriage. Preparation for research and teaching in the field.

SFL 328 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

SFL 329 : History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

SFL 330 : Preprofessional Preparation for Marriage and Family Therapy. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of profession, licensing, and application to graduate study.

SFL 331 : Infant Development in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Conception, prenatal development, pregnancy. Physical, cognitive, and social development of the first twenty-four months. Implications for guidance and care in the family.

SFL 333 : (SFL-Soc 318) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Examining the developmental and social contexts of adolescents with emphasis on the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

SFL 334 : Adult Development and Aging in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

SFL 335 : Family Adaptation and Resiliency. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding family resiliency and building family strengths in normative transitions (birth, death, job) and nonnormative transitions (divorce, disability, remarriage, poverty, violence). Developing familial, social, religious, and instrumental resources to adapt positively to these transitions.

SFL 340 : Family Meal Management. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 110 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing and managing time, energy, finance, and nutrition in planning, preparing, and serving family meals; ethnic and cultural diversity in etiquette and meal planning. Lab required.
NOTE: Fee.

SFL 345 : Religion in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: How families of various faiths live their religion in their homes, with emphasis on practical, day-to-day home and family life rather than on abstract theology.

SFL 351 : Socialization Across Childhood. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Processes and sequences of social development across childhood.

SFL 352 : Cognitive Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Development of mental abilities; effects of maturation and learning on memory, perception, attention processes, intelligence, social cognition.

SFL 354 : Cross-Cultural Family and Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of familial, social, and other factors in development.

SFL 355 : Language Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Philosophical, social, intellectual, and emotional contexts of language acquisition and usage.

SFL 356 : Interactional Interviewing Skills in Family Sciences. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F or W
DESCRIPTION: Interactional counseling techniques, issues, and theories; skill development in dyadic and family interaction observation. Lab required.

SFL 360 : Advanced Family Finance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260.
DESCRIPTION: Time value of money principles applied to family finance.

SFL 361 : Money in the Family. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: HFL 260, 360.
DESCRIPTION: Money attitudes and financial behaviors in the family - distinguishing between living high and living well. Mentored learning course.

SFL 370 : Families in Communities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: How families successfully interact with their external contexts (school, church, workplace, legal system, health care, media, etc.) in patterns of mutual influence.

SFL 371 : Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: MFHD 160.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

SFL 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction in Family and Consumer Sciences Education. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 378.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SFL 380 : History of Apparel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

SFL 387 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Patternmaking. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (HFL) 387 or equivalent sewing skills.
DESCRIPTION: Flat pattern design, basic drafting, and basic draping for women's apparel.
NOTE: Student-supplied materials required.

SFL 395R : Special Topics In Family Life. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in home and family living, human development, marriage and family studies, or marriage and family therapy.

SFL 399R : Academic Internshlp. (1-9:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Internship program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Supervised professional experiences linking academic learning with experience in the field.
NOTE: Forty-five hands-on hours required per credit hour.

400-Level Courses

SFL 400R : Teaching Practicum. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Qualified students provide instruction for pre-selected labs in HFL classes.

SFL 403R : Research/Creative Works Practicum. (.5-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Research/Creative works experience in a project directed by a faculty member.

SFL 420 : Administering Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 221, 222.
DESCRIPTION: Strategies for planning and administering quality programs in settings for young children. Budgeting, staffing, accrediting, selecting equipment, etc.

SFL 449 : Biological Foundations of Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Biological, genetic, and neurological foundations of human development and their interactions with family socialization processes.

SFL 451 : Theories in Family Perspective. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction of major theoretical perspectives and of philosophical issues. Readings include representative papers applying theoretical and philosophic tenets.

SFL 453 : Moral Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and applications of moral development, including moral reasoning, moral emotions, contextual factors, and socialization influences that influence moral decisions and moral behavior.

SFL 460 : Advanced Family Processes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
RECOMMENDED: SFL 290, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Integrating theory, research, and application of ideas introduced in SFL 160, focusing on key theoretical points, how research is conducted and applied, communication patterns, ritualization, conflict, distance regulation, crises, stress, and building family strengths.

SFL 461 : The Family and the Law. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160.
DESCRIPTION: Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

SFL 465 : Survey of Marriage and Family Enrichment/Therapy Approaches. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and techniques. Professional family enrichment and therapy applied to couples and families.

SFL 472 : Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: SFL 160 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

SFL 480 : Moral Foundations of Family Life. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: How the moral domain is central to human experience; implications for family life of theories and practices that acknowledge agency and the ethical.

SFL 487 : Advanced Clothing Studies: Construction. (3:3:5)
OFFERED: F, W

SFL 488R : Women's Home-Based Entrepreneurs. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of home-based businesses through interaction with practicing professionals.

SFL 489 : The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

SFL 490 : Advanced Issues in Human Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: SFL (MFHD) 160, 210, 290, Stat 221; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation of research on physical, mental, emotional, and social development.

SFL 492R : Supervised Instructional Experience. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course-related instructional experiences under supervision of faculty member.

SFL 498 : Family Life Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior standing; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing competencies in basic principles of family life education: curriculum design, development, implementation, and evaluation.

Back to School of Family Life Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

School of Family Life Faculty

Professors

Beutler, Ivan Felix

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1969
MS, Purdue University, Lafayette, 1972
PhD, Purdue University, Lafayette, 1974

Busby, Dean

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1988
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1990

Crane, D Russell

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Chabot College, 1973
BA, California State University, Hayward, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1978
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1979

Day, Randal D.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1973
MS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1975
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1979

Dollahite, David C.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, University of Minnesota, St Paul, 1988

Draper, Thomas William

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, Emory University, 1976

Duncan, Stephen Farr

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1985
PhD, Purdue University, 1988

Feinauer, Leslie L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, University of Utah, 1969
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1981

Galbraith, Richard C

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Northwestern University, 1973
PhD, Northwestern University, 1975

Harper, James M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1974
MS, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1979

Hart, Craig H

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, Brigham Young University, 1982
PhD, Purdue University, 1987

Hawkins, Alan J.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1979
MOB, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 1990

Holman, Thomas B

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1970
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1981

Larson, Jeffry Hale

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MS, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Texas Tech University, 1980

Mead, D Eugene

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Oregon, 1956
MA, San Jose State College, 1961
EdD, University of Oregon, 1967

Miller, Richard B

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Southern California, 1989

Olson, Terrance D

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1967
MS, Brigham Young University, 1969
PhD, Florida State University, 1973

Stahmann, Robert F.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Macalester College, 1963
MS, University of Utah, 1965
PhD, University of Utah, 1967

Associate Professors

Barlow, Brent Alvin

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, Brigham Young University, 1968
PhD, Florida State University, 1971

Burnham, Catherine

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1971
MEd, Brigham Young University, 1987
EdD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1991

Butler, Mark H.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Texas Tech University, 1996

Hill, Edward Jeffrey

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MOB, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, Utah State University, 1995

Israelsen, Craig L.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1983
MS, Utah State University, 1984
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1990

Klein, Shirley

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Arizona, 1966
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Utah, 1990

Nelson, David A.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of Minnesota, 1999

Nelson, Larry J

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Maryland, College Park, 2000

Porter, Chris L

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Purdue University, West Lafayette, 1992
PhD, Purdue University, West Lafayette, 1996

Robinson, Clyde Clark

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1972
MS, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of North Carolina, Greensboro, 1982

Roper, Susanne Olsen

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1975
MS, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of Georgia, 1992

Taylor, David A

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1972
BA, Brigham Young University, 1976
MA, Brigham Young University, 1982

Assistant Professors

Carroll, Jason S.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2001

Coyne, Sarah Marie

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BSc, Utah State University, 2001
PhD, University of Central Lancashire, 2004

Jacob, Jenet I.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
MA, Brigham Young University, 1998
PhD, University of Minnesota, 2007

Walker, Laura Padilla

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Central Michigan University, 1999
MA, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 2001
PhD, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 2005

Yorgason, Jeremy B.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: School of Family Life
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1997
MS, Kansas State University, 2000
PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, 2003

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Fine Arts (FnArt)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Course

200-Level Courses

FNART 270R : European Fine Arts. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Art, design, music, and theatre of host countries and other European cultures.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

French and Italian

Yvon Le Bras, Chair
3134 JFSB, (801) 422-2542

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of French and Italian are open enrollment.

The Discipline

The study of French or Italian language and literature sharpens analytical and communicative skills. Students develop proficiency in listening, reading, writing, and speaking, and they learn to use literature as a means to discover and broaden their understanding of culturally specific as well as universal issues and values.

Career Opportunities

Italian and French are valuable research and communication tools for students in music, art, history, European studies, international relations, library science, and comparative literature. Many have chosen a major or minor in Italian or French in addition to a second major or minor in an area such as accounting or business management, or as preparation for professional programs in public administration, business administration, organizational behavior, dentistry, law, or medicine.

Many of our students have opted for a career in government service, working with an embassy, the State Department, the CIA, and other government agencies.

Other students have gone into travel and tourism, working with tour agencies, airlines, major hotel chains, or resort communities.

The computer industry also provides employment opportunity for our graduates. Many computer companies have expanded into foreign markets and hire people who can translate computer and software instruction and sales publications in a foreign language.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

- BA in French Studies
- BA in French Teaching
- BA in Italian

Minors

- French
- French Teaching
- Italian

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in French Studies

MA in Language Acquisition (French)

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Department of French and Italian strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Internships Abroad. The Department of French and Italian in association with the French Embassy's Cultural Services offers spring/summer internships in France in a variety of positions: businesses, corporations, industry, hospitals, research laboratories, national and local governments, cultural organizations, nonprofit agencies and nongovernmental organizations, hotels and tourism, etc. Job placements are made according to the student's language proficiency, previous work experience, field of study, and personal interest. Students may enroll for Fren 399R, 211R, 311R, or 411R, or other courses such as Fren 490R. The internship proves invaluable in strengthening language skills.

Oral Proficiency Interview. All French-teaching majors and minors and all Italian majors are required to enroll in Fren 491 or Ital 491 and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI). (French majors are encouraged to do so as well.) French teaching majors and minors are required to take the OPI before taking Fren 378. The results of the OPI are recorded on the student's transcript. The minimum rating of *Advanced* is required of all *teaching* majors and minors. Appointments for the interviews are made through the department secretary.

When it is necessary to strengthen oral proficiency, students are encouraged to take conversation courses. They should also take advantage of Foreign Language Housing, Study Abroad programs, summer internships abroad, and support materials in the Humanities Learning Resource Center, such as tapes, videos, and satellite broadcasts.

Instruction. All courses are taught in the target language unless indicated otherwise in this catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

French

General Information

Language Credit by Examination. A student enrolled full-time at BYU whose native language is not French may receive credit by special examination for French for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions.

The French Language for Credit Examination is administered by the French and Italian Department twice a year: in November during fall semester and in March during winter semester. Based on enrollment, the credit examination may be administered during spring and/or summer terms. Details about this examination will be given by the student's Fren 201, 202, or 321 teacher. Please note that students can test out of classes as follows, depending on a student's status:

Students who start with French 201 can test out of:

Fren 101 and 102 (8 hours).

Returned missionaries from Quebec or Creole-speaking missions, etc., who start with Fren 201 can test out of:

Fren 101, 102, and 211R (10 hours)

For returned missionaries to be eligible to take the exam, they need to be enrolled in Fren 201.

Returned missionaries from France, Belgium, Switzerland, etc., can test out of:

Fren 101, 102, 201, 211R, and 311R (16 hours)

For returned missionaries to be eligible to take the exam, they need to be enrolled in Fren 321.

Note 1: The above five classes are *not* part of a French major or minor. The first French minor class requirement is Fren 321.

Note 2: Fren 340 fulfills the GE Foreign Language option for returned missionaries from France, Belgium, Switzerland and other French-speaking countries. Fren 321 does not.

Accelerated Program. The department offers an accelerated course in beginning French (101 and 102) every fall and winter semester. These courses are offered on the block.

Foreign Language Student Residence. An excellent alternative to or preparation for foreign residency is offered through the Foreign Language Student Residence, where participants speak, eat, and live with a *French only* rule. This program, with numerous cultural opportunities, is available each semester to women and men who have completed at least one year of college French. Residents may also receive 2 hours of conversation credit per semester by enrolling in a specially designated section of 211R or 311R.

Study Abroad Programs. All students of French are encouraged to participate in a Study Abroad program. Study Abroad typically offers during spring and/or summer terms a language and civilization program in Paris, France. It provides an excellent opportunity for developing language proficiency and better understanding of the history and culture of France. Study Abroad also offers a semester-long program in Paris emphasizing general education courses.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in French Studies (45–66 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 15 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours) or 15 hours of course work in an area approved by the major advisor. Courses must be approved before the senior year.
3. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):

   FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

   FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   FREN 202 : Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

4. Complete the following core courses:

   FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

   FREN 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Expository writing (narration, description, dialogue, explication de texte, etc.).

   FREN 340 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0)
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

5. Complete two courses from the following:

   FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
   DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 363 : Contemporary French Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
DESCRIPTION: Current cultural, political, and social trends and issues in France as well as the francophone world.

6. Complete five courses from the following:

FREN 431 : Introduction to French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322, 340, 361, 362.
DESCRIPTION: Subfields (phonetics, morphology, syntax, lexicology, semantics) and approaches (socio-linguistics, semiology, and pragmatics).

FREN 432 : History of French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the diachronic study of French beginning with its roots in Latin.

FREN 433 : Studies in French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced study of linguistic features such as phonetics and phonology, semantization, lexical development, morphology, and contrastive syntax.

FREN 445 : Advanced Francophone Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
NOTE: Research paper required.

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 455R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists (e.g., Barthes, Genette, structuralism, etc.).

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

FREN 457R : Studies in French Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 361, 362, or 363.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of French historical, political, and social issues or artistic trends.

FREN 490R : Individual Study in French. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised instruction/research to fit the individual needs of the advanced student. Terms

must be established by contract and approved by chair.

FREN 495R : Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321, 322, 340, 420, 421; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

Note: French majors can select Fren 445, 490R, or Bus M 596R as one of the five required 400-level courses to count toward the major.

Recommended

Students who need to strengthen oral skills should enroll in Fren 211R, 311R, and 411R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all French (Fren) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in French Teaching (69–92 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Obtain application instructions by meeting with the Department of French and Italian French secondary education supervisor. Applications are accepted during the first block of each semester while student is enrolled in Sc Ed 276R.

2. At least 18 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.

3. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–24 hours).

4. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):

   FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

   FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   FREN 202 : Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

5. Complete the following:

   FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

   FREN 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Expository writing (narration, description, dialogue, explication de texte, etc.).

   FREN 340 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0)
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

   FREN 377 : Introduction to French Language Teaching. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321; Sc Ed 276R (if a French teaching major).
   DESCRIPTION: Language acquisition theories and instructional practices specific to French language classrooms. Includes teaching phonological features and pronunciation. Lectures, demonstrations, and microteaching.

NOTE: Taught in French and English.

FREN 378 : French Language Teaching Procedures and Practicum. (2:1:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Fren 377; 491 with minimum rating of advanced--low on the French oral proficiency exam; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for students planning to do an internship or student teach in the public schools.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and practicing instruction for French classes in secondary schools. Developing teaching, critical thinking, and assessment skills.
NOTE: Taught in French and English.

FREN 431 : Introduction to French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322, 340, 361, 362.
DESCRIPTION: Subfields (phonetics, morphology, syntax, lexicology, semantics) and approaches (socio-linguistics, semiology, and pragmatics).

Note 1: Fren 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching.

Note 2: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before enrollment in Fren 378.

6. Complete 2 courses from the following:

FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 363 : Contemporary French Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
DESCRIPTION: Current cultural, political, and social trends and issues in France as well as the francophone world.

7. Complete 2 courses from the following:

FREN 432 : History of French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the diachronic study of French beginning with its roots in Latin.

FREN 433 : Studies in French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced study of linguistic features such as phonetics and phonology, semantization, lexical development, morphology, and contrastive syntax.

FREN 445 : Advanced Francophone Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
NOTE: Research paper required.

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 455R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists (e.g., Barthes, Genette, structuralism, etc.).

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

FREN 457R : Studies in French Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 361, 362, or 363.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of French historical, political, and social issues or artistic trends.

FREN 490R : Individual Study in French. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised instruction/research to fit the individual needs of the advanced student. Terms must be established by contract and approved by chair.

FREN 495R : Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321, 322, 340, 420, 421; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

Note: Only one registration of Fren 490R will count toward the major requirements.

8. Complete the following and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) before enrolling in Fren 378. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The required minimum OPI rating is *advanced—mid* before graduation.
FREN 491R : Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation required of all French majors during the senior year and all French-teaching majors and minors before enrolling in Fren 378.

9. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:
CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.

: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

Note: The Department of French and Italian offers the following resources to strengthen oral language skills: conversation courses (Fren 211R, 311R, 411R), the Foreign Language Student Residence, Study Abroad, or an internship in French-speaking countries. Please refer to the specific program or course description for detailed information about these resources.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all French (Fren) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in French (18–33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least nine minor hours must be taken in residence at BYU.

2. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):

   FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

   FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   FREN 202 : Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

3. Complete the following core courses:

   FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

   FREN 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Expository writing (narration, description, dialogue, explication de texte, etc.).

   FREN 340 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0)
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

4. Complete two courses from the following:

   FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
   DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

   FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su

PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 363 : Contemporary French Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
DESCRIPTION: Current cultural, political, and social trends and issues in France as well as the francophone world.

5. Complete one course from the following:

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 455R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists (e.g., Barthes, Genette, structuralism, etc.).

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all French (Fren) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in French Teaching (23–38 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least 12 minor hours must be taken in residence at BYU.

2. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):

   FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

   FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   FREN 202 : Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

3. Complete the following:

   FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

   FREN 340 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0)
   RECOMMENDED: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

   FREN 377 : Introduction to French Language Teaching. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 321; Sc Ed 276R (if a French teaching major).
   DESCRIPTION: Language acquisition theories and instructional practices specific to French language classrooms. Includes teaching phonological features and pronunciation. Lectures, demonstrations, and microteaching.
   NOTE: Taught in French and English.

   FREN 378 : French Language Teaching Procedures and Practicum. (2:1:1)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Fren 377; 491 with minimum rating of advanced--low on the French oral proficiency exam; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for students planning to do an internship or student teach in the public schools.
   DESCRIPTION: Designing and practicing instruction for French classes in secondary schools. Developing teaching, critical thinking, and assessment skills.

NOTE: Taught in French and English.

Note: Fren 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching.

4. Complete two courses from the following:

FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 363 : Contemporary French Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
DESCRIPTION: Current cultural, political, and social trends and issues in France as well as the francophone world.

5. Complete one course from the following:

FREN 445 : Advanced Francophone Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
NOTE: Research paper required.

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

FREN 457R : Studies in French Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 361, 362, or 363.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of French historical, political, and social issues or artistic trends.

FREN 490R : Individual Study in French. {1-3:ARR:ARR}
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised instruction/research to fit the individual needs of the advanced student. Terms must be established by contract and approved by chair.

(3 hours required)

6. Complete the following and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) before enrolling in Fren 378. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The required minimum OPI rating is *advanced—low* before graduation.

FREN 491R : Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation required of all French majors during the senior year and all French-teaching majors and minors before enrolling in Fren 378.

Note: The Department of French and Italian offers the following resources to strengthen oral language skills: conversation courses

(Fren 211R, 311R, 411R), the Foreign Language Student Residence, Study Abroad, or an internship in French-speaking countries. Please refer to the specific program or course description for detailed information about these resources.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all French (Fren) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

French (Fren)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

FREN 101 : First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

FREN 102 : First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of French 101.

FREN 121 : Intensive Reading in French. (.5-4:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Reading for research purposes, including reading skills in area of student's specialization or interest. Conducted in English.
NOTE: For students with little or no French. Graduate students will be graded pass/fail. Undergraduates will receive letter grades.

200-Level Courses

FREN 201 : Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

FREN 202 : Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

: Honors Intermediate French, Part 2.

FREN 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent. May be taken concurrently with Fren 201.

FREN 217 : (Fren-Ital) French and Italian Cinema. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in France and Italy. Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of French or Italian required.

300-Level Courses

FREN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 211R or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Fren 340.

FREN 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
RECOMMENDED: Fren 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

FREN 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Expository writing (narration, description, dialogue, explication de texte, etc.).

FREN 340 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism.
NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

FREN 345 : Francophone Culture. (3:1:3)
PREREQUISITE: Fren 102 or equivalent.
NOTE: Study Abroad only.

FREN 346R : French Choir. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: French choir practice.

FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 363 : Contemporary French Civilization. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
DESCRIPTION: Current cultural, political, and social trends and issues in France as well as the francophone world.

FREN 377 : Introduction to French Language Teaching. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321; Sc Ed 276R (if a French teaching major).
DESCRIPTION: Language acquisition theories and instructional practices specific to French language classrooms. Includes teaching phonological features and pronunciation. Lectures, demonstrations, and microteaching.
NOTE: Taught in French and English.

FREN 378 : French Language Teaching Procedures and Practicum. (2:1:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Fren 377; 491 with minimum rating of advanced--low on the French oral proficiency exam; fingerprinting and FBI clearance for students planning to do an internship or student teach in the public schools.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and practicing instruction for French classes in secondary schools. Developing teaching, critical thinking, and assessment skills.
NOTE: Taught in French and English.

FREN 399R : Academic Internship: French Language Field Experience. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Program coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in French.

400-Level Courses

FREN 411R : Fourth-Year Conversation. (2:2:1)
PREREQUISITE: Fren 311R or equivalent.

FREN 431 : Introduction to French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322, 340, 361, 362.
DESCRIPTION: Subfields (phonetics, morphology, syntax, lexicology, semantics) and approaches (socio-linguistics, semiology, and pragmatics).

FREN 432 : History of French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the diachronic study of French beginning with its roots in Latin.

FREN 433 : Studies in French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 431 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced study of linguistic features such as phonetics and phonology, semantization, lexical development, morphology, and contrastive syntax.

FREN 445 : Advanced Francophone Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
NOTE: Research paper required.

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 455R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

FREN 457R : Studies in French Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Fren 361, 362, or 363.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of French historical, political, and social issues or artistic trends.

FREN 490R : Individual Study in French. (1-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised instruction/research to fit the individual needs of the advanced student. Terms must be established by contract and approved by chair.

FREN 491R : Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Evaluation required of all French majors during the senior year and all French-teaching majors and minors before enrolling in Fren 378.

FREN 495R : Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321, 322, 340, 420, 421; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

FREN 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

FREN 510 : MA Practicum 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical strategies and interpretative skills necessary for MA examinations.

FREN 511 : MA Practicum 2. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Critical strategies and interpretative skills necessary for MA examinations.

FREN 512 : MA Practicum 3. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Research tools and methods, the process of selecting a thesis topic, compiling a bibliography, and writing a prospectus.

FREN 533 : Advanced Studies in French Linguistics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Advanced study of linguistic features such as phonetics and phonology, semantization, lexical development, morphology, and contrastive syntax.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to French and Italian Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Italian

General Information

Language Credit by Examination. A student enrolled full-time at BYU whose native language is English may receive credit by special examination for Italian for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions.

The Italian Language for Credit Examination is administered by the French and Italian Department twice a year: in November during fall semester and in March during winter semester. Based on enrollment, the credit examination may be administered during spring and/or summer terms. Details about this examination will be given by the student's Ital 321 teacher.

Returned missionaries from Italy can test out of:

Ital 101, 102, 201, 211R, and 311R (16 hours)

For students to be eligible to take the exam, they need to be enrolled in Ital 321.

Note 1: The above five classes are *not* part of the Italian minor. The first class for the Italian minor is Ital 321.

Note 2: Ital 340 fulfills the GE Foreign Language option. Ital 321 does not.

Accelerated Program, Beginning: The department offers an accelerated course in beginning Italian (101 and 102) every fall and winter semester. These courses are offered on the block.

Foreign Language Student Residence. In addition to BYU's spring or summer term in Italy, intensive "live-in" experience is available based on enrollment in the Foreign Language Student Residence. Besides taking regular courses in the department, students participate in lectures, discussions, films, and related extracurricular activities under the supervision of native Italian heac residents. Vital to the success of the program is the 24-hour *Italian only* rule whereby students use Italian language as their only means of communication while they are at home. Participants may receive 2 credit hours per semester by enrolling in Ital 211R, 311R, or 411R.

Study Abroad Program. All students of Italian are encouraged to participate in a Study Abroad or internship program in Italy offered spring or summer term (usually every other year). These programs provide excellent opportunities for developing language proficiency and understanding the rich culture of Italy.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Italian (45–66 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 15 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours) or 15 hours of course work in an area approved by the major advisor. Courses must be approved before the senior year.
3. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):

   ITAL 101 : First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   ITAL 102 : First-Year Italian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F,W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Ital 101.

   ITAL 201 : Intermediate Italian 1. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 102 or two years of high school Italian or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   ITAL 202 : Intermediate Italian 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in Italian literature and culture.

4. Complete the following core requirements:

   ITAL 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Intensive review of grammar; vocabulary building.

   ITAL 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Italian syntax and composition.

   ITAL 326 : Italian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 211R or instructor's consent
   DESCRIPTION: General rules of pronunciation. Introduction to history of Italian language.

   ITAL 340 : Introduction to Italian Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   RECOMMENDED: Ital 321.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic literary concepts and terms coupled with readings of Italian works from various genres and periods.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

5. Complete six courses from the following:

ITAL 420 : Italian Civilization from the Beginning to 1600. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the barbarian invasions through the Renaissance.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 421 : Italian Civilization from 1600 to the Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the Baroque period to the modern era.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 441 : Italian Literature of the Late Middle Ages and Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 442 : Italian Literature of the Baroque and Enlightenment Periods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 443 : Italian Literature of the Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 444 : Italian Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 460 : Dante's *Divine Comedy*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of Dante's major opus. Lectures in English with bilingual text.
NOTE: Italian majors and minors must read the work in the original for credit.

ITAL 495R : Senior Seminar in Italian. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

6. Complete the following and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) during the senior year. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The desired minimum OPI rating is *advanced*.
   ITAL 491 : Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   NOTE: Required of all majors during the senior year.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Italian (Ital) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Italian (18–33 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least nine minor hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. Complete the following prerequisites (or equivalent):
   ITAL 101 : First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

   ITAL 102 : First-Year Italian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
   OFFERED: F,W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 101 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Ital 101.

   ITAL 201 : Intermediate Italian 1. (4:5:1)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 102 or two years of high school Italian or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

   ITAL 202 : Intermediate Italian 2. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 201 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in Italian literature and culture.
3. Complete the following:
   ITAL 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Intensive review of grammar; vocabulary building.

   ITAL 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 321 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Italian syntax and composition.

   ITAL 326 : Italian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Ital 211R or instructor's consent
   DESCRIPTION: General rules of pronunciation. Introduction to history of Italian language.

   ITAL 340 : Introduction to Italian Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   RECOMMENDED: Ital 321.
   DESCRIPTION: Basic literary concepts and terms coupled with readings of Italian works from various genres and periods.
   NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.
4. Complete two courses from the following:
   ITAL 420 : Italian Civilization from the Beginning to 1600. (3:3:0)
   RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the

barbarian invasions through the Renaissance.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 421 : Italian Civilization from 1600 to the Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the Baroque period to the modern era.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 441 : Italian Literature of the Late Middle Ages and Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 442 : Italian Literature of the Baroque and Enlightenment Periods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 443 : Italian Literature of the Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 444 : Italian Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 460 : Dante's *Divine Comedy*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of Dante's major opus. Lectures in English with bilingual text.
NOTE: Italian majors and minors must read the work in the original for credit.

ITAL 495R : Senior Seminar in Italian. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Italian (Ital) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Italian (Ital)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ITAL 101 : First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

ITAL 102 : First-Year Italian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F,W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Ital 101.

200-Level Courses

ITAL 201 : Intermediate Italian 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 102 or two years of high school Italian or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

ITAL 202 : Intermediate Italian 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in Italian literature and culture.

ITAL 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ital 102 or equivalent.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Ital 201.

ITAL 217 : (Fren-Ital) French and Italian Cinema. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in France and Italy.
NOTE: Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of French or Italian required.

300-Level Courses

ITAL 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ital 211R or instructor's consent.
NOTE: May be taken concurrently with Ital 321 or 340.

ITAL 321 : Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Ital 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive review of grammar; vocabulary building.

ITAL 322 : Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 321 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Italian syntax and composition.

ITAL 326 : Italian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 211R or instructor's consent
DESCRIPTION: General rules of pronunciation. Introduction to history of Italian language.

ITAL 340 : Introduction to Italian Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Ital 321.
DESCRIPTION: Basic literary concepts and terms coupled with readings of Italian works from various genres and periods.
NOTE: Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

ITAL 399R : Academic Internship: Italian Language Field Experience. (.5-6:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Program coordinator's consent.

400-Level Courses

ITAL 411R : Fourth-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: concurrent residency in the Foreign Language Student Residence

ITAL 420 : Italian Civilization from the Beginning to 1600. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the barbarian invasions through the Renaissance.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 421 : Italian Civilization from 1600 to the Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the Baroque period to the modern era.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 441 : Italian Literature of the Late Middle Ages and Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 442 : Italian Literature of the Baroque and Enlightenment Periods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 443 : Italian Literature of the Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 444 : Italian Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 460 : Dante's *Divine Comedy*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of Dante's major opus. Lectures in English with bilingual text.
NOTE: Italian majors and minors must read the work in the original for credit.

ITAL 490R : Individual Study in Italian. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.
NOTE: Not accepted for major or minor.

ITAL 491 : Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
NOTE: Required of all majors during the senior year.

ITAL 495R : Senior Seminar in Italian. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

ITAL 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:0:0)

Back to French and Italian Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Romanian (Rom)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ROM 101 : First-Year Romanian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

ROM 102 : First-Year Romanian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

ROM 201 : Second-Year Romanian. (4:5:2)
PREREQUISITE: Rom 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation vocabulary building; reading and writing skills, emphasizing writing.

ROM 211R : Second-Year Romanian Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Rom 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

ROM 311R : Third-Year Romanian Conversation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Rom 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

ROM 340 : Introduction to Romanian Literature and Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience in Romania.
DESCRIPTION: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Romanian language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Back to French and Italian Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

French and Italian Faculty

Professors

Decoo, Wilfried

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, St Ignatius University, Belgium, 1967
MA, University of Ghent, Belgium, 1969
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1974
PhD, Belgium Interuniversity Commission (equivalence recognition), 1978

Sowell, Madison U.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, Harvard University, 1976
PhD, Harvard University, 1979

Associate Professors

Cropper, Corry L

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1995
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1998

Hurlbut, Jesse David

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MA, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1982
PhD, Indiana University, 1990

Klein, Ilona

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: Dottore in Lettere, Universita La Sapienza, Rome, Italy, 1981
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1982
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986

LeBras, Yvon Roger

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Rennes, France, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
MA, University of Rennes, France, 1972
PhD, Laval University, Canada, 1992

Lee, Daryl

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Yale University, 1993
MPhil, Yale University, 1995
PhD, Yale University, 1999

Olivier, Marc Louis

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, University of Washington, 1993
PhD, University of Washington, 1999

Sprenger, Scott M

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Washington, 1983
MA, Johns Hopkins University, 1990
PhD, Emory University, 1995

Unlandt, Nicolaas Gerard Wilhelmus

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1983
MA, University of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1985
PhD, University of Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1993

Assistant Professors

Cottle, Michaela Voss

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1985
PhD, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1990

Erickson, Robert Gammell

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Middlebury College, 1975
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2000

Sprenger, Anca Mitroi

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Bucharest, Romania, 1984
DEA, University of Paris, France, 1991
PhD, University of Southern California, 1997

Teaching Professors

Noble, Cinzia D

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
Dott in Lett, G. D'Annunzio, Italy, 1979

Thompson, Chantal P

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1970
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972

Assistant Teaching Professor

Boynton, Rodney

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: French and Italian
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: MA, Middlebury College, 1973

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Geography

J. Matthew Shumway, Chair
690-B SWKT, (801) 422-2707

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Geography are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Geography offers a variety of programs centered around spatial analysis and tailored, so far as possible, to meet the future needs of individual students. Our modern computer laboratory allows students to gain practical experience with geographical information systems (GIS), remote sensing, cartography, and other programs in planning, urban, travel, and population studies.

Career Opportunities

Graduates are employed in a wide range of both private and governmental positions. Job titles include geographer; teacher of geography; city or regional planner; cartographer; photo interpreter; commodities and industrial location analyst; intelligence, travel industry, or environmental and GIS specialist; and many others.

Skills in spatial analysis make geography a valuable minor or supporting field for many other disciplines.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Geography
Emphases:
Environmental Studies
Geographic Information Systems
Geospatial Intelligence
Global Studies
Tourism Studies
Urban and Environmental Planning

Minors

Geographic Information Systems
Geography
Geography Teaching
Travel and Tourism Studies
Urban, Rural, and Environmental Planning

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

General Information

1. The Department of Geography offers one major with six emphases. The emphases are designed to enable students to gain an appreciation of our world as well as prepare them for either a career or graduate school. All students are required to take a set of core courses that emphasize basic geographic concepts and ways of knowing that are common to all six emphases. These courses prepare students for specialization in upper-division courses.

   Geography at Brigham Young University focuses on our interdependent world: the spatial relationships between the physical landscape, diverse societies, and current events. The geography major at Brigham Young University nourishes a sense of curiosity

about the world around us, a desire to serve our local and global communities, and the skills necessary to solve significant problems that are inherently spatial.

Hundreds of students major in geography to prepare for a professional career or graduate study, or just because of an interest in exploring and understanding the world around them. We emphasize both technical and critical thinking skills, including geographic information systems (GIS) and remote sensing, statistics, data collection, interpretation, and communication using the written and spoken word and visual data display (maps, charts, and graphs).

2. Prerequisite: all students admitted to one of the geography majors listed above must complete the following courses within one year of declaring a major:
   Geog 100, 101, 110, 120, 130, 211.

3. Exit assessment and exit interview: Students must complete an exit assessment and exit interview during their final semester no later than one month before graduating. Both are offered online. The assessment is meant to evaluate the department's program goals and student learning outcome. The interview is a set of qualitative questions about the student's experience in the department. Although both the interview and assessment are formal requirements, the results are anonymous and will not be part of the student's academic records.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Environmental Studies Emphasis (52–56 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 222 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Stat 105 or above.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, acquiring, and using quantitative geographic data and quantitative reasoning within the discipline of geography.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

2. Complete the following environmental studies core courses:

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including characteristics and image acquisition. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environment monitoring.

PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

3. Complete one course from the following:
GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

4. Complete three elective courses from the following:
BIO 350 : Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A,B.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution and abundance of organisms and their interactions with the physical and biotic components of the earth.

BIO 370 : Bioethics. (2:1:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Introductory biology course.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth lecture and small group discussion of varied bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

BIO 450 : Conservation Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Bio 220A or B, 350.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific principles of conservation: applying population genetics, and phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F

DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

GEOG 414 : Applied Urban Environmental Modeling. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212, 213, 313.
DESCRIPTION: Complexities of urban environment through use of geographic techniques, including remote sensing, GIS, GPS, aerial photo and map interpretation, and fieldwork. Modeling human impact on the physical environment by examining local case studies and completing group projects. Developing and building technical skills as tools in understanding the urban environment.

GEOG 415R : Geographic Field Methods. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: Sp or Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Learning different methods used by geographers in the field through hands-on involvement in real faculty research.

GEOG 423 : Planning for Unique and Sensitive Lands. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Unique aspects of land affecting land-use planning positively or negatively depending on sensitivity of design. Landscape ecological principles introduced and examined for usefulness in land-use planning.

PWS 225 : Principles of Wildlife and Fisheries Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: PWS 115.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of fish and wildlife management, their habitats, and their human users. Ecological concepts, population dynamics, nutrition, behavior, population assessment, management strategies, habitat sampling and management.

PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
Soils Conservation and Resources.
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

PWS 305 : Soils and Water Quality. (3:3:0)
Soils and Water Quality.
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282; Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles and practices of safe management of agricultural and urban wastes; amendments and nutrients including remediation methods for conservation of soils and water quality.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

PWS 375 : Environmental Policies and Laws. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: PWS 150.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental laws (Clean Water Act, Clean Air Act, etc.) and the regulations (National Environmental Policy Act, Nutrient Management Plan, etc.) established in the USA to improve environmental quality.

PWS 419 : Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Managing forests, emphasizing ecosystem managment.
NOTE: Field trips required.

5. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Geographic Information Systems Emphasis (59–60 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 222 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Stat 105 or above.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, acquiring, and using quantitative geographic data and quantitative reasoning within the discipline of geography.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

2. Complete one physical geography course from the following:

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

3. Complete one regional course from the following:

GEOG 245 : Geography of Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring geography of Utah. Topics include land forms, climate, agricultural and recreational economics, historical migration, Mormon cultural landscape, ethnic patterns, and rural-urban contrasts.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

4. Complete one human geography course from the following:

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

GEOG 347 : Tourism: A Conceptual Framework. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to tourism as a field of study; four elements of tourism: dynamic, service, functional, and consequential.

5. Complete the following major courses:

GEOG 213 : Earth Observation and Image Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of earth observation: primarily air photo/large-scale satellite imagery interpretation, basic field methods, photogrammetry.

GEOG 217 : Programming for Geographers. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CS 142 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented analysis of geographic information using Visual Basic.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including characteristics and image acquisition. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environment monitoring.

6. Complete one course from the following:

CHUM 220 : Linguistic Computing Programming 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: CHum 200 or C S 100 or equivalent experience.

DESCRIPTION: Computer programming for language applications: data types, character representation, flow of control, file input/output, string manipulation.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

7. Complete two courses from the following:

GEOG 317 : Analytical Cartography. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 217.
DESCRIPTION: Geocoding, spatial data representation, spatial algorithms, and map based transformations.

GEOG 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

GEOG 411 : Issues in Computer Cartography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 312 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current techniques for compilation, integration, and display of digital map data.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOG 413 : Remote Sensing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 313.
DESCRIPTION: Computer processing of low-altitude and satellite images for geographic analysis of physical and cultural phenomena on earth.

GEOG 414 : Applied Urban Environmental Modeling. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212, 213, 313.
DESCRIPTION: Complexities of urban environment through use of geographic techniques, including remote sensing, GIS, GPS, aerial photo and map interpretation, and fieldwork. Modeling human impact on the physical environment by examining local case studies and completing group projects. Developing and building technical skills as tools in understanding the urban environment.

GEOG 495R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Participating in research integrating material learned in major. Emphasizes individual or collaborative research and creative thinking through active learning and reflective analysis.

GEOG 521R : Geographic Information Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, or Sp on demand
PREREQUISITE: GIS major status; Geog 311, 312, 313, 317 (or equivalents); Geog 222 or 223 or equivalent; one 400-level GIS course.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of various geographic technologies to solve a practical problem. Advanced topics in GIS, remote sensing, cartography, and programming as needed.

8. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Geospatial Intelligence Emphasis (60–62 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 213 : Earth Observation and Image Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of earth observation: primarily air photo/large-scale satellite imagery interpretation, basic field methods, photogrammetry.

GEOG 222 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Stat 105 or above.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, acquiring, and using quantitative geographic data and quantitative reasoning within the discipline of geography.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural

mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including characteristics and image acquisition. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environment monitoring.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

2. Complete one course from the following GIS courses:

GEOG 217 : Programming for Geographers. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CS 142 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented analysis of geographic information using Visual Basic.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 317 : Analytical Cartography. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 217.
DESCRIPTION: Geocoding, spatial data representation, spatial algorithms, and map based transformations.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOG 413 : Remote Sensing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 313.

DESCRIPTION: Computer processing of low-altitude and satellite images for geographic analysis of physical and cultural phenomena on earth.

3. Complete two regional geography courses from the following:

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

4. Complete two courses from the following electives:

AEROS 410 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 400R.
DESCRIPTION: Civilian control of military, civil-military interaction, the forming of defense strategy. Military profession; Russia, Europe, and East Asia regional studies.

AEROS 411 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Aeros 401R.
DESCRIPTION: Africa, Middle East, and Latin American regional studies; military operation other than war; military justice system; officer professional development.

HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

HIST 331 : Twentieth -Century Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The rise and fall of the Soviet Union and recent attempts to refashion the Russian economy and government.

HIST 342 : Twentieth-Century China. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: China's twentieth-century struggles to find a working modernity via revolution: anti-imperial, nationalist, communist, and capitalist.

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

HIST 348 : Modern South East Asia. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: Complex history of the varied nations of this vast area: religion, colonialism, nationalism, independence.

MESA 201 : Introduction to Middle East Studies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Middle East from historical, art/literary, and various social science perspectives, including introduction to disciplinary methodologies and major issues of interest.

MESA 350 : Islam in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Islam in modern society: doctrine, practices, institutions, approaches to the challenges of modern life; the rise of fundamentalism.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

PL SC 350 : Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 377 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence.

PL SC 378 : International Conflict. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150 or 170.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of war; alliances and empires; military innovation; civil-military relations; fungibility of forces; terrorism; security studies methods; use and misuse of history.

PL SC 381 : International Relations of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interregional relations and conflicts, political economics, Arab nationalism, processes of political change, alliances, and superpower relations.

PL SC 385 : International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

PL SC 388 : Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

PL SC 452 : Islam and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tensions and accommodations between religion and politics in Muslim nations.

PL SC 458 : Totalitarianism. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Totalitarian systems of government and philosophy in nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

PL SC 471 : Intelligence and National Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between theory and practice of intelligence and national security of states.

PL SC 474 : Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

5. Complete the following:
GEOG 441R : Seminar in Geography and Geospatial Intelligence. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W

DESCRIPTION: Capstone seminar for students in geospatial intelligence emphasis, emphasizing synthesis of material learned in major and application of knowledge and skills through research project.

6. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Global Studies Emphasis (40 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following geography core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

2. Complete three regional courses from the following:

GEOG 245 : Geography of Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring geography of Utah. Topics include land forms, climate, agricultural and recreational economics, historical migration, Mormon cultural landscape, ethnic patterns, and rural-urban contrasts.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

3. Complete three systematic courses from the following:

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches,

locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

GEOG 348 : Tourism: Patterns and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Patterns in domestic and international tourism; interrelationship between geography and tourism in understanding the patterns and their impact.

GEOG 349 : Global Adventure Travel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and emerging trends in global adventure travel and tourism. Detailed case studies selected from across world regions.

4. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Tourism Studies Emphasis (46 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following geography core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

2. Complete one regional course from the following:

GEOG 245 : Geography of Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

DESCRIPTION: Exploring geography of Utah. Topics include land forms, climate, agricultural and recreational economics, historical migration, Mormon cultural landscape, ethnic patterns, and rural-urban contrasts.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

3. Complete the following major courses:
GEOG 347 : Tourism: A Conceptual Framework. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to tourism as a field of study; four elements of tourism: dynamic, service, functional, and consequential.

GEOG 348 : Tourism: Patterns and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Patterns in domestic and international tourism; interrelationship between geography and tourism in understanding the patterns and their impact.

4. Complete one course from the following:
BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

RMYL 497R : Special Topics and Research. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Special topics and research in recreation management and youth leadership.

5. Complete three advanced tourism courses from the following:
GEOG 349 : Global Adventure Travel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and emerging trends in global adventure travel and tourism. Detailed case studies

selected from across world regions.

GEOG 350 : Tourism Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Geog 347.
DESCRIPTION: Applying regional development and planning concepts, principles, and approaches to tourism destinations to enhance sustainable economic, ecological, and social development.

GEOG 353 : Heritage and Cultural Tourism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Geog 120, 130, 347, 348.
DESCRIPTION: Heritage and culture (places, people, relics, and traditions) as tourism resources examined within the context of supply and demand, conservation, interpretation, management, planning, and politics.

GEOG 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

6. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geography: Urban and Environmental Planning Emphasis (58–62 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following geography core courses:

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 222 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Stat 105 or above.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, acquiring, and using quantitative geographic data and quantitative reasoning within the discipline of geography.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

2. Complete the following planning core courses:

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

GEOG 410 : Practices of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of methods and techniques commonly used in the land use planning process, emphasizing data collection and analysis, fieldwork, and writing skills.

3. Complete three advanced planning courses from the following:

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 414 : Applied Urban Environmental Modeling. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212, 213, 313.
DESCRIPTION: Complexities of urban environment through use of geographic techniques, including remote sensing, GIS, GPS, aerial photo and map interpretation, and fieldwork. Modeling human impact on the physical environment by examining local case studies and completing group projects. Developing and building technical skills as tools in understanding the urban environment.

GEOG 421R : Comprehensive Planning. (2-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing problem and issue identification, goal formulation, data gathering, synthesis and summary, plan concept and format, and public policy adoption while writing a general plan for a rural community in Utah.

GEOG 422 : Principles of Urban Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of urban design emphasizing specific design criteria. Planning and design tools used within the U.S. by local government. Basic principles of architecture and landscape architecture. Field trips.

GEOG 423 : Planning for Unique and Sensitive Lands. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Unique aspects of land affecting land-use planning positively or negatively depending on sensitivity of design. Landscape ecological principles introduced and examined for usefulness in land-use planning.

GEOG 510 : Advanced Urban Dynamics and Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on demand.

PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Urban geography and land use planning, emphasizing urban morphology, land use patterns, and spatial analysis; critical evaluation of models and theories.

4. Complete two elective courses from the following:

GEOG 213 : Earth Observation and Image Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of earth observation: primarily air photo/large-scale satellite imagery interpretation, basic field methods, photogrammetry.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including characteristics and image acquisition. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environment monitoring.

5. Complete one professonal experience course (three hours required) from the following:

GEOG 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

GEOG 495R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Participating in research integrating material learned in major. Emphasizes individual or collaborative research and creative thinking through active learning and reflective analysis.

6. Complete exit assessment and exit interview during final semester, no later than one month before graduation.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Geographic Information Systems (20-23 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

2. Complete three courses from the following:

GEOG 213 : Earth Observation and Image Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of earth observation: primarily air photo/large-scale satellite imagery interpretation, basic field methods, photogrammetry.

GEOG 217 : Programming for Geographers. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CS 142 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented analysis of geographic information using Visual Basic.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including characteristics and image acquisition. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environment monitoring.

GEOG 411 : Issues in Computer Cartography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 312 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current techniques for compilation, integration, and display of digital map data.

GEOG 413 : Remote Sensing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 313.
DESCRIPTION: Computer processing of low-altitude and satellite images for geographic analysis of physical and cultural phenomena on earth.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Geography (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

2. Complete 3 hours of electives. Electives cannot include Geog 222, 399R, 493R, or any Geog 500 or above courses.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Geography Teaching (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

2. Complete 3 hours of electives. Electives cannot include Geog 222, 399R, 493R, or any Geog 500 or above courses.

Note: The geography teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Travel and Tourism Studies (19 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

GEOG 347 : Tourism: A Conceptual Framework. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to tourism as a field of study; four elements of tourism: dynamic, service, functional, and consequential.

GEOG 348 : Tourism: Patterns and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Patterns in domestic and international tourism; interrelationship between geography and tourism in understanding the patterns and their impact.

2. Complete two courses from the following:

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

HIST 369 : Travel and Tourism in America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: The history of travel and tourism in America to the present. Themes include changing technology, consumerism, nationalism, and social identities in contructing the tourist experience.

RMYL 304 : Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and/or Su
DESCRIPTION: Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

RMYL 371 : Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

3. Complete one regional course from the following:

GEOG 245 : Geography of Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring geography of Utah. Topics include land forms, climate, agricultural and recreational economics, historical migration, Mormon cultural landscape, ethnic patterns, and rural-urban contrasts.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Urban, Rural, and Environmental Planning (19 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following core courses:
   GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
   OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
   DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

   GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

   GEOG 410 : Practices of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Geog 310.
   DESCRIPTION: Applications of methods and techniques commonly used in the land use planning process, emphasizing data collection and analysis, fieldwork, and writing skills.

2. Complete two of the following systematic courses:
   GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

   GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

   GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

   GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

3. Complete two of the following applied planning courses:
   GEOG 421R : Comprehensive Planning. (2-3:Arr:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
   DESCRIPTION: Assessing problem and issue identification, goal formulation, data gathering, synthesis and summary, plan concept and format, and public policy adoption while writing a general plan for a rural community in Utah.

   GEOG 422 : Principles of Urban Design. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F

PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of urban design emphasizing specific design criteria. Planning and design tools used within the U.S. by local government. Basic principles of architecture and landscape architecture. Field trips.

GEOG 423 : Planning for Unique and Sensitive Lands. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Unique aspects of land affecting land-use planning positively or negatively depending on sensitivity of design. Landscape ecological principles introduced and examined for usefulness in land-use planning.

Show all Geography (Geog) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Geography (Geog) Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

GEOG 100 : The Geographic Approach. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major status.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of the discipline of geography and the faculty and geography major at BYU.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 110 : Landscapes of Disaster: An Introduction to Natural Hazards. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exploring natural and social science of disturbances by analyzing causes, consequences, and role of human behavior in causing and mitigating natural disasters.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

: Honors Geography and World Affairs.

GEOG 130 : Introduction to Human Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

200-Level Courses

GEOG 211 : Map Use and Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Maps as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 213 : Earth Observation and Image Interpretation. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Principles of earth observation: primarily air photo/large-scale satellite imagery interpretation, basic field methods, photogrammetry.

GEOG 217 : Programming for Geographers. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: CS 142 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Object-oriented analysis of geographic information using Visual Basic.

GEOG 219 : Global Positioning Systems and Geodesy. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

GEOG 222 : Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Stat 105 or above.
DESCRIPTION: Organizing, acquiring, and using quantitative geographic data and quantitative reasoning within the discipline of geography.

GEOG 245 : Geography of Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring geography of Utah. Topics include land forms, climate, agricultural and recreational economics, historical migration, Mormon cultural landscape, ethnic patterns, and rural-urban contrasts.

GEOG 250 : United States and Canada. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

300-Level Courses

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

GEOG 304 : Geography of Climates. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

GEOG 305 : Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F (as needed).
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

GEOG 306 : Public Land Conservation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental and social geography of public lands; analyzing historical, planning, management, and ecological issues.

GEOG 307 : Landscape Ecology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction between spatial patterns and spatial processes in an ecological context. Methods, theories, and practical applications of landscapes at various scales.

GEOG 310 : Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

GEOG 311 : Geographic Data Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nature of geographic information and its practical management in GIS; design of GIS databases, data collection from primary and secondary sources, manipulating data in preparation for analysis, and data exploration.

GEOG 312 : Cartographic Design. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211.
DESCRIPTION: Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

GEOG 313 : Remote Sensing 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 211, 212.

GEOG 317 : Analytical Cartography. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 217.
DESCRIPTION: Geocoding, spatial data representation, spatial algorithms, and map based transformations.

GEOG 322 : Statistics for Geographers. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geog 222.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

GEOG 331 : Economic Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Alt. term
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

GEOG 336 : Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

GEOG 346 : Population Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations, emphasizing basic demographic measures.

GEOG 347 : Tourism: A Conceptual Framework. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to tourism as a field of study; four elements of tourism: dynamic, service, functional, and consequential.

GEOG 348 : Tourism: Patterns and Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Patterns in domestic and international tourism; interrelationship between geography and tourism in understanding the patterns and their impact.

GEOG 349 : Global Adventure Travel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and emerging trends in global adventure travel and tourism. Detailed case studies selected from across world regions.

GEOG 350 : Tourism Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
RECOMMENDED: Geog 347.
DESCRIPTION: Applying regional development and planning concepts, principles, and approaches to tourism destinations to enhance sustainable economic, ecological, and social development.

GEOG 353 : Heritage and Cultural Tourism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Geog 120, 130, 347, 348.
DESCRIPTION: Heritage and culture (places, people, relics, and traditions) as tourism resources examined within the context of supply and demand, conservation, interpretation, management, planning, and politics.

GEOG 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

400-Level Courses

GEOG 410 : Practices of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310.
DESCRIPTION: Applications of methods and techniques commonly used in the land use planning process, emphasizing data collection and analysis, fieldwork, and writing skills.

GEOG 411 : Issues in Computer Cartography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 312 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Current techniques for compilation, integration, and display of digital map data.

GEOG 412 : Problem Solving with Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 311 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Solving practical geographic problems and performing scientific research using raster and vector analysis tools in GIS.

GEOG 413 : Remote Sensing 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 313.
DESCRIPTION: Computer processing of low-altitude and satellite images for geographic analysis of physical and cultural phenomena on earth.

GEOG 414 : Applied Urban Environmental Modeling. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 212, 213, 313.
DESCRIPTION: Complexities of urban environment through use of geographic techniques, including remote sensing, GIS, GPS, aerial photo and map interpretation, and fieldwork. Modeling human impact on the physical environment by examining local case studies and completing group projects. Developing and building technical skills as tools in understanding the urban environment.

GEOG 415R : Geographic Field Methods. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: Sp or Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Learning different methods used by geographers in the field through hands-on involvement in real faculty research.

GEOG 421R : Comprehensive Planning. (2-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Assessing problem and issue identification, goal formulation, data gathering, synthesis and summary, plan concept and format, and public policy adoption while writing a general plan for a rural community in Utah.

GEOG 422 : Principles of Urban Design. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and principles of urban design emphasizing specific design criteria. Planning and design tools used within the U.S. by local government. Basic principles of architecture and landscape architecture. Field trips.

GEOG 423 : Planning for Unique and Sensitive Lands. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410.
DESCRIPTION: Unique aspects of land affecting land-use planning positively or negatively depending on sensitivity of design. Landscape ecological principles introduced and examined for usefulness in land-use planning.

GEOG 441R : Seminar in Geography and Geospatial Intelligence. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Capstone seminar for students in geospatial intelligence emphasis, emphasizing synthesis of material learned in major and application of knowledge and skills through research project.

GEOG 493R : Special Problems. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geography major or departmental approval.

GEOG 495R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Participating in research integrating material learned in major. Emphasizes individual or collaborative research and creative thinking through active learning and reflective analysis.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

GEOG 501R : Seminar in Geography. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Detailed investigation of selected systematic and regional geographic topics.

GEOG 503 : Geographic Information Systems. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Graduate standing
DESCRIPTION: Using geographic information for solving advanced spatial problems. Introduction to using and producing maps and computer-based geographic information systems (GIS) as geographic tools. Hands-on research applications in the students' disciplines.
NOTE: For nonmajors who have not taken Geog 211 or 212 or equivalent.

GEOG 510 : Advanced Urban Dynamics and Planning. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geog 310, 410, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Urban geography and land use planning, emphasizing urban morphology, land use patterns, and spatial analysis; critical evaluation of models and theories.

GEOG 521R : Geographic Information Practicum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, or Sp on demand
PREREQUISITE: GIS major status; Geog 311, 312, 313, 317 (or equivalents); Geog 222 or 223 or equivalent; one 400-level GIS course.
DESCRIPTION: Integration of various geographic technologies to solve a practical problem. Advanced topics in GIS, remote sensing, cartography, and programming as needed.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Geography Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Geography Faculty

Professors

Jackson, Richard H

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1965
MS, Brigham Young University, 1966
PhD, Clark University, 1970

Shumway, J. Matthew

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, Indiana University, 1991

Timothy, Dallen J.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, University of Western Ontario, Canada, 1993
PhD, University of Waterloo, Canada, 1996

Associate Professors

Davis, James A

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, California State University, Fullerton, 1987
PhD, Arizona State University, 1993

Emmett, Chad F

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Utah State University, 1979
MA, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Chicago, 1991

Hardin, Perry J.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Utah, 1989

Jensen, Ryan R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College (now BYU-Idaho), 1992
BS, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of Florida, 2000

Otterstrom, Samuel M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1990
MS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Louisiana State University A&M, 1997

Assistant Professors

Bekker, Matthew F

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
MS, Pennsylvania State University, 1996
PhD, University of Iowa, 2002

Durrant, Jeffrey Olani

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MS, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Hawaii, Manoa, 2001

Jackson, Mark Wadley

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1996
MS, Brigham Young University, 1997
PhD, University of South Carolina, Columbia

Plewe, Brandon

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geography
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, State University of New York, Buffalo, 1995
PhD, State University of New York, Buffalo, 1997

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Geological Sciences

Scott M. Ritter, Chair
S-389 ESC, (801) 422-3918

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
N-179 ESC, (801) 422-6270
1112 TMCB, (801) 422-4214

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Geological Sciences are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Geological sciences consist of a number of disciplines aimed at understanding the Earth's origin and development and the natural processes that have operated upon it and within it from the time of formation of the solar system. With the development of remote sensing technology and the exploration of the solar system by spacecraft, geological sciences have become increasingly important for understanding not only the Earth but the Moon, other planets and their moons, and small bodies that orbit the Sun.

Understanding the dynamic processes of Earth and other planets is relevant to many societal needs, such as assessment and forecasting of natural hazards, environmental change, and discovery of energy and mineral resources. Some of the diverse disciplines that can be studied in this department include general geology, plate tectonics, volcanology, geochemistry, geophysics, paleontology, environmental geology, petroleum geology, hydrogeology, paleoclimatology, and planetary geology.

Career Opportunities

Graduates have the opportunity to work both outdoors and in the laboratory, pursuing careers in energy, mineral, and water resources or in environmental evaluation with industry, government, or consulting firms. The substantial preparation in basic sciences and mathematics also leads to a broad spectrum of teaching opportunities. Some scholarship money is available for those who pursue a geological sciences degree as a prelaw track. The most marketable terminal degree in geological sciences is the MS. Starting salaries for this degree are often very competitive with those of other disciplines.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Earth and Space Science Education
BS in Geology
Emphasis (optional):
Environmental Geology

Minors

Geology
Geology Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Geology

For more information see the BYU 2008-2009 Graduate Catalog.

The

Global Geology Program

Each year the department provides opportunities for advanced undergraduates and graduate students to examine rocks and geological processes at some premier localities around the world. These one- to two-week field trips allow students to do mentored research projects and develop field expertise rarely available to undergraduate students. Programs that are run every four to five years include:

1. Active volcanism of Hawaii.
2. Carbonate formation in Florida and the Bahamas.
3. Tectonism and plutonism in the northeast Appalachians.

Trips to more distant localities (e.g., Italy, Great Britain, Alaska) are interspersed with these recurring trips. Scholarships are available that greatly reduce the cost to students.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Earth and Space Science Education (83–86 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

3. Complete two hours (four enrollments) of the following:

GEOL 491R : Geology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on various geologic topics by guest speakers.

4. Complete three courses from the following:

GEOL 100 : Dinosaurs. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on examination of vertebrate fossils -- especially dinosaurs. For nonscience majors. Field trips.

GEOL 109 : Geology of the Planets. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Origins and distinctive histories of the planets in our solar system as revealed by study of their surface features.
NOTE: For nonscience and science majors.

GEOL 230 : Geological Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111; 210 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to writing within the discipline and designing and creating publishable geologic maps

and illustrations. Tools include ArcGIS, Adobe Illustrator, and Photoshop. Online portfolio initiated.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

GEOL 451 : Optical Mineralogy. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 351.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of light with crystalline material; using petrographic microscope; optical spectrometry.

GEOL 460 : Economic and Resource Geology. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and genesis of metallic and non-metallic mineral deposits, including laboratory study of economic minerals. Field trips.

GEOL 476 : Introduction to Seismic Interpretation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental techniques; analyzing seismic reflection data. Reviewing fundamentals of seismic trace and geologic implications. Basic mapping of subsurface structure and stratigraphy.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

5. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

Or

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

6. Complete the following:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

PHIL 423 : (Phil 423--Physcs 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 100 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.

RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 127 : Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

PHSCS 137 : Introduction to the Atmosphere and Weather. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Nonmathematical introduction to characteristics of the atmosphere, emphasizing structure and dynamic behavior, including the environmental impact of man.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

PHY S 276 : Exploration of Teaching. (4:4:0)
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

PHY S 377 : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phy S 276; fingerprint and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

PHY S 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Phy S 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before enrollment in Phy S 377.

b. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geology (73–75 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

This basic degree in geology prepares graduates for professional employment in industry or government or for advanced studies in geology, business, or law.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following:

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

GEOL 230 : Geological Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111; 210 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to writing within the discipline and designing and creating publishable geologic maps and illustrations. Tools include ArcGIS, Adobe Illustrator, and Photoshop. Online portfolio initiated.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)

OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 410 : Geological Field Methods. (6:0:46)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352, 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Methods used to observe, collect, and interpret field data in geologic and environmental investigations.
NOTE: Fee.

3. Complete 2 hours (four enrollments) of the following:
GEOL 491R : Geology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on various geologic topics by guest speakers.

4. Complete four courses from the following:
GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

GEOL 451 : Optical Mineralogy. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 351.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of light with crystalline material; using petrographic microscope; optical spectrometry.

GEOL 460 : Economic and Resource Geology. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and genesis of metallic and non-metallic mineral deposits, including laboratory study of economic minerals. Field trips.

GEOL 476 : Introduction to Seismic Interpretation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental techniques; analyzing seismic reflection data. Reviewing fundamentals of seismic trace and geologic implications. Basic mapping of subsurface structure and stratigraphy.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.

DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

5. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
- NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

Or

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
- DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
- NOTE: Tutorial included.

6. Complete the following:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
- DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
- NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.

RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Geology: Environmental Geology Emphasis (76–79 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Increasing concern with environmental degradation and natural geologic hazards has led to a demand for geologists who are both well grounded in the fundamentals of the science of geology and specifically prepared to address environmental problems. This degree prepares students for careers either in the environmental services industry or government or for advanced studies.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

GEOL 230 : Geological Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111; 210 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to writing within the discipline and designing and creating publishable geologic maps and illustrations. Tools include ArcGIS, Adobe Illustrator, and Photoshop. Online portfolio initiated.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 410 : Geological Field Methods. (6:0:46)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352, 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Methods used to observe, collect, and interpret field data in geologic and environmental investigations.
NOTE: Fee.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

3. Complete two hours (four enrollments) of the following:
GEOL 491R : Geology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on various geologic topics by guest speakers.

4. Complete two courses from the following:
CE EN 351 : Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Su even years; F, Sp odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Environmental concerns, problems, and evaluation methodology; pollution control and engineering management approaches.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 535 : Contaminant Hydrogeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geology 435 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, tools, and applications used to solve heavy metal, organic, and radionuclide groundwater contamination problems. Topics include regulations, mass transport, multiphase flow, transformation, retardation, and attenuation.

PWS 303 : Soils Conservation and Resources. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: PWS 100 or equivalent; PWS 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Taxonomy of world soils; conservation and management of agricultural, wildland, wetland, and urban soils.

: Soil Conservation and Management.

5. Complete the following:

ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
- PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
- DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
- NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
- NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 113 : Calculus 2. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates.
- NOTE: Honors also.

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
- RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
- DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
- RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
- NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

6. Complete one of the following options:

Either

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
- NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
- NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.

NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

Or

CHEM 111 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
RECOMMENDED: High school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent enrollment in Math 112.
DESCRIPTION: Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

CHEM 112 : Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 111.
NOTE: Tutorial included.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Geology (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. When all of the geology credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in geology must be taken at BYU.

2. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

3. Complete the following:

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
- OFFERED: F, W
- PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
- OFFERED: W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
- DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

4. Complete eight hours from the following:

GEOL 100 : Dinosaurs. (3:1:2)
- OFFERED: W
- DESCRIPTION: Hands-on examination of vertebrate fossils -- especially dinosaurs. For nonscience majors. Field trips.

GEOL 109 : Geology of the Planets. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- DESCRIPTION: Origins and distinctive histories of the planets in our solar system as revealed by study of their surface features.
- NOTE: For nonscience and science majors.

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
- DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
- NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
- OFFERED: F
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
- OFFERED: W
- PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
- DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
- OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

GEOL 451 : Optical Mineralogy. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 351.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of light with crystalline material; using petrographic microscope; optical spectrometry.

GEOL 460 : Economic and Resource Geology. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and genesis of metallic and non-metallic mineral deposits, including laboratory study of economic minerals. Field trips.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

Show all Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Geology Teaching (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The geology teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the David O. McKay School of Education.

Program Requirements

1. When all of the geology credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in geology must be taken at BYU.
2. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
3. Complete the following:

   GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

   GEOL 112 : Historical Geology. (4:3:2)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
   DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

4. Complete eight hours from the following:

   GEOL 100 : Dinosaurs. (3:1:2)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Hands-on examination of vertebrate fossils -- especially dinosaurs. For nonscience majors. Field trips.

   GEOL 109 : Geology of the Planets. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Origins and distinctive histories of the planets in our solar system as revealed by study of their surface features.
   NOTE: For nonscience and science majors.

   GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
   DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
   NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

   GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

   GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
   DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-

forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

GEOL 460 : Economic and Resource Geology. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and genesis of metallic and non-metallic mineral deposits, including laboratory study of economic minerals. Field trips.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

Show all Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Geological Sciences (Geol) Courses

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

GEOL 100 : Dinosaurs. (3:1:2)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Hands-on examination of vertebrate fossils -- especially dinosaurs. For nonscience majors. Field trips.

GEOL 101 : Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Introduction to Geology.

GEOL 102 : Geological Field Studies. (3:6:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, Su
DESCRIPTION: Outdoor examination of geological processes via afternoon canyon hikes and other hands-on activities.
NOTE: For nonscience majors.

GEOL 103 : Life of the Past. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural focus on historical geology for nonscience majors; fossils. Field trips.

GEOL 108 : Climate and the Earth System. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Chemical, physical, and biological processes shaping the Earth's surface and climate, emphasizing quantitative methods for measuring and evaluating contemporary climate and environmental changes relative to the last several thousand years.

GEOL 109 : Geology of the Planets. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Origins and distinctive histories of the planets in our solar system as revealed by study of their surface features.
NOTE: For nonscience and science majors.

GEOL 110 : Geological Science Laboratory. (1:0:2)
PREREQUISITE: Geol 101.
DESCRIPTION: Minerals, rocks, and landforms; the use of topographic and geologic maps; the interpretation of aerial photos.

GEOL 111 : Physical Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

GEOL 112 : Historlcal Geology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

200-Level Courses

GEOL 210 : Field Studies. (3:0:9)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units.
NOTE: Contact Geological Sciences Department before April 15 for dates of upcoming August trip.

GEOL 230 : Geological Communications. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111; 210 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to writing within the discipline and designing and creating publishable geologic maps and illustrations. Tools include ArcGIS, Adobe Illustrator, and Photoshop. Online portfolio initiated.

300-Level Courses

GEOL 330 : Geology for Engineers. (3:2:2)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Geological processes and materials bearing on engineering practices. Field trips.

GEOL 351 : Mineralogy. (4:3:4)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

GEOL 352 : Petrology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
DESCRIPTION: Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

GEOL 370 : Sedimentology and Stratigraphy. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112.
DESCRIPTION: Erosion; sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition; depositional systems and facies analysis; principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

GEOL 375 : Structural Geology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 351, 352; Phscs 121 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Using aerial photos. Field trips.

GEOL 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

400-Level Courses

GEOL 404 : Chemical Processes in the Environment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330.
DESCRIPTION: Natural controls on the composition of water; anthropogenic effects on air and water relative to understanding a range of environmental problems.

GEOL 410 : Geological Field Methods. (6:0:46)
OFFERED: Sp
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352, 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Methods used to observe, collect, and interpret field data in geologic and environmental investigations.
NOTE: Fee.

GEOL 411 : Geomorphology and Remote Sensing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111.
DESCRIPTION: Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic significance. Use of aerial/satellite images of Earth and other planets, topographic/bathymetric maps, multi-wavelength image data. Field trips.

GEOL 430 : Senior Thesis. (3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111, 112, 210, 351, 352, 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Faculty-supervised research on a project of limited scope. Project is chosen and completed by the student. Written and oral presentation of findings required.

GEOL 435 : Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

GEOL 440 : Solid Earth Geophysics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 123.
DESCRIPTION: Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

GEOL 445 : Geochemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

GEOL 451 : Optical Mineralogy. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 351.
DESCRIPTION: Interaction of light with crystalline material; using petrographic microscope; optical spectrometry.

GEOL 460 : Economic and Resource Geology. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and genesis of metallic and non-metallic mineral deposits, including laboratory study of economic minerals. Field trips.

GEOL 476 : Introduction to Seismic Interpretation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370, 375.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental techniques; analyzing seismic reflection data. Reviewing fundamentals of seismic trace and geologic implications. Basic mapping of subsurface structure and stratigraphy.

GEOL 480 : Paleontology. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geol 112.
DESCRIPTION: Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

GEOL 490R : Short Courses. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Short, undergraduate-level courses and extended field trips offered on an irregular basis.
NOTE: Fee.

GEOL 491R : Geology Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on various geologic topics by guest speakers.

GEOL 492R : Career Pathways Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on graduate school and career opportunities by guest speakers.

GEOL 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

GEOL 504 : Global Geology Field Studies. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Any senior-level geology course; instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study fo classic geologic localities, such as Hawaii, the Bahamas, and the Appalachians, prelimiary to on-site field study.

GEOL 521 : Borehole Geophysics and Geology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121, 220, Geol 351, 370.
DESCRIPTION: Applied well log analysis, including conventional and new techniques. Subsurface geology and lithology determined from many logs. Determining porosity, permeability, and fluid saturation with hydrology, and hydrocarbon applications.

GEOL 525 : Petroleum Systems Analysis. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Properties of petroleum; exploration methods; generation and migration of hydrocarbons, reservoirs, traps, and seals; sedimentary basin classification; energy resources. Extended field trip required.

GEOL 530 : Geological Communications Laboratory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; graduate status.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and creating a variety of student-selected geological illustrations emphasizing maps and cross-sections.

GEOL 535 : Contaminant Hydrogeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geology 435 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, tools, and applications used to solve heavy metal, organic, and radionuclide groundwater contamination problems. Topics include regulations, mass transport, multiphase flow, transformation, retardation, and attenuation.

GEOL 540 : Principles of Glaciology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
DESCRIPTION: Geophysical problems involving ice in the environment and its role in global change. Topics include atmospheric ice, snow pack, glaciers, ice sheets, sea ice, permafrost, and ice age theories.

GEOL 545 : Isotope Geochemistry. (3:1:4)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Use of stable and radioactive isotope systematics in geochronology and investigation of origins of rocks and waters.

GEOL 550 : Environmental Soil Chemistry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 106, 107; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemistry of soil systems at macroscopic and microscopic scales, examined from the perspective of scientists interested in environmental assessment and remediation.

GEOL 551 : Advanced Mineralogy. (3:2:2)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Geol 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Crystallography, structure, and crystal chemistry of major silicate mineral groups.

GEOL 552 : Igneous Petrology. (3:4:3)
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and evolution of magmas, emphasizing trace element and isotopic compositions and intensive properties as calculated from mineral compositions.

GEOL 555 : Volcanism and Ore Deposits. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Geol 352 or equivalent.

GEOL 560 : Reflection Seismology Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Geol 375, Phscs 121, 123, 220; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Principles, tools, and methods used in seismic geophysics, with exploration, engineering, environmental, and hydrological applications.

GEOL 561 : Applied Exploration Seismology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Geol 375, Phscs 121, 123, 220; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Seismic acquisition processing and computer-assisted interpretation, emphasizing field deployment techniques, use of commercial data processing, and visualization software.

GEOL 565R : Special Topics in Geology. (.5-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: The following topics may be offered on demand: geology for teachers, ore deposits, solid-water interface chemistry, X-ray crystallography.

GEOL 571 : Sedimentology and Ecology of Modern Carbonate Systems. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
OFFERED: W on demand
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Field course in the Caribbean emphasizing factors that produce carbonate sediments. Investigation of tidal flat to off-shore barrier reef environments and Pleistocene outcrops.

GEOL 574 : Advanced Stratigraphy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Geol 370 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Geol 480.
DESCRIPTION: Studying the stratigraphic record through modern methods of correlating stratal packages, emphasizing concepts of sequence and seismic stratigraphy, and utilizing methods of chronostratigraphy, biostratigraphy, lithostratigraphy, and absolute dating. Extended field trip required.

GEOL 575 : Advanced Structural Geology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Geol 375, 410; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth discussions of a variety of topics in structural geology, emphasizing current literature and problems.

GEOL 576 : Three-Dimensional Subsurface Mapping and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Geol 476 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced interpretation of 3D seismic reflection data. Integrating well and seismic data to interpret complex geologic systems. Implications for understanding hydrocarbon reservoirs.

GEOL 580 : Principles of Paleontology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Geol 480 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern approaches to fossil study applied to areas of evolution, paleoecology, and biostratigraphy.

GEOL 586 : Vertebrate Paleontology. (4:3:2)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of vertebrate fossils. Field trips required. Credit applies in either zoology or geology. Lab studies.

GEOL 590R : Short Courses. (1-3:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W on demand
DESCRIPTION: Short graduate-level courses offered on a random basis.
NOTE: Fee.

GEOL 591R : Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on various geologic topics by guest speakers.
NOTE: Total of 1 credit hour required.

GEOL 592R : Career Pathways Seminar. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
DESCRIPTION: Seminar on graduate school and career opportunities by guest speakers.

GEOL 599R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Geological Sciences Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training

Geological Sciences Faculty

Professors

Christiansen, Eric H

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
ScM, Brown University, 1981
PhD, Arizona State University, 1981

Griffen, Dana Thomas

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, U.S. Naval Academy, 1965
MS, Virginia Polytechnic Inst, 1973
PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst, 1976

Harris, Ron

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Oregon, 1982
MS, University of Alaska, Fairbanks, 1985
PhD, University of London, 1989

Keith, Jeffrey Davis

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1980
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1982

Kowallis, Bart J

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1979
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1981

Mayo, Alan L

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of California, San Diego, 1970
MS, University of California, San Diego, 1972
PhD, University of Idaho, 1982

McBride, John Henry

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Arkansas, 1978
MS, University of Arkansas, 1980
PhD, Cornell University, 1987

Morris, Thomas H

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1983
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986

Nelson, Stephen Tracy

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1984
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1991

Ritter, Scott M

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1981
MS, Brigham Young University, 1983
PhD, University of Wisconsin, 1986

Assistant Professors

Bickmore, Barry R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst, 1999

Britt, Brooks Bradley

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1982
MS, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Calgary, 1993

Radebaugh, Jani

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1993
MS, Brigham Young University, 1999
PhD, University of Arizona, 2005

Rupper, Summer

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Washington, Seattle, 2007

Assistant Teaching Professor

Skinner, Malcolm R

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Assistant Teaching Professor
DEGREES: MS, Brigham Young University, 1996

Research Professors

Dorais, Michael John

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Research Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
MS, University of Oregon, 1983
PhD, University of Georgia, 1987

Tingey, David G

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Research Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989

Instructors

Thompson, Kirsten Rose

COLLEGE: Physical and Mathematical Sciences
DEPARTMENT: Geological Sciences
RANK: Instructor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Brigham Young University, 2008

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Germanic and Slavic Languages

David K. Hart, Chair
3112 JFSB, (801) 422-4923

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Students of foreign language and literature develop fluency in another language as well as sensitivity to their own language and cultural heritage, to the contributions and diversity of other peoples, and to the advantages of an international perspective.

Career Opportunities

Experience with the intellectual, artistic, and spiritual expressions of other cultures and of their own culture helps students qualify for advanced study at graduate and professional schools, especially in linguistics, literature, language teaching methodology, library science, humanities, business, law, and medicine. Those who accept employment on completion of the BA degree frequently serve in international business, in education, or in a government agency.

General Information

The Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BA in German
  - Emphases:
    - Linguistics
    - Literature
- BA in German Studies (second-major program)
- BA in German Teaching
- BA in Russian

Minors
- German
- German Teaching
- Russian
- Russian Teaching

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Language Acquisition (German or Russian)
MA in German Studies

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

German

General Information

1. Beginning German courses (101, 102, 201, 202) will be waived for students having comparable German training or experience. Consult department for information about placement examinations.
2. All students will purchase a portfolio packet when they enroll in their first class in the German section. This portfolio will travel with the students as they progress from course to course through the degree program. It will serve as a checklist to guide them through their course of study, will record their language proficiency, and will also be a repository for all papers and creative work produced by the student in the department. The completed portfolio will be reviewed in Germ 400R in conjunction with the Senior Proficiency Exam.
3. All students completing a degree in the German section will be required to master a reading list of masterworks (provided in the portfolio) during their course of study. This can be done either in conjunction with course work or independently.
4. A senior capstone paper is required for graduation.
5. Germ 200R and 300R are designed to help students who desire additional skill in speaking, etc.
6. In their final year, graduating seniors must register for 1 credit hour of Germ 400R in conjunction with the senior proficiency examination (offered fall and winter only). Portfolios should be completed and will be reviewed at the time of this exam.
7. Students planning graduate studies in German should begin a second foreign language.

Language Residency Programs

1. **Vienna Study Abroad (Germ 201, 202, 211R, 310, 311R; 320 or 330).** An opportunity for developing language proficiency as well as for becoming better acquainted with the history and culture of Europe. Spring and summer terms. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.
2. **German Internship Program (Germ 211R/311R, IAS 397R; Germ 399R or IAS 399R).** The BYU German program is pleased to offer a broad range of short-term internship opportunities in German-speaking countries. Students receive individual help to find and prepare for a work experience that will improve their German-language skills and provide a meaningful context for their academic studies. Completion of Germ 202, or an approved equivalent, with at least a B+ grade is required.
3. **Foreign Language Student Residence (Germ 211R, 311R).** An opportunity to live with other students who have pledged to use only German within the house and with head residents who are native speakers of German. Enrollment in a German class in addition to 211R and 311R is required while living in the house. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.
4. **German-Speaking LDS Mission or Other Extended German-Speaking Residency.** Advanced students enroll in Germ 330 and, if desired, complete examinations for Germ 101, 102, 201, and 4 hours of 311R.
5. **Study at a German University.** The department strongly recommends that students spend their junior year at a German university taking courses that will apply toward the major. Universities in Germany charge no tuition, so, even though living costs are generally higher, with careful planning and modest financial support, most students find they can study at "Provo parity," that is, for about the same amount as a year of study in Provo. For advice about how to enroll and what financial support is available, contact the department office.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in German: Linguistics Emphasis (36–55 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See General Information section.

2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.

3. Complete one of the following Level 1 course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

4. Complete the following Level 2 courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

5. Complete three hours of one of the following (or equivalent):

GERM 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 311R : Advanced Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
NOTE: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

6. Complete the following Level 3 courses:

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)

OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 343 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Close reading of texts; examining various critical theories and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Preparation for 440R - 445R sequence. Includes International Cinema.

7. Complete one of the following Level 3 course options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

8. Complete the following or other approved advanced writing course:

GERM 340 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

9. Complete the following:

GERM 450 : History of the German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic survey of the German language from Indo-European to modern times, including phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon.

GERM 460 : Structure of Modern German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Structural and socio-linguistic study of contemporary German.

GERM 497R : Senior Seminar in German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating senior-level course in which acquired knowledge and critical skills are brought to bear on a selected language topic. In-depth capstone paper on one aspect of topic.

Note: Germ 497R must be a topic related to advanced German linguistics.

10. Complete eight additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher, 5 hours of which must be approved linguistics courses such as second language acquisition, dialectology, Middle High German, or Old Saxon.

11. Master a reading list of masterworks (provided in the portfolio) either in conjunction with course work or independently.

12. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last two semesters before graduation (not offered spring or summer):

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.

NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

(1 hour required).

Note: A capstone paper will be required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all German (Germ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in German: Literature Emphasis (36-55 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See General Information section.

2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.

3. Complete one of the following Level 1 course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

4. Complete the following Level 2 courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

5. Complete three hours of one of the following (or equivalent):

GERM 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 311R : Advanced Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
NOTE: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

6. Complete the following Level 3 courses:

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)

OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 343 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Close reading of texts; examining various critical theories and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Preparation for 440R - 445R sequence. Includes International Cinema.

7. Complete one of the following Level 3 course options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

8. Complete the following or other approved advanced writing course:

GERM 340 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

9. Complete the following:

GERM 450 : History of the German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic survey of the German language from Indo-European to modern times, including phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon.

10. Complete 14 additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher. Of these, 11 hours must be approved literature or culture courses such as advanced literature seminars, advanced critical theory, German film, and other courses related to culture, theory, and literary scholarship.

11. Master a reading list of masterworks (provided in the portfolio) either in conjunction with course work or independently.

12. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last two semesters before graduation (not offered spring or summer):

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.
NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

(1 hour required).

Note: A capstone paper will be required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all German (Germ) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in German Studies (a second major program)(28–47 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Students must complete the requirements for a primary major in another field
2. Complete one of the following Level 1 course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

3. Complete the following Level 2 courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

4. Complete three hours of one of the following:

GERM 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 311R : Advanced Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
NOTE: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

Or equivalent residency (mission, Study Abroad, internship, German language residence).

5. Complete the following Level 3 courses (9 hours):

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)

OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 343 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Close reading of texts; examining various critical theories and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Preparation for 440R - 445R sequence. Includes International Cinema.

6. Complete one of the following Level 3 course options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

7. Complete the following or other approved advanced writing course:

GERM 340 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

8. Complete one course from the following (3 hours):

GERM 450 : History of the German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic survey of the German language from Indo-European to modern times, including phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon.

GERM 460 : Structure of Modern German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Structural and socio-linguistic study of contemporary German.

9. Complete six additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher.

10. Master a reading list of masterworks (provided in the portfolio) either in conjunction with course work or independently.

11. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during one of the last two semesters before graduation (not offered spring or summer):

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.
NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

1 hour required

Note: A capstone paper will be required

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all German (Germ) Courses The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in German Teaching (76–100 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. See General Information section.
2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16-21 hours).
4. Declare the major at the Humanities Advisement Center and contact the German teaching major advisor to complete a German proficiency examination. A minimum initial rating of *intermediate - mid* is recommended.
5. Complete one of the following Level 1 course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

6. Complete the following Level 2 courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

7. Complete three hours of one of the following (or equivalent):

GERM 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 311R : Advanced Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
NOTE: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

8. Complete the following Level 3 courses:

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)

PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 343 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Close reading of texts; examining various critical theories and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Preparation for 440R - 445R sequence. Includes International Cinema.

GERM 377 : Methods in Teaching German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

GERM 378 : Practicum in Teaching German. (1:1:2)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Germ 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner perofrmance.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before enrolling in Germ 377. Germ 377 must be taken concurrently with Germ 378 fall semester and prior to student teaching; however, Germ 377 and 378 may be waived for students who have taken a methods course for another language.

9. Complete one of the following Level 3 course options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

10. Complete the following or other approved advanced writing course:

GERM 340 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

11. Complete one course from the following:

GERM 450 : History of the German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic survey of the German language from Indo-European to modern times, including phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon.

GERM 460 : Structure of Modern German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.

DESCRIPTION: Structural and socio-linguistic study of contemporary German.

12. Complete 10 additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher.

13. Master a reading list of masterworks (provided in the portfolio) either in conjunction with course work or independently.

14. Complete a senior capstone paper. (The teacher work sample serves as the capstone paper.)

15. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last two semesters before graduation (not offered spring or summer). A minimum proficiency rating of *advanced - low* is required.

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.
NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

(1 hour required).

16. Complete the Professional Education Component:
    a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive

teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:

SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all German (Germ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in German (15–34 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following prerequisite course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

2. Complete the following prerequisite courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

3. Complete the following:

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

4. Complete one of the following options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

5. Complete 6 additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all German (Germ) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in German Teaching (17–36 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Declare the minor at the Humanities Advisement Center and contact the German teaching major advisor to complete a German proficiency examination. A minimum initial rating of *intermediate - mid* is recommended.

2. Complete one of the following prerequisite course options (may be waived with equivalent experience):

Either

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

Or

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

3. Complete the following prerequisite courses (may be waived with equivalent experience):

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

4. Complete the following:

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

GERM 377 : Methods in Teaching German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

GERM 378 : Practicum in Teaching German. (1:1:2)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Germ 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner perofrmance.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed before enrolling in Germ 377. Germ 377 must be taken concurrently with Germ 378 fall semester and prior to student teaching; however, Germ 377 and 378 may be waived for students who have taken a methods course for another language.

5. Complete one of the following course options:

Either

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

Or

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

6. Complete 3 additional hours of pro-seminars and/or courses numbered 341 or higher.

7. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last semester before graduation (not offered spring or summer). A minimum proficiency rating of *advanced - low* is required.

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.
NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

(1 hour required).

Show all German (Germ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

German (Germ)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

GERM 101 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.
NOTE: For those who have had no German.

GERM 102 : First-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

GERM 103 : Intensive First-Year German. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Covers both Germ 101 and 102. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

: Honors Intensive First-Year German.

GERM 115 : Pro-Seminar 1. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to German cultural studies, mentored research, and professional skills development.

GERM 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript. Report required.
NOTE: Not applicable to German major or minor.

200-Level Courses

GERM 200R : Second-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar.

GERM 201 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

GERM 202 : Second-Year German. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

GERM 211R : Intermediate Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 215 : Pro-Seminar 2. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to mentored scholarly research in German cultural studies. How to apply for ORCA grants, Fulbright and other fellowships. Continued professional skills development.

GERM 217 : (Germ-Scand) German and Scandinavian Cinema. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: A first-year writing course.
DESCRIPTION: Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in Germany and Scandinavia.
NOTE: Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of German or Scandinavian languages is required.

300-Level Courses

GERM 300R : Third-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar.

GERM 310 : German Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting listening and speaking skills through applying phonetics and acoustic analysis; practicing speaking and listening.

GERM 311R : Advanced Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
NOTE: Intensive vocabulary building and conversation practice. Can be fulfilled through language residency program.

GERM 315 : Pro-Seminar 3. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Mentored research building toward honors thesis, capstone paper, or publishable paper. Continued opportunity to work on grant and fellowship applications. Professional skills development.

GERM 320 : Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

GERM 321 : Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 320.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Germ 320.

GERM 322 : Intensive Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310 or concurrent enrollment.
NOTE: Covers Germ 320 and 321 in one semester.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

: Honors Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples.

GERM 340 : Writing About Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary interpretation. Reading, writing, and research skills integral to the literary analysis expected in German major or minor courses.
NOTE: Fills GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement.

: Honors: Writing About Literature.

GERM 343 : Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
DESCRIPTION: Close reading of texts; examining various critical theories and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Preparation for 440R - 445R sequence. Includes International Cinema.

: Honors: Introduction to Literary Analysis.

GERM 370 : German Teaching in Higher Education. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Theories, methods, and techniques of second-language learning and teaching applied to the university context; practicum in department German courses.

GERM 377 : Methods in Teaching German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

GERM 378 : Practicum in Teaching German. (1:1:2)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Germ 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in German; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner perofrmance.

GERM 399R : Academic Internship: German Work. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job ten-week summer language experience in German-speaking countries. Report required.
NOTE: Not applicable to German major or minor.

400-Level Courses

GERM 400R : Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Completed portfolios reviewed, and final proficiency examination administered.
NOTE: Required for one credit in one of final two semesters for graduating seniors.

GERM 415 : Pro-Seminar 4. (1:1:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 315.

GERM 440R : German Literary Periods and Movements. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a period or movement such as medieval, Renaissance, baroque, eighteenth century, romanticism, classicism, realism, fin-de-siecle Vienna, naturalism, expressionism, post-war, or contemporary.

GERM 441R : Studies in German Literary Genres. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a genre such as drama, novel, novella, lyric, or film.

GERM 442R : Major German Authors. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of one author such as Lessing, Goethe, B.V. Arnim, Kleist, Storm, Rilke, Brecht, Mann, Kafka, or Bachmann.

GERM 443R : Studies in Literary Theory. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists. May include topics such as Frankfurter school, feminist criticism, reader response, or post-structuralism.

GERM 444R : Interdisciplinary Studies. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: Studies linking German literature, film, and the arts within German culture or across national boundaries.

GERM 445R : Special Topics in German Cultural Studies. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: German cultural studies courses of a non-traditional nature, as determined by the faculty.

GERM 450 : History of the German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic survey of the German language from Indo-European to modern times, including phonology, morphology, syntax, and lexicon.

GERM 460 : Structure of Modern German. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Germ 310, 320, 321.
DESCRIPTION: Structural and socio-linguistic study of contemporary German.

GERM 490R : Special Studies in German. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
NOTE: Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances. Not applicable to German major or minor.

GERM 497R : Senior Seminar in German Language. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating senior-level course in which acquired knowledge and critical skills are brought to bear on a selected language topic. In-depth capstone paper on one aspect of topic.

GERM 498R : Senior Seminar in German Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Culminating senior-level course in which acquired knowledge and critical skills are brought to bear on a selected literature topic. In-depth capstone paper on one aspect of topic.

GERM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Russian (56–84 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

General Information

Important Note for Returned Russian-Speaking Missionaries: Register for third-year Russian classes. Russ 330 is recommended. Russ 202 will be waived as a requirement for Russian majors and should not be taken except when remedial work is necessary and permission is obtained from the section leader. Credit for Russ 101, 102, 201, and 211 is available through a test given as part of Russ 330. Returned missionaries must complete Russ 330 and talk with the Russian section head before declaring a major.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following preparatory courses (may be waived for students with sufficient proficiency in the language):

   RUSS 101 : First-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 102 : First-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 201 : Second-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 102 or instructor's consent, based on prior Russian language experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

   RUSS 202 : Second-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and discussion in Russian of both expository and literary readings.
   NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

2. Complete the following major courses:

   RUSS 321 : Third-Year Russian Part 1. (2:2:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

   RUSS 322 : Third-Year Russian Part 2. (2:2:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

   RUSS 323 : Russian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (2:2:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Perfecting speaking and listening skills through phonetics and applied speaking and listening techniques.

   RUSS 330 : Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or foreign residence experience.
   NOTE: Nonmajors not required to take Russ 311 but are welcome if concurrently enrolled in Russ 330. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Includes International Cinema.

   RUSS 340 : Masterpieces of the Russian Novel in English. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Russian novels by such authors as Pushkin, Tolstoy, Dostoevsky, and Pasternak.

   RUSS 421 : Fourth-Year Russian, Part 1. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322, 330.
   DESCRIPTION: Contemporary language and culture.

RUSS 422 : Fourth-Year Russian, Part 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322, 330.
DESCRIPTION: The structure of Russian.

RUSS 441 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 442 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 492R : Senior Seminar: Passages and Conclusions. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 441 or 442.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature or language. Content varies; requires research and writing.

3. Complete one course from the following:
RUSS 341 : Dostoevsky's Major Works in Translation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Dostoevsky's major works in English translation.

RUSS 342 : Tolstoy's Major Works in Translation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Tolstoy's major works in English translation.

RUSS 343 : Masterpieces of Russian Film. (2:2:1.5)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 330.
DESCRIPTION: Developing listening comprehension and speaking skills through discussing Russian films. Includes International Cinema.

4. Complete a substantial program of study that complements the student's educational and professional goals. This program should be described and justified in a letter to the Russian section leader, and approved by the section, no later than the year before graduation.

Note: In addition to completing other Russian course work, it is expected that majors who have not spent an extended period in Russia will live for at least a semester in the Russian Student Foreign Language Residence *and* complete the BYU or approved equivalent Study Abroad program in Russia.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Russian (Russ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Russian (12–32 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (may be waived for students with sufficient proficiency in the language):
   RUSS 101 : First-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 102 : First-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 201 : Second-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 102 or instructor's consent, based on prior Russian language experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

   RUSS 202 : Second-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and discussion in Russian of both expository and literary readings.
   NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

2. Complete the following with the BYU St. Petersburg Study Abroad program or an approved equivalent program:
   RUSS 211 : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or foreign residence experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.
   NOTE: Offered only as credit by examination upon completion of Russ 330 (maximum 1 hour) or through Study Abroad experience in Russian (1-5 hours).

   RUSS 321 : Third-Year Russian Part 1. (2:2:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

   RUSS 330 : Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or foreign residence experience.
   NOTE: Nonmajors not required to take Russ 311 but are welcome if concurrently enrolled in Russ 330. Required for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Includes International Cinema.

   RUSS 490R : Special Studies in Russian. (.5-3:ARR:0)
   PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances.

Note: This minor is designed only for students of Russian who have had no missionary-level residency experience in Russia.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Russian (Russ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Russian Teaching (17–32 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Note: Before declaring a Russian teaching minor, candidates must consult with the section leader.

Program Requirements

1. Register with the secretary in the department office.
2. Complete the following prerequisite courses (may be waived for students with sufficient proficiency in the language):

   RUSS 101 : First-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 102 : First-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)

   RUSS 201 : Second-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 102 or instructor's consent, based on prior Russian language experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

3. Complete the following:

   RUSS 202 : Second-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or instructor's consent.
   DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and discussion in Russian of both expository and literary readings.
   NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

   (see Note for Returned Russian-speaking Missionaries)
   If 202 was waived, take 441 or 442.

   RUSS 330 : Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or foreign residence experience.
   NOTE: Nonmajors not required to take Russ 311 but are welcome if concurrently enrolled in Russ 330. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Includes International Cinema.

   RUSS 340 : Masterpieces of the Russian Novel in English. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Survey of Russian novels by such authors as Pushkin, Tolstoy, Dostoevsky, and Pasternak.

   RUSS 377 : Methods in Teaching Russian. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in Russian; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

   RUSS 378 : Practicum in Teaching Russian. (1:1:2)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 201; ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Russ 377.
   DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in Russian; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

   Note: Russ 377 must be taken concurrently with Russ 378 fall semester and prior to student teaching; however, Russ 377 and 378 may be waived for students who have taken a methods course for another language.

4. Complete one course from the following:

   RUSS 321 : Third-Year Russian Part 1. (2:2:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.

DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

RUSS 322 : Third-Year Russian Part 2. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Russian (Russ) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Russian (Russ)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

RUSS 101 : First-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)

RUSS 102 : First-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)

RUSS 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript. Report required
NOTE: Not applicable to major or minor.

200-Level Courses

RUSS 201 : Second-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 102 or instructor's consent, based on prior Russian language experience.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

RUSS 202 : Second-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and discussion in Russian of both expository and literary readings.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

RUSS 211 : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.
NOTE: Offered only as credit by examination upon completion of Russ 330 (maximum 1 hour) or through Study Abroad experience in Russian (1-5 hours).

300-Level Courses

RUSS 321 : Third-Year Russian Part 1. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

RUSS 322 : Third-Year Russian Part 2. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and composition, case government, listening and speaking skills.

RUSS 323 : Russian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Perfecting speaking and listening skills through phonetics and applied speaking and listening techniques.

RUSS 330 : Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Nonmajors not required to take Russ 311 but are welcome if concurrently enrolled in Russ 330. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Includes International Cinema.

RUSS 340 : Masterpieces of the Russian Novel in English. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Russian novels by such authors as Pushkin, Tolstoy, Dostoevsky, and Pasternak.

RUSS 341 : Dostoevsky's Major Works in Translation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Dostoevsky's major works in English translation.

RUSS 342 : Tolstoy's Major Works in Translation. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Tolstoy's major works in English translation.

RUSS 343 : Masterpieces of Russian Film. (2:2:1.5)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 330.
DESCRIPTION: Developing listening comprehension and speaking skills through discussing Russian films. Includes International Cinema.

RUSS 377 : Methods in Teaching Russian. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Russ 201; ScEd 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.

RUSS 378 : Practicum in Teaching Russian. (1:1:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Russ 201; ScEd 276R; concurrent enrollment in Russ 377.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students in Russian; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

RUSS 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 and department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Russian-related areas. Report required.
NOTE: Not applicable to any Russian major or minor.

400-Level Courses

RUSS 421 : Fourth-Year Russian, Part 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322, 330.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary language and culture.

RUSS 422 : Fourth-Year Russian, Part 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322, 330.
DESCRIPTION: The structure of Russian.

RUSS 441 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 442 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 490R : Special Studies in Russian. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances.

RUSS 492R : Senior Seminar: Passages and Conclusions. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 441 or 442.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature or language. Content varies; requires research and writing.

RUSS 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Afrikaans (Afrik)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

AFRIK 101 : First-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

AFRIK 102 : First-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

AFRIK 201 : Second-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Afrik 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

AFRIK 202 : Second-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Afrik 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

AFRIK 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Afrik 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

AFRIK 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Afrik 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Bulgarian (Bulgn)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

BULGN 101 : First-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

BULGN 102 : First-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

BULGN 201 : Second-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

BULGN 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Bulgn 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

BULGN 330 : Cultural History of Bulgaria. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Bulgn 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Bulgarian language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Bulgn 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Czech (Czech)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CZECH 101 : First-Year Czech. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

CZECH 102 : First-Year Czech. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

CZECH 201 : Second-Year Czech. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Czech 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

CZECH 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Czech 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

CZECH 330 : Cultural History of Czech Republic. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Czech 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Czech or Slovak language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Czech 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Dutch (Dutch)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

DUTCH 101 : First-Year Dutch. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

DUTCH 102 : First-Year Dutch. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

DUTCH 201 : Second-Year Dutch. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Dutch 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

DUTCH 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Dutch 201 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

DUTCH 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Dutch 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

DUTCH 340 : Introduction to Dutch Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Reading knowledge of Dutch.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from the best Dutch literature. Introduction to basic literary concepts.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dutch 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Hungarian (Hung)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HUNG 101 : First-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

HUNG 102 : First-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

HUNG 201 : Second-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Hung 102 or instructor's consent based on prior Hungarian experience.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

HUNG 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Hung 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

HUNG 330 : Cultural History of Hungary. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Hung 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries and others with extensive Hungarian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Hung 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Latvian (Latvi)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

LATVI 101 : First-Year Latvian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

LATVI 102 : First-Year Latvian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

200-Level Courses

LATVI 201 : Second-Year Latvian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

LATVI 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

300-Level Courses

LATVI 330 : Cultural History of Latvia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries from Latvia. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Latvi 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Lithuanian (Lithu)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

LITHU 101 : First-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residency experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

LITHU 102 : First-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residency experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

200-Level Courses

LITHU 201 : Second-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residency experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

LITHU 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

300-Level Courses

LITHU 330 : Cultural History of Lithuania. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries from Lithuania. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Lithu 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Polish (Polish)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

POLSH 101 : First-Year Polish. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

POLSH 102 : First-Year Polish. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Polsh 101.

200-Level Courses

POLSH 201 : Second-Year Polish. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 102 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

POLSH 202 : Second-Year Polish. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

POLSH 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

POLSH 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 211R or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

POLSH 330 : Cultural History of Poland. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Polish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Polsh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

POLSH 340 : Polish Literature Survey. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 330.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Polish literature from Kochanowski to Szymborska, including works by Rej, Krasicki, Mickiewicz, Slowacki, Norwid, Prus, Sienkiewicz, Zeromski, Reymont, and others.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Serbo-Croatian (SrbCr)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

SRBCR 101 : First-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

SRBCR 102 : First-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of SrbCr 101.

200-Level Courses

SRBCR 201 : Second-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 102 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

SRBCR 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

SRBCR 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 211R or foreign residence experience.

SRBCR 330 : Cultural History of the Former Yugoslavia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Serbo-Croatian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (SrbCr 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Slovenian (Sln)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

SLN 101 : First-Year Slovenian. (4:5.0:1.0)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

SLN 102 : First-Year Slovenian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

200-Level Courses

SLN 201 : Second-Year Slovenian. (4:5.0:1.0)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign language experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

SLN 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (1-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Credit by examination only.

300-Level Courses

SLN 330 : Cultural History of Slovenia. (3:3.0:1.0)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Slovenian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (SLN 101,102, 201, 211R).

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Ukrainian (Ukrai)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

UKRAI 101 : First-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

UKRAI 102 : First-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

UKRAI 201 : Second-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Ukrai 102 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and conversation.

UKRAI 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Ukrai 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

UKRAI 330 : Cultural History of Ukraine. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Ukrai 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Ukrainian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Ukrai 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Back to Germanic and Slavic Languages Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Germanic and Slavic Languages Faculty

Professors

Hart, David Kay

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, University of Washington, 1975
PhD, University of Washington, 1979

Keele, Alan Frank

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, Princeton University, 1971

Kelling, Hans-Wilhelm

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1958
MA, Stanford University, 1960
PhD, Stanford University, 1967

Associate Professors

James, Michelle Stott

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Weber State College, 1978
MA, University of Utah, 1981
PhD, University of Utah, 1987

Lundberg, Grant H

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, University of Kansas, 1994
PhD, University of Kansas, 1999

Assistant Professors

Bown, Jennifer Marks

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1991
MA, Ohio State University, 1993
MEd, Ohio State University, 1999
PhD, Ohio State University, 2004

Brewer, Cindy Patey

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Brigham Young University, 1991
PhD, University of Utah, 1998

Brown, N. Anthony

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Southern Methodist University, 1998
MA, Bryn Mawr College, 2002
PhD, Bryn Mawr College, 2004

Clement, Christian Rolf

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Hamburg College of Music and Dance, 1998
BA, University of Hamburg, 1999
MA, University of Hamburg, 2001
PhD, University of Utah, 2005

Kelly, Michael Ray

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, Ohio State University, 1990
PhD, Ohio State University, 1996

Lund, Randall James

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1960
MA, Brigham Young University, 1973
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1986

McFarland, Robert B.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Brigham Young University, 1995
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2000

Purves, Mark Richard

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: MA, University of Virginia, 2004
PhD, University of Virginia, 2007

Smith, Laura Catharine

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Queen's University, Kingston (Canada), 1994
BEd, Queens University, Kingston (Canada), 1995
MA, University of Calgary, 1997
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2000
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 2004

Teaching Professor

Whipple, Walter

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Teaching Professor
DEGREES: AA, Ricks College, 1966
BA, Brigham Young University, 1968
MM, Brigham Young University, 1969
DMA, University of Southern California, 1972
TESL, Brigham Young University, 1989
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996

Associate Teaching Professor

Solovieva, Raissa V

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Germanic and Slavic Languages
RANK: Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES: BA, Tomsk State University, Russia, 1971
MA, Novosibirsk State University, Russia, 1982
PhD, Kharkov State University, Ukraine, 1987

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Health Science

Brad L. Neiger, Chair
221 RB, (801) 422-3313

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
203 RB, (801) 422-3638

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Health Science are open enrollment. In addition, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BS in Public Health
BS in School Health Education

Minors

Driver Safety Education
Health Education

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MPH in Public Health

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in Public Health (55–60 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Public health professionals work to create conditions that ensure the health and safety of individuals, families, and communities. Public health students are trained to inform, educate, and empower people about health issues; mobilize communities to take ownership for their own health; monitor health status and diagnose and investigate health problems and health hazards; develop policies and laws to protect health and ensure safety; and link people to needed health services. The public health mission is carried out through organized, interdisciplinary efforts that address the physical, mental, and environmental health concerns of communities and populations at risk for disease and injury.

Four of several disciplines within public health are represented as tracks within the major: (1) environmental/occupational health identifies and controls factors in the environment (air, water, food, toxins, etc.) or conditions at the workplace which affect health; (2) epidemiology investigates and discovers what causes disease and disability and how diseases are spread or distributed across populations; (3) health promotion facilitates behavior change among individuals and improves population health through policy, advocacy, education, and communication; and (4) health science trains students interested in working in public health after earning an advanced degree in a medical, dental, or other allied health area.

Career Opportunities

There has never been a better time to pursue a career in public health. It is an exciting and growing field of study and a diverse and dynamic profession. It is filled with rewards associated with the pursuit of serving others. The development and delivery of population-based prevention programs will be the key to major advances in health improvement in the 21st century. Public health will continue to be called upon to monitor and assess health problems, prevent and control diseases and injuries, and protect the health of communities and worksites from various environmental and occupational risks associated with man-made and natural disasters and emergencies.

Public health graduates are qualified to work in governmental health agencies on the local, state, federal, and international levels. Private-sector employment can be found in a variety of businesses, community health agencies, managed care organizations, hospitals, clinics, research institutes, voluntary health agencies, and non-governmental organizations. Opportunities for employment in public health are readily available. But recruiters will not typically come to campus to hire graduates. This means graduates must be organized and proactive in their career planning. Students can increase the likelihood of obtaining a position by balancing classroom activities with voluntary or paid service to public health agencies. Obtaining certifications related to specific tracks within the major and careful development of a professional portfolio enhance employment opportunities.

While there are many specialties or disciplines in public health, most career opportunities are found in the tracks associated with the major. Entry-level salaries with a bachelor's degree in public health will range from approximately $35,000–$60,000 but will vary significantly depending upon the specific discipline, type of organization, and geographic location.

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following department courses:

HLTH 100 : Introduction to Public Health. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to public health professions including exploration of current issues, job opportunities, the essential public health services, and an overview of the public health major.

HLTH 310 : Chronic Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, epidemiology of major chronic diseases, health costs to society, at-risk populations, population-based prevention, and related best-practice interventions.

HLTH 311 : Infectious Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Human infectious disease risk factors; bacterial, viral, and parasitic agents; pathology, diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control; communicable, vector-borne, zoonotic, and bioterror diseases of public health.

HLTH 322 : Environmental Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Environmental factors as determinants of human health: ecosystem and population dynamics; biological, chemical, and physical hazards; risk assessment; economic, political, cultural, and genetic factors.

HLTH 330 : Principles and Practices of Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the health promotion profession, emphasizing current issues, professional preparation and employment, as well as the philosophy and foundations of professional practice in various settings.

HLTH 345 : Principles of Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation and control of epidemics.

2. Complete one of the following tracks:

a. *Environmental/Occupational Health Track* | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energectics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 422 : Disaster Response and Emergency Preparedness. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 311, 420.
DESCRIPTION: Key elements of public health preparedness and response to the variety of natural, technological, and man-made disasters occurring routinely on a global basis.

HLTH 424 : Occupational Health and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 420.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth focus on workplace health and safety through a multidisciplinary approach to the anticipation, recognition, evaluation, and prevention and control of workplace-related illnesses and injuries.

MATH 110 : College Algebra. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 97 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

MMBIO 221 : General Microbiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Any chemistry course and any biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control.
NOTE: Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

MMBIO 222 : General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221 or concurrent enrollment.

2. Complete 15 hours from the following:

CHEM 223 : Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6)
OFFERED: F, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences.

CHEM 285 : Introductory Bio-organic Chemistry. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of organic chemistry and biochemistry relating to biomolecule structure and function.

CH EN 411 : Air Pollution Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years
PREREQUISITE: Ch En 273 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and effects of air pollution; standards, criteria, and legislation; dispersion, meteorology, and atmospheric chemistry. Includes design project and use of impact statements.

GEOG 101 : Global Environment: Understanding Physical Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

GEOG 303 : Biogeography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Broad-scale distribution of plants and animals. Theoretical and practical applications to conservation and effects of global environmental change.

HLTH 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 451, 457, 482, 485.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

MMBIO 361 : Infection and Immunity. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105; PDBio 120 or MMBio 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Principles of infectious organisms (principally bacteria and viruses), the diseases they cause, and the role of host immune responses in health and disease.

MMBIO 417 : Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Bio 100 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases. Laboratory included.

MMBIO 465 : Virology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 361 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Basic principles of virology, emphasizing selected molecular aspects of virus life cycles and disease processes.

NDFS 361 : Food Microbiology. (3:2:3)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 221, 222; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenic and spoilage microorganisms in foods and their control. Beneficial microorganisms in food systems. Influence of the food system on growth and survival of microorganisms.

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

Prerequisite: Chem 101 or equivalent.
PWS 150 : Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes

b. *Epidemiology Track* | View MAP

1. Complete the following:

HLTH 439 : Program Planning and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 322, 437, 438.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to needs assessment, program development, implementation, and evaluation in health promotion and public health.

HLTH 440 : Computer Applications in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the basics of SAS and EXCEL focusing on the set of commands useful for data-reporting, data-management, formatting and graphics, and data-analysis. Topics include tables and regression models for epidemiologists (cumulative-incidence, case-control, and incidence rate data).

HLTH 441 : Clinical Trials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to methods used in the design, interim monitoring, and analysis of clinical trials, including the impact of patient exclusions and other causes of incomplete data. Concepts and principles emphasized. Main focus on randomized Phase III (comparative) trials.

HLTH 442 : Special Topics in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include environmental epidemiology, statistical methods in epidemiology, social epidemiology, genetic epidemiology, categorical data analysis, applied longitudinal analysis, survival analysis, and life table methods.

HLTH 443 : Field Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.

PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying epidemiologic methods, including outbreak investigation; surveillance systems and methods; and infectious disease epidemiology to unexpected health problems when a rapid on-site investigation is necessary for timely intervention.

PDBIO 205 : Human Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Body systems and influence of heredity.
NOTE: For nonbiology majors.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

2. Complete one of the following courses:
MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

MATH 119 : Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus.
NOTE: For students in the College of Life Sciences and the Marriott School of Management.

3. Complete 14 hours from the following:
C S 100 : Fundamentals of Computing and Information. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Computing, information structures, programming principles, Internet, World Wide Web, text, spreadsheets, data representations for images, sound and video.
NOTE: For nonmajors.

C S 142 : Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Knowledge of algebra.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to object-oriented program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 424 : Occupational Health and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 420.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth focus on workplace health and safety through a multidisciplinary approach to the anticipation, recognition, evaluation, and prevention and control of workplace-related illnesses and injuries.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

HLTH 491R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
DESCRIPTION: Collaborate with professors on mentoring grants or other public health-related research

and initiatives.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 365 : Pathophysiology. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 305 or 362.
DESCRIPTION: Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances in normal control and activities of body's organs and organ systems.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

SOC 300 : Methods of Research in Sociology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Soc 111 or 112 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Tools of social research; survey, experimentation, content analysis, secondary analysis, qualitative research, evaluation research, data processing and analysis, and report writing.

STAT 224 : Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2)
OFFERED: F 2nd block; W 2nd block.
PREREQUISITE: Stat 124.
DESCRIPTION: Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic Procs; Proc MEAN, SORT, TABULATE, SQL, and REPORT; ODS; simple MACROS.

STAT 334 : Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

STAT 336 : Statistical Methods 1. (6:3:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221, Math 113.
DESCRIPTION: Estimation and hypothesis testing, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

STAT 337 : Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 336.
DESCRIPTION: Single-factor analysis of variance; multifactor analysis of variance; analysis of factor-level means; diagnostics; analysis of covariance; basic study design; random effects.

STAT 424 : Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Stat 324.
DESCRIPTION: S Plus, statistical graphics, simulation, advanced SAS (macros, Proc IML, and Proc SQL), and database programming.

Note 1: Prerequisites for PDBio 362:

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

Or
PHSCS 220 : Principles of Physics 3. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Electricity and magnetism. Weekly lab.

Note 2: Prerequisites for PDBio 365:

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

Or:
PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

Note 3: Prerequisites for PWS 340:

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

c. *Health Promotion Track* | View MAP

1. Complete the following courses:

HLTH 332 : Technology in Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer software and electronic communication technologies in health promotion.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 437 : Methods in Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332.
DESCRIPTION: Health promotion methods, interventions, and strategies that influence behaviors and advance public health practices within communities.

HLTH 438 : Social Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 437.
DESCRIPTION: Social marketing, including formative research, audience analysis, segmentation, marketing mix, strategies, pretesting; application to health promotion and public health.

HLTH 439 : Program Planning and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 322, 437, 438.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to needs assessment, program development, implementation, and evaluation in health promotion and public health.

HLTH 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 451, 457, 482, 485.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

(6 hours required)
HLTH 498 : Career Preparation in Health Promotion. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 335, 437, 438, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for employment in health promotion within public health settings, graduate school, and the certified health education specialist exam.
NOTE: For senior-level public health education majors within six-months of graduation.

2. Complete 16 hours from the following (a minimum of six hours must be taken from departmental courses):

BUS M 340 : Marketing Management. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of marketing mix.
NOTE: For nonmanagement majors.

COMMS 235 : Introduction to Public Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Philosophy and practice of public relations in business, government, education, and other institutions. Study of publics, media, methods, press relations, and publicity.

EXSC 387 : Lifestyle and Chronic Disease Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Current scientific evidence demonstrating how lifestyle affects disease processes. Healthy lifestyle concepts specifically needed by wellness professionals, health educators, and health promotion practitioners; influence of unhealthy lifestyle as basis for chronic diseases, i.e. cardiovascular disease, cancer, and diabetes.

GEOG 212 : Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 383 : Mind/Body Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on the effect of emotions and attitudes on health: how negative emotions increase disease susceptibility and positive emotions encourage immune strength, health, and healing.

HLTH 403R : Health Problems Workshop. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 422 : Disaster Response and Emergency Preparedness. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 311, 420.
DESCRIPTION: Key elements of public health preparedness and response to the variety of natural, technological, and man-made disasters occurring routinely on a global basis.

HLTH 443 : Field Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying epidemiologic methods, including outbreak investigation; surveillance systems and methods; and infectious disease epidemiology to unexpected health problems when a rapid on-site investigation is necessary for timely intervention.

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

HLTH 491R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
DESCRIPTION: Collaborate with professors on mentoring grants or other public health-related research and initiatives.

(Up to three hours)
NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

NDFS 201 : Nutrition and Prevention of Chronic Disease. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 100.
DESCRIPTION: Role of dietary choices in preventing or ameliorating chronic diseases. Examples of dietary interventions.

SOC 113 : Multicultural America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Diverse cultural heritages in the United States. Cultures studied scientifically will include African American, Hispanic, Asian American, and Native American.

Note: Prerequisite for NDFS 201:

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

d. *Health Science Track* | View MAP

1. Complete one of the following courses:

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 422 : Disaster Response and Emergency Preparedness. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 311, 420.
DESCRIPTION: Key elements of public health preparedness and response to the variety of natural, technological, and man-made disasters occurring routinely on a global basis.

HLTH 424 : Occupational Health and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 420.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth focus on workplace health and safety through a multidisciplinary approach to the anticipation, recognition, evaluation, and prevention and control of workplace-related illnesses and injuries.

2. Complete one of the following courses:

HLTH 440 : Computer Applications in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the basics of SAS and EXCEL focusing on the set of commands useful for data-reporting, data-management, formatting and graphics, and data-analysis. Topics include tables and regression models for epidemiologists (cumulative-incidence, case-control, and incidence rate data).

HLTH 441 : Clinical Trials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to methods used in the design, interim monitoring, and analysis of clinical trials, including the impact of patient exclusions and other causes of incomplete data. Concepts and principles emphasized. Main focus on randomized Phase III (comparative) trials.

HLTH 442 : Special Topics in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include environmental epidemiology, statistical methods in epidemiology, social epidemiology, genetic epidemiology, categorical data analysis, applied longitudinal analysis, survival analysis, and life table methods.

HLTH 443 : Field Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying epidemiologic methods, including outbreak investigation; surveillance systems and methods; and infectious disease epidemiology to unexpected health problems when a rapid on-site investigation is necessary for timely intervention.

3. Complete one of the following courses:

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 437 : Methods in Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332.
DESCRIPTION: Health promotion methods, interventions, and strategies that influence behaviors and advance public health practices within communities.

HLTH 438 : Social Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 437.
DESCRIPTION: Social marketing, including formative research, audience analysis, segmentation, marketing mix, strategies, pretesting; application to health promotion and public health.

HLTH 439 : Program Planning and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 322, 437, 438.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to needs assessment, program development, implementation, and evaluation in health promotion and public health.

4. Complete the following courses:

CHEM 105 : General College Chemistry. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Atomic and molecular structure including bonding and periodic properties of the elements; reaction energetics, electrochemistry, acids and bases, inorganic and organic chemistry.
NOTE: Primarily for students in engineering and biological sciences. Three lectures and two recitation sections per week.

CHEM 106 : General College Chemistry. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 105 but covering most of the topics in a more quantitative way. Detailed treatment of thermodynamics and equilibria.
NOTE: Three lectures and one recitation section per week.

CHEM 107 : General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 106 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretation of data, preparation of reports.
NOTE: Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry.

CHEM 351 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Chem 105, 111; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.
NOTE: Primarily for majors in chemical engineering and the biological sciences.

CHEM 352 : Organic Chemistry. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 351 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chem 351.

CHEM 353 : Organic Chemistry Laboratory--Nonmajors. (1-2:0:6)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Chem 352 or concurrent enrollment (preferred).
DESCRIPTION: Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses.
NOTE: For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455.

MMBIO 240 : Molecular Biology. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 120, Chem 105.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of protein and nucleic acid structure and their function in the context of the classical experiments that have informed our current models of biology at the molecular level.

PDBIO 120 : Science of Biology. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: General biology course designed for biological science majors, emphasizing the scientific method, cell theory, biochemical unity, the Central Dogma, bioenergetics, reproduction, and evolutionary theory.

PWS 340 : Genetics. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: MMBio 240.
DESCRIPTION: Genetic mechanisms, their fundamental nature, interactions, and applications to human affairs. Genetics in quantitative terms. Extensive practice in problem solving.

Note: Chemistry 111, 112, and 113 (as a block of classes) may substitute for Chem 105, 106, and 107.

5. Complete one of the following options:

Either

PDBIO 305 : Human Physiology (with lab). (4:4:2)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Chem 101 or equivalent.
- RECOMMENDED: A general biology course.
- DESCRIPTION: Function of body organ systems.
- NOTE: Not acceptable for physiology and developmental biology, biophysics, or neuroscience majors. Designed for students with basic chemistry / no molecular biology. Students with chemistry/molecular biology should take PDBio 362.

Or

PDBIO 362 : Advanced Physiology. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Biol 240; Phscs 106 or 220.
- DESCRIPTION: Integrated approach to organ system and cellular physiology. Problem solving/calculations.
- NOTE: Requires background in chemistry and molecular biology. Students without this background should take PDBio 305.

PDBIO 363 : Advanced Physiology Laboratory. (1:0.5:1.5)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: PDBio 362 or concurrent enrollment; or instructor's consent.
- DESCRIPTION: Experiments and exercises in advanced physiology emphasizing human physiology. Computer simulations of muscle function, endocrine disease, and human physiology. Emphasizes problem solving and calculations.

6. Complete one of the following courses:

PHSCS 105 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: High school algebra and trigonometry.
- RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 107.
- DESCRIPTION: Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

PHSCS 121 : Principles of Physics 1. (3:3:1)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Calculus or concurrent enrollment.
- DESCRIPTION: Newtonian mechanics. Weekly lab.

7. Complete the following:

PHSCS 106 : Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or equivalent.
- RECOMMENDED: Concurrent enrollment in Phscs 108.
- DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

PHSCS 107 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 105 or concurrent enrollment.

PHSCS 108 : Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3)
- OFFERED: F, W, Su
- PREREQUISITE: Phscs 106 or concurrent enrollment.

Note: Phscs 106 should be taken before or concurrently with Phscs 108.

Recommended GE Courses:

ENGL 315 : Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence, proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

Or
ENGL 316 : Technical Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 150 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Effective processes of written, oral, and visual technical communication, including collaborative processes. Writing for academic and professional audiences.
NOTE: Carries GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication credit.

STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Health Science (Hlth) Courses

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BS in School Health Education (75–80 hours, including licensure hours

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

The health teaching major prepares students to become health educators in secondary schools. Curriculum development, instructional methods, acquisition and evaluation of resources, and assessment are among the skills required. Health educators teach decision making and effective communication, addressing such areas of concern as substance abuse and addictive behaviors, human sexuality, chronic disease, nutrition, consumer advocacy, emergency care, and injury prevention.

Adolescence is a time where habits are being established and attitudes are being formed that will influence people the rest of their lives. The health educator plays an important role in teaching knowledge and skills that will enable young people to cope and to flourish in healthy ways in an ever-changing society.

Career Opportunities

Graduates seek careers teaching health in the secondary schools in combination with a chosen minor. With an advanced degree, career teaching positions at institutions of higher learning become available.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. An approved teaching minor must be completed (approximately 16-21 hours).
2. Complete the following:

HLTH 310 : Chronic Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, epidemiology of major chronic diseases, health costs to society, at-risk populations, population-based prevention, and related best-practice interventions.

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 330 : Principles and Practices of Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the health promotion profession, emphasizing current issues, professional preparation and employment, as well as the philosophy and foundations of professional practice in various settings.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 436 : Sexuality Education in the Curriculum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Preparing prospective teachers to teach sexuality education related to health curricula. Maturation,

family health issues, parenthood, interpersonal skills, and related pedagogy issues.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

NDFS 100 : Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Food-oriented study of nutritional facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

3. Complete six hours from the following:
HLTH 311 : Infectious Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Human infectious disease risk factors; bacterial, viral, and parasitic agents; pathology, diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control; communicable, vector-borne, zoonotic, and bioterror diseases of public health.

HLTH 322 : Environmental Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Environmental factors as determinants of human health: ecosystem and population dynamics; biological, chemical, and physical hazards; risk assessment; economic, political, cultural, and genetic factors.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 383 : Mind/Body Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on the effect of emotions and attitudes on health: how negative emotions increase disease susceptibility and positive emotions encourage immune strength, health, and healing.

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

PDBIO 205 : Human Biology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Body systems and influence of heredity.
NOTE: For nonbiology majors.

4. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:
      CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
      DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

      HLTH 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3:ARR:ARR)
      OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: Major area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

HLTH 381 : Health Education Teaching Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Teacher and student activities required for conceptual learning in health science.

HLTH 421 : Secondary Health Education Curriculum and Practicum. (4:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R, 381.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful, engaging instruction for secondary students in health education; program planning and evaluation; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance. Practicum required.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note 1: Hlth 276R and 330 are prerequisite to Hlth 381, 421.

Note 2: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrolling in Hlth 381 and 421.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

Show all Health Science (Hlth) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Driver Safety Education (16 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

HLTH 444 : Organization and Administration of Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Organization, administration, and supervision of high school driver education programs.

HLTH 445 : Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 444.
DESCRIPTION: Prepares teachers to instruct classroom and behind-the-wheel phases of driver education.

HLTH 446 : Driver Simulators and Driving Ranges. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Simulator and multiple-car driving range methodology, emphasizing operation and maintenance.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

2. Complete five hours from the following:

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 402R : Driver and Safety Education Workshop. (.5-7:0:2)
DESCRIPTION: Current safety education problems.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

3. Students majoring in health sciences may not double-count hours in the driver education minor.

Show all Health Science (Hlth) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Health Education (23 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 330 : Principles and Practices of Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the health promotion profession, emphasizing current issues, professional preparation and employment, as well as the philosophy and foundations of professional practice in various settings.

HLTH 381 : Health Education Teaching Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Teacher and student activities required for conceptual learning in health science.

HLTH 421 : Secondary Health Education Curriculum and Practicum. (4:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R, 381.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful, engaging instruction for secondary students in health education; program planning and evaluation; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance. Practicum required.

HLTH 436 : Sexuality Education in the Curriculum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Preparing prospective teachers to teach sexuality education related to health curricula. Maturation, family health issues, parenthood, interpersonal skills, and related pedagogy issues.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

Note: Hlth 330 is prerequisite to Hlth 381, 421.

2. Complete five hours from the following:

HLTH 310 : Chronic Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, epidemiology of major chronic diseases, health costs to society, at-risk populations, population-based prevention, and related best-practice interventions.

HLTH 311 : Infectious Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Human infectious disease risk factors; bacterial, viral, and parasitic agents; pathology, diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control; communicable, vector-borne, zoonotic, and bioterror diseases of public health.

HLTH 322 : Environmental Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Environmental factors as determinants of human health: ecosystem and population dynamics; biological, chemical, and physical hazards; risk assessment; economic, political, cultural, and genetic factors.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 383 : Mind/Body Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on the effect of emotions and attitudes on health: how negative emotions increase disease susceptibility and positive emotions encourage immune strength, health, and healing.

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

Show all Health Science (Hlth) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Health/Physical Education (HEPE)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HEPE 105 : Healthy Living (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp odd years; Su even years
DESCRIPTION: Scientific evidence supporting the importance of a healthy lifestyle. Students will engage in healhy nutritional and exercise practices.

HEPE 129 : Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

Back to Health Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Health Science (Hlth)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HLTH 100 : Introduction to Public Health. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to public health professions including exploration of current issues, job opportunities, the essential public health services, and an overview of the public health major.

200-Level Courses

HLTH 201 : Contemporary Issues for Student Athletes. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Eligibility issues for intercollegiate student athletes. Skills relating to academic performance and career selection.

HLTH 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

300-Level Courses

HLTH 310 : Chronic Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Pathogenesis, epidemiology of major chronic diseases, health costs to society, at-risk populations, population-based prevention, and related best-practice interventions.

HLTH 311 : Infectious Diseases: Prevention and Control. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: PDBio 205.
DESCRIPTION: Human infectious disease risk factors; bacterial, viral, and parasitic agents; pathology, diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and control; communicable, vector-borne, zoonotic, and bioterror diseases of public health.

HLTH 320 : Advanced First Aid and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

HLTH 322 : Environmental Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Environmental factors as determinants of human health: ecosystem and population dynamics; biological, chemical, and physical hazards; risk assessment; economic, political, cultural, and genetic factors.

HLTH 330 : Principles and Practices of Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the health promotion profession, emphasizing current issues, professional preparation and employment, as well as the philosophy and foundations of professional practice in various settings.

HLTH 332 : Technology in Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Application of computer software and electronic communication technologies in health promotion.

HLTH 335 : Health Behavior Change. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330.
DESCRIPTION: Understanding health behavior change theories for individuals and populations. Practical application of related models and theories.

HLTH 345 : Principles of Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation and control of epidemics.

HLTH 361 : School Health for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Preparing for the role as a health educator, emphasizing skill-based teaching methods and acquisition of teaching resources.

HLTH 370 : Consumer Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

HLTH 381 : Health Education Teaching Methods. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance.
DESCRIPTION: Teacher and student activities required for conceptual learning in health science.

HLTH 383 : Mind/Body Health. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Theories and research on the effect of emotions and attitudes on health: how negative emotions increase disease susceptibility and positive emotions encourage immune strength, health, and healing.

400-Level Courses

HLTH 402R : Driver and Safety Education Workshop. (.5-7:0:2)
DESCRIPTION: Current safety education problems.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HLTH 403R : Health Problems Workshop. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)

HLTH 420 : Injury and Violence Prevention. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Concepts and interventions related to both unintentional injuries and violence.

HLTH 421 : Secondary Health Education Curriculum and Practicum. (4:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 200, 276R, 381.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful, engaging instruction for secondary students in health education; program planning and evaluation; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance. Practicum required.

HLTH 422 : Disaster Response and Emergency Preparedness. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 311, 420.
DESCRIPTION: Key elements of public health preparedness and response to the variety of natural, technological, and man-made disasters occurring routinely on a global basis.

HLTH 424 : Occupational Health and Safety. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 420.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth focus on workplace health and safety through a multidisciplinary approach to the anticipation, recognition, evaluation, and prevention and control of workplace-related illnesses and injuries.

HLTH 436 : Sexuality Education in the Curriculum. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Preparing prospective teachers to teach sexuality education related to health curricula. Maturation, family health issues, parenthood, interpersonal skills, and related pedagogy issues.

HLTH 437 : Methods in Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332.
DESCRIPTION: Health promotion methods, interventions, and strategies that influence behaviors and advance public health practices within communities.

HLTH 438 : Social Marketing. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 437.
DESCRIPTION: Social marketing, including formative research, audience analysis, segmentation, marketing mix, strategies, pretesting; application to health promotion and public health.

HLTH 439 : Program Planning and Evaluation. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 322, 437, 438.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to needs assessment, program development, implementation, and evaluation in health promotion and public health.

HLTH 440 : Computer Applications in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the basics of SAS and EXCEL focusing on the set of commands useful for data-reporting, data-management, formatting and graphics, and data-analysis. Topics include tables and regression models for epidemiologists (cumulative-incidence, case-control, and incidence rate data).

HLTH 441 : Clinical Trials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to methods used in the design, interim monitoring, and analysis of clinical trials, including the impact of patient exclusions and other causes of incomplete data. Concepts and principles emphasized. Main focus on randomized Phase III (comparative) trials.

HLTH 442 : Special Topics in Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.

HLTH 443 : Field Epidemiology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 345, Stat 221.
DESCRIPTION: Applying epidemiologic methods, including outbreak investigation; surveillance systems and methods; and infectious disease epidemiology to unexpected health problems when a rapid on-site investigation is necessary for timely intervention.

HLTH 444 : Organization and Administration of Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Organization, administration, and supervision of high school driver education programs.

HLTH 445 : Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (4:2:4)
OFFERED: W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 444.
DESCRIPTION: Prepares teachers to instruct classroom and behind-the-wheel phases of driver education.

HLTH 446 : Driver Simulators and Driving Ranges. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Simulator and multiple-car driving range methodology, emphasizing operation and maintenance.

HLTH 450 : Women's Health Issues. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Overview of selected health topics affecting women's health status. Primary emphasis on steps to enhance personal health and fulfill divine roles from childhood through adulthood.

HLTH 460 : Substance Abuse and Addictive Behavior. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

HLTH 466 : Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

HLTH 490 : Current Issues in Public Health Education. (2:2.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Health science major; junior or senior status.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary research, literature, and views as applied to public and international health.

HLTH 491R : Mentored Research. (1-3:Arr.:0)
DESCRIPTION: Collaborate with professors on mentoring grants or other public health-related research and initiatives.

HLTH 496R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 451, 457, 482, 485.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience.

HLTH 498 : Career Preparation in Health Promotion. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Hlth 330, 332, 335, 437, 438, 439.
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for employment in health promotion within public health settings, graduate school, and the certified health education specialist exam.
NOTE: For senior-level public health education majors within six-months of graduation.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Health Science Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Health Science Faculty

Professors

Barnes, Michael D.

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AS, Ricks College, 1986
BS, Brigham Young University, 1989
MS, Brigham Young University, 1990
PhD, Southern Illinois University, Carbondale, 1993

Cole, Eugene Charles

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Adelphi University, 1968
MSPH, University of North Carolina, 1979
DRPH, University of North Carolina, 1983

Hawks, Steven Ralph

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1982
MA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MBA, Brigham Young University, 1985
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1990

Heiner, Steven W

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of Utah, 1955
MS, University of Utah, 1962
EdD, University of Utah, 1969

Karren, Keith J

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1969
MS, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, Oregon State University, 1975

Lindsay, Gordon B

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1977
MS, University of Utah, 1980
PhD, Ohio State University, 1984

Merrill, Ray Martell

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Arizona State University, 1994
MPH, Harvard University, 1995

Neiger, Brad Lee

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1983
MS, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Utah, 1991

Page, Randy M

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Southern Illinois University, 1982

Thygerson, Alton Luie

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1962
MHEd, Brigham Young University, 1965
EdD, Brigham Young University, 1969

Associate Professors

Dearden, Kirk A

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Boston University, 1987
MPH, University of Alabama, Birmingham, 1988
DrPH, University of Alabama, Birmingham, 1990

Novilla, Maria Lelinneth Lagman Beloy

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, University of the Philippines, 1986
MD, University of the City of Manila, College of Medicine, 1991
MPH, University of Utah, 1999

Assistant Professors

Coon, Paul Erven

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1968
MS, Brigham Young University, 1972

Hill, Susan Christine

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Treasure Valley Community College, 1982
BS, Eastern Oregon University, 1985
BS, Eastern Oregon University, 1986
MS, Brigham Young University, 1992
PhD, Southern Illinois University, 1997

Thackeray, Rosemary

COLLEGE: Health and Human Performance
DEPARTMENT: Health Science
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BS, Utah State University, 1991
MPH, University of Utah, 1996
PhD, University of Utah, 2000

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

History

Shawn W. Miller, Chair
2130 JFSB, (801) 422-3425

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
151 SWKT, (801) 422-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of History are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

History stands at the heart of a liberal arts bridge between the humanities and social sciences. Historical understanding is thus basic to the life of an educated human being. As such, it is the ideal major for the student who wants the broad educational background for entrance into professions such as law, government service, or business, or who wants a liberal arts education. History can also be valuable training for someone who plans to teach.

Career Opportunities

In recognition of the broad range of uses to which historical education can be put, the field of public history has emerged in recent years. Today people whom others would consider bankers, lawyers, corporate executives, or public servants view themselves as historians—public historians. They are the people with analytical skills provided by their historical education who work outside the university but who consider themselves historians by virtue of the value of the training they have received. A significant percentage of the jobs listed by firms and agencies with BYU's Employment Office specify no major. Many of these will be taken by public historians anxious to serve their employers with the valuable skills learned in their history major.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors
- BA in Family History-Genealogy
- BA in History
- BA in History Teaching

Minors
- Family History-Genealogy
- History
- History Teaching
- Native American Studies

Certificate
- Family History-Genealogy

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Family History—Genealogy (51–68 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following in fulfillment of the university core First-Year Writing requirement:
   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.
   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

   Note: Waivers based on Advanced Placement (AP) or other test scores do not apply to this requirement. Students with AP credit for Engl 115 should take Engl 150, Honrs 150, or Phil 150.

2. Complete one course from the following in fulfillment of the university core Advanced Languages requirement:
   An approved culminating foreign language course.
   HONRS 250 : Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World. (3:3:0)
   Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing skills in arriving at quantitative models for the world as we see it. Some math skills reviewed and some new ones introduced.
   PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
   PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
   DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   Note: These courses, and their prerequisites, impart linguistic or quantitative skills advantageous to historical research.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

4. Complete the following:

HIST 200 : The Historian's Craft. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History within the broader framework of liberal education; nature of history; questions historians ask; skills and resources needed to study, understand, and write history.
NOTE: Required of all history majors.

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

HIST 433 : Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

HIST 480 : Seminar on Professional Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in professional client research, report-writing, family history publishing, bookkeeping procedures, and running a family history business.

HIST 490 : Capstone Research Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Research seminar; critical, analytical, and writing skills in preparation of a senior thesis.
NOTE: Required of all history majors.

REL C 261 : Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
Introduction to Family History (Genealogy).
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 293R : Specialized Studies in Family History (Genealogy). (1-2:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Rel C 261.
DESCRIPTION: Using documents from specific regional and organizational sources to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

: British Family History.
: Germanic/Slavic Family History.
: Hispanic Family History.
: LDS Family History.
: Native American Family History.
: Scandinavian Family History.
: Southern European Family History.
: United States and Canada Family History.

Note: For majors Hist 200 is considered a prerequisite for all 300- and 400-level courses. It must be completed no later than the sophomore year or in the first semester/term after the major is declared. Hist 200 and 490 combined satisfy the university core Advanced Written and Oral Communications requirement.

5. Complete two courses from the following:

HIST 401 : U.S. - New England Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in New England research.

HIST 402 : U.S. - Eastern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Eastern states research.

HIST 403 : U.S. - Midwest Family History Research. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Midwestern states research.

HIST 404 : U.S. - Southern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Southern states research.

HIST 405 : U.S. - Native American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Native American research.

HIST 406R : Canadian Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Canadian research.

HIST 408R : Scandinavian Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scandinavia.

: Denmark.
: Norway & Iceland.
: Sweden & Finland.

HIST 409R : Germanic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic-speaking countries.

HIST 410R : Southern European Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Portugal, Spain, France, and Italy.

HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

HIST 412 : England/Wales Before 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales before 1700.

HIST 413 : England/Wales Since 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales since 1700.

HIST 414 : Scottish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scotland.

HIST 415 : Irish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Ireland.

HIST 416 : Slavic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Slavic-speaking countries.

Note: It is recommended that students focus on one geographical area. Majors should consult with the family history coordinator soon after declaring.

6. Complete one course from the following:
HIST 420 : Latin Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in Latin ecclesiastical and notarial documents useful in family history research, including parish or church registers, notarial settlements of states, probate records, and inventories; medieval to modern periods.

HIST 421 : England Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the British Isles, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 422 : Germanic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the German kingdoms, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 423 : Slavic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Slavic language areas of Eastern Europe, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 424 : Romance Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Romance languages of Europe (especially Spanish, French, and Italian), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 425 : Scandinavian Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of old Gothic script handwriting in Scandinavian areas of Europe (including Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Iceland), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

7. Complete the following:
HIST 482 : Professional Paths and Credentials in Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

8. Complete a minimum of 3 hours of the following:
HIST 496R : Academic Internship: Family History. (.5-5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

9. Complete one course from the following:
HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

HIST 319 : The Family in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 320 : Society in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Common life in Europe from 1500 to the present: family problems, social customs, marriage, superstition, death, diet, work, hardships, migration, and childhood.

HIST 357 : The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

HIST 377 : American Social History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and issues of social history; emphasizing gender, social class, race, and ethnicity.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

HIST 384 : United States Women's History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey course of women's experience in American culture and society from the Puritans to the present.

HIST 387 : Twentieth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural factors that affect twentieth-century native Americans in both urban and reservation

settings, including current challenges facing Indian communities.

10. Complete one course from the following:

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 306 : Nineteenth-Century Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Europe from 1815 to 1914.

HIST 322 : English History to 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

HIST 323 : English History Since 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Emergence of Britain as a great colonial and industrial power, as well as more recent decline of Britain's influence. Emphasis also on cultural developments.

HIST 324 : France. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: French history from Roman times to the present, emphasizing the French Revolution, Napoleon, and subsequent developments.

HIST 325 : Spain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

HIST 328 : Modern Germany. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, military, economic and cultural development of Germany during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

HIST 329 : Austrian Empire. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey (1526-1918) of area ruled by Hapsburg dynasty comprising lands and people of East-Central Europe.

HIST 330 : Tsarist Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Major social, political, and economic developments of Russia from the founding of the Kievan state to the 1905 Revolution.

HIST 332 : Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

HIST 355 : History of Argentina. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Rise of modern Argentina from colonial times, focusing on the dynamic political, economic, social, and cultural developments since independence.

HIST 356 : Brazil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

11. Complete one additional course from section 5 or 6 above.

Recommended

HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.

DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

Majors are strongly encouraged to minor in a field that further enhances their preparation for employment or graduate school. Consult with faculty.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in History (45–62 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 24 hours of history credit must be completed in residency at BYU's Provo campus. BYU Independent Study courses do not count toward residency.

2. Complete one of the following courses in fulfillment of the university core First-Year Writing requirement:
   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.
   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

   Note: Waivers based on Advanced Placement (AP) or other test scores do not apply to this requirement. Students with AP credit for Engl 115 should take Engl 150, Honrs 150, or Phil 150.

3. Complete one course from the following in fulfillment of the university core Advanced Languages requirement:
   An approved culminating foreign language course.
   HONRS 250 : Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World. (3:3:0)
   Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing skills in arriving at quantitative models for the world as we see it. Some math skills reviewed and some new ones introduced.
   PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
   PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
   DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   Note: These courses, and their prerequisites, impart linguistic or quantitative skills advantageous to historical research.

4. Complete the following:
   HIST 200 : The Historian's Craft. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: History within the broader framework of liberal education; nature of history; questions historians ask; skills and resources needed to study, understand, and write history.
   NOTE: Required of all history majors.

   Note: For majors Hist 200 is considered a prerequisite for all elective courses. It must be completed no later than the sophomore year or in the first semester/term after the major is declared. Hist 200 and 490 combined satisfy the university core Advanced Written and Oral Communications requirement.

5. Complete the following core courses:
   HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

   HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

   Note: Majors must complete all four core courses in history at the college level. University core Civilization courses (201/202) offered by other departments are not equivalent. Advanced Placement U.S. history courses are not equivalent.

6. Complete seven electives (21 total hours) from the approved list. Seek faculty advice in choosing electives. Students must not present all their preparation in a single region. Complete three electives (9 hours) by taking at least one course in three of the following areas of study: Asia, Europe, Latin America, Near East, United States, Africa, or the world. (Course regions are identified on the approved list.) Majors are urged to focus their remaining four electives on a single theme, region, or period.

   Note: No more than 6 combined hours of 199R, 495R, and 498R will count toward elective credit.

7. Complete the following capstone course:
   HIST 490 : Capstone Research Seminar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
   DESCRIPTION: Research seminar; critical, analytical, and writing skills in preparation of a senior thesis.
   NOTE: Required of all history majors.

Recommended

Majors are strongly encouraged to minor in a field that further enhances their preparation for employment or graduate school. Consult with faculty.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in History Teaching (67—84 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. At least 18 hours of history credit must be completed in residency at BYU's Provo campus. BYU Independent Study courses do not count toward residency.

2. Complete one of the following courses in fulfillment of the university core First-Year Writing requirement:
   ENGL 150 : Writing and Rhetoric. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Processes of writing, reading, and research with an emphasis on argumentation and rhetorical analysis.
   NOTE: Fulfills General Education First-Year Writing requirement.

   HONRS 150 : Honors University Writing. (3:3:0)
   Honors University Writing.
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: University writing and critical reading designed for those with AP English credit or those intending to graduate with University Honors.
   PHIL 150 : Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   RECOMMENDED: Recommended for philosophy majors and minors.
   DESCRIPTION: Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

   Note: Waivers based on Advanced Placement (AP) or other test scores do not apply to this requirement. Students with AP credit for Engl 115 should take Engl 150, Honrs 150, or Phil 150.

3. Complete one course from the following in fulfillment of the university core Advanced Languages requirement:
   An approved culminating foreign language course.
   HONRS 250 : Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World. (3:3:0)
   Math Modeling--Toward a Personal Understanding of the World.
   DESCRIPTION: Developing skills in arriving at quantitative models for the world as we see it. Some math skills reviewed and some new ones introduced.
   PHIL 305 : Predicate Logic. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
   PREREQUISITE: Phil 205.
   DESCRIPTION: History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs.
   NOTE: Fulfills GE Languages of Learning requirement.

   STAT 221 : Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Math 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.
   NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

   Note: These courses, and their prerequisites, impart linguistic or quantitative skills advantageous to historical research.

4. Complete the following:
   HIST 200 : The Historian's Craft. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: History within the broader framework of liberal education; nature of history; questions historians ask; skills and resources needed to study, understand, and write history.
   NOTE: Required of all history majors.

   Note: For majors Hist 200 is considered a prerequisite for all elective courses. It must be completed no later than the sophomore year or in the first semester/term after the major is declared. Hist 200 and 490 combined satisfy the university core Advanced Written and Oral Communications requirement.

5. Complete the following core courses:
   HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
   DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

   HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

   HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
   DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

   Note: Majors must complete all four core courses in history at the college level. University core Civilization courses (201/202) offered by other departments are not equivalent. Advanced Placement U.S. history courses are not equivalent.

6. Complete the following:
   HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
   DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

7. Complete four electives (12 total hours) from the approved list. Seek faculty advice in choosing electives. Students must not present all their preparation in a single region. Complete no more than two electives (6 hours) in each of the following areas of study: Asia, Europe, Latin America, Near East, United States, Africa, or the world. (Course regions are identified on the approved list.)

   Note: No more than 6 combined hours of 199R, 495R, and 498R will count toward elective credit.

8. Complete the following capstone course:
   HIST 490 : Capstone Research Seminar. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
   DESCRIPTION: Research seminar; critical, analytical, and writing skills in preparation of a senior thesis.
   NOTE: Required of all history majors.

9. A teaching minor is strongly recommended.

10. Complete the Professional Education Component:
    a. Complete the following:
       CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
       OFFERED: F, W, Sp
       PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
       DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 377R : Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprint and FBI clearance; major-specific program requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Developing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 378 : Practicum in Secondary Education. (1:0:3)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Implementing meaningful and engaging instruction for secondary students; developing critical thinking, problem solving, literacy, and democratic character; assessing learner performance.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrollment in Sc Ed 276R.

b. Complete 12 hours of one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.

: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Family History—Genealogy (24 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

REL C 261 : Introduction to Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the doctrinal significance, necessary skills, and available resources dealing with family history and genealogy.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 293R : Specialized Studies in Family History (Genealogy). (1-2:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Rel C 261.
DESCRIPTION: Using documents from specific regional and organizational sources to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

: British Family History.
: Germanic/Slavic Family History.
: Hispanic Family History.
: LDS Family History.
: Native American Family History.
: Scandinavian Family History.
: Southern European Family History.
: United States and Canada Family History.

2. Complete 6 hours from the following:

HIST 401 : U.S. - New England Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in New England research.

HIST 402 : U.S. - Eastern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Eastern states research.

HIST 403 : U.S. - Midwest Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Midwestern states research.

HIST 404 : U.S. - Southern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Southern states research.

HIST 405 : U.S. - Native American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Native American research.

HIST 406R : Canadian Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Canadian research.

HIST 408R : Scandinavian Family History. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scandinavia.

: Denmark.
: Norway & Iceland.
: Sweden & Finland.

HIST 409R : Germanic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic-speaking countries.

HIST 410R : Southern European Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Portugal, Spain, France, and Italy.

HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

HIST 412 : England/Wales Before 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales before 1700.

HIST 413 : England/Wales Since 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales since 1700.

HIST 414 : Scottish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scotland.

HIST 415 : Irish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Ireland.

HIST 416 : Slavic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Slavic-speaking countries.

3. Complete one course from the following:

HIST 420 : Latin Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in Latin ecclesiastical and notarial documents useful in family history research, including parish or church registers, notarial settlements of states, probate records, and inventories; medieval to modern periods.

HIST 421 : England Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the British Isles, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 422 : Germanic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the German kingdoms, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 423 : Slavic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Slavic language areas of Eastern Europe, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 424 : Romance Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Romance languages of Europe (especially Spanish, French, and Italian), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 425 : Scandinavian Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of old Gothic script handwriting in Scandinavian areas of Europe (including Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Iceland), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

4. Complete one course from the following:

HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

HIST 319 : The Family in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 322 : English History to 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

HIST 325 : Spain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

HIST 332 : Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

HIST 365 : American South. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and cultural history of the southern states from colonial times to the present.

HIST 370 : Colonial America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Establishment, growth, and development of the American colonies to 1763.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

5. Complete one additional course from items 2 and 3 above.

6. Complete one course (3 hours) from the following:

HIST 480 : Seminar on Professional Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in professional client research, report-writing, family history publishing, bookkeeping procedures, and running a family history business.

HIST 482 : Professional Paths and Credentials in Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

HIST 496R : Academic Internship: Family History. (.5-5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in History (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least 9 hours of history credit must be completed in residency at BYU's Provo campus. BYU Independent Study courses do not count toward residency.

2. Complete the following core courses:

HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

Note: Minors must complete all four core courses in history at the college level. University core Civilization courses (201/202) offered by other departments are not equivalent. Advanced Placement U.S. history courses are not equivalent.

3. Complete 9 hours from the approved list of elective courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in History Teaching (21 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. At least 6 hours of history credit must be completed in residency at BYU's Provo campus. BYU Independent Study courses do not count toward residency.

2. Complete the following core courses:

HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, establishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

Note: Minors must complete all core courses in history at the college level. University core Civilization courses (201/202) offered by other departments are not equivalent. Advanced Placement U.S. history courses are not equivalent.

3. Complete 6 hours from the approved list of elective courses.

Note: The history teaching minor is intended for students who are pursuing secondary education licensure through the DAvid O. McKay School of Education.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Certificate in Family History—Genealogy (18 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The certificate will state the student's geographic area of concentration.

Certificate Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

2. Complete one course from the following:
   HIST 420 : Latin Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in Latin ecclesiastical and notarial documents useful in family history research, including parish or church registers, notarial settlements of states, probate records, and inventories; medieval to modern periods.

   HIST 421 : England Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the British Isles, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

   HIST 422 : Germanic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the German kingdoms, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

   HIST 423 : Slavic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Slavic language areas of Eastern Europe, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

   HIST 424 : Romance Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Romance languages of Europe (especially Spanish, French, and Italian), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

   HIST 425 : Scandinavian Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of old Gothic script handwriting in Scandinavian areas of Europe (including Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Iceland), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

3. Complete 6 hours from the following:
   HIST 401 : U.S. - New England Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in New England research.

   HIST 402 : U.S. - Eastern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Eastern states research.

   HIST 403 : U.S. - Midwest Family History Research. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Midwestern states research.

HIST 404 : U.S. - Southern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Southern states research.

HIST 405 : U.S. - Native American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Native American research.

HIST 406R : Canadian Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Canadian research.

HIST 408R : Scandinavian Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scandinavia.

: Denmark.
: Norway & Iceland.
: Sweden & Finland.

HIST 409R : Germanic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic-speaking countries.

HIST 410R : Southern European Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Portugal, Spain, France, and Italy.

HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

HIST 412 : England/Wales Before 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales before 1700.

HIST 413 : England/Wales Since 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales since 1700.

HIST 414 : Scottish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scotland.

HIST 415 : Irish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Ireland.

HIST 416 : Slavic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Slavic-speaking countries.

4. Complete 6 hours from the following:

HIST 480 : Seminar on Professional Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in professional client research, report-writing, family history publishing, bookkeeping procedures, and running a family history business.

HIST 481R : Directed Research in Family History. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Student research directed by faculty member on family history topic of mutual interest.

HIST 482 : Professional Paths and Credentials in Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

HIST 496R : Academic Internship: Family History. (.5-5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

or a general history course in the geographic area of specialization.

Note: The certificate program can help prepare for certification or accreditation but should not be confused with these two separate, private methods of qualifying professional genealogists.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

History (Hist)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HIST 190R : Thetean Publication. (2:0:2)
OFFERED: W on block
PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Editing, production, and publication of student academic journal "The Thetean."

: Thetean Editing.
: Thetean Production.

HIST 199R : Academic Internship. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent
DESCRIPTION: Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200-Level Courses

HIST 200 : The Historian's Craft. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: History within the broader framework of liberal education; nature of history; questions historians ask; skills and resources needed to study, understand, and write history.
NOTE: Required of all history majors.

HIST 201 : World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

: Honors World Civilization to 1500.

HIST 202 : World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201.
DESCRIPTION: World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

: Honors World Civilization from 1500.

HIST 220 : The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent study also.
DESCRIPTION: Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, estabishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, slavery, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

HIST 221 : The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

HIST 231 : Introduction to East Asian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in the history, thought, and culture of Asian societies from antiquity to the present.

HIST 238 : Ancient Near East to 330 BC. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Ancient cultures of the Near East (Egypt, Mesopotamia, Syro-Palestine, Anatolia, Iran) from the beginnings of civilization to the conquests of Alexander the Great.

HIST 239 : Ancient Near East, 330 BC - 640 AD. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Cultures and empires of the Near East (Persia, Hellenistic kingdoms, Judaism, early Christianity, Rome, and Byzantium) from Alexander the Great to the Arab conquests.

HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

HIST 242 : (Hist-NES 347) Arab and Islamic Civilization. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course covering Arab and Islamic civilization; historical evolution of Middle East to present. Overview of modern Palestinian society.
NOTE: Offered at Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies; elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Does not receive GE credit.

HIST 243 : (Hist-NES 349) Jewish Civilization. (2:2:1)
DESCRIPTION: Social science/humanities core course; broad introduction to Jewish self-understanding and history, focusing on relationships among people, faith, and land.
NOTE: Offered at Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Does not receive GE credit.

HIST 244 : Jewish History: A.D. 70 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Jewish diaspora, Jewish life in Moslem and Christian countries; Jewish religious movements; development of Zionism; Jewish communities in modern Israel and the United States.

HIST 247 : (Hist-CICv 304) Greek History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

HIST 248 : (Hist-CICv 307) Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 290 : Nature and History: The Earth's Environmental Past. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Human historical interactions with animals, plants, and landscapes. Global histories of climate, population, whaling, fossil fuels, the car, animal rights, suburban sprawl, eco-theology, environmentalism, ecotourism, etc.

HIST 291 : History of Science. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Graeco-Islamic scientific tradition. Ideas, practice, and social impact from Greek, Islamic, and Medieval European civilizations and science to eve of Scientific Revolution. Examines cross-cultural exchange, transformation of ideas.

HIST 292 : Food and History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: History of tomatoes, potatoes, sugar, and spice. How food and foodways engage broader historical questions and illuminate aspects of human cultures.

HIST 293 : World War II: A Global Perspective, 1939-1945. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Causes, flow, and consequences of World War II emphasizing the American experience at home and abroad.

300-Level Courses

HIST 300 : The Early Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Decline of Rome and the early formative stages of early medieval civilization; analysis of political, economic, and social changes from A.D. 285 to 950.

HIST 301 : The Late Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Europe from 950 to 1350; maturation of medieval civilization; failure of German, success of French leadership; economic, religious, cultural, intellectual trends.

HIST 302 : The Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Major political, social, and cultural events in Italy from 1200 to 1530, emphasizing concept of the Renaissance in modern historiography.

HIST 303 : The Reformation: Age of Turmoil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth-century religious upheaval; ideological, cultural, political, and socioeconomic struggles to mid-seventeenth century.

HIST 304 : The Expansion of Europe, 1400-1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Early voyages of discovery and the actions of Europeans in the wider world from about 1400 to 1800.

HIST 305 : The Age of Enlightenment. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Developments in Europe from 1650 to the French Revolution, emphasizing political thought, science, and philosophy in the Enlightenment.

HIST 306 : Nineteenth-Century Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Europe from 1815 to 1914.

HIST 307 : Europe Since 1914. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: International affairs and political and economic history of major European countries (including Russia) from World War I to the present.

HIST 309 : European Revolutions Since 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Social and political revolutions in European history since 1500. Successful and unsuccessful cases of state breakdown; the Dutch Revolt, English Revolution, French Revolution, Revolution of 1848, and Russian Revolution.

HIST 310 : European Economic History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Economic development of Europe from antiquity to the early twentieth century; impact of the economy on social and political institutions.

HIST 312 : History of Ideas. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Interrelationship of influential ideas and historical events from the end of the eighteenth century to the present.

HIST 314 : European Fascisms, 1914 to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, cultural, and social bases of fascist movements, especially in Italy, Germany, and Spain. Rise to power, family policies, warfare, propaganda, racism, genocide, neofascisms.

HIST 315 : European Jews and the Holocaust. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Attempted genocide of European Jews by Hitler's Third Reich; motives, methods, and implications.

HIST 316 : History on Film. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Hist 201 or 202, preferably both.
RECOMMENDED: Upper-level courses in medieval and early modern European history.
DESCRIPTION: Effectiveness of film as a medium of history; emphasizing works on European history; its strengths and weaknesses compared to traditional approaches.

HIST 318 : European Women's History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
RECOMMENDED: Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: European women and gender from 1400 to the present.

HIST 319 : The Family in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 320 : Society in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Common life in Europe from 1500 to the present: family problems, social customs, marriage, superstition, death, diet, work, hardships, migration, and childhood.

HIST 322 : English History to 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

HIST 323 : English History Since 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Emergence of Britain as a great colonial and industrial power, as well as more recent decline of Britain's influence. Emphasis also on cultural developments.

HIST 324 : France. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: French history from Roman times to the present, emphasizing the French Revolution, Napoleon, and subsequent developments.

HIST 325 : Spain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

HIST 327 : Italy in the Modern World SInce 1848. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, economic, and cultural history of Italians and the Italian peninsula in Europe and the world, including nationalism, church and state, migration, Mafia, fascism, and European union.

HIST 328 : Modern Germany. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, military, economic and cultural development of Germany during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

HIST 329 : Austrian Empire. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey (1526-1918) of area ruled by Hapsburg dynasty comprising lands and people of East-Central Europe.

HIST 330 : Tsarist Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Major social, political, and economic developments of Russia from the founding of the Kievan state to the 1905 Revolution.

HIST 331 : Twentieth -Century Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The rise and fall of the Soviet Union and recent attempts to refashion the Russian economy and government.

HIST 332 : Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

HIST 333 : History of Russia's Women. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to history of Russia's women from 900s through present. Impact of religion, social class, economic change, and politics on life and status of these women.

HIST 335 : Crusades. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Age of Holy Wars in the eastern Mediterranean and Near East, 1050-1300. Focus on both Europe and Near East.

HIST 339R : Topics in Modern Near Eastern History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Closer examination of the history of appropriate delimited topic than possible in general survey course. Topics may include modern Islamic movements, modern Egypt, or modern North Africa.

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

HIST 342 : Twentieth-Century China. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: China's twentieth-century struggles to find a working modernity via revolution: anti-imperial, nationalist, communist, and capitalist.

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

HIST 345 : Japanese Cultural History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Theories and methods of cultural historians: in-depth investigation of specific topics in Japanese culture; may include gender, nature/animals, material culture, etc.

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

HIST 347 : Chinese Cultural History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and approaches of the cultural historian; in-depth investigation of a selected topic in Chinese cultural history. Topics may include women, Silk Roads, material culture, etc.

HIST 348 : Modern South East Asia. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Complex history of the varied nations of this vast area: religion, colonialism, nationalism, independence.

HIST 349 : History of Asian Religions and Thought. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in religion, philosophy, and ideas in Asia.

HIST 355 : History of Argentina. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Rise of modern Argentina from colonial times, focusing on the dynamic political, economic, social, and cultural developments since independence.

HIST 356 : Brazil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

HIST 357 : The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

HIST 358 : Gender and History in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: How gender roles have been defined legally, socially, and culturally in Latin America from the colonial period to the present, emphasizing the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

HIST 359 : Inter-American Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Decline of Europe's American empires, legacies bequeathed to the new republics by their European heritage, and how those legacies have affected relations among the various American republics.

HIST 360 : American West to 1900. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The American West as a place of great diversity. Topics include Native American societies, European colonization, explorations, the fur trade, overland migrations, Indian relations, mining, settlement, and the environment.

HIST 361 : The American West Since 1900. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Pivotal developments in the twentieth-century West, including urbanization, Sun Belt migration, political protest, labor history, Native American history, immigration, water policy, tourism, military-industrial complex, Hollywood.

HIST 362 : France and the Atlantic World to 1804. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: French exploration and colonization; relations with native peoples; colonial societies in the Caribbean, Louisiana, the Mississippi Valley, and Canada; slavery and the Haitian Revolution; persistence of French territories and francophone populations.

HIST 363 : The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American southwest, and Florida, 1521-1821; Mexican period to 1848.

HIST 364 : Utah. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other groups in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

HIST 365 : American South. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and cultural history of the southern states from colonial times to the present.

HIST 367 : Slavery in the United States. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Historical themes and developments of slavery in the U.S.

HIST 368 : Sport, Society, and American Culture. (3:3.0:0.0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Development of sports in American society, emphasizing ethnic and racial groups, social classes, gender, gambling, politics, and social mobility.

HIST 369 : Travel and Tourism in America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: The history of travel and tourism in America to the present. Themes include changing technology, consumerism, nationalism, and social identities in contructing the tourist experience.

HIST 370 : Colonial America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Establishment, growth, and development of the American colonies to 1763.

HIST 371 : Revolutionary America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of the American Revolution, the confederation era, and the framing of the Constitution.

HIST 372 : U.S. History from 1815 to 1848. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Maturation of the early republic to the Civil War era, including the market revolution, Jacksonian politics, sectionalism, territorial expansion, religion, and reform.

HIST 373 : Civil War Era, 1848-1877. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of the war, major military events (leaders, campaigns, soldiers), war on the home fronts, why the South lost, Reconstruction, the legacy of the war.

HIST 374 : U.S. History from 1890 to 1945. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 220, 221.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, and social movements and ideas that trace rise of U.S. as a world power in first half of twentieth century.

HIST 376 : U.S. History from 1945 to 2000. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Movements and ideas that shaped society, politics, economy, and diplomacy of the United States from 1945 to 2000.

HIST 377 : American Social History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Methods and issues of social history; emphasizing gender, social class, race, and ethnicity.

HIST 378 : American Family History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History of American families from colonial period to the present.

HIST 381 : U.S. Religious History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Religious developments in America from colonial times to the present.

HIST 382 : Mormonism in the American Experience. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Social, economic, political, intellectual, and religious environment in which Mormonism flourished; contributions of Mormon men and women to American culture and history.

HIST 383 : African-American History, 1865 to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F alternate years.
RECOMMENDED: Hist 200, 220, 221.
DESCRIPTION: Social, economic, intellectual, political factors; struggle for racial equality; race and gender relationships; how changing ideas of race affect American life and politics.

HIST 384 : United States Women's History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Survey course of women's experience in American culture and society from the Puritans to the present.

HIST 385 : Latinos In the United States. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: The place of Latin Americans within the context of U.S. history. The growth and development of the largest Latino communities from pre-colonial times to present day and how Latinos may influence future policies within the U.S.

HIST 386 : Nineteenth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of various Indian tribes, their cultures, and their relationships with European nations and the United States, including military campaigns.

HIST 387 : Twentieth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural factors that affect twentieth-century native Americans in both urban and reservation settings, including current challenges facing Indian communities.

HIST 388 : Indians in Colonial America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: North American Indian culture, Indian/European interactions, demographic, social, political factors among Indians prior to contact with Europeans through colonization and the American Revolutionary War.

HIST 390R : Special Topics in History. (.5-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Presented by visiting or regular faculty. Varied topics include oral history, demographics, psychohistory, Christianity in history, etc.

HIST 391 : U.S. in Vietnam, 1945-1975. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: U.S. involvement in the wars in Vietnam from both a domestic and international perspective, focusing on the conflict independently and in context of the broader Cold War.

HIST 392 : U.S. Constitutional History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Constitutional traditions and constitution making, federalism, and constitutional notions of political equity and social justice, from the colonial period to the present.

HIST 393 : U.S. Foreign Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: U.S. diplomatic history from the American revolution to the present; examines major themes and critical events within both domestic and international contexts.

HIST 395 : Technology in America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Benefits and liabilities of technological complexity.

HIST 398R : Special Topics in Military History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Varied topics in world military history and war.

400-Level Courses

HIST 400 : The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

HIST 401 : U.S. - New England Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in New England research.

HIST 402 : U.S. - Eastern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Eastern states research.

HIST 403 : U.S. - Midwest Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Midwestern states research.

HIST 404 : U.S. - Southern States Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Southern states research.

HIST 405 : U.S. - Native American Family History Research. (3:3:0)

DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Native American research.

HIST 406R : Canadian Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Canadian research.

HIST 408R : Scandinavian Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scandinavia.

: Denmark.
: Norway & Iceland.
: Sweden & Finland.

HIST 409R : Germanic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic-speaking countries.

HIST 410R : Southern European Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Portugal, Spain, France, and Italy.

HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

HIST 412 : England/Wales Before 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales before 1700.

HIST 413 : England/Wales Since 1700 Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in England and Wales since 1700.

HIST 414 : Scottish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scotland.

HIST 415 : Irish Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Ireland.

HIST 416 : Slavic Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Slavic-speaking countries.

HIST 420 : Latin Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in Latin ecclesiastical and notarial documents useful in family history research, including parish or church registers, notarial settlements of states, probate records, and inventories; medieval to modern periods.

HIST 421 : England Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the British Isles, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 422 : Germanic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the German kingdoms, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 423 : Slavic Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Slavic language areas of Eastern Europe, sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 424 : Romance Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular scripts in the Romance languages of Europe (especially Spanish, French, and Italian), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 425 : Scandinavian Language Handwriting and Documents. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Interpretation of old Gothic script handwriting in Scandinavian areas of Europe (including Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Finland, and Iceland), sixteenth through eighteenth centuries, in family history sources.

HIST 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: (Hist-Clscs) Topics in Greek and Roman History.
: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Chrisitanity.

: Greek City-State.
: Greek Political Thought.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

HIST 431 : Public History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: How historical studies influence life outside the academy. Role of history discipline in museums, film, government, business, and historic preservation.

HIST 433 : Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

HIST 434 : Computers In Family History/History Research and Publication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Use of computer programs, CD collections, World Wide Web (www) sites and links, helpful hints in researching history or family history; including programs and techniques for publishing family histories.

HIST 435 : History and the Problem of Narrative. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
RECOMMENDED: Hist 200, 220, 221.
DESCRIPTION: Workshop in writing narrative history. Theoretical writings on the problem of historical narrative; examples of narrative history.

HIST 480 : Seminar on Professional Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Practicum in professional client research, report-writing, family history publishing, bookkeeping procedures, and running a family history business.

HIST 481R : Directed Research In Family History. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Student research directed by faculty member on family history topic of mutual interest.

HIST 482 : Professional Paths and Credentials in Family History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

HIST 485 : Topical Readings Seminar. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Reading, discussing, and writing about selected historical issues.

HIST 487 : Philosophies of History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental problems and types of historical analysis and interpretation, philosophies of history, and work of outstanding historians.

HIST 490 : Capstone Research Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Research seminar; critical, analytical, and writing skills in preparation of a senior thesis.
NOTE: Required of all history majors.

HIST 495R : Directed Research. (3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's prior consent.
DESCRIPTION: Student research directed by faculty member on topic of mutual interest.
NOTE: Research assistants must do additional work for credit.

HIST 496R : Academic Internship: Family History. (.5-5:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

HIST 497R : Honors Readings. (.5-3:0:ARR)

HIST 498R : Directed Readings. (.5-3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

HIST 500R : Special Studies In History. (1-3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
NOTE: Directed by visiting or resident faculty. Check with department secretary for current topics and instructor.

HIST 564 : Sources and Problems in Western U.S. History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, readings, and student writing on historians' sources and points of view regarding the American West.

HIST 565 : Sources and Problems in Latter-day Saint History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, readings, and student writing on historians' sources and points of view regarding Latter-day Saint history.

The

HIST 566 : Sources and Problems in Utah History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Lecture, discussion, readings, and student writing on historians' sources and points of view regarding Utah history.

HIST 587 : Philosophies of History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental problems and types of historical analysis and interpretation, philosophies of history, and work of outstanding historians.

HIST 590R : Special Topics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Western American, religious, family, Asian, Latin American, and Near Eastern history.

HIST 598R : Special Readings in History. (1-3:0:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to History Department Home

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Native American Studies

Many American Indian and non-Indian students graduating from Brigham Young University in studies such as anthropology, English, education, sociology, history, business, and political science will be brought into contact with Native Americans through their occupations.

The Native American Studies minor is designed to supplement students of various disciplines so that they may become more culturally aware of the heritage of American Indians, thus promoting better understanding and cooperation.

The minor has been designed so that students may select classes from a variety of interdepartmental courses, if desiring a general background, or a combination of classes for an in-depth study in a specific discipline.

At Brigham Young University students can major in American Studies with course work designed to emphasize American Indian history.

Make application to or obtain further information from the History Department.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Native American Studies (24 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete at least two of the following core courses:

HIST 386 : Nineteenth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of various Indian tribes, their cultures, and their relationships with European nations and the United States, including military campaigns.

HIST 387 : Twentieth-Century American Indian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Sociocultural factors that affect twentieth-century native Americans in both urban and reservation settings, including current challenges facing Indian communities.

HIST 388 : Indians in Colonial America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: North American Indian culture, Indian/European interactions, demographic, social, political factors among Indians prior to contact with Europeans through colonization and the American Revolutionary War.

2. Complete 15 hours from at least three disciplines:

ANTHR 317 : Native Peoples of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
DESCRIPTION: Indian groups at the time of the European arrival; social organization, beliefs, values, economy, and adaptation to environment.

ANTHR 350 : Archaeological Cultures of North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Cultural developments of North American Indians (Canada, U.S., and northern Mexico) before Columbus.

ANTHR 530 : Great Basin Archaeology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography, history of research, and prehistory of the Great Basin culture area. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ANTHR 535 : Southwest Seminar. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years
PREREQUISITE: Anthr 350 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of ethnography and prehistory of American Southwest. Current issues in archaeological research emphasized.

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.

: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

(Native American topics only)
FLANG 102R : First-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: FLang 101R in same language.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, writing, and culture.

: First-Year Language Study: Akan.
: First-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: First-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: First-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: First-Year Language Study: Basque.
: First-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: First-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: First-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: First-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: First-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: First-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: First-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: First-Year Language Study: Dutch.
: First-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: First-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: First-Year Language Study: Ga.
: First-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: First-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: First-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: First-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: First-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: First-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: First-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: First-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: First-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: First-Year Language Study: Malay.
: First-Year Language Study: Maori.
: First-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: First-Year Language Study: Maya.
: First-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: First-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: First-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: First-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: First-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: First-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: First-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: First-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: First-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: First-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Thai.
: First-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: First-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: First-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: First-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: First-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: First-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.
: First-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: First-Year Language Study: Persian.

(Navajo or Shoshone)
HIST 357 : The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

HIST 360 : American West to 1900. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: The American West as a place of great diversity. Topics include Native American societies.

European colonization, explorations, the fur trade, overland migrations, Indian relations, mining, settlement, and the environment.

HIST 361 : The American West Since 1900. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Pivotal developments in the twentieth-century West, including urbanization, Sun Belt migration, political protest, labor history, Native American history, immigration, water policy, tourism, military-industrial complex, Hollywood.

HIST 363 : The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American southwest, and Florida, 1521-1821; Mexican period to 1848.

HIST 405 : U.S. - Native American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Native American research.

HIST 495R** : Directed Research. (3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's prior consent.
DESCRIPTION: Student research directed by faculty member on topic of mutual interest.
NOTE: Research assistants must do additional work for credit.

HIST 498R** : Directed Readings. (.5-3:3:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

REL C 293R : Specialized Studies in Family History (Genealogy). (1-2:Arr.:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Rel C 261.
DESCRIPTION: Using documents from specific regional and organizational sources to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

: British Family History.
: Germanic/Slavic Family History.
: Hispanic Family History.
: LDS Family History.
: Native American Family History.
: Scandinavian Family History.
: Southern European Family History.
: United States and Canada Family History.

(Native American topics only)
SOC 113 : Multicultural America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W

DESCRIPTION: Diverse cultural heritages in the United States. Cultures studied scientifically will include African American, Hispanic, Asian American, and Native American.

SOC 323 : Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

SOC 390R** : Special Topics in Contemporary Sociology. (.5-3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor?s consent.
DESCRIPTION: Course content varies from year to year.

**Requires approval by NAS coordinator.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all History (Hist) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

History Faculty

Professors

Brown, Kendall W

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, Duke University, 1975
PhD, Duke University, 1979

Green, Arnold H

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: AA, Citrus College, 1959
BA, California State University, Los Angeles, 1965
MA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PHD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1973

Hamblin, William James

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1978
MA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1984
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1985

Harline, Craig E

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1980
MA, Rutgers University, 1984
PhD, Rutgers Unviersity, 1986

Pixton, Paul B

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1965
MA, University of Utah, 1967
PhD, University of Iowa, 1972

Thorp, Malcolm R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1964
MA, Brigham Young University, 1967
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972

Underwood, Grant Revon

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, Brigham Young University, 1981
PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 1988

York, Neil Longley

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, Brigham Young University, 1975
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1978

Associate Professors

Bohac, Rodney Dean

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, 1974
MA, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1975
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana, 1982

Cannon, Brian Q

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1984
MA, University of Utah, 1986
PhD, University of Wisconsin, 1992

Daynes, Kathryn M

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, DePaul University, 1973
MA, Indiana University, 1975
PhD, Indiana University, 1991

Dursteler, Eric R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, Brown University, 1994
PhD, Brown University, 2000

Garcia, Ignacio Molina

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Texas A&I University, 1976
MA, University of Arizona, 1989
PhD, University of Arizona, 1995

Grandstaff, Mark R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University, 1980
MA, Brigham Young University, 1984
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1992

Harreld, Donald James

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1983
MA, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1996
PhD, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 2000

Haslam, Gerald Myron

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1972
MA, University of Utah, 1974
PhD, Brigham Young University, 1981

Holmes, Blair R

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
MA, University of Colorado, Boulder, 1968
PhD, University of Colorado, Boulder, 1972

Kerry, Paul

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1989
CERT, European University Centre for Peace Studies, 1990
MA, Bowling Green State University, 1991
CERT, Universite Laval, 1994
MA, University of Chicago, 1995
PG DIPLOMA, University of Oxford, 1996
CERT, Oxford Institute for Yiddish Studies, 1996
DPhil, University of Oxford, 1998

Miller, Shawn William

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, Columbia University, 1992
PhD, Columbia University, 1997

Pulsipher, Jenny Hale

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1989
PhD, Brandeis University, 1999

Richards, Mary Stovall

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1973
MA, University of Chicago, 1976
PhD, University of Chicago, 1983

Rugh, Susan Sessions

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
MA, University of Chicago, 1986
PhD, University of Chicago, 1993

Ryskamp, George Richard

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1974
JD, Brigham Young University, 1979

Shumway, Jeffrey Merrill

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young Universityâ€'Hawaii, 1992
MA, Brigham Young University, 1994
PhD, University of Arizona, 1999

Assistant Professors

Buckley, Jay Harry

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1994
MA, Brigham Young University, 1996
PhD, University of Nebraska, 2001

Carter, Karen

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
MA, Brigham Young Univeristy, 2000
PhD, Georgetown University, 2006

Choate, Mark Irvan

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Yale University, 1995
MA, Yale University, 1996
MPhil, Yale University, 1998
PhD, Yale University, 2002

Cooper, Glen M.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Columbia University, 1995
MPhil, Columbia University, 1997
PhD, Columbia University, 1999

de Schweinitz, Rebecca L.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, University of Virginia, 1997
PhD, University of Virginia, 2004

Farmer, J. Michael

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Texas, Austin, 1992
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1994
MA, University of Wisconsin, Madison, 1996
PhD, University of Wisconsin, Madison

Harris, Amy

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
MA, American University, 2000
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2006

Hodson, Christopher G

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Northwestern University, 2004

Johns, Andrew L.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1992
MA, University of California, Santa Barbara, 1995
PhD, University of California, Santa Barbara, 2000

Kimball, Richard Ian

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
MA, Purdue University, West Lafayette, 1995
PhD, Purdue University, West Lafayette, 1999

Mason, Matthew E

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of Maryland, 2002

Murdock, Michael G.

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1988
MA, Brigham Young University, 1990
MA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1994
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1999

Rushforth, Brett

COLLEGE: Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT: History
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1995
MA, Utah State University, 1998
PhD, University of California, Davis, 2003

Skabelund, Aaron

COLLEGE:	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT:	History
RANK:	Assistant Professor
DEGREES:	BA, Brigham Young University, 1995
	MA, Stanford University, 1997
	MPhil, Columbia University, 2002
	PhD, Columbia University, 2004

Associate Teaching Professor

Hartley, William G

COLLEGE:	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT:	History
RANK:	Associate Teaching Professor
DEGREES:	BA, Brigham Young University, 1966
	MA, Brigham Young University, 1969

Research Associate Professor

Derr, Jill Mulvay

COLLEGE:	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
DEPARTMENT:	History
RANK:	Research Associate Professor
DEGREES:	BA, University of Utah, 1970
	MAT, Harvard Graduate School of Education, 1971

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature

Michael J. Call, Chair
3008 JFSB, (801) 422-4448

College of Humanities Advisement Center
1175 JFSB, (801) 422-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

General Information

The Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature strongly recommends that StDev 317, a 1-credit-hour course, be taken at the end of the sophomore year or the beginning of the junior year. Because liberal arts degrees provide preparation in a variety of useful fields rather than a single career track, this course is recommended to help liberal arts students focus on specific educational and occupational goals and to identify the career options or educational opportunities available to them. The course will introduce them to the resources needed for accessing information about graduate schools, internships, careers, and career development. Students will learn basic employment strategies, including the steps necessary for obtaining employment related to their own specialty.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Humanities

Major

BA in Humanities

Emphases:

- Art History
- Classical Studies
- Comparative Literature
- English
- Foreign Literature
- History
- Media Arts (Film)
- Philosophy

Minor

Humanities

Classics

Majors

BA in Classical Studies

Emphases:

- Classical Civilization
- Classics
- Greek
- Latin

BA in Latin Teaching

Minors

Classical Studies
Latin Teaching

Comparative Literature

Major

BA in Comparative Literature

Scandinavian Studies

Minor

Scandinavian Studies

Students should see their college advisement center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA in Comparative Studies

For more information see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved
XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Humanities

The Discipline

The term *humanities* refers to the study of human intellectual and artistic creativity and the record of human experience as seen in the arts. It is an interdisciplinary major drawing from history, fine arts, literature, intellectual history, music, foreign languages, etc. In this major the student focuses on the arts as modes of human expression and how the arts combine to give a unique view of what it has meant to be human through the ages—and how they continue to influence us today. Besides teaching the interrelatedness of the arts, the study of humanities emphasizes the relationships between the arts and other aspects of human culture and society.

The major offers students unusual latitude in developing a broad and full program in the liberal arts, as well as developing skills in reasoning, language, writing, and library use—all essential elements for later independent learning as well as for functioning well in society.

Career Opportunities

The interdisciplinary nature of the major makes it an excellent preparation for graduate work in humanistic disciplines and professional schools and also for a wide range of employment, including secondary teaching. Humanities graduates going directly into the work force commonly find professional employment in education, business, government, tourism, and civil or foreign service. Those going on to graduate school usually work toward the doctorate or attend professional programs in such disciplines as library science, law, business, public administration, and medicine.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Humanities (56–86 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

With faculty advisor approval, students will select one of eight emphases:

art history	View MAP
classical studies	View MAP
comparitive literature	View MAP
English	View MAP
foreign literature	View MAP
history	View MAP
media arts (film)	View MAP
philosophy	View MAP

The emphasis area does not constitute a major in that particular discipline—e.g., a humanities major who emphasizes art history does not receive the equivalent training in the history of art that an art history major does. The emphasis area is a portion of the course work devoted to a specific discipline that complements the student's interdisciplinary work in the major (see requirement 7 below).

Program Requirements

1. When possible, honors sections are recommended.
2. Complete the following:
   HUM 250 : Introduction to Interdisciplinary Humanities. (3:3:.5)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Major literary, artistic, and musical forms and their use in the interdisciplinary study of aesthetics and culture and intellectual history. Includes International Cinema.
3. Complete the following historical foundation courses:
   a. HUM 201 : Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
      DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

      and
      HUM 202 : Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
      DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

   b. CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W
      DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
      NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

      or
      CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
      DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention

to representations in the visual arts.

c. HUM 240 : Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

or
HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

d. And two courses from the following:
HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

HUM 261 : Introduction to American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

HUM 262 : Introduction to American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

4. Complete one course from the following:
PHIL 110 : Introduction to Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Articulating, assessing, and defending fundamental positions on topics such as reason, knowledge, science, education, ethics, politics, and religion.

PHIL 213 : Introduction to Ethics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and justification of moral standards, beliefs, and decisions.

PHIL 214 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The experience of beauty in nature, in literature, and in the arts.

5. Complete one upper-division foreign language course selected from the approved course list available from the advisement center. Majors are strongly encouraged to take a literature course in which works are read in the foreign language. Conversation courses, ASL, and music courses do not meet this requirement. The requirement may be met with European, Asian, or Middle-Eastern languages that have a written literary tradition and that are a language of scholarship. French, German, Italian, Russian, Spanish, Chinese, and Japanese are especially recommended, as are classical Greek and Latin.

6. Complete the following:
HUM 350 : Interpretation of Literature and the Arts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 311 or Phil 300; Hum 201, 202, 250; at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses (item 3 under major requirements).
DESCRIPTION: Understanding and writing about literature and at least one of the other arts; critical theory.
NOTE: Should be taken junior year.

(prerequisite: Engl 311 or Phil 300; Hum 201, 202, 250; and at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses [item 3 above]).

7. Complete a core of 12 hours in an area of emphasis from the following: classical studies, comparative literature, English, history, art history, foreign literature, philosophy, or media arts (film) (n.b. philosophy or foreign literature courses taken to meet requirement 6 above may *not* count toward emphases in those disciplines). Students wishing to pursue graduate work in their emphasis area are strongly encouraged to devote their supporting course work (see requirement 9 below) as well to their emphasis. Faculty advisors must approve the student's emphasis area. Courses toward the emphasis area are to be selected from the approved course list available from the advisement center. Exceptions must be cleared by the humanities section head. At least 6 of the 12 hours must be in upper-division courses.

8. Complete two capstone courses from the following:
HUM 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular period or movement. Problems of periodization. Topics vary.

: 12th Century Renaissance.
: 14th Century.
: 17th Century.
: 18th Century.
: Character in 17th Century.
: Classical Period.
: Fin De Siecle.
: Impressionism.
: Later 19th Century.
: Medieval Period.
: Modernism.
: Postmodernism.
: Reformation and Counter Reformation.
: Renaissance.
: Romanticism.
: Victorian Art and Culture.
: Women in 19th Century.
: Women in the 18th Century.

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

HUM 430R : Genres and Forms in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of genres and forms. Topics include epic, tragedy, narrative, historiography, film, relationship of text and music. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Film as Art.
: Historiography.
: Narrative.
: Text and Music.
: Tragedy.

HUM 440R : Themes in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of themes. Topics include Eden, Arthur, Don Juan, Faust, Ulysses, Troy. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Theme.
: Classical Tradition.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Don Quixote and the Arts.
: Eden Theme.
: Faust Theme.
: Gothic and Gothicism.

: Matter of Troy.
: Ulysses Theme.

HUM 460R : Critical Theory and Methodology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical criticism; problems in critical theory. Topics include aesthetics, interrelations of the arts, models of cultural history, cultural theory, and aspects of contemporary theory. Topics vary.

: Aesthetic Theory.
: Art Interrelations.
: Classical Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Cultural Theory.
: Gender Theory in Humanities.
: Mimesis.
: Models of Cultural History.
: Narratology.
: Native Multiculturism.
: Practical Criticism.
: Rhetoric and Truth.
: Rhetorical Theory.
: Theory of Film.

HUM 490R : Seminar in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of problems and major figures in the humanities. Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

(Prerequisite: Hum 250, 350; all historical foundations courses.)

9. Supporting course work: an 8–9 hour block of course work that supports the student's education and career goals. The block of courses must be coherent and must be approved in writing by the student's faculty advisor. The following are possibilities:
   a. Students wishing to provide greater focus to their interdisciplinary work—especially those wishing to pursue graduate work in interdisciplinary humanities or in a particular humanistic discipline—should devote this block of course work to a particular specialty (e.g., a period or area of concentration) or further work in their emphasis area.
   b. Students wishing to combine a humanities major with preparation for *professional schools* (e.g., MBA programs) that may require specialized background or quantitative skills beyond those already received may use this block of course work to acquire and strengthen those areas (e.g., C S 142, Acc 200, etc.).
   c. Any university minor will qualify.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Humanities (Hum) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Humanities (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:

HUM 201 : Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

HUM 202 : Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

HUM 250 : Introduction to Interdisciplinary Humanities. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Major literary, artistic, and musical forms and their use in the interdisciplinary study of aesthetics and culture and intellectual history. Includes International Cinema.

HUM 350 : Interpretation of Literature and the Arts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 311 or Phil 300; Hum 201, 202, 250; at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses (item 3 under major requirements).
DESCRIPTION: Understanding and writing about literature and at least one of the other arts; critical theory.
NOTE: Should be taken junior year.

2. Complete one course from the following:

HUM 240 : Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

HUM 261 : Introduction to American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

HUM 262 : Introduction to American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

3. Complete one course from the following:

HUM 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular period or movement. Problems of periodization. Topics vary.

: 12th Century Renaissance.
: 14th Century.
: 17th Century.
: 18th Century.
: Character in 17th Century.
: Classical Period.
: Fin De Siecle.
: Impressionism.
: Later 19th Century.
: Medieval Period.
: Modernism.
: Postmodernism.
: Reformation and Counter Reformation.
: Renaissance.
: Romanticism.
: Victorian Art and Culture.
: Women in 19th Century.
: Women in the 18th Century.

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

HUM 430R : Genres and Forms in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of genres and forms. Topics include epic, tragedy, narrative, historiography, film, relationship of text and music. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Film as Art.
: Historiography.
: Narrative.
: Text and Music.
: Tragedy.

HUM 440R : Themes in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of themes. Topics include Eden, Arthur, Don Juan, Faust, Ulysses, Troy. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Theme.
: Classical Tradition.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Don Quixote and the Arts.
: Eden Theme.

: Faust Theme.
: Gothic and Gothicism.
: Matter of Troy.
: Ulysses Theme.

HUM 460R : Critical Theory and Methodology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical criticism; problems in critical theory. Topics include aesthetics, interrelations of the arts, models of cultural history, cultural theory, and aspects of contemporary theory. Topics vary.

: Aesthetic Theory.
: Art Interrelations.
: Classical Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Cultural Theory.
: Gender Theory in Humanities.
: Mimesis.
: Models of Cultural History.
: Narratology.
: Native Multiculturism.
: Practical Criticism.
: Rhetoric and Truth.
: Rhetorical Theory.
: Theory of Film.

HUM 490R : Seminar in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of problems and major figures in the humanities. Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

4. Complete the GE Advanced Languages requirement using the foreign language option. (Please note that ASL does not meet this requirement for the humanities minor. For the rationale, see item 5 under humanities major.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Humanities (Hum) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Humanities (Hum)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

HUM 101 : An Introduction to the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Study of the arts emphasizing forms and relationships, the development of critical skills, and an awareness of traditional humanistic values.

200-Level Courses

HUM 201 : Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

: Honors Western Humanities 1: Antiquity to Renaissance.

HUM 202 : Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

: Honors Western Humanities 2: Renaissance to the Present.

HUM 240 : Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

HUM 250 : Introduction to Interdisciplinary Humanities. (3:3:.5)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Major literary, artistic, and musical forms and their use in the interdisciplinary study of aesthetics and culture and intellectual history. Includes International Cinema.

HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

HUM 261 : Introduction to American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

: Honors American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876.

HUM 262 : Introduction to American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

: Honors American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present.

HUM 270R : European Humanities and the Arts. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
NOTE: Only offered on Study Abroad programs.

HUM 290R : Special Studies in the Humanities. (.5-3:0:0)

300-Level Courses

HUM 350 : Interpretation of Literature and the Arts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 311 or Phil 300; Hum 201, 202, 250; at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses (item 3 under major requirements).
DESCRIPTION: Understanding and writing about literature and at least one of the other arts; critical theory.
NOTE: Should be taken junior year.

HUM 399R : Academic Internship. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: 12 hours of historical foundation courses in humanities; humanities major or minor; Hum 350.
DESCRIPTION: Combined study-work experience related to the humanities major (museums, government agencies, publishing firms, etc.).

400-Level Courses

HUM 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular period or movement. Problems of periodization. Topics vary.

: 12th Century Renaissance.
: 14th Century.
: 17th Century.
: 18th Century.
: Character in 17th Century.
: Classical Period.
: Fin De Siecle.
: Impressionism.
: Later 19th Century.
: Medieval Period.
: Modernism.
: Postmodernism.
: Reformation and Counter Reformation.
: Renaissance.
: Romanticism.
: Victorian Art and Culture.
: Women in 19th Century.
: Women in the 18th Century.

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

HUM 430R : Genres and Forms in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of genres and forms. Topics include epic, tragedy, narrative, historiography, film, relationship of text and music. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Film as Art.
: Historiography.
: Narrative.
: Text and Music.
: Tragedy.

HUM 440R : Themes in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of themes. Topics include Eden, Arthur, Don Juan, Faust, Ulysses, Troy. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Theme.
: Classical Tradition.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Don Quixote and the Arts.
: Eden Theme.
: Faust Theme.
: Gothic and Gothicism.
: Matter of Troy.
: Ulysses Theme.

HUM 460R : Critical Theory and Methodology. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Theoretical and practical criticism; problems in critical theory. Topics include aesthetics, interrelations of the arts, models of cultural history, cultural theory, and aspects of contemporary theory. Topics vary.

: Aesthetic Theory.
: Art Interrelations.
: Classical Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Cultural Theory.
: Gender Theory in Humanities.
: Mimesis.
: Models of Cultural History.
: Narratology.
: Native Multiculturism.
: Practical Criticism.
: Rhetoric and Truth.
: Rhetorical Theory.
: Theory of Film.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

HUM 490R : Seminar in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of problems and major figures in the humanities. Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

HUM 495R : Directed Readings. (.5-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: contract and instructor's consent.

HUM 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Classics

The Discipline

Classical Studies examine ancient Greek and Roman cultures—their languages, literature, history, religion, art, and philosophy.

The major offers essential knowledge of philology, ancient history, archaeology, biblical studies, and the literary tradition of Western Europe, as well as traditional grounding in the Classics. Students acquire important foreign-language study skills that include careful reading, thoughtful writing, and persuasive speaking. Latin is the mother language not only of Italian, French, and Spanish, but in a real sense of English as well. Its study will especially enhance one's understanding of English vocabulary, grammar, and rhetorical structure.

Greek and Roman History. Classics has the responsibility for staffing and administering offerings in Greek and Roman history. Courses in these fields are offered under Classical Civilization, Classics, Greek, and Latin. Some of these courses are cross-listed with history, and several may count toward a history major. See the History section of this catalog for details.

Classical Civilization. Classical Civilization courses presuppose no knowledge of the Greek or Latin languages and are open to all students. They are especially recommended for those who want to understand the ancient traditions underlying modern culture.

Career Opportunities

Majors in Classical Studies find employment in a variety of fields, including business, education, library science, tourism, and civil and foreign service. They are also excellent candidates for graduate work in other humanities-related disciplines and professional schools (law, business, and medicine).

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Classical Studies: Classical Civilization Emphasis (47–63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Emphasizes Classical Civilization, with work in either Greek or Latin language.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:
   CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
   NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

   CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

2. Complete the following:
   CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

   CL CV 304 : (Cl Cv-Hist 247) Greek History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

   CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   CL CV 245 : Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W odd years.
   DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
   NOTE: All readings in English.

   CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
   NOTE: All readings in English.

4. Complete one of the following options:
   a. Complete the following:
      GREEK 101 : First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)
      OFFERED: F

      GREEK 102 : First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
      OFFERED: W

GREEK 201 : Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 102.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

GREEK 301 : Classical Greek Poetry: Homer's, *Iliad*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 302 : Classical Greek Prose. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

b. Complete the following:
1. Complete one of the following options:

Either

LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

Or

LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

2. Complete the following:

LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

Note: Greek 101, 102 and Latin 101, 102, 111 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

5. Complete six hours from the following in the same language as above:

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

GREEK 430 : Herodotus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 431 : Homer's *Odyssey*. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 433 : Thucydides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 434 : Sophocles and Euripides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 435 : Greek Lyric Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 436 : Plato. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of Greek text of selected dialogues by Plato (e.g., *The Republic, Meno, Protagoras)*.

GREEK 437 : Attic Orators. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 490R : Topics in Greek Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

LATIN 411R : Latin Vulgate and Early Christian Latin Texts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Latin Vulgate and selections from other early Christian Latin texts.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 432 : Ovid. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres

(e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Note: Greek 411R and Latin 411R may be taken only once.

6. Complete two courses from the following options:

CL CV 261 : Greek and Roman Civilization and Literature in Film. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Literature and civilization of ancient Greece and Rome as depicted in modern film with attendant problems of accuracy and historicity.

CL CV 310 : Classical Archaeology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major excavations and antiquities of the Mediterranean region illustrating Greco-Roman history.

CL CV 340R : Topics in Classical Literature and Civilization. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Classical literary genres; rhetorical, philosophical, and historical writings; relationships of art and literature; or the classical tradition in the Middle Ages and Renaissance. Topics vary.

: Augustan Rome.
: Christianity and the Empire.
: Classic Historiography.
: Early Rome.
: Greek Ethical Thought.
: Greek Historians.
: Greek Political Thought.
: Greek Tragedy.
: Latin Literature in Middle America.
: Roman Art and Culture.
: Roman Historians.
: Roman Religion.
: The Etruscans.
: Troy in Art and Literature.
: Women in Antiquity.

CL CV 355 : (ClCv-Engl) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.
: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Classical Civilization (Cl Cv) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Classical Studies: Classics Emphasis (47–63 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Emphasizes Greek and Latin literature and language, with some work in Classical Civilization.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:

   CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
   NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

   CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

   CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

2. Complete the following:

   GREEK 101 : First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F

   GREEK 102 : First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W

   GREEK 201 : Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Greek 102.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

   GREEK 301 : Classical Greek Poetry: Homer's, *Iliad*. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

   GREEK 302 : Classical Greek Prose. (3:3:3)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

   Note: Greek 101, 102 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

3. Complete one of the following options:

   Either

   LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F

   LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

Or

LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

Note: Latin 101, 102 or 111 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

4. Complete the following:

LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

5. Complete one course from the following:

CL CV 245 : Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

6. Complete one course from the following:

CL CV 304 : (Cl Cv-Hist 247) Greek History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

7. Complete one course from the following:

GREEK 401 : Greek Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Exercises in composing Greek prose.

LATIN 401 : Latin Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302 or concurrent enrollment.

8. Complete four additional courses (at least one Greek and one Latin) from the following:
Any 400-level course in Greek or Latin.

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.
: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

Note: Greek 411R and Latin 411R may be taken only once.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Classics (Clscs) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Classical Studies: Greek Emphasis (37–45 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Emphasizes Greek language and literature, with some work in Greek civilization.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:

CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

2. Complete the following:

CL CV 245 : Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

CL CV 304 : (Cl Cv-Hist 247) Greek History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

GREEK 101 : First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

GREEK 102 : First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W

GREEK 201 : Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 102.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

GREEK 301 : Classical Greek Poetry: Homer's, *Iliad*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 302 : Classical Greek Prose. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 401 : Greek Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Exercises in composing Greek prose.

Note: Greek 101, 102 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

3. Complete 15 hours from the following:

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.
: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

GREEK 430 : Herodotus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 431 : Homer's *Odyssey*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 433 : Thucydides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 434 : Sophocles and Euripides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 435 : Greek Lyric Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 436 : Plato. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of Greek text of selected dialogues by Plato (e.g., *The Republic, Meno, Protagoras)*.

GREEK 437 : Attic Orators. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 490R : Topics in Greek Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Note: Greek 411R may be taken only once.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Greek (Greek) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Classical Studies: Latin Emphasis (37–45 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Emphasizes Latin language and literature, with some work in Roman civilization.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete one course from the following:
   CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
   NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

   CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

   CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

2. Complete the following:
   CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
   NOTE: All readings in English.

   CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

3. Complete one of the following options:
   Either
   LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F

   LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

   Or
   LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
   NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

   Note: Latin 101, 102, 111 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

4. Complete the following:

LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

LATIN 401 : Latin Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302 or concurrent enrollment.

5. Complete 15 hours from the following:

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.
: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

LATIN 411R : Latin Vulgate and Early Christian Latin Texts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Latin Vulgate and selections from other early Christian Latin texts.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 432 : Ovid. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Note: Latin 411R may be taken only once.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Latin (Latin) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Latin Teaching (78–91 hours*, including licensure hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. An approved teaching minor is required (approximately 16-21 hours).

2. Complete the following:

   CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W even years.
   DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
   NOTE: All readings in English.

   CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

3. Complete one of the following options:

   Either

   LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F

   LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

   Or

   LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
   DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
   NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

   Note: Latin 101, 102, 111 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

4. Complete the following:

   LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
   OFFERED: F, W
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

   LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

   LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catilin*e.

   LATIN 377 : Secondary Teaching Procedures. (3:3:1)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.

PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 401 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills mastery, hearing, speaking, reading, writing, and identification of teacher-pupil activities required for conceptual learning. Lectures, demonstrations, and application of linguistic techniques to practical classroom requirements.

LATIN 378 : Practicum in Teaching Latin. (1:0:3)
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 377 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applying methods learned in Latin 377 in the classroom.

LATIN 401 : Latin Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302 or concurrent enrollment.

Note: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance must be completed prior to enrolling in Latin 377.

5. Complete one course from the following:

CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture--its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

6. Complete 12 hours from the following:

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.

: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

LATIN 411R : Latin Vulgate and Early Christian Latin Texts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Latin Vulgate and selections from other early Christian Latin texts.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 432 : Ovid. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Note: Latin 411R may be taken only once.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component:
   a. Complete the following:

CPSE 402 : Educating Students with Disabilities in Secondary Classrooms. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Issues, policies, and methods in teaching secondary students with disabilities in general education classrooms. Lab.

IP&T 286 : Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1:1:ARR)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications for secondary education settings.

SC ED 276R : Exploration of Teaching. (3-4:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Major-area preadmission requirements.
DESCRIPTION: Field-based initial teaching experience directed at helping prospective teachers experience demands and opportunities associated with teaching secondary students.

: Exploration of Teaching - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Exploration of Teaching: English.
: Exploration of Teaching: Foreign Language.
: Exploration of Teaching: Music.
: Exploration of Teaching: Social Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Art.
: Exploration of Teaching: Biological Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Dance.
: Exploration of Teaching: Exercise Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Family and Consumer Sciences.
: Exploration of Teaching: Health.
: Exploration of Teaching: Mathematics.
: Exploration of Teaching: Physical Science.
: Exploration of Teaching: Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 350 : Adolescent Development in an Education Context. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Adolescent development and its implications for integrated school culture, curriculum design, instructional practices, and assessment.

SC ED 353 : Multicultural Education. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 350 or concurrent enrollment; Sc Ed 276R or comparable major course.
DESCRIPTION: Designing and adapting instruction for diverse learners, collaborating with families, cultures, and communities in promoting and sustaining learning.

SC ED 379 : Classroom Management. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Concurrent enrollment in Sc Ed 377R and 378, or equivalent major courses.
DESCRIPTION: Current theory, research, and application in classroom management; creating positive teacher-student and peer relationships; developing optimal learning environments.

b. Complete 12 hours from one of the following:
SC ED 476R : Secondary Student-Teaching Internship. (12:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, semester-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Secondary Student Teaching Internship - Theatre and Media Arts.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Art.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Biological Sciences.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Dance.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - English.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Foreign Language.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - French.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - German.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Health.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Home Economics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Mathematics.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Music.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Education.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Physical Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Social Science.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Spanish.
: Secondary Student-Teaching Internship - Technology Teacher Education.

SC ED 496R : Academic Internship: Secondary Education. (12:ARR:ARR)

OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Completion of all course work or departmental approval.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone, field-based, year-long experience in teaching secondary students; demonstrating proficiency in all program standards. Seminar required.

: Academic Internship: Biological Sciences.
: Academic Internship: English.
: Academic Internship: Mathematics.
: Academic Internship: Social Sciences.
: Academic Internship: Physical Sciences.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Latin (Latin) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Minor in Classical Studies (Classics option)(25–33 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete 19 hours of course work in Latin or Greek beyond the 100-level.
2. Complete six hours of course work in Latin, Greek, Classical Civilization, or Classics.
   Note: Greek 411R and Latin 411R may be taken only once.

Show all Classics (Clscs) Courses

Show all Classical Civilization (Cl Cv) Courses

Show all Latin (Latin) Courses

Show all Greek (Greek) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Minor in Classical Studies (Greek option) (22–30 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete 16 hours of course work in Greek beyond Greek 102.
2. Complete six hours of course work in Greek, Classical Civilization, or Classics.
   Note: Greek 411R may be taken only once.

Show all Classics (Clscs) Courses

Show all Classical Civilization (Cl Cv) Courses

Show all Greek (Greek) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Minor in Classical Studies (Latin option) (22–30 hours)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete 16 hours of course work in Latin beyond Latin 102 or 111.
2. Complete six hours of course work in Latin, Classical Civilization, or Classics.
   Note: Latin 411R may be taken only once.

Show all Classics (Clscs) Courses

Show all Classical Civilization (Cl Cv) Courses

Show all Latin (Latin) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Latin Teaching (23–31 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete one of the following options:

Either

LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

Or

LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

Note: Latin 101, 102, 111 may be waived with equivalent language experience.

2. Complete the following:

LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

LATIN 377 : Secondary Teaching Procedures. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 401 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills mastery, hearing, speaking, reading, writing, and identification of teacher-pupil activities required for conceptual learning. Lectures, demonstrations, and application of linguistic techniques to practical classroom requirements.

LATIN 378 : Practicum in Teaching Latin. (1:0:3)
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 377 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applying methods learned in Latin 377 in the classroom.

LATIN 401 : Latin Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302 or concurrent enrollment.

3. Complete six hours from the following:

LATIN 411R : Latin Vulgate and Early Christian Latin Texts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Latin Vulgate and selections from other early Christian Latin texts.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Note 1: One course from Cl Cv 246, 307, 340R, 362, or Clscs 430R may be substituted.

Note 2: Latin 411R may be taken only once.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Latin (Latin) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Classical Civilization (Cl Cv)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

: Honors Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature.

200-Level Courses

CL CV 201 : The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture—its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

: Honors Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to Renaissance.

CL CV 202 : The Classical Tradition 2: Reformation to Modern. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Civilization from the Reformation to the twentieth century, emphasizing the heritage of Greco-Roman culture—its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

: Honors Classical Tradition 2: Reformation to Modern.

CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

: Honors Greek and Roman Mythology.

CL CV 245 : Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

CL CV 261 : Greek and Roman Civilization and Literature in Film. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Literature and civilization of ancient Greece and Rome as depicted in modern film with attendant problems of accuracy and historicity.

300-Level Courses

CL CV 304 : (Cl Cv-Hist 247) Greek History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

CL CV 310 : Classical Archaeology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major excavations and antiquities of the Mediterranean region illustrating Greco-Roman history.

CL CV 340R : Topics in Classical Literature and Civilization. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Classical literary genres; rhetorical, philosophical, and historical writings; relationships of art and literature; or the classical tradition in the Middle Ages and Renaissance. Topics vary.

: Augustan Rome.
: Christianity and the Empire.
: Classic Historiography.
: Early Rome.
: Greek Ethical Thought.

: Greek Historians.
: Greek Political Thought.
: Greek Tragedy.
: Latin Literature in Middle America.
: Roman Art and Culture.
: Roman Historians.
: Roman Religion.
: The Etruscans.
: Troy in Art and Literature.
: Women in Antiquity.

CL CV 355 : (ClCv-Engl) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

CL CV 363 : Judaism and Christianity in the Classical Near East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and cultural contexts of early Judaism and Christianity; analysis of major Jewish and Christian texts produced in classical Near East; methodological emphasis.

CL CV 399R : Acadmic Internship in Classics. (1-9:0:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: 12 hours of classics course work (Latin, Greek, classical civilization, classcis) at the 300-level and above; classical studies major status.
DESCRIPTION: Combined study-work experience related to classical studies majors (museums, libraries, international universities and centers, publishers, etc.).

: Library Internship - Classics.
: Museum Internship - Classics.
: Scholarly Internship - Classics.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Classical Greek (Greek)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

GREEK 101 : First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

GREEK 102 : First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W

200-Level Courses

GREEK 201 : Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 102.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

300-Level Courses

GREEK 301 : Classical Greek Poetry: Homer's, *Iliad*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 302 : Classical Greek Prose. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 311 : New Testament in Greek: Gospels. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

400-Level Courses

GREEK 401 : Greek Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Exercises in composing Greek prose.

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

GREEK 430 : Herodotus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 431 : Homer's *Odyssey*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 433 : Thucydides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 434 : Sophocles and Euripides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 435 : Greek Lyric Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 436 : Plato. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of Greek text of selected dialogues by Plato (e.g., *The Republic, Meno, Protagoras).*

GREEK 437 : Attic Orators. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 490R : Topics in Greek Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved
XHTML CSS 508

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Classical Latin (Latin)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

LATIN 101 : First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

LATIN 102 : First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

LATIN 111 : Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102.
NOTE: Prepares students for Latin 201.

: Honors Beginning Latin Accelerated.

LATIN 121 : Latin for Genealogists. (3:3:0)

LATIN 123 : Premedical Latin and Greek. (2:2:0)
NOTE: For premedical and predental students and students in the physical and natural sciences (usually taught in the evening).

200-Level Courses

LATIN 201 : Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

300-Level Courses

LATIN 301 : Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

LATIN 302 : Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Latin 201.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

LATIN 377 : Secondary Teaching Procedures. (3:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Sc Ed 276R; fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 401 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Skills mastery, hearing, speaking, reading, writing, and identification of teacher-pupil activities required for conceptual learning. Lectures, demonstrations, and application of linguistic techniques to practical classroom requirements.

LATIN 378 : Practicum in Teaching Latin. (1:0:3)
PREREQUISITE: Fingerprinting and FBI clearance; Latin 377 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Applying methods learned in Latin 377 in the classroom.

400-Level Courses

LATIN 401 : Latin Prose Composition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302 or concurrent enrollment.

LATIN 411R : Latin Vulgate and Early Christian Latin Texts. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Latin Vulgate and selections from other early Christian Latin texts.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 432 : Ovid. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Classics (Clscs)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

400-Level Courses

CLSCS 420 : Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

CLSCS 490R : Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin or Greek at 300-level as topic demands.
DESCRIPTION: Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

: Classical Tradition in Criticism.
: Classicism and Neoclassicism.
: Classics and Early America.
: Historiography.
: Montaigne & Classical Tradition.
: Rhetoric and Poetics.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Comparative Literature

The Discipline

Comparative Literature is the study of literature in its totality. The Comparative Literature major not only acquaints students with literary study beyond the confines of any particular national tradition but also with the relationship between literature and other areas of knowledge. Combining the synthesizing skills and knowledge related to individual national literatures, the comparative literature major utilizes a wide range of linguistic and philosophical knowledge unique to an undergraduate program. Pursued as a major, the field offers students unusual latitude in developing a broad and full program in the liberal arts, as well as developing competence in reasoning, language, writing, and research—essential for later independent learning.

Career Opportunities

Comparative Literature majors are well prepared for graduate programs in languages and literature and for employment in the foreign service, library science, business, education, and tourism. In addition, comparative literature is an outstanding preprofessional major for those interested in law, public administration, management, and medicine.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Comparative Literature (37–57 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Acquire a thorough knowledge of two language traditions relevant to individual program of study (one of these may be English for students who emphasize the Anglo-American literary tradition)(approximately 16–32 hours). Competence will normally be demonstrated in course work, but an examination may be required. If planning advanced work in comparative literature, students should gain reading knowledge of both an additional modern language and a classical language.

2. Complete a reading list (determined in consultation with a faculty advisor) and submit a writing portfolio. During the final semester enroll in CmLit 497 to complete a written examination on the reading list and to have the portfolio reviewed.

   CmLit 201 and 202 are strongly recommended, in part because the reading list core consists of texts treated in these courses. Students who do not complete a literature-based civilization sequence are at a disadvantage in working systematically through the list.

3. Course configuration must be approved by department advisor.

4. Complete the following:

   CMLIT 310 : Introduction to Literary Analysis and Comparative Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Reading knowledge of at least one foreign language.
   DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary analysis, emphasizing basic issues of comparative literature and prosody and other problems related to foreign language texts.

   CMLIT 342 : Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

   CMLIT 497 : Reading List Examination. (1:1:0)
   PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310, 342, and three 400-level seminars.

   Note: CmLit 310 and reading knowledge of at least one foreign language are prerequisite to all upper-division comparative literature courses. In addition, completion of 342 and three comparative literature 400-level seminars is prerequisite to 497.

5. Complete five courses from the following:

   CMLIT 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
   DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

   : 12th-Century Renaissance.
   : 17th-Century Literature.
   : 18th-Century Literature.
   : 20th-Century Literature.
   : Classics and Early America.
   : Medieval Literature.
   : Modernism.
   : Neoclassicism.
   : Postmodernism.
   : Realism.
   : Renaissance Literature.
   : Romanticism.
   : Symbolism.

   CMLIT 430R : Studies in Literary Genres. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.

DESCRIPTION: Various genres (e.g., novel, epic, tragedy) and problems of genre. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Lyric.
: Novel.
: Poetry and Poetics.
: The Romance.
: Tragedy.

CMLIT 440R : Studies in Themes and Types. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Major literary themes (e.g., Faust, Don Juan, Ulysses, Arthur), types, motifs, and problems of literary typology. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Literature.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Faust Theme.
: Ulysses Theme.

CMLIT 450R : Studies in Literary Relations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interrelations of national literatures and figures and of literature with other areas of knowledge (art, history, law, psychology, music, etc.). Topics vary.

: Asian Literature Traditions.
: East-West Relations.
: Literature and Cinema.
: Literature and History.
: Literature and Music.
: Literature and Myth.
: Literature and Politics.
: Literature of Sensibility.
: Philosophy and Literature.
: Symbolism.
: U.S. and Carribean Literature.
: Vergil, Augustine, and Dante.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

CMLIT 460R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: Classical Rhetoric and Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Historical Literary Theory.
: Practical Criticism.

6. Complete one of the following options:
Either complete a literature course in Greek or Latin

Or complete one course from the following:
CL CV 110 : Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans.
NOTE: All readings in English. Honors also.

CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

CL CV 355 : (ClCv-Engl) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

7. The following courses deal with texts in the original language. These courses must be in addition to previous requirements. Although English courses may be taken, courses must be taken in at least one other language as well. Complete 12 hours from the following:

ARAB 531R : Advanced Topics in Arabic. (.5-3:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in Arabic language and literature.

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 442 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 490R : Individual Study in Chinese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Project approval by instructor.
DESCRIPTION: Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

DANSH 340 : Danish Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Danish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Danish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dansh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

DUTCH 340 : Introduction to Dutch Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Reading knowledge of Dutch.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from the best Dutch literature. Introduction to basic literary concepts.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dutch 101, 102, 201, 211R).

ENGL 333 : The English Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Novels selected according to time period or theme from the past three centuries.

ENGL 336 : The American Novel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

ENGL 337R : Advanced Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced studies in fiction, drama, poetry, or creative nonfiction.

: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Creative Non-Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Drama.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Fiction.
: Advanced Studies in Contemporary Poetry.

ENGL 341 : English Drama: Beginnings to 1800, Excluding Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Selected plays from medieval, Tudor, Stuart, Restoration, and 18th-century drama.

ENGL 343 : Modern English and American Drama. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

: Modern American Drama.
: Modern British Drama.

ENGL 355 : (Engl-ClCv) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

ENGL 358R : Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

: African American Literature.
: Asian American Literature.
: Latino/a American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Native American Literature.
: Post-Colonial Literature.

ENGL 359 : The Short Story. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Critical study of American, English, and European short stories, emphasizing those of the twentieth century.

ENGL 361 : American Literature to the Mid--Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

ENGL 362 : American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

ENGL 363 : American Literature from the Early to Mid--Twentieth Century (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

ENGL 364 : Literature of the American West. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Literature protraying the West and the frontier.

ENGL 365 : American Literature from the Mid--Twentieth Century to Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 293.
DESCRIPTION: Selected writers and literary trends, including postmodernism, from the mid--twentieth century to the present

ENGL 366 : Studies in Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

ENGL 371 : English Literature to 1500: The Medieval Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Principal works, mainly in translation, from Old and Middle English literature.

ENGL 372 : English Literature from 1500 to 1603: The Early Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W

PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Tudor period.

ENGL 373 : English Literature from 1660 to 1780. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Poetry, prose, and drama of the late seventeenth and eighteenth century, including major figures such as Dryden, Swift, Pope, Fielding, Johnson, and popular female writers.

ENGL 374 : English Literature from 1780 to 1832: The Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Blake, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 375 : English Literature from 1832 to 1890: The Victorian Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Includes writings of Carlyle, Tennyson, the Brownings, Arnold, Dickens, Eliot, the Rossettis, Hopkins, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 376 : English Literature from 1890 to 1950: The Modern Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Aspects of modernism from the aesthetic movement to the end of World War II, including the writings of Hardy, Shaw, Yeats, Conrad, Lawrence, Woolf, Joyce, Eliot, and their contemporaries.

ENGL 380 : English Literature from 1950 to the Present: The Contemporary Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 292.
DESCRIPTION: Important literature and literary trends since 1950.

ENGL 381 : Chaucer. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive study of Chaucer's literature and language from medieval and modern perspectives.

ENGL 382 : Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su; Independent Study also.
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres.
NOTE: For English majors and minors.

ENGL 383 : Milton. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: Analysis of poetry and selected prose, including detailed study of *Paradise Lost, Paradise Regained, and Samson Agonistes.*

ENGL 384R : Major Authors. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: American Authors.
: Early British Authors.
: Later British Authors.

ENGL 385 : English Literature 1603-1660: The Late Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252; 291.
DESCRIPTION: English drama, poetry, and prose of the Stuart period.

ENGL 451 : Literary Theory and Criticism 1: The Critical Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.

DESCRIPTION: Historical survey from Plato to the early twentieth century.

ENGL 452 : Literary Theory and Criticism 2: Contemporary Criticism. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Engl 251 or 252.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to issues in twentieth-century literary criticism.

FINN 340 : Finnish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Finn 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Finnish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Finnish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Finn 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

FREN 452R : Studies in Period, Movement, and Theme. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Various periods and movements (e.g., medieval, classicism, romanticism) or themes (e.g., Arthur, Faust). Topics vary.

FREN 453R : Studies in Genre. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of various genres (e.g., epic, novel, lyric, film) and problems of genre in French.

FREN 454R : Studies in Author. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of major French or Francophone authors (e.g., Rabelais, Moliere, Diderot, Balzac).

FREN 455R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists (e.g., Barthes, Genette, structuralism, etc.).

FREN 456R : Francophone Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings from major French-speaking writers from countries outside France, such as Canada, Africa, and the Caribbean.

FREN 495R : Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321, 322, 340, 420, 421; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

GERM 440R : German Literary Periods and Movements. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a period or movement such as medieval, Renaissance, baroque, eighteenth century, romanticism, classicism, realism, fin-de-siecle Vienna, naturalism, expressionism, post-war, or contemporary.

GERM 441R : Studies in German Literary Genres. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a genre such as drama, novel, novella, lyric, or film.

GERM 442R : Major German Authors. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of one author such as Lessing, Goethe, B.V. Arnim, Kleist, Storm, Rilke, Brecht, Mann, Kafka, or Bachmann.

GERM 443R : Studies in Literary Theory. (1-5:Arr.:0)
RECOMMENDED: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340, 343.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists. May include topics such as Frankfurter school, feminist criticism, reader response, or post-structuralism.

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

GREEK 430 : Herodotus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 431 : Homer's *Odyssey*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 433 : Thucydides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

GREEK 434 : Sophocles and Euripides. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 435 : Greek Lyric Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 301.

GREEK 436 : Plato. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of Greek text of selected dialogues by Plato (e.g., *The Republic, Meno, Protagoras)*.

GREEK 437 : Attic Orators. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302.

HEB 431 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the poetic and wisdom literature.

HEB 441 : Postbiblical Hebrew: Mishnah. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the grammar of Mishnaic Hebrew. Readings from various tractates of the Mishnah.

ICLND 429 : Old Icelandic Language and Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 201 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings and exercises in Old Icelandic; introduction to Old Icelandic literature and its influence on later Icelandic culture.
NOTE: Entrourse for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Icelandic language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Iclnd 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

ITAL 441 : Italian Literature of the Late Middle Ages and Renaissance. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 442 : Italian Literature of the Baroque and Enlightenment Periods. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 443 : Italian Literature of the Romantic Period. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 444 : Italian Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340.

ITAL 460 : Dante's *Divine Comedy*. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Intensive examination of Dante's major opus. Lectures in English with bilingual text.
NOTE: Italian majors and minors must read the work in the original for credit.

ITAL 490R : Individual Study in Italian. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.
NOTE: Not accepted for major or minor.

ITAL 495R : Senior Seminar in Italian. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Ital 340 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

JAPAN 441 : Introduction to Classical Japanese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern texts, emphasizing grammar and syntax, and showing differences from and influences on the modern idiom.

JAPAN 444 : Reading Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fictional texts from major twentieth-century authors. Texts primarily in Japanese.

JAPAN 490R : Individual Study in Japanese. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Consent of advisor and instructor.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

KOREA 443 : Korean Literature after 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Literary texts from major post-1900 authors, in Korean, emphasizing reading, translating, and criticism.

KOREA 490R : Individual Study in Korean. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individual assignments appropriate to needs of advanced students.

LATIN 430 : Livy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

LATIN 431 : Vergil. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 432 : Ovid. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 433 : Cicero. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from the works of Cicero.

LATIN 434 : Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 435 : Catullus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 436 : Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

LATIN 437 : The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.
DESCRIPTION: Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

LATIN 438 : Horace. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.

LATIN 439 : Tacitus. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 302.

LATIN 440 : Roman Satire. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

LATIN 441 : Medieval Latin. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Latin 301, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

LATIN 490R : Topics in Latin Literature. (.5-3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

NORWE 340 : Norwegian Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Norwegian literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Norwegian language experience. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Norwe 101, 102, 201, 211R).

PHIL 414R : Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: one philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics in aesthetics.

PORT 441 : Survey of Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Portugal.

PORT 442 : Cameos. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441 or equivalent.

PORT 449R : Special Topics in Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Portuguese literature.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

PORT 452 : Machado de Assis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 451 or equivalent.

PORT 453 : Twentieth-Century Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.

PORT 459R : Special Topics in Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Brazilian) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Brazilian literature.

PORT 461R : African Literature in Portuguese. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern authors from the five African nations whose official language is Portuguese: Angola, Cabo Verde, Guine Bissau, Mozambique, and the two-island republic Sao Tome and Pricipe. Authors include Jose Craveirinha, Mia Couto, Noemia de Sousa, Jose Tenreiro, Castro Soromenho, Luandino Vieira, Pepetala, and Baltasar Lopes, among others.

PORT 462R : Literature of the Lusophone World. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Authors from the eight nations whose official language is Portuguese, plus former colonies and present regions of important Portuguese influence. These include Luso-American and Azorean writers, as well as authors from East Timor (formerly Indonesia), Goa (India), and Macau (China).

RUSS 441 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 442 : Masterpieces of Russian Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 321, 322; 340 or 341 and 342.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of shorter masterpieces in Russian.

RUSS 490R : Special Studies in Russian. (.5-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances.

RUSS 492R : Senior Seminar: Passages and Conclusions. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 441 or 442.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature or language. Content varies; requires research and writing.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 439R : Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: director's consent
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

SPAN 440 : Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mio Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

SPAN 441 : Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spain.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

SPAN 443R : Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

SPAN 444 : *Don Quijote*. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha*.

SPAN 446R : Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Perez Galdos and his contemporaries.

SPAN 448R : Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898, Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

SPAN 449R : Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 441 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

SWED 340 : Swedish Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Swed 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Swedish literature: introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Swedish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Swed 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Comparative Literature (CmLit) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Comparative Literature (CmLit)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

CMLIT 201 : Civilization: Literature 1. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from antiquity to early Italian Renaissance, emphasizing socioeconomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Civilization: Literature 1.

CMLIT 202 : Civilization: Literature 2. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, emphasizing socioenonomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.
NOTE: Honors also.

: Honors Civilization: Literature 2.

300-Level Courses

CMLIT 310 : Introduction to Literary Analysis and Comparative Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Reading knowledge of at least one foreign language.
DESCRIPTION: Methods of literary analysis, emphasizing basic issues of comparative literature and prosody and other problems related to foreign language texts.

CMLIT 342 : Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

400-Level Courses

CMLIT 420R : Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: 12th-Century Renaissance.
: 17th-Century Literature.
: 18th-Century Literature.
: 20th-Century Literature.
: Classics and Early America.
: Medieval Literature.
: Modernism.
: Neoclassicism.
: Postmodernism.
: Realism.
: Renaissance Literature.
: Romanticism.
: Symbolism.

CMLIT 430R : Studies in Literary Genres. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Various genres (e.g., novel, epic, tragedy) and problems of genre. Topics vary.

: Comedy.
: Lyric.
: Novel.
: Poetry and Poetics.
: The Romance.
: Tragedy.

CMLIT 440R : Studies in Themes and Types. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Major literary themes (e.g., Faust, Don Juan, Ulysses, Arthur), types, motifs, and problems of literary typology. Topics vary.

: Arthurian Literature.
: Don Juan Theme.
: Faust Theme.
: Ulysses Theme.

CMLIT 450R : Studies in Literary Relations. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.

: Asian Literature Traditions.
: East-West Relations.
: Literature and Cinema.
: Literature and History.
: Literature and Music.
: Literature and Myth.
: Literature and Politics.
: Literature of Sensibility.
: Philosophy and Literature.
: Symbolism.
: U.S. and Carribean Literature.
: Vergil, Augustine, and Dante.
: Wagner and Wagnerism.

CMLIT 460R : Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

: Classical Rhetoric and Criticism.
: Contemporary Theory.
: Historical Literary Theory.
: Practical Criticism.

CMLIT 495R : Directed Readings. (.5-3:0:0)

CMLIT 497 : Reading List Examination. (1:1:0)
PREREQUISITE: CmLit 310, 342, and three 400-level seminars.

CMLIT 499R : Honors Thesis. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the BYU 2008–2009 Graduate Catalog.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Scandinavian Studies (12–28 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the prerequisite courses for one of the languages listed below or have equivalent experience.

2. Complete one course from the following:

   DANSH 340 : Danish Literature. (3:3:.5)
   PREREQUISITE: Dansh 202 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in Danish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
   NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Danish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dansh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

   FINN 340 : Finnish Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Finn 202 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in Finnish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.
   NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Finnish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Finn 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

   ICLND 429 : Old Icelandic Language and Literature. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 201 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings and exercises in Old Icelandic; introduction to Old Icelandic literature and its influence on later Icelandic culture.
   NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Icelandic language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Iclnd 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

   NORWE 340 : Norwegian Literature. (3:3:.5)
   PREREQUISITE: Norwe 202 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in Norwegian literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
   NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Norwegian language experience. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Norwe 101, 102, 201, 211R).

   SWED 340 : Swedish Literature. (3:3:.5)
   PREREQUISITE: Swed 202 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Readings in Swedish literature: introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
   NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Swedish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Swed 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

3. Complete the following:

   SCAND 430 : Cultural History of Scandinavia. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Scandinavian culture from the Vikings to the present.
   NOTE: Works may be read in English translation.

4. Complete six hours from the following:

   SCAND 344R : Topics in Scandinavian Studies. (3:3:.5)
   DESCRIPTION: Topic varies. Typical topics might be folklore, culture, music, film, emigration, art and design,

political and economic problems, literature in translation, etc. Includes International Cinema.

SCAND 377 : Methods in Teaching Nordic Languages. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Must have an assignment teaching a Nordic language class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Prior or concurrent enrollment in this course required for student instructors of Nordic languages. Focuses on teaching skills specific to foreign language instruction in beginning and intermediate language courses.

SCAND 429 : Old Norse. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Knowledge of a modern Scandinavian language.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and exercises. Readings in Old Norse literature.
NOTE: Returned missionaries from Iceland or those with equivalent experience should enroll in Iclnd 429.

(may not be taken by students who have had Iclnd 429)
SCAND 490R : Seminar in Scandinavian Studies. (.5-3:ARR:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Includes International Cinema.

SCAND 491R : Directed Readings in Scandinavian. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Written plan of study approved by both instructor and program coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Directed individual study.
NOTE: Register by add card only.

HIST 332 : Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

A literature course in a language different from that taken in item 1 above:
Dansh 340 (may not be taken by students who have had Norwe 340).
Finn 340.
Iclnd 429 (may not be taken by students who have had Scand 429).
Norwe 340 (may not be taken by students who have had Dansh 340).
Swed 340 (may not be taken by students who have had Dansh 340).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Scandinavian (Scand) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Scandinavian (Scand)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

SCAND 217 : (Scand-Germ) German and Scandinavian Cinema. (3:3:3)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: A first-year writing course.
DESCRIPTION: Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in Germany and Scandinavia.
NOTE: Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of German or Scandinavian languages is required.

300-Level Courses

SCAND 344R : Topics in Scandinavian Studies. (3:3:.5)
DESCRIPTION: Topic varies. Typical topics might be folklore, culture, music, film, emigration, art and design, political and economic problems, literature in translation, etc. Includes International Cinema.

SCAND 377 : Methods in Teaching Nordic Languages. (3:3:2)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Must have an assignment teaching a Nordic language class or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Prior or concurrent enrollment in this course required for student instructors of Nordic languages. Focuses on teaching skills specific to foreign language instruction in beginning and intermediate language courses.

400-Level Courses

SCAND 429 : Old Norse. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Knowledge of a modern Scandinavian language.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and exercises. Readings in Old Norse literature.
NOTE: Returned missionaries from Iceland or those with equivalent experience should enroll in Icind 429.

SCAND 430 : Cultural History of Scandinavia. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Scandinavian culture from the Vikings to the present.
NOTE: Works may be read in English translation.

SCAND 490R : Seminar in Scandinavian Studies. (.5-3:ARR:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Includes International Cinema.

SCAND 491R : Directed Readings in Scandinavian. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Written plan of study approved by both instructor and program coordinator.
DESCRIPTION: Directed individual study.
NOTE: Register by add card only.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Danish (Dansh)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

DANSH 101 : First-Year Danish. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

DANSH 102 : First-Year Danish. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

200-Level Courses

DANSH 201 : Second-Year Danish. (4:5:1.5)
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading. Includes International Cinema.

DANSH 202 : Second Year Danish. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience).

DANSH 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

DANSH 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

DANSH 340 : Danish Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Dansh 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Danish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Danish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dansh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

DANSH 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Danish.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Finnish (Finn)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

FINN 101 : First-Year Finnish. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

FINN 102 : First-Year Finnish. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

FINN 201 : Second-Year Finnish. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Finn 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

FINN 202 : Second Year Finnish. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Finn 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience).

FINN 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Finn 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

FINN 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Finn 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

FINN 340 : Finnish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Finn 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Finnish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Finnish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Finn 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

FINN 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Finnish.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Icelandic (Iclnd)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

ICLND 101 : First-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

ICLND 102 : First-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills.

200-Level Courses

ICLND 201 : Second-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing writing.

ICLND 202 : Second-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

ICLND 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

ICLND 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

ICLND 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Icelandic.

400-Level Courses

ICLND 429 : Old Icelandic Language and Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Iclnd 201 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings and exercises in Old Icelandic; introduction to Old Icelandic literature and its influence on later Icelandic culture.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Icelandic language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Iclnd 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Norwegian (Norwe)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

NORWE 101 : First-Year Norwegian. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

NORWE 102 : First-Year Norwegian. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

200-Level Courses

NORWE 201 : Second-Year Norwegian. (4:5:1.5)
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading. Includes International Cinema.

NORWE 202 : Second Year Norwegian. (4:5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience).

NORWE 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

NORWE 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

NORWE 340 : Norwegian Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Norwe 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Norwegian literature; introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Norwegian language experience. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Norwe 101, 102, 201, 211R).

NORWE 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Norwegian.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Swedish (Swed)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

SWED 101 : First-Year Swedish. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

SWED 102 : First-Year Swedish. (4:5:1.5)
DESCRIPTION: Basic language skills. Includes International Cinema.

200-Level Courses

SWED 201 : Second-Year Swedish. (4:5:1.5)
PREREQUISITE: Swed 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading. Includes International Cinema.

SWED 202 : Second Year Swedish. (4:5:1.5)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Swed 201.
DESCRIPTION: Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience).

SWED 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Swed 102 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

300-Level Courses

SWED 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Swed 211R or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversational skills.

SWED 340 : Swedish Literature. (3:3:.5)
PREREQUISITE: Swed 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Swedish literature: introduction to basic literary concepts. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Swedish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Swed 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

SWED 399R : Academic Internship. (.5-9:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: department's consent.
DESCRIPTION: On-the-job experience in Swedish.

Back to Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Department Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Faculty

Professors

Call, Michael J.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1971
MA, Brigham Young University, 1976
PhD, Stanford University, 1982

Hall, John F

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1975
MA, University of Pennsylvania, 1978
PhD, University of Pennsylvania, 1984

Handley, George Browning

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Stanford University, 1989
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1991
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 1995

Lounsbury, Richard Cecil

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Calgary, Canada, 1970
MA, University of Texas, Austin, 1972
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1979

Peer, Larry H

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1963
MA, Brigham Young University, 1965
PhD, University of Maryland, College Park, 1969

Sondrup, Steven P.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, University of Utah, 1968
MA, Harvard University, 1969
PhD, Harvard University, 1974

Tate, George S

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1970
PhD, Cornell University, 1974

Associate Professors

Benfell, V Stanley

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, New York University, 1990
PhD, New York University, 1994

Christenson, Allen J

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BS, Brigham Young University, 1980
DDS, University of California, Los Angeles, 1984
MA, University of Texas, Austin, 1996
PhD, University of Texas, Austin, 1998

Macfarlane, Roger T.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1987
PhD, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, 1991

Parry, Joseph Douglas

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1985
MA, Brigham Young University, 1987
PhD, University of Utah, 1995

Soper, Kerry David

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: BFA, Utah State University, 1992
MA, Emory University, 1994
PhD, Emory University, 1998

Sowell, Debra H

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Associate Professor
DEGREES: PhD, New York University, 1990

Assistant Professors

Ancell, Matthew

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1998
MA, University of California, Irvine, 2001
PhD, University of California, Irvine, 2007

Bay, Stephen M

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1993
BA, University of Utah, 1997
MA, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2000
PhD, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 2004

Burns, Mark K.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Harvard University, 2002

Call, Michael Josiah

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 2000
MA, Yale University, 2002
MPhil, Yale University, 2004
PhD, Yale University, 2006

Duckwitz, Norbert H O

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1969
MA, Brigham Young University, 1972
AM, Harvard University, 1974
PhD, University of Colorado, Boulder, 1987

Kramer, Nathaniel Todd

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, University of California, Los Angeles, 2005

Lawson, Francesca Sborgi

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1977
MA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1980
PhD, University of Washington, 1988

Oscarson, Christopher

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1997
MA, Brigham Young University, 2000
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2006

Peek, Cecilia M

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: BA, Brigham Young University, 1987
MA, University of California, Berkeley, 1991
PhD, University of California, Berkeley, 2000

Sederholm, Carl

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AA, Long Beach City College, 1994
BA, University of California, Los Angeles, 1996
PhD, University of Utah, 2002

Stanford, Charlotte A.

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: PhD, Pennsylvania State University, 2003

Tueller, Michael A

COLLEGE: Humanities
DEPARTMENT: Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
RANK: Assistant Professor
DEGREES: AB, Harvard University, 1992
PhD, Harvard University, 2003

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Humanities College (HColl)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

HCOLL 290R : International Cinema. (.5:0:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Exposure to significant films to increase cultural awareness, enrich language acquisition, enhance critical analysis, and develop understanding of cinematic art.

300-Level Courses

HCOLL 396R : Humanities Leadership Development. (1-2:Arr:0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Discussion and practice in leadership and service in the humanities, including planning, decision-making, communications, teamwork, and motivation.

400-Level Courses

HCOLL 480R : Humanities Research Seminar. (1-3:ARR:0)
PREREQUISITE: A written research proposal approved by a faculty sponsor or the seminar leader.
DESCRIPTION: Students prepare to present their individual research at an appropriate conference or publish their results in an appropriate publication.

HCOLL 490R : Language and Literature Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Lectures by scholars in language and literature, with supplementary reading and writing.

Back to Humanities College Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

International and Area Studies

International and Area Studies Advisement Center
Noelani Sanchez, Supervisor
273 HRCB, (801) 422-3548

International and Area Studies Program Coordinators

Ancient Near Eastern Studies, Dana M. Pike
Asian Studies, James A. Davis
European Studies, Scott Sprenger
International Development, Ralph B. Brown
International Relations, Kerk Phillips
Latin American Studies, Christopher Lund
Middle East Studies / Arabic, Donna Lee Bowen

Admission to Degree Programs

All undergraduate international and area studies degree programs are open enrollment.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a BYU bachelor's degree a student must complete, in addition to all requirements for a specific major, the following university requirements:

- The university core, consisting of requirements in general and religious education. (See University Core for details. For a complete listing of courses that meet university core requirements, see the current class schedule.)
- A minimum of 30 credit hours in residence
- A minimum of 120 credit hours
- A cumulative GPA of at least 2.0
- Be in good standing with the Honor Code Office

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Majors

BA in Ancient Near Eastern Studies
BA in Asian Studies
BA in European Studies
BA in International Relations
BA in Latin American Studies
BA in Middle East Studies / Arabic

Minors

Ancient Near Eastern Studies
Asian Studies
International Development
Latin American Studies
Middle East Studies

Students should see the International and Area Studies Advisement Center for help or information concerning the undergraduate programs.

General Information

International Career Center

The International Career Center, located in 273 HRCB (international_career@byu.edu), guides students of any major with their preparation for an international career. The ICC hosts international career-oriented lectures and offers advisement, employment and graduate school information, and networking assistance.

International Study Programs

International Study Programs (ISP) are open to students from all university majors. Students need not be formally admitted to BYU to participate in International Study and BYU credit may be transferred to their home institution.

Study Abroad: BYU's traditional off-campus study programs. In these programs students are able to further their general education; pursue specialized courses in languages, the social sciences, humanities, fine arts, and other fields; gain valuable insights into their own country; and further international understanding.

International Volunteers: A program similar to Study Abroad but with a more significant component of service learning at an international location and under the tutelage of faculty.

International Internships: Short-term, on-the-job apprentice training abroad under the direction of a firm, government agency, NGO, or other such institution.

Field Studies: A research experience abroad for small numbers of students directed by faculty, who generally do not accompany the students.

For further information, see the Office of International Study Programs in the David M. Kennedy Center, 280 HRCB.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

International and Area Studies (IAS)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

100-Level Courses

IAS 100 : Introduction to International Studies. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Academic expectations in the major and career orientation; review of campus resources; faculty presentations.

IAS 199R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Nonsupervised undergraduate foreign internship.

200-Level Courses

IAS 201R : Cultural Survey. (.5-4:2:2)
PREREQUISITE: Performing group or ISP participant status.
DESCRIPTION: Multidisciplinary survey of various countries and regions in preparation for extended experience abroad.

: Cultural Survey-Africa.
: Cultural Survey-Asia.
: Cultural Survey-China.
: Cultural Survey-Eastern Europe.
: Cultural Survey-England.
: Cultural Survey-Europe.
: Cultural Survey-Middle East.
: Cultural Survey-Scandinavia.
: Cultural Survey-South Pacific.
: Cultural Survey-USSR.
: Cultural Survey: Japan.

IAS 220 : Introduction to Development Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Exploration of international development in non-formal education, micro-enterprises, community organizations; hunger, poverty, and other special problems in developing areas of the world.

300-Level Courses

IAS 301 : Kennedy Center Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
DESCRIPTION: Weekly lectures by national and international authorities on world affairs; designed as an introductory class for all David M. Kennedy Center majors.

IAS 351R : Model United Nations Preparation. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Preparation for participating in MUN projects, on campus, in public schools, and at the United Nations in New York.

IAS 353R : Intercultural Outreach Preparation. (1-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Developing abilities to prepare and share international understanding in public and private schools.

IAS 354R : Model Arab League Preparation. (.5:1:0)
OFFERED: F 1st block, W 2nd block
DESCRIPTION: Understanding Middle Eastern governments and foreign policies. Preparation and attendance at the Model Arab League Conference.

IAS 360R : International Field Study Preparation. (.5-9:ARR:0)
OFFERED: F 2nd block, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Cross-cultural field research and survival with a regional emphasis and application.
NOTE: For students preparing for International Field Studies and Internships or Study Abroad programs.

IAS 361 : Post-Fieldwork Analysis and Writing. (2:2:0)
PREREQUISITE: IAS 360R.
DESCRIPTION: Writing course designed to help students write a quality research paper

IAS 369R : International Internship Preparation. (1-3:0:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Orientation on cross-cultural communication, globalization, interfacing with internship providers, culture shock, international safety/health, and BYU policies abroad.
NOTE: For students preparing to participate in an internship, field practicum, or experiential learning experience abroad.

IAS 380R : Cultural Proofs. (1-3:0:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

IAS 397R : Topics in International and Area Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study relating to current world problems.

IAS 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Class must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

400-Level Courses

IAS 421 : Seminar on Japanese Workplace: Society and Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, Su
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent.
NOTE: Required seminar for interns in the Japan seminar and intern program held only in Japan.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

Back to International and Area Studies Home

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Asian Studies

The Discipline

The Asian Studies major is an interdisciplinary program designed to prepare students for careers and advanced study in the specialized field of Asia not provided by a major in one department. In the program, students acquire working competence in Chinese, Japanese, Korean, or another approved Asian language; a broad knowledge of Asian civilization; and a more specialized knowledge in an academic discipline.

Career Opportunities

The Asian Studies major is useful to those contemplating careers in academic areas, private industry, or government service. The import-export field and international services are particularly interested in persons who have a strong background in Asian Studies.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Asian Studies (47–71 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the GE languages of learning requirement in an Asian language.
2. There is a strong expectation that majors will do work in Asia via Study Abroad, internships, etc.
3. Complete the following core courses:

ASIAN 200 : Introduction to Asian Studies: Methods and Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of research project.
NOTE: Required of all Asian Studies majors early in the program.

ASIAN 342 : Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

HIST 231 : Introduction to East Asian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in the history, thought, and culture of Asian societies from antiquity to the present.

PL SC 385 : International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

4. Complete a minimum of 1 hour from the following core course:

ASIAN 495 : Senior Seminar. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Asian studies coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning research and writing skills necessary to prepare and present major senior research paper.

5. Complete one of the following focus history core course options:
   a. China:

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

   b. Japan:

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

   c. Korea plus China or Japan:

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

And one course from the following:

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

Note: Courses should coincide with language choice.

6. Complete one of the following focus language options:
   a. Chinese

CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

And one course from the following:

CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

   b. Japanese

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

And one course from the following:

JAPAN 321 : Reading Modern Documentary Styles. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing reading comprehension, grammar, and vocabulary building.

JAPAN 322 : Reading Modern Short Fiction. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 302 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

   c. Korean

KOREA 301 : Third-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Korea 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, pronunciation, hanja, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

7. Complete 24 hours from the following elective courses (no more than 12 hours may be selected from any one department):
   ANTHR 343 : Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F; W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

CHIN 327 : Chinese Translation and Interpretation. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
DESCRIPTION: Translation techniques, with practice in oral and written translation either from Chinese to English or from English to Chinese.

CHIN 343 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Poetry. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 344 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 345R : Chinese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Chinese culture.

CHIN 347 : Business Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to terminology and format of business communication in Chinese, emphasizing both reading and writing of various forms of business communication.

CHIN 441 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Chin 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 442 : Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 441.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

CHIN 443 : Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915--1949. Texts in Chinese.

CHIN 444 : Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Chin 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

HIST 342 : Twentieth-Century China. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: China's twentieth-century struggles to find a working modernity via revolution: anti-imperial, nationalist, communist, and capitalist.

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

HIST 349 : History of Asian Religions and Thought. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in religion, philosophy, and ideas in Asia.

HUM 240 : Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

JAPAN 345 : Traditional Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

JAPAN 350 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

JAPAN 351 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

JAPAN 352 : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

JAPAN 441 : Introduction to Classical Japanese. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or 322.
DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern texts, emphasizing grammar and syntax, and showing differences from and influences on the modern idiom.

JAPAN 443 : Advanced Documentary Style. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussion of modern expository texts; developing advanced listening skills using authentic materials.

JAPAN 444 : Reading Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321, 322; or equivalents.
DESCRIPTION: Fictional texts from major twentieth-century authors. Texts primarily in Japanese.

KOREA 340 : Korean Literature to 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Korean literature from the earliest times to 1900. Emphasis on basic literary concepts.

KOREA 345 : Korean Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Korean culture. All readings in English.

KOREA 441 : Classical Korean (Hanmun). (3:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 321 or Chin 441.

DESCRIPTION: Reading of premodern, documentary Sino-Korean texts, including genealogy records and the Chosŏn Dynasty Annals.

KOREA 443 : Korean Literature after 1900. (3:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 302.
DESCRIPTION: Literary texts from major post-1900 authors, in Korean, emphasizing reading, translating, and criticism.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

PL SC 353 : China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 354 : Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 386 : Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

PL SC 388 : Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

REL C 351 : Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of non-Christian religions in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

Other electives: If approved beforehand, up to 9 hours of 330R or 399R credit may be counted for overseas work done under one of the following: Study Abroad, internships, collaborative research, or independent field studies.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Show all Asian Studies (Asian) Courses

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Asian Studies (20–36 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   HIST 231 : Introduction to East Asian History. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Major themes in the history, thought, and culture of Asian societies from antiquity to the present.

2. Complete one of the following tracks:
   China Track
   a. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):
      CHIN 101 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
      OFFERED: F, W, Su
      DESCRIPTION: Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

      CHIN 102 : Beginning Mandarin. (4:5:2)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Chin 101 or equivalent.
      DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Chin 101.

      CHIN 201 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Sp
      PREREQUISITE: Chin 102.
      DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

      CHIN 202 : Intermediate Mandarin. (4:5:1)
      OFFERED: F, W, Su
      PREREQUISITE: Chin 201.
      DESCRIPTION: Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

   b. Complete the following:
      CHIN 301 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:1)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Chin 202.
      DESCRIPTION: Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

      CHIN 302 : Third-Year Mandarin (4:5:0)
      OFFERED: F, W
      PREREQUISITE: Chin 301.
      DESCRIPTION: Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially media discourse and reading.

   c. Complete three courses from the following (**Note:** Only one course per discipline area will count toward the minor):
      ANTHR 343 : Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F; W odd years.
      DESCRIPTION: Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

      CHIN 343 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Poetry. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F
      DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 344 : Chinese Literature in Translation--Prose. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: All readings in English; topics vary.

CHIN 345R : Chinese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Chinese culture.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

HIST 342 : Twentieth-Century China. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: China's twentieth-century struggles to find a working modernity via revolution: anti-imperial, nationalist, communist, and capitalist.

PL SC 353 : China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 388 : Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

Japan Track

a. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):

JAPAN 101 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading.

JAPAN 102 : First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Japan 101, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, basic conversation and reading. Includes introduction to Chinese characters.

JAPAN 201 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

JAPAN 202 : Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

b. Complete the following:

JAPAN 300 : Japanese Reading and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture.

NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

JAPAN 302 : Readings in Japanese History and Culture. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Japan 300 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

c. Complete three courses from the following (**Note:** Only one course per discipline area will count toward the minor):

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

JAPAN 345 : Traditional Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W; Sp on demand.
DESCRIPTION: General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

JAPAN 350 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Eighth Through Sixteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 700 through 1600 (Nara, Heian, and medieval periods).

JAPAN 351 : Japanese Literature in Translation--Seventeenth Through Nineteenth Centuries. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from 1600 through 1900 (Edo and Meiji periods).

JAPAN 352 : Japanese Literature in Translation: The Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Reading and discussing selected topics in Japanese literature (narrative, lyric, drama) from Meiji period to the present.

JAPAN 390 : Japanese for Special Purposes. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Japan 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings, video materials, discussions, and projects in content areas related specifically to business, science, and technology.

PL SC 386 : Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

Korea Track

a. Complete the following prerequisite courses (or equivalent experience):

KOREA 101 : First-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Han'gul, the phonetic system, basic grammar and vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 102 : First-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 101 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 101. Phonetic system, basic grammar, vocabulary, discourse, reading, and culture.

KOREA 201 : Second-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Korea 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Further practice in discourse and basic reading and writing skills; culture.

KOREA 202 : Second-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 201. Conversation, basic reading and writing skills, culture. Introduction to Chinese characters.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries.

b. Complete the following:
KOREA 301 : Third-Year Korean 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Korea 202 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, pronunciation, hanja, and culture.
NOTE: First course for returned missionaries.

KOREA 302 : Third-Year Korean 2. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Korea 301 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Korea 301. Vocabulary, grammar, discourse, hanja, composition, pronunciation, and culture.

c. Complete three courses from the following (**Note:** Only one course per discipline area will count toward the minor):
GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

KOREA 345 : Korean Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Selected topics in traditional, modern, and contemporary Korean culture. All readings in English.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

Pan Asia Track

a. Complete 8 hours of a single Asian language (excluding Mandarin, Japanese, and Korean).

b. Complete three courses from the following (**Note:** Only one course per discipline area will count toward the minor, and it should coincide with the language choice if possible):
ASIAN 342 : Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction

and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

HIST 340 : Traditional China. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: From a loose federation of Neolithic societies, Chinese civilization emerges as East Asia's dominant political and cultural force; developments to ca. 1500.

HIST 343 : Traditional Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, and cultural developments to ca. 1700.

HIST 349 : History of Asian Religions and Thought. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in religion, philosophy, and ideas in Asia.

HUM 240 : Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

PL SC 385 : International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

REL C 351 : Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of non-Christian religions in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Asian Studies (Asian)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

ASIAN 200 : Introduction to Asian Studies: Methods and Materials. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of research project.
NOTE: Required of all Asian Studies majors early in the program.

300-Level Courses

ASIAN 330R : Asian Studies Abroad. (.5-5:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Preparatory course approved for Asian Seminar (Study Abroad).

ASIAN 342 : Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

400-Level Courses

ASIAN 495 : Senior Seminar. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Asian studies coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning research and writing skills necessary to prepare and present major senior research paper.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

ASIAN 501R : Intensive Introduction to Asian Studies for Teachers and Prospective Teachers. (.5-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Readings, lectures, individual study, and curriculum development; integration for school teachers of Asian Studies into the curriculum of social studies, world history, and geography.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

European Studies

The Discipline

European studies is an interdisciplinary degree designed to combine advanced-language experience with study in humanities, social science, and/or business. Courses are taught by European experts from across a variety of BYU's academic departments and are intended to develop skills in analytical thinking, methods of interpretation, perceptive reading, competent writing, as well as an in-depth understanding of European affairs. Building on the University Core and GE Foreign Language requirements, the European studies degree is grounded in an introduction to European studies (Europ 200) and 12 hours of European history.

At the junior level, the degree splits into two tracks:

- Track A: 12 credit hours in European society which draws from history, political science, economics, business, sociology, and geography.
- Track B: 12 credit hours of European culture which draws from the humanities, language and literature, art history, philosophy, etc.

At the senior level, students take an additional 12 credit hours focused on an interrelated set of European issues decided upon in conjunction with the European studies coordinator.

Career Opportunities

The European studies degree can lead to a number of excellent career possibilities. With a broad, general background in European languages and area knowledge, graduates are well prepared for careers in international branches of government, nonprofit organizations, international industry and commerce, domestic and foreign teaching, the Peace Corps, the military, and many other professions requiring an expert knowledge of European language, culture, and politics.

The Eurpoean studies major is also excellent training for professional schooling in international business, law, medicine, journalism, editing, advertising, etc. Many previous area studies graduates have chosen jobs in the State Department, Citizenship and Immigration Services, the FBI, and international agencies.

Students are encouraged to double major or at least have a strong minor in another discipline to enhance their career prospects. The combination of European areas studies with another discipline is attractive to employers.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in European Studies (42–58 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the GE Foreign Language requirement in a European language.

2. Complete the following:
   EUROP 200 : Introduction to European Studies. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the major, the core disciplines involved and integrated in European studies, and European studies as a discipline.

3. Complete the following history requirement:
   a. Complete one course from the following:
      CL CV 304 : (Cl Cv-Hist 247) Greek History. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W
      DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

      CL CV 307 : (ClCv-Hist 248) Roman History. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F
      DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

      HIST 300 : The Early Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W odd years.
      DESCRIPTION: Decline of Rome and the early formative stages of early medieval civilization; analysis of political, economic, and social changes from A.D. 285 to 950.

      HIST 301 : The Late Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F odd years.
      DESCRIPTION: Europe from 950 to 1350; maturation of medieval civilization; failure of German, success of French leadership; economic, religious, cultural, intellectual trends.

   b. Complete three courses from the following:
      HIST 302 : The Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F even years.
      DESCRIPTION: Major political, social, and cultural events in Italy from 1200 to 1530, emphasizing concept of the Renaissance in modern historiography.

      HIST 303 : The Reformation: Age of Turmoil. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F
      DESCRIPTION: Sixteenth-century religious upheaval; ideological, cultural, political, and socioeconomic struggles to mid-seventeenth century.

      HIST 304 : The Expansion of Europe, 1400-1800. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: F even years.
      DESCRIPTION: Early voyages of discovery and the actions of Europeans in the wider world from about 1400 to 1800.

      HIST 305 : The Age of Enlightenment. (3:3:0)
      OFFERED: W even years.
      DESCRIPTION: Developments in Europe from 1650 to the French Revolution, emphasizing political thought, science, and philosophy in the Enlightenment.

HIST 306 : Nineteenth-Century Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Europe from 1815 to 1914.

HIST 307 : Europe Since 1914. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: International affairs and political and economic history of major European countries (including Russia) from World War I to the present.

4. Complete one of the following disciplinary tracks:
European Society Track
a. Complete two courses from the following:
BUS M 430 : Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
DESCRIPTION: Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

ECON 215 : History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Development of economic doctrines from preclassical through contemporary economics. Contributions of individual writers and schools of thought.

ECON 257 : International Trade and Finance. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Economic analysis of the mechanisms, problems, institutions, and policies of trade among countries. Financial and monetary arrangements that facilitate trade.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

HIST 310 : European Economic History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Economic development of Europe from antiquity to the early twentieth century; impact of the economy on social and political institutions.

PL SC 341 : Western European Politics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Politics and policy in western Europe. State-building, party systems, nationalism, and cooperation among advanced industrial countries in comparative, historical perspective. Social and Christian democracy; European Union.

(prerequisite: Pl Sc 150, 200)
SOC 345 : World Populations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Fertility, mortality, and migration patterns of world populations as they relate to current social, economic, political, and religious issues.

b. Complete two courses from the following:
HIST 309 : European Revolutions Since 1500. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Social and political revolutions in European history since 1500. Successful and unsuccessful cases of state breakdown; the Dutch Revolt, English Revolution, French Revolution, Revolution of 1848, and Russian Revolution.

HIST 312 : History of Ideas. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Interrelationship of influential ideas and historical events from the end of the eighteenth century to the present.

HIST 319 : The Family in Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

HIST 320 : Society in Europe. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Common life in Europe from 1500 to the present: family problems, social customs, marriage, superstition, death, diet, work, hardships, migration, and childhood.

European Culture Track

a. Complete one course from the following:

ARTHC 304 : Greek Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

ARTHC 306 : Roman Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

ARTHC 320 : Italian Renaissance. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1580.

ARTHC 325 : Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

ARTHC 329 : Renaissance and Baroque Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: History of architecture in Italy, Spain, France, Germany, Austria, and England, 1400? 1700.

ARTHC 330 : Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

ARTHC 335 : Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

ARTHC 340 : Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

ARTHC 350 : Modern Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Modern European art and theory, 1900--1945.
NOTE: Independent Study also.

BULGN 330 : Cultural History of Bulgaria. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Bulgn 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Bulgarian language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Bulgn 101, 102, 201, 211R).

CZECH 330 : Cultural History of Czech Republic. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Czech 201 or foreign residence experience.
DESCRIPTION: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Czech or Slovak language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Czech 101, 102, 201, 211R).

CL CV 241 : Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

CL CV 245 : Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

CL CV 246 : Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology.
NOTE: All readings in English.

FREN 361 : French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 362 : French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Su
PREREQUISITE: Fren 321.
RECOMMENDED: Fren 322.
DESCRIPTION: Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts and Letters elective.

FREN 495R : Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
RECOMMENDED: Fren 321, 322, 340, 420, 421; or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

GERM 330 : Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1.5)
OFFERED: Honors also.
PREREQUISITE: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Includes International Cinema.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

HUNG 330 : Cultural History of Hungary. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Hung 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries and others with extensive Hungarian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Hung 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

ITAL 420 : Italian Civilization from the Beginning to 1600. (3:3:0)
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the barbarian invasions through the Renaissance.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

ITAL 421 : Italian Civilization from 1600 to the Modern Era. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
RECOMMENDED: Ital 340.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the Baroque period to the modern era.
NOTE: Fulfills GE Arts or Letters elective.

LATVI 330 : Cultural History of Latvia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Entry course for returned missionaries from Latvia. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Latvi 101, 102, 201, 211R).

PHIL 214 : Introduction to the Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: The experience of beauty in nature, in literature, and in the arts.

POLSH 330 : Cultural History of Poland. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Polsh 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Polish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Polsh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

PORT 345 : Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

ROM 340 : Introduction to Romanian Literature and Culture. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience in Romania.
DESCRIPTION: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Romanian language experience.
NOTE: Required course for obtaining language credit by examination. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

RUSS 330 : Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Russ 202 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: Nonmajors not required to take Russ 311 but are welcome if concurrently enrolled in Russ 330. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Includes International Cinema.

SCAND 430 : Cultural History of Scandinavia. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Scandinavian culture from the Vikings to the present.
NOTE: Works may be read in English translation.

SLN 330 : Cultural History of Slovenia. (3:3.0:1.0)
PREREQUISITE: Foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Slovenian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (SLN 101,102, 201, 211R).

SPAN 345 : Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

SRBCR 330 : Cultural History of the Former Yugoslavia. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: SrbCr 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Serbo-Croatian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (SrbCr 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

TMA 395 : Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through Western literary theories, emphasizing performance.

TMA 396 : Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: TMA 114, 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of dramatic texts, from ancient Greek to today, through global literary theories, emphasizing performance.

UKRAI 330 : Cultural History of Ukraine. (3:3:1)
PREREQUISITE: Ukrai 201 or foreign residence experience.
NOTE: For returned missionaries or others with extensive Ukrainian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Ukrai 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Or any Hum 400-level seminar on European topic

b. Complete two courses from the following literature requirement:
   1. Any 300- or 400-level literature course from student's foreign language.
   2. Any 300- or 400-level comparative literature course with a European emphasis.

Note: An upper-division English literature course may substitute for one of these courses on approval of the European Studies Committee.

c. Complete one course from the following:

PHIL 320R : Studies in Ancient Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Aristotle.
: Buddhism.
: Chinese Philosophy.
: Church Fathers.
: Greek Epistemology.
: Greek Ethics.
: Greek Logic.
: Greek Metaphysics.
: Greek Philosophy of Religion.
: Greek Political Theory.
: Greek Science.
: Helenistic Philosophy.
: Hindu Philosophy.
: Neo-Platonism.
: Plato.
: Plotinus.
: Pre-Socratics.
: Socrates.
: Stoicism.
: Topics in Greek Philosophy.

PHIL 330R : Studies in Medieval Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 201.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Anselm.
: Aquinas.
: Augustine.
: Averroes.
: Boethius.
: Bonaventure.
: Duns Scotus.
: Maimonides.
: Medieval Arabic Philosophers.
: Medieval Epistemology.
: Medieval Ethics.
: Medieval Jewish Philosophers.
: Medieval Logic.
: Medieval Metaphysics.
: Medieval Philosophy and Religion.
: Medieval Political Theory.
: Medieval Science.
: Meister Eckhart.
: Topics in Medieval Philosophy.
: William of Ockham.

PHIL 340R : Studies in Modern Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Phil 202.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Alexander.
: Bentham.
: Bergson.
: Berkeley.
: Bosanquet.
: Bradley.
: British Empiricism.
: British Idealism.
: Continental Rationalism.
: Descartes and Locke.

: Descartes.
: Dewey.
: German Idealism.
: Hegel.
: Hobbes.
: Hume.
: J. S. Mill.
: Kant.
: Kierkegaard.
: Leibniz.
: Locke.
: Modern Political Theory.
: Nietzsche and Freud.
: Nietzsche.
: Peirce.
: Pragmatism.
: Schopenhauer.
: Spinoza.
: Topics in Modern Philosophy.
: Utilitarianism.
: William James.

PHIL 350R : Studies in Contemporary Philosophy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: One philosophy course.
DESCRIPTION: Selected figures or topics.

: Contemporary Analytical Philosophy.
: Contemporary French Philosophy.
: Contemporary Political Theory.
: Continental Philosophy.
: Derrida.
: Dufrenne.
: Existentialism.
: Foucault.
: Frege.
: Gadamer.
: Heidegger.
: Hermeneutics.
: Husserl.
: Leotard.
: Levinas.
: Logical Positivism.
: Marion.
: Merleau-Ponty.
: Moore.
: Oakeshott.
: Ordinary Language of Philosophy.
: Phenomenology.
: Philosophy and Film.
: Philosophy and Literature.
: Philosophy of Architecture.
: Philosophy of Cognitive Science.
: Philosophy of History.
: Philosophy of Mind.
: Philosophy of Psychology.
: Philosophy of Social Science.
: Philosophy of Theology.
: Ricoeur.
: Russell.
: Sartre.
: Topics in Contemporary Philosophy.
: Truth.
: Whitehead.
: Wittgenstein.

Note: Phil 340R and 350R must be on a European philosopher.

5. Complete 12 hours of supporting course work. In consultation with the program director, propose a list of advanced courses (typically senior level) that are European focused and that have a coherent logic relative to educational and career goals. This list must then be approved by the European Studies Executive Committee.

6. Complete an exit interview during the final semester. Students come to the interview prepared to lead a discussion on one

major European issue of their choice that they've encountered in their program. This could be a current political/economic issue like the European Union or immigration, or it could be a historical/interpretive issue regarding our understanding of European identity, history, culture, etc.

Recommended Courses

These courses can be used to fill the Civilization and Social Science GE requirements or for enrichment electives:

Social Sciences

Anthr 101.
Econ 110.
Pl Sc 150, 170.
Soc 111

Arts and Letters

ArtHC 111.
Engl 230.
Hum 101, 201, 202.
Music 101.
Phil 110.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

European Studies (Europ)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

EUROP 200 : Introduction to European Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to the major, the core disciplines involved and integrated in European studies, and European studies as a discipline.

300-Level Courses

EUROP 336R : European Studies. (.5-6:ARR:ARR)
DESCRIPTION: Social sciences core course approved for Study Abroad programs in London, Vienna, Paris, and other locations.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

International Development

The Discipline

International development is the study of basic social needs in developing areas or countries. It includes academic disciplines such as formal and nonformal education and literacy, economic development, primary health care, small business activities, water sanitation, agricultural productivity, nutrition, ecological preservation, etc. Development obviously implies raising the level and quality of life throughout the "underdeveloped" world.

Students should pursue solid preparation in an established major as well as classroom knowledge and experience in international development. This minor is designed to strengthen and expand the chosen major. Students will be assigned a faculty mentor in their major department who will help coordinate the minor with the major. In addition to a focused course of study, internship experience is highly encouraged. Internships provide valuable experience in applying development theory as well as allowing students to earn credit toward the minor (and in some cases the major as well).

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in International Development (18 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. No double-counting courses within the different areas of this minor is allowed.

2. Complete the following:
   IAS 220 : Introduction to Development Studies. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Exploration of international development in non-formal education, micro-enterprises, community organizations; hunger, poverty, and other special problems in developing areas of the world.

3. Complete two courses from the following (6 hours):
   ANTHR 441 : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
   DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

   ECON 230 : Economic Development and Growth. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

   (prerequisite: Econ 110)
   EDLF 363 : Education, Poverty, and Community Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Examines the nexus between education, poverty, and socioeconomic development challenges facing developing countries through the perspective of economics, religion, and the state.

   PL SC 444 : The Political Economy of Development. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: On demand.
   RECOMMENDED: Econ 110, PlSc 200.
   DESCRIPTION: Political foundations of growth, providing public goods, and political reform in developing countries. Development and how institutions and culture shape it.

   SOC 340 : Sociology of International Development. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: Major theoretical paradigms of development with strategies and practical application in the international setting.

4. Complete three courses from the following (9 hours):
   ANTHR 441** : Anthropology of Development. (3:3:3)
   DESCRIPTION: Theory, practice, and research methods regarding the anthropological study and resolution of poverty, disease, malnutrition, displacement, and inadequate educational opportunities.

   ECON 230** : Economic Development and Growth. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Econ 110 or equivalent.
   DESCRIPTION: Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

   ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
   PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PlSc 328.
   DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

   ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
   PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.

RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

EDLF 362 : Introduction to Comparative and International Development Education. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Methods, major concepts, and current trends in comparative and international development education; role of education in promoting national development.

EDLF 363** : Education, Poverty, and Community Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Examines the nexus between education, poverty, and socioeconomic development challenges facing developing countries through the perspective of economics, religion, and the state.

HLTH 480 : International Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Identifying disease patterns in "developing" countries, exploring the social and cultural context of health, and reviewing behavior change strategies for improving well-being.

IAS 397R : Topics in International and Area Studies. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study relating to current world problems.

IAS 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Class must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

NDFS 380 : International Nutrition and Health. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: NDFS 200 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Causes and consequences of nutrient deficiencies common in developing countries. Appropriate interventions to prevent or treat malnutrition.

(prerequisite: NDFS 200)
PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

PL SC 444** : The Political Economy of Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 110, PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Political foundations of growth, providing public goods, and political reform in developing countries. Development and how institutions and culture shape it.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

SOC 340** : Sociology of International Development. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major theoretical paradigms of development with strategies and practical application in the international setting.

SOC 429 : Theory of Social Change and Modernization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Social change in contemporary society from diverse theoretical points of view.

Other courses with the approval of the development coordinator.

Note: **These courses may be counted in this section if not already counted in the previous section.

Note: Students cannot count both Econ 230 and 431 or Econ 230 and 432. They should choose to take either the 200-level course or the 400-level course.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

International Relations

The Discipline

International relations is an interdisciplinary major emphasizing the systematic study of political and economic relations between governments and people in different states, as well as comparisons across different political and economic systems. Students majoring in international relations also come to understand the historical and geographic basis for current international relationships.

Career Opportunities

The international relations major gives students a strong liberal arts education along with useful technical skills. In addition to substantive knowledge, international relations majors will learn analytical concepts and ideas that allow them to organize, explain, and make sense of relations between states and comparisons among them. High proficiency in math and statistics, writing, and a foreign language will prepare for a wide variety of career paths—including, but not limited to, government, law, business, and international organizations. Many career paths will require graduate-level training. Therefore, the international relations degree should be seen as certifying fluency in the ideas and methods of multiple fields so that students can find and pursue their own specialized interests rather than as a terminal degree.

It is important to distinguish international relations as a field from a more general definition of "international," which might include anything (people, language, culture, traditions, etc.) beyond the territorial boundaries of the United States. For students interested in the broad study of anything international and foreign, BYU's international relations degree will not provide the best training. In fact, no reasonable degree can include the systematic study of everything international and foreign. It should be remembered that BYU students have a wealth of options through which to pursue their particular international and foreign interests. These include:

- Social science majors with a strong international component, such as economics, geography, history, or political science.
- Area studies majors, including Latin American, Asian, and Middle East studies.
- Language majors.
- Other majors combined with a minor in one of the above areas.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in International Relations (57–79 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following introductory core courses:

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

GEOG 120 : Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.
NOTE: Honors and Independent Study also.

PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

PL SC 170 : Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

2. Complete the following research foundations and methods courses:

PL SC 200 : Political Inquiry. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of political science, including theory and techniques of qualitative and quantitative research design.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all upper-division courses.

And complete the following:

MATH 112 : Calculus 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hopital's rule.
NOTE: Honors also.

Note: If you have received a B+ or better in Math 119, you may petition for a substitution for Math 112.

And complete one course from the following:

ECON 378 : Statistics for Economists. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110, Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to matrix algebra and statistics in preparation for regression analysis. Other topics include: probability, random variables, density and distribution functions, estimation, hypothesis testing.

PL SC 328 : Quantitative Political Methodology. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W

PREREQUISITE: PI Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Quantitative techniques in political research.

Note: Students who choose Econ 378 are encouraged to also complete Econ 388.

3. Complete the following:

ECON 380 : Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 (or Math 119 with a B+ or better).
DESCRIPTION: Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

ECON 381 : Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

4. Complete one course from the following:

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PISc 328.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

5. Complete one course from the following:

HIST 393 : U.S. Foreign Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: U.S. diplomatic history from the American revolution to the present; examines major themes and critical events within both domestic and international contexts.

PL SC 350 : Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PI Sc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

PL SC 376 : U.S. Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Formation, implementation, analysis, and criticism of themes in American foreign policy.

6. Complete one of the following international relations courses:

PL SC 370 : Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PISc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

PL SC 373 : International Law. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and function of international law; recognition, succession, jurisdiction rights, and immunities of states; nationality and jurisdiction over nations.

PL SC 375 : International Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: International institutions; transnational relations; rise of newer political organizations: League of Nations, United Nations, European communities, world religions, multinational corporations, terrorist groups, global regimes.

PL SC 376 : U.S. Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Formation, implementation, analysis, and criticism of themes in American foreign policy.

PL SC 377 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence.

PL SC 378 : International Conflict. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150 or 170.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of war; alliances and empires; military innovation; civil-military relations; fungibility of forces; terrorism; security studies methods; use and misuse of history.

7. Complete one of the following comparative politics courses:

PL SC 341 : Western European Politics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Politics and policy in western Europe. State-building, party systems, nationalism, and cooperation among advanced industrial countries in comparative, historical perspective. Social and Christian democracy; European Union.

PL SC 344 : Comparative Political Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of political economy from a comparative perspective. Classic theorists (Smith, Marx, Schumpeter, etc.); classic questions (industrialization, national economic policy, property, globalization, law, and economics).

PL SC 347 : Russia/Former Soviet Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative politics of Russia and Soviet successor states. Development of political systems from common Soviet heritage, emphasizing post-independence politics and institution building.

PL SC 350 : Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

PL SC 352 : African Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Processes of change and development of nation states; African regionalism and relations with other nations; contemporary political issues.

PL SC 353 : China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 354 : Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 355 : Canadian Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Growth and development of Canada and its government; Canada's role in the contemporary world

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic

development.

8. Complete a foreign language proficiency: Students are to complete one language at a specified level with all attendant prerequisites. Some prerequisites may be waived depending upon previous language experience. The specific requirements for each language are listed on a separate sheet available from the International and Area Studies Advisement Office or the international relations coordinator.

9. Specializations: Complete one of the following tracks (no double-counting of major courses allowed):
   a. International Politics

Complete four courses from the following. At least one course must be from history and at least one course from political science.

ANTHR 432 : Economic and Political Institutions. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Connections between wealth and power: political and legal systems in state and nonstate societies; expansion of capitalism and technology into remote global regions.

COMMS 381 : International Media Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Comparison of media systems in countries and regions outside the United States. Includes media systems analysis, normative theories of the media, and cultural values and norms.

COMMS 382 : Issues in Global Communication. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Communications or international relations major or minor status.
DESCRIPTION: Issues relating to communicating in a global village. Includes global information and policy, cultural imperialism, intercultural interaction, and multinational communication strategies.

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

HIST 293 : World War II: A Global Perspective, 1939-1945. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Causes, flow, and consequences of World War II emphasizing the American experience at home and abroad.

HIST 307 : Europe Since 1914. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: International affairs and political and economic history of major European countries (including Russia) from World War I to the present.

HIST 331 : Twentieth -Century Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The rise and fall of the Soviet Union and recent attempts to refashion the Russian economy and government.

HIST 376 : U.S. History from 1945 to 2000. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Movements and ideas that shaped society, politics, economy, and diplomacy of the United States from 1945 to 2000.

HIST 391 : U.S. in Vietnam, 1945-1975. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: U.S. involvement in the wars in Vietnam from both a domestic and international perspective, focusing on the conflict independently and in context of the broader Cold War.

HIST 398R : Special Topics in Military History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Varied topics in world military history and war.

PL SC 370 : Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.

DESCRIPTION: Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

PL SC 371 : Foreign Policy Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200, 370.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of research regarding multiple levels of foreign policy analysis: individual, group, bureaucratic, societal, economic, systemic.

PL SC 373 : International Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and function of international law; recognition, succession, jurisdiction rights, and immunities of states; nationality and jurisdiction over nations.

PL SC 375 : International Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: International institutions; transnational relations; rise of newer political organizations: League of Nations, United Nations, European communities, world religions, multinational corporations, terrorist groups, global regimes.

PL SC 377 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence.

PL SC 378 : International Conflict. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150 or 170.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of war; alliances and empires; military innovation; civil-military relations; fungibility of forces; terrorism; security studies methods; use and misuse of history.

PL SC 382 : International Relations of North America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Examination and analysis of factors that affect foreign relations of Canada, U.S., and Mexico, emphasizing trade, security, migration, environment.

PL SC 471 : Intelligence and National Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between theory and practice of intelligence and national security of states.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

PL SC 473 : Human Rights. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Causes of human rights violations and societal and state responses; nature, history, and impacts of international human rights norms; ways to define and promote rights.

b. Political Economy

Complete four courses from at least two disciplines. At least two courses must be from economics.

ECON 382 : Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PlSc 328.

DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

ECON 478 : Game Theory and Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Application of game theory to study strategic interaction between individuals and organizations. Applications include imperfect competition, insurance markets, and bargaining.

PL SC 344 : Comparative Political Economy. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Overview of political economy from a comparative perspective. Classic theorists (Smith, Marx, Schumpeter, etc.); classic questions (industrialization, national economic policy, property, globalization, law, and economics).

PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

PL SC 444 : The Political Economy of Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 110, PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Political foundations of growth, providing public goods, and political reform in developing countries. Development and how institutions and culture shape it.

c. Asian Politics and History

Complete four courses from the following. At least one course must be from political science and one course from history.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms, physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

HIST 231 : Introduction to East Asian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in the history, thought, and culture of Asian societies from antiquity to the present.

HIST 341 : Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Economic and political foundations of modernity during high Imperial China; challenge of new order from the West; rise of Chinese nationalism, revolution, and development.

HIST 342 : Twentieth-Century China. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: China's twentieth-century struggles to find a working modernity via revolution: anti-imperial, nationalist, communist, and capitalist.

HIST 344 : Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Main themes in Japanese history from Tokugawa times to the present.

HIST 346 : Korea. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

HIST 348 : Modern South East Asia. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Complex history of the varied nations of this vast area: religion, colonialism, nationalism, independence.

PL SC 348 : Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

PL SC 353 : China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 354 : Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems.

PL SC 385 : International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

PL SC 386 : Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

PL SC 388 : Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

d. Latin American Politics and History

Complete four courses from the following. At least one course must be from political science and one course from history. Students cannot count both Hist 359 and Pl Sc 380.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 355 : History of Argentina. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Rise of modern Argentina from colonial times, focusing on the dynamic political, economic, social, and cultural developments since independence.

HIST 356 : Brazil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

HIST 358 : Gender and History in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: How gender roles have been defined legally, socially, and culturally in Latin America from the colonial period to the present, emphasizing the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

PL SC 380 : International Relations of Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Factors that affect foreign relations of Latin American countries, including the U.S. role, emphasizing intervention, democracy, development, and trade.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

e. Middle Eastern Politics and History

Complete four courses from at least two disciplines. At least one course must be from history.

ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

HIST 244 : Jewish History: A.D. 70 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Jewish diaspora, Jewish life in Moslem and Christian countries; Jewish religious movements; development of Zionism; Jewish communities in modern Israel and the United States.

MESA 350 : Islam in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Islam in modern society: doctrine, practices, institutions, approaches to the challenges of modern life; the rise of fundamentalism.

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 381 : International Relations of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interregional relations and conflicts, political economics, Arab nationalism, processes of political change, alliances, and superpower relations.

PL SC 452 : Islam and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tensions and accommodations between religion and politics in Muslim nations.

PL SC 474 : Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

Note: Hist 242 and 243 do not substitute here.

f. European Politics and History

Complete four courses from the following. At least one course must be from political science and one course from history.

GEOG 260 : Europe. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

GEOG 265 : Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

HIST 307 : Europe Since 1914. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: International affairs and political and economic history of major European countries (including Russia) from World War I to the present.

HIST 310 : European Economic History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Economic development of Europe from antiquity to the early twentieth century; impact of the economy on social and political institutions.

HIST 312 : History of Ideas. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Interrelationship of influential ideas and historical events from the end of the eighteenth century to the present.

HIST 323 : English History Since 1689. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Emergence of Britain as a great colonial and industrial power, as well as more recent decline of Britain's influence. Emphasis also on cultural developments.

HIST 324 : France. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: French history from Roman times to the present, emphasizing the French Revolution, Napoleon, and subsequent developments.

HIST 325 : Spain. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

HIST 327 : Italy in the Modern World Since 1848. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, economic, and cultural history of Italians and the Italian peninsula in Europe and the world, including nationalism, church and state, migration, Mafia, fascism, and European union.

HIST 328 : Modern Germany. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Political, military, economic and cultural development of Germany during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

HIST 331 : Twentieth -Century Russia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: The rise and fall of the Soviet Union and recent attempts to refashion the Russian economy and government.

HIST 332 : Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

PL SC 341 : Western European Politics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150.
DESCRIPTION: Politics and policy in western Europe. State-building, party systems, nationalism, and cooperation among advanced industrial countries in comparative, historical

perspective. Social and Christian democracy; European Union.

PL SC 347 : Russia/Former Soviet Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative politics of Russia and Soviet successor states. Development of political systems from common Soviet heritage, emphasizing post-independence politics and institution building.

PL SC 351 : British Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Examination of the origin and contemporary operation of British political institutions as they relate to British society.

g. Economic and Political Development

Complete the following (3 hours):

ECON 431 : Economic Development. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 382 or concurrent enrollment; Econ 388 or PlSc 328.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of the causes of income differences across countries.

Note: This course cannot be double-counted for the 400-level economics course in the core; Econ 388 is the preferred route to fill the statistics prerequisite for this course.

Complete three courses from the following, of which one course must be from political science:

ECON 388 : Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp
PREREQUISITE: Econ 378, 380.
DESCRIPTION: Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

ECON 432 : Economic Growth. (3:3.0:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 388.
DESCRIPTION: Theory and evidence relating to economic growth, including physical and human capital accumulation, population, technological change, institutions, and government.

ECON 440 : Natural Resources and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380; 388 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Economic theory applied to allocation of natural resources and environmental amenities. Issues relating to externalities, common property resources, public goods, allocation of depletable natural resources over time, economic factors of environmental polarization, and others.

ECON 458 : International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380.
DESCRIPTION: Microeconomic analysis of why nations trade, who wins and loses from trade, and the costs and benefits of various trade policies.

ECON 459 : International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Econ 380, 381, 388.
DESCRIPTION: Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

GEOG 272 : East Asia. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Region of monsoon Asia and its basic human (demographics, nations and ethnic groups, settlement patterns, religious beliefs, transportation and communication systems, political structures), and physical geographic characteristics (land forms,

physiography, climatic characteristics, and natural resources).

GEOG 273 : Southeast Asia. (3:3.0:0)
OFFERED: W on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Fundamental issues of geography relating to Southeast Asia, including the extraction and marketing of natural resources, economic development, neighborly relations, and how diffusion has influenced the unique cultural, religious, and linguistic characteristics of the region.

GEOG 285 : Environment and Development in Africa. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Geographical analysis focusing on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

PL SC 444 : The Political Economy of Development. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: Econ 110, PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Political foundations of growth, providing public goods, and political reform in developing countries. Development and how institutions and culture shape it.

PL SC 452 : Islam and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tensions and accommodations between religion and politics in Muslim nations.

PL SC 472 : International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
RECOMMENDED: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
DESCRIPTION: Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

With the prior approval of the international relations coordinator, a maximum of 3 hours of IR 398R, 399R, or IAS 351R may be used toward meeting the four-course requirement of specialization. Only the second semester of IAS 351R would be allowed.

10. Complete a capstone research experience in one of the following ways:

ASIAN 495 : Senior Seminar. (1-3:Arr:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Asian studies coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Learning research and writing skills necessary to prepare and present major senior research paper.

IR 398R : Directed International Study. (1-3:Arr:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; international relations major coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study and research in an international setting.

(requires prior approval of the international relations coordinator)

IR 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-12:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program; international relations major coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

(requires prior approval of the international relations coordinator)

LT AM 495 : Senior Seminar in Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent for minors.
DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of a research project.
NOTE: Required for all Latin American Studies majors their senior year.

MESA 495 : Senior Seminar in Middle East Studies. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced Arabic Study Abroad; Arab 300, 302, 311R, 331; Pl Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course, including major research paper demonstrating ability to integrate cross-disciplinary information and methodology.

PL SC 450 : Capstone Seminar in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in comparative politics and government for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

PL SC 470 : Capstone Seminar in International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar in international relations and politics for students in their senior year.
NOTE: For political science majors only.

Note 1: Only MESA 495, Pl Sc 450, or 470 can fill the GE Advanced Written and Oral Communication requirement when coupled with Pl Sc 200.

Note 2: For students in the relevant specialization, Asian 495, Lt Am 495, and MESA 495R will satisfy the capstone requirement.

Note 3: It is possible to fulfill the capstone requirement by completing a substantial research paper in an internship, Study Abroad, or other setting. Students who wish to do this must meet the requirements listed on the International Relations Web site, http://kennedy.byu.edu/academic/internationalrelations/index.html, and receive *prior* approval of the IR coordinator.

Note 4: Students majoring in international relations may not pursue a double major in either economics or political science because of the course overlap between international relations and those majors. For the same reason neither may students majoring in international relations minor in either economics or political science.

Recommended

Either Hist 201, 202
Or Pl Sc 201, 202.

Rel C 351.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

International Relations (IR)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

300-Level Courses

IR 398R : Directed International Study. (1-3:Arr:0.0)
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; international relations major coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study and research in an international setting.

IR 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-12:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program; international relations major coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Latin American Studies

The Discipline

Designed to give a rich background in the languages, culture, and conditions of Latin America, the Latin American Studies program provides a multidisciplinary approach to university education. Courses from BYU's various academic departments (anthropology, Spanish and Portuguese, political science, geography, sociology, history, etc.) teach skills in perceptive reading, analytical thinking, and clear and forceful writing, as well as provide in-depth understanding of Latin American cultures, languages, and history.

Students are invited to consult with the director of undergraduate studies regarding selection of classes.

Career Opportunities

Excellent career opportunities exist for those who prepare well in Latin American Studies. The degree offers a broad, general background in the liberal arts, and graduates are well prepared for careers in government, private industry, nonprofit organizations, some domestic and foreign teaching opportunities, the Peace Corps, the military, and other professions in which an understanding and appreciation of Latin America are required. Many graduates go into law, medicine, business, journalism, editing, advertising, etc. Others have had success in government, such as working for the State Department, immigration, the FBI, and other agencies.

Students are encouraged to take a double major or at least a strong minor in a single academic discipline to enhance their career objectives. The combination of another discipline and Latin American Studies makes the student attractive to employers desiring specific job skills as well as cultural understanding and appreciation.

General Information

Foreign Experience. Latin American Studies students are strongly encouraged to participate in Study Abroad programs in Mexico or Chile, in an internship program somewhere in Latin America, or in department-sponsored research in the area.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Latin American Studies (36–52 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following:
   LT AM 211 : Introduction to Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
   DESCRIPTION: History, politics, sociology, geography, and culture of Latin America.

2. Complete the following prerequisite courses or equivalents:

Either

PORT 101 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 102 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 201 : Third-Semester Portuguese. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
DESCRIPTION: Second-year grammar, reading, writing, and conversation.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 202 : Fourth-Semester Portuguese: Reading and Comprehension. (4:5.0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-semester class introducing grammar and culture through study of literature.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement. Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

Or

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su

PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

3. Complete one of the following options:

Either

PORT 321 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

Or

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

4. Complete three social science courses from the following (no more than one course from each discipline):

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

Or

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

Or

PL SC 380 : International Relations of Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Factors that affect foreign relations of Latin American countries, including the U.S. role, emphasizing intervention, democracy, development, and trade.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

5. Complete two humanities courses from the following:
HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

PORT 439R : Luso-Brazilian Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

Or

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

6. Complete at least 6 elective hours from the following:
ANTHR 326 : Central American Society. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

ANTHR 355 : Mesoamerican Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Cultural-environment bases of ancient civilizations in Mexico and Central America. Olmec, Maya, Toltec, and Aztec cultures.

HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 355 : History of Argentina. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Rise of modern Argentina from colonial times, focusing on the dynamic political, economic, social, and cultural developments since independence.

HIST 356 : Brazil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

HIST 357 : The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

HIST 359 : Inter-American Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Decline of Europe's American empires, legacies bequeathed to the new republics by their European heritage, and how those legacies have affected relations among the various American republics.

HIST 363 : The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American southwest, and Florida, 1521-1821; Mexican period to 1848.

HIST 385 : Latinos in the United States. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: The place of Latin Americans within the context of U.S. history. The growth and development of the largest Latino communities from pre-colonial times to present day and how Latinos may influence future policies within the U.S.

HUM 425R : Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; alternate Sp or Su
PREREQUISITE: Hum 350 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

: America Between World Wars.
: American Culture.
: American Immigrant Experience.
: American Popular Culture.
: Arts of Japan.
: Asian Culture.
: Classics and Eastern America.
: Colonial and Federalist America.
: Islamic Culture.
: Latin American Culture.
: Maya Art and Culture.
: Poetry of Americas.
: Precolumbian Culture.
: Satire in American Culture.
: Scandinavian Cultural History.
: Slavery and Americas.
: Southwestern Native American Culture.
: U.S. and Caribbean Culture.
: Women in Americas.

{topic: Latin America)

IAS 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Class must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

MUSIC 206 : Survey of Latin American Music. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: A historical survey of folk music and art music indigenous to countries of the Caribbean and Central and South America.

PL SC 379R : Topics in International Relations. (.5-3:3:0)

PL SC 380 : International Relations of Latin America. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Factors that affect foreign relations of Latin American countries, including the U.S. role, emphasizing intervention, democracy, development, and trade.

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

PORT 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Portuguese or Brazilian culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

PORT 439R : Luso-Brazilian Theatre Production. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.
NOTE: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

PORT 452 : Machado de Assis. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 451 or equivalent.

PORT 453 : Twentieth-Century Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.

PORT 459R : Special Topics in Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Portuguese (Brazilian) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Brazilian literature.

PORT 520 : Advanced Portuguese Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Applying contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Portuguese grammar.

PORT 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of evolution of Latin into modern romance languages.

PORT 522 : History of the Portuguese Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of Portuguese.

PORT 529R : Special Topics in Portuguese Linguistics. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321.
DESCRIPTION: Topics from semantics to dialectology to sociolinguistics.

PORT 599R : Academic Internship: Portuguese Internship. (1-3:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 and instructor's consent.
NOTE: For supervised internship credit on BYU Study Abroad programs only.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

SOC 445 : Labor Markets in Developing Countries. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual, national, and global forces reshaping labor markets and employment opportunities in developing countries.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 425 : Contrastive Analysis of the Structures of Spanish and English. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321.
DESCRIPTION: Contrastive analysis of phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Spanish and English.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 458R : Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortazar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, etc.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

SPAN 520 : Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

The

SPAN 521 : Romance Philology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Comparative study of the evolution of Latin into modern Romance languages.

SPAN 522 : History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

7. Complete the following:
   LT AM 495 : Senior Seminar in Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent for minors.
   DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of a research project.
   NOTE: Required for all Latin American Studies majors their senior year.

8. Complete 3 hours of an internship, service learning, or Study Abroad course. These must be approved in advance by the director of Latin American Studies.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Latin American Studies (18–34 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses or equivalents:

Either

PORT 101 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 102 : First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must enroll in Port 321.

PORT 201 : Third-Semester Portuguese. (4:5:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
DESCRIPTION: Second-year grammar, reading, writing, and conversation.
NOTE: Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

PORT 202 : Fourth-Semester Portuguese: Reading and Comprehension. (4:5.0:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 201.
DESCRIPTION: Fourth-semester class introducing grammar and culture through study of literature.
NOTE: Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement. Native speakers of Portuguese must take Port 321.

Or

SPAN 101 : Foundational Spanish 1. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Acceletated sections available.) Pass/fail only.
NOTE: For students with no previous Spanish.

SPAN 102 : Foundational Spanish 2. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 101.
DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Span 101. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available.) Pass/fail only.

SPAN 105 : University Spanish 1. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: two years of high school Spanish, Span 101/102, or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* proficiency level.

SPAN 106 : University Spanish 2. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 105.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, reading, writing, and conversation skills as introduced in foundational and intermediate courses. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-Mid* to *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.

SPAN 205 : University Spanish 3. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Four years of high school Spanish; or Span 106 or equivalent; or placement by diagnostic test.
DESCRIPTION: Continued development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain an *Intermediate-High* proficiency level.
NOTE: Fulfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement.

SPAN 206 : University Spanish 4. (4:5:1)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 205.
DESCRIPTION: Expanded development of grammar, cultural understanding, conversation skills, writing, and reading through the study of literature. Students are expected to attain a strong *Intermediate-High* or *Advanced-Low* proficiency level.

2. Complete one of the following courses:

PORT 321 : Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 202 or 315, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

SPAN 321 : Third-Year Spanish Reading, Grammar, Culture, and Composition 1. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Span 206 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: First semester of a two-semester sequence. Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writings incorporating cultural and literary readings.
NOTE: First class for returned Spanish-speaking missionaries. Fullfills the University Core Languages of Learning requirement. Required for Spanish major and minor.

3. Complete one of the following courses:

HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

PORT 355 : Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

SPAN 355 : Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

4. Complete four courses from the following:

ANTHR 326 : Central American Society. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

ANTHR 355 : Mesoamerican Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Cultural-environment bases of ancient civilizations in Mexico and Central America. Olmec, Maya, Toltec, and Aztec cultures.

GEOG 255 : Middle and South America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

HIST 251 : Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

HIST 252 : Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

HIST 355 : History of Argentina. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Rise of modern Argentina from colonial times, focusing on the dynamic political, economic, social, and cultural developments since independence.

HIST 356 : Brazil. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

HIST 357 : The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

HIST 359 : Inter-American Relations. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Decline of Europe's American empires, legacies bequeathed to the new republics by their European heritage, and how those legacies have affected relations among the various American republics.

HIST 363 : The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American southwest, and Florida, 1521-1821; Mexican period to 1848.

HIST 385 : Latinos in the United States. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years.
DESCRIPTION: The place of Latin Americans within the context of U.S. history. The growth and development of the largest Latino communities from pre-colonial times to present day and how Latinos may influence future policies within the U.S.

HIST 411R : Latin American Family History Research. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

HUM 260 : Humanities of Latin America. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Achievements of Latin American culture regarding art, philosophy, literature, and music from the pre-Columbian era to the present.

IAS 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Class must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

LT AM 211 : Introduction to Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History, politics, sociology, geography, and culture of Latin America.

LT AM 495 : Senior Seminar in Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent for minors.
DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of a research project.
NOTE: Required for all Latin American Studies majors their senior year.

PL SC 358 : Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

PL SC 380 : International Relations of Latin America. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Pl Sc 200 or Lt Am 211.
DESCRIPTION: Factors that affect foreign relations of Latin American countries, including the U.S. role, emphasizing intervention, democracy, development, and trade.

PORT 339 : Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Port 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

PORT 451 : Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0)

PREREQUISITE: Port 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

SOC 335 : Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

SOC 445 : Labor Markets in Developing Countries. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Soc 310.
DESCRIPTION: Individual, national, and global forces reshaping labor markets and employment opportunities in developing countries.

SPAN 339 : Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 322 or concurrent enrollment.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.
NOTE: Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.

SPAN 365 : Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

SPAN 395R : Contemporary Culture. (.5-3:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Span 102 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.
NOTE: For Study Abroad programs only.

SPAN 423 : Border Spanish. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 321 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Mexican-American speech patterns, including language contact and bilingualism.
NOTE: Previous course in linguistics strongly recommended.

SPAN 438 : Hispanic Cinema. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to study of film; background in appreciating best of motion picture art in Spain and Spanish America.
NOTE: Previous experience with film useful but not required.

SPAN 450R : Early Spanish-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

: Colonial Literature.
: Pre-Columbian Literature.

SPAN 451 : Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339.
DESCRIPTION: Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

SPAN 454R : The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garcia Marquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

SPAN 455R : Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

SPAN 456R : Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

SPAN 459R : Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 451 or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

The Church of Jesus

SPAN 461 : Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Span 339 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

5. Students may receive up to 3 elective hours for service learning, an internship, or Study Abroad.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Latin American Studies (Lt Am)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Undergraduate Courses

200-Level Courses

LT AM 211 : Introduction to Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: History, politics, sociology, geography, and culture of Latin America.

300-Level Courses

LT AM 302 : Project Work in Latin America. (2:0:0)
PREREQUISITE: LtAm 301.
DESCRIPTION: Teaching literacy, health, nutrition, gardening, leadership development, construction, etc., in Latin America.

400-Level Courses

LT AM 495 : Senior Seminar in Latin American Studies. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: instructor's consent for minors.
DESCRIPTION: Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of a research project.
NOTE: Required for all Latin American Studies majors their senior year.

Back to International and Area Studies Home

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Ancient Near Eastern Studies (61–62 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Ancient Near Eastern Studies deals with the history, literature, religions, and cultures of the ancient Near East from 3000 B.C. to A.D. 640. It involves study in the humanities, social sciences, and ancient scripture. Geographically the ancient Near East consists of the region currently designated the Middle East. The Ancient Near Eastern Studies major is structured to provide students with a broad understanding of the civilizations of the ancient Near East and to emphasize the study of the Hebrew Bible and related literature or the Greek New Testament and related literature in their broader ancient Near Eastern context.

Career Opportunities

The Ancient Near Eastern Studies major prepares students to pursue graduate work and an academic career in all areas of biblical and ancient Near Eastern studies. Ancient Near Eastern Studies, with its emphasis on critical reading, thinking, and writing skills, also provides quality training for students entering professional or library science programs. Additionally, an Ancient Near Eastern Studies degree offers relevant preparation for students seeking to teach seminary and institute in the Church Educational System.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following core courses:

ANES 201 : Introduction to Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- DESCRIPTION: Historical background, research skills, and methods of academic inquiry relevant to ancient Near Eastern Studies.

ANES 310 : History and Culture of Ancient Israel. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F odd years.
- PREREQUISITE: Hist 238 or 239.
- DESCRIPTION: Israelite history and culture in Canaan/Israel from c. 2000 B.C. to A.D. 200. Methodology for using the Bible in historical research.

ANES 495 : Senior Seminar in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- DESCRIPTION: Capstone seminar utilizing research, analytical, and writing skills to produce a senior research paper on an ancient Near Eastern topic.

HIST 238 : Ancient Near East to 330 BC. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: F
- DESCRIPTION: Ancient cultures of the Near East (Egypt, Mesopotamia, Syro-Palestine, Anatolia, Iran) from the beginnings of civilization to the conquests of Alexander the Great.

HIST 239 : Ancient Near East, 330 BC - 640 AD. (3:3:0)
- OFFERED: W
- DESCRIPTION: Cultures and empires of the Near East (Persia, Hellenistic kingdoms, Judaism, early Christianity, Rome, and Byzantium) from Alexander the Great to the Arab conquests.

REL A 211 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
- OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
- DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the life and teachings of Jesus Christ set forth in the four Gospels.
- NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 212 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)

OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the Acts of the Apostles through the Revelation of John.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 301 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 302 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers 1 Kings through Malachi.
NOTE: Honors also.

And complete one of the following:

ANTHR 351 : Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

ANTHR 378 : Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500--500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

2. Complete one of the following language/literature options:
   a. Hebrew Bible and related literature:
      1. Complete one course from the following:
         HEB 131 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
         OFFERED: F, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

         HEB 133 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
         Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
         OFFERED: F
         DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
         NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 301.

      2. Complete one course from the following:
         HEB 132 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
         OFFERED: W, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

         HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
         Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
         OFFERED: W
         DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
         NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

      3. Complete the following:
         ANES 331 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts to 330 B.C. (3:3:0)
         OFFERED: W even years.
         PREREQUISITE: Hist 238.
         DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

         ANES 363 : Hebrew Bible Studies. (3:3:0)
         OFFERED: W odd years.
         PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
         DESCRIPTION: Current analytical methods used in academic study and interpretation of the Hebrew Bible.

         ANES 430R : Advanced Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Seminar involving in-depth examination of an ancient Near Eastern topic and then writing about it.

HEB 331 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 1. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Heb 132, 201, or equivalent.
DESCRIPTION: Grammar review and vocabulary building through reading historical and prophetic books.

HEB 431 : Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 2. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in the poetic and wisdom literature.

4. Complete two enrollments in the following:
HEB 432R : Ancient Hebrew Texts. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Heb 331.

b. Greek New Testament and related literature:
1. Complete the following:
ANES 332 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts, 330 B.C. to A.D. 640. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 239.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analyzing major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

CL CV 363 : Judaism and Christianity in the Classical Near East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and cultural contexts of early Judaism and Christianity; analysis of major Jewish and Christian texts produced in classical Near East; methodological emphasis.

CLSCS 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Christianity.
: Greek City-State.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

Or

HIST 430R : (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
PREREQUISITE: Cl Cv 304-Hist 247 and Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Cl Cv 307-Hist 248 and Latin 201 (Roman topics).
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

: (Hist-Clscs) Topics in Greek and Roman History.
: 4th Century Greece.
: Archaic Greece.
: Archaic Greece.

: Athens: Rise and Fall.
: Augustan Rome.
: Classical Historiography.
: Early Chrisitanity.
: Greek City-State.
: Greek Political Thought.
: Hellenistic World.
: Imperial Rome.
: Julio-Claudians.
: Late Roman Empire.
: Rise of Rome.
: Roman Politics.
: Roman Religion.
: Roman Revolution.
: Rome and Etruscans.
: World of New Testament.

GREEK 101 : First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F

GREEK 102 : First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)
OFFERED: W

GREEK 201 : Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Greek 102.
DESCRIPTION: Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

GREEK 311 : New Testament in Greek: Gospels. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

2. Complete two enrollments in the following:

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

c. Complete six hours from the following elective courses:

ANES 353R : Archaeological Fieldwork in the Near East. (1-3:Arr:Arr)
PREREQUISITE: Ancient Near Eastern Studies coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Archaeological fieldwork and corresponding field school activities in the Near East.

ANES 392R : Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (2-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in the ancient Near East based on student interest and faculty expertise.

ANTHR 351 : Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

Or

ANTHR 378 : Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500--500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

(whichever is not taken in item 1 above).

ARTHC 302 : Egyptian Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Development of Egyptian art from predynastic through Hellenistic periods, emphasizing

contributions to the development of world civilization.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

CL CV 310 : Classical Archaeology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major excavations and antiquities of the Mediterranean region illustrating Greco-Roman history.

CL CV 340R : Topics in Classical Literature and Civilization. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Classical literary genres; rhetorical, philosophical, and historical writings; relationships of art and literature; or the classical tradition in the Middle Ages and Renaissance. Topics vary.

: Augustan Rome.
: Christianity and the Empire.
: Classic Historiography.
: Early Rome.
: Greek Ethical Thought.
: Greek Historians.
: Greek Political Thought.
: Greek Tragedy.
: Latin Literature in Middle America.
: Roman Art and Culture.
: Roman Historians.
: Roman Religion.
: The Etruscans.
: Troy in Art and Literature.
: Women in Antiquity.

(topic must be relevant to Ancient Near Eastern Studies. The Ancient Near Eastern Studies coordinator's approval is required)
HONRS 224R : Political Science. (3-6:ARR:ARR)
Political Science.
NE LG 345 : Texts and Ancient Temples. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Major ancient Near Eastern texts dealing with the temple; analysis of primary elements of ancient temple type as a place of worship.

NE LG 511R : Studies in Ancient Near Eastern Languages. (.5-4:4:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Grammar and reading skills.

: Akkadian.
: Aramaic.
: Coptic.
: Egyptian.
: Syriac.
: Ugaritic.

REL A 304 : Writings of Isaiah. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Teachings and prophecies of Isaiah in light of their historical context and relevance to latter-day people.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 392R : Special Studies in Religion: Ancient Scripture. (.5-3:ARR:0)
OFFERED: On demand; Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

: Writings of John.

(topic must be relevant to Ancient Near Eastern Studies. The Ancient Near Eastern Studies coordinator's approval is required)
Any Ancient Near Eastern Studies, Greek, or Biblical Hebrew courses not used in item 2 above.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

BA in Middle East Studies/Arabic (53–61 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

The Discipline

Middle East Studies examines the Arabic-, Turkish-, and Persian-speaking peoples and countries of the Middle East from a variety of perspectives. The region itself provides the focus, but historians, political scientists, anthropologists, economists, geographers, linguists, art historians, and literary and religious scholars all provide important insights into the area, each from the context of their own discipline. Undergirding all of these perspectives is linguistic skill in Arabic, through which access to original sources, press analyses, and native speakers is possible. Middle East Studies as a whole tries to integrate these insights and to provide analysis and understanding that go beyond any single discipline.

Career Opportunities

The Middle East Studies/Arabic major aims specifically to prepare students to work as analysts and experts on the Middle East for government agencies, businesses, and other organizations. Linguistic skill in Arabic, as well as a solid understanding of the history, politics, and culture of the region is vital to these agencies, many of them desperate for real expertise and language ability. With its integrated, interdisciplinary focus on a single region and a strong emphasis on acquiring a usable knowledge of Arabic, it is also a good liberal arts major for students planning a career in law, medicine, or business in general—in fact, any field where a broad understanding and finely honed analytical and writing skills are valued.

Program Requirements | View MAP

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses (may be waived for students with appropriate language experience):

   ARAB 101 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
   DESCRIPTION: Basic skills of spoken and written Arabic.
   NOTE: Suggested first class for students learning Arabic.

   ARAB 102 : First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: W, Sp, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Arab 101.
   DESCRIPTION: Second-semester Arabic. Basic language skills, both spoken and written.

2. Complete the following language requirement:

   ARAB 201 : Second-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: F, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Arab 102 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Significantly expanding proficiency in Modern Standard Arabic and increasing conversational repertoire.

   ARAB 202 : Intermediate Arabic. (4:5:0)
   OFFERED: W, Su
   PREREQUISITE: Arab 201 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Continuation of Arab 201.

   ARAB 211R : Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
   PREREQUISITE: Arab 202 or equivalent experience.
   DESCRIPTION: Intermediate spoken Arabic.

   ARAB 300 : Advanced Modern Standard Arabic. (4:5:0)
   PREREQUISITE: Arab 202.

DESCRIPTION: Advanced work in reading, writing, listening, speaking.

ARAB 302 : Newspaper Arabic. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su
PREREQUISITE: Arab 300.
DESCRIPTION: Extensive reading of Arabic newspapers and magazines, with appropriate vocabulary building.

ARAB 311R : Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: Sp, Su; Study Abroad only.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202, 211R, or equivalent experience.
DESCRIPTION: Advanced conversation skills.

3. Complete the following background skills course:
MESA 201 : Introduction to Middle East Studies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Middle East from historical, art/literary, and various social science perspectives, including introduction to disciplinary methodologies and major issues of interest.

4. Complete the following major course:
GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

MESA 250 : Introduction to the Religion of Islam. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the rise of Islam, the life of Muhammad, basic beliefs and practices, major figures and movements, and contemporary political and social issues.

MESA 350 : Islam in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Islam in modern society: doctrine, practices, institutions, approaches to the challenges of modern life; the rise of fundamentalism.

PL SC 200 : Political Inquiry. (4:3:1)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Methodology of political science, including theory and techniques of qualitative and quantitative research design.
NOTE: Prerequisite to all upper-division courses.

PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

Note: It is strongly recommended that students already have exposure to basic Islamic history and beliefs before taking MESA 350—courses such as:

MESA 201 : Introduction to Middle East Studies. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Middle East from historical, art/literary, and various social science perspectives, including introduction to disciplinary methodologies and major issues of interest.

MESA 250 : Introduction to the Religion of Islam. (3:3:0)

OFFERED: Alternate years.
DESCRIPTION: Exploring the rise of Islam, the life of Muhammad, basic beliefs and practices, major figures and movements, and contemporary political and social issues.

HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

REL C 356 : Islam and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Islam in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

5. Complete the following capstone course:
MESA 495 : Senior Seminar in Middle East Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Advanced Arabic Study Abroad; Arab 300, 302, 311R, 331; Pl Sc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Capstone course, including major research paper demonstrating ability to integrate cross-disciplinary information and methodology.

6. Complete six hours from the following elective courses:
ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.
DESCRIPTION: Importance of Islamic contributions to world culture from pre-Islamic period through modern times.

FLANG 101R : First-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)
DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary building, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

: First-Year Language Study: Akan.
: First-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: First-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: First-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: First-Year Language Study: Basque.
: First-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: First-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: First-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: First-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: First-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: First-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: First-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: First-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: First-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: First-Year Language Study: Finnish.
: First-Year Language Study: Ga.
: First-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: First-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: First-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: First-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: First-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: First-Year Language Study: Hungarian.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: First-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: First-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: First-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: First-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: First-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: First-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: First-Year Language Study: Malay.
: First-Year Language Study: Maori.
: First-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: First-Year Language Study: Maya.
: First-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: First-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: First-Year Language Study: Navajo.

The Church of Jesus Christ of

: First-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: First-Year Language Study: Persian.
: First-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: First-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: First-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: First-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: First-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: First-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Thai.
: First-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: First-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: First-Year Language Study: Urdu.
: First-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: First-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: First-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.

(Turkish or Persian)

FLANG 102R : First-Year Language Study. (4:5:1)

PREREQUISITE: FLang 101R in same language.

DESCRIPTION: Vocabulary, grammar, listening, speaking, reading, writing, and culture.

: First-Year Language Study: Akan.
: First-Year Language Study: Albanian.
: First-Year Language Study: Armenian.
: First-Year Language Study: Aymara.
: First-Year Language Study: Basque.
: First-Year Language Study: Bicolano.
: First-Year Language Study: Burmese.
: First-Year Language Study: Cakchiquel.
: First-Year Language Study: Cambodian.
: First-Year Language Study: Catalan.
: First-Year Language Study: Cebuano.
: First-Year Language Study: Croatian.
: First-Year Language Study: Dutch.
: First-Year Language Study: Estonian.
: First-Year Language Study: Fijian.
: First-Year Language Study: Ga.
: First-Year Language Study: Guarani.
: First-Year Language Study: Haitian Creole.
: First-Year Language Study: Hawaiian.
: First-Year Language Study: Hindi.
: First-Year Language Study: Hmong.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilangot.
: First-Year Language Study: Ilocano.
: First-Year Language Study: Indonesian.
: First-Year Language Study: Javanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Kazakh.
: First-Year Language Study: Laotian.
: First-Year Language Study: Malagasy.
: First-Year Language Study: Malay.
: First-Year Language Study: Maori.
: First-Year Language Study: Marshallese.
: First-Year Language Study: Maya.
: First-Year Language Study: Modern Greek.
: First-Year Language Study: Mongolian.
: First-Year Language Study: Navajo.
: First-Year Language Study: Niuean.
: First-Year Language Study: Quechua.
: First-Year Language Study: Rarotongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Samoan.
: First-Year Language Study: Serbian.
: First-Year Language Study: Swahili.
: First-Year Language Study: Tagalog.
: First-Year Language Study: Tahitian.
: First-Year Language Study: Taiwanese.
: First-Year Language Study: Thai.
: First-Year Language Study: Tongan.
: First-Year Language Study: Trukese.
: First-Year Language Study: Turkish.
: First-Year Language Study: Urdu.

: First-Year Language Study: Vanuatau.
: First-Year Language Study: Vietnamese.
: First-Year Language Study: Waray-Waray.
: First-Year Language Study: K'iche.
: First-Year Language Study: Persian.

(Turkish or Persian)
HEB 101 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

HEB 102 : First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2)
OFFERED: W, Sp
DESCRIPTION: Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

HEB 201 : Second-Year Modern Hebrew. (4:5:0)
OFFERED: F
PREREQUISITE: Heb 102 or equivalent.

HIST 244 : Jewish History: A.D. 70 to the Present. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
DESCRIPTION: Jewish diaspora, Jewish life in Moslem and Christian countries; Jewish religious movements; development of Zionism; Jewish communities in modern Israel and the United States.

HIST 339R : Topics in Modern Near Eastern History. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Closer examination of the history of appropriate delimited topic than possible in general survey course. Topics may include modern Islamic movements, modern Egypt, or modern North Africa.

(Middle Eastern topics only)
IAS 399R : Academic Internship: International. (.5-9:ARR:ARR)
PREREQUISITE: Acceptance into program.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting.
NOTE: Class must be coordinated through International Study Programs.

(with prior approval)
MESA 398R : Directed Middle East Study. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Instructor's consent; Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Study and research in the Middle East.

MESA 399R : Academic Internship. (1-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Individualized work or volunteer experience in the Middle East or with an organization dealing with the Middle East. Must be coordinated through International Study Programs or the Washington Seminar and with the consent of the Middle East Studies/Arabic coordinator.

MESA 451 : The Figure of Muhammad in Islamic Tradition. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: Alternate years.
PREREQUISITE: Arab 202.
DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Muslim views regarding Muhammad as found in two significant Islamic textual traditions: The Sira (biography)/Maghazi (battles) and Hadith (acts) of Muhammad.

MESA 467R : Topics in Middle East Studies. (.5-3:Arr.:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary.

MESA 468R : Key Issues In Understanding the Middle East. (.5-3:Arr.:Arr.)
OFFERED: F, W, on demand.
DESCRIPTION: Topics vary. Guest and BYU professors teach subjects in an intensive format over a limited time period through lectures and readings.

MESA 494 : Capstone Arabic. (1:1:0)
OFFERED: W
PREREQUISITE: Arab 300, 302.
DESCRIPTION: Readings in Arabic texts supporting research for the MESA capstone seminar.

PL SC 381 : International Relations of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Interregional relations and conflicts, political economics, Arab nationalism, processes of political

change, alliances, and superpower relations.

PL SC 452 : Islam and Politics. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Tensions and accommodations between religion and politics in Muslim nations.

PL SC 474 : Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

Any other Arabic courses not already taken.

7. Complete one semester's residence in the Arab world. Most students will complete this requirement by taking part in the Arabic Study Abroad program, during which advanced Arabic courses required for the major (Arab 211R, 300, 302, and 311R) are completed.

Middle East/Government Service Track

Students interested in using their Arabic language expertise to work in government (Department of State, Central Intelligence Agency, National Security Agency, military services, Federal Bureau of Investigation, etc.) are srongly recommended to complete the following courses, some of which will count for general education credit.

ECON 110 : Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

PL SC 110 : American Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also. Independent Study also.
DESCRIPTION: Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

PL SC 150 : Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp and Su on demand. Honors also.
DESCRIPTION: Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

PL SC 376 : U.S. Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Formation, implementation, analysis, and criticism of themes in American foreign policy.

Note: Econ 110 and Pl Sc 110 combined may fill the American Heritage general education requirement.

Other courses to consider:

GEOG 341 : Political Geography. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

PL SC 313 : Interest Groups. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Theories on formation and maintenance of interest groups; tactics of groups in legislative, executive, bureaucratic, and court settings; influence of groups on elections and public policy.

PL SC 315 : Congress and the Legislative Process. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 110.
DESCRIPTION: Election process; structure, organization, and procedures of legislative bodies; relations with pressure groups, the president, and executive branch.

PL SC 321 : The Media in American Politics. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: News media's role in processes of American politics, including electoral process, legislative process, and public policy-making.

PL SC 370 : Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F and W on demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

PL SC 371 : Foreign Policy Analysis. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.

PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200, 370.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of research regarding multiple levels of foreign policy analysis: individual, group, bureaucratic, societal, economic, systemic.

PL SC 372 : International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

PL SC 373 : International Law. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 170, 200.
DESCRIPTION: Nature and function of international law; recognition, succession, jurisdiction rights, and immunities of states; nationality and jurisdiction over nations.

PL SC 375 : International Organizations. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: International institutions; transnational relations; rise of newer political organizations: League of Nations, United Nations, European communities, world religions, multinational corporations, terrorist groups, global regimes.

PL SC 377 : National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
DESCRIPTION: Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence.

PL SC 378 : International Conflict. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 150 or 170.
DESCRIPTION: Causes of war; alliances and empires; military innovation; civil-military relations; fungibility of forces; terrorism; security studies methods; use and misuse of history.

PL SC 471 : Intelligence and National Security. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: On demand.
PREREQUISITE: PlSc 200.
DESCRIPTION: Relationship between theory and practice of intelligence and national security of states.

REL A 301 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 351 : Survey of World Religions and the Restored Gospel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Survey of non-Christian religions in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 355 : Judaism and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Judaism in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL C 356 : Islam and the Gospel. (1:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W; Sp or Su
DESCRIPTION: History, doctrine, and practices of Islam in light of the restored gospel.
NOTE: Honors also.

Students are strongly encouraged to complete an internship through the Washington Seminar or in the Middle East. The internship should enable the student to apply his or her Arabic language ability or interest in the Middle East or learn the workings of the U.S. Congress.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Ancient Near Eastern Studies (21–23 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete the following core courses:
   HIST 238 : Ancient Near East to 330 BC. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Ancient cultures of the Near East (Egypt, Mesopotamia, Syro-Palestine, Anatolia, Iran) from the beginnings of civilization to the conquests of Alexander the Great.

   HIST 239 : Ancient Near East, 330 BC - 640 AD. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: Cultures and empires of the Near East (Persia, Hellenistic kingdoms, Judaism, early Christianity, Rome, and Byzantium) from Alexander the Great to the Arab conquests.

2. Complete one of the following language/literature options:
   a. Hebrew Bible and related literature:
      1. Complete one course from the following:
         HEB 131 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
         OFFERED: F, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

         HEB 133 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
         Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
         OFFERED: F
         DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
         NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 301.

      2. Complete one course from the following:
         HEB 132 : First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0)
         OFFERED: W, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

         HEB 134 : Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (4:4:0)
         Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament.
         OFFERED: W
         DESCRIPTION: Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew.
         NOTE: Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of Rel A 302.

      3. Complete one course from the following:
         REL A 211 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
         OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the life and teachings of Jesus Christ set forth in the four Gospels.
         NOTE: Honors also.

         REL A 212 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
         OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
         DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the Acts of the Apostles through the Revelation of John.
         NOTE: Honors also.

4. Complete the following:

REL A 301 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 302 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers 1 Kings through Malachi.
NOTE: Honors also.

b. Greek New Testament and related literature:

1. Complete the following:

GREEK 311 : New Testament in Greek: Gospels. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: Greek 201.

GREEK 411R : Greek New Testament and Early Christian Greek Texts. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F, W alternate semesters.
PREREQUISITE: Greek 302, 311.
DESCRIPTION: Topics include Greek New Testament, the transmission and translation of New Testament manuscripts, and selections from other early Christian Greek writings.

: Apocalypse.
: Apostolic Fathers.
: Johannine Writings.
: Luke-Acts.
: New Testament Apocrypha.
: Pauline Epistles.
: Post-Nicene Fathers.
: Pre-Nicene Fathers.
: Synoptic Gospels.

REL A 211 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the life and teachings of Jesus Christ set forth in the four Gospels.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 212 : The New Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the New Testament. Covers the Acts of the Apostles through the Revelation of John.
NOTE: Honors also.

2. Complete one course from the following:

REL A 301 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers Genesis through 2 Samuel.
NOTE: Honors also.

REL A 302 : The Old Testament. (2:2:0)
OFFERED: F, W, Sp, Su
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, narrative, and doctrines of the Old Testament. Covers 1 Kings through Malachi.
NOTE: Honors also.

3. Complete three hours from the following:

ANES 201 : Introduction to Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical background, research skills, and methods of academic inquiry relevant to ancient Near Eastern Studies.

ANES 310 : History and Culture of Ancient Israel. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F odd years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 238 or 239.

DESCRIPTION: Israelite history and culture in Canaan/Israel from c. 2000 B.C. to A.D. 200. Methodology for using the Bible in historical research.

ANES 331 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts to 330 B.C. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 238.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analysis of major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

ANES 332 : Readings in Ancient Near Eastern Texts, 330 B.C. to A.D. 640. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F even years.
PREREQUISITE: Hist 239.
DESCRIPTION: Reading and analyzing major ancient Near Eastern texts in English translation. Methodology for dealing with potential biblical parallels.

ANES 392R : Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (2-3:ARR:0)
DESCRIPTION: Topical studies in the ancient Near East based on student interest and faculty expertise.

ANTHR 351 : Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W odd years; F odd years.
DESCRIPTION: Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

ANTHR 378 : Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:ARR)
OFFERED: F, W
DESCRIPTION: Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500--500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

ARTHC 310 : Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0)
PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
DESCRIPTION: Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

CL CV 363 : Judaism and Christianity in the Classical Near East. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: F
DESCRIPTION: Historical and cultural contexts of early Judaism and Christianity; analysis of major Jewish and Christian texts produced in classical Near East; methodological emphasis.

NE LG 340 : Ancient Near Eastern Mythology. (3:3:0)
DESCRIPTION: Major themes in mythological literature of Egypt, Canaan, Mesopotamia, Anatolia, and ancient Iran. All readings in English.

NE LG 345 : Texts and Ancient Temples. (3:3:0)
OFFERED: W
DESCRIPTION: Major ancient Near Eastern texts dealing with the temple; analysis of primary elements of ancient temple type as a place of worship.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill university core requirements.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints | BYU-Hawaii | BYU-Idaho | BYU Jerusalem Center | BYU Salt Lake Center | LDS Business College | Missionary Training Center
Please report any problems to web_ugrad_cat@byu.edu, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602 - (801)422-4245 - Copyright 2007, All Rights Reserved XHTML CSS 508

UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG 2008 - 2009

Printable PDF

Minor in Middle East Studies (19 hours*)

Show All Course Descriptions
Hide All Course Descriptions

Program Requirements

1. Complete eight hours in Arabic, modern Hebrew, Persian, or Turkish.

2. Complete the following:
   MESA 201 : Introduction to Middle East Studies. (2:2:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Introduction to Middle East from historical, art/literary, and various social science perspectives, including introduction to disciplinary methodologies and major issues of interest.

   MESA 250 : Introduction to the Religion of Islam. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: Alternate years.
   DESCRIPTION: Exploring the rise of Islam, the life of Muhammad, basic beliefs and practices, major figures and movements, and contemporary political and social issues.

3. Complete one course from the following:
   ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F even years.
   DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

   GEOG 271 : Middle East. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

   HIST 240 : Middle East History to 1800. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East from the rise of of Islam until 1800.

   HIST 241 : Middle East History from 1800. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: W
   DESCRIPTION: History of the Middle East in the modern period form 1800; rise of nation states, relationship with West, role of Islam.

   HUM 242 : Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F
   DESCRIPTION: Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

   PL SC 357 : Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: On demand.
   DESCRIPTION: Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

4. Complete one course from the following:
   ANTHR 340 : Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0)
   OFFERED: F even years.
   DESCRIPTION: Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

   ARTHC 377 : Islamic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0)
   PREREQUISITE: ArtHC 201, 202.